TABAKĀT-I-NĀSIRĪ:



Exclusively Distributed by

MUNSHIRAM MANOHARLAL

ORIENTAL PUBLISHERS, & BOOKSELLERS
54, RANI JHANSI ROAD, NEW DELHI-55
Sales-counter: 4416, NAI SARAK, DELHI-6

48597

ŢABAĶĀT-I-NĀSIRĪ:

A GENERAL HISTORY

OF THE

MUHAMMADAN DYNASTIES OF ASIA.

INCLUDING HINDUSTAN;

from A.H. 194 (810 A.D.) to A.H. 658 (1260 A.D.)

and the

Irruption of the Infidel Mughals into Islam

MAULĀNĀ, MINHĀJ-UD-DĪN, ABŪ-'UMAR-I-'USMĀN

Translated from Original Persian Manuscripts

Major H. G. RAVERTY

Win / Rav VOL. I

ORIENTAL REPRINT

Reprinted February 1970
FIRST PUBLISHED 1881 IN THE
BIBLIOTHECA INDICA SERIES BY
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL

LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 46597

Date 13-8-1970

Call No. 953

Published by Mrs. Nirmal D. Jain for Oriental Books Reprint Corporation, Post Box 1165, 54 Rani Jhansi Road, New Delhi-55 and printed by Mr. K. L. Sachadeva at Skylark Printers, Idgah Road, New Delhi-55

PREFACE.

IN 1865 I was led to read the printed text of the Tabakāt-i-Nāṣirī, published at Calcutta in 1864, in search of materials towards a history of the Afghāns and their country, which

is very much mixed up with that of India.

Having gone through a great portion of it, and finding it defective in many places, and full of errors, I thought it advisable to examine the India Office Library MS., No. 1952, from which the printed text was said to have been taken, went through the whole of that work, and found that it also was defective, and contained numerous errors. I found nothing, however, respecting the Afghans, except in one place, and there they were briefly mentioned in a few lines, but very characteristically.

I had already discovered, when in search of other materials, what lamentable errors the available Histories of India, so called, in the English language contained, and I now found how they had arisen. With a view of correcting them, I made a translation of those portions of the Tabakāt-i-Nāṣirī which related to India, and the History of the Ghaznawī and Ghūrī dynasties: and, when I offered a translation to the Bengal Asiatic Society some twelve years ago, my intention was, as stated in my letter on the subject, merely to have made a fair copy of the translation of those identical portions.

Soon after, I obtained a very old copy of the work; and, on comparing it with the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, I found such considerable and important differences to exist, that I determined to begin anew, and translate the whole work.

The Society having accepted my offer, and the defective

state of the printed text being well known, Mr. Arthur Grote, to whom I am very greatly indebted for assistance in many ways, advised that, in making this translation, I should avail myself of any other copies of the text that might be procurable in Europe. On instituting inquiry the following were found, and have been already referred to in my report to the Society, published in the "Proceedings" for February, 1873, and have been used by me in my task. I must here give a brief description of them, and notice and number them according to their apparent age and value, which arrangement, however, will be somewhat different from that in the notes to pages 68 and 77 of the translated text.

I. A MS, belonging to the St Petersburg Imperial Public Library.

This, probably, is the most ancient of the copies collated. It is not written in an elegant hand, by any means, although plainly and correctly, but in the style in which Mullas usually write. The dals are marked with diacritical points, and other letters are written in a peculiar manner, denoting considerable antiquity. It is, however, imperfect, and does not comprise much more than half the work.

2. The British Museum MS. No. Add. 26, 189.

This copy is considered by Doctor Rieu, whose experience is sufficiently great, and authority undoubted, to be a MS. of the fourteenth century. It is clearly written and correct, and has been of the utmost use to me. It wants a few pages at the end, hence the date on which it was completed, and by whom written, which generally are inserted at the end, cannot be discovered.

3. The old MS. in my possession.

To judge from the writing and paper, I should suppose it to be about the same age as No. 2. It is clearly written, but wants several pages at the end, consequently, the date of its completion likewise cannot be discovered. One pretty good proof of its age, however, is that the whole, from beginning to end, has been cut close to the illuminated borders of each leaf, and inlaid on other paper, which also appears to be of considerable age. Whoever did this turned a number of leaves the wrong way, and misplaced

several pages, which took me some time to put in their places again.

I imagine that there is very little difference, in point of antiquity, between these three copies.

4. A MS. belonging to the Imperial Academy of Sciences at St. Petersburg.

This is a well and correctly written MS., which has also been of the greatest use to me in my work. It wants about two leaves at the end, and, consequently, the date on which it was copied does not appear. I should say, comparing it with the others above described, that it is a MS. of the sixteenth century, possibly, still earlier. It has an unreadable name on the last leaf, with 1218 H. [1803 A.D.] upon it.

5. The India Office Library MS., No. 1952.

This is also a plainly written copy, and, apparently, of considerable age, nearly as old, possibly, as the three copies first named, but it is incorrect in scores of places: one place in particular, where three complete pages of the history of Sultān Mas'ūd of Ghaznīn occur in the middle of the account of the Saljūks. This is important, although an error, because it shows us how many other copies have been taken from it, or that it, and the other copies hereafter to be named, were all copied from another, still earlier, MS. imperfect in that identical place.

This MS, is, in all probability, that referred to by Stewart, as belonging to Tipū's library, and said to have been "copied by the author himself." The reason why this, too, has been erroneously considered "an autograph of the author's," is simply this-whoever copied it, as in the case of other copies, neither recorded his own name, nor the place where, or date when, it was completed, and so it terminates in the author's own words, hence some people have run away with the idea-and it only shows upon what a shadow they often found their theories-that the author himself must have written it. It ends thus :- "The book of Al-Minhāj bin Sarāj, the 5th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal-the third month-in the year fifty and six hundred." The eight, which should have preceded the fifty, has been left out. On the first leaf the following is written: "The Tabakati-Nāṣirī, in the city of Haidar-ābād, in the month of Rabi'-

ul-Awwal, 1157 H. [1744 A.D.], was bought of the booksellers in that place."

6 and 7. Two MSS. in the Paris National Library.

These may be classed, at least the best of the two, with the preceding M.S., No. 5, in point of date, and want of correctness: and I believe that they are either copies of No. 5, or, like it and two others-the Bodleian MS., and the Ro. Asiatic Soc. MS.—copies of the same identical MS. They all agree as to errors, and they all end in the same way. without the name of the scribe, the date, or place where copied, with the single exception of the Bodleian copy. which has the word "eight" written over the words "fifty and six hundred." For the reasons above-mentioned, both Paris MSS .- not one only. I find-were fondly considered " autographs of the author's:" but M. H. Zotenberg, whose opinion I asked, very justly says, "this is impossible, because the two MS. are not in the same handwriting." He. however, adds, "but to judge from the paper and the writing, I should suppose that they are both MSS. of the fifteenth century. They were both brought from India." They came from the Dakhan, in all probability.

8 and 9. The other copy of the text in the British Museum, No. Add. 25,785, which Doctor Rieu considers may be of the sixteenth century, and another belonging to the Imperial Academy of Sciences of St. Petersburg. These are, comparatively, modern copies, of the first half of the seventeenth century in all likelihood. They are plainly written, but are neither of them very correct. The former is defective to the extent of seven or eight 8vo. pages at the end, and the other also wants a few leaves. They are

neither of them of much value.

10. A MS. formerly in the Library of Haileybury College.

This is the most complete MS. of the text that I have met with, although it is of comparatively recent date. It is written in a plain, but not elegant hand. It is generally correct, and closely agrees with Nos. 2, 3, and 4; and I have found it exceedingly useful. Indeed without it, and

¹ See Notes ⁹, page 308; ², page 376; ², page 400; ³, page 426; ², page 573; ⁷, page 577; and particularly page 665, note ⁸; page 684, note ⁹; note page 692; and ⁹, page 703; in which some of these are pointed out.

Nos. 2, 3, and 4, I never could have completed my task satisfactorily. In a few places it supplied what was defective in two of the others. The date of copying is not given, but, from its appearance, I should say it was a MS, of the last half of the seventeenth century. After the author's concluding words the following is written:-"The owner of this MS., in the port [Bandar] of Surat, sisl the Haif. Muhammad Sharif, son of Mulla Muhammad Sharif, son of Mulla Muhammad Tahir;" after which follow some words not quite intelligible, "on the 8th of Sha'banthe eighth month - 1113 H. [1701-1702, A.D.], was recorded." The two last words appear to refer rather to the date the owner wrote his name, than to the date the MS, was completed. It subsequently belonged to some Grandee of the Mughal empire, from the titles given under the above record, namely, "The Mumtaz-ud-Daulah, Mufakhkhar ul-Mulk, Husām-i-Jang." Who he was I am unable to sav.

11. The copy of the text formerly belonging to the late Colonel G. W. Hamilton, C.B., in the collection of the late Earl of Crawfurd and Balcarres. This is, upon the whole, the worst copy I have collated and contains very numerous errors, although, in point of age, it may be older than Nos. 8,0. and 10. It terminates abruptly at page 462 of the Printed Text, and is thus defective to the extent of about twentysix pages, but it has the closing page, and when and where written. Before I saw it, I was informed that it was a very valuable copy, and that it had belonged to "the Emperor Shah Jahan, because his seal was stamped on the margin of one of the pages." On examination. I found that the MS. was completed "on Thursday, the 6th of Rajab—the seventh month-of the year 1050 H. [July, 1640], in the reign of the Second Sāhib-i-Kirān, Abū-l-Muzaffar, Shihābud-Din, Muhammad, Shāh-i-Jahān, Bādshāh-i-Ghāzi, in the city of Burhanpur [in Kandes], at the time when hostilities broke out between that monarch and Shāh 'Abbās the Second [the Safawi ruler of I-ran], respecting Kandahar the Kizil-bashis were then actually investing that stronghold]," and that the copyist was the Khanah-zad-i-Dargah [the born slave of the Court or Household], Mu'inud-Din, Khwajah-i-Jahan, the Jahan-giri," [of the Household of Jahangir Badshah], Shah-i-Jahan Badshah's father.

Beneath this again is the name of a Maulawi, the son of some "Khān," partly obliterated, with the date 1255 H. [1839 A.D.]. A seal underneath bears the date 1233 H. [1818 A.D.]. The largest seal, supposed to be that of Shāh-i-Jahān Bādshāh, bears the following inscription:—"Mu'in-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [the same person as referred to above], ghulām-i-Shāh-i-Jahān," with the figures 24, referring to the year of that monarch's reign, and the year 1061 H. [it began Dec. 14th, 1650, A.D.]. A smaller seal, with an inscription—"Yā Mu'in"—"O Helper!"—bears date 1058 H. [1648 A.D.]. I could discover nothing to show that the MS. had ever belonged to Shāh-i-Jahān Bādshāh.

12. The MS. belonging to the Royal Asiatic Society. This, as previously mentioned, is a modern copy, of the latter part of the seventeenth century possibly, and is either a copy of No. 5, or copied from the same MS. that that was copied from. It is pretty plainly but carelessly written, in, by no means, a good hand; but, like the others referred to, is very defective, and the proper names of

persons and places are often without any points.

I have already noticed how incorrect the Printed Text is. In the Preface to it, Colonel W. N. Lees, LL.D., says: "When I commenced the work, we had three copies, one belonging to the Ro. Asiastic Soc., one in the India House Library, and one belonging to the High Priest of the Pársís at Bombay. A little while afterwards, Colonel Hamilton, in reply to a circular of the Society, forwarded a copy from Dehli. These MSS. are all apparently good old copies, and are written in very different hands. It was supposed, then, that we had four distinct copies to collate; but, before long, it became apparent that the four had been copied from two MSS., so, in reality, we had only two. . . . The Society had issued hundreds of circulars to all parts of India, and had failed to draw out more than two copies; and the fact, that the four old copies I had had been copied

² In this case, if the Ro. As. Soc's MS. is a copy of the India Office MS., the Hamilton MS., and the High Priest's, must be copies one of the other, or copies from another MS.

Sir Henry Elliot mentions that he found one in the Royal Library at Lakhnāo, but most of the MSS, in that collection were, I believe, destroyed during the rebellion of 1847.

from two MSS., seemed to indicate so clearly the great scarcity of MSS. of this work, that I decided to go on."

From these remarks its defectiveness is not to be wondered at, but, at the same time, as I have shown in my notes, there are numerous errors in it which are not to be found in these MSS, and a little historical and geographical discrimination on the part of the editors might have corrected many of them.

The time and labour required for simply translating a book, especially if but one or two copies be used for collation, is not very great; and this translation could have been accomplished in a tithe of the time I have devoted to it. But, as this History is one of the four most important works with respect to the early rulers of India, and that part of Central Asia upon which all eyes have been lately turned, and are likely to be turned in the future, I thought it advisable not to spare any pains on it, although it has occupied some years longer than I anticipated. I have collated nine copies of the text word for word; and all doubtful passages have been collated for me from the other three. Although this has occupied a great deal of time. and entailed much labour, a still greater amount of both has been expended on the notes, which I deemed necessary to illustrate our author's often brief, sometimes erroneous, but generally valuable, statements, to point out the errors which he has sometimes fallen into, and to point out some of the legion of lamentable mistakes, and misleading statements, contained in compilations purporting to be "Histories of India," "Histories of Afghánistán from the Earliest Times," and similar Histories of other Eastern states and peoples; and to show the exact value of the compilations, turned out by the yard by raw hands, for the Public of the newspapers and reviews, and the general reader.

These errors in Indian History are solely attributable to the miscalled translations of the comparatively modern chronicle, known as the Tärikh-i-Firishtah by Dow and Briggs, the first of whom could not possibly have understood the words of the writer in scores of places, and in such cases appears to have recorded his own ideas instead of the author's statements. Firishtah's work, too, is not difficult, and the style is simple; and it is one of a few books

well adapted for the Lower Standard of Examination in the Persian language. Firishtah's materials were chiefly taken from the Tabakāt-i-Akbari, also known as the Tabakāt-i-Akbar Shāhi, of the Khwājah, Nizām-ud-Din, Ahmad, who obtained his materials, up to the reign of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban, from the work of our author; and not a single event is recorded in Firishtah that is not recorded in the Tabakāt-i-Akbari. This will be quite clear to any one who will take the trouble to compare them. Firishtah, indeed, follows it so closely that, not only are the poetical quotations appropriated, but the errors also, as I have pointed out in my notes, have been faithfully copied by the Dakhani author: where the one errs the other is sure to follow.

The English version of Briggs, "the admirable version," as a writer, who did not know the contents of Firishtah, calls it, is clearly based upon Dow's, with very slight alterations, and they are chiefly of a verbal kind. I should be sorry to be unjust to any author, but I submit that, where great, misleading, and glaring, historical errors, are as clear as the light of day, it is a duty towards the public, and in the interests of science, that they should be pointed out, even at the risk of "hurting the susceptibilities" of the authors of them or their friends, especially when such pernicious compilations as I have referred to, under the name of history, continue to be used in our colleges and schools, without the nature of them being known in its true light. The writers of them have much to answer for but those who have adopted them in our public institutions a vast deal more. See, for example, note 4, page 312, and note, page 323.

One of the most glaring of the misstatements I refer to is that wherein the Turk sovereigns of <u>Ghaznin</u>, as well as the Tājzik rulers of <u>Gh</u>ūr, are turned into "Patháns" or "Afgháns," which words are synonymous, and "Patháns" or "Afgháns" into Turks and Tājzik <u>Gh</u>ūris. Dow, in the first place, is to blame for this, but Briggs blindly followed him 'I say this advisedly. The proof is

A few examples of which may be seen in Note ⁹, page 441; and ¹, page 653; last para. of Note ⁸, page 665; ⁶, page 697; and ⁴, page 711.
 Examples of this will be found in Notes ³, page 204; ⁶, page 312; ⁴

easy from any MS. of Firishtah's work, but with MSS. alone we need not rest content. We have only to compare Briggs's version with that lithographed edition printed at Bombay, to which Briggs put his name as editor and reviser, to prove my words.

Let us, for example, take any passage in Briggs' account of the Ghuris, or the history of the Turkish slave Sultans of Dihli-those, say, referred to at page 508 of this work -and in the Persian text which, according to the titlepage, had the benefit of his editing and revision, not one word will be found respecting their being Afghans, as contained in his "admirable translation:" all comes from Dow.

If this TRANSLATION OF THE TABAKAT-I-NASIRI, the original of which was published just six hundred and twentyone years ago, and the notes accompanying it, disperse to the winds this error-bubble alone, I shall deem my time not lost, and the labour of years not thrown away, because, even since the publication of Sir H. Elliot's extracts from various Histories, which also showed how incorrect this "Pathán" theory was, Turks, Tāizīk Ghūris, Turkish Slaves, lats, Savvids, and others, continue to figure under the ridiculous name of "Pathán dynasties," up to this present day.

I have already remarked that our author has mentioned the Afghans but once in his History, and that very briefly. but, at the same time, most graphically [page 852], a body of them being in the pay of the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam. The Afghans were by no means unfamiliar to our author. and he certainly knew the Ghūris better than any other author known to us, and he shows on that very page that they were a totally different race. In his account of the Shansabānis of Ghūr, and their dynasties, he simply stands unrivalled, and also in his accounts of the first Mughal invasions of the territories between Hirat and Multan. The Afghans appear at this time to have begun to take service under the Muhammadan feudatories of the western border provinces of the Dihli kingdom. They may have been in the

page 320; note 7, para. 4, page 321; note 9, page 404; 7, page 431; note , page 441; note 4, page 514; and 1, para. 5, page 794.

See the "Journal of the Bengal Asiatic Society," Part I., No. II., pr.

1880, page 18,

habit of taking such service previously, but to no great extent I imagine, but, about this period, there was a particular reason for it-the confusion and convulsions caused throughout the vast tracts of country which formed the kingdom of the Ghaznawis and their subverters the Ghūris, styled Afghānistān by Europeans chiefly, through the irruptions, devastations, massacres, and final subversion of the Musalman rule by the hordes of infidel Mughals, by whom the country of the Afghans was completely surrounded on the north, south, and west, while the only territory still held by a Musalman sovereign lay on the east—the Pani-ab—the western part of which also subsequently fell under the Mughal yoke. The limits of the true Afghanistan were prescribed by the mountains bounding the Kurma'h valley and the territory of Kabul on the north, the Koh-i-Surkh on the south, the territories of Ghaznin and Kandahar on the west. and the Sulimani mountains or Koh-i-Siyah on the east.

It will be observed that I have really commenced the Translation from Section VII.; and from that point it embraces the whole work. The first six, with the exception of the History of the early kings of I-ran, are not of much importance by reason of their brevity. The account of the I-rani dynasties, which would require a volume to illustrate them, I have treated as a separate work, which, ere long, may see the light. To make the Translation in effect complete, however. I have given an abstract of the first six Sections.

The adulations addressed to, and constant prayers offered up for, the Sultan to whom the author dedicated, and after whom he named, his History, have been omitted or greatly reduced, and some of the introductions to the Sections also, which are of a similar style, have been cut short, but, in all other cases, I have not "compressed" the Translation in the least degree; and I may say that I have weighed every word and sentence, and have omitted nothing, not even the poetical quotations, having only rejected some of the longer portions when they have been of no interest, not necessary to the text, or of no particular merit. I have endeavoured to render the translation as nearly as possible in the author's own words. without being slavishly literal. It is however sufficiently

literal to assist a student, and yet readable by the English reader, though keeping much of a foreign complexion for various reasons. It is possible that in so long a work, published at intervals as completed, and not in a complete form at once, slight inconsistencies in punctuation and English (though not Persian, save through printers' errors) orthography may be here and there observable. Most English punctuation is haphazard, and left to the compositors, who, apparently, sometimes use it to denote breathing pauses; sometimes to help out the grammar. One may point sentences very much or very little, but whatever is done should be upon one system. Accordingly here, for the most part, the minute plan of what may seem to some over-much stopping is adopted, though not always, but no such absurdity is allowed to appear as a divorce of the verb from its subject by a single comma, and other errors of that sort, which come of printers attending entirely to pause and forgetting grammar.

Scholars will understand that there may be much to be said for more ways than one of spelling the same word in

such a language as English.

This book, the text and notes together, will be found to be a very thesaurus of the most varied and often recondite historical material for the periods of which it treats, and many time-honoured historical errors have been pointed out and rectified. It wants but one thing to make it still more acceptable to the Student, and that is an Index. The Reviewers are tolerably sure to point this out for fear nobody else should see it. So the Translator begs to say, once for all, that he is too weary, and his time too valuable, to take up any such work. Meanwhile, The Index Society will have here a capital tough subject for their charitable exertions.

Besides the standard Histories mentioned in note, page 869, the following, among which are many rare, celebrated, and excellent, works, have been also used; and some of them have been extensively drawn upon. The majority, but not all, have been mentioned in the notes taken from them. From "the labours of" these authors "my predecessors" I have derived the utmost "assistance," and acknowledge it accordingly.

Tārikh-i-Tabari, Kitāb-i-Yamini, Kitāb-i-Masālik-wa-Mamālik. Tārikh-i-Abū-l-Fazl-i-Bai-Zain-ul-Akhbār, Nizām-ut-Tawārikh of the Kāzi. Abū-Sa'id-i-'Abdullah of Baizā, Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir, Kāmil-ut-Tawārikh of the Shaikh, Abū-l-Hasan-i-'Ali, surnamed Ibn-ul-Asir, Khulāsat - ut - Tawārikh Sujān Rāe, Khulāsat-ul-Akhbār, Mir'āt-ul-'Alam, Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā, Tārikh-i-Firūz-Shāhi of Zivā-ud-Din, Barani, Tārikh-i-Mubārak-Shāhi, Tārikh-i-Firūz-Shāhi of Shams-i-Sirāi. Zaffar-Nāmah, Tuzūk-i-Bābari, Tārikh-i-Rashidi of the Mirzā. Muhammad Haidar, the Doghlati Mughal, Memoirs of Humāyūn Bādshāh by Bāyazīd the Byāt, A'in-i-Akbari,

Tabakāt-i-Akbari, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh of the Budā'ūni. Akbar Nāmah of Faizī the Sarhindi, Tazkirāt-ul-Abrār of the Akhūnd, Darwezah, Makhzan-i-Afghāni, Tārikh-i-Khān-i-Jahān, the Lūdi. Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh. Rauzat-ut-Tāhirin, Sair - ul - Bilād — a Persian Translation of the Asarul-Bilād, Bahr-ul-Asrār, Tuhfat-ul-Kirām. Chachh Nāmah. Tārikh-us-Sind of Mīr Ma-'sūm, the Bakhari, Tārikh-i-Haft-Iklim. Ikbāl Nāmah-i-Jahān-giri, Ma'adan-i-Akhbār-i-Ahmadî. Tazkirat-ul-Mulūk of Yahyā Khān, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh of Fakir

The following Pushto or Afghān Chronicles have also been used:—The History of the Khashi sept of the Afghān nation, and their conquests beyond the river of Kābul, by Khwājū, the Matizi; the Tārikh-i-Nisbat-i-Afāghinah, by the Shaikh, 'Abd-ur-Razzāk, Matizi; and the Tārikh-i-Muraşşa' by Muḥammad Aizal Khān, Khatak.

Muhammad,

and a few others.

Tārikh-i-Rājahāhe Jammū,

History of Gaur or Lakhan-

awati of Shiam Parshad,

I cannot close these remarks without tendering my sincere thanks to Doctor C. Rieu, Keeper of the Oriental

Manuscripts of the British Museum, for his kind and efficient assistance at all times, also to Professor Alois Sprenger of Wabern near Bern, and to Monsieur H. Zotenberg of the French National Library, who very kindly collated numerous passages for me.

The system of transliteration, adopted in the following pages, is that known as the system of Sir William Jones, which, after some thirty years' experience, the Translator conceives to be the easiest, as well as the most natural, and as easy of pronunciation [except, perhaps, the purely 'Arabic gutturals] as the original letters of the 'Arabic alphabet.

The vowels are three short -a, i, u, equivalent to -- and -; and three long-ā, ì, ū, equivalent to $\hat{1}$ - $\hat{2}$ All consonants, except the following, are pronounced precisely the same as in English: - as, as th in thing, or lisped s; $\epsilon - \underline{ch}$, as ch in church; $- \underline{h}$, strongly aspirated, which occurs only in purely 'Arabic words; - - kh, as ch in loch, and as German ch; 5 - d, pronounced by applying the tip of the tongue inverted to the palate; خ -z. as th in thine, by 'Arabs, dth; ; - r, as r uttered by striking the point of the tongue on the palate; ; -iz, as s in pleasure, or soft French i; $-\frac{sh}{s}$, as sh in shell; $-\frac{s}{s}$, as ss in dissolve; $\dot{b} - z$, as dwd; b - t, as t with a slight aspiration: & - z, as English z with a slight aspiration; e-', a deep guttural without any audible aspiration, and, when initial to a word, the ' is placed before its vowel, as in 'Ali, and, when not initial, after its preceding vowel, as in Ja'far and Rāfi'; ; gh, a guttural sound like that produced in gargling, or Northumbrian r, and something similar to gh in ghost; ; - k, another peculiar 'Arabic sound, produced by pressing back the root of the tongue to the throat, and partaking of the sound of k and q; - h, slightly aspirated; at the end of a word it is often unaspirated. When e occurs at the end of a word preceded by \bar{a} , the former is almost quiescent. The only diphthongs are ai and au.

From the above system the scholar can at once tell the original letters in the names of persons and places. Unless the peculiar letters are marked there is no knowing what they are meant for. For example; if the equivalent of $\dot{\epsilon}$

is not marked, we cannot tell whether the original was on the two letters of and a; and if the roman equivalents of of o, o, and o are all rendered by simple "s," how are we to know which is the letter meant?

As the work is rather more bulky than was anticipated at the outset, and may be perhaps more convenient in two volumes than in one, I have provided for binding it up into two volumes by giving two separate title-pages, as it can be conveniently divided at the commencement of Section XXII., page 719.

ROCK HOUSE, Milverton, Somerset, 12th January, 1881 A.D. 12th Şafar, 1298 H.

MEMOIR OF THE AUTHOR.

FEW materials exist for a notice of our author, and these are chiefly furnished by himself.

The first mention he makes of his family is to the effect that "the Imām, 'Abd-ul-<u>Kh</u>ālik, the Jūrjānī, having, in his early manhood, dreamt a dream on three successive occasions, urging him to proceed to <u>Ghaznīn</u> and seek a wife, set out thither; and, subsequently, obtained, in marriage, one of the forty daughters of Sultān Ibrāhīm of <u>Ghaznīn</u>," who was in the habit of bestowing his daughters, in marriage, upon reverend and pious Sayyids and 'Ulamā, like other Musalmān rulers have continued to do, down to recent times.

By this wife, 'Abd-ul-Khālik had a son, whom he named Ibrāhīm, after his maternal grandfather, the Sultān; and he was our author's great-grandfather. He was the father of the Maulānā, Minhāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, who was the father of the Maulānā, Sarāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad—who is called Ibrāhīm by some—who was known by the title of 'Ujūbat-uz-Zamān—The Wonder of the Age. He was the father of the Maulānā, Minhāj-ud-Dīn, 'Abū-'Umar-i-'Uṣmān, the author of the following History, who thence often brings in his father's and grandfather's name, styling himself Minhāj-i-Sarāj-i-Minhāj, the two iṣāfats being used to signify son of in place of the Arabic bin.

Our author's ancestors, on both sides, for several generations, appear to have been ecclesiastics of repute, and men

¹ The title, Sarāj-ud-Dīn, means "The Lamp, or the Luminary of the Faith," and Minhāj-ud-Dīn, "The High-road, or the Way of the Faith." See note ², page 1295.

distinguished for learning. He states that he possessed, among the misūl or diplomas granted to his maternal ancestors by the Khalifahs, one from the Khalifah, Mustapi B'illah, conferring the Kāzi-ship of the fortress, or rather, fortified town, of Tūlak, described in the following pages, together with that over the Kuhistān, and the Jibāl—Highlands—of Hirāt, upon his maternal grandfather, in conformity with the diploma previously held by the latter's father before him. His paternal grandfather also received an honorary dress from the same Pontiff; and our author says that he himself possessed the diploma which was sent along with it.

Since writing note', at page 321, giving an account of the Amîr, Mas'ūd's inroad into the northern parts of Ghūr, when on his way from Ghaznīn to Hirāt, I have considered that the word given by our author referred to the tract of country described in that note as the Gūzgānān, or the Gūzgāns, by Tājzīks, but which 'Arabs, and people of 'Arab descent, who use $j - \varepsilon -$ for the Tājzīk $g - \varepsilon -$ turn into Jūzjānān, and that the word he uses in connexion with his own name refers to one of the Gūzgāns, and that he should be styled 'the Gūzgānī' or 'Jūzjānī.' As the most trustworthy copies of the text, the best and most correctly written, had Jūrjānī, I considered it necessary to follow them as I had begun, and to mention the matter more in detail here in the Memoir of the Author's life.

Gūzgān, as the native inhabitants styled it, or Jūzjān, is not the name of a single town, village, or fortress,

but one of the small districts or tracts of country among the mountains, on the north-west frontier of the country of Ghur, and north of Hirat, beyond the Murgh-Ab-the Jibāl of Hirāt, as he himself styles it-but its exact position, and the localities of most of the great fortresses mentioned by our author in the last Section of his work, are at present unknown to us. The Guzganan, or Güzgāns were the appanage of the Amir. Muhammad, brother of Mas'ud; and it was from thence that he was brought when he assumed the throne of Ghaznin after the death of his father. Notwithstanding the details which our author gives respecting the great fortresses of Ghur. Gharjistan, and other parts, including the fortress of Tulak. which appears to have been his own place of residence at the time, and also the home of his maternal relatives (see page 1066 and note 5), which he helped to defend against the Mughal invaders, and which must have been situated in one of the Güzgans, he never once, throughout his whole work, refers to Güzgan or Jüzian, except in connexion with his own name. See also notes to pages 186 and 232.

After the <u>Gh</u>ūris obtained possession of Lāhor in 582 H., and they had seized the Sulṭān, <u>Kh</u>usrau Malik, the last of the Sulṭāns of <u>Gh</u>aznin, our author's father was made <u>Kāzi</u> of the <u>Gh</u>ūriān army stationed at Lāhor, under the Sipah-Sālār, 'Alī-i-Kar-mā<u>kh</u>; and twelve camels were assigned him for the conveyance of the establishment of his office.

his tribunal, etc., on the line of march.
Our author was born after this, in the year 589 H., the very year in which Dihlî, of which, and of which Musalmān kingdom, he was subsequently to become the chief Ķāzī and Ṣadr, was made the seat of the Musalmān government in Hindūstān by the Turk Mamlūk, Ķuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, who was, in after-years, to become its first Muḥammadan Sulṭān. That our author was born at Lāhor, as the Dāghistānī, referred to farther on, asserts, cannot be correct; for, from what he himself states respecting his arrival at Ūchchah in 624 H. [see pages 541 and 722], that was the first time he set foot in Hind. Had he been born at Lāhor, he would, doubtless, have mentioned it, and he would probably have been styled and known as the Lāhori in consequence.

The next mention he makes of his father is, that, when

Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, ruler of Bamian and Tukharistan, succeeded his father on the throne, he desired that our author's father, the Maulana, Saraj-ud-Din, Muhammad, should take up his residence in his kingdom, and enter his service. With the sanction of his own sovereign and patron, and Bahā-ud-Din, Sām's suzerain, namely, the Sultan of Ghur, Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sam, the Maulana proceeded to the Court of Baha-ud-Din. Sam, and was made Kazi of the kingdom of Bamian and Tukhāristān, with the judicial administration over its forces, was made censor, with full powers as regards ecclesiastical law, and intrusted with the charge of two colleges, and their funds. This happened in 591 H., when our author was in his third year. He states that the diploma conferring these offices upon his father, in the handwriting of the Wazir of the Bāmiān state, was still contained in the kharītah [a bag of embroidered silk for holding documents] containing his own diplomas, his banner, and turban of honour.

The mother of our author was the foster-sister and school-mate of the Princess, Māh Malik, the daughter of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Sām, mention of which lady will be found in several places in the following pages; and his mother appears to have continued in her service after her marriage. Our author distinctly states that his early years were passed in the Haram of the Princess, until the period of his entering upon adolescence, when, according to Musalmān usages, he had to be sent elsewhere. He speaks in terms of much gratitude of the fostering kindness and protection he received while dwelling in that Princess's household. Under these circumstances, Lāhor can scarcely have been the place of his birth.

When Sultān Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, withdrew his allegiance from the Khalifah, Un-Näṣir-ud-Din-Ullah, and the latter's troops had been defeated by him, Ibn-ur-Rabbi', and Ibn-ul-Khatib, on two different occasions, came as envoys to the Courts of the Sultāns of Ghūr and Ghaznin, to demand aid from these monarchs against Sultān Takish. In consequence, the Imām, Shams-ud-Din, the Turk, and the Maulānā, Sarāj-ud-Din, Muḥammad, the Tājzik, our

author's father, were directed to proceed to Baghdād, to the Khalifah's Court, along with the envoys.² They set out for Baghdād by way of Mukrān; and, in some affray into which they fell on the road, they were attacked by a band of robbers, and our author's father was killed. Intimation of his death was received in a communication from the Khalifah to the Sultān, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, in these words: "Furthermore, Sarāj-i-Minhāj perished in an affray on the road. The Almighty recompense him!"

Another of our author's relatives, his mother's brother's son, was Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of 'Abd-us-Sallām, Kāzī of Tūlak, who was left in command of the fortress of Tabarhindah, with a force of 1200 Tūlakīs, by the Sultān, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, when that Sultān was about to retire from Hind before the hot season of 587 H., intending to return after it was over and relieve him. The Kāzī of Tūlak was to hold the place for seven months; but, as the Sultān, just after this arrangement was made, was defeated by Rāe Pithorā, and severely wounded in the battle, and an expedition into Khurāsān soon after intervened, he was totally unable to come to the Kāzī's relief, as agreed upon, in the following season, and, consequently, after having held out over thirteen months, the Kāzī', Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, had to capitulate.

At the time Sultan <u>Chiyaş-ud-Din</u>, Mahmūd, son of <u>Ghiyaş-ud-Din</u>, Muhammad-i-Sam, was assassinated by the <u>Khwarazmi</u> refugees, in Safar, 607 H., our author was dwelling at Firūz-koh, and was then in his eighteenth year.

In 611 H., the year preceding the surrender of his capital, Firūz-koh, by the last of the Sultāns of the Ghūrī dynasty,

² He was despatched on this mission by Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn, Muḥammadi-Sām, Sulţān of Ghur, the elder brother and suzerain of Mu'üz-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, Sulţān of Ghaznin, who, in a paper in the "Fournal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal," Part I., No. I, for 1880, page 28, by Mr. C. R. Süpnagel, is styled Mu'az-ud-din. The writer is at a loss to know why the elder brother's name appears on his younger brother's coins, and informs us that "of Sultân Ghiús-ud-din szaredy anything is known." I beg to recommend him to study the twenty-three pages respecting him in the following translation, and to refer to note 6, page 472, and 2, page 489. Here again "Mu'az" is turned into "the first Pathân king of Dehil!" See also Part I., No. II., page 84, of the "Gournal."

our author proceeded thither. Two years after we find him in Sijistān, at Zaranj, the capital, where he remained some time. At this period the whole of the territories which had formed the empire of the <u>Gh</u>ūrīs, including the dominions of <u>Gh</u>aznīn, and extending east of the Indus into the upper part of the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah of the Panj-āb as far as the Jhilam, had fallen under the sway of the <u>Kh</u>wārazmīs. These events must, in some way, have been the cause of his sojourn in Sijistān for seven months, but he is quite silent on the causes which led him there. See page 195.

In 617 H., during the first inroad of the Mughals into Ghür and Khurāsān, before the Chingiz Khān himself crossed the Oxus with his main army, our author was living at Tūlak; and, shortly after, in the same year, took part in the defence of that fortified town against the invaders, who kept prowling about it for about eight months. During a period of four years, from the above mentioned year up to the close of 620 H., during which the Mughals made several attempts upon it, he helped to

defend it.

In 618 H., the year in which he says the Chingiz Khan crossed the Iihūn into Khurāsān, and he was in his thirtieth year, he married the daughter of a kinsman of his own: and, in 620 H., he determined as soon as circumstances permitted, to leave his native country, and proceed into Hindūstān, not liking, apparently, to dwell in a country overrun by the Mughal infidels. In 621 H. he was despatched from Tülak, where he was then living, and in the defence of which against the Mughals he had just taken part, by Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Hasan-i-Khar-post, to Isfīzār, after Khurāsān had become clear of Mughals, and from thence into the Kuhistan-the Chingiz Khan had, at that time, returned homewards-to endeavour to arrange for the re-opening of the kārwān routes, which, during the Mughal invasion, had been closed, and the traffic suspended.

On a second occasion, in 622 H., he again proceeded from Tülak into the Kuhistän for the same purpose, at the request of Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of 'Uṣmān, the Maraghani, of Khāesār of Ghūr, the father of Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, the first of the Kurat dynasty, as the Tājzīk—not Afghān, I beg leave to say—rulers of the fiefs of Hirāt and Ghūr and their dependencies, who were the vassals of the Mughals, were styled. The following year he again set out on a journey into the Kuhistān, on the part of Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Muhammad, that the kārvān route might be re-opened. From Khāesār he first went to Farāh, and from thence proceeded by way of Sijistān into the territory referred to, and returned to Khāesār again.

In 623 H., our author, who appears to have left Tülak and was residing at Khāesār, with the permission of Malik Ruknud-Din. Muhammad, went to Farah in order to purchase a little silk required by him for his journey into Hindustan. Having arrived in the neighbourhood of Farah, Malik Taiud-Din. Bināl-Tigin, the Khwārazmi, who then ruled over Sijistan, and was engaged in war with the Mulahidah of the Kuhistān, induced him to undertake a journey into the latter territory, to endeavour to bring about an accommodation between himself and the Mulahidah governor of that part, the Muhtashim, Shams-ud-Din. Our author was accompanied by the son of Malik Rukn-ud-Din. Muhammad, whose name is not mentioned, but, in all probability, it was the identical Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, the founder of the Kurat dynasty. Our author succeeded in effecting an accommodation, but it does not appear to have been on terms acceptable to Malik Tāi-ud-Din. Bināl-Tigin, for he wished him to return to the Muhtashim's presence and declare war again. This he declined to do, as he had several times put off his journey into Hind, and was now desirous of departing without further delay, and before the Mughals should again appear. Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Bināl-Tigin, was wroth at this refusal, and shut him up within the walls of the fortress of Safhed of Sijistan. There he was detained for a period of forty-three days, but, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Muhammad, having interfered in his behalf, he was set at liberty.

He did not allow the grass to grow under his feet after this; and in the fifth month of the following year—Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 624 II., [in another place he says it was Rajab, the seventh month, while in another place—page 612—he

says it was in 625 H.], by way of Ghaznin and Baniān, he reached Üchchah by boat; and, in the following Zi-Ḥijjah, Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, ruler of Üchchah and Multān, placed him in charge of the Firūzi College at Uchchah, and made him Kāzi of the forces of his son, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh.

Our author could distinguish the winning side, and preferred it; for, no sooner had Sulţān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-imish, ruler of Dihlī, Kabā-jah's rival, appeared before Uchchah, than he deserted Kabā-jah and the Fīrūzī College, and went over to his rival. In the first place, our author presented himself before Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, who was in command of the van of I-yal-imish's forces; and, a few days after, I-yal-timish himself having arrived, he waited on him. He was favourably received, and was appointed to officiate, in his priestly capacity, within that Sulţān's camp. After the fall of Uchchah, he accompanied I-yal-timish to Dihlī; and reached it in Ramazān, 625 H.

He subsequently accompanied the Sultan, in his priestly capacity, to Gwaliyūr in 629 H.; and, in the following year, after that stronghold was taken possession of, was made Kāzī, Khatīb, and Imām of Gwaliyūr and its dependencies, under the governor, Rashīd-ud-Din, 'Alī. In the early part of Sultan Raziyyat's reign he returned to Dihlī, but he was not removed from office, neither was he a "forgiven rebel;" and, during his absence from Gwaliyūr, his Deputies acted for him. On reaching the capital, in 635 H., that sovereign added to his offices that of Superintendent of the Nāṣirīah College at Dihlī.

In the year 639 H., in the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, Bahrām Shāh, our author was made Chief Kāzi of the Dihli kingdom, and of the capital as well. In the disturbances which arose between that Sultān and his Amīrs, our author, and other ecclesiastics, endeavoured to bring about a peaceful accommodation, but without effect. In Zi-Ka'dah of the same year, the Khwājah, Muḥazzabud-Dīn, the Wazir, bribed a number of villains to murder him; and, after the conclusion of the Friday's prayers, on

³ See page 1285, and Thomas's "Pathán Kings of Dehli," page 105.

the 7th of that month, they actually attacked him in the Jāmi' Masjid, but he escaped without hurt.

Soon after, on the accession of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din. Mas'ūd Shāh, on the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, being re-appointed Wazir, our author, in 640 H., resigned the Chief Kazi-ship, and in Rajab of that year left Dihli in order to proceed into the territory of Lakhanawati. There he remained about two years, and there he acquired his information respecting it and its rulers. While residing in that country, he accompanied Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khān in his expedition against the Rāe of Jāj-Nagar. and was present at the attack on the frontier post of Katāsin, in Shawwāl, 641 H. On the removal of that Malik from the government of Lakhanawati in 643 H., our author accompanied him on his return to Dihli, and, in Safar of that year, presented himself at Court. Muhazzabud-Din had in the meantime been put to death by the Amirs; and, through the interest and efforts of his subsequent munificent patron, Malik Ghiyas-ud-Din, Balban (afterwards Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and subsequently Sultan of Dihli), who held the office of Amir-i-Hajib, three days after his return, he was put in charge of the Nasiriah College once more, and entrusted with the administration of its endowments, the lecture-ship of the Jāmi' Masjid, and the Kāzi-ship of Gwāliyūr, according to the previous grant. Subsequently, in the same year, he accompanied the army which advanced to the banks of the river Biah for the relief of Uchchah when invested by the Mughals.

In 644 H., at Jalhandar [in the Panj-āb], on the return of the army, on the occasion of performing the services prescribed for the 'Id-i-Azhā in the hall of the College there, the new Sultān, Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, to whom this History is dedicated, presented our author with a cloak, a turban, and a richly caparisoned horse. In 645 H., he wrote a description, in verse, of the expedition against Talsandah, entitled the "Nāṣirī Nāmah." The Sultān rewarded him for this with a yearly stipend, and Malik Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban, the hero of the poenr, and commander of the expedition, gave him the revenues of a village in the Hānsī province, which was that Malik's fief at that period. In

649 H., for the second time, the Chief Kāzī-ship of the Dihlī kingdom, with jurisdiction over the capital as well, was conferred upon him; but, when, two years after, in 651 H., the eunuch, 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān, succeeded in his conspiracy for the removal from office of our author's patron, who had been raised to the title of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam in 647 H., and he was banished the Court, our author, like others of the Ulugh Khān's clients and supporters, was removed from the office of Chief Kāzī, and it was conferred upon one of the Rayhān's creatures, notwithstanding our author stood so high in the estimation of the weak and puppet Sultān. In 652 H., matters improved a little: a new Wazīr succeeded; and, while in the Kol district, whither our author appears to have accompanied the Sultān's Court, the title of Sadr-i-Jahān's was conferred upon him.

At the close of the following year the Rayhānī was ousted from office, the Ulugh Khān-i-A'am again assumed the direction of affairs, and our author, who, for months past, had been unable, for fear of his life, to leave his dwelling, even to attend the Friday's service in the Jāmi' Masjid, was, in Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 653 H, for the third time, made Chief Kāzī of the Dihlī kingdom, with jurisdiction over the capital as before.

With the exception of his remark at page 715, in winding up the events of the year 658 H., that if his life should be spared—he was then in his seventieth year—and aptitude should remain, whatever events might subsequently occur would be recorded, our author henceforward disappears from the scene, and we hear no more of him. At the end of his account of the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam farther on, he does not renew that promise, nor does he do so when finally closing his History. The munificent rewards he received on presenting copies of his work to the Sultan and to the latter's father-in-law, the Ulugh Khan-i-A'zam, are mentioned at page 1294. He refers to his family casually, now and then, in the following pages, but, with a single exception, enters into no particulars whatever. At page 820 he says, with reference to the Malik-ul-Hujjāb [Head of the Chamberlains], 'Alā-ud-Din, the Zinjāni, that he is "his son, and the light of his eyes;" but he could not have been

⁴ See page 698, and note 8.

his son from the fact of his being styled "the Zinjāni," that is to say, a native of Zinjān in <u>Kh</u>urāsān. He may have been his son-in-law, or an adopted son.

When the emissaries from Khurāsān were received by the Sulṭān, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, as related at page 857, our author composed a poem befitting the occasion, and this, he says, was read before the throne by one of his sons. He also, in one place, refers to a brother.

Between the time when our author closes this History in 658 H., and the Ulugh Khān-i-A'gam succeeded to the throne of Dihli under the title of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, in 664 H.—the date generally accepted, although Faṣiḥ-i says it was in 662 H.—is a period of about six years; and, as no other writer that we know of has recorded the events of that period, it is a complete blank in Indian History, which, I fear, cannot be filled up. Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Baranī, in his Tārikh-i-Firūz-Shāhī, which is not much to be depended on, says he takes up the relation of events from the time our author left off, but this is not correct, for he begins with the reign of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balban.

Our author died in his reign, but when cannot be discovered, neither can the place of his burial. Possibly some inscription may hereafter turn up which may tell us, but there is no record available in any of the works I have waded through in search of the information. Whether his health failed him; whether he grew out of favour with his old patron, the new Sultan; or whether circumstances arose which, as regards the Ulugh Khān's conduct towards the weak-minded but amiable, Sultan, Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah, would not bear the light of day-for there are vague statements of foul play on the part of the Ulugh Khān, but no proofs—who shall say? Some writers state that the Sultan died a natural death, which is most probable, and some further add that he, having neither offspring nor heir, nominated his father-in-law, the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, his successor, which was but natural, seeing that, for nearly twenty years, he had virtually ruled the state. That the Ulugh Khan-i-A'zam poisoned him appears unworthy of credence, since, had he desired to supplant him, or get rid of him, he might have effected either object years before. See note f, page 716.

The only mention I can find, after much search, respecting these years, between the closing of our author's History and the accession of the new Sulfān, is the following from Faṣiḥ-ī. "Sulfān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, died in this year, 662 H., and great anarchy and disorder arose throughout the territory of Hindūstān. At last, since among the great Amīrs of Hind, for prudence, counsel, wisdom, munificence, dignity, magnificence, and power, the Amīr, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn [the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam] was preeminently distinguished, and as he had obtained his freedom previously—a matter never alluded to by our author—he, with the unanimous accord of the great nobles and grandees of the kingdom, ascended the throne of Dihlì in the beginning of this year, 662 H."

The Dāghistānī, previously referred to, in his Tazkirah, under the letter ——s—has the following:—"Sarāj-ud-Dīn-i-Minhāj is the author of the Ṭabakāt-i-Nāṣirī, which he completed in the name of the Malik of Hind, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn. His birthplace was Lāhor, and his origin was from

Samr-kand."

This last sentence of the Dāghistāni's is sufficient to show that he is not entirely to be depended upon, in this instance at least. Our author's family was not from Samrkand. The Dāghistāni also gives the following as a quatrain of our author's:—

"That heart which, through separation, thou madest sad;
From every joy that was, which thou madest bare of;
From thy disposition I am aware that, suddenly and unexpectedly,
The rumour may arise that thou hast broken it."

In the "Akhbār-ul-Akhyār"—a Biographical Collection of Notices of Saints—of 'Abd-ul-Ḥakk [he died 1052 H. = 1642 A.D.], the following will be found respecting our author:—"The Shaikh, Ķāzī Minhāj, the Jurjānī, the author of the Tabakāt-i-Nāṣirī, was a saint, and one of the most learned and excellent of his time, and one of those who would become filled with religious costasies on hearing the singing at Zikrs or Tazkirs. When he became Ķāzī of Hindūstān that office assumed integrity and rectitude. The Shaikh, Nizām-ud-Din,' states:—"I used, every Monday,

^{*} This, probably, is no other than the celebrated saint of Dibli.

to go to his Tazkirs, until, one day, when I was present at one of them, he delivered this quatrain:—

44 ' The lip, in the ruby lips of heart-ravishers delighting, And to ruffle the dishevelled tresses essaying, To-day is delighful, but to-morrow it is not— To make one's self like as straw, fuel for the fire.'

"'When I heard this verse,' says the Shaikh, Nizām-ud-Din, 'I became as one beside myself; and it was some time before I came to my senses again.'"

Our author appears to have been deeply imbued with the tenets of Ṣūfī-ism, for a brief essay on which, see the Introduction to my "Poetry of the Afghāns." Professor Sprenger tells me that he was a notorious Ṣūfī. A good account of these Zikrs, or Tazkīrs, will be found in the notes to the Third Chapter of Lane's "Thousand and One Nights."

Before closing this brief memoir of our author, it will be necessary to mention the reasons which led him to write this History. These he gives in the Preface dedicating the work to the Sultān, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, and this divested of much of its fulsome adulation and redundant expressions, may well appear as the Preface to this translation of his History.

THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE ' AND DEDICATION.

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate!

Thus saveth Abū-'Umar-i-'Usmān, son of Muhammadal-Minhāi-al-Iuriāni, that, when, through the blessing of Almighty God, the diadem and throne of the dominion of Hindustan became graced by fencircling the blessed head. and adorned by [being pressed by] the august foot of that Lord of the World, Nāsir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abū-l-Muzaffar-i-Mahmud Shah, son of the Sultan, I-yal-timish -May his reign long continue !- and the khutbah and coin became embellished with his titles and his name, and, during the reign of which august sovereign, the justice-seat of the Kāzī-ship of the empire of Hindustan was consigned to this loyal servant, on a certain occasion, in the tribunal of law and justice, a book came under his observation which the learned and worthy of former times had compiled 2 for the edification of the select and distinguished of posterity. This had been taken from the annals of the Prophets and Khalifahs-On whom be peace!-together with their genealogies, and the histories of the reigns of great Maliks [kings] of bygone times-The splendour of the Almighty illumine their tombs !- and had been written down in tabulated forms, and abbreviated after the manner

1 This Preface varies in some copies, particularly at the commencement, to the extent of a page or more.

² I do not find any trace in the Preface to either of the copies collated, of the "tabular chronicle compiled by the Imâm Mohammad Ali Abu I-Kâsim Imâdi, in the time of Nâsir ol-din Soboktikin," mentioned by Col. Lees, LL.D., in the English Preface to the Calcutta Printed Text, nor is it to be found in its Persian Preface. The words are

of an epitome, in the time of the Sultāns of the dynasty of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Sabuk-Tigīn—The Almighty guard their last resting-place!—from every flower-garden a flower; from every sea a drop, they had brought together [in this book]. After mentioning the Prophets, and giving their genealogies, and that of the Khalifahs of the Banī-Ummiyah and Banī-Abbās, the Maliks of 'Ajam, and the Akāsirah, they rested content with an account of the family of the august Sultān, Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tīgīn-i-Ghāzī-On whom be peace!—and abstained from any mention of other great Maliks, or the dynasties or annals of the Sultāns of the past.

This frail one desired, therefore, that this meagre History should be filled up from first to last, from beginning to end, with an account of the whole of the Maliks and Sultans of Islām, both of 'Arab and of 'Ajam, and that a candle out of every dynasty should be enkindled in this assembly, and that, to the head of every race, a cap might be stitched, by the relation of events and occurrences and illustrious actions. Therefore, an account is recorded here, of the Tubbā-yawa' of Yaman, and the Himyar Maliks; and, after mention of the Khalifahs, an account of the Tāhiris, Suffāris, Sāmānis, the dynasty of Buwiah, the Saljūks, Rūmis. Shansabanis, and the Sultans of that family who were sovereigns of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, and Hind, the Khwārazm-Shāhis, the Kurd Maliks who are Sultans of Sham, and the Mu'izziah Maliks and Sultans, who became Bādshāhs on the thrones of Ghaznin and of Hind, up to the present time, which is the reign of the heir to the diadem and throne of the dominions of the I-val-timish? dynasty and house,

Sultān-ul-Mu'azzam, Sultān-us-Salāṭin Fi-l-'Ālamin,
NĀṢIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA-UD-DIN,
ABŪ-L MUZAFFAR-I-MAḤMŪD SḤĀH,
Yamin-i-Khalifah U'llah, Kasim-i-Amir-ul-Mūminin
—Khuld U'llah Salṭānatahu!

² Signifying, The Supreme Sulfan, The Sulfan of the Sulfans of the World, The Defender of the World and of the Faith, The Victorious (or Accustomed to Conquer), MAHMUD SHAH, The Right Hand of God's Khalifah, The Co-Sharer with the Lord of the Faithful—The Almighty perpetuate his Reign!

and this History is reduced to writing, and adorned with his august titles and name, and is entitled the

TABAKĀT-I-NĀSIRĪ.

It is his implicit hope, through the perfect grace of the Creator, the Most High and Holy, that, when this book shall be honoured by the blessed sight of this Bādshāh, the Asylum of the World, it may meet with the felicity of his approbation; and that from the zenith of the firmament of benefaction, and the summit of the sphere of favour, a ray of the royal grace may shine upon this frail one; and, after his removal from this temporary dwelling, from its readers may a kind invocation endure; and, should they become cognizant of any error or omission, may they veil it with the skirt of the robe of forgiveness, since whatever was to be found in trustworthy chronicles is herein recorded.

4 In ELLIOT, vol. II., page 261, the editor, Mr. Dowson, tells us that, "The eulogistic way in which he [our author] always speaks of the successor of Msinra-d din would induce the belief that the work appeared in the reign of that Sultán, and the fact is proved by his more than once offering up an ejaculatory prayer for the continuance of his reign." Again, at page 362 of the same work, in a foot-note, we are informed that "The text says 'the Sultán (may God prolong his reign);' plainly showing that this part of the work [the notice of Ulugh Khān—the text at page 807 of this Translation is referred to] was written in the reign of Balban."

What our author says above, as well as his other statements noticed in the body of the work, and up to its very conclusion, are, perhaps, undoubted proofs that this work was neither written, nor appeared, in Balban's reign-

CONTENTS.

Preface	v
Memoir of the Author	xix
Author's Preface and Dedication	xxxi
Contents	xxxv
Errata	lvii
israta.	1711
Introductory, being an Epitome of the First Six Sections	1
SECTION I.	
Adam, the Patriarchs and Prophets, and the ancestors of Muhammad .	ib.
SECTION II.	
The Four orthodox Khalifahs, the descendants of 'Ali, and the Com-	
panions of the Prophet	ib
SECTION III.	
The Khalifahs of the house of Ummiyah	ib.
SECTION IV.	
The Khalifahs of the house of 'Abbās	ib,
물리 잔마다 얼마를 하고 말면 하면 그들은 그 그들이 되었다고요?	1000
SECTION V	
The Maliks of 'Ajam to the rise of Islâm :-	
I. The Bästäniah or Pesh-Dädän	2
II. The Kaiāniān	3
III. The Ashkāniān	4
IV. The Sāsāniān	ib.
V. The Akasirah	5
SECTION VI.	
	6
The Tubbā-yawa', and Maliks of Yaman	
b 2	

SECTION VII.				PA	GE
The Dynasty of the Tahiri Muhammadan Maliks in 'Aj	am	•		•	9
I. Tāhir-i-Zū-l-Yamanain		•	•	•	11
II. Talhah, son of Tähir	•	•	•		12
vrr 1414 alleh son of Tähir	•	•		•	13
TYY CO-Lin non of Abd-ullah, son of Lilling	•	•	•	٠, .	15
V. Muhammad, son of Tāhir, son of 'Abd-ullah	•	•	•	•	•
SECTION VIII.					
SECTION VIII					19
The Şuffāriūn Dynasty	÷ 1, 1	• :	•	•	20
 Va'kūb, son of Lais, Sutiāri 	*			•	23
II. 'Umro, son of Lais, Şuffari	: :			•	-3
SECTION IX.					
The Dynasty of the Sāmānis	•		•	•	26
Agad son of Saman-1-Khaddat	•	•	•		27
T Ahmad son of Asad, son of Saman		•		• •	28
TI Nasy son of Ahmad, Samani			. • •		29
TIT Tama'il con of Ahmad, Samani		. •	•	•	31
TAT Abii Nagraja Ahmad, Son OI ISMA II	. •	. •	• •	•	35
V Nasr, son of Ahmad, son of Isma 11	•			•	38
VI Nuh, son of Nasr, son of Anmad				•	40
VII. 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nuh	•	• ,	•	•	41
VIII Mansur son of Nuh				•	44
TV Nigh son of Mansur, son of Nuh	• •				48
ar at-men con of Nilh, son of Mansur				•	50
XI. Abū-l-Fawāris-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ	•				20
SECTION X.					
	-1 -1-) - ml.	12.1	
The Dynasty of the Dialamah Maliks at the Dar-ul-E	nua	iat of 1	ougne	itici,	5
and in Trak					5
I. Abu-l-Hasan, son of Buwiah, Ud-Dilami .			٠.,		5
II. Al-Hasan, son of Buwiah, Ud-Dilami	TI/L	Titlanı			6
II. Al-Hasan, son of Buwiah, Son of Buwiah,	otoh	Hd.I)ilami	1	6
IV. Fana Khusrau, son of Al-Hasan, son of Buy	lamî				6
V. Al-Marzabān, son of Fanā Khusrau, Ud-Dī VI. Abū-l-Fawāris-i-Mākān, son of Fanā Khusr	au, l	Jd-Dil	amī		6
하는 사람들이 가지를 받았다고 하다 되었다.					
SECTION XI.					
The Dynasty of the Yaminiah, Al-Mahmudiah Sov	rereig	gns of	the ra	ce o	ſ
Cabula Tierin			14.		
I. Amīr ul- <u>Gh</u> āzī, Nāşir-ud-Dīn-U'llah, Sabi II. Sultān-ul-A'zam, Yamīn-ud-Daulah, Ni	zam	-na-Di	n, A	bū-l	• :: 1 • :: 1
Kāsim, Maḥmūd-i-Ghāzī, son of Sabuk-	Tigi	n.			
III. Amir Muhammad, son of Mahmud	191		4.5		•

CONTENTS.			x	xxvii
IV. Sultan Nāşir-ud-Din-U'llah, Mas'ūd, the Martyr				PAGE
V. Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Maudūd, son of Mas'ūd .		٠		91
VI. 'Ali, son of Mas'ud, and Muhammad, son of	of Ma	udūd,	in	95
Association				97
VII. 'Abd-ur-Ra <u>sh</u> id, son of Maḥmūd			٠.,	98
VIII. Tughril, Al-Mal'un, or The Execrated				99
IX. Farrukh-Zād, son of Mas'ūd				100
X. Sulţān Ibrāhim, Sayyid-us-Salāţin				102
XI. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd-al-Karīm, or the Bene Ibrāhīm	ficent,	son	of	106
XII. Malik Arsalān, son of Mas'ūd		a.i.	٠.	107
XIII. Mu'izz-ud-Daulah wa ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh .			•	100
XIV. Khusrau Shāh, son of Bahrām Shāh	. •	•	. •	111
XV. Khusrau Malik, son of Khusrau Shah, the Last o		e 1 -	,.	1111
	the N	aanmu	.di-	
ah Dynasty	•		•	114
SECTION XII.				
The Dynasty of the Saljükiah		10.0		116
I. Tughril, son of Mikā'il			÷.	122
II. Malik Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, son of Mikā'il.			- 42	126
III. Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzī, son of Dā'ūd-i-Jagh	ar Be	7 .		132
IV. Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Malik Shāh, son of Alb-Ar				137
V. Muḥammad, son of Malik Shāh				143
VI. Sultān-ul-A'zam, Mu'izz-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din,	Sania	r con	of	143
Malik Shāh			•	146
Account of the Sultans of Rum of the Saljukiah Dynasty				
	•	•	•	157
	•			159
II. Mas'ūd, son of Mahmūd Shāh	161 •	- C M	.1:1-	ib.
III. Kizil-Arsalān, son of Mas'ūd, son of Mahmūd	, son	or M	шк	أرغرا
<u>Sh</u> āh		• 1		160
IV. Kulij-Arsalan, son of Kizil-Arsalan.			•	ib.
V. 'Izz-ud-Din, Kai-Kā-ūs, son of Kizil-Arsalān .	: . • î.		٠.	161
VI. Kai-Kubād, son of Kai-Kā-ūs				ib.
VII. Kai-Khusrau, son of Kai-Kubād	. •	* * ;		162
VIII. 'Izz-ud-Din, son of Kai-Khusrau			20.0	163
IX. Kuth-ud-Din, Kulij-Arsalan	•	•		164
X. Tughril, son of Tughril				165
SECTION XIII.				
Account of the Sanjariyah Rulers				168
First Dynasty.				
불의사람들이 마시하고 모든 요가 없는 모든 이 집을 모든 나는 그 집에 된 그렇지 그렇게 되는 것 같아.				
The Sanjariyah Maliks of 'Irāk and Azarbāijān :-				140
I. The Ata Bak, Îlatt-Giz, Us-Sanjari				170
II. The Ata-Bak, Muhammad, son of Ilatt-Giz .				171
III. The Ata-Bak, Yuz-Bak, son of Muhammad, Us-S	anjari			172
IV. The Ata-Bak, Abū-Bikr, son of Muhammad				173

xviii			CON	TEN

Second Dynasty.		PAGE
The Sanjariyah Maliks of Fars :-		
I. The Ata-Bak Sunkar, Us-Sanjari		173
II. The Atā-Bak, Zangī, son of Sunkar		175
III. The Ata-Bak, Duklah, son of Sunkar	. , , .	ib.
IV. The Atā-Bak, Sa'd, son of Zangi		176
V. The Ata-Bak, Aba-Bikr, son of Sa'd		179
Third Dynasty.		
The Sanjariyah Maliks of Nishapur :		
I. Malik Mu-ayyid, Us-Sanjari		180
II. Malik Tughān Shāh, son of Mu-ayyid		181
III. Sanjar Shah, son of Tughan Shah		182
오랫지도 취 전환 등 10 시민은 그리고 있다. 그 이 모나 1		
SECTION XIV.		
The Maliks of Sijistan and Nimroz		183
I. Tāhir, son of Muhammad		184
II. Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Abu-l-Path, son of Tahir		187
III. Malik-us-Sā'īs, Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Tāj-u	id-Din	189
IV. Malik-us-Sa'id, Tāj-ud-Din-i-Harab, son of Muhammad		191
V. Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, 'Usmān-i-Ḥarah, son of Tāj-ud-Din		193
VI. Malik ul-Ghāzī, Yamin-ud-Daulah wa ud-Din, Bahrām		***
son of Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab VII. Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, son of Malik Yamīn-ud-Dīn, B	Jahrām	194
Shah	amam	196
VIII. Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of Yamin-ud-Din, B	lahrām	190
Shāh		197
IX. Malik Shihāb-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of Harab		198
SECTION XV.		
The Kurdiah Maliks of Sham		203
I. Sultan Nür-ud-Din, Mahmüd-i-Zangi		ib.
II. Malik-uş-Şālih, 'Alī, son of Mahmūd-i-Zangī		205
III. Malik Aiyūb, son of Shādi		207
IV. Malik Asad-ud-Din, son of Shadi, in Mişr		208
V. Sultān Şalāḥ-ud-Din, Yūsuf, son of Aiyūb-al-Kurdi		214
VI. Malik-ul-Afzal, 'Ali, son of Şalāh-ud-Din, Yusuf .		222
VII. Malik-ul-'Aziz, 'Uşman, son of Şalah-ud-Din, Yüsuf	3.5	223
VIII. Malik-ul-'Adil, Abu-Bikr, son of Aiyub al-Kurdi .		224
IX. Malik-ul-Mu'azzam, 'Īsā, son of Abū-Bikr, son of Ai Kurdī	yūb-al-	
X. Malik-ul-Kāmil, son of Abū-Bikr; son of Aiyūb-al-Kurdī		227
XI. Malik-uş-Şālih, son of Al-Kāmil, son of Abu-Bikr, son of		228
al-Kurdi		229
SECTION XVI.		
The Maliks of the Khwarazm-Shahlah Dynasty		231
I. Kuth-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, I-bak, the Turk	1 T	. ib.

CONTENTS.	xxxi
	PAG
II. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Ī-bak	23
III. Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Utsuz, Khwārazm Shāh, son of Tāj-ud-Din,	
Muhammad	23
IV. Malik I-yal-Arsalān, son of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Utsuz	23
V. Sultān Takish, son of I-yal-Arsalān	23
VI. Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of I-yal-Arsalān.	24
VII. Yūnas Khān, son of Takish, Khwārazm Shāh VIII. Malik Khān, son of Takish, Khwārazm Shāh	24 25
IX. 'Alī Shāh, son of Takish, Khwārazm Shāh	25
X. Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Taki <u>sh, Kh</u> wārazm Shāh	i - T
XI. Kutb-ud-Din, Arzalū Shāh, son of Muhammad, son of Takish,	
Khwārazm Shāh . XII. Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī Shānastī, son of Muhammad, Khwā-	
razm <u>Sh</u> āh XIII. Malik <u>Gh</u> iyās ud-Din, Ak Sultān, son of Muhammad, <u>Kh</u> wā-	
razm <u>Sh</u> āh	28
Khwārazm Shāh	28
SECTION XVII.	
The Shansabaniah Sultans, and the Maliks of Ghur	. 30
Account of the First [Ancestors] of the Family, their Genealogy, and	
their Progenitors, up to Zuḥāk, surnamed Tāzī	. 30
Account of Bustam, Malik of Hind and Sind	. 3c
I. Amîr Pûlād [or Fûlād], Ghūrī, Shansabi	. 31
II. Amīr Banjī, son of Nahārān, Shansabī	. il
III. Sūrī, son of Muhammad	. 31
IV. Malik Muḥammad, son of Sūrī	. 32
V. Malik Abū-'Alī, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī VI. Malik 'Abbās, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī	· 32
VII. Amir Muhammad, son of 'Abbas	. 33
VIII. Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Al-Hasan, son of Muhammad, son o	f 33
IX. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Al-Ḥusain, Abū-us-Salāṭin, son of Kutb	•
ud-Din, Al-Ḥasan X. Malik-ul-Jibāl, Ķuṭb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of ['Izz-ud-Din	. 33
Al-Husain	. 33
XI. Sultan Bahā-ud-Din, Sam, son of Tzz-ud-Din, Al-Husain	. 34
XII. Malik Shihab-ud-Din, Muhammad [Kharnak], son of Al- Husain, Malik of Mādin of Ghür	
XIII. Malik Shujā'-ud-Dîn, Abī-'Alī, son of Al-Ḥusain [son of Sām]	
son of Al-Ḥasan, Shansabi . XIV. Sultān 'Alā ud-Din, Al-Ḥusain, son of 'Izz-ud-Din, Al-	
Husain, son of Sam, son of Al-Hasan	. 34
XV. Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, son of Muḥammad, Mādīnī XVI. Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn,	
Al-Husain	. 36
XVII. Sultān-ul-A'gam, Ghiyāş-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abū-l-Fath, Muhammad, son of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, Kasim-i-Amir-ul-	, . 36
Mūminfn	
	H

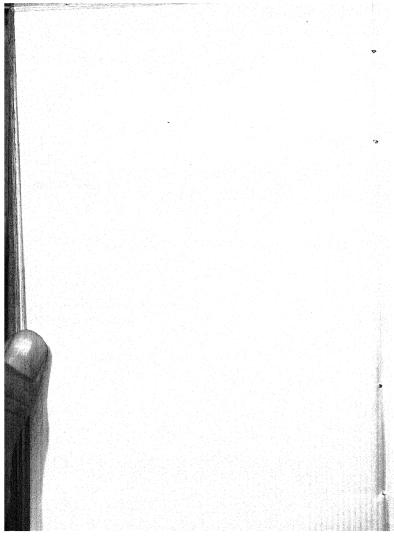
	물문지가 얼마 따른데 그렇게 사람 하다	
хĺ	CONTENTS.	
xvIII.	Malik-ul-Ḥāji, 'Alā-ud-Đīn, Muḥammad, son of Malik Shujā'- ud-Đīn, Abī-'Alī, son of 'Izz-ud-Đīn, Al-Ḥusain, son of Al-	PAGE
XIX	Hasan, Shansabi Sultan Ghiyaş-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of Ghiyaş-ud-Din,	391
	Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, Shausabi Sultān Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, son of Ghiyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyās-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Din,	396
XXI.	Sām, <u>Sh</u> ansabī . Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, son of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Al-	408
XXII.	Husain, Jahān-soz Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abū- 'Alī, the Last of the Sultāus of Ghūr	413
	SECTION XVIII.	
	ansabānī Sultāns of Tukhāristān and Bāmfān Malik Fakhrud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain,	421
	Shansabi Sultān Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Mas'ūd, son of Al-	422
III.	Husain, <u>Sh</u> ansabi Sultān Bahā-nd-Din, Sām, son of Sultān <u>Sh</u> ams-ud-Din,	425
ıv.	Muḥammad . Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Ali, son of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, Bāmiāni .	428 432
	SECTION XIX.	
I.	ltäns of <u>Gh</u> azuîn of the <u>Shansabānīah Dynasty</u> . Sultān Sail·ud-Din, Sūrī, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain Sultān-ul-A'gam, Mu'izz-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Mugañar, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Kasim-i-Amīr-ul-	438 ib.
IV.	Müminin Sulfān 'Alfa-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Din, Muḥam- mad-i-Sām, of Bāmiān Sulfān Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-dūz, al-Mu'izzi, us-Sulfāni Sulfān-ul-Karīm, Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, al-Mu'izzi, us-Sulfāni	446 492 496 506
	SECTION XX.	
I. III. IV. V. VI. VII.	at of the Mu'izzīah Sulṭāns of Hind Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sulṭānī Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sulṭānī Sulṭān Āram Shāh, son of Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak Malik [Sulṭān] Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sulṭānī Malik [Sulṭān] Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tuṭḥril, al-Mu'izzī, us-Sulṭānī Malik-Ud-Ghāzī, Ikḥtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Bakht- yār, Khaljī, in Lakhapawaṭī Malik [Z-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, son of Sherān, Khaljī Malik [Sulṭān] Ḥuṣām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, son of Ḥuṣain, Khaljī	508 512 528 531 544 548 573 576 580
	SECTION XXI.	
	amsī Sultāns of Hind Sultān ul-Mu'azgam, <u>Sh</u> ams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Mugaf- far, I-yal-timi <u>sh,</u> the Sultān	596
	west a los secretifis the patients.	507

				PAGE
11;	Malik-us-Sa'id, Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmud Shāh		Sultan	- 0
717	Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish	0.1	÷ :	628
111.	Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firuz Shah, son of the	Sulfan	[1-yal-	
717	timi <u>sh</u>]			630
17.	Sultān Raziyyat-ud Dunyā wa ud-Din, daughter	oi Suita	in 1-yai-	
	timish	01 -1		637
٧.	Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Bahrān	5nan,	son of	
	Sultān I-yal-timi <u>sh</u>	•		649
V1.	Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāl	, son of	Sultan	
	Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh			660
V11.	Us-Sultān-ul-A'zam ul-Mu'azzam, Nāşir-ud-Du			
	Abū-l-Muzaffar-i-Mahmūd Shāh, son of the	Sultan	[1-yal-	
	timish], Kasim-i-Amir-ul-Müminin	•	*, **	669
Events of	of the First Year: 644 H.			675
,,	Second ,, 645 H.			679
, ,,	Third ,, 646 н			683
,,,	Fourth ,, 647 H.			685
,,,	Fifth ,, 648 H			687
,,,	Sixth ,, 649 H			689
,	Seventh ,, 650 H			692
***	Eighth ,, 651 H.	. 11.14		693
,,,	Ninth ,, 652 H		4	696
,,,	Tenth ,, 653 H			701
,,	Eleventh ,, 654 H			704
,,	Twelfth ,, 655 H			706
,,	Thirteenth ,, 656 H			711
,,	**			712
,,,	Fifteenth ,, 658 H			714
	하다. 그 나를 열차 살 하고 한다고 있다는 그리다			
	SECTION XXII.			
Account	of the Shamsiah Maliks in Hind		41000	719
	Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān			722
	Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabir Khan, Ayaz i-Ha	zār-Marc	lah, ul-	
	Mu'izzī		7.	724
III.	Malik Naşîr-ud-Dîn, Ai-Yitim-ul-Bahā-î			727
	Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Uchchah	1-11	Desil.	729
	Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Yughān-Tat			731
				732
	Malik 'Izz ud-Din, Tughril-i-Tughan Khan .			736
	Malik Kamar-ud-Din, Ki-ran-i-Tamur Khan,		nŤ	742
	Malik Hindu Khān, Mu-ayyid-ud-Din, Mihta			/42
1.2.	Khāzin, us-Sultāni	. I-ALLIDA	, ui-	744
v	Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Karā-Kush Khān-i-A	et-kin		746
	Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Altuniah, of Tabarhin			748
	Malik Badr-ud-Dîn, Sunkar-i-Rûmî			749
	Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Ķīķ-luķ			752
AIV.	Mank laj-uu-Din, omigu-rajay-uk			754
AV.	Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn, Sanjar-i-Kuret <u>Kh</u> ān . Malik Saif-ud-Dîn, Bat <u>Kh</u> ān, Ī-bak-i- <u>Kh</u> iṭā-			756
XVI.	Maik Dail-ud-1918, Dat Man, 1-Dak-1-Knita-			757
XVII.	Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān			759

CONTENTS.

The second of th
XIX. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast . 766
XXIII. Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Din, Sub-i-Kashli Khān, us-Sultāni . 795 XXIV. Malik Saif-ud-Din, Ī-bak-i-Kashli Khān, us-Sultāni . 795
XXIV. Malik Sait-ud-Din, 1-Dak-1-1kagin Zasan, Bahā-ul-Hakk wa ud-Din,
XXIV. Malik Saif-ud-Din, 1-bak-1-ku <u>sini Ishari,</u> XXV. Ul- <u>Khākān ul-Mu'agzam-ul-A'zam,</u> Bahā-ul-Ḥakk wa ud-Dīn,
Ulugh Khān-i-Balban, us-Sultāni 799
SECTION XXIII.
Cut. Tuedale
The Affairs of Islam, and Irruption of the Infidels
First Inroad of the Turks of Karah Khita . 935
History of the events which happened in Islam History of the events which happened in Islam On the rice Ithur by the troops of the
the crossing of the river light of
Chingiz Khān towards Khurāsān . 1001
Account of the passage of the liver Jalaud-Din, Mang-Barni, son Account of the coming of Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mang-Barni, and the
which took place before the fort of Sail-
Account of the events which took place
Rūd of <u>Gh</u> ūr Fall of the fort of <u>Ash</u> iyār of <u>Gh</u> arjistān, and other fortresses . 1071 Fall of the fort of <u>Ash</u> iyār of <u>Gh</u> arjistān, and other fortresses . 1071
Account of the feture to hell
and his departure to hell 1096 II. Tüshî, son of the Chingiz Khān 1104
III. Uktåe, son of the Chingiz Khān Account of the nomination of armies from Turkistān to proceed
into the territory of 'Irāk Account of the despatching of Mughal armies to proceed towards
Ghaznin and Luhāwar
Account of the death of Oktac, son of May God's curse be
IV. Chaghatae, son of the Chingiz Islam 114
V. Kytik, son of Carry
t of a Musalman miracio
er t of Words the Accursed
VI Batil son of Tushi, son of the Chingiz Khai
An astonishing anecdote
Account of the fall of the Mulandania
be God's curse!

	CONTENTS.	xliii
	An account of the misfortune which happened to the Muhtashim,	PAGE
	Shams-ud-Din	1212
VIIT.	Hulākū, son of Tūli, son of the Chingiz Khān	1225
	Account of the fall of the capital of the Khilafat	1228
	Account of the martyrdom of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Musta'-	1220
	sim B'illah—the Almighty reward him!	1252
	Account of the march of Hulākū towards Halab and Shām .	1262
		1202
	Account of the miracle [which happened in behalf] of the Musal- mans of Mayva-farikin .	1270
	Another miracle [wrought in behalf] of the Musalmans	1279
		12/9
	Account of the conversion of Barkā Khān, son of Tūshī Khān,	
	son of the Chingiz Khan, the Mughal	1283
	Anecdote respecting Barkā Khān's zeal in the Musalman faith .	1288
100	First statement	1287
	Second statement	1290
	Conclusion	1293
	Appendix A	Ĩ
	Appendix B	vii
	Appendix C	xiii
	Appendix D	xxiii



ADDITIONAL NOTES AND EMENDATIONS.

THERE is some disadvantage in publishing an extensive History of this kind in parts after each portion is completed, because any extra information obtained during the progress of the work cannot be inserted in its proper place. To remedy this, as much as possible, I have embodied here such further information in the form of Additional Notes and Emendations.

Page 34.—Further research shows that Arg or Ark—ej,—is an error of the copyists for $\overline{U}k$ — ej,—the , having been mistaken for , as suggested in note 8. The word is correctly given in the last Section. See pages 1120, 1124, and note, page 1122, para. 5. It was a celebrated fortress of Sijistān, and was still an important place when Amir Thürt took it.

Page 36.—" Sanjaris," in note 9, taken from Faṣṭḥ-t̄, is an error for Sijizīs or Sigizīs, that is to say Sijistānīs or Sigistānīs. See note 9, page 34. This error is frequently made by oriental authors as well as scribes.

Page 52, note .—All the copies of the text are wrong with respect to this word, and have e for ¿ Uz-kand of Turkistān is meant, not Ūrgānj the capital of Khwārazm. See note 7, page 1097.

Page 68, line 5.—There is no doubt whatever as to the meaning of the text here respecting Sabuk-Tigfin's nickname; and that one man could possibly be nicknamed "black troop," or "black uproar," is very improbable. See note 4, page 852, and Elliot's India, vol. viii., page xii., where, if not "ghaughd," there is, at least, "ghubār-angezi." I have not followed the printed text in this Translation, because it is very incorrect as well defective.

The Turk Amfr-ul-Umarā of Baghdād, who was accidentally killed by some Kurds in 329 ii., bore the name of Buj-kum [\$\frac{\pi}{\pi} \binom{\pi}_{\pi} \binom{\pi}_{\pi}_{\pi} \binom{\pi}_{\pi} \binom{\pi}_{\pi} \binom{\pi}_{\pi}

Page 77, note ², para, *t*.—There is no doubt whatever as to the point of junction of the rivers of Nir and Kirāt at Darūnthah, now a well-known place. The words in the original are ω|μ but the printer has carelessly let

the drop out after the type was set up, and the proof passed for press. I have described the Darah of Nar, as well as Daranthah, in my "Notes on Afghaistan," page 108, and there they will be found. Mr. Dowson appears to have forgotten what is contained in his second vol., page 465. See also vol. i, page 394, which is certainly amusing.

Page 95.—The fortress of Giri here mentioned, I believe, refers to the fortress of Gibar Kot in Bājawr. See "Notes on Afghānistān," page 117.

The word "Tahkri" in para. 5 should be "Tighari."

Page 101.—The singular of the word murghān [[]], which I have rendered "carrier pigeons," "signifies a bird absolutely"], which I have rendered "carrier pigeons," "signifies a bird absolutely"], and not a fotal only, as Mr. Dowson imagined; and as fouls do not carry news, and carrier pigeons are referred to by the same word as is here used in note \$, page 1280, para. 4, I had no hestitation in adopting the rendering I have. Another proof that carrier pigeons were meant is the fact that one day was not sufficient to convey the news from Ghazann to the fortress of Baz-Ghūnd, afterwards known as Kūṣhk-i-Sulṭān, for that was at Firūz-Koh, a distance of about 240 miles as the crow flies, and a very difficult tract of country to traverse.

Pages 104, 105.—There is an error here respecting our author's ancestors, caused by some confusion in most copies of the text, which have "great-grandfather," whereas, from his statements elsewhere, his third ancestor, or great-grandfather is meant. It should stand "great-grandfather" at page 104, and "That princess bore him a son, whom he named Ibrāhīm, and he was the father of the Maulānā, Minhāj-id-Dīn, 'Uṣmān-i-Ibrāhīm, upon whom be the mercy of the Almighty! The Maulānā, Minhāj-ud-Dīn, was the father of the Maulānā, Sarāj-ud-Dīn, "etc., etc.

Mr. Dowson (Ellied's India, vol. viii., p. xi.) is very wroth with me about my criticisms, to one of the errors in which work the above refers, and says he has "noticed them, and examined them seriatin," but this is a mistake, and the "Cradle of Irák," in note 6, page 107, is one of very many tithers to which, very wisely, he has not referred.

Page 107.—The words of the text are not مرگوستير و ساله غزنين Dowson assumed, except in the printed text, in which, two roords have been left out before أوسس and the first, is redundant. The reason why Arsalian assumed the throne in the Garmsir, instead of waiting until he reached Ghaznin, the capital, is elsewhere explained.

Page 112, note ⁵, parn. 2.—There seems to be an error of ten years here. The writer doubtless meant the year of the Rihlat, instead of the Hijrat, which would make a difference of ten years. Our author distinctly states, at page 111, that Bahrām Shāh was succeeded by his son, Khusrau Shāh, in 552 H. See note ⁵, and note ³, page 347.

Page 115.—Our author has made a mistake here, or rather, his copyists for him, of ten years, for, as related at pages 378, 457, and in other places, the campaign against Sultān Shāh in Khurāsān occurred in 587 II. See also

Appendix A., page ii.

Page 122, note 5.—The proper title and names of this Chief are "Amîr 'Imād-ud-Daulah, Dā'ud-i-Jaghar Beg, or Jagharī Beg," son of Mīkā'īl [Faṣiḥ-ī says, son of Tagharī Beg], son of Abū-Sulīmān, son of Saljūk. The

word Mika'il has been left out accidentally after Jaghar Beg.

Page 154, line 6 after poetry.—The word Kabālik, written in the text قبالي is an error for Kaiālik—قالم the a was made a by the copyists. For the details respecting it see page 900, and note 2. Karā-Khiṭā-î in the same paragraph should be Karā-Khiṭāc, the latter word, or Karā-Khiṭā, being the proper name, the substantive, applied to the country, and the former, the adjective, applied to the people, as correctly given a few lines under, and farther on.

Pages 159, 160.—Kizil is the more correct mode of writing this Turkish word, signifying "red," and so it should be read in all cases.

Page 162, note?.—The Nū-sn or Nū-yān, Tājū, is the same leader as is mentioned at page 1237, and is the Tānjū of the Pro-Mughal writers. See note at page 1101, line 10.

Page 164, line 15.—The Nū-in, Aljaktā, here mentioned, is the Aljaktāe, or, more correctly, Iljidāe, Īlchikdāe, or Īlchiktāe, as it is variously written, the desolator of Hirāt. Much about the latter Sultāns of Rūm will be found

in note,7, page 1261.

Page 188.—The campaign against Khitā mentioned here refers to the war with the Gür Khān of Karā-Khitāe, mentioned at pages 261 and 934.

Page 201.—"Arg of Sistān." This refers, as previously mentioned, to Ūk. According to the Pro-Mughal writers, the investment took place in 627 H., but it actually commenced in 625 H., and terminated in 627 H., the place having held out nineteen months. See page 1120.

Page 224 and note 3.—The chroniclers of the Crusades say that "it was proposed that Joan of Sicily, sister of Richard Cœur de Lion, should be given in marriage to Saphaddin," as they write the title, Saif-ud-Din, "and that Jerusalem should be yielded to the parties in this strange alliance." The Princess, however, refused to give her consent, and so the affair came to nothing.

Page 233, line 6.—After Muḥammad there should be an izāfat, namely, "Muḥammad-i-'Usmān," because 'Usmān was his father. See page 1198.

Page 233, line 12, and note .—Suhārī is the same place as is referred to at page 227, and again at page 237, where it is said to be in Turkistān.

Page 235, line 12.—This well-known place is called Guzarwān, and Juzarwān by 'Arabs, and people of 'Arab descent. Its correct name, according to the pronunciation of the people inhabiting it, was Gujzarwān, as mentioned in the note below. See note 2, pages 257 and 258, and pages 376 and 475.

Page 239, note 1.—There is an error here: it should be sixteen, not "eight" years, for, from 551 H., as mentioned in the preceding note ', to

567 H., is a period of sixteen years.

Page 254, line 18.—At page 240 the Khān of Kifchāk is styled Akrān or Ikrān. This was his Turkish name, and Kadr, which is 'Arabic—Kadr Khān—his Musalmān title only. Our author, to avoid confusion, ought to have given both.

Page 257, note ², line 7.—<u>Sh</u>ihāb was his first title, by which some Indian Muḥammadan writers, who knew not the fact of the change, nearly, if not always, incorrectly style him. His elder brother and sovereign assumed a new title on ascending the throne, and a new one was also assigned to <u>Sh</u>ihāb-ud-Dīn, his brother, See page 370.

Page 260, and note 7, para. 5.—Kulij Khān cannot refer to the Gūr Khān, for his Khitā-i name, which is very different, is given at page 928, and Kulij

is again mentioned distinct from the Gür Khan.

Page 263, note '.—The frontiers of Jund are referred to here; and the correct name of the territory referred to in the following para is Saghnāk, as confirmed by other writers.

Page 267.—The Kadr Khān, son of Yūsuf, here mentioned, is the same person as is referred to at page 1097, as son of Ṣafaktān-l-Yamak. It appears, therefore, that, in this instance also, Yūsuf is his Musalmān name, and Ṣafaktān his Turkish name. The Yighur, or Ī-ghūr, here mentioned, and at page 270, is written Ṣaghar at page 960, which see, also note 6 to that page.

Page 267, note 9, to "this very year" should have been added "according to some," for, as given farther on, the first month of 617 II. was the year of

the Sultan's flight. See note 2, para. 2, page 972, and page 274.

Page 268, note 4 line 5.—Takrit is an error of the writer from whose work the extract was taken. It should be Makrit, a well-known tribe; and Knrä-Kuram is an error, often made, for Karä-Kum. These errors have been recified at page 1097.

Page 270, para. 3, line 6 .- "Tingit." The name of this country is written

Tingkut by the Pro-Mughal writers.

Page 270, and note 7.—The Sayyid, Bahā-ud-Dīn, is a totally different person from the Badr-ud-Dīn of Guzddah, and Almad, the Khujandī. The Sayyid was a man of high position and dignity, and is again referred to at page 663, where the subject is more fully detailed.

Page 280, and note 9.—The movements of the Chingiz Khān and his sons are given in greater detail at page 968. Tuli was not sent into Khwānzm, but, when the two eldest sons of the Chingiz Khān began to quarrel at the siege of Gurgānj, or Ūrgānj, its capital, Uktāe, the youngest of the three

there present, was directed to assume the chief command. See note at page 1099, para. 2.

Page 88, note 3, line 5.—Wāmāan or Bāmāan, and Wālfān, mentioned below, are neither of them correct. Our author, in the text above, did not give the name of the place, but he does so farther on. It should be Wālfāṣhtān — والمالية المنظقة المنظقة

The Chingiz Khān, moreover, was not investing Tāc-kān, twenty miles east from Kundus, as mentioned in the fifth line from the bottom in the same note, but Tāl-kān, about three hundred miles west of Kundus, and much the same distance from the Parwān Pass. His main army was encamped at and around the Pughtah-i-Nu'mān, near by. It is a common error for writers to mistake Tāl-kān, which is in Klurkāsān, for Tāl-kān, which is in Tukhāristān; and these errors are contained in the Tārlkh-i-Jahān-Kuṣhāe, and other works consulted by me, which led me to suppose that our author's statement at page 290 might possibly be wrong, but he was perfectly correct, and the others wrong. At page 1016, likewise, our author mentions Wāliṣhtān as the identical place invested by the Mughals which Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn marched to relieve, and there the details will be found.

Page 290, note 4.—Tāl-kān had fallen after a long siege, and before the Chingiz Khān set out in pursuit of the Suiţian. The writers, who mistake that place for Tāe-kān, make the Chingiz Khān move towards Ghaznīn by way of Andar-āb, Bāmīān, and Kābul, thus making the geography suit their statements. He reached Ghaznīn by a much more direct route; and such a place as Bāmīān is not once referred to. See page 1016, and note 4.

Page 318, line 1.—"Aytkin-ābād." From the way in which the first part of this word is written elsewhere, and what is stated at pages 350 and 448, and in note 9, this might be more correctly written Ai-Tigin-ābād, and might refer to Tigin-ābād, about which so much is said, but the site of which, unless old Kandahār stood on it—which I am sometimes inclined to think, because the latter name begins to be mentioned when the other disappears—has been altogether lost.

Page 319, line r.—"Tajīr-Koh." This I believe to be the Nakhjīr of Baihakī, or in some way connected with it.

Page 319, line II.—It was not my MSS. which "enabled" me "to correct" the words "the fifth mountain is Faj Hanidar" in Elliot (see vol. viii., p. xviii.) but the knowledge that faj is a common term for a defile or pass, in the same way that I was aware what rāsīāt meant, and that "the mountains of Kādīdt" was, and is, an impossible translation, whether "worthy of consideration" or not. I was also aware that "Sarha-sang" was not a proper name, as supposed, and rendered in Elliot, which Mr. Dowson wisely passes over in his "seriatim examination," but two very simple, everyday words.

Page 341, note 7.—See note at page 348, last para. Bahrām Shāh is said the view of in 543 H., the year previous to Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, the Ghūrī, but our author distunctly states at page 111 that Bahrām Shāh was succeeded by his son nine years later, namely, in 552 H. The former date may refer to the Rihlat.

Page 370, line 4 from the bottom.—The meaning usually assigned to Sar-J-Jān-dār, as here given, is not correct, but, at page 603, I have mentioned its correct signification. See also pages 410 and 447.

Page 378, line 8.—Kilaf, or Kilif, is probably the town on the Oxus of that name, only, in our maps, it is placed on the farther (north) bank.

Page 379, note 6 .- See page 469, and Appendix A., page ii.

Page 391, note 8.—As subsequently shown, 'Ighrāk was the name of a Turk-mān tribe, and the territory held by those people was sometimes called after them. See pages 1015 and 1043.

Page 392, last line. — The Urgan here mentioned may possibly refer to Urgan of Ghaznin. See my "Notes on Afghanistan," page 85.

Page 427, last para. of note % --- "Rāṣil." The name of this place is also written Aṛṣul--- -- in several histories, the first letter being placed second.
Page 429, line 4, and note 4. -- Rāz is the name of a place near Sabzwār,

but the Imam was probably styled Razi, not as being a native of that place but of Rai, the inhabitants of which are styled Razi.

Page 433.—The Beghū, referred to here, and in note 6, also written Beghūn, with the "n" nasal, is the name by which the Kārlūks or Kārlūghs are also known, an account of whom is given in the notice of the Afrāsiyābī rulers at page 909. In MS, the letters, and water very liable to be mistaken one for the other, as the point of the latter is often omitted.

Page 435, line 13.—The Hazār-Darakhtān here mentioned is not that northeast of Ghaznin, but more to the west, on the way from that city towards

the Bāmiān district. There are several places so called.

Page 477, note *.—I think it probable that all the errors that have been written as to the gates of <u>Ghaznin having been shut against</u> the Sulfan by his most trusted slave, and his successor to the throne of <u>Ghazañ</u>, have arisen from the act and name of the slave, mentioned in the text above, Ayyah, Jūķī (Sabuk-Tighī's Turkish name was Jūķ. See <u>ante</u>), who seized the bridle of the Sulfān's charger, and dragged him out of the fight. The "king of Multān" is no other than the Khokhar Rāe.

Page 482, note, line 18 from bottom.—Amfr Muḥammad, son of Abf 'Alf, was the Sulţān's kinsman, and also son-in-law to the late Sulţān, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din. He was entitled Ziyā-ud-Din before he succeeded to the throne of Fīrtūz-koh after the death of his father-in-law, upon which he was styled Sultān 'Alfa ud-Din.

Page 488, note 1.—"The year 4 of his rule," mentioned in the second para., cannot refer to his rule in Hind, because 589 H. was the year in which Dihlî was made the capital, as mentioned at page 469. Lähor was acquired as early as 582 H., but some say in 583 H.

Page 495, line 9.—It is probable that the name Actkin would be more correctly Ai-Tigin, for both may be written as one word thus—ایکس-and as

ای تکین two

Page 499, note ⁹.—This requires a little explanation. The lower road did not lead by the Darah of Karpain, but the northern or higher routes did; one leading by Kohāţ to Peṣĥāwar, and the other through Bannū. The route by Kābul, and Nangrahār, or Nek-Nihār, or Nek-Anhār, through the Khaibar fai or defile, was rarely used at the period in question. The flourishing province of Karpain, so called after the small Darah of that name, in those days was of considerable extent, and very populous. In after years, at the period of Akbar Bāḍṣhāh's reign, it constituted the Sarkār of Bangash, but its condition had greatly changed for the worse. The "lower road" into Hind was by the Gumul. See "Notes on Afghānistān," etc., previously referred to, Section Second.

Page 503, note 8.—The Jaläl-ud-Din, referred to in line 7, cannot, from the dates, refer to the gallant Sultān of Khwārazm, but to Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Alf, son of Sultān Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, Ghūrī, of Bāmiān. See page 493, and note at

page 527.

Page 513, note ', last line, should be Ī-bak-i-Shil, as repeated in the second line over leaf, or the nickname would not be complete, for Ī-bak, alone, does not convey the meaning ascribed to it, from the simple fact that at least half-a-dozen Ī-baks are mentioned in this work, and the whole of them could not have each had a fractured finger.

Page 525, line 2.—It must not be supposed from our author's mode of narrating events that Malik Kutb-ud-Din set out from Lähor for the presence of Sultan Mahmud, the late Sultan's nephew. It is only his way of relating

events which happened subsequently, before others which happened previously, Malik Kuth-ud-Din had gone to join the late Sultan in the expedition against the Khokhars, as related at page 604, under the reign of I-val-timish, and had not left the Panj-ab. Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, was assassinated on the 3rd of Sha'ban, the eighth month of 602 H., and Malik Kuth-ud-Din. according to our author, assumed sovereignty at Lähor in Zi-Ka'dah, which is the eleventh month. But there is, I think, no doubt that the correct date of his assuming sovereignty was 605 H., as stated at page 308, for it was only in that year that he received his manumission from Sultan Mahmud: and it is very certain that an unmanumitted slave could not assume sovereignty. It is very possible, however, that Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, who had been made Sultan of Ghur on the death of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad, may have sent Kutb-ud-Din the investiture of Hindustan when Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din was assassinated, and before he was himself ousted by his rival. Mahmud. to whom Kuth-ud-Din, as stated at page 308, sent soliciting his manumission. See also note to page 525, para. 2.

Page 529, note '.—It is barely possible that the words Kutb-ud-Din's "brother's son"—بالدر زادت بالدر زادت بالدر تالات المناب ا

Page 531, last line.—This word, like Ai-Tigin, may be, more correctly, Ai-Timur, as no diacritical points are given in the text.

Page 539.—The Khalj, not "Khilj," are by no means "hypothetical," but a well-known tribe, as may be seen from these pages. See Elliot, vol. viii., p. xviii. There was no "army of Khilj," but a contingent from the Khalj tribe served in the army of the Sultān of Khwārazm. A Turk tribe, or part of a tribe, all the males being armed, was a lathkar in itself; and who and what the Khalj were who sought refuge in Sind is explained in the note. That these few formed "all the forces of Khwārizm" is a blunder pure and simple. What the forces of Khwārazm were composed of is mentioned in many places in this work.

Page 551, text, para. 2.—Two or three copies of the Persian text have these additional words at the beginning of the para.: "For one or two years, in this manner, he used," etc.

Page 553, note 5, line 7.—559 H. is a printer's error for 590 H., as the context plainly shows.

Page 562, note, last para., line 4, where "Dinjā-pūr" occurs, is also a mere press error, unobserved by the printer's reader, for Dināj-pūr. It is correctly given in the preceding note 1, pages 558—559, and Dināj-pūr should be read in all places.

Page 567, line 11.—"Nūnīs" is incorrect: it is an error in the text of I for I The Tūnīs are described farther on, page 1157. The Kar-battan of our author may be Shigatze of the latest maps, or where Shigatze now stands; and the great river in which the Musalmān troops perished is, doubtless, the Sānpo. They must have penetrated to within a few marches of Lhāsā. Names of places become changed in the course of six or seven centuries, especially when old dynasties, one after the other, have been overturned, and others have arisen.

Page 581.—See Elliot's India, vol. viii., p. xx. The Editor, Mr. Dowson, does not see the least necessity for my criticism of the incorrect

translation of this sentence in vol. ii. of that work, and says that the words are (in the text) "Nán-i khurish-i safriyána," and that "bread for travelling food" is its literal translation, explained in dictionaries as "travelling provisions," and adds that mine is "a paraphrase, not a translation."

Safar certainly means "journey," "travelling," etc., but "safr" does not. The printed text, which Mr. Dowson says he so implicitly followed, has the words قرصي before the "travelling food." What has become of them in the "literal translation"? The words for the food are not "nán-i-khurish-i safriyana,"—there should be no izāfat after nān—but nān-khurish-i-safarīānah, nān-khurish being a well-known compound word, signifying some dainty or savoury morsel to eat along with bread, such as meat, fish, cheese, pickles, or the like, and is equivalent to the 'Arabic word lead which word, as well as nan-khurish, he will probably find in his dictionary if he refers to it.

Page 582 .- There is no necessity to "venture upon any explanation of the position" of Basan-kot, as suggested by Mr. Dowson, because it is sufficiently well known; but, in Elliot, the proper name has been left out entirely.

Page 583, note 9 .- "To better his means." The next page shows how he bettered them. He came, as others still come from the very same parts, to better his means, and the word in the Translation is correct as rendered. He was an eminent ecclesiastic and good preacher, and was, therefore, invited to deliver "a discourse" before the pious and orthodox Sultan and his Court, as I have translated the sentence, and as any one else would do who knew what he was translating.

Mr. Dowson, however (vol. viii., p. xxi.), "cannot admit Major Raverty's improved rendering of the words," although he is himself "not satisfied with the Munshi's rendering in Elliot 'his name was mentioned at Court," and considers " Having recited a commemorative (speech or ode) he came to Court," would be much better, or, he think, "the author's meaning would have been more clearly rendered [mark the words] by He came to Court and delivered an eulogistic speech."

In other places he can admit "preach," "sermon," and even "discourses," which is the same in signification as "discourse" used by me.

At page 615 of this Translation, our author-himself a good preacher and ecclesiastic of repute-says he was called upon, on first entering Hind, to deliver discourses within the audience tent of Sulfan I-yal-timish when that Sulfan was investing Uchchah. The corresponding place in Elliot is page 326 of vol. ii., but the whole passage has been left out, and so we have no "commemorative speech or ode," nor an "eulogistic speech."

At page 619, our author relates, that, during the time the same Sultan was investing Gwāliyūr, he "was commanded to deliver discourses at the private pavilion of the Sultan;" that "three times in each week discourses were fixed:" that "in Ramazan-the fast month-a discourse used to be delivered daily ;" and that " ninety-five times congregations were convened at the entrance of the Sultan's pavilion." The words of our author here, as elsewhere, I have rendered literally; and the printed Persian text agrees with the MSS. I used. See also page 745.

The corresponding place in Elliot is page 379, and there it is stated that the author "was ordered to preach in turns [sic, but not in the original] at the door of the royal tent;" that "Discourses were appointed to be delivered three times every week;" and winds up with "Ninety-five times religious assemblies were convened at the royal tent."

At page 651, our author says "a discourse was delivered" by him in the

Kaşr, named Safed [White Castle], and the same word is again used two lines under.

The corresponding place in Elliot is page 338, and it is rendered, "there was a sermon in the Palace of the White-roof," and two lines under "sermon" is again used.

At page 656, our author again says, on the news of the Lähor disaster, that—and the rendering is literal—"to the writer of these lines the Sulfān gave command to deliver a discourse, and the people pledged their fealty [anew] to the Sulfān." In a note I say, "Compare Elliot, vol. li., p. 340, for, at that page, the corresponding passage of the text is thus rendered, "The Sulfān assembled the people of the city at the White Palace [there is no White-wor/ here], and the writer of this book received orders to preach and induce the people to support the Sulfān." This too is literal possibly.

Again, at page 845, our author says—and the translation is literal—that he, on the occasion of the invasion of Sind by the Mughal infidels, "by command, delivered an exhortation with the object of stimulating to holy warfare, and the merit of fighting against infidels," etc.

The corresponding place in Elliot is page 379, which is there rendered "the author received orders in the royal tent to compose an ode, to stir up the feelings of the Muhammadans and to excite them to warlike fervour for the defence of their religion and the throne." This is certainly very far from literal, even without the "ode."

Which is the most probable, the delivery of an exhortation, lecture, sermon, or discourse, by an eminent preacher and one of the highest ecclesiastics in the kingdom, on such an occasion, or "the composition of an det"? and would "odes" be delivered three times a week, and "religious assemblies convened" ninety-five times to "compose" or listen to "odes" or "eulogistic speeches"? The very idea of such a thing is absurd.

Now I must mention that in every instance here referred to in which I have used "discourse" or "exhortation," the very same word is used in every copy of the Persian text, the printed text included, and that word is $\mu \Sigma$ and it was ignorance of the correct signification of this simple word, the idiom of the language, and the usages of the Musalmäns, which has given rise to all these blunders, and yet they must not be noticed I

There are several other instances in our author's work of the delivery of discourses, lectures, or exhortations. At page 190 it is stated that his grandfather, an eminent ecclesiastic and preacher, was called upon to deliver a discourse of lecture was "on defiling emissions." Mr. Dowson "cannot admit" my "improved rendering" of the word "discourse" for 35 Does he think "the author's meaning," in this instance, "would have been more clearly rendered" by "He came to Court and delivered a eulogistic speech on defiling emissions." or that he "composed an ode" on the subject?

Because, in the course of my work, I have had to point out such like errors as these—but this last "is a gen of its kind"—Mt. Dowson, in the Preface to vol. viii. of Elliot's India, must call it "hostile criticism;" and has been so foolish as to dig up "the late Lord Strangford," who, to suit certain purposes, had the assurance to write a criticism on my Pushto works, without knowing a single word of the language, except "what he read up for the purposes," in the course of a few days, as I was informed on undoubted authority. I could say much more on this subject, but I will only remark here that the writer's object was not attained, and that I hope he possessed a more practical

knowledge on the other subjects upon which he is said to have written. Better Mr. Dowson had admitted the errors, and eschewed "ghaughd." It seems that a writer must shut his eyes upon, and conceal the most palpable errors in Oriental history and geography for fear of "hurting the susceptibilities of those who made them," and must refrain from correcting them lest he be declared "hostile" and "offensive." But I undertook this "Translation," and have devoted years to it, to correct errors.

Page 587, note 4.—Mr. Dowson is not altogether disingenuous in his "Examination" of my criticisms, and in this one, xxxiii. of his replies, he would make it appear that I objected to his rendering of the words "territories of Lakhanutl," at page 319 of the volume referred to, but what I say is, that there is nothing, even in the printed text, to warrant such a statement as "that Fdj-nagar ever formed part of the Lakhanavaqii territory." They were totally different; one was a Muhammadan state, the other Hindū.

Page 600, note '.—Mr. Dowson appears to have assumed that, because herds or droves of horses are mentioned in the same page with merchants, the latter may be turned into "a dealer." There is nothing in the original to show that the merchants were horse-dealers, but the contrary; and the herds of horses—not "a drove," for the plural form is used—evidently belonged to the Ilbari tribe because the pastures are also mentioned. I contend that the histograjimin —here too the plural form is used—were not necessarily horse-dealers any more than ars-dealers, cond-dealers, or any other dealers. The word histograjim is signifies a merchant, but, in the translation in Elliot, the words, "into the pastures" have been left out.

Mr. Dowson considers this last criticism "a gem of its kind;" and, at the beginning of his "Examination" of my criticisms, says he has noticed and examined them seriatim." He is mistaken: a great many "gems" are passed over unnoticed by him, and not with reference to the Tabakāt-i-Nāṣirī only; for example, at pages 311, 557, 579, 580, 664, 686, 687, 853, 1023, and several other places.

Page 623, and note 8.—For the identification of Banian see my "Notes on Afghanistan," page 281.

Page 633, note 7.—Further research has shown that this Turkish title should be read Tai-shi. See reference to page 732 farther on.

Page 644, note 4, para. 2.—Balkā Khān is referred to at length at page 1283. The name of this monarch is generally written with "r"—Barkā—as our author writes it, but in Turkish words "1" and "r" are often interchangeable. See page 617 and note 5.

Page 645.—The Turkish name of Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dîn is sometimes written Karā-Kagh, and sometimes Karā-Kugh, and Karā-Kūgh, which last two forms are the most correct ones, and signify, literally, "a large black bird," kūgh or kugh signifying a bird in general, but the term Karā-Kūgh is the name by which the Golden Eagle is known in Turkistān. Such names often occur, as for example Karā-Sunkar, a species of black or dark falcon. Karā-Kūsh was also the name of the celebrated engineer from Egypt, who built the citadel of Al-Kāhirah, and had fortified Acre, and took part in its defence when besieged by the Christians in 1189 a.D., which was considered "one of the mighitest events of the middle ages."

Page 677, note 6.—I have previously referred to the identification of Banžan. Instead of "hilly tract west of" read "hilly tract west of the Jhilam," etc. The year 644 refers to the Kihlat, which is equivalent to 654 H. The details will be found at page 1201.

Page 716.—As the Ulugh Khān's son, whose Turkish title was Bughrā Khān, and his Musalmān title Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd—and evidently so named after his father's sovereign and son-in-law—married a daughter of Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, it is very evident that the idle tales about the latter having only one wife must be incorrect. He must have had more than one, or a concubine at least, since the Bughrā Khān could not possibly have married a daughter of his own sister, even though she is the only wife mentioned. As this daughter of the Sulṭān had children by the Bughrā Khān, and a son of hers, Kai-Kubād, succeeded her father, Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Balban, Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, can scarcely be said to have left no offspring or heir, unless she died shortly before her father, but even then an heir survived.

Page 717, note 4, para 8. The Malik of Kābul is an error on the part of the writer from whom this extract was taken, or the scribe who copied it possibly, for the Malik-i-Kāmil, an account of whom is given at page 1274.

Fage 732, and note 2.—The title of Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn is, correctly, Tāi-shī, not Tā-yasa'ī. It is a Turkish title. The scribes appear to have read the three diacritical points of △ as s See Additional Note, page 866, para. 7.

Page 901, note, para. 4.—Gardez is not really in Karmān, but, at the period in question, it was included in the province of Karmān. See "Notes on Afghānista," page 75.

Page 932, note, para. 4.—The word I-lāsh, in the original Δ-¼ is possibly an error for Talāsh, which would be written Δ-¼ the two points above in stread of below making all the difference. I-lāsh and Ilāmish are both plainly written, however, in several works. Talās, also written Talāsh, is the name of a city of Turkistān. There is also a little district so called immediately north of Lower Snwāt.

Page 987, note, para. I, line 6.—"Darah of the Sārīgh-Kol" [—the latter a Tājzīk word—is, literally, Valley of the Yellow Lake, a mistake constantly made. The correct name is "The Lake in, or of, the Sārīgh Kol" [],]—the last a Turkish word—or Yellow Valley.

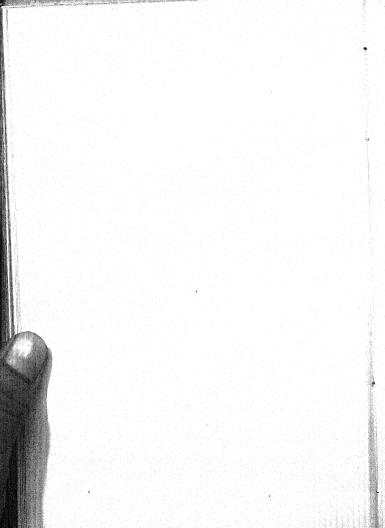
Page 1043, note.1.—The most correct mode of writing this word is Gibari or Gibari, and not "Gabari." The fort referred to near the Indus is known to the Afghāns, and other inhabitants of the locality, as Gari Kapūra'h. See "Notes ou Afghānistān." page 247.

Page 1201, note, para. 5, line 2 from end.—Can the Chingiz Khān here mentioned be the person referred to whose coin is given by Thomas, in his "Pathán Kings of Dehli," page 91? See also pages 711, 784, 792, and 884.

Page 1216, note, para. 3.—Jāng, in Turkī, signifies "cold," and, if the word be read Chāng, it means "dust" in the same language. We have a tract called Karā-Kum, or Black Sand, and another called Karā-Kuram, or Black Shale, etc., and, therefore, a Karā-Jāng, or Black Cold, or a Karā-Chāng, or Black Dust, is not improbable after all.

Page 1220, note, last line.—The great river Kā'ān-Ling here referred to is evidently "the Kyan-lin" of the Chinese, mentioned six paragraphs farther on.

Page 1229, note *.—The "Ibn" prefixed to the word would rather indicate that "the 'Alkami" is the father's name.



ERRATA.

```
Page 9, note 1, for Zū-l-Yamanain read Zū-l-Yamanain in all places.
                               ,, A'yun, also at page 30, line 11.
    10, line 6, ,, A'yan
    ,, ,, 20, ,, Ahwāz
                                ,, Aḥwāz in all cases.
    ", "19, " Trak
                                 " 'Irāk.
                                 ,, Talhah.
    11, ,, 3, ,, Talhah
    12, ,, 12, should be Mawara-un-Nahr in all places where otherwise, not
          Māwar, the last syllable of the word having escaped notice for
          some time. It is correctly written subsequently.
    14, line 17, for Al-Mutasim read Al-Mu'tasim.
    15, ., 3, ,, Zū-l-Hijjah ,, Zū-l-Hijjah always.
    ,, ,, 16, ,, Muhammad-i-Tähir read Muhammad-i-Tähir.
    19, ., 3, , There should be a comma after Sarai.
    21. . 7 from bottom. After Lais should be a semicolon.
    ,, ,, 20, for Lais read Lais,
    22, note 8, ,, Shapūr, and Ya'kub read Shapūr, and Ya'kūb in all cases.
    23, ,, 1, ,, Badghais read Bādghais.
    24, " 3, " Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh read Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh.
                                      " Nakib
    ,, ,, Nakib
   25, line 7, " Muhammad Bashir " Muhammad-i-Bashir, that is son
          of Bashir, which he was.
                                      " Ibrāhīmi.
    " note 2, " Ibrahāmī
                                     , Khaddāt.
    27, line 15, ,, Khāddāt
    29, " 5, " Kāsghar is writen in other places Kāshghar.
            7. . , Iran read I-ran always.
    .. ..
    32, note 5, ,, Hak ,, Hakk.
    33, line 18, ,, Zakriā read Zakariā, also at page 37, note .
    34, note 8, ,, Haft Aklim read Haft Iklim.
    35. ,, 4, ,, Dowati and dowat read Dawati and dawat.
    ,, ,, 5, ,, Ibrāhamī
                                   " Ibrāhimi.
    36, line 9, and page 38, line 16, for Nayab read Na'ib, and in other places.
    38, note 6, for MS.
                                             .. MSS.
    39, line 4, also page 63, for Jibal read the Jibal, and where otherwise.
    40, last line, and note 4, ,, Alb-Tagin read Alb-Tigin, as in other places.
    44, line 2 from bottom ,, Hisam
                                          .. Husām in all cases.
                                          ", Ĩ-lak.
    45, ,, 25, for I-lak
    46. .. 15 .- Abi 'Ali is often written Abu 'Ali, and both are of the same
          meaning, and sometimes Bū is written for Abū.
    ,, note 4, third line from bottom, should be "from Kashghar to Chin,
          not, the Jihun."
   52, lines 3 and 10, and note 8, for Zī-Ka'dah read Zī-Ka'dah.
    " note 8, for Ibrahim
                                                " Ibrāhīm.
    ", ", s, line 13 from bottom, for Abū Ismā'il read Abū Ibrāhim.
   53, last line of text,
                                  ,, Ilyas
                                              ,, Ilyās.
```

Page 58, line 2, the comma after "he" is redundant.

", ", 2 from bottom for "Tabri" read Tabari.

59, ,, 10, for "Mūṣil" read Mauṣil, as correctly written in other places. 61, ,, 18, ,, "diffe-rent" read differ-ent, the printer has incorrectly

divided the word.

64. note 1. para. 2. for Burhan Kati read Burhan-i-Kati' always.

70, ,, 2, for "Ghazi"

72, ,, 6, para. 3, line 2, should be "Amir Mansur, son of Nuh. son of

77, ,, first line after the Persian, for "Tawarikh" read " Tawarikh."

80, ,, 5, line 2, for "Mahmud" read "Mahmud."

" 5, " 2, " "overcome" " "overcame."

81, ,, 4, ,, 4, ,, "different place to" read "different place from."

86, ,, ,, 28, ,, "Al-Zawzani" read "Az-Zawzani" in all places.

87, ,, , para. 1, ,, "'Amid" .. "'Amid."

,, , ,, 2, line 6.-The words "works of" have been left out after "in."

88, ,, 5, for "Jalal-ul-Millat" read "Jamal-ul-Millat,"

,, 6, line 6, for "Mamlüks" read "Mamlüks," and next line, after "contrary to" a comma is required.

89, ,, 8, line 9, for "Iyaz" read "Ayaz," also at page 102, note 4.

90, line 14, "Mawdud" should be "Maudud" in all cases.

97, " 13, for "Suliman" read "Suliman."

101, ,, 23, the date should be 443 H., as in note 9, page 102, not 344 H.

,, 3, and note 7, for Bar-Ghund and Buz-Ghund read Baz-Ghund.

102, ., 10, for Razzi-ud-Din read Razi-ud-Din. 107, note 6, line 5, for Baihaki ,, Baihaki.

109, line 15, there should be a comma after "the Martyr."

" note , last line, for "Taimur" read "Timur."

110, ,, 1, first line. - The year 548 H. is an error for 514 H., as the context shows, and as given immediately under.

112, ,, 1, line 6, for " western " read " eastern," the present Panj-ab is referred to.

113, ,, , line 13, ,, "Badāūni",, "Budā'ūni."

,, , para. 4, line II, for "Seyr" read "Siyar;" and after "others" there should be a comma.

,, first line, for "Sankaran" read "Sankuran;" also on page 115, note 8, as at pages 450 and 498.

117, ,, para. 3, line 2, for "Tughril" read "Taghari."

123, ,, , line 6 from bottom, for "Sāljūks" read Saljūks" as before.

128, ,, , ,, 2, after "p. 142" there should be a full stop. 134, ,, 8, ,, 3, for "Gur Khan" read "the Gur Khan."

,, 9, ,, last, for "early" read "yearly," the letter "y" has been allowed to fall out.

140, ,, 5, line 3 from bottom, for "Khatā-i" read "Khitāc."

145, ,, 4, ,, 4 " "Almūt" " "Alamūt," as at page 363 and other places.

151, ,, 6, line 11 from bottom, for "Ibn-i-Khalkan" read "Ibn Khallikān," as in note, page 1278.

,, 6, last line, for "Mughis" read "Mughis."

152, line 4 of the poetry. - There should be a colon after the word "field," instead of a comma.

- Page 154, line 6 of the poetry.—The note refers to "white steed's," and not to girths, therefore, the figure 9 should be over the former.
 - ", line 2 of text under poetry, for "Khaṭā-i" read "Khiṭāe," and in all other places. Khiṭā or Khiṭāe is the name of the country, and Khiṭā-i is the adjective derived from it.
 - 161, note, line 14 from bottom, for "fifth" read "fourth."
 - 167, ,, 8, line 8, for "Yafa'i" read "Yāfa'i," as in other places.
 - 170, ,, 8, ,, 10 from bottom, for "Shirwan" read "Shirwan."
 - 171, ,, 1, for "Muḥammad, Jahān Pahlawān," read "Jahān Pahlawān, Muḥammad," as in the note above.
 - 172, ,, line 14, for "Buwiah" read "Buwiah."
 - 180, ,, 6, for "Changiz" read "Chingiz," as in other places.
 - 183, line 9, after "himself seen" there should be a comma
 - 185, note, line 5, para. 2, and para. 3, line 4, for "Husain 'Ali' read "Husain-i-Ali," with an iqufit, for Husain was 'Ali's son according to other writers who have bin.
 - 190. line 10 from bottom, after "learning" a comma is required.
 - 199, note 7, last line.—"Kurt." This name is more correctly written "Kurat." See note 8, page 1198.
 - 200, line 6, for "Mangabarni" read "Mang-barni."
 - 202, note 5, ,, "Sufed" ,, "Safed."
 - ", ", ", " walls of his fortress," read "walls of this fortress:" the printer, after revision, let the "t" drop out.
 - 204, line 4, for "Lakhnauti" read "Lakhanawati," also in note 1 of preceding page.
 - 205, note 4, for "Ibn-i-Khalkān," read "Ibn Khallikān," as in note, page 1278.
 - 208, .. 1.—After "Zangi" there should be a comma.
 - 211, line 3.—There should be a comma after "Rūm," and another after "other" in line 10.
 - 217, note, line 5 from bottom .- There should be a comma after "Vertot."
 - 220, ,, *.—After "force" in line 2, after "Jerusalem" and "Nov." in the next line, and after "knights" in the next, there should be commas.
 - 221, ,, 5, line 5, for "different to" read "different from."
 - 222, line II, ,, "Azīz" ,, "Afgal."
 - 225, note 4, next to last line of para. 1, also at page 226, note 6, for "Mia-farkin" read "Miyyā-farikin," as at page 1268, and note 9.
 - 229, ,, 5, last para., line 7, for "Mansūrah" read "Mansūriyah; and "Kaif or Kayif" appears to be meant for "Katif."
 - 235.—There should be no comma between "Abi" and "Muhammad" in lines 16 and 19; and for "Kutlagh" in the latter read "Kutlagh," and in all cases.
 - 242, note 6, para. 1, for "Dajlah" read "Dijlah," as in other places.
 - 246, ,, 7, three lines from the bottom, instead of "that man," the sense requires "that that man," etc., the other that has been left out.
 - 247, ,, , para. 2, line 10 from bottom, after "his brother" a comma is required.
 - 250, ,, 5, line 4, for "Sultan Shah" read "Malik Shah," as above.
 - 252, ,, 3, ,, 3, after "brother" should be a comma.
 - 253, para, 4, line 7, for "Garmsir" read "the Garmsir."

Page 271, note, para. 1, line 2 from bottom, for "Tatar" read "Mughal."

272, fourth line from bottom of text, and next page, line 8, and in first line of note 2, add Khan after Chingiz, for alone, without the Khan, the word Chingiz, which only means "the great," etc., is meaningless.

273, note 5, line 5, the number should be 5000, as at page 970, not 50,000. Karajah and Karachah are often written the one for the other.

276, ,, , line 20, for "Kalāt" read "Kal'āt."

277, line 12, for "Tamishah," read "Timmishiah."

282, note 5, line 10, for "Tatar" read "Mughal," also in note 9, line 3 from bottom, page 283.

, 9, line II from bottom, for "Jirfat" read "Jiraft," as in other places:" the letters have been misplaced.

285, line 2 from bottom, for "Karrman" read "Karman."

286, ,, 2, an izājat is required between Muhammad and 'Alī-Muhammad-i-'Ali-for 'Ali was Muhammad's father's name, as mentioned elsewhere.

3, for "Changiz" read "Chingiz," as before.

287, note I, last line, for "Amin-ul-Mulk," the more correct name is "Yamin-ul-Mulk." See note 2, para. 3, page 1014. He is sometimes called Yamin Malik.

,, 3, see under Emendations.

,, 4, para. 2, line 4 from bottom, there should be a bracket after "Ghūri," thus "Ghūril,"

292, ,, line 5, for "Khurdabih" read "Khurdadbih," as in other places.

295, ,, , para. 1, line 3, para. 2, line 5, for "Hukal" read "Haukal," as correctly rendered in other places.

298, ,, , para. 2, line 2, read "'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kubād," not "son of Kāi-Kubād."

301, ,, 2, last line, not "Saiyid" but "Sayyid," as before.

305, line 4 from bottom, for "Dimawand" read "Damawand."

319, " 11, for "Khaesar" read "Khaesar."

322, note, para, 5, line 7 from bottom, there should be a bracket before "This seems," etc.

332, line 2, for "Razzi" read "Razi," as corectly rendered in other places. 341, note 6, line 8, and note 7, last line, for "'Utba" read "'Utba'."

342, line 7 from bottom, for "Kazil" read "Kizil."

346, note 9, for "Pathora," read "Pithora," as correctly rendered at page 458. The reference, "page 125," is incorrect: it should be 391.

383, line 7, for "Sarāj-ud-Din, son of Minhāj-i-Sarāj," read "Sarāi-ud-Din, son of Minhāj-ud-Din."

405, note 4, line next to last, for " different place to " read " different place from,"

408, line 17, for "Iran" read "I-ran," and for "Malik" in the following line read "Malik,"

413, ,, 13, for "cholic" read "colic."

415, note 5, the reference should be "page 489," not "205."

420, line 12, for "'Arifain" read "'Arifin."

423, note 8, para. 3, for "Nusherwan" read "Nushirwan," or, as it is also written, "Noshirwan."

- Page 426, note 6, line 16, for "Tal-kan" read "Tae-kan," and see note 5, 1008.
 - 435, ,, 4, line last, for "See his reign," read, "See his brother's reign," etc., and see pages 495, 496.
 - 464, ",", next to last line, for "pears" read "spears," and in the following line for "wir" read "awir" the "s" in the first line and the "a" in the latter, were carelessly allowed to fall out, and were not detected by the printer's reader.
 - 470, ,, , para. I, last line, for "Changiz" read "the Chingiz," and for "Ūng" read "the Āwang," as in note at page 940.
 - 484, ,, , para. 4, "posaession" is the printer's devil's mode of spelling "possession," and passed by the printer's reader.
 - 489, last line of text and under, for "Lakhanawati" read always "Lakhanawati" if "n" and "t" are not marked correctly.
 - 491, line 3 from bottom, for "Janābād" read "Junābād." It is also called Gunābād by Tājzīks, and is in the Kuhistān.
 - 496, note 9, line 8, for "i fix" read "first;" line 12, for "mounta" read "mountain;" line 16, for "wi" read "with;" in the next for "o" read "or;" and in the next note, line 1, for "tha" read "that;" and in next line from bottom, for "othe" read "other." The printer has very carelessly allowed six letters to fall out from the ends of as many lines.
 - 499, , , para, 2, line 7, for "Toris" read "Turis."
 - 504, ", ', last line, for "etrms" read "terms." Through some mystery connected with the printer's art, proofs after being read over and corrected time after time, get changed again, and the printer's reader passes them as "read for press."
 - 521, ,, , para. 3, line 10, after Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir there should be a bracket and a comma, not a full stop, for the sentence is unfinished. It should stand thus "Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir]," etc.
 - 530, last line of text, for "Malik" read "Malik."
 - ,; note, line 2, the 'Arabic J! has, through the printer's error, been turned into Y= Y a mistake liable to occur, but the signification is evident from the interpretation.
 - 532, ,, 9, for "Inda-khūd" read "Indda-khūd."
 - 535, ,, , para. 5, line 2, and page 540, note, para. 3, line next to last, for "Changiz" read "Chingiz."
 - 543. ,, sixth line from the bottom. Here again, through carelessness in printing, three letters have been let drop out, and have been unnoticed—"n e" for "on the."
 - 548, ,, 2, line 4, for "wati" and "wāti" read "waṭi" and "wāṭi" with "ṭ," as in the word immediately above.
 - 550, ,, ⁵, line 4, for "Karmah-nasah" read Karam-Nāsah, or Karam-Nāsa.
 - 551, ", 5, next to last line, for "Hizabar" read "Hizabr," as at page 549, line t1 of text.
 - 556, line 9, after "kingdom" there should be a comma.
 - 559, note 2, line 3, for "Nudia" read "Nudia."
 - ", ", 2, para. 2, line 6, the comma after "Lakhanawati" is redundant.
 - 564, ,, ², line 7 from bottom, should be "Chingiz" not "Changiz."
 - 585, ,, 7, ,, 1, and line 5, for "Barinda" read "Barindah."
 - 586, " , , , , , for "Dhakah" read "Dhakah."
 - 594, ,, ,, the reference "page 219," should be 319.

Page 595, note 2, line 5, for "Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz," read "Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-i-'Iwaz," with an izāfat, that is, son of 'Iwaz, for Ghiyās-ud-Din,

'Iwaz, was his father. 3, line 3, for "very different to" read "very different from."

597, 602.

" "Nasīr." " 3, " 2, " "Nāsir" ", , para. 2, line 1, for "D'Ahsson" read "D'Ohsson."

615, last para. of note \$, next to last line, for "page 389" read "page

621, note 6, line 12, for "minārah" read "manārah" as before.

622, ,, , ,, 5 from bottom of last para., for "Afaghinah" read " Afaghinah."

627, line 9, after "Yal-dūz" there should be a comma.

" 15, for "Güjah" and "Küjah" read "Güjāh" and "Küjāh," as at page 750.

637, ,, 11, after "justice" there should be a comma.

642, ,, 12, "Act-kin." See "Additions," reference to page 318.

650, note 1, "line 2, for "and to the office" read "and refers to the

651, ", , para. 2, line 3, for "different statement to" read "different statement from."

662, " 7, line 3, for "'Abbāsis" read "'Abbāsīs."

680, ,, 6, para. 3, line 3, for "Kinnanj" read "Kinnauj."

690, end of note 8, for "page 694" read "page 695."

,, note 1, end of para. I, the printer has again carelessly let the letter

694, " 4, para. 2, line 3, for "Nāyab" read "Nā'ib."

705, " ⁷, " 5, " 3, " "mawās" " "māwās."

706, line 3 under the Twelfth Year, for "Ban" read "Bat. Bat Khan is No. xvi. among the Maliks of Hind.

712, text, last line, for " Balaram" read "Balaram," and also in note 9. three lines from the bottom.

716, note 5, para. 2, line 12, for " Ziyā" read " Ziyā."

720, text, line 11, for "fi ul-'Alamin" read "fi'l-'Alamin."

726, note 4, the printer has put "See the reign under" instead of "See under the reign," and the printer's reader has passed it over,

749, line 15, for "Awwal" read "Awwal." 759, note 5, for "Shart-badar" read "Shart-bardar."

751, ,, 6 from bottom, after "which" there should be a comma.

752, ,, 8, for "ee" read "See." Here also a letter has fallen out.

761, line 11, for "Shāhnagi" read "Shahnagi."

764, " 16, for "Lakhanawati" rzad "Lakhanawati," as in tenth line

775, note, para. 4, line next to last, for "stated above" read "as stated

778, ,, , para. 5, line first, for "as far it goes" read "as far as it goes."

780, ,, 7, for "page 650" read " 660."

784, line 12, "Kurt." See page 1198. 809, note 2, line 5, for "Tukhāristān" read "Khurāsān."

810, ,, 4, ,, 2, "664 H." is an error for "646 H."

820, line 6 from the botttom, "-i-," after Kashli Khan is a printer's blunder: it should be "Kashli-Khan, I-bak-us-Sultani."

```
Page 822, line 10, for "Zi-Ka'-dah" read "Zi-Ka'dah."
  824, ,, 16, and next page, line 9, as before noticed, instead of "Ta-
         yasa'i," the correct title is "Tai-shi." See note, page 866.
       .. 15. after "Kasmandah" there should be a comma.
  867, note, line 13 from bottom, for "Balaban" read "Balban."
  872, ,, para. I, line 8, for "Saklabs" read "Saklābs."
        ,, , ,, 8, ,, next to last, for "different to" read "different
         from."
                               ,, after the words "vowel points,"
  875, ,, , ,, 8, ,,
         the comma is redundant.
  877, ,, para. 3, third line from bottom. "Kafchāk," etc., may be
         also written "Kifchāk" and "Khifchāk," as at pages 254, 796, and
         914: with "i" in the first syllable is, perhaps, the most correct.
        .. . line 2. "Irdish" is also written with "a"-Ardish, as in note
         at page 950, para. 3.
        ,, , para. I, line 5 from bottom, for "Kol or Lake Bae-Kol," read
          "Kol or Lake, the Bäe-Kol," etc.
  892, ,, , para. 6, line 5, for "ocasion" read "occasion."
                                          " "Tānijūt," as at page 938.
  899, ,, , ,, 2, ,, 4, ,, "Tāijiūt"
  900, ,, , ,, 2, ,, 4, ,, "Mughuls" ,, "Mughals."
                                           ,, "Itsuz."
  908, ,, , ,, 2, ,, 7, ,, "Itsiz"
  913, ,, , ,, 3, ,, 5, ,, "TAYA-GHŪ",, "TAYA-GHŪ."
                                           " " Mur-ān."
  920, ,, , last line in page, ,, " Muran "
  936, " 4, para. 2, line 3, " "Timur-chi," " "Tamur-chi."
  956, ,, , ,, 2, ,, 5, ,, "Jabbah" ,, "Jabah."
  957, ", ", 3, ", next to last, for "Ja'fir" read "Ja'far."
  968, text, line 2, after "sovereignty" there should be a comma.
  969, note 9, for "shrab" read "sharab."
  973, ,, , line 27, for "Juji" read " Juji."
  979, line 3, for "jazbī" read "juzbī."
  980, note 7, para. 2, line 2, for "Ghū-Baligh" read "Ghū-Bāligh."
  981, ,, , ,, 4, ,, 3, ,, "Gūzīdah"
                                               " "Guzidah."
                                             " "Gür <u>Kh</u>ān."
  983, ,, , ,, 5, ,, 2, ,, "Gūr Khūn"
  985, ,, , ,, 2, ,, 11, ,, "shujā"
                                         " " shujā'."
        " , " 5, " 2, " Kankuli"
                                               " "Kankulī."
        ,, ,, I, ,, 6 from bottom, after the bracket and before
         " gave him " there should be a comma.
        ,, last, line 3, for "Mughāl" read "Mughal."
        " , para. last, line next to last, for "Jihun" read "Jihun."
        ,, , ,, 2, line 13, for "Baisut" read "Baisūt," as at page 1004.
        ", ", ", 2, ", 14, ", "Tūķājār", "Tūķachār, as in the
         preceding page.
        ", , para. 4, line 3, " "Fushang", "Fushanj."
        " 4, line 3, for "to-vedal" read "to-yedal," part of the "y" has
          been broken in printing.
  1002, ,, 5, line 2, for "was styled" read "was also styled."
        ,, , para. 2, line 1, for "Ibn-Khalkan" read "Ibn Khallikan,"
          as at page 1278.
  1011, ,, , para. 2, line 7 from bottom, for "Tal-kan" read "Tal-kan."
          and the comma after the word is redundant,
  1014, ,, 2, para. 4, line 7, for "Umrā" read "Umarā."
  1015, ,, , ,, 3 ,, 12, ,, "Aghrāk" ,, "Ighrāk," as in other places.
```

Page 1020, note, para. 4, line 9, the full stop after 30,000 men is a printer's error, and is redundant.

1025, ,, para. 4, line I, for "Mamālik" read "Mamālik."

1027, " *, para 2, next to last line, for "Taghachār" read "Taghāchār," also in para. 3, line 3.

1029, note, para. 4, line 2, for "Bahā-ud-Mulk" read "Bahā-ul-Mulk,"

1032, ,, ,, 2, ,, 5, after "Jahān" the comma is redundant.

1046, ,, 3, line 6, for "AL-BIRUNI" read "AL-BIRUNI."

,, "Hirāt" as in other places. 1048, text, last line, ,, "Hirat"

1073, note 4, para. 4, line , for "Turan" read "Turan."

1074, ,, , five lines from bottom of page, for "Shiwstan" read "Shīwistān,"

1095, ,, , line 3, for "Mughāl" read "Mughal" as in line 2 above.

1099, ,, , para. 2, line 17, for "the two" read "the other two." 1116, ,, , , 3, ,, 4, ,, "Itmās" ,, "Ītimās."

1119, text, line 7 from bottom, "Tā-ir" may also be written "Tā'ir" as in note 2, para. 3, next page.

1126, note 6, para. 2, lines 2 and 3, for "Mukānū" and "Mukātū" read "Mūkānū" and "Mūkātū," and also in next two paragraphs.

1132, ,, , para. 2, line 2, before "Humāyûn" there is an empty space for the word "to," which, through carelessness, the printer has allowed to fall out after revise, and a letter in the next to get out of its place.

1135, ,, 3, para. 2, next to last line, for "eve" read "even," a letter has fallen out here too.

1137, ,, para. 4, line 3, for "tumans" read "tomans,"

1161, line 15, after the words "inclined to it" there should be a comma.

1164, ,, 6, for "Chingiz" read "Chingiz," as it has been printed scores of times before.

1166, note, para. 2, line 3, for "Bashghird" read "Bashghird." .

1180, ,, , ,, 1, ,, 4, ,, "Ughūl" ,, "Ūzhūl."

,, , , last, next to last line, for "Zi-Kadah" read "Zi-Ka'dah."

1183, ,, , para. 2, line 2, for "Shiramun" read "Shiramun."

1188, end of note 7, for "hat" read "that," a letter has been allowed to fall out again.

1194, note, para. 2, line 6, for " Jami' " read " Jami" as in fourth line above. 1196, ,, 2, line 1, here again, through carclessness, the "g" of excepting has fallen out unnoticed.

1197, text, line 14, and 1198, line 17, for "Isfirar" read "Isfizar."

", ", ", 15, "Kā-īn" may also be written "Kā in."

1201, ,, ,, I, for "karwans" read "karwans."

,, 3, the "b" in Tabas" should be doubled thus -" Tabbas." 1220, note, second line from bottom, and next page, line 7 of note, for "Taghachar" read "Taghachar,"

1234, ,, 4, line 4, for "'Usmanli" read "'Usmanli."

1239, ,, para. 3, line 7, for "Ilkae, or Ilka, or Ilkan," read "I-valkae, or I-yalkā, or I-yalkān."

1255, ,, , para. 1, last line, for "Ibn 'Umran" read "Ibn 'Amran."

1260, " 6, line 3, for "Ilka" read "I-yalka."

1267, ,, 6, para. 3, line 4, for "Kurdiah" read "Kurdiah."

1276, ,, , ,, 1, ,, 2 from end, for "Umra" read "Umara."

" " , " 3, " 10, for " Kaimiri " read " Kaimiri."

THE present portion of this translation commences with Section VII. of the original.

The first six Sections are meagre, and the first eight pages will contain a rénumé of their contents, which will be given on the completion of the work, with Title-page, and Table of Contents.

SYSTEM OF PRONUNCIATION.

THE system of transliteration adopted in the following pages, is that known as the system of Sir William Jones, which, after some thirty years' experience, the translator conceives to be the easiest, as well as the most natural, and as easy of pronunciation [except, perhaps, the purely 'Arabic gutturals] as the original letters of the 'Arabic alphabet. Some of the new systems proposed are difficult and complicated, and, in the translator's opinion [as far as he can understand them], in many instances entirely incorrect.

The vowels are three short—a, i, u, equivalent to — — and —; and three long—ā, i, u, equivalent to ——— = and —;

All consonants, except the following, are pronounced precisely the same as in English: -----s, as th in thing, or lisped s; ---ch, as ch in church; -h, strongly aspirated, and occurs only in purely 'Arabic words; -kh, as ch in loch, and as German ch; 3-d, pronounced by applying the tip of the tongue inverted to the palate; 3-z, as th in thine, by 'Arabs, dth; "-r, as r uttered by striking the point of the tongue on the palate; ; -iz, as s in pleasure, or soft French ; ش-sh, as sh in shell ; س-s, as ss in dissolve ; س-تر, as dwd; b-t, as t with a slight aspiration; b-z, as English z with slight aspiration; e-', a deep guttural without any audible aspiration, and when initial to a word the ' is placed before its vowel, as in 'Alf, and when not initial, after its preceding vowel, as in Mas'ud and Rafi'; ; -gh, a guttural sound like that produced in gargling, or Northumbrian r, and something similar to gh in ghost; ق-k, another peculiar 'Arabic sound, produced by pressing back the root of the tongue to the throat, and partaking of the sound of & and q; .-h, slightly aspirated; at the end of a word it is often unaspirated. When e occurs at the end of a word preceded by a, the former is almost quiescent. The only diphthongs are ai and au.

From the above system the scholar can at once tell the original letters in the names of persons and places.

TYPOGRAPHICAL ERRORS REQUIRING CORRECTION.

Page 11, note 3, for Talhah, read Talhah.

- ,, 21, for Laig, read Laig.
- ,, 23, for Al-Mawaffik, read Al-Muwafik.
- .. 23, note I, for Badghais, read Badghais.
- ,, 25, note 2, and notes 4 and 5, page 35, for Ibrahami, read Ibrahimi.
- ,, ,, for Tahir, read Tahir in all cases; and for Nizam, read Nizam.
- ,, 36, note 9, for Sanjaris, read Sijizis.
- ,, 40, last line, and note 4, for Tagin, read Tigin.
- " 41, note 5, for Fanākātī, read Fanākatī.
- ,, 58, next to last line, for Tabri, read Tabari.
- , 59, line 10, and in all cases, for Mūşil, read Mauşil.
- ,, 75, line 19, for SULŢĀN-UL-'AZAM, read SULŢĀÑ-UL-'ĀZAM.
- ,, 80, note 2, for overcome, read overcame.
- ,, 86, note, line 28, for Al-Zawzani, read Az-Zawzani, and in all cases.
- ,, 90, line 14, and notes 4 and 5, for Mawdud, read Maudud in all cases.
- ,, 97, line 13, for Süliman, read Suliman.
- " 101, line 23, for 344 H., read 443 H.
- ,, 109, line 15, for the martyr Sultān, &c., read the martyr, Sultān, &c.
- ,, 110, note 1, line 1, for 548 H., read 514 H., and note 5, for 521 H., and 522 H., read 541 H., and 542 H.
- ,, 112, note 5, for year 523 H., read 543 H.
- ,, 113, note, line 11 from bottom, for Seyr, rand Siyar.
- ,, 115, line 1, and line 12, for Muḥammad, Sām, read Muḥammad-i-Sām and in all cases.
- " 137, note 3, for 555 H., read 455 H.
- ,, 140, note 5, for Khatā-ī, read Khitā-ī, and in all cases.
- ,, 145, note 4, line 4 from bottom, for Almüt, read Alamüt.
- ,, 146, line 1, for A'ZAM, read 'ĀZAM.
- ", 167, note 8, line 8, for Yafa'-i, read Yafa-i.
- ,, 172, note 3, paragraph 2, line 15, for up to this time, even, read up to this time even, &c., &c.
- " 176, note 1, line 6, for Iştākhur, read Iştakhur.
- ,, 177, note 6, for 603 н., read 613 н.
- ,, 184, note, line 4 from bottom, for Bamm, read Bam.

THE TABAKĀT-I-NĀŞIRĪ:

INTRODUCTORY,

BEING AN EPITOME OF THE FIRST SIX SECTIONS.

THE following is a brief summary of the contents of the first six Sections of the work as an Introduction to the Seventh with which my translation begins.

SECTION I. Account of Adam, the Patriarchs and Prophets, the ancestors of Muhammad, and the latter's history to the date of his decease.

SECTION II. The four orthodox <u>Kh</u>alifahs, the descendants of 'Ali, and the 'A<u>sh</u>arah-i-Muba<u>sh</u>irah, or Ten Companions or Apostles of Muḥammad.

SECTION III. and IV. The Khalifahs of the house of Ummiyah and 'Abbās, to the downfall of the latter.

SECTION V. The Maliks [Kings] of 'Ajam to the rise of Islām, consisting of five dynastics:—I. The Bāstāniah or Pesh-Dādān. II. The Kai-āniān. III. The Ashkāniān, IV. The Sāsāniān. V. The Akāsirah.

The author, quoting the Tawarikh-i-'Ajam from which he says the Shāh-Nāmah of Firdausi was taken, and the statements of the Fire-Worshippers, and other authentic information, states that, when Kābil slew his brother Hābil, Adam had another son born to him who was named Shis, which signifies "given by God." He was inspired, and became ruler over Adam's descendants. The Persians say this [Shis] was Gaiū-mart, son of Adam; but the Musalmans say that it is Unnush, son of Shis, who is here referred to. In Unnush's time a son of Adam named Nabati, with his children, retired to the mountains of Jarmun, and devoted themselves to religion, and many others joined them. From the death of Adam to this period, according to Abu-l-Ma'shar-i-Munajjim, in the Kanun-i-Mas'udi, was 432 years. After some time elapsed, Nabati and his descendants came down from the mountains and joined the

descendants of Ķābīl, who had taken possession of the hills of Shām, and parts around, and who had increased beyond computation. Iblīs [the Devil] had taught them the worship of fire; and drunkenness, and all sorts of other grievous sins prevailed among them. A thousand years had elapsed since Adam's death, and the rebellious sons of Ķābīl and Nabatī began to act tyrannically. They chose one of their number to rule over them, who was named Sāmīārush; and between them and the other descendants of Adam, who were just persons, hostility and enmity arose.

The sons of Shis, and others of Adam's descendants who acknowledged Shis' authority, assembled, and chose one of the Kārāniān Maliks, who are styled the Bāstāniān Maliks, to defend them from the wickedness of the sons of Kabil and Nabati; and this, the first person among the upright and just kings whom they set up, is styled Ilū-rūs in the Yūnāni language; and the Yūnānis say, that he is the same as he whom the 'Ajamis call by the name of Gaiū-mart. He was entitled Gil-Shah, and was the first king of the Gil-wānīān dynasty, which is also named the Pesh-Dādīān, and Bāstāniān dynasty. When this Ilū-rūs became king. 1024 years had passed from the fall of Adam, and the land of Bābil became the seat of his government, and the just sons of Shis, and other just descendants of Adam obeyed him. When 1162 years had passed away, the countries of 'Arab, 'Ajam, Shām, and Maghrab became settled; and, according to the Kānūn-i-Mas'ūdī, previous to Nūh's flood, eleven kings of the Gil-wanian dynasty had reigned.

FIRST DYNASTY: THE BASTANIAH.

I. GAIŪ-MART, or Gil-Shāh, surnamed Pesh-Dād, or I-rān Shāh. Reigned 30 years. II. HOSHANG, who was born 223 years after Gaiū-mart's death, reigned, according to different accounts, 1400, or 400, or 40 years. III. THA-MŪRAS-I-DĪW-BAND, great grandson of the preceding. Reigned 30 years: some say 1030. IV. JAMSHED, grandson of Hoshang, but Tabarī says brother of Thamūras. Reigned 700 years. V. BĪWAR-ASP, the infidel, who dethroned Jamshed, and was swallowed up in the Flood. For 1000 years after the death of Nūḥ there was no king

on earth, but, after that, one arose of the seed of Ham, son of Nuh, named Zuhāk. VI. Zuhāk, the Tāzī si. e. 'Arab]. He was a great sorcerer, and reigned 1000 years. VII. AFRĪDŪN, entitled Mihr-gān. Ibrāhīm, the Patriarch. Tabari says, lived in his reign, which was 500 years, but Ibrāhīm lived in Zuḥāk's reign, when Nimrūd reigned over Bābil. VIII. I-RAJ, son of Afridun, reigned 40 years. IX. NIMRŪD, THE TYRANT. He was great grandson of Nuh, and the first to assume sovereignty after the Flood. He perished after reigning 400 years. A son of his, Kubt, an idol-worshipper, succeeded, and reigned 100 years. After him, a son of his reigned 80 years, when the sovereignty again passed to the former kings of 'Ajam. X. MANU-CHIHR, son of I-raj. Reigned 120 years, in the both year of which the Patriarch Mūsā appeared. XI. AFRĀSIYĀB, THE TURK, who invaded I-rān and overthrew the dynasty. XII. ZAU, son of Thamasib, son of Manuchihr, who reigned 30 years.

SECOND DYNASTY: THE KAI-ANIAH.

I. KAI-KUBĀD, sixteenth in descent from Manū-chihr. Reigned 100 or 120 years. II. KAI-KĀ-ŪS, his son, reigned 150 years. Mihtar Suliman lived at this period. III. KAI-KHUSRAU, grandson of Kai-Kā-ūs. Died aged 150, but the years of his reign are not given. One of his champions was Rustam. IV. KAI-LUHRĀSIB, THE TYRANT. Reigned 120 years and abdicated. The Prophet Asha'yā [Isaiah] lived at this time, and Bukht-un-Nassar was leader of the forces of Sanjārib, Malik of Bābil. V. GUSHTĀSIB, son of Luhrāsib. Zartusht arose in this reign, Rustam died, Bukht-un-Nassar became Malik of Bābil, and Jerusalem was sacked. Reigned 120 years. VI. BAHMAN, son of Isfandiyār, son of Gushtāsib, surnamed ARDA-SHER-I-DIRAZ-DAST [Artaxerxes Longimanus of the Greeks]. The Bani-Isra'il carried into captivity. Bahman marries an Isrā'ili woman, who bore him a son. The Bani-Isrā'il set free. Reign 22 years. VII. HUMĀ-Ī [also Humāc]. daughter of Bahman. Married by her father and bore him Dārā. She abdicated after reigning 30 years. VIII. DĀRĀ [or DĀRĀB]-I-AKBAR [Great or Elder]. He made captive the king of Rūm, and imposed tribute of 100,000 eggs of

gold, each as large as an ostrich egg. Failakūs, Iskandar's father, was king of Yūnān. Dārā reigned 12 years. IX. Dārā-I-Asghar [Less or Younger]. Iskandar, son of Failakūs, brought all Rūm under subjection. Invaded and subdued Ī-rān. Length of reign not given. X. Is-Kandar, son of Failakūs, who is said to have been the son of Dārā's sister married to Failakūs. Iskandar died in I-rān after 12 years' reign.

THIRD DYNASTY: THE ASHKĀNĪĀN.

I. ASHK [Ushk = Hushkā?], styled ARFA'WĀ, ninth in descent from Dārā-i-Akbar. Ashk reigned 10 years. II. ASHKĀN, his son, reigned 10 years. III. SHĀPŪR, his son, who totally destroyed Jerusalem. In his reign Mihtar 'Isā [Jesus Christ] was born. Shāpūr reigned 60 years. IV. GUDARZ-I-AKBAR, son of Shāpūr. Reigned 10 years. V. GUDARZ-I-ASGHAR, his son, reigned 21 years. VI. NARSI-UL-ASHGHĀNĪ, who reigned 40 years. VII. KISRĀ-UL-ASHGHĀNĪ, son of Narsī. He is styled also, ARDAWĀN-I-AKBAR, and reigned 44 years. VIII. BALĀS-UL-ASHGHĀNĪ, who reigned 24 years. IX. ARDAWĀN-I-ASGHAR, who reigned 13 years.

FOURTH DYNASTY: THE SASANIAN.

I. ARDA-SHER-UL-JAMI' or BABAKAN, son of Babak. son of Sāsān, descended from Kai-Luhrāsib. He rose to power 266 years after Iskandar, some say 270, but the Christians, 550 years after. He reigned 14 [40?] years and 6 months. II. SHAPUR, his son, reigned 30 years. III. HURMUZ [HURMAZ or AORMAZD], who reigned I year and 10 months. IV. BAHRAM, his son, reigned 3 years. V. BAHRĀM, son of Bahrām, who assumed the title of Shah-an-Shah [King of Kings]. He reigned 4 months: Tabarî says, 4 years. VI. NARSĪ, son of the elder Bahrām. succeeded his brother, and reigned o years. VII. HURMUZ, son of Narsi, who reigned 7 years and 5 months. He left one of his wives pregnant, who, after six months, gave birth to Shāpūr. VIII. SHĀPŪR-I-ZŪ-L-AKTĀF, so called because, when at war with the 'Arabs, he had the shoulderblades of all those who fell into his hands removed. He defeated and took prisoner the Kaisar of Rum, Shapur

reigned 72 years. IX. ARDA-SHER, son of Hurmuz, Shāpūr's brother, a great tyrant; and after 4 years he was dethroned. X. SHĀPŪR, son of Shāpūr-i-Zū-l-Aktāf, who was put to death by his troops after reigning 5 years and 2 months. XI. BAHRĀM, son of Shāpūr, styled Kirmān-Shāh before his accession. He was slain by his troops after reigning II years, but Tabari says I5 years. XII. YAZDAJIRD-UL-ASIM [Evil-doer], also styled KAW-KHASH [morose]. Killed, after reigning 21 years, by the kick of a mysterious horse, which suddenly appeared, and as quickly vanished again. XIII. BAHRAM, his son. styled BAHRAM-I-GOR, so called from having, when hunting, discharged an arrow at a lion which was about to tear a wild ass, and pierced both through. He reigned 60 years. XIV. YAZDAJIRD, his son, who reigned 18 years, 4 months, and 18 days. XV. FIRUZ, son of Yazdajird, who reigned 27 years. XVI. BALASH, son of Firuz, reigned 4. years. XVII. KUBĀD, his son, was dethroned by his brother, Jamasib, but recovered the sovereignty again. Reigned 42 years.

FIFTH DYNASTY: THE AKASIRAH.

I. NUSHIRWAN, son of Kubad, famous for his justice and equity. Reigned 47 years, in the 40th year of which the Prophet, Muhammad, was born. II. HURMUZ, his son, reigned II years and 7 months, and was deposed. III. KHUSRAU PARWIZ, son of Hurmuz, was one of the most magnificent monarchs of I-ran, and reigned 38 years, when he was put to death by his son. In the 20th year of his reign, Muhammad began to propagate his religion, and, in the 30th, fled from Makkah to Madinah, which year is called the Hijrah or Flight. IV. SHERWAIAH, son of Khusrau Parwiz, who died of poison 6 months after putting his father to death. V. ARDA-SHER, his son, a mere child, succeeded, who was put to death by his Wazīr, Shahr-ārāe, after he had been I year and 6 months on the throne. VI. SHAHR-ĀRĀE [or Shahr-yār] usurped the throne, but was assassinated after I month. VII. TURAN-DUKHT. daughter of Khusrau Parwiz, was raised to the throne. She sent back to Rum the Cross, which her father had

carried away. She died after reigning I year and 6 months. VIII. ĀRZŪMAND-DUKHT, another daughter of Khusrau Parwīz, succeeded, but was cruelly murdered after reigning 6 months. IX. KISRĀ, son of MIHR-JAISH, a descendant of Arda-Sher, Bābakān, was then set up, but was soon after dethroned and put to death. X. JUNAID, a descendant of NUSHIRWĀNS, was then raised to the throne, but immediately after dethroned. XI. FARRUKH-ZĀD, son of Khusrau Parwīz, who was deposed and put to death after 6 months' reign. XII. YAZDAJIRD-I-SHAHR-YĀR, son of Khusrau Parwīz, who, after a nominal reign of 20 years, was assassinated by a peasant of Marw, in the 21st year of the Hijrah [A.D. 642]. In his reign the Musalmāns overthrew the I-rānī empire, and with Yazdajird the dynasty terminated.

SECTION VI.

THE TUBBA-YAWA', AND MALIKS OF YAMAN.

The author states that he copies the account of the kings contained in this Section from the Tārīkh-i-Mukaddasi,

and from Tabari.

After Kahtan, son of 'Abir, son of Shālikh, son of Arfakhshad, son of Sām, son of Nūḥ, came into Yaman, Yrab, his son, became king; and he was the first who used the 'Arabic language. Fifteen kings are said to have reigned for a great number of years, up to the time of Hāriṣ-ur-Rāyish, who is the first of the Tubbā-yawa' dynasty.

I. HARIS-UR-RAYISH. He was contemporary with Manu-chihr, sovereign of 'Ajam, and was subject to him,

He reigned 120 years.

II. ĀBRAHAH-I-ZŪ-L-MANĀR, son of Ḥāris. He was subject to Manū-chihr, and reigned 180 years.

III. AFRIĶĪS, son of Abrahah. He also was subject

to Manu-chihr, and reigned 164 years.

IV. MUNDAZ, styled ZU-L-ADGHĀR, son of Abrahah. He was subject to Manū-chihr, and reigned 25 years.

V. HAILAD, son of Sarakhil, grandson of Hāris. He was cousin of Mundaz, and son of Balkis [Queen of Sabā], but

by some he is said to have espoused the daughter of the king of the Jinn, and that Balkis was their daughter.

VI. BALKIS, daughter of Hailad, became sovereign of

Yaman and Maghrab. She reigned 40 years.

VII. Un-NāSHIR-UN-NA'AM, son of 'Umaro, son of Sara-

khil. He reigned 75 years.

VIII. SHAMAR, son of Afrikis, son of Abrahah, styled Ra'ash—the Palsied. He was a great king, contemporary with Gushtasib and Bahman. He reigned 137 years.

IX. AKRAN, son of Shamar. He reigned 53 years. X. Tubba', son of Akran, or Tubba'-i-Akbar. He

reigned 160 years.

XI. MALKĪRAB, son of Tubba'. He reigned 35 years.

XII. TUBBA'-UL-AUSAT [the Medium]. He was put to death by his soldiery after reigning 160 years.

XIII. ḤASSĀN, son of Tubba, surnamed Zū-Ḥassān. He was put to death by his brother 'Umaro after a reign of

5 years.

XIV. 'UMARO, son of Tubba'. He reigned 23 years. XV. 'ABD-UL-KULAL, son of Marsad. In his reign 'ISA [Jesus Christ] lived, and 'Abd-ul-Kulāl believed in him. He reigned 74 years.

XVI. TUBBA'-UL-ASGHAR [the Younger], son of Hassan. He made great slaughter among the Bani-Isra'il of Madinah on account of their crimes, and slew fifty of their

Mihtars. He reigned 78 years.

XVII. MARSAD, son of 'Abd-ul-Kulāl. He reigned 41 years; and, after him, the dominions of Himyar and the Tubbā-yawa' became restricted to Yaman.

XVIII. WALTA'AB, son of Marsad. He reigned 37

XIX. ḤASSĀN, son of Ḥassān. He reigned justly for $\dot{X}X$. Z \ddot{U} -SHANĀTAR. He did not belong to the family 70 years.

of the Tubba-yawa'. How long he reigned is unknown. XXI. Zu-l-Nawāsh, son of Hassān, son of Hassān. Tabari calls him Zar'ab. With him the Tubba-yawa' dynasty ended, which from the time of Hāris up to this

period lasted 1360 years. XXII. ABRAHAH-UL-ASHRAM [The Scarred in the Lip],

¹ Tabari calls him Zu-l-Nawas. He was a Jew.

Ṣāḥib-ul-Fil, son of Ḥasan-uṣ-Ṣabbāḥ. He endeavoured to destroy the ka'bah of Makkah, but perished with his whole army. The period of his reign and the reigns of his two sons, Yagsūm [Bagsūm] and Masrūk, when this Ḥabashah dynasty terminated, was 73 years, and in the last year the Prophet, Muḥammad, was born.

XXIII. YAGSUM, son of Abrahah, who reigned 4 years. XXIV. MASRUK, son of Abrahah. He was dethroned by Saif, the son of his mother by an 'Arab husband, aided by some criminals set at liberty for the purpose by command of Nüshírwän, to whom Saif had complained.

XXV. SAIF, son of $Z^{\hat{i}}$ -Yazan. He reigned a considerable time, and was subsequently slain by a Habashi left

behind, who had entered his service.

XXVI. HARIZ [or DAHRIZ], the 'Ajami, who had accompanied Saif, son of Zi-Yazan, from 'Ajam, by command of

Nūshīrwān, became ruler. He reigned 4 years.

XXVII. THE MARZABĀN, son of Hariz [or Dahriz], the 'Ajamī. He succeeded his father by Nūshīrwān's command, and reigned over Yaman a long time. At his death his son, Sajān [Abū-Shajān?], succeeded, and, at his death, Khur-Khusrau became king of Yaman. The reign of Nūshīrwān had terminated, and Hurmuz had succeeded; and Khur-Khusrau, having rebelled, was removed.

XXVIII. BĀZĀN, the Muslim Malik. He became king and ruled over Yaman up to the rise of Muhammad, the Prophet. He embraced the new faith, and Yaman passed

under the rule of the Musalmans.



THE TABAKĀT-I-NĀŞIRĪ.

SECTION VII.

THE DYNASTY OF THE ŢĂHIRĪ MUḤAMMADAN MALIKS IN 'AJAM.

MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ, JŪRJĀNĪ, the humblest of the servants of the Almighty's Court, gives, in the following pages, an account of the Tāhiri Maliks [kings], whose descent, in some histories, is traced to Manuchihr Al-Malik, sovereign of 'Ajam; and, according to which, the first of them who rose to power, was Tahir i, son of Al-Husain, son of Mus-'ab, son of Zarnik, son of As'ad, son of Badan, son of Mae Khusrau, son of Bahrām. Māe Khusrau was the first who embraced the faith of Islam, having been converted by 'Ali-May God reward him !- and received the name of As'ad. This Bahram was son of Razan Murit, son of Rustam, son of As-Saddid, son of Dostān, son of Barsān, son of Jurak, son of Gusht-asp, son of Ashrat, son of Isham, son of Türak, son of Anshar, son of Shaid-asp, son of Azar-sab, son of Tūḥ, son of Rū-shed, son of Manūchihr Al-Malik.

The Tāhirī Maliks were remarkable for their virtues and equity; and they first rose to power in Khurāsān, in the time of the Amīr-ul-Mūminīn [Commander of the Faithful], Māmūn, and in the following manner. Between the Khalīfah, Muḥammad Amīn, who was at

¹ The Tārikh-i-Vāfa'i, which is a rare and most valuable work, and highly esteemed by the early chroniclers, gives a different account. According to it the following is the genealogy of the family:—"Abū-Taiybi-Tālahīr, called Zū-l-Vamanain, son of Klusaik (giving the vowel points), son of Māhān-i-Khazā'i, son of As'ad, son of Rādwiah; and, according to another tradition, As'ad, son of Rādān; and, according to another, Mus'ab, son of Talhah. Tālahīr's ancestor, Ruzaik, was a servant of Talhah-i-Tālahāt, who was renowned for his generosity and beneficence."

Baghdād, and his brother Māmūn, who was in Khurāsān, ill-feeling arose. Upon this, Amīn despatched 'Alī 'Isā-i-Māhān' from Baghdād into Khurāsān to reduce Māmūn to obedience; and, in one of the months of the year 195 of the Hijrah, he reached Hamadān with a warlike army. Māmūn appointed Harṣamah', son of A'yan, to the command of a force to oppose 'Alī 'Isā; and Ṭāhir, son of Husain, was nominated to command the van of Harṣamah's army.

By the advice of Fazl *, son of Sahl, who was Māmūn's Wazir, Māmūn bestowed a standard upon Tāhir, saying unto him at the same time, that he had bent for him a standard which for thirty years should lead to victory; and so it turned out, for the sway of the Tāhiris lasted for upwards of thirty odd years *. Within two leagues of Rai, with 14 or 15,000 horse *, he encountered 'Alī, son of 'Isā, son of Māhān, who had brought 50,000 horse with him, defeated, and slew him *, and sent his head to Māmūn. He then subdued the whole of the mountain tracts of Irāk, and took Wāsit and Ahwāz, and appeared before the gates of Baghdād.

After carrying on hostilities for the space of a year, Tāhir captured Muḥammad Amin, put him to death and despatched his head to Māmūn, his brother,

- 2 His right name is Abū Vahyā-i-'Alī, son of 'Īsā, son of Māhān. His two sons were also sent to serve under him ; and his army amounted to 50,000 men.
- ³ Tabari says Tahir was alone appointed, but, subsequently, when he asked for reinforcements, on marching from the Hulwan Pass to Baghdad, then Harsamah was sent with another army.

Other chroniclers of undoubted authority state that 'Alī, son of Abī Khālid,

was the minister in question.

- Most writers give a greater number of years than this. Their dynasty is said to have continued nearly fifty-four years. One of the poets has brought together the names of the Tähiriän rulers in these two couplets:—
 - "In Khuräsän, of the race of Muş'ab Shāh, Were Ţāhir, and Ţalhah, and 'Abd-ullah: Then a second Ţāhir, and a Muḥammad, who, Gave up unto Ya'Ķūb, the throne and crown."

6 Tabari says 20,000 men.

7 'Alf, son of 'Isa, was slain, it is said, by Da'ūd-i-Siyāh, or the Black. Most writers state that Tāhir himself slew him.

The author of the Mujmal-i-Faşih-î states, that a slave of Thhir's, Firdaus by name, slew Muhammad Amin on the 5th of Muharram, 198 H. The author of the Tarikh-i-Yāfa'î gives the 6th of Safar as the date.

together with his mantle, his rod of office, and his seal, by the hand of his uncle's son, Muhammad, son of Al-Hasan, son of Mus'ab. This event happened, and this victory was gained, on the 25th of the month Muharram, in the year 198 H.

I. TAHIR-I-ZÜ-L-YAMANAIN 9.

Ibn Haisam, the chronicler, and author of the work entitled "Kasas-i-Sāni," whose patronymic appellation was Abū-l-Hasan, and his name Haisam, son of Muhammad, Al-Bāķī [Nābi ?] states, that, when the Commander of the Faithful, Māmūn, removed Ghassān 1, son of 'Ubbād, from the government of Khurāsān, he conferred it, together with the government of 'Ajam, upon Amir Tāhir; and that As'ad, the grandfather of Tahir, before his conversion to the Muhammadan religion, bore the name of Farrukh. He was converted to the faith by Talhah 3, who gave him the name of As'ad: and he had a son whom he named Muş'ab; and he, Muş'ab, became resident at Fūshani 4.

When the claims of the family of 'Abbas to the Khilafat were put forward, this same Mus'ab became one of the principal men and partisan leaders of that dynasty. Mus'ab had a son, Husain by name, which Husain, for a considerable time, administered the affairs of Füshani, and was its Wālī [governor] ; and Tāhir [Zū-l-Yamanain] was his son; and these successes, which have been mentioned, were gained by this same Tāhir.

When Māmūn came to Baghdad, to assume the Khilafat,

1 Only one copy of the different MSS. collated contains this name correctly. means ancestor also. According to the genealogical tree previously given, Tähir was third in descent from As'ad.

Tälhah, son of 'Abd-ullah, one of the Prophet's companions.

4 According to the Tarikh-i-Yafa'i, above quoted, the grandfather of Tahir held the government of Füshanj and Hirat. Füshanj or Büshanj (it is written both ways) "is the name of a city of Khurasan near Hirat."

5 As considerable difference exists in some of these terms, I have thought it best to add, occasionally, the signification which the author means to convey.

⁹ Of the two right hands. Tāhir had also lost an eye, which our author does not seem to have known. The reasons why he obtained the name of Zu-l-Yamanain are differently related. One is, that, when engaged in battle against 'Ali, son of 'Isa, he struck another antagonist with his left hand, with the other sword he carried, with such force as to cleave him in twain. The other, that, when about to give his hand in token of allegiance to the Imam Rizā, at Māmūn's command, he gave the left. Rizā asked the reason. Tāhir replied, "I swore fealty to Māmūn with my right hand." Rizā replied "Your left will do just the same."

he despatched Tāhir to Rakk'ah , to carry on hostilities against Nasr-i-Shis 7. Subsequently to this he came into Khurāsān; and, in 207 H.3, he died, having nominated his

son Talhah, son of Tahir, his Khalifah or successor.

The chronicler relates, that on the Friday he read the Khutbah', and either forgot to mention the name of Māmūn, or omitted it purposely. After he had returned to his residence at night, and had retired to rest, at daybreak of Saturday morning he was found in his bed asleep in death; and it was never known how 1, or from what, his death originated2.

II. ŢALḤAH, SON OF ŢĀHIR-I-ZŪ-L-VAMANAIN.

When the Khalifah, Māmūn, became aware of the death of Tahir, he sent letters patent to Talhah, confirming him in the government of Khurāsān, together with a robe of honour. He held the government until 213 H.4; and, when the end of his life drew near, he bequeathed the government of Khurāsān to Muḥammad, son of Al-Ḥasan, son of Mus'ab, At-Tahiri, who was Talhah's paternal uncle, and soon after died.

During his [Talhah's] lifetime, the Khāriji or heretic, Hamzah, broke out into rebellion in Sijistan , and Talhah

6 In two MSS. written Rakah, which is not correct. Tahir's father, Husain, son of Muş'ab, son of Ruzaik, died at Hirat of Khurasan in 199 H. At this time Tahir was at Rakk'ah, and the Khalifah, Māmun, was present at his funeral, and prayed over him, and the Wazir Fazi, son of Sahi, placed the body in the grave.

7 Abu Nasr-i-Shis, son of Rabi i (ريعر) the Khāriji, or Schismatic.

8 He died at Marw, according to Yafa'i, 23rd of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir, 207 H., or, according to the computation of the Musalmans, the night being reckoned

before the day, on the night of the 24th.

As the word Khutbah will occur frequently in these pages, it will be well to explain, that it is an oration delivered after the service on the Muhammadan Sabbath, in which the deliverer of it—the ruler or governor of the province properly-blesses Muhammad, his successors, and the reigning Khalifah or the Sovereign. In ancient times, the Khalifah, or his heir apparent, pronounced it, at the capital, in the principal Mosque.

1 He is said to have been poisoned. The account is to be found in detail in

several histories.

2 His death took place in the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal.

3 The Mujmal-i-Faṣiḥ-ī states, that, in 210 H., the Khalifah, Māmūn, despatched 'Abd-ullah, son of Tahir, to the assistance of his brother Talbah, that, in concert, they might proceed into Mawar-un-Nahr to carry on hostilities against Rāfi', son of Hāsham. Also called Nim-roz.

4 He died at the end of 212 H.

carried on hostilities against him for a considerable period; and what he did in <u>Kh</u>urāsān, during the <u>Kh</u>ilāfat of Māmūn, was the cause of his name being remembered with gratitude in that country, where numerous proofs of his goodness remained.

III. 'ABD-ULLAH, SON OF TAHIR.

On the decease of Talhah, the Commander of the Faithful, Māmūn, summoned to his presence Abdullah. the son of Tāhir, who had become Amir [governor] of Mişr 6. 'Abd-ullah had been brought up at the Court of the Khilafat, and under the patronage, and under the eye, of the Khalifah himself, and had become greatly accomplished. In his seventeenth year, Māmūn had entrusted him with the command of his forces; and he had so conducted himself, that, in his twentyseventh year7, 'Abd-ullah had become renowned among men for his manliness, his vigour, his intrepidity, and his virtues and talents. At this period the Khalifah appointed him to the government of Khurāsān, and directed that 'Ali's, son of Tāhir, brother of 'Abd-ullah, should act as his brother's Khalifah, or Lieutenant, in the command of the troops of the Dar-ul-Khilafat [the capital], in repressing the seditious and rebellious, and in the extermination of heretic Khārijis, and, likewise, in carrying out the affairs of state, and all such other duties as appertained unto 'Abdullah to perform and attend to.

At the time the Khalîfah's mandate to proceed into Khurāsān and assume the government reached him, 'Abdullah' was at 'Dînawr engaged in suppressing Bābak-i-Khurramī. When he reached Nishāpūr, rain, which had not fallen for a considerable time, began to descend and

⁶ Any large city: Egypt, and its capital.
7 Some copies of the original mention "his twentieth year," but I prefer the other reading.

Other writers state, that 'Alf succeeded his father in the government of Khurasan, and that he was killed in battle fighting against the Khārijis, in the vicinity of Nishāpūr; and, that 'Abd-ullah was at Abfward when he received the intelligence of his brother's death.

⁹ Tabart makes no mention of 'Abd-ullah, son of Tähir, as having been employed against Bäbak, but says that Is-häk, son of Ibrähim, son of Mu'şab—who would be thus cousin of 'Abd-ullah's father—was. That author states, that 'Abd-ullah seized Bābak's brother in Khurāšān, and, that he sent that heretic to Is-häk, at Baghdād, to be dealt with as Bābak had already been.

to refresh the parched ground on the very same day, and the people took it as a good omen. He founded palaces for himself, and his followers and dependents, at $\underline{Sh}\bar{a}dy\bar{a}kh^1$ of $Ni\underline{sh}\bar{a}p\bar{u}r$. He suppressed the $\underline{Kh}\bar{a}rijis$, and punished them with severity; and ruled with the utmost equity and justice, and introduced many good and wise regulations.

He was also a great patron of learning, and to such a degree, that he requested the Imām 'Abd-ul-Kāsim', son of Sallām, to write a commentary for him on the work entitled "Gharib-ul-Ḥadiṣ," and, in recompense for so doing, sent him a present of 100,000 silver dirams, and a

valuable dress of honour.

The Lord of the Faithful, Al-Māmūn, had entrusted 'Abd-ullah with the government of the whole of the territory of 'Ajam'; and, when that Khalifah died, his successor, Al-Mutaşim B'illah, confirmed him, as his father had done before, in the government of the whole of the territory of 'Ajam, which 'Abd-ullah retained until the year 230 H., in the reign of Al-Wāṣik B'illah, when he died. He had exercised sovereignty over the territories of 'Ajam for a period of seventeen years; and, when he died, he had attained the age of forty-eight, the same age as his father. When his death drew near, he nominated his son Ţāhir as his successor over Khurāsān'.

IV. TÄHIR, SON OF 'ABD-ULLAH.

When the account of the decease of 'Abd-ullah reached the \underline{Kh} alîfah, Al-Wāṣilk, he despatched, from the Dār-ul- \underline{Kh} ilāfat of Baghdād, letters patent and a standard, confirming him as his father's successor.

His brothers 5 solicited from Tahir the grant of the pro-

b In all the copies of the original the word brothers is used, but only one brother is mentioned afterwards.

¹ In the Persian translation of the Arabic work entitled Aşār-ul-Bilād, by Muḥammad Murād, son of 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān, Shād-yākh is described as "a city of Khurāsān near unto Nighāpūr;" but it appears to have been a fortified suburb, where the royal palace, arsenal, and gardens were situated. The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar states that the capital of the Tāḥirīs was called Kar-shākh 1

² Some copies have Abū-i-Kāsim. S'Ajam—countries not Arabian: Persia. A'Nabd-ullah, son of Tähir; had a son called 'Abd-ullah, who was born 223 H.; and another son, Muḥammad, who was his father's deputy at Baghdād, died in 226 H.

vince of <u>Kh</u>urāsān, and its government; and he bestowed on his brother, Amir Mus'ab, the government of Ni<u>sh</u>āpūr. The <u>Kh</u>alifah, Al-Wāṣik, died in the month Zū-l-Ḥijjah, 232 H., and Al-Mutawakkil assumed the Khilāfat.

He confirmed Tāhir in the government of 'Ajam. After a period of fourteen years and nine months, at which time the Khalifah, Al-Mutawakkil, was martyred' by the

Turks, he was succeeded by Al-Mustansir.

Six months subsequently to that event, in the year 248 H.*, Al-Musta'în succeeded him. He sent letters patent and a standard, and confirmed Tāhir, son of 'Abdullah, in his government, as before; and, in that same year, Amîr Tāhir died, having previously nominated his son Muḥammad as his successor over Khurāsān *.

V. MUHAMMAD, SON OF TÄHIR.

Amir Muḥammad-i-Tahir¹ was endowed with good breeding, the gift of poetry, and many other accomplishments; but was greatly addicted to pleasure and amusement.

He had entrusted the government of Tabaristān to his uncle Sulīmān, son of 'Abd-ullah-i-Tāhir; but, in 251 H., Amīr Ḥasan, son of Zaid-ul-'Alawi, broke out into rebellion in that country. He was a Sayyid, and a well-bred and learned person, and a poet. He subdued the territories of Dīlam, and Gīlān, which were in the possession of infidels; and the people of those parts were converted to the Muḥammadan faith by him. From thence he entered Ṭabaristān with a large army; and Sulīmān, son of 'Abd-ullah-i-Ṭāhir, uncle of Amīr Muḥammad, was defeated by him, and retreated

7 Middle of the month of Shawwal, 247 H.

9 Succession to the government of Khurāsān seems to have been considered hereditary, but to that of 'Ajam, at the pleasure of the Khalifah.

⁶ In 231 H., Ḥasan, son of Al-Ḥusain, brother of Ṭāhiri-Zū-l-Yumanain, died in Ṭabaristān; and, in 235 H. Is-ḥāk, son of Ibrāhim, son of Zū-l-Yamanain's brother, Ḥasan, died at Baghdād. He had held the Shart, or district of Baphdād, under three Khalifahs.

B According to our author, in his account of the Khalifahs, on the 4th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 248 H.

¹ His name is given differently by Hamd-ullah-i-Mustaufi in his history. He styles him Muhammad, son of Ahmad, son of Tähir, son of 'Alid-ullah, son of Tähir-i-Zu-l-Yamanain. In the Mujmal-i-Paṣiḥ-i he is called Muhammad, son of Tähir-i-Zu-l-Yamanain.

to Rai2, and subsequently retired to Baghdad. On his arrival at the latter place, he was made Ka'id [governor]

of the district of Baghdad.

At this period, Ya'kūb, son of Lais, had risen in rebellion in Sistān, and had subdued some portion of Jarūma, and of Zāwulistān, and had acquired considerable power in Khurāsān. In 259 H., Ya'kūb determined to attack Amir Muhammad. The reason of this was, that his enemies, Ahmad and Fazl, the brothers of 'Abd-ullah-i-Ṣāliḥ, Sijizi, had fled from the territory of Nim-roz, and had sought the protection of Muhammad, son of Tāhir. Ya'kūb continued repeatedly to demand them at the hands of Amir Muhammad-i-Tāhir, but he had always refused to give them up. On this Ya'kūb determined to march against Nishāpūr'; and, when he had arrived within a short distance of it, Ahmad and Fazl came to the entrance of the palace, where Amir Muhammad was at the time, to acquaint him with the news of Ya'kūb's approach. The Hājib [chamberlain] of the Amir told them that his master was asleep, and that he had no leisure to receive them. They observed to each other that it was necessary that some one should awaken the Amir; and, thus saying, they retired and went to their brother 'Abd-ullah-i-Sālih, Sijizi, and told him what had occurred. He was well aware that Amir Muhammad was entirely sunk in carelessness, and that his dynasty was near its fall; so he retired to Rai, and sent his brothers, Ahmad and Fazl, to the Wali [governor] of Rai, but went himself into Tabaristan to Amir Hasan, son of Zaid-ul-'Alawi.

When Ya'kūb, son of Lais, reached a place called Farhadgurd⁵, a short distance from Nishāpūr, Amir Muḥammad despatched an agent to Ya'kūb, named Ibrāhim-i-Şālih,

2 Re is not the correct pronunciation for the name of this city, but Rai. It is written thus in the original Persian-

4 The capital of Khurāsān. .As stated, previously, the Tahirī rulers held

their court at Shad-yakh, a short distance from that city.

³ Jarum is described as being the district of Garmsir, which latter word is written in various ways by those who fancy that Oriental proper names, as well as other words, may be written according to their fancy, such as Gurmsehl, Gurmseer, and the like.

ا مرما كرد فرمادكود - The name of this place is not quite certain : it is written and even امها كرد in the different copies of the MSS, collated. The above name is the most probable one.

Marwazi [or native of Marw], with a message demanding whither he was going without the command of the Lord of the Faithful, and that, in case he had a commission, he should show it, in order that he, Muhammad, might obey it, and observe its provisions. When the agent reached Ya'kūb's presence, and delivered his message, Ya'kūb put his hand under his prayer-carpet and drew forth his sword, and, placing it before the envoy, said: "This is my pass and authority."

When the envoy, Ibrāhim-i-Ṣāliḥ, returned with this reply, all the people of Nishāpūr entered into communication with Ya'kūb; and they delivered Muḥammad-i-Ṭāḥir into his hands, and the dynasty of the Ṭāḥirīs came to an end. This event happened on Sunday, the 3rd of the month of Shawwāl, 259 H. Respecting the generosity and munificence of Muḥammad-i-Ṭāḥir, one of the learned, whose statement may be depended on, relates the following

ANECDOTE.

There was a person dwelling at Nishāpūr, one of the most excellent men of his day, named Maḥmūd-i-Warrāk. He possessed a female slave, who played exceedingly well upon the barbat—a kind of lute—and of such grace and beauty as cannot be described.

The fame of the loveliness of this slave-girl, and of her amiability and accomplishments, having reached the ear of Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir, to the effect that she improvised ghazals, or odes, sang them, and accompanied them on the barbat, the heart of Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir desired, beyond measure, to obtain possession of her. He had repeatedly asked Maḥmūd-i-Warrāk to part with her, and had offered to give a very high price for her; but all his offers were rejected, and he could not obtain possession of her, for her master himself was deeply enamoured of his beautiful slave, Rātibah, as she was named.

After some time had elapsed, however, and Maḥmūd-i-Warrāk had expended all his property and possessions in pleasure and expense on her account, and nothing remained to him, he despatched a person with a message to the

⁶ These events are fully detailed in the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh, and several other histories, See note ⁷, page 22.

⁷ Warrak means a writer, a cutter and folder of paper, also a monied man.

presence of Muhammad-i-Tāhir soliciting that the Amir would honour him with a visit, in order that he might

dispose of his beautiful slave to him.

When Muhammad-i-Tāhir received this message he was delighted beyond measure, and directed that four badrahs8 of silver should be brought and handed over to the domestic who brought the message, while the Amir arose, and proceeded, by way of his own private residence to that of Mahmūd-i-Warrāk. When the Amir had sat down, and the silver was placed before the eyes of Mahmūd-i-Warrāk, he, seeing the state of affairs, went out, and directed Ratibah, saving: "Don your best apparel, Rātibah, and prepare to present yourself before the Amir, as I am going to sell you to him." When the slave-girl heard these words she burst into a flood of tears, and, such was the paroxysm of her grief, that the sounds reached the ears of the Amir, who was in another apartment. He heard Mahmud say to her: "Wherefore all this grief and lamentation, O Rātibah?" to which she replied: "O my master! is this the end of our connexion, that at last you separate me from you?" Mahmud replied: "All this I do out of love and affection for you, now that I possess nothing, and am a beggar; and, that you may continue to live in ease and affluence for the rest of your life. I send you to the haram of the Amir." Ratibah replied: "If you merely act thus on my account, refrain from doing so. for I undertake to work for the rest of my days, and, by industry befitting a woman, by weaving coifs and mantles, earn sufficient means for your subsistence and my own. but do not separate me from you." Mahmūd-i-Warrāk rejoined: "If such be the case, O Ratibah, I now pronounce you free, and fix your dowry at nineteen dinars and a half, and make vou my wife."

Muhammad-i-Ṭāhir, hearing this loving and affectionate dialogue between Mahmūd-i-Warrāk and his slave, arose, and, gathering his garments about him, said to Mahmūd: "The whole of the four badrals of silver are thine; I make thee a present of it: pass the rest of thy life in case and affluence!" Thus saying, he went his way; and the fame of his generosity still remains.

⁸ A weight equal to 10,000 dirams, also a bag made of leather or lamb's-skin.

SECTION VIII.

THE ŞUFFÂRÎÛN DYNASTY.

THE author, Minhāj-i-Sarāj Jūrjānī, makes a short extract from the Tārikh or chronicle of Ibn Haisam-i-Ṣānī, respecting the dynasty of the Ṣuffāriūn. That chronicler and annalist relates, that Ya'kūì-i-Lais, and 'Umro, 'Alī, and Mu'addil-i-Lais, were four brothers, sons of Lais, the Ṣuffār or worker in brass, who was head of the braziers of Sijistān¹. [At this time] Ibrāhīm, son of Al-Ḥusain², was the Wālī [governor] of Sijistān on the part of Muḥammad, son of Tāhir, the last of the Ṭāhirās, who was the Amīr of Khurāsān. This Ibrāhīm had appointed a deputy or lieutenant of his own to govern in Sijistān in his name, who was called Ṣāliḥ, son of Un-Naṣr. This Lais the brazier was a restless and refractory fellow, and had a great number of assistants, servants, and followers.

¹ Other historians greatly differ here, as to the origin and rise of the Suffarian. One says that Laig, the brazier, was in the service of Saith, son of Naşr, Kanāni; and another, quoting the History of Khurāšan of Moulānā Muïn-ud-Din, Sabawāri, states, that the latter author had traced the descent of this family to Nūshīrwān the Just, the celebrated ruler of Irān. Again, another author states, that Ya'kūb, son of Laig, after the death of Darhim [sic], son of Un-Naşr, revolted against his sons Saith and Naşr, in 237 H., and managed to gain possession of some portion of the territory of Sijistān. His affairs prospered, and, the principal men among the partisans of Darhim's family having combined with him from time to time, in 253 H., he acquired the whole of Sijistān. Darhim's son field to the king of Kālbu.

of Sijistān. Darhim's sons fied to the king of Kābul.

In three copies of the MSS. compared, and also in the Tārikh-i-Fanākatī, this name is written "Haṣīn," إحسن which signifies a fortification. A few words, respecting the Tārikh-i-Fanākatī, may not be amiss here. Abū Sulimān-i-Dārud, the author of that work, surmamed Fakhr-ud-dīn, was a native of Fanākat—also written Banākat, according to the rule by which 'Arabs change Persian f into b—in Māwar-un-Nahr; hence he is known as Al-Fanākatī, and Al-Banākatī, and his work as the Tarīkh-i-Fanākatī or Banākatī; but not by the absurd name that some persons have bestowed upon it, apparently through ignorance of the existence of this place, such as "Binā-Gety," and "Bina-i-Geti." They probably supposed the meaning to be a "History of the Foundation of the World," which Binā-i-Gæti would signify.

I. YA'KÜB, SON OF LAIS, ŞUFFĀRĪ.

The author of these pages, in the year 613 H., arrived in Sijistān, during the rule of the Malik of Nîmroz, Shāh-i-Ghāzī, Yamin-ud-din, Bahrām Shāh, son of Malik-i-Kabīr, Tāj-ud-din, Ḥarab, son of Izz-ul-Mulūk, Muḥammad. There I noticed a place³, on the south of the city of Sijistān, which they call by the name of Dar-i-Ta'am, outside the city, at a spot called Regi-Gunjān. In the vicinity of this latter place, on a height or rising ground, there is a palace in ruins; and a number of trustworthy persons informed me, that Ya'kūb, son of Lais, and his brothers, with their dependents and servants, were in the habit of coming thither one day in each week, as is the custom among young men, to divert themselves by sports and fun.

They used on these occasions to choose an Amir, or king of the sports, and a Wazir, or minister. One day, according to their usual custom, they had come to the wonted place of meeting, and Ya'kūb had been chosen Amīr for the day's sports; and, to each and every one of his brothers, his kinsmen, and dependents, he had assigned

3 "There I noticed a place," &c. This sudden change to the first person is found in the original, and is not unusual in Oriental works. The whole of the MSS. compared here appear hopelessly corrupt, the place to the south of Sijistan having, apparently, two names, and yet either of them is named, as though it were a principal distinguishing designation. But, as the Bodleian and some other MSS. omit the relative in the last clause, it has been adopted in the text of the translation. Since the above has been in type I find, from "MASALIK WA MAMALIK"—the original MS., not a translation—that Dar-i Ta'am was the name of one of the thirteen gates of the suburbs of the then extensive city of Zaranj, the capital of Sijistan, founded after the city of Ram Shahr became uninhabitable. The city was surrounded by a high wall and a ditch, and had five gates, which were of iron. The walls of the suburbs were probably not so strong, and the gates seem to have been of wood. The author says: "The palace of Ya'kub, son of Lais, is situated between the gates called Dar-i-Ta'am, and Darwazah-i-Bars [Fars]; and the palace of Umro, son of Lais, is the residence of the ruler." The copy of the above work which I have used is, from the style of writing, very ancient; and, from various events mentioned in it, appears to have been compiled previous to the time of Mahmud of Ghaznin. I have translated a considerable portion of it, Our author's journey to Sijistan took place some centuries after this work was written, at which period, from his remarks, the extensive suburbs had almost disappeared, and the names only of some of the gates appear to have survived. From the mention of the Reg [sand] of Gunjān, the suburbs had evidently been partially, if not altogether, buried in the sands, which, in after-times, reduced a once well-cultivated tract into a desert. See Section XIV, on the Kings of Nîm-roz and Sijistan.

the name of some one of the nobles and grandees of the country. Unexpectedly, the deputy of the Amīr of Sijistān, Ṣāliḥ, son of Naṣr, himself, on his return home from the chase, arrived at this place, attended by his usual small suite. Perceiving this assemblage of people collected on the mound in question, he directed one of his attendants to go and make inquiry who they were.

When the man sent reached the party, and noticed what was going on, he was much astonished; and, a bevy of youths having come forward to receive him, the messenger was forced to dismount from his horse, because it was necessary to present himself before the Amir of the sports on foot. The servant of Sālih, accordingly, was under the necessity of complying; and he made his obeisance, and returned, and related to his master, Sālih, son of Naṣr, what had passed and what he had seen.

Sālih, whose disposition was inclined to pleasantry, said, "We will go and see what this party of youths are about," and rode up and came to the spot where they were. Ya'kūb-i-Lāis never moved from his seat, and he directed, that Amir Sālih should be brought forward to pay his obeisance. The youths, as commanded, advanced to meet him, and they made Sālih dismount from his horse, and compelled him to make his obeisance to Ya'kūb.

As the day of his fortune and the period of his age had reached the evening of their termination, and the morning of the prosperity of the Suffāriūn had dawned, Ya'kūb made a sign to the effect that it was necessary to put an end to Amir Ṣāliḥ's career, and forthwith they put him to death. Ya'kūb, without delay, mounted a horse, and the party with him armed themselves, and, with the utmost expedition, they set out for the city, and proceeded to the palace of the ruler, and there Ya'kūb took up his quarters.

This event took place at the time of early forenoon, and by the time of meridian prayer the territory of Sijistān was in the hands of Ya'kūb-i-Lais, and all the people submitted to his rule, like as if the Almighty God had pre-ordained that he should follow his own way. Ya'kūb directed that the Khutbah should be read for him; and these events, and this success, took place in the year 251 H.

After this, Ya'kūb led an army towards Bust and Zāwulistān, and the territory of Dāwar [Zamin-i-Dāwar]

and <u>Gh</u>aznin, and subdued the whole of them. From thence he advanced into <u>Tukhāristān</u> and Balkh, and subdued them; and then returned and marched towards Kābul⁵. This success took place in 256 H., and, subsequently, he returned to Sijistān, and afterwards advanced to Hirāt, which, after much fighting, he gained possession of. After this he took Bādghais, Būshanj [or Fūshanj], lām, and Bākhurz, and returned to Sijistān again.

After a short time Ya'kūb again put his forces in motion, and marched against Nishāpūr, which he gained possession of without opposition in 259 H., and seized upon Muḥammadi-Ṭāhir, son of Ḥusain , together with his treasures, and his dependents, and followers. He then marched towards Gurgān and Tabaristān, and, after having extorted tribute, again retired. He made his brother, U'mro-i-Lais, Wālī [governor] of Hirāt: and, in 261 H., a person—one of the Amīrs of Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir—revolted, and set Muḥammad-i-Ṭāhir at liberty , who retired to the Court of the Khalīfah, Al-Wāṣik B'illah. Ya'kūb-i-Lais again marched an army into 'Irāk, and, on his return from thence, he reached a place which was called Khandah-i-Shāpūr , and there he departed this life, in the year 265 H., of colic, after a reign of fourteen years.

⁴ The ancient name of one of the districts of the territory of Balkh, and of which Tāc-kān—Tāl-kān by moderns, but not correct, I think—is the largest town, the authority of "Hwen [Houen?] Thsang," and its extent of "ten day's journey by thirty days," and "twenty-seven states," notwithstanding. See J. Ro. As. Soc., vol. vi. p. 94.

8 As stated in a former note, the sons of Darhim, Nasr and Sālih, had fied to Kābul, and had sought shelter with the "Shāh," as he is styled, of that territory, whose name was Ratbel or Rantbel; but this seems to have been a surname merely, for the opponent of the first Mussalmāns bore this very title.

6 The name here is not correct: the last of the Tāhiris is Muḥammad, son of Tāhir, son of 'Ahd-ullah, son of Tāhiri-Zū-l-Yamanain. See page 15.

7 The author says not one word respecting Ya'kūb's overthrow near Hulwān by Muwafik, the brother of the Khalifah Mu'tamid, in 262 H. On that occasion the baggage and effects of Ya'kūb fell into the hands of the victors, among which were the chests containing his treasures, clothes, &c. On opening one of the chests, they found reclining therein the Amfr Muhammad, son of Ut-Tāhir, whom Ya'kūb had made capite, when he gained possession of Nighāpūr, and overthrew the Tāhirî dynasty. Muwafik set him at liberty, and sent him to Baghdād. He died there in 266 H., and, at that time, and with him, other authors consider the Tāhirî dynasty to have ended.

8 The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh calls this place by the name of "Jand-i-Shapūr, a town of Ahwāz," and states that the date of his death was the 14th of Shawwāl, 265 H. It is also called "Jande-Shapūr." Ya'kub was buried there.

II. 'UMRO, SON OF LAIS, SUFFARĪ.

When Ya'kūb-i-Lais was removed from this transitory life, his brother, 'Umro, Suffari, sent a written petition to the Lord of the Faithful, the Khalifah, Al-Muwaffik B'illah', tendering his obedience and submission, and soliciting that he should be confirmed in the possession of the greater part of Fars, Gurgān, Sijistān, and Khurāsān. His request was acceded to by the Khalifah, and 'Umro retired from the mountain tracts of 'Irak with his own forces and those of his brother. and returned towards Sijistan again. From thence he moved towards Hirāt, and arrived there in the year 266 H. From Hirāt he marched to Nishāpūr; and Khujistān', who was one of the Amirs of Muhammad, son of Tāhir [the last of the Tāhirī dynasty], who had released his master from the hands of the Suffāris, and who was at this period in Gurgān, marched to Nīshāpūr against 'Umro, and there he was joined by Rāfi', son of Harsamah, from Marw.

They fought a battle with 'Umro before the gate of Nishāpur, and 'Umro was defeated and put to the rout. He retreated to Hirāt, and the Khalifah, Al-Mawafiik B'illah², deposed

⁹ There was no Khalifah of this name. The author must refer to the Khalifah Mu'tamid's brother, Muwafik, who was made Waii over the eastern parts of Islām, and declared heir, after the death of Mu'tamid's son Ja'far, but he did not succeed to the Khilifah. Mu'tagid, son of Muwafik, who died before his brother, Mu'tamid, succeeded his father, Al-Muwafik, in his capacity as ruler of the eastern parts of the Khilifaht; and he conferred the investiture of Khuitäšin, Färs, Jafahän, Sijistän, Kirmän, and Sind, upon 'Umro in 265 H., after the death of Ya'kub; and, in 266 H., 'Umro appointed 'Ubaid-ullah, the son of Tahir, to the district of Baghdäd, as his deputy. Mu'tamid waste Khalifah who excommunicated 'Umro, son of Lais, from the pulpit, at Baghdad, in 265 H. 'Umro had despatched an agent to offer his submission' and obedience, which the Khalifah refused to accept, and he cursed him.

Under the events of the year 278 H., the Mujmal-i-Faşiḥ-ī also mentions, that "Amīr Isma'īl, Sāmānī, overcame 'Umro, son of Laiş, the Şufīar;" and, under the events of the following year, 279 H., I find the Khalīfah, Al-Mu'taṣiḍ, presenting a standard to 'Umro, with the government of Khuñsām, at 'Umro's request, and that "Umro hoisted the standard over his Sarãe or palace, and kept it flying there for three days. The Khalīfah also conferred upon 'Umro's envoy, who brought the request for a standard, a dress of honour, and a present." Our author sadly confounds the dates of events, and jumbles them into a very short space.

1 This is an error, although seven copies of the text give the same name. Other authors state, that Ya'kib was defeated by Ahmad, son of 'Abd-ullah, Khujistān,' i.e. a native of Khujistān, which, the author of the Mujmal-i-Faṣiḥ-i says, is a dependency of Badghais, in the highlands of Hirat.

2 See preceding note 9, on this subject.

'Umro-i-Lais from the government of Khurāsān in the year 271 H., and the whole of the territories and places which had been annexed by him were given [back] to Muhammad, son

of Tāhir, son of 'Abd-ullah.

Muhammad was, at that time, at the Dār-ul-Khilāfat of Baghdād, and Rāfi', son of Harṣamah, was directed to act as his deputy and lieutenant in the government of Khurāsān. The government of Māwar-un-Nahr — the territory trans Jiḥūn—was conferred upon Ahmad, Sāmāni, as the deputy likewise of Muhammad, son of Tāhir. Between 'Umro-i-Laiṣ and Rāfi', son of Harṣamah, many battles and conflicts took place up to the period that Rāfi'i-Harṣamah himself rebelled against the authority of the Khalifah.

In the year 284 H., in an encounter which took place between him and 'Umro-i-Lais, Rāfi' was slain 3. 'Umro sent the head of Rafi' to the Court of Baghdad, at which time the masnad [throne] of the Khilafat had devolved upon Al-Mu'tazid B'illah, and 'Umro-i-Lais made a request to him that the government of Mawar-un-Nahr, Khurasan, Nim-roz 1, Fars, Kirman, and Ahwaz, together with the Nakabat', or guardianship of the entrance to the palace of the Khalifah, and of the district of Baghdad, should be made over to him. More than this, he solicited that the name 'Umro should be inscribed on the canopies which every chief had in his residence [which would signify that he was above them all, and that his name should be mentioned in the Khutbah, and on the coins of Makkah and Madinah and of Hijāz. All his demands were acceded to by the Khalifah's Court, and were duly carried out, and numerous dresses of honour, and countless marks of favour and distinction, were conferred upon him,

The letters patent, acceding to his demands, having reached 'Umro from his Majesty the Khalifah, he made

³ Other authors state that Räfi was taken prisoner by 'Umro, and sent to Baghāda, where he died in confinement, which former proceeding so pleased the Khalfāch that he restored 'Umro to the government of Khurāsān, Mawar-um-Nahr, Kirmān, &c., again. The jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, and Tārikh-i-Guzidah, however, state that Rāfi' sought shelter with the ruler of Khwārazm, who put him to death, and sen this head to 'Umro. The latter's report to the Khalfah, in the Mujmal-i-Faṣih-i, confirms this.

Sijistān.
 Nakābat, the office of a Nakib, a leader, &c.
 The word is rather doubtful— سرماني One MS. has سرماني another

preparation for proceeding and taking possession of Māwar-un-Nahr; and Muḥammad Bashir, who was his Ḥājib [chamberlain], was despatched with a force from 'Umro's army in advance.

Amîr Ismā'il-i-Aḥmad', Sāmāni, marched from Bukhārā towards Khurāsān, crossed the river Jiḥūn's, and defeated the [advanced] force of 'Umro under Muḥammad Baṣhir, who was slain in the engagement, together with a great number of his troops. Upon this 'Umro-i-Lais proceeded towards Māwar-un-Nahr with a numerous army, for it included 70,000 horsemen armed with spears, besides other troops. Amīr Ismā'il-i-Aḥmad crossed's the Jiḥūn, and fought a battle with 'Umro-i-Lais before the walls of Balkh, defeated him, and took him prisoner, and sent him to the court of Baghdād', and then Ismā'il returned to Bukhārā. In the year 288 H., the Khalifah, Al-Mu'tazid, directed that 'Umro should be cast into prison, and in it he died; and the dynasty of the Suffāriūn terminated.

⁷ Isma'i's army is said to have consisted of 12,000 horse, but the accounts of other writers differ considerably in their statements from this one.

⁸ The Oxus, also called Bakhtrus, and Amūjah.

⁹ According to the author's own statement above, Ismā-İl with his army was already across.

¹ See note 5, page 31, for a full account of 'Umro's fate.

² The Tārikh-i-Ibrnhāmi, andothers, state, that after the downfall of 'Umro his descendants contented themselves with the sovereignty of Sijistān, subject, however, to the Sāmānis. This is also proved from the subsequent accounts given by our author himself. When the people of Sijistān became aware of 'Umro's capture they set up Tābir, who, according to the Tārikh-i-Guzidah, Nigām-ut-Tawārikh, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, and other works, was not 'Umro's brother, but his grandson, 'Tābir, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Umro. Isma'ti, Sāmāni, overcame him; but after a time conferred the government of Sijistān upon Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, Tābir's son. His descendants continued to possess it until the year 643 H. 'Umro, son of Laiş, founded the 'Atik Masjid at Shīrāz.

SECTION IX.

THE DYNASTY OF THE SAMANIS.

THE humblest of the servants of the Almighty, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī, states that, after the mention of the Maliks of Yaman, and the Şuffăriūn Amīrs, he has considered it preferable to insert here the section in which it is proposed to give an account of the race of Sāmān, and the Maliks of that dynasty, and therefore this portion of the work was made, in its arrangements, antecedent to that treating of the genealogy of the Maḥmūdī, and Nāṣirī Maliks¹. Although the history of the Maliks of Yaman ought, properly, to have been first in the arrangement of the book, still, as they were not among the number of Maliks of Islām, he did not consider it right to place them before the Khalīfahs, and therefore they have received this much precedence.

This section has been taken from the Tārikh or Chronicle of Ibn Haisam, in order that those under whose inspection it falls may place perfect confidence in its correctness.

The chronicler relates that the ancestor of the Sāmānis was named Sāmān; but, according to some others, his name was different from this; and, moreover, that Sāmān is the name of one of the districts of the Sughd of Samrand, and that the ancestor of the Sāmānis was the Ra'is [chief] of that place, and that he used to be styled Sāmāni-Khaddāt³; but, for sake of brevity, the name of Sāmān was

¹ The <u>Ghaznawi</u> dynasty, and the Turkish Slave dynasty (not <u>Paţāns</u>), of which Nāşir-ud-din, the ruler of Dihli, to whom the author dedicated his work, was one.

² These remarks would have been better prefixed to the notice of the kings of Yaman, or the Tāhirīs, and are rather out of place here.

³ The Tarikh-i-Jahān-Ārā states that he was chiefly known by the name of sāmān-i-Khadāh, which signifies the master or possessor of sāmān or effects, chattels, &c. Sāmān likewise, quoting the "Muajam-u-Baladān," is the name of a village of Māwar-un-Nahr, but others consider it to be the name of a place in the territory of Balkh. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh also agrees with this statement.

adopted, and it became the name by which he was generally known. He was of the posterity of Bahrām Shūbīn'.

This Sāmān-i-Khaddāt had a son who was named Asad, who had four sons—named, respectively, Nūḥ, Yaḥyā, Ilyās, and Aḥmad. They became Princes and Lords of great dignity and power, able, and experienced, and endowed with considerable promptness and vigour. At length, when their family had attained the pinnacle of greatness and power, Alb-Tigin*, the Amir of Ghaznin, and Sabuk-Tigin, were among the slaves and servants of their descendants. All the Sāmānis left numerous proofs of their goodness in Khurāsān and Māwar un-Nahr; and may the Almighty reward them by bestowing upon them exalted stations in the courts of Paradise.

ASAD, SON OF SĀMĀN-I-KHĀDDĀT.

He had four sons, Yaḥyā, who held the territory of Shāsh and Isfanjāb, and their dependencies; Ilyās, who held the government of the province of Hirāt and parts adjacent; Aḥmad, the third son, who held Samrkand and Farghānah, and their dependencies; and Nūḥ, the fourth, who at first held the government of Samrkand, which, however, was subsequently conferred upon Ahmad.

The Lord of the Faithful, Māmūn, when he came to Marw, remarked the talents and capabilities, bravery, and innate nobility of mind of the sons of Asad, son of Sāmān, and he treated them with great distinction, and conferred great favours upon them, and raised them to high rank and position.

When the <u>Khalifah</u>, Māmūn, returned to Baghdād, his capital, he directed <u>Gh</u>assān⁶, the son of 'Ubbād, to

⁴ The noble, who, in the reign of Hurmuz, son of Nüghirwän, overthrew the son of the Khākān of Turkistān, with an immense army, before the walls of Balkh, but was insulted by Hurmuz, and herebelled and dethroned him, and setup another in his stead. The word is sometimes written Chūtōin, sometimes Shūtōin.

⁵ See note 2, page 37.

⁶ In the year 204 H., Ghassān, son of 'Ubbād, was appointed to the government of Khurāsān. He conferred Samrkand upon Nūh, son of Asad, Sāmānī. Ahmad, Ilyās, and Yahyā, the other sons of Asad, received, respectively, the investiture of Farghānah, Shāsh, Isrughtah; or Sīrughtah, and Hirāt. Soon after, Tāhiri-Zū-l-Yamananin became Wāli of Khurāsān, Nūḥ died, and the former bestowed the territory held-by Nūḥ on his brothers, Yahyā and Aḥmad, When Ilyās, another brother, died, Tāhir gave his territory of Hirāt to his own son, 'Abd-ullah. After this the family of the Sāmānīs rose to great power in Khurāsān and Māwar-un-Nahr. See note ', page 11; rote ', page 28.

assume the government of Khurāsān, and added thereunto the whole of it as far as Māwar-un-Nahr. Ghassān, son of 'Ubbād, made each of the sons of Asad the Amīr [ruler] of a territory, and conferred certain cities upon them, as the table given at the end of this Section shows. These governments were first conferred upon them in the year 204 H.; and, when his Majesty, the Khalifah, nominated Amīr Ṭāhir-i-Zū-l-Yamanain, son of Al-Ḥusain, to the government of Khurāsān, the whole four Sāmānī Amīrs, who [as already stated] were four brothers, were confirmed by him in the territories and cities they were then holding.

When the sovereignty passed from Amīr Tāhir to his son, 'Abd-ullah-i-Tāhir', he confirmed the Sāmānis in their governments as his father had done, and made no change

with respect to them.

I. AḤMAD, SON OF ASAD, SON OF SĀMĀN.

Each of the sons of Sāmān-i-<u>Kh</u>addāt rose to great rank and power, and they each held a tract of territory in Māwar-un-Nahr, Farghānah, or <u>Kh</u>urāsān, as will be men-

tioned in the succeeding pages.

Nūḥ, son of Asad, who was a person of excellent qualities and disposition, and of great energy and high courage, was invested with the government of the territory of Samrkand. Yaḥyā, another son, held the territory of Shāṣḥ, and Isśanjāb³, and their dependencies. He was a man of undaunted spirit and energy, and possessed great talent for government, and left many proofs of his goodness in those parts. Ilyās held the government of the province of Hirāt and its dependencies, and the parts adjacent. He also was a person of energy and great experience; but Aḥmad was the greatest, the most intrepid, energetic, and sagacious of

7 It passed to his son, Talhah, first, and afterwards to 'Abd-ullah, and also

by the author's own account.

⁸ Shāsh is the name of a territory, river, and city of Māwar-un-Nahr, on the Siḥūn or Jaxartes, on the frontier of the Turks. It was also called Fanākat, and is now known as Tāshkand. According to the AṢĀR-U.Bhī.AD, and MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK, it was also called Chāj and Jāj. Ibn Ḥaukal [the translation] first states that Schet is the capital, and immediately after says Chāj is. Its inhabitants were Musalmāns of the tribes of Ghuzz and Khalj. Isfanjāb, also written Sfanjāb, is a town or city of Māwar-un-Nahr, towards Turkistān. These names are generally carelessly written in the various copies of the text.

the whole of the brothers, and held charge of the territory of Samrkand.

Nūḥ, at first, was placed in charge of the affairs of Farghānah, but, subsequently, it came into the hands of Aḥmad, with the whole of Kāsghar, and Turkistān, to the frontier of Chin. He was renowned for his courage, and valour, and experience, which were celebrated throughout Irān and Tūrān; and his descendants, one after the other, occupied the throne, and governed God's people liberally and beneficently. Of those of his descendants who attained to sovereignty, one of the learned men has spoken, in verse, in the following quatrain:—

"Nine persons there were of the race of Sāmān, renowned, Who as rulers became famous in Khurāsān, A Ismā'il, a Aḥmad, and a Naṣr, Two Nūḥs, two 'Abd-ul-Maliks, two Manṣūrs."

Amir Aḥmad had nine sons: Naṣr, Ismā'il, Is-ḥāk, Manṣūr, Asad, Ya'kūb, Ḥamid, Yaḥyā, and Ibrāhim. The mention of their descent was found, as has been entered herein—Sāmān, son of Jaṣhmān, son of Ṭamghān, son of Noṣher, son of Noṣhed, son of Bahrām, son of Ṣhūbin [Chūbin].

II. NAŞR, SON OF AHMAD, SĀMĀNĪ.

When Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān, died at Samrkand, he nominated his son, Naṣr³, as his successor; and, during the sway of the Tāḥiris, the territory, which Naṣrs father had held, was confirmed to him, and his brother Ismā'il served under him, and acknowledged in him, as his suzerain, his superiority.

In 261 H. Naşr conferred the government of the territory of Bukhārā upon Ismā'īl, who established himself therein. Naṣr performed great deeds, and was endowed with many virtues. He governed with strict regard to the rules of equity and justice until the end of his days, when death overtook him in the month of Jamādī-ul-Akhīr, in the year 279 H.

The Tärikh-i-Guzidah and others state, that, after the death of Ahmad in 261 H., the Khalifah, Al-Mu'tamid B'illah, placed the whole of those territories under the government of one person—Nasr, son of Ahmad, the most upright and best prince of the Sāmāni dynasty.
1 According to the I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and the R.A.S.-MS., which

When his brother, Ismā'il, had become established in the government of the Bukhārā territory, several designing and evil-intentioned persons managed to come between him and his brother Naṣr, his sovereign, and began to resort to calumny and falsehood [to effect their designs], until the disposition of Naṣr became completely changed towards his brother, and he determined to reduce Ismā'il by force, and overthrow him entirely.

Amir Naşr accordingly moved from Samrkand towards Bukhārā with a large army. Amir Ismā'il despatched a trusty agent to Rāfi', son of Harşamah, son of A'yan, who was Amir of Khurāsān', and acquainted him with the state of affairs between himself and his brother, Amir Naşr, and

solicited assistance from that ruler.

Rāfi', son of Harṣamah assembled a warlike army, numerous and well-equipped in every way, and marched towards the scene of expected hostility; but he, out of benevolence, kindness, and humanity, interposed between the brothers, and brought about an accommodation between them, and retired into his own territory again.

Amir Nasr returned to Samrkand, and Amir Ismā'il proceeded to Bukhārā. As soon as Nasr heard of this. still nourishing that antagonism against his brother which had taken possession of his heart, he advanced towards Bukhārā with a warlike army. Ismā'il came out of the city to encounter him; and a fierce and obstinate battle took place between them, attended with great carnage, in the year 275 H. Ismā'il was victorious over his brother, whose forces were defeated and put to the rout, and Amir Nasr was himself taken prisoner. He was taken to the presence of Isma'il, who, seeing that he was being brought forward, immediately dismounted from his horse, and rendered homage to his captive brother, and kissed him on the breast, and paid him the utmost honour and respect. He then induced Amir Nasr to return to Samrkand, and returned himself to Bukhārā, which he continued to retain as the lieutenant of his brother. Nasr. son of Ahmad, ruled for a period of eighteen years.

of course agrees, Naşr assumed the government in 269 H., and reigned eighteen years. This is quite wrong. The correct date is 261 H., as in the other MSS., which date other histories confirm.

² Subordinate to the Khalifahs.

III. ISMĀ'ĪL3, SON OF AHMAD, SĀMĀNĪ.

On the death of Amir Naṣr, the Khalifah, Al-Mu'taẓid B'illah, conferred upon Amir Ismā'il the government of the territory of Māwar-un-Nahr, and also all the territory which his brother, Naṣr, had held, and sent him a commission and a standard. He became a great and powerful ruler, and the whole of those territories submitted to his sway'; and all men, chiefs, and grandees, and the common people, became obedient to his authority.

He was a just man, and endowed with wisdom, and many great deeds were performed by him, for when 'Umro, son of Lais, determined to make war upon Ismā'il, and set out with a vast army to attack him—according to the author of the Tārikh of Ibn Haisam—on the day that 'Umro, son of Lais, set out to enter upon hostilities with Amīr Ismā'il, he had seventy thousand horsemen armed with spears under his standard, without counting archers, swordsmen, and other armed men besides. Amīr Ismā'il crossed the river Jīḥūn, and encountered 'Umro, son of Lais, at Balkh; and the Almighty bestowed the victory upon Ismā'il. The army of 'Umro was defeated and put to the rout, and 'Umro was himself taken prisoner. Ismā'il sent his captive to the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mu'tazid-B'illah, to dispose of as he might deem fit.

³ Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ūd, author of the Tārikh-i-Fanākati, considers Isma'ti, Sāmāni, very properly, as the first of the dynasty who is entitled to be considered a sovereign prince. The Tārikh-i-Ibnāhīni, Jahān-Ārā, and several other histories, also confirm it, as does Ibn-Jaukal likewise. The Mujmali-Faşih-i also agrees in this. Under the events of the year 287 H. it is stated, that from that year commenced the sovereignty of the Sāmāniān, who were nine persons, who reigned 103 years, 9 months, and I I days; and, that Ismā'il, Sāmāni, had isee, and had subdued, during that same year, Māwar-un-Nahr, Khurāsān, Fārs, Kirmān, 'Irāķ, Sijistān, and some parts of Hindūstān. At this period, it must be remembered, the territory of Kābul was considered a part of "Hindī," and this, doubtless, is what is referred to here. In the same year, the Khalifah, Al-Mu'tagid B'illah, sent Isma'il the investiture of Khurāsān, Tabaristān, and Jurjān, together with a rich dress of honour, and the sum of "ten times a thousand thousand dirams" [ten millions of dirams.]; and the affairs of Isma'il began to prosper greatly.

⁴ In 280 H., Isma'th made an expedition into the territory of the Turks, and made holy war upon them. The chief town was taken, and booty and captives beyond compute carried off, together with their Mails [king] and his wife. Each horseman present on this expedition received a thousand dirams for his share of the booty.

⁵ Respecting the subsequent fate of 'Umro, son of Lais, it appears, on

The <u>Khalifah</u> bestowed a commission on Amir Ismā'il, with the investiture of the territory of <u>Kh</u>urāsān, together with the whole of 'Ajam; and Amir Ismā'il's power and

grandeur increased accordingly.

Subsequently, the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mu'tazid, despatched a commission to him, with directions to free the countries of Tabaristan and Gurgan from the sway of Amir Muhammad-i-Zaid-ul-'Alawi', who had possessed himself of them. Amir Ismā'il appointed Ahmad-i-Hārūn7 to the command of the van of his army, and sent him on in advance with that portion of his forces; and, between Amir Muhammad-i-Zaid-ul-'Alawi and Amir Ismā'il, very severe fighting took place, and the Amir Muhammad-i-Zaid was slain. His son, Zaid, also, was taken prisoner and brought before Amir Ismā'il, who sent him to Bukhārā, with orders that, on the way thither, due respect should be paid to him, and that he should be provided with suitable accommodation; and he treated him with such honour and attention as kindness and magnanimity could devise

trustworthy authority, that Amir Isma'il sent 'Umro to Baghdad at his ['Umro's] own request. Arrived there, he was, by the Khalifah's orders, paraded on a camel's back through the streets of Baghdad, and afterwards thrown into prison. This was in 287 H. In the year 289 'Umro died in confinement. It is said that the Khalifah, Mu'tazid, whilst in his last struggles, expressed a desire that 'Umro should be put to death; but, that he was entirely forgotten in his prison, and neither food nor drink was brought to him, and he died of starvation and thirst. Another account is, that Mu'tazid gave orders to Saff to put him to death, and that he delayed carrying the sentence into exe-When Al-Muktafi succeeded to the Khilafat, he inquired of Safi respecting 'Umro, whether he was still alive. He replied that he was, Muktafi said: "I will act generously towards him; for, during the time of Mu'tazid, he continually sent me presents, and was always very attentive to me." Kāsim, son of 'Abd-ullah, however, feared 'Umro; and, when he heard this speech of the Khalifah's, he gave directions to put 'Umro to death in his prison. More respecting the Suffar's will be found at page 183. I hope, very shortly, however, to give a detailed account of the rise of the different Muhammadan dynasties to the public.

8 In the Mir'āt-ul.'Alam and other works, he is styled "Muḥammad, son of Zaid-ul.'Alawi, who bore the sumame of Ud-Dāi'-alā-l-Ḥak." In the Tārikh-i-Guzidah, he is styled "Al-Bākiri," instead of 'Alawi', but the meaning of these two titles is much the same. He was a descendant of the Khalifah, 'Ali, and Bāķir was the surname of Abū Ja'far-l-Muḥammad, son of 'Ali, son of 'Ali, son of 'Ali.

Husain, son of 'Ali, the fourth Khalifah.

⁷ Muḥammad, son of Hārūn, seems to be the correct name of this officer. He had been deputy to Rāfi', and had entered the service of Amīr Ismā'īl. At this time, the Khalifah Al-Mu'tazid B'illah died, and his son, Al-Muktafī B'illah, succeeded to the throne of the Khilāfat. He despatched a commission and a standard to Amīr Ismā'il, and conferred upon him the territories of 'Irāk, Rai, and Ṣafahān', and the provinces of Tabaristān, and Gurgān, the whole of which were incorporated with Khurāsān. Amīr Ismā'il gave the government of Rai to his nephew, named Abū Ṣālih, son of Manṣūr, son of Is-hāk', Sāmāni, and to his own son, Ahmad by name, that of Gurgān.

On the night of Tuesday, the 14th of the month Safar, in the year 295 H., he died, and his title became Amīr-i-Māzī, or the Past or Late Amīr'. He had reigned for a period of eight years?

IV. ABŪ NAŞR-I-AḤMAD 3, SON OF ISMĀ'ĪL.

This ruler had four sons, named Naşr, Manşūr, Ibrāhīm, and Yaḥyā, whose surnames were, respectively, Abū Sāliḥ, Abū Muḥammad, Abū Is-hāk, and Abū Zakrīā.

Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad was a severe and energetic ruler, and put to death several of his slaves for some misconduct. The rest of the slaves, who were their comrades, sought opportunity to revenge them, and to assassinate Amūr Aḥmad; but he had a lion⁴, which had been trained, and he was in the habit of securing the animal near his sleeping-apartment, in the night-time, in order that, through fear of this creature, no one should approach his place of repose.

This animal used to keep guard over his master at night, until, on one occasion, when the Amir had gone on a hunting excursion, and set out, on his return from thence, at an untimely hour. The halting-place was at a considerable distance, and he was unable to reach the station fixed upon, and had to stop at another place for the night. The slaves

⁸ Isfahān. 9 A son of Aḥmad is so named. See page 29. 1 Amīr Ismā'fi made the celebrated Abrī-I-Fazi, Al-Bal'amī, his Wazīr. He continued to act in that office up to the time of Amīr Nuh, son of Manşur, by whose command he translated the Tārīkh-i-Tabarī from 'Arabic into Persian.

Computing from the commencement of his reign in 287 H.
 Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad signifies Aḥmad, the father of Naṣr.

is used both for lion and tiger.

now found the opportunity they had been seeking, and they assassinated Amir Ahmad. This event happened on the night of Thursday, the 23rd of the month Jamādi-ul-Akhir. 301 H.5 They then took his body, and conveyed it to Bukhārā: and, after this occurrence, Amir Ahmad was designated the Amir-i-Shahid, or the Martyred Amir.

In the outset of his career, after his father had departed this life, and an assemblage of the heads of the army, the grandees, and principal men of the country had pledged their allegiance to him, Abū Naṣr-i-Ahmad, son of Ismā'il, he sent a distinguished person, as envoy to the Court of the Khalifah, and from thence, the Lord of the Faithful. Al-Muktafi B'illah, sent him a commission and a standard; and his reign gave regularity and order to the affairs of the Empire. In Sijistān6, however, Mu'addil, son of 'Alī, son of Lais. Suffārī, brother's son of Ya'kūb and 'Umro, had broken out into rebellion, and caused great disturbance and disorder. An army had been appointed to proceed into that quarter, and Mu'addil had been reduced, and rendered powerless; and he was made captive, and put in durance.

The government of Sijistan was then conferred by Amir Ahmad upon his uncle's son7, in whom he placed confidence, Abū Sālih-i-Mansūr, son of Is-hāk, son of Ahmad, Sāmāni, Subsequently the people of Sijistan revolted, and seized the person of Abū Sālih, and confined him in the fortress of Ark8, and gave their allegiance to 'Umro, son of Ya'kūb-

5 Tarikh-i-Guzidah, Khulasat-ul-Akhbar, Muimal-i-Fasih-i, and other works, say this event occurred 23rd Jamadi-ul-Akhir, 300 H. Fasih-i gives

his reign as 5 years and 3 months.

6 Our author seems to have had a very imperfect and confused idea of the state of Sijistan at this period. He makes no mention of the doings of Sijiza, the slave _the Sigizi [سكري], or Sijizi [سكري] slave probably of 'Umro, son of Lais; his having, at last, taken to the fortress of Bam, in Kirman, and his subsequent flight into the desert of Khurāsān; nor of Tāhir and Ya'kūb, 'Umro's sons, nor of Lais, son of 'Alt, of the same family, all three of whom were, at different times, taken captive and sent to Baghdad. In 297 H. Muhammad, son of 'Ali, brother of Ya'kūb and 'Umro, sons of Lais, Suffāri, was made prisoner along with Sigizi, by Amir Ahmad, Samani, who subdued Sijistan. He sent them to Baghdad, at the Khalifah's request. In 299 H., Lais, son of 'Ali, died in Fars; and Mu'addil, his son, died the same year.

7 The same Abū-Sālih, who was son of Mansūr, son of Is-hāk, mentioned

towards the close of the last reign, which see.

8 All the copies of the MSS. compared, except one, which has e have the words e, " tortress of Ark or Arg;" but I think it might be e, [Uk]. which is the name of a buried town of Sijistan, and, from its ruins, Afghans and i-Lais. On this, Amir Abū Naṣr-i-Ahmad, son of Ismā'il, nominated a well appointed army [well equipped in all things] to march into Sijistān for the second time, and Husain 'Alī', Marw-ar-Rūdi', was made Amir [commander] of that force. This army had entered Sijistān in the year 300 H., and had invested 'Umro [son of Muhammad], son of Ya'kūb, for a period of seven months', when he begged for quarter, and came out and surrendered. Sijistān was then made over to the charge of Simiūr-i-Dowāti'.

It was at this period that the Amir, having been unable to reach his appointed place of rest before nightfall, as already related, was assassinated, after having reigned for a period of six years and three months.

V. NAŞR5, SON OF AHMAD, SON OF ISMĀ'ĪL.

On the decease of the Amir-i-Shahid, Ahmad, son of Ismā'il, the whole of the Amirs, and commanders of the troops, and the principal men of the country, in concert with the 'Ulamā—the learned in law and religion—of that period, set up his son, Nasr, as his successor.

Amir Nasr at this time was but eight years of age, and according to the statement of the chronicler, at the very

Hindus of Kandahār have brought me coins. The fact of which being given as well seems to throw a doubt upon it, for both Arg and Kala' are just the same in meaning, and would have to be read "the fort or castle of [the] citadel," unless Ark be a proper name—"the castle of Ark." Perhaps has been written by mistake for j The Tarikh-i-Haft Aklim says there is "a place called Ük [Lj·], in Sijistān, near which is a Reg-i-Rawān [running or flowing sand] stuated near Kala'-i-Kāh, or Cāh, in which vicinity are several holy tombs."

9 'Umro, son of Muhammad, son of Ya'kūb-i-Lais, is correct.

1 Other writers say Husain, son of 'Ali.

² That is, he was a native of Marw-ar-Rūd.

3 Others give nine months as the period.

4 Tārīkh-i-Ibrahāmī says Ahmad-i-Simjūr—also written Sīmjūr-i-Dowātī. Dowātī is from dowāt, a pen-case, or ink-holder.

⁶ His proper designation, according to the Mujmal-i-Fasih-i, Tarikh-i-Jahān-Arā, the Tarikh-i-Ibrahami, and Tarikh-i-Fanākati, is Abu-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, &c.

6 Among the events of the year 301 H., the Mujmal-i-Faşiḥ-ī mentions, the "arrival of the news at Baghdād, that the slaves of Amir Almad, son of Isma-til, son of Ahmad, Samāni, had put him to death, on the banks of the Jihin of Balkh, [referring to what was mentioned under 300 H.] and that his son, Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣṛ, had succeeded him. Upon this, the Khalifah. Muktadir, despatched to him a commission confirming him in the government of Māwar-un-Naḥr, and added thereunto that of Khurāsān."

time that they brought him forth from the Ḥaram to place him upon the throne, being of such tender years, he was completely overcome with fear and began to cry, and was saying, "Where are you taking me to? Do you desire to put me to death, in the same way as you put my father?

Let me alone, I beg of you!"

After they had placed him on the throne, Abū 'Abḍ-ullah Muḥammad, son of Aḥmad, Al-Jihāni, was appointed his Nāyab [lieutenant]. He was a man of sagacity, and wise in counsel, and he entered upon the administration of the government in accordance with the rules of strict justice, and with a firm hand, but based upon moderation and beneficence; but, as the Amīr was himself so young in years, the governors and great nobles on the confines showed a refractory spirit.

The first to revolt against his authority was his father's uncle, Is-hāk, son of Ahmad, Sāmānī, and his son Ilyās, at Samrkand. They made ready their forces, and marched towards Bukhārā. Ḥamzah, son of 'Alī, who was one of the chiefs of Amīr Naṣr's forces, pushed forward to meet them with a large following, put them to the rout, and pursued them as far as the gates of Samrkand. Amīr Is-hāk sought for mercy, and became ashamed of his con-

duct, and he was forgiven.

Subsequently to this, Amir Naṣr's uncle's son, Manṣūr, son of Is-ḥāk, revolted against him in 302 H. in Khurāsān and Nīṣḥāpūr; and Ḥusain 'Ali', who was Wālī [governor] of Hirāt, joined him in his rebellion. The Sipah-sālār, [general-in-chief] of Amīr Naṣr's forces, Ḥamawiyah , marched against them from Bukhārā, but, before he came up with them, Manṣūr had died at Niṣhāpūr, and Ḥusain 'Alī returned to Hirāt, but still continued in a state of revolt. He engaged in many conflicts, and gave battle on several occasions, until, at length, he was taken prisoner? He likewise, being clothed in a dress of

7 Husain, son of 'Alf. 2019. The simple state of the government of Hirat, Füshanj, and Badghais, and arrived at the former city to take up his appointment. In 311 H. Shāh-Malik, son of Ya'kūb, son of Lais, the Suffarf, and a body of Sanjarfs appeared before Hirāt. Shnjir was at Hirāt at this time; and Shāh-Malik and his party invested Hirāt four months, but could

effect nothing, and had to retire. Changes continually took place there for

pardon', was forgiven, through the intercession of Muhammad, son of Ahmad, Al-Jihāni, the Nāyab of the Empire; indeed, during the reign of Amir Nasr, whoever revolted against his authority, was either put to death, or, on expressing penitence for his conduct, was pardoned.

His sovereignty continued during the reigns of the Khalifahs, Al-Muktadir B'illah, Al-Kāhir B'illah, Ar-Rāzī B'illah, up to that of Al-Muttakī B'illah, and he continued to pay fealty to them, and to render them submission and obedience; and, from each of those Khalifahs likewise, he received a commission and a standard. He continued to reign, until the month of Rajab, in the year 331 H.², when he died³. He was spoken of by the title, or surname, of the Amīr-i-Sa'id, or the August Amīr, and his reign extended to a period of thirty years. He had three sons,

some years. In 319 H. Abū Zakrfā-i-Vahyā, son of Aḥmad, son of Ismā'tl, Sāmānī, appeared before Hirāt, ousted Shabāsī, who had seized the government, burnt some of the gates, and threw down part of the walls, and left Karā-Tigin, a slave of Abū Ibrāhīn, Sāmānī, in possession. He then departed towards Samrkand, buf, the following day, Amīr Naṣr himself reached Hirāt, stayed one day, and set out by way of Karūkh, after Abū Zakrfā, leaving Sīmjūr again governor of the province. In 221 H., Mansūr, son of 'Alī, was appointed. He died there in 324 H., having been Walī [governor] for three years. The appointment was then conferred upon Muḥammad, son of Ḥāsan, son of Is-bjāk. Soon after, in the same year, Abū-l-'Abbās, Muḥammad, son of Alasarnā, marched against Hirāt, took Muḥammad, son of Ḥāsan, captive, and sent him, in bonds, to Jurjān to Balkā-Tigin. In 326 H. the office of Wazīr was conferred upon Muḥammad, son of Muḥammad, Al-Jīhānī, by Amīr Naṣr.

Our author generally leaves out the principal events, or most of them, so does not say anything of Mākān, son of Kākī, Dīlamī, his attempt on Khurāsān, or the events which led to his death. He was slain by Amīr' Alī, son of Ilyās, who was one of the Umrā-i-Juyūsh [Commanders of the Forces] of Amīr Naṣr. Amīr Naṣr sent a Dabīr [Secretary] along with Amīr' Alī, with directions to transmit him a brief account of what took place, and send it by a carrier-pigeon. He did so in the following words—

[اعاد] "was not his name, Mākān [اعاد]" was not," which interpreted is—"" Was not his become like his name."

In this same year, 329 H., Balkā-Tigin was removed from the government of Hirāt, and it was again conferred upon Abū Manşūr-i-Karā-Tigin.

¹ A winding-sheet, with a sword hung round his neck, probably, as was the custom until very lately.

2 It was in Amir Nasr's reign that Alb-Tigin is first mentioned as being one of his mamiliaks or slaves, but it was only in the subsequent reign that he rose to the rank of Amir [lord]. See page 40, and note 4.

³ The Tārikh-i-Guzidah, Tārikh-i-Faṣih-i, Tārikh-i-Ibrāhimi, and other histories, state that Amīr-Naṣr was slain by his own slaves, 12th of Ramaṣān, 330 II., but some say it took place in 331 H. Nūh, Ismā'īl, and Muḥammad, and the first succeeded him.

VI. NÜH, SON OF NASR, SON OF AHMAD, SĀMĀNĪ.

Amir Nūḥ, son of the Amir-i-Sa'īd, ascended the throne of the dominion of 'Ajam, on the 5th of the month of Sha'bān, in the year 331 H.', and he reigned for a period of twelve years and three months. He had two sons, 'Abd-ul-Malik and Manṣūr. The Lord of the Faithful, Al-Muttaki B'illah, sent Amir Nūḥ a standard, with the deed of investiture, confirming him in the government of the whole of the territories of 'Ajam and Khurāsān, which had been held by his father. He appointed the Imām, Shams-ul-A'immah, Abi-ul-Fazl, Muḥammad, son of Al-Ḥākim, Sarakhsī, the author of the work entitled "Mukhtaṣari-Kāfi," to the office of Wazīr, and made him his Nāyab, and entrusted to him the administration of his affairs'.

Having entered upon his office, the Imām began to conduct the affairs of the country according to the precepts of wisdom and knowledge, the rules of justice, and the canons of the orthodox law and usage, and, in such a manner, that he left not the least thing neglected. Matters went on in this way until Amīr Nūh, through the rebellion of 'Abd-ullah, son of Ashkān', Khwārazm Shāh, proceeded to Marw' in 332 H., and brought that important matter to a successful issue. In the year 335 H., his

4 In 330 H., according to others, as stated previously.

Nüh first appointed Häkim Abü-l-Faşl, Ahnad, son of Muhammad, to the office of Warfr in 330 H., when he succeeded his father. In the same year I find Amfr Nüh giving orders to put the Wazfr Abü-l-Faşl, Al-Bal'amf, to death. This is not the Wazfr Al-Bal'amf, who translated the Tärfkh-l-Tabarf, but of the same family.

7 Neither "Meru" nor "Merve" is the correct pronunciation,

⁶ The Mujmal-i-Faşib-i mentions among the events of the year 332 H., that 'Abd-ullah, son of Aṣhkām, manifested hostility towards Amīr Nūh, but where, is not stated. The Khwārazm Shāhis are not mentioned by our author until a long period after this time. The name of this person is written Aṣhkān, Aṣhkāh, ad Askāb, in as many different copies of the MS. In 331 H. Karā-Tigin had been removed from the government of Hirāt, and it was conferred upon Ibrāhīm, son of Simjūr, who, in the following year, sent thither Abū-I-Faṣl-i-Azīc, son of Muḥammad, the Sijizi, to act as his deputy, until he came himself, and directed that the gateways should be destroyed and the walls of the city thrown down.

uncle, Is-hāk³, who had fled to Baghdād, had managed to obtain from the <u>Kh</u>alifah, Al-Muktafī B'illah, the investiture of <u>Kh</u>urāsān. He, accordingly, entered those parts, and seized upon the territory of Jibāl³ and <u>Kh</u>urāsān.

Amir Nūh had proceeded to Marw to expel him, but the whole of his nobles, his retinue, and the soldiery were disaffected. They had become annoyed and irritated at the enlightenment displayed, and the just administration of Shams-ul-A'immah, and had become quite sated with his ministry, because he had entirely fettered the hands of tyrants and oppressors, and restrained their extortionate demands and exactions, so that that party were unable to succeed in acquiring what their ambition and tyranny suggested.

Amir Nüh, was in urgent need of his army's services, to enable him to oppose his uncle, Amir Is-hāk, whilst the troops began to show a rebellious spirit towards him, and an inclination to take the side of his uncle. A party of the officers of his army, tyrants and enemies to progress and good government, proceeded to the presence of Amir Nuh, and stated that all the dissatisfaction and discontent among his retinue and troops, the confusion in the country, and division in the state, was caused by the Wazir, Shams-ul-A'immah 1. "Give him," they demanded, "over into our hands, or otherwise we will all join your uncle." Amir Nüh was constrained by necessity to deliver the Imam into the hands of those tyrants, and they brought him forth. At the entrance of the royal residence there stood two tall white poplar-trees. These they bent downwards, and, fastening each of that unfortunate minister's feet to a branch of either tree which was nearest it, let the trees spring back again into their upright

⁶ Other authors mention hostilities between Amir Nüh and his uncle Ibrāhim.

⁹ Jibal, or the Highlands of 'Irak, is meant here.

¹ Faşiḥ-i, under the events of the year 335 H., mentions that Abū-Alī-i-Simjūr became hostile towards Amīr Nūḥ, son of Naṣr, and that the troops demanded of him the Wazīr, Hākim Abū-I-Faṣl, son of Muḥammad, and that the Amīr had to comply, whether he liked it or not, and that they put the Wazīr to death, after he had held that office four years. After his being thus put to death, Amīr Nūḥ conferred the office of Wazīr upon Shams-ül-A'immah; so it seems from this, that our author has confused the two ministers into one.

position, and that great man was thus torn asunder. This occurrence took place in the year 335 H.

Amir Nuh, son of Nasr, died in 343 H., and he was styled by the title of Amir-i-Hamid, or the Laudable Amir,

VII. 'ABD'-UL-MALIK, SON OF NÜH, SĀMĀNĪ.

On the decease of Amir Nüh, the son of Nasr, the whole of the great nobles and principal commanders of the troops agreed together to give their allegiance to his son, Abū-l-Fawāris-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, and they accordingly placed him on the throne. The Wazir's office was given to Abū Mansiir Muhammad, son of Al-'Aziz2, and the commander over the Amir's troops was Abū Sa'id-i-Bakir, son of Al-Malik, Al-Farghānī.

Amir 'Abd-ul-Malik based the administration of the government of his dominions upon the rules of justice and rigour, and placed Walis [governors] in different parts, while others of the great nobles were retained by him in authority near his own person. An arrangement was entered into with Abū-l-Hasan, son of Buwiah respecting his territory, for the sum of 200.000 ruknī dirams 3. This treaty was concluded, in accordance with the mandate of the Amir 'Abd-ul-Malik, by Abū Sa'id-i-Bakir, son of Al-Malik, Al-Farghani, before mentioned, who was the general of his troops; but Abū Sa'id being suspected of partiality in this matter towards the Dîlaman and the family of Buwiah, Amir 'Abd-ul-Malik put him to death. He also imprisoned the Wazir, and subsequently put him to death likewise, as both he and Abū Sa'id had become tainted with the doctrine of the Karāmitah sect of heretics. The command of his troops was entrusted to Alb-Tagin , the Haiib [chamberlain].

3 See the dynasty of the Dialamah, page 55.

² Amir 'Abd-ul-Malik made Abū Ja'far, ul-'Utbā, his Wazir, according to other authors.

⁴ In Fasin-i, Alb. Tagin is first mentioned in the year 267 H. in the following words :- "Birth of Alb-Tagin, the freedman () of Nasr, son of Ahmad, Sāmāni." According to the same excellent authority in 346 H., Abū Manşūr, son of'Abd-ur-Razzāķ, who had been made Wāli [ruler] of Hirāt [which appears to have always formed a province of itself, from its constant separate mention). that same year left it, and retired to Tus, thus throwing up his command.

until the year 350 H.5, when Amîr 'Abd-ul-Malik, having gone one evening to the Maidan or Course to amuse himself in playing Chaugān 6, fell from his horse and was killed 7, after having reigned for a period of little over seven years.

VIII. MANŞŪR, SON OF NŪHS, SĀMĀNĪ.

On the decease of Amir 'Abd-ul-Malik, the commanders of the troops, and the heads and elders of the religious bodies and the law, at the capital [Bukhārā], met together,

Great agitation and commotion took place at Hirāt in consequence, and the government was bestowed upon the Ḥājib, or chamberlain, Alb-Tigfn. The latter sent his deputy, Abi Is-jāk-I-Jāhiri, thither; but in the same year Abū Is-jāk was seized and bound and removed, and Ḥusain, son of Rfbāl, came to Hirāt as Alb-Tigfn's deputy. ** ** In 350 H. Hirāt was piven to Abū-I-Ḥasan-i-Sīmjūr. This Alb-Tigfn is the Turkish slave who was master of Sabuk-Tigfn, who was also a Turkish slave, and father of Maḥmād of Ghaznfu. Some persons, who appear to have been unable to read Persian for themselves, have called him by all sorts of names in their so-called "Histories of India," and in professed translations, such as "Alputtekein," "Abistagen," "Abistagen," "Abistagen," "Alberggin," and the like, from Dow down to Marshman, and his "Samanides" and "Aluptugeen," who "rose through the gradations of office to the government of Candahar [which is never once mentioned by any writer of that period] or Ghuzni"—he is not quite sure which.

Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ūd, Al-Fanākātī, says in 351 H. Manṣūr succeeded in

349 H.

6 Chaugān is a game somewhat resembling tennis, but played on horseback, and with a stick with one end bent, instead of a bat. The Turks were passionately fond of it. Amfr. 'Abd-ul-Malik, Sāmānī, was riding at full speed after the ball, when he fell from his horse, and was so injured thereby that he died. Kuf-bud-din, Ī-bak, the first of the Turkish slave-kings of Dihlī was also killed from a fall while playing at this same game.

7 Fasih-i says, "This occurred in the year 348 H., although some say in 351 H.," and, that "it happened either whilst playing at Chaugan, or whilst hunting." He had reigned seven years, six months, and eleven days.

b There is great discrepancy here between our author and others. The Tarikh-i-Guzidah, Nusakh-i-Jahān-Ārā, Lubb-ut-Tawārikh, Tārikh-i-Ibrā-hīmī, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, Khulāṣat-ul-Akhbār, Tārikh-i-Vāfa²i, and last, and not the least trustworthy history, the Mujmal-i-Faṣih-i, all say that Abū-Ṣāilih, son of 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of 'Nūh, surnamed Us-Sadid, the son, not the brother of the late Amīr 'Abd-ul-Malik, succeeded his father. The first event mentioned in the latter work, under the year 340 µL, is "Accession to the throne of Manṣūr, son of 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ, son of Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, son of Ismā'li, Sāmānī." What is most strange in our author's statement is that he only mentions one name of the two; and therefore I suspect he has confused them. All the copies of the MS., however, are alike on this point.

and held consultation whether they should raise to the throne Abū Ṣāliḥ-i-Manṣūr, son of Nūḥ, the late Amīr's brother, or the latter's son.

At this juncture Alb-Tigin, the Amir-i-Haiib [Lord-Chamberlainl, was absent in Khurāsan, and the Wazir of the late Amir was 'Ali Al-Bal'ami', between whom and the Amir-i-Haiib great unanimity and concord existed. The Wazir wrote to Alb-Tigin to consult with him on this matter. and have his advice, to which Amir Alb-Tigin wrote in reply that the son's right to succeed his father to the throne was greater than that of the father's brother1: but, before Alb-Tigin's reply had time to arrive, the whole of the soldiery, the great nobles, and the heads of religion and law, had agreed to place Amir Mansur, son of Nuh, on the throne, and had already installed him thereon. When the news reached Alb-Tigin respecting Amir Mansur's elevation to the sovereignty, he despatched messengers and agents in order to stop by the way, those bearing his letter of reply, and to bring it back, but they did not succeed in finding the kāsids, or couriers, who bore it.

Amīr Alb-Tigin [at this period] held the government of the province of Nishāpūr from the Sāmāni Court's, but it was [now] conferred upon Ibn 'Abd-ur-Razzāk'.

9 His name is not correctly given by our author. His right name is Abū 'Alī, son of 'Abd-ullah, Muḥammad, Al-Bal'amī; and on the authority of the Ägār-ul-Nuzarī, Tārīkh-i-Yāfa'ī, and other works, Abī 'Alī was the translator of the Tārīkh of Imām Muḥammad Jarīr-uṭ-Tabarī, as stated in the preface to

that translation. See note 4, page 44.

I Other writers state quite contrary to this, and say that Alb-Tigfn, having risen so as to be considered one of the greatest Amfrs, was written to, and asked which of the two named he preferred being raised to the throne. He wrote in reply that the uncle was the best of the two; but, before his reply came, the nobles and great men had raised Manşūr, son of the late 'Abd-ul-Malik, to the throne. On this account Manşūr, son of the late 'Abd-ul-Malik, to the throne. On this account Manşūr cherished emmity towards him, or at least Alb-Tigfn thought so. Faşiḥ-f says nothing whatever respecting the letter to the Wazīr, or his advice as to the succession. Had Alb-Tigfn written what our author states he did, it was entirely in favour of the son, and therefore if Manṣūr was the son he could have no cause to entertain emmity against him; but, if the uncle, the case would be different. I have been very careful to give the exact words here.

2 See note 4, page 40.

³ It was conferred upon Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Simjūr in 351 H., he having become Ṣāḥib-ul-Jaish, or commander of the troops, and proceeded to Nishāpūr and the government of Hirāt was conferred upon Abū-l-Ḥasan, son of 'Umro Al-Fāryābi. After four mouths it was bestowed upon Talhah, son of Muhamma-l, Un-Nisā'i. In 352 H. Alb-Tigin died.

Alb-Tigin was filled with wonder and astonishment, and he determined to proceed from Nishāpūr to the court of Bukhārā'; but, when he had reached Balkh, on the way thither, having been informed respecting the change in the heart of Amir Manṣūr towards him, on account of the letter he had despatched [which had fallen into Manṣūr's hands], on reaching Balkh, he turned aside, and proceeded towards Ghaznîn. Amir Manṣūr despatched a commission after him, and pacified his mind '[by assuring him of his favour].

In this reign, Ḥasan, son of Buwiah, died "; and his son, Fanā Khusrau, removed his father's treasures, and proceeded to Baghdād, overcame his uncle, Bakhtyār, and possessed himself of "Irāk. The 'Ulamā and the Kāzīs he now put forward, and solicited an accommodation from Amīr Manṣūr, under the agreement that he, Fanā Khusrau, should retain possession of the territories of Trāk, Rai, Gūrgān, and Ṭabaristān, in fief, on payment of a tribute, at the rate of one thousand gold dīnārs daily!

During the reign of Amir Mansūr, in Farghānah, Sijistān, and Irāk, the whole of the great nobles were continually revolting from his authority; but the Almighty was pleased to bestow victory upon the Amīr's nobles and

⁴ This too is quite contrary to other writers, who give much greater details of these matters. An army was sent by Mansur against Alb-Tigin, who defeated it, and then marched against Ghaznin, and gained possession of it. Upon this Manşūr proposed to move against him in person, but instead, he sent a still larger force than before against him, but did not succeed in reducing him. The details of these events are far too long for insertion here. I may mention, however, that "when Alb-Tigin appeared before Ghaznin, the Sahib. or lord of Ghaznin, refused to admit him, on which he invested it until it was reduced to such straits that the city was surrendered to him, and he put the Bādshāh of Ghaznīn to death." On this Amir Mansur sent 30,000 horse against him, but he suddenly fell upon them with a force of 6000, and defeated them. On this Mansur gave up the contest. Our author says nothing more respecting Alb-Tigin until the middle of the next reign, and then, that he "had died at Ghaznin." The Mujmal-i-Fasih-i, which is quite silent on the hostility between Mansur and his slave, and the cause of it, states, under the year 352 H., that "Alb Tigin, Turk, died at Ghaznin in this year," and that "Is-hak, son of Alb-Tigin, assumed the government." See note on this subject at page 71. Our author is entirely silent on the affairs of Khalaf, son of Ahmad, in Sijistan, and of his proceeding to the court of Bukhara to obtain aid from Mansur. See notes to Section XIV.

⁵ The investiture of Ghaznin he means, no doubt.

⁸ See account of the Buwiahs farther on, and note ⁸ to page 63.

⁷ The .I. O. L. MS., the Bod. MS., and the R. A. S. MS., say "three thousand gold dinars;" but the other MSS. give the amount as above.

troops, until the whole of the rebels were reduced to submission.

Amir Manşūr died on Tuesday, the 11th of the month of Shawwāl, 365 H.8, after a reign of seventeen years, six months, and eleven days. He went by the surname of the Amir-i-Sadid, or the Steadfast Amir.

IX. NÜH, SON OF MANŞÜR, SON OF NÜH, SĀMĀNĪ.

His sons were Manşūr, 'Abd-ul-Malik, and Muḥammad'. On the departure from this world of Amir Manşūr, son of Nūḥ, they [the people] gave their allegiance to his son, Amir Abū-l-Ķāsim-i-Nūḥ, and raised him to his father's throne. The Lord of the Faithful, Uṭ-Ṭā't'u-L'illah, sent him a patent of investiture and a standard.

The new ruler directed Fāyik-i-Khāṣah¹, and Tāṣh², the Ḥājib [chamberlain], to assume the command of his troops and the direction of military affairs. Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Sīmjūr, who was the son of a slave of this dynasty, and ruled, in the name of Amīr Nūḥ, over parts of Khurāsān, such as Hirāt and Nīṣhāpūr, and over the territory of Māwar-un-Nahr³, received the title of Nāṣir-ud-Daulah from the Amīr, and the territory of Ṭūs was added to the territories alreadv held by him.

The office of Wazir was conferred upon Abî-ul-Ḥasan-i-'Abd-ullah, son of Aḥmad Al-'Utbā'; and Tāsh, the

Hājib, was made head of the army, or commander-inchief, with the title of Ḥisām-ud-Daulah. Kābūs, son of Washm-gir, was made Wāli [governor] of Gurgān,

B Five years previous to this event, in 360 H., Mahmud, son of Sabuk-

Tigin, was born.

¹ From one meaning of this word, Fāyik appears to have been a secretary. The Tārikh-i-Ibrāhimi calls him Fāyik-i-Bak-Tūzūn.

⁹ The author's 'arrangement of his work is by no means uniform; he sometimes mentions the sons of rulers, and at times leaves them out altogether. This too is often the case with respect to their titles. The title of Nüh was Ar-Riga, and other authors style him Nüh, son of Manşür, son of 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nüh, son of Napr, &c.

² His right name is Abn-l-'Abbās-i-Tāsh.
3 So in all copies of the text.
4 The author of the Tārlkh-i-Vamnu was of this family. The name has been sometimes written 'Utbī. Guzidah, and other most trustworthy works state that Abū 'Alī, son of 'Abd-ullah-i-Muḥammad, son of Bal'amī, translator of the Tārlkh-i-Tabarī, was his Wazīr. In the preface to that translation Manşūr is styled son of Nūb.

and he and other nobles were despatched along with Tāsh into 'Irāk, in order to carry on hostilities against Buwiah's, son of Al-Ḥasan, son of Buwiah. They fought a battle before the gate of Gurgān and were defeated, and Tāsh, the Hāiib, was overthrown and had to retreat.

After some time Tāsh and Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Sīmjūr, both of them, revolted; but, after some struggles, and victory over the Dīālamah of the family of Buwiah, they both returned to their allegiance i, and the command of Amīr Nūḥ's forces, after some time, fell to Abī 'Alī, son of Sīmjūr, and Nīṣhāpūr was made over to him, and he received the title of 'Imād-ud-Daulah.

In this reign likewise, Amir Abū Mūsā-i-Hārūn, Ī-lak 8 Khān, determined to attack Bukhārā, and Amir Nüh fled to Āmul , and kept in retirement. Abi 'Ali, son of Simjūr, now began to act in a rebellious manner. I-lak Khan, after having succeeded in gaining possession of the country [Bukhārā] and overthrowing the government, became greatly afflicted with hæmorrhoids, and determined to retire into his own territory again. He sent for Amir 'Abd-ul-'Aziz, son of Nüh, son of Nasr, who was an uncle of Amir Nüh's, and presented him with a robe of honour, and made over the territory to him, after which he retired towards Turkistan. Amir Nüh, son of Mansür, brought assistance from the Turkmans, and set out in pursuit of I-lak Khan until he came up with him: but I'lak Khan faced about, and inflicted a defeat upon his pursuers before the gate of Samrkand; and on his way back to Turkistan the Khan died.

Amir Nüh returned again to Bukhārā, and once more

⁵ So in the original; but it was against the forces of 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, Abū Shujā'-i-Fanā Khusrau, the Dilami, that Amir Nūh's forces were sent. The details are very lone.

⁶ Our author's account here is very confused. The details would occupy more space than I can spare.

⁷ Abū-l-'Abbās-i-Tāsh, surnamed Ḥisām-ud-Daulah, died in 379 H., at Jurjān. Some copies of the text have وفات for الم

⁸ This is incorrect; it was Bughrā Khān, ruler of Turkistān, not Ī-lak, who was his son and successor, as mentioned farther on by our author himself. According to Guzidah and other histories, Abū 'Alī-i-Sānjūr contemplated assuming independent sovereignty, and sought support from Bughrā Khān to aid him in doing so. Bughrā Khān's coming was after Nūḥ and Sabuk-Tigin proceeded to Hirāt to attack Abū 'Alī-i-Sānjūr. See note ' to page 46.

⁹ In Mazandaran.

acquired strength; but, through the rebellion of Abū 'Alii-Simjūr, the affairs of <u>Kh</u>urāsān had fallen into great disorder, and [to make matters worse] Amir Alb-Tigin had likewise died at <u>Gh</u>aznin, and Sabuk-Tigin 'had suc-

ceeded him 2 there, and become very powerful.

The people of Balkh, on account of the weak state of the Samani ruler's power, implored aid from Amir Sabuk-Tigin from the tyranny of Fāyik-i-Khāsah, and he had marched thither. Amir Nuh sent a sagacious person to him, and great graciousness and courtesy passed between them, and compacts were entered into. Amir Sabuk-Tigin came to Kash and Nakhshab, and Amir Nüh came out of Bukhārā [to meet him], and they united [their forces], and afterwards marched into Khurāsān to crush Abi 'Ali-i-Simjūr 4. When they reached the confines of Tal-kan, the agents and instigators of the Karāmitah and Mulāhidah schismatics had arrived in that territory, and a great number of the people of those parts had listened to and accepted their doctrine. Amir Sabuk-Tigin laid hands upon the whole of them, and made holy war, as by orthodox institutes prescribed, [upon them], and obtained the title of Nāsir-ud-din.

When Bū 'Alī-i-Sīmjūr became aware that Amīr Nūḥ and Sabuk-Tigin had set out towards Hirāt, he left Nīshā-

² Sabuk-Tigin had certainly succeeded; but between his accession and Alb-Tigin's death sixteen years had intervened, and three other persons had ad-

ministered the government.

3 "Kesh," as this place has been styled in some works, is an impossible word. The Persian is at and by any change of the wovel points it cannot be made Kesh. It must be either Kash, Kish, or Kush; but the first is correct.

¹ The only correct way of spelling his name as given with the vowel points—s followed by the short vowel a, silent b followed by the short vowel a, and silent k = Sabuk; t with the short vowel t, and silent g, the long vowel \overline{t} , and silent $n = Tigin = \bigcup_{a \in \mathcal{A}_{b}} \dots (Sabuk Tigin)$. Neither "Sebektekein," nor "Sabuk Tagin," "Subuktugeen," "Sébekteghin," "Subuktagi," &c.

⁴ Faṣiḥ-fi says, under 382 H., "Amīr Nūḥ, son of Manşūr, Sāmānī, and Amīr Nāṣir-ud-dīn, Sabuk-Tigin along with him, came to Hirāt, and Gught a battle with Abū 'Alāi-Sīmjūr, and overthrew him." It was in the following year, 383 II., that Bughrā Khān advanced against Bukhārā. Our author has put this event previewdy to Nūḥ and Sabuk-Tigin joining against Abū 'Alāi-Sīmjūr, not only confusing the order of events, but also giving Bughrā Khān a wrong name. His title and name was Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Hārūn, son of Sulinān, son of I-lak Khān, surnamed Bughrā Khān, the Turk, and he held the tract of territory from Kāshghar to the Jībūn. His son, I-lak Khān, succeeded him. In 384 II. Amīr Nūḥ gave the government of Khurāsān to Sabuk-Tigih.

pur and proceeded thither. Amir Nuh, on the day of the engagement between the two armies, gave up the command of the troops to Amir Sabuk-Tigin. When their forces encountered each other before the gate of Hirat, and. during the engagement, Dārā, son of Kābūs, son of Washm-gir, who was on the side of Abū 'Ali, deserted's. and went over to the other side; and Abū 'Alī was overthrown, through the misfortune of his having acceded, as well as most of the chief men of that territory, and his army also. to the exhortations of the Karāmitahs, and having become contaminated with that heresy. He had founded a Masiid-i-Jāmi's, or great masjid, at Nīshāpūr, intending, when it should be completely finished, that the Khutbah should be read there for Mustansir-i-Misri7. This victory was gained by Amir Nüh, son of Mansür, in the middle of the month of Ramazan, in the year 384 H.8; and, after this success, the affairs of the province of Hirāt were arranged by Amīr Nüh, and he proceeded to the territory of Nishāpūr.

Abū'Alī-i-Sīmjūr nowsought for peace; but, on his request not being acceded to, he left Nīṣhāpūr, and set out towards Rai, and sent his son to Abū-l-Ḥaṣan, son of Buwiah. Amīr Nūḥ was now left to return [to his capital]; and Sabuk-Tīgīn and his son, Amīr Maḥmūd, were stationed at Nīṣhāpūr; but, as Amīr Nūḥ paused at Ṭūs, Sabuk-Tīgīn despatched his son, Amīr Maḥmūd, to the Court; and he was nominated to the command of the troops, and the title of Saif-ud-Daulah was conferred upon him, together with the government of Nīṣhāpūr. Subsequently to this, Amīr Nūḥ, son of Manṣūr, returned to Bukhārā, leaving Balkh, Hirāt, Nīṣhāpūr, and the territory of Khurāsān', under the care of Amīr Sabuk-Tīgīn and his son, Amīr Maḥmūd, the latter of whom took up his quarters at Nīṣhāpūr.

⁵ With a body of troops.

⁶ The great masjid, in which the Khutbah is read on Fridays, is called by

⁷ The rival Khalifah, whose seat was in Migr, and who was head of the Karāmiṭah sect at this period, was Ul-'Azīz B'illah, Manşūr-i-Nizār, who died in 386 H.

^{*} Faşih-i says Nü h defeated Abū 'Ali-i-Simjür at Nishāpūr, and that Abū 'Ali fled.

⁹ He was not "Amir" Mahmud then, and the author's intention here is merely to call him by the title he subsequently acquired.

¹ So in the original.

In the month of Rabi'-ul-awwal, 385 H., Abū 'Ali-i-Simiūr came out of Gurgān, and advanced to Nishāpūr, with the intention of compelling Mahmud to relinquish it, and the people of the city espoused his cause. Mahmud, after much opposition and hard fighting, was defeated, for he had but a small force with him, and retired again to Hirat. Abū 'Ali-i-Simjūr again gained possession of Nishāpūr, and continued there until Sabuk-Tigin, with a large army, advanced towards that place. Abū 'Alī moved forward towards Tus to oppose his advance, and there they encountered each other, and a severe and sanguinary battle ensued. Amir Mahmud made an attack upon the rear of Abu 'Ali's army, and broke through his ranks, and overthrew Favik, who was with him, and completed the defeat of Abū 'Alī's army, Fāvik retired to Bukhārā, and there was thrown into confinement, and died?, Amir Sabuk-Tigin proceeded to Balkh, and took up his quarters there3; and Amir Mahmud returned again to Nishapur.

At length, on Friday, the 13th of the month of Rajab, 387 H., Amir Nüh, son of Mansür, departed this life. His reign extended over a period of twenty-one years and nine months; and in this same year Amir Sabuk-Tigin also died.

X. MANŞÜR, SON OF NUḤ, SON OF MANŞÜR.

The late Amir Nūḥ had nominated his son, Amir Mansūr, as his heir and successor; and, when the former died, his son ascended his father's throne. He entrusted the command of his forces to Fāyik-i-Khāṣah; and Abū Manṣūr-i-'Aziz', who, through fear of Amir Maḥmūd, son

3 Hostility arose between Amir Nüh and Sabuk-Tigin in 386 H.

⁵ He has not been mentioned before, and who or what he was, the author does not say; but Faşih-i mentions that the Wazir, Abū Manṣūr-i-'Aziz, was removed from that office in 388 H., on account of disagreement with Fayik, the

Hājib.

² Other writers say that Fāyik, after this defeat, separated from Abū 'Alf, and feared to return to Amfr Nüh, although he had permission to do so. He went, therefore, and joined Ī-lak <u>Khān</u>, son of Bughrā <u>Khān</u>, and obtained high rank in his service.

⁴ Some state that Abū 'Alī and Fāyik sent a force of slaves and had him put to death; others, that it was supposed he was assassainated at the instigation of the Sāḥib, Ibn-i-'Ulbād, the Wazīr of Fakḥr-ud-Daulah, Abū-I-Ḥaṣan-i-Buwāh, by the Karāmiṭah schismatics. Faṣiḥ-f says, "Amīr Ar-Rāzī-i-Nūḥ, died at Nīṣhāpūr, 13th of Rajab 387 m.; and, in the same year, Sābuk-Tigin, the slave of the house of Sāmāfi, also died."

of Sabuk-Tigin, had fled, and retired to Isfanjāb*, was brought back again. At the time of returning he had implored help from I-lak Khān, soliciting that he would take vengeance upon the enemies and opponents of Amir Manşūr. When Abū Manşūr, son of 'Aziz, reached the gate of Samrkand he seized him; and at this period Fāyik-i-Khāṣah was at Samrkand. I-lak Khān summoned Fāyik to his presence, and despatched him to Bukhārā with an army; and, on Amir Manṣūr becoming aware of it, he left Bukhārā, and retired to Āmul.

When Fāyik reached Bukhārā, and approached the gate of the palace of the Sāmānī princes, he showed great emotion, and became greatly agitated, and went and joined Mansūr [Amir Mansūr, son of Nūh], and asked of him why he had left the government, and abandoned the capital. Mansūr, on this, returned to Bukhārā again, and left the office of commander of the troops [there, as previously stated,] to Fāyik, and in Khurāsān the command over the troops was given to Bak-Tūzūn², as Amir Mahmūd had proceeded to Ghaznīn, in order to take possession of the territory of his father, Sabuk Tīgīn [who was now dead], and he left Bak-Tūzūn the command over the forces in Khurāsān³.

At this period Bak-Tūzūn slew Abū-l-Ķāsim-i-Simjūr, and took up his residence at Nishāpūr; and, on this, Amir Maḥmūd marched an army from Ghaznīn towards Khurāsān.

⁶ Also written Sifanjāb,

⁷ In every copy of our author which I have compared, except one, the first letter of this word is m, and the other letters also differ; but from other histories it is fully proved that the name of this personage is Bak-Tūzūn. A similar name occurs in the history of the Diālamah: and sometimes the Bak is omitted, as in the Jām'i-u-t-Tawārligh. Guzidah also has Bak-Tūzūn. The word, Bak, (ak) is quite a distinct word from Beg (ck). The Shams-ul-Lughat describes it as written with Arabic kāf [i. e. not gāf], and short a—Bak, signifying "a lord," "a great man." It is a title or surname, like Bak in Bak-Taghdi, Alb in Alb-Tigin, and Balkā in Balkā-Tigin, &c. The Tārikh-i-Dahām calls him Fāyik-i-Bak-Tūgin.

The command of the troops, and the government which he had held, when the late Amr died. Other authors state that Manşūr would not confirm Maḥmūd in that appointment, and that he became hostile in consequence.

A great deal of detail is wanted here to elucidate these transactions. In the month of Rabi*-ul-Awwal, 388 H., Abū-l-Ķāsim, the commander of the Simjūri forces, was defeated by Bak-Tūxūn, on which he retired to Fūṣḥaṇi, Bak-Tūxūn again assembled a force, and advanced to Fūṣḥaṇi against Abū-l-Kāsim; but an agreement was arrived at between them. I have not space to give further details.

Bak-Tūzūn, being aware that he could not cope with Māḥmūd, evacuated Niṣhāpūr, and set off for the presence of Amir Manṣūr. The latter had left Bukhārā, and had arrived at Marw, and Fāyik was with him; but, when Bak-Tūzūn joined him, Amir Manṣūr had reached Sarakhs. Fāyik-i-Khāṣah and Bak-Tūzūn now conspired together to dethrone Amir Manṣūr; and, on the night of the 12th of the month of Ṣafar¹, 389 H., they removed him from the sovereignty, after which they left Sarakhs, and went back to Marw again. There they agreed together to place Abū-l-Fawāris-i-Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ, on his brother's throne. This they carried out, and they deprived Amīr Abū-l-Ḥīrṣ²-i-Manṣūr, son of Nūḥ, of his sight, after he had reigned one year and eight months.

XI. ABŪ-L-FAWĀRIS-I-'ABD-UL-MALIK, SON OF NŪḤ.

By the time that Fāyik-i-Khāṣah and Bak-Tūzūn had placed Amīr'Abd-ul-Malik upon the throne, Amīr Maḥmūd'had arrived at Balkh; and, on being made acquainted with this occurrence, he advanced to the gates of Marw in order to revenge the treatment which Amīr Manṣūr had suffered at their hands'. They, however, sent an agent to negotiate with Maḥmūd; and an arrangement was entered into between them and him, whereby it was agreed that Hirāt and Balkh should be held by Maḥmūd, and Marw and Nīṣhāpūr by them. Amīr Maḥmūd, after this arrangement, again retired, and this was on Tuesday, the 26th of the month of Jamādi-ul-awwal, in the year 389 H.

³ He had dethroned his own brother Ismā'il, and had assumed the Ghaznin throne, a short time previous to the accession of Abū-l-Fawāris-i-'Abd-d-M-lli.

ul-Malik.

¹ Faṣiḥ-i says, on the 8th of Ṣafar, and that they then deprived Amir Manşūr of his sight. His reign, according to the same authority, was one year and nine months.

According to some, Abūl-Häris was his title, but Abūl-Hirs is correct. The whole of the Sämäni rulers had titles of this kind, but the author does not always give them. I have supplied them.

⁴ Maḥmūd fought a battle against 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ, who fled, along with Fāyik and Bak-Tūsūn; the two former retired to Bukhārā, and the latter to Nīṣhāpūr. Abū-l-Kasimi-Sīmūr retired to Kuhistān, and Khurisān was left in Maḥmūd's possession. About this time, Maḥmūd gave the command of his troops to his brother Naṣr, and made Balkh the capital of his dominions. See notes to Maḥmud's reign.

At this period, Dārā, son of Kābūs-i-Washm-gir, was Wāli [governor] of Gurgān, and incited a party of the slaves 5, of the Samani kings [who appear to have taken refuge with him], to follow the forces of Amir Mahmud, with the object of plundering his retinue; and they set out in pursuit of them6. Amir Nasr, son of Sabuk-Tigin, the brother of Mahmud, had charge of the rear [column] of his brother's forces, and joined battle with the body of pursuers, and also despatched a messenger to Mahmūd to inform him of the state of affairs. Amír Mahmūd turned back, and proceeded to the scene of action: but, previously to his reaching it, Amir Nasr had already defeated the assailants, and put them to the rout.

When the party of nobles, at Marw, became aware that Mahmud had made a retrograde movement in that direction, they evacuated it, and retired to Bukhārā, Fāvik. shortly after these events took place, died in the month of Shā'bān, of this same year. He had deeply regretted. and heartily repented of the acts he had committed, but all was now of no avail, and his contrition came too late: and all the adherents of the Samani dynasty became separated and dispersed.

After the death of Fayik, Amir Abū-l-Hasan, I-lak'-i-

5 Styled nobles in following paragraph, and refer to slaves such as Alb-Tigin and Sabuk-Tigin, who were some of the chief men in the state.

7 Other authors state that Amir Mahmud, son of Sabuk-Tigin, marched against Bak-Tüzün and Fāyik, who had conspired against their sovereign, dethroned him, and deprived him of his sight, drove them out of Khurasan, and possessed himself of that territory; and that Bak-Tüzün and Fäyik fled

⁶ Mahmud having succeeded his father in 389 H., by the dethronement of his brother Isma'il, appointed his brother Nasr commander of his army in Khurāsān, and made Balkh the capital of his dominions. At this period, Amīr Abū Ibrāhīm-i-Ismā'il, son of Nūh, the last of the Sāmānīs, was struggling to recover the dominions of his ancestors, after having escaped from Bukhārā when I-lak-i-Nasr, son of Bughra Khan, entered it, and had, just before this period, succeeded in reaching Khwarazm. At this time he had come to Bukhārā again, from whence he went to Abīward, and from thence to Nishapur. Nasr, brother of Mahmud, on this, evacuated Nishapur with all despatch, and retreated precipitately towards Hirāt. Subsequently, Mahmüd advanced to Nishāpūr, upon which Abū Ibrāhim fled therefrom, and took shelter with Shams-ul-Ma'ali, Kabus, son of Washm-gir. This must have been the time, when, according to our author, Amir Nasr had charge of the rear [column] of his brother's army, but he has related these events in his usual confused manner, and has not mentioned even the name of Abū Ibrāhim-i-Ismā'il. See note 1, page 52.

Naṣr, son of 'Alî, brother of the <u>Kh</u>ān-i-Buzurg, or the Great <u>Kh</u>ān, advanced from Farghānah, and appeared before the gates of Bu<u>kh</u>ārā, in the month of Zi-Ka'dah, in the year 389 H. He pretended to the people that he had come to render aid to Amir Abū-l-Fawāris-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ. Amir 'Abd-ul-Malik despatched the nobles and principal officers still remaining in his service to receive him; but, as soon as they approached, he gave orders to seize the whole of them; and, on the 10th of Zi-Ka'dah of that same year, he entered Bu<u>kh</u>ārā. Amir 'Abd-ul-Malik concealed himself; but Ī-lak-i-Naṣr asked him to return, and succeeded in getting the Sāmānī prince into his power 's after which he sent him to Ūrjand', and the dominion of the Sāmānīs terminated'. The dynasty,

into Māwar-un-Nahr, and once more conspired with Ī-lak <u>Kh</u>ān, who, under pretence of āiding Amīr 'Abd-ul-Malik, whom they had set up, marched out of Kāāḥghar, and appeared before Bukhārā.

8 Î-lak, son of Bughra Khan, took Bukhara, 10th of Zi-Ka'dah, 389 H. The blind Amir Mansur, 'Abd-ul-Malik, Ibrahim, and Ya'küb, the four sons

of Nuh, were made captive at the same time.

9 One copy has Uzjand, but other writers give Uzgand, and the fortress of Uzgand; and state that there he was confined till his death, which took place in 389 H. It was the capital of Khwārazm, and the name of a province: the 'Arabs called it Jurjānfah. It is the present Urganj.

Other most trustworthy historians, some of whose works I have been quoting from, give an account of the reign, or rather struggles, of another prince of this dynasty, brother of Manşür and 'Abd-ul-Mailk, which, in a con-

densed form, is as follows:-

"ABŪ IBRĀHĪM-I-ISMĀ'ĪL, SON OF NŪḤ.

"He was known by the title of Muntasir, one of the significations of which word is 'extricating one's self from any calamity or misfortune,' which may have reference to the following circumstances. During the uproar and confusion which ensued upon the seizure of 'Abd-ul-Malik by I-lak-I-Nasr. Abu Isma'il, having covered himself with the mantle of a slave-girl, succeeded, by means of that-disguise, in getting out of the throng. For three days he lay concealed in the dwelling of an old woman, after which time he managed to effect his escape from the place in the dress of a common soldier, and reached the territory of Khwarazm. Some of the nobles and soldiery of the Samani dynasty, on becoming aware of his escape, hastened there to join him. Muntasir by this means acquired some strength; and he began to prepare his followers to make an effort to regain the territory of his ancestors. For several years he carried on a desultory warfare on the confines of Khurāsān and Mawar-un-Nahr. He encountered the troops of I-lak Khan [I-lak-i-Nasr]. and the governor of Khurāsān, on several occasions, with various success. At length, in the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal 395 H., while in the encampment of a from the commencement of the reign of Isma'il up to this time, had continued for a period of one hundred and eight years?.

The following table gives the genealogical tree of the race and dynasty of the Sāmānis³:—

MĪ.DĀD إميلاد], father of

KAR-KĪN⁴ كركيي كركين and كدكن and كركي إكركين, father of

BAHRĀM JAS<u>H</u>·NA<u>SH</u>
إحنر and جشن and جشن الجرام جشنش

BAHRĀM CHŪBĪN شوبين] بهرام جوبين, father of NŪSHAD نوشد and أورشد and أورشد and أورشد أورشد], father of NŪSHIR أرتوشد and أورشد أورشرة], father of TAMGHĀN طعفات] طعفان المحافل ملك المحافلة أورسمان
nomad tribe, in whose tents he had sought shelter, in the neighbourhood of Bukhārā, he was put to death by Māh-Rue [moon-faced], the chief of the tribe. The Mujmal-i-Faşiḥ-i states that Māh-Rue was 'Amil or subordinate governor of the district in the vicinity of Uzgand, on the part of Sultan Maḥmūd und that Muḥmūd put Māh-Rue to death for his treatment of Amir Abū Ibrāhīm: Thus ended the dynasty of the Sāmānfs, none of the race being left, after having lasted one hundred and three years, nine months, and eleven days." The account given by Abū-Sulīmān-i-Dā'ūd, Al-Fanākatī, is slightly different from this.

² The I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and its prototype the R. A. S. MS., for they seem, as far as errors go, to be copies of each other, give one hundred and *eighty* years as the period during which this dynasty continued. Guzidah says one hundred and two years, six months, and twenty days.

² To make it more intelligible I have reversed it, as the author begins with the last ruler. It must be also borne in mind that, as such great difference exists in all the MSS. as to the names before Sāmān, and that no vowel points are given, they cannot be absolutely depended upon. I give the variations within brackets, and also mention the result of my comparison with other writers.

* This word of course may possibly be read Gargin, &c., as in Persian, of may be & or g.

No doubt Nushir is correct.

⁶ Faşiḥ-İ gives the following names:—Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, son of منافرة son of المائد son of المائد son of المائد son of المائد son of المائد son of said to have been stationed at Rai and Ahwāz, as Wall of Aṭarbāijān on the part of Humuz, son of Nūṣḥirwān.

NAMES OF RULERS.	PERIOD OF REIGN.	sons.			
AHMAD, son of Asad,	Eighteen years.	Naşr, İsmä'il, İs-hāk, Manşür, Asad, Ya'- küb, Ḥamid, Yaḥyā, Ibrāhin.			
NASR, son of Ahmad,	Eighteen years.	Aḥmad, Nūḥ, Ilyās, Yaḥyā.			
ISMĀ'ĪL, son of Aḥ- mad,	Eight years ⁷ .	Naşr, Manşür, İbrāhim, Yahyā.			
ABŪ NAŞR - I - AḤ- MAD, son of Ismā'il,	Six years and three months.	Ya'kūb, Asad.			
NAȘR, son of Aḥmad,	Thirty years.	Nūḥ, Ismā'il, Manşūr.			
NŬḤ, son of Naṣr,	Twelve years and three months ⁸ .	'Abd-ul-Malik, Abū Şā- liḥ-i-Manşūr.			
'ABD-UL-MAŁIK, son of Nüh,	Little over eight years 9.				
ABŪ ŞĀLIḤ-I-MAN- ŞŪR, son of Nūḥ,	Seventeen years, six months, and eleven days!.				
NÜḤ, son of Abū Ṣāliḥ- i-Manṣūr,	Twenty-one years and nine months.	Manşür, 'Abd-ul-Malik, Muḥammad ² .			
MANŞÜR, son of Nüh,	One year and six months.				
'ABD-UL-MALIK, son of Nüh,	Between nine and ten months.				

⁷ From the period he acquired sole rule. Täri \underline{kh} -i-Guzidah gives seven years and ten months.

9 Two copies have eight years.

There were other sons besides these. See note 8 page 52.

⁸ One MS. gives twelve years and nine months, another eleven years and nine months.

One MS. has seventeen years; another seventeen years, six months, and eleven days; two others, eighteen; but, as he assumed power in 350 H., and died in Shawwil, 365 H., the above is correct.

SECTION X.

THE DYNASTY OF THE DĪĀLAMAH MALIKS AT THE DĀR-UL-KHILĀFAT OF BAGHDAD, AND IN 'IRĀK.

THE first person of the family of the Dialamah, who rose to power, was Mākān, son of Kākī, Dilami¹, who was

¹ Mākān, son of Kākħ, was certainly a native of Dham, but he was not of the same family as the Buwfahs, and belonged to an entirely different dynasty, called the Ål-i-Ziyār.

According to the most trustworthy writers, the first of the family of Buwinh. who attained to sovereign power, was 'Imad-ud-Daulah, Abū-l-Hasan-i-'Alī. who afterwards received the title of Imad-ud-Daulah, the son of Buwiah, son of Fanā Khusrau, Dilami. 'Imād-ud-Daulah's father is said to have been a fisherman. Abū-l Ḥasan-i-'Alī was an officer in the service of Mardawani. as he had previously been in that of Mākān, son of Kāki, whom Mardāwani had succeeded, when Makan retired, and entered the service of the Samanians. Mardawani had conferred some territory upon Abū-l-Hasan, who, in 321 H. considered himself sufficiently powerful to endeavour to gain possession of Işfahan and the territory of 'Irak for himself. Abū-l-Ḥasan accordingly marched against Isfahan, and defeated Muzaffar, son of Yakut, a slave of the 'Abbasi dynasty, who was governor of Fars for the Khalifah. Muzaffar was defeated, and retired to Shiraz, which was his father's head-quarters. Mardawanj did not approve of this movement on the part of Abū-l Ḥasan, and he determined to march to Isfaban and oust him. Abu-l-Hasan was not sufficiently strong to oppose Mardawanj, and was advised to turn his arms against Fars. This he acted upon; and Yākūt, who came out of Shirāz, the capital of Fars, to oppose him, was overthrown. Abu-l-Hasan took possession of it, and made it his capital. This was in 321 H.; and he now assumed sovereignty, and read the Khutbah for himself, and coined In 323 H., on the death of Mardawanj, at Isfahan, he determined to extend his conquests; and he gained possession of Isfahān, Rai, Hulwān, and other territories. He now made his eldest brother, Abū 'Alī-i-Hasan, afterwards entitled Rukn-ud-Daulah, ruler of 'Irak, and sent the youngest, Abu-l-Husain-i-Ahmad, afterwards Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, to Kirman. In 326 H., 'Imad-ud-Daulah, Abu-l-Hasan-i-Ali, sent an envoy to Baghdad to the Khalifah-Ar-Razi B'illah, and asked to be confirmed in the possession of his territory, which was granted; and, in the same year, 'Imad-ud-Daulah left his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, as his representative at Baghdad. In 330 H. 'Imad-ud-Daulah died, after a reign of nearly seventeen years, leaving no sons. Rukn-ud-Daulah, his eldest brother, succeeded him at Shiraz, while Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, the youngest, remained at Baghdad as previously; but, in the course of that same year, Mu'izz-ud-Daulah set out on an expedition towards Misr and Sham. In 333 H. the Khalifah, Al-Muttaki B'illah, was blinded by Tüzün, son of Abu-l-Wafa,

Wali [sovereign] of Gurgan until the reign of Abu 'Ali'? Sāmāni, who succeeded in wresting Gurgan from him, after considerable fighting. Mākān retired towards Rai, and sought shelter from Sham-gir [Washm-gir], son of Avaz. Abū 'Ali went in pursuit of him, and fought an engage. ment with both of them, slew Makan, son of Kaki, and became powerful in that part.

Amir Buwiah, Dilami, was with Mākān's force: and he had a great number of followers and dependents, and grown-up sons, who were endowed with wisdom and valour. and great talent and ability. All of them rose to greatness and renown, and became sovereign princes; and for a considerable time they held the supreme authority and

dominion at the Dar-ul-Khilafat of Baghdad.

Notwithstanding the author made much search for information on this subject in the Tarikh-i-Ibn Haisam-i-Sani 3. but little was to be found respecting them and their actions in those chronicles, on account of some confusion as to which preceded, which followed the other. The author, therefore, has written a short account of them, somewhat based on supposition and conjecture 4. If any errors have been made. he hopes he may be excused, since it is known that no mention is made of them in the histories of 'Ajam and Khurāsān, except very briefly.

a Turk, the Amir-ul-Umra [see note 1, page 58], who set up his son, Al-Mustakfi. We now come to the first ruler mentioned by our author, who, certainly appears to have had a very superficial knowledge of this dynasty. He takes little or no notice of the other two dynasties of Fars and 'Irak, and confines his account to those who ruled at Baghdad. It is the most meagre and incorrect notice of these princes, that I am acquainted with; and, although the dynasty only terminated in 459 H., he ends his history of them in 388 H. Ample materials for a history of this dynasty are available; and I have been obliged to burden the translation with this long note to make the author's account intelligible.

2 So stated in all the copies of the work examined, but erroneously: for it refers to Abū 'Alī, son of Ilvās, Sipah-sālār, or general of the forces of Amīr Naşr, son of Ahmad, Sāmāni, who overthrew Mākān, son of Kāki, as

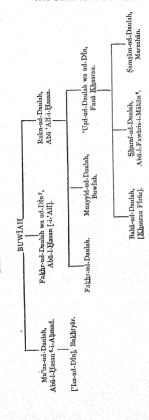
subsequently shown. See latter part of note 9, pages 36, 37,

8 The I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and of course the R. A. S. MS., have "and in Yamini" after the word Sani, but not the other MSS. The word Sani at this place, in four of them, is doubtful; and, in two, another word follows. I think "Ibn Haişam-i-Faryabi" [native of Faryab] is the correct name of this author.

A novel way of writing history, and our author's account of this and other

dynasties shows what such history is.

GENEALOGICAL TREE OF THE DIALAMAH PRINCES OF THE DYNASTY OF BUWTAH, DILAMI'.



5 The whole of the MSS. compared do not contain this Tree, and, in those that do contain it, it is arranged in such a manner as to be The names within brackets I r His title was 'Imād-ud-Daulah. simps unintelligible without reference to the different princes in the body of the work, besides being incorrect. have added. The author mentions the names of ten out of eighteen persons, and gives an account of six only.

• Abt 1. Husain is correct.

• Abt 1. Husain is correct.

• This correct title and name was Sharaf-ud-Daulah-i-Shir-Zail,

I. ABÜ-L-HASAN, SON OF BUWÏAH, UD-DÏLAMÎ.

He bore the title of Fakhr-ud-Daulah 9: and he, first rose to power and dominion, from the time that he was Amir flord of Ahwaz, when the Turks of Baghdad, whose chief and commander was Tuzun, seized the person of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Muttaki B'illah, and deprived him of his sight, set him aside, and fixed a stipend for his support. Having done this, Tūzūn set up the dethroned Khalifah's son, Al-Mustakfi B'illah, in his stead, while Tūzūn himself became Amir-ul-Umra 1, and assumed the direction of the whole of the affairs of the Khilafat.

Abū-l-Hasan, son of Buwiah, assembled the troops of Dilam, and marched towards Baghdad; and for a period of four months carried on hostilities with the Turks, at the expiration of which time the Turks were defeated, and put to flight. Abū-l-Hasan took possession of Baghdad, and his commands were obeyed in all matters respecting the government of the territory, and the Khilafat. A party of spies informed him, however, that the Khalifah, Al-Mustakfi, meditated treachery towards him, in order to get him into his power, and intended to put him to death if he succeeded in doing so. Abū-l-Hasan, however, determined to be beforehand and to anticipate his intention, and seized the person of the Lord of the Faithful. Al-Mustakfi B'illah, blinded him, and set up the Khalifah, Al-Muti'u-L'illah', in his stead. According to the historian Ut-Tabri 3, he gave himself the title of Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, and took the whole power in the State into his own hands, so

⁹ He bore no such title : it was Mu'izz-ud-Daulah. His name also, as given by our author, is not correct. It was Abū-l-Ḥusain-i-Ahmad. For his first rise to power see note-1, page 55. His elder brother, 'Imad-ud-Daulah, ought to have been the first mentioned here.

¹ Lord of Lords: a title adopted by the ministers, or rather tyrants, of the Khalifahs, in the decline of their power. This title was also often conferred upon the chief commander of an army-a captain general.

² Fasih-i, among the events of the year 334 H., mentions the succession of Al-Muti'u-L'illah, and that he had no territory, and was agreeable to a stipend being allowed him.

³ As these events occurred in 334 H., and Muhammad, son of Jayir-ut-Tabari, died at Baghdad, in 310 H., although some say in 311 H., our author must refer to the continuation of Tabari's Chronicle by the Wazir, Al-Bal'ami.

that Al-Muti'u-L'illah was <u>Kh</u>alifah only in name, while he ruled the country, issued his mandates, and exercised the supreme authority over the <u>Kh</u>ilāfat.

Abū-l-Hasan, son of Buwiah, instituted many excellent regulations which he carried out; and he caused the whole of the depopulated and dilapidated parts of Baghdād to be restored and rendered habitable. He also abolished a custom whereby each quarter of the city possessed a separate prison of its own, and had them all demolished. On the son of Abū-l-Hayjā he conferred the fief of Mūṣil, and to his brother, 'Alī, son of Buwiah, he gave the title of 'Imād-ud-Daulah, and to another brother, Hasan, that of Rukn-ud-Daulah; and day by day the sovereignty of the family of Buwiah began to prosper uninterruptedly.

II. AL-HASANS, SON OF BUWIAH, UD-DĪLAMĪ.

He was Amir of Hamadān and Rai, and was a person of great manliness and generosity; and he entertained a large number of troops in his pay, and possessed great military resources. The whole of the men of Dīlam, both high and low, were obedient to his authority. He had several talented and warlike sons grown up, the name of one of whom was Fakhr-ud-Daulah, 'Alī, son of Al-Ḥasan, and of the second, Muayyid-ud-Daulah, Buwiah. Fakhr-ud-Daulah, 'Alī, was Amīr of 'Irāk, to whom Shams-ul-Ma'ālī, Kābūs-i-Waṣhm-gir, went for protection, and sought his assistance, and Fakhr-ud-Daulah accordingly marched to Niṣhāpūr for that purpose, and Muayyid-ud-Daulah had

⁴ Only two copies of the MSS. collated are altogether free from a great blunder, contained in the text here. 'Imād-ud-Daulah whom our author styles Fakhr-ud-Daulah, the first sovereign prince of the dynasty, had no off-spring, hence he could not have conferred the government of Mūṣil on "his" son, Abū-l-Hapjā," as the R. A. S. MS. and I. O. L. MS. No. 1952 have. Other writers, very properly, state that these titles were conferred by the Khalī-fahs. Abū-l-Flapjā is a totally distinct person.

⁵ His correct name is Abū-l-Ḥusain-i-Aḥmad, and his title was Mu'izz-ud-Daulah. His elder brother was called Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-'Alī, as previously stated.

⁴ Only two sons are mentioned by our author. The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, and the R. A. S. MS. also, contains but one name. 'Ugd-ud-Daulah, Abū Shujā'-i-Fanā Khusrau, the eldest of the sons, who was accounted "the cream" of the Buwāh family, is not mentioned here. An account of his reign, however, is given at page 61.

several engagements with them, the events of which $\S \bar{a} b \dot{t}^{7}$ has mentioned in his History.

III. BAKHTYĀR, SON OF AL-ḤASAN*, SON OF BUWĪAH, DĪLAMĪ.

On the death of his father he took possession of Baghdād, and directed the affairs of government after the manner of his father, and acquired great power and dominion.

As soon as he had become firmly established in his authority, the <u>Kh</u>alīfah, Al-Muṭi'u-L'illah, preferred a request to him respecting the sedition and discord caused by the Karāmiṭah sect of schismatics, which had assumed great proportions throughout the empire of Islām, and urged him to assemble forces and suppress them, and uproot them utterly. Bakhtyār, however, did not pay attention to the solicitations of the <u>Kh</u>alīfah, and, consequently, enmity arose between them. Matters assumed such an aspect that Bakhtyār was not safe from the designs of Al-Muṭi'u-L'illah; and the informers of Bakhtyār warned him that the <u>Kh</u>alīfah meditated treachery towards him. Bakhtyār sought his opportunity, according to the statement contained in the History of Ibn-Haiṣam, and assembled together all the Kāzīs and 'Ulamā—judges,

7 The oldest MS. has Zfā-yī, but one of the others has Ṣābī, and another Ṣātī, which is one and the same thing, and I also find Guzīdah quotes, as one of its authorities, the Kiāb-i-Nājī of Ṣābī-i-Dabīr, or Ṣābī, the secretary; and, among the events recorded in Faşib-ī in the year 365 H., is the death of Ṣābīt, son of Siñān, son of Ṣābīt, son of Ṣūātī, on of Ṣūātī, on of Ṣūātī, on of Ṣūātī, in the month of Zl-Ka'dah, the author of the Ṣannafah-ut-Tārīkh, containing a history of events between the years 195 H., and 343 H. This, no doubt, is the author referred to by the Tārīkh-i-Gurādah, and our author.

8 As before stated, the father of Bakhtyār was named Abū-l-Ḥusain-i-Aḥmad, son of Buwfah, and his title was Mu'izz-ud-Daulah. Bakhtyār's title was 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Abū Maŋāri-Fakhtyār. Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Abū Maŋāri-Fakhtyār. Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, the father of Bakhtyār, died at Baghdād, of which he was ruler on the part of his nephew, Amir 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, the head of the dynasty, on the 1st of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 356 h., but, according to other writers, on the 16th of that month. He was known by the name of Ikfā', having lost his left hand, and the fingers of his right, in an affair with the Kurds of Kirmān according to the Tārikhi-Yāfa'i, but other writers say, with the Kūch and Baluch, a nomad tribe [Iwo tribes] then inhabiting a portion of Kirmān, according to the Burhān Kāṭl', and from whom the present Balūchis are descended. Kūch in Persian, among other meanings, signifies a nomad, and in the Afghān language, Kochaey, which some persons, who know no better, imagine to be the name of an Afghān tribe, signifies "pastoral" or "onmad.

lawyers, and ecclesiastics—and transferred the office of Khalifah o to the son of Al-Muṭi'u-L'illah whose name was Abū-Bikr-i-'Abd-ul-Ķarīm, and gave him the title of Uṭ-Ṭā-i'u-L'illah. As soon as he was installed in the Khilāfat, he gave his daughter in marriage to Bakhtyār, Buwiah, and he became the chamberlain and lieutenant of the Khilāfat.

Soon after this dignity was conferred upon Bakhtyār, he set out for Āhwāz in order to levy the revenues and taxes. Sābuk-Tigīn, Chāshnī-gīr, [cup-bearer or taster] who was Bakhtyār's deputy, began to act insubordinately towards his master, and took the power out of his hands?

IV. FANĀ <u>KH</u>USRAU³, SON OF AL-ḤASAN, SON OF BUWĪAH,
DĪLAMĪ.

The title borne by Fanā Khusrau was 'Uzd-ud-Daulah', and he was a proud and haughty prince, but was, at the same time, endowed with great intellect and valour.

The direction of the affairs of the country, and the different forces were left under his control; and the whole of the property and treasure of the dependencies of the Dār-

- 9 The author himself states, in his account of the Khalifahs, Section IV., that Al-Muţi'u-L'illah abdicated in favour of his son, in 363 H., on account of his infirmities. Other historians confirm it; but, in Faşiḥ-t, it is said that he abdicated at the end of Muḥarram, 364 H., having previously been stricken with palsy, and died two months afterwards. It must also be remembered that the Buwiah rulers were Shi'ahs, hence probably their severity towards the Khalifahs.
 - 1 Her name was Shāh-i-Zamān, and she had a dowry of 100,000 dinārs.
 - 2 See note 8, at page 63.
 - 8 Al-Fanākatī considers Fanā Khusrau third prince of the dynasty.
- 4 In 366 II., Rukn-ud-Daulah, Abū 'Alī-i-Ḥasan, son of Buwāh, brother of 'Imād-ud-Daulah, the founder of the dynasty, died. Some asy he died in 365 II. He had succeeded his elder brother, 'Imād-ud Daulah, who died without issue, in the sovereignty of Fārs, the sovereign of which was, in that family, considered suzerain over the other two branches, who ruled in 'Irāk, and at Baghdād. Rukn-ud-Daulah bequeathed his dominions in the following manner: —To his youngest brother, Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Aþmad, he left Kirmān. He afterwards became Amīr-ul-Umrā at Baghdād. He was the father of Baghtyār; and our author calls him Al-Ḥasan, and says he was the second prince of the dynasty. To 'Ugd-ud-Daulah, Abū Bhyā-i-Fanā 'Khusrau, his eldest's son, he left the sovereignty of Fārs; and he became the head of the family, and suzerain over all. To his second son, Muayyid-ud-Daulah, Abū Naşr, he left 'Irāk' and its dependencies; and to his youngest son, Fakhr-ud-Daulah, 'Alī, he bequeathed Rai, Hamadān, Kazwīn, and other territory in Azarbājiān.

ul-Khilāfat came into his possession. The reason of this was, that, when Bakhtvar set out for Ahwaz, to collect the revenue due to the Bait-ul-Mal, or Khalifah's treasury o, Sabuk-Tigin, the Chashni-gir [cup-bearer], who was his deputy at Baghdad, assembled the Turks together, and opposed the authority of Bakhtyar, drove out the Dilamis, broke out into open revolt, and began to act in an overbearing and tyrannical manner. They [the Turks and Sabuk-Tigin] commenced shedding the blood of Musalmans, and carrying off their females. 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Bakhtvar, sent to acquaint his uncle Abū-l-Hasan 6, son of Buwiah, who was ruler of Rai, with what had occurred; and to his first cousin, Fanā Khusrau-i-Abū Shujā', who held the government of Fars, he also gave information; and solicited assistance from both of them. A large army was assembled, and Fanā Khusrau came to his aid with the troops of Fars; and Abū-l-Hasan, his uncle, despatched his forces to co-operate with them.

The combined troops marched towards Baghdād; and Sabuk-Tigin, with the Turks and other forces, moved out of Baghdād, and advanced to meet them. When Sabuk-Tigin and his adherents reached the village of 'Ākūl', he was taken ill, and died after four days. The Turks were defeated; and they took along with them from Baghdād, the Lord of the Faithful, Uţ-Ţā-l'u-L'illah, and marched towards Nahrwān, in order again to encounter Fanā Khusrau. They were defeated a second time, however, and

retired towards Mūsil.

Fanā Khusrau entered Baghdād, and found with respect to the affairs of his cousin, Bakhtyār, that he was in the habit of passing his time in gaiety and pleasure, and that he was no longer fit for and capable of directing the affairs of government. He therefore seized Bakhtyār, and put him in durance. The latter sent a letter of complaint to his uncle, Abū-l-Ḥasan, son of Buwiah, the father of Fanā Khusrau, ruler of Rai, saying: "Your son, Fanā Khusrau, has seized me without cause or reason, and has imprisoned me."

⁵ Intended, according to the Kur'ān, "For God, His Apostle, his kindred, the orphan, the poor, and travellers."

⁶ As before stated, the name of Rukn-ud-Daulah, the uncle of Bakhtyär, was Abū 'Alī-i-Hasan.

⁷ A small town or village in the Mūşil [not Mosal] territory.

The father of Fanā Khusrau issued a mandate to his son, directing him to set Bakhtyār at liberty. This he did, and he [Fanā Khusrau] returned to Fārs; but, when his father died, Fanā Khusrau proceeded to Baghdād, again seized Bakhtyār, and put him to death, after which he took possession of the territory of Baghdād, and the control of the affairs of the Khilāſat 8.

He entered into a compact with the Sāmāni Amirs for the mountain tracts, or Highlands of 'Irāk, as far as Tabaristān, of which he received the tenure from them, at the rate of one thousand dinārs per day.

Fanā Khusrau ruled with vigour and energy; and, as before stated, was excessively proud, but of great spirit and He had, however, great dread of death, so much so that not a soul dared to mention before his throne. in any way, the name of the Gor-i-Dashti, or Wild Ass. because Gor also signifies a grave; and it is stated that he commanded that all graveyards should be enclosed with lofty walls, so that his eyes might not behold a grave. Of his pride and grandeur the following is a specimen. After his decease, eight thousand napkins and handkerchiefs, of great price and fineness of fabric, befitting a king, were found, belonging to him, of brocade, linen, and Egyptian tūzī°, threaded and embroidered with gold, and ornamented with jewels, with which he was wont to wipe his mouth and nose, and which fetched the price of 50,000 dinars of gold.

When his end drew near, he affixed his seal to mandates and decrees, which he gave into the hands of his secretary, directing him to fill them up according to the best of his own ability and judgment, and to issue, and carry them into execution, and not to let people know of his death. For a period of four months his decease was kept con-

^{8 &#}x27;Izz.ud-Daulah, Abū Manşūr.i-Bakhtyār, issaid, by the author of the Mujmai-i-Faşih-i, to have ended his days at Baghdād, in 367 H., having been put to death by his nephew, 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, Abū Shuja-i-Fanā Khusrau, after he had ruled there for a period of eleven years and some months, at the age of thirty-six, and Bahā ud-Daulah, Khusrau Firūz, son of 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, his nephew, succeeded him as ruler of Baghdād.

The name of an expensive and fine fabric so called from being the peculiar manufacture of a town or city of that name, now in ruins. It is said to have been manufactured from flax; but dis is also the name of the bark of a tree like the papyrus.

cealed, and they continued to place his corpse upon the throne, so that people, from a distance, could see him, as they supposed, as usual. When his end drew near, he directed that ashes should be spread upon the floor, in which he rolled about exclaiming, "What advantageth all my wealth and my sovereignty, since death has overcome me!" until he ceased to be.

His death took place in the month of Ramazan, in the

year 372 H. 1 The Almighty alone is eternal.

V. AL-MARZABÁN, SON OF FANÁ KHUSRAU, DĪLAMĪ.

On the decease of his father 'Uzd-ud-Daulah, the Khalifah, Ut-Tā-i'u-L'illah, conferred upon him the title of Samsam-ud-Daulah, and raised him to his father's office 2.

The Khalifah treated him with great esteem and distinction. He embarked on board a vessel on the river Dijlah [Tigris] and proceeded to the palace of Fana Khusrau, and paid a visit of consolation and condolence to his son, Marzabān, and conferred considerable honours and dignities upon him. The Khalifah left the administration of affairs in his hands, and showed great respect and honour towards

1 'Uzd-ud-Daulah died, it is said, at Shirāz, his capital, although Guzidah says, at Baghdad, which is not probable, 15th of Ramazan, 372 H. He was buried in the Mashad, or sepulchre, [especially for those killed fighting for their religion of the Khalifah 'Alf, and his son Imam Husain, which was one of the buildings founded by him. The same illustrious prince also founded the great hospital at Baghdad, and liberally endowed it; and the great embankment over [as the historian from whom I quote says] the river Kur, the like of which there is not in the world, called the Band-i-Amir. This is the same structure that Mac D. Kinneir refers to in his "Geographical Memoir of the Persian Empire." He says, "The river Bund-Emeer [sic] takes its name from a dvke [in Persian a bund] erected by the celebrated Ameer Azad-a-Daulah, Delemi"[!].

Among other great works carried out by him were a town founded opposite Shiraz, named Sūk-i-Amir [plural of Sāk, a market, &c.], the walls of Madinah, and a splendid Sarae or palace, at Baghdad, called the Sarae-i-Sultan. He was succeeded, in the government of Baghdad, by his son, Samsām-ud-Daulah, Al-Marzabān, which latter word is derived from marz, a boundary, border, &c., and signifies the governor of a frontier, and the like. He is also called Abū-Kālinjār, and sometimes Kānjār, the meaning or derivation of which, the Burhan Kati', the Farang-i-Jahangiri, and other works,

do not give. Kāljār, in Persian, signifies war, battle, &c.

This is absurd, for the Khalifahs had long before been stripped of all power, and were mere shadows of sovereignty.

him. He [Marzabān] exercised the authority at Baghdād until his brother, Abū-l-Fawāris, rose against him 3.

VI. ABŪ-L-FAWĀRIS, MĀKĀN4, SON OF FANĀ <u>KH</u>USRAU, DĪLAMĪ

He was ruler of Kirmān; and, when he became aware of the death of his father, and heard of the exalted position of his brother at the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, he assembled troops in Kirmān, and entered Fārs, and seized upon that territory. He then advanced to Āhwāz, and possessed himself of that likewise, having expelled from thence his brother Abī-ul-Ḥasan-i-Abī Shujā', son of Fanā Khusrau, and then he pushed on to Baṣrah. Having gained possession of that place he marched towards Baghdād.

When the news of his approach, and his designs, reached Baghdād, his brother, Ṣamṣām-ud-Daulah, Marzabān, son of Fanā Khusrau, came out and waited on him, in order to show his submission and pay him homage. Abū-l-Fawāris-i-Mākān seized his brother, and deprived him of his sight.

Enmity and hostility now arose between the Turks and Dilamis; and the Turks of Baghdād overcame their opponents, and of the Dilamis about 4000 men were slain by them. After a short time, however, Abū-l-Fawāris overthrew them, and entered Baghdād, and assumed the administration of the affairs of the Dār-ul-Khilāfat. The Khalifah, Uţ-Ţā-i'u-L'illah, conferred upon him the title of Sharaf-ud-Daulah.

After him, the author has not found any annals respecting the Dialamah such as he could write down. What

⁸ in the year 375 H.

⁴ His correct titles and name are, <u>Sharaf-ud-Daulah</u>, Abū-l-Fawāris-i-<u>Sh</u>ir Zail, son of 'Uzd-ud-Daulah. All the copies of the work have 'Mākān,' but it is not mentioned by any other writer that I am acquainted with.

⁵ He was imprisoned in the fortress of 'Ummān after being blinded in 375 H.; and on the death of Sharaf-ud-Daulah, who had dethroned him, he was again brought forth, blind as he was, and reinstated. After about nine months, Shams-ud-Daulah, 'Alf, son of Sharaf-ud-Daulah, rose against him, whom he defeated in 379 H.; but Bahā-ud-Daulah now rose against him, and civil contention continued for some time, till, in 380 H., the sons of 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Bakhyār, put him to death.

⁶ Sharaf-ud-Daulah, and Zain-ul-Millat, in 377 H. He died in the month of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir, 379 H., after reigning seven years over Kirmān, and six months at Baghdäd.

was contained in histories, and what came to his hearing. has been entered herein, so that this work may not be without mention of those princes; and he hopes that those who may peruse it will extend pardon and indulgence to the author for any shortcomings 7.

7 The dynasty of the Buwiahs did not terminate until 459 H., or eighty two years after the date of our author's account of them, when it fell before the power of the Saljūks. His great mistake throughout has been in not keeping the rulers of Fars, 'Irak, and Kirman, separate from those who ruled at Baghdad. Al-Fanakati gives a more accurate account of this dynasty, although a very abridged one. The last of the family was Abū 'Alf-i-Kai-khusrau, son of 'Izz-ul-Mulūk, who died in 487 H., and who submitted to Alb-Arsalān, and had a small tract of territory assigned to him.

SECTION XI.

THE DYNASTY OF THE VAMĪNĪAH 1, AL-MAḤMŪDĪAH SOVEREIGNS OF THE RACE OF SABUK-TIGĪN.

THE pages of this section 2 are devoted to the mention of the Maliks and Sultans of the dynasty of Nasir-ud-Din. Sabuk-Tigin, and of Sultan Yamin-ud-Daulah, Nizām-ud-Din, Abū-l-Ķāsim, Maḥmūd, the Conqueror, and to the description of the events in their lives; to an account of their lineage; to the record of their justice and equity, and the incidents in their reigns; to the vicissitudes and changes in the fortunes, and the dominion of the sovereigns of that family of exalted power and might, from the outset of the career of the Amir-i-Ghāzi, Sabuk-Tigin, to the end of the reign of Khusrau Malik, the last of that dynasty of kings, in an abridged and concise form, in order that this Tabakat of kings and nobles may be illumined by the mention of their lineage and their titles, and the pages of this history be adorned and ennobled by the relation of the deeds of those sovereigns of Islam, whom may the light of Almighty God illumine!

Imām Abū-l-Fazl. Al-Hasan-i-Baihaki . in his chronicle

¹ So called from Mahmud's title of Yamin-ud-Daulah.

2 The printed edition of the TABAKAT-I-NASIRI, edited by Lieut .-Colonel W. N. Lees, L.L.D., and his Maulawis, commences from this Section. It forms No. 42-50 of the BIBLIOTHECA INDICA, New Series. I have been unable to make any use of it for a very cogent reason, that not a page of it is correct. Whole sentences are often wanting, and, at times, much more; and the names of persons and places are frequently wrongly spelt. The work, however, appears to have been printed from the text of the MS. No. 1952 of the India Office Library, and the Royal Asiatic Society's MS., to which I have before alluded, both of which are the most defective and incorrect of any I have collated. The same errors occur in each, in nearly every instance. To restore the text would be impossible without entirely reprinting the work. I may say, however, that the state of most of the MSS. I have collated is such that it would be impossible to give any thing like a correct version without examining the number of copies which I have been so fortunate as to find in different Libraries, and others which have been placed at my disposal through the kindness of their owners, and of the Imperial Russian Government in particular.

⁸ So called from Baihak, the name of his native town, which is also called Mukir, in Zawulistän. His correct name will be found in note ⁹, page 87. The passage above quoted may have been contained in the first portion of his work; but is not to be found in what has been preserved, as far as we know.

entitled "Tārikh-i-Nāṣiri," relates the following tradition told him by the august Sultan Mahmud himself, which the latter had heard from his father, the Amir Sabuk-Tigin, [namely] that his [Sabuk-Tigin's] father used to be called by the name of Kara Bah-kam; and that his [proper] name was Huk; and that Ghar-ghāu in the Turkish language is called Bah-kam; and that the meaning of Kara Bah-kam would be the Black Tatar Bull4; and every where that the

In eight copies of the text the words المراجعة occur, and of this number - In eight copies of the text the words mean and of the but all the other one MS. says, that these Therkish words mean copies differ. In the very old MS. previously referred to, which copy I shall

here call No. 1 MS., the passage stands as follows:-

`	, ,	"	υ ε	"	ť	2	1		MS. N	ive her	7		: 1	; ;		
	•	•	•	•				•	I. O. L.	e defec	, e			pages.		572 A.
7	٠		•			•			The	all alik	•			several		IS. No.
2	3	3	3	4	4	2	4	5 .5	stances.	b., are		ີ	2	the lost	ilds ron	sburg N
3	•			•	جوق ٠٠ غرعاء	ن فرفا	4.	الله عرعار و:	, 45.4 4.4	572 Ab		اللي:	•	-	IIE, allu	‡ St. Petersburg MS. No. 572 AD.
عرغاور	عشرة عاد	هرق عشر عله	هرق ٠٠ غرغاو .	` `	عُرُّ	\ <u>.</u>	3 2	۳ -	ا ا ا	S. No.	11, amd	ا و معني مرا بحلم سباه عشر علو باشد		٠,	ective ne	++
رې ا		•	•	•						ourg MS		ا	2		very def	32.
1										except the	them 1	١	 د	才	MS. is	† Paris MS. 182.
it, e as				•						No. 7, the St.	shall call	å	£	سيأة عؤو غاو	ol. Pub.	+ Paris
10)· `		2	2	8	£	*	14.	نهر	illar to	ds. Is	4	•	نظو	mp. Bil	
\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	L -	;], .	۰ پ	٠ پ	" سياة عرغاو	ور سياره	« " سياة غوغا	قرار جحكم سياه غرغار	قرا " " غرغاً	xt is sin	nine won	च्य		*	rsburg I	S. 181.
ر. ۲ ي و نامس هوق بود و غرفاؤ را بتركي جملم خوانند و معني قرا يحكر سياد غيناية إيار	علق عشره علو	1	« « سپاه عشر علو « ج*	او مساة عشر غاو	ا عرعاو	سياة غوغاو	غر	غرغار	.غ عر	The printed text is similar to No. 7, except that it has by 1.50 and all alike defective her constituted is M.S. MS., and the St. Petersburg MS. No. 372 Abb, are all alike defective her constituted in the St. Petersburg MS. No. 372 respectively:—	1954, the fact that the words. I shall call them Nos. 10, 11, and 12 feet being minus only nine words.				13. The St. Petersburg Imp. Bibl. Pub. MS. is very defective fiert, and mas it.	* Paris MS. 181.
•	ì	* a	ع	*	•	•		2	*	The pr	ong min		2		3. The	*
0	-	ci	÷.	4	'n	9	7	*	\$. g	9	7			

Turks, in Turkistān, heard his name mentioned, they fled before him on account of his energy and valour.

Imām Muḥammad 'Alī, Abū-l-Ķāsim, 'Imādī', in his work, the "Tārīkh-i-Majdūl," states, that Amīr Sabuk-

It will be noticed that four copies say his name was حرق [Hark, or Hurk], which might possibly be read حوق [Hūk, or Hauk], as in the two best copies, whilst in two other copies the word is عوق [Juk, or Jauk], and in another [Jun]. Then comes the signification of the Turkish word, as it is called, in a third غرفار in another غرفار in one غرفار in another غرفار The printed text has غوفا The عشرة علو and in one عشر علو in three others عثر علو Arabic words قرار بحكم contained in two copies of the text-in one of the best and one of the most modern-would be intelligible enough, but we are told that - فرغار علم are Turkish, and that they signify قرا بحكم or قرار are Turkish and that they signify whichever we عشره علو and عز علو _amd غوغا-غشر غاو ,[of the printed text غوغا-غشر غاو choose to select, and we must presume that these words are intended for the Persian equivalents of the Turkish. The word must be غوغاو Ghajz-ghãoalso written غزغار - Ghajz-ghā, and, at times, غزغار - Ghaz-ghāo; and as é in the Persian language is permutable to of the words are, and may be respectively written, عَرِيْ اللَّهِ a Khiṭā'i bull—the Yāk [Bos Grunniens], found in the vast mountain tracts of Central Asia, north of Hindustan, the tail of which is fastened to the manes and necks of horses, and as an ornament to Tartar and Turkish standards [hence "a Pachah" of so many "tails"]. The author from whom I take this says, "Its real name is Gao-i-Khita'i, the Khita'i bull, and is called knros by the Rumis [Greeks], who say it is a 'seahorse.' It is also called the 'Silk Bull,' as > and falso signify silk." The word 1,5 or, more correctly, 1,5 is, of course, the Turkish for black, in Persian . In Elliott's India, vol. ii., p. 266, the passage in question is thus translated: "His [Subuktigin's] father was called Jauk [troop], and in Turki they call a troop bahkam [on whose authority, I wonder?] so that the meaning of the name Kará-bahkam is black-troop."

From this it will be seen that the translator has discarded altogether, both of MSS. 10 and 11, and فوفا of the printed text, and has given the person's Turkish real name as the equivalent [the Persian equivalent, it must be supposed) of his Turkish nick-name; so according to this theory means troop, and علم also means troop, but what becomes of the Persian translation عمياء غوغا &c., the translator sayeth not! Jauk, however, is Arabic for a party, a troop, &c., but what a may mean, remains to be proved. I have an idea, however, from the manner in which the word is written, in one place, in one of the MSS., viz. Baj-kam, that Bah-kam-is an error of some early copyist [but and are interchangeable] for -Bach-kam, "a wooff," which word is used, but not commonly, in Persian, and probably is Turkish; and it is not impossible that the author quoted may have been under the impression that a Khita'i bull was the same beast ase's Gurg, a wolf, and, therefore, I am inclined to think that the correct interpretation is, that Sabuk-Tigin's father was called in Turkish, the Black Wolf meaning a soldier of [black being expressive of excess, &c.] excessive fierceness and daring. This reading, as I have said before, is not certain; but I do not think any thing more intelligible can be made of it without Baihaki's work to refer to; but that portion does not appear to be in existence.

A few copies have موادئ [Hamādi], which is incorrect.

Tigin was a descendant of Yazdijurd-i-Shahryār—the last of the sovereigns of Persia—and, that, at the time that Yazdijurd was murdered in the mill in the territory of Marw, which was during the Khilāfat of the Lord of the Faithful, Yuşmān, the family and dependents of Yazdijurd fled before the troops of Islām into Turkistān, and reached the frontier district of Nakhistān in that territory, and there took up their residence, and intermarried with the people. After two or three generations had passed away, they became Turks; and their palaces are still standing in that country.

The pedigree of Sabuk-Tigin is given in the above history after the manner in which it is here entered, in order that it may come under the notice of the king of the world "—May the Almighty perpetuate his sovereignty! —and of such others as may peruse this work, viz.:—Sabuk-Tigin, son of Hūk-i-Karā Bah-kam, son of Karah [Karā?] Arsalān, son of Karah [Karā?] Mallat [or Millat], son of Karā Na'mān, son of Firūz-i-Bam-sinjān [?], or Barsinjān [?], son of Yazdijurd-i-Shahryār, or Yazdijurd, the king.

I. AMĪR-UL-GHĀZĪ 2, NĀŞIR-UD-DĪN-ULLAH, SABUK-TIGĪN.

Imām Abū-l-Fazl-i-Baihaķī states that, during the reign of Abd-ul-Malik-i-Nūh, the Sāmānī, there was a merchant named Naṣr, the Ḥājī [pilgrim], who purchased Sabuk-

7 Their descendants doubtless.

"The king of the world," here referred to by the author, is that shadow of a monarch to whom he dedicated his work. It is a very slight specimen of his

slavish flattery of him, and of others.

¹ This name occurs in eight MSS., but none of them are very distinct: one has Bar-sinjā, son of Parwiz, son of Yazdijurd.

2 Ghazī signifies a conqueror, one who makes war upon infidels.

and in one المستانة I am not satisfied that this name is correct, still five copies of the work agree in the reading above. Both the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, the R. A. S. MS., and the Petersburg copy 572 Abb. are minus another nine words here, and the printed text is the same. The place is not mentioned in Masälik wa Mamālik of Aṣār-ul-Bilād.

⁸ Another writer states that Karā Frūz, the fifth ancestor of Sabuk-Tigin, who was son of Yazdijurd, became ruined during the Khilāfat of 'Ugmān, left his country, and retired into Turkistān; and there his descendants continued to dwell until 335 H., when Alb-Tigin made an incursion into that country. He carried off from thence three thousand captives, and among them was Sabuk-Tigin Another author states that Alb-Tigin purchased Sabuk-Tigin at Nighāpūr, when stationed there in command of the Sāmāni forces.

Tigin and brought him to Bukhārā. Perceiving in his countenance evident signs of capacity and energy, the Amir-i-Ḥājib [Lord Chamberlain], Alb-Tigin, purchased him 3. He accompanied his master into Tukhāristān, when the government of that territory was entrusted to him; and subsequently, when the government of Khurāsān 4 was made over to Amir Alb-Tigin, Sabuk-Tigin attended him thither also. After some time had passed away, Alb-Tigin, through the vicissitudes of fortune, retired towards Ghaznin, and subdued the territory of Zāwulistān, and wrested Ghaznin out of the hands of Amir Abū-Bikr-i-Lawik 4.

Eight years subsequently to these events Amir Alb-Tigin died, and his son, Is-hāk, succeeded to his father's authority. He entered into hostilities against Lawik, but was defeated, and retired to Bukhārā, to the court of Amir Mansūr, son of Nūḥ, Sāmāni, and there continued until

³ See note 8, page 70.

⁴ See under the reign of Manşūr, son of Nūḥ, the eighth sovereign of the Sāmānī dynasty.

^{5 &}quot;In the year 322 H., Alb-Tigin, the Turk, the slave of the Samani dynasty, took Ghaznin, and Lawik, the Wali [the word here signifies a chief or sovereign, as he does not appear to have been subject to the Samanis] of that territory, fled." Nothing more is mentioned respecting Alb-Tigin, in the work from which I have extracted these occurrences, until 346 H. There had been repeated changes in the government of Hirāt for some time past, and considerable disorder had arisen therein. "In 346 H.," I find that "Abū Manşūr, son of 'Abd-ur-Razzāk, the Wāli of Hirāt and its dependencies, gave up his appointment, and withdrew to Tus again, in consequence of which great agitation and commotion arose at Hirat." On this becoming known to the Samani court, the Hājib, Alb-Tigin, who appears from this to have administered the affairs of Ghaznin since 322 H., was entrusted with the government. He sent to Hirāt, as his deputy, Is-hāk-i-Tāhirī; but he was very shortly removed, and Hasan, son of Ribāl, was sent to replace him. In 350 H. Abū-l-Hasan-i-Simiur was sent to govern Hirat; and, in the following year, having been promoted to the rank of Sahib-ul-Jaish [Commander-in-Chief of an army], he proceeded to Nishapur, and was succeeded, at Hirat, by Abu-l-Hasan, son of 'Umro, Faryabi. After he had held it four months the government was bestowed upon Talhah, son of Muhammad, Nisa'i. In the following year, "352 H., Alb-Tigin, the Turk, died at Ghaznin, and was succeeded in the government by his son, Is-hak," subordinate, of course, to the Samani sovereigns, although Mr. E. Thomas, in his paper "On the Coins of the KINGS OF GHAZNI," in Ro. As. Soc. Journal for 1859, styles them kings and speaks of their reigns, when they were merely subordinate governors. The most astonishing thing, however, is, how our author makes out that Alb-Tigin died eight years after his seizure of Ghaznin. From 322 to 352 H. is a period of thirty years; but then he generally eschews dates. According to Fasih-i and others. Alla-Tigin was born in 267 if., and died in the year above-mentioned.

that ruler directed that aid should be afforded to him, when Is-ḥāk came back again to <u>Gh</u>aznin, and regained possession of it. After a year Is-ḥāk died ⁶, when Balkā-

6 Is-hāk succeeded his father in the government in 352 H., and died in 355 H., and so ruled for about four years. Among the events of the year \$53 H., Faṣiḥ-f mentions that "Amīr Is-hāk, son of Alb-Tigfin, attended by Sabuk-Tigfin, his father's slave—who is mentioned for the first time in that work—fed from Ghaznín, and proceeded to Bukhārā, and obtained the investiture of the government of that province from the Sāmāni sovereign." In the following year, 354 H., the same work states that "Is-hāk, son of Alb-Tigfin, the Turk, the slave of the house of Sāmāni, returned to Ghaznín again, and fought against Lawlik [this name is also confirmed by other writers, and there is no doubt of its correctness], who, previously, had been Walif [sovereign or chieft] of Ghaznin, and had been ousted by Alb-Tigin. When Is-hāk retired to Samrkand, Lawlik returned to Ghaznin, but now that Is-hāk had come back again, Lawlik again fled."

Mr. Thomas, in his paper just referred to, trusting implicitly, it would seem, to the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, and the R. A. S. copy of our author's work, calls Amir, Abū Bikri-Lawīk, "the Anūk." In toose two MSS. Amir, Abū Bikr, is left out altogether, but occurs in the other MSS., although some have \$\phi_3|\delta_3|\delta_3|\delta_1\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\delta_2|\

last par, which is quite to the point.

On the death of Is-hak, Balka-Tigin, the slave of Alb-Tigin, succeeded to the government of Ghaznin, by order of Amir Nuh, son of Nasr, the Samani sovereign. Balka-Tigin died in 362 H., after being governor eight years. Mr. Thomas, on this passage in our author, in which the latter says Balka-Tigin ruled ten years, remarks: "Two copies [of the work], out of the three I have at this moment the opportunity of consulting, give ten instead of two [years]; the former, however, is a palpable error." I wonder on which side the error lies really? This is not all. In his remarks on the "coin of Mansur, son of Nuh, with the name of Balka-Tigin under the symbol, on the obverse," Mr. Thomas gives a translation of his Excellency, State Counsellor Von Dorn's description, and a woodcut of it, contained in the St. Petersburg Journal. If the translation is correct, of which there can be but little doubt, his Excellency must have been somewhat in the dark respecting the Samanis, and their connexion with Ghaznin, which formed part of their dominions. What I refer to is this: "History mentions only the conquest of Alp-Tigin, but is silent in regard to the rule of the Samanis in Ghazna. We see from our coin that Balka, or Bulka-Tagin, in the year A.H. 359 was chief of the Samani party in this city. His name appears already on the Balkh coins of A.H. 324. Subsequently he passed over to Alptegin's cause [!] became chamberlain under Abú Ishák, and is said to have ascended the throne after the death of the latter in A.H. 365." This is absurd. What sort of history can it be that is silent in regard to the rule of "the Samanis in Ghaznin," when it formed an integral part of their empire? Balka-Tigin, in 324 H., was governor of the province of which Balkh was the seat of government, hence his name on the coin referred to.

Tigin, who was the chief or commander of the Turkish troops, was raised to the government. He was a just and pious man, and one of the greatest warriors of his time. He exercised the authority for a period of ten years, and died. Sabuk-Tigin was in his service.

After the death of Amir Balkā-Tigin, Pirey succeeded to the authority ⁷. He was a great villain; and a body of people wrote from Ghaznin to Abū 'Alī-i-Lawīk, and invited him to come there. Abū 'Alī-i-Lawīk acceded to their request, and brought along with him the son of the Shāh, or king, of Kābul to assist him. When they reached the vicinity of Charkh ⁸, Sabuk-Tigīn, with a body of five hundred Turks, suddenly fell upon them, and defeated them, killed a great number of their followers, took them captive also, and slew them. He also captured ten elephants, and brought them to Ghaznin.

Such a great success having been gained by Sabuk-Tigin, and all having become quite sated with the villainies and misdeeds of Pirey, with one accord, they raised Sabuk-Tigin to the direction of affairs. On Friday, the 27th of the month of Sha'bān, 366 H.º, Amir

⁷ Our author is quite correct as to Pirey, but gives no details or dates. I will furnish them. "On the death of Balkā-Tigin, in 362 H., Pirey, the slave of Alb-Tigin [as was his predecessor and successor also], obtained the government. In the following year, 363 H., Pirey, the Wälf of Ghaznin, with the help of Sabuk-Tigin, fought a battle with a body of infidels who had advanced out of Hind for the purpose of seizing Ghaznin, overthrew them, and despoiled them. This event is confirmed from other annals. In the year 367 H. Pirey was deposed from the government [as our author records], and the government passed to Sabuk-Tigin." He was confirmed by the Sämäni ruler, but soon after, on the decline of their power, became independent in all things, except, perhaps, in name.

The "Kitāb," or "Tārlkh-i-Yamīnī," which is considered to be a very trustworthy and authentic history, contains, judging from Reynold's version, not one word about Sabuk-Tīgīn having been Alb-Tīgīn's lates, although probably transferred as such to Balkā-Tīgīn, and his son Is-ḥāk; and makes no mention of the government of Amīr Pīrey, although he ruled over the province of Ghamīn for just five years.

⁸ A well known place situated a few miles from the right or east bank of the Lohgar river on one of the routes between Kābul and Ghaznin. Abūd-Fazl, the secretary, mentions in the A'in-i-Akbari, that Charkh is so called after a pious man, one Maulānā-i-Charkhi.

⁸ Faşib-i says this took place in 367 H., the same year that 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Abū Mangūr-i-Bakhtyār, Buwiah, was put to death at Baghdād. See page 62. In the same year Sabuk-Tigha appointed Abū-i-Abūsā, Al-Faşl-i-Aḥmad, son of Muḥammad, Al-Isfatāini, his Wazir. He had acted

Sabuk-Tigin, with a scarlet canopy held over him, and attended by a large following with standards, came down from the citadel, and proceeded to the Jāmi' Masjid, or Great Mosque, and the administration of the government and the sovereignty of that province was settled upon him.

Soon after, he put his forces in motion and marched from <u>Ghaznin</u> towards the adjacent parts, and took possession of the districts of Bust, Zamin [district] of Dāwar, the Zamin of Ķuṣdār, and Bāmiān, all Tukhāristān, and <u>Ghūr</u>¹.

On the side of Hind, he overthrew Jai-pāl², with numerous elephants and a host of troops, and he rid the Sāmānī family of Bughrā Khān of Kāshghar, and marched to Balkh, and sent back the Amīr of Bukhārā to take repossession of his throne.

During the time that Amîr Sabuk-Tigîn held the government, great deeds were performed; and he completely put an end to the iniquitous heresy of the Bāṭinīah schismatics in Khurāsān.³

in the same office to Fāyik-i-Khāṣah, and, after the latter's defeat, Amîr Sabuk-Tigīn took him under his patronage. Wazīr does not necessarily mean the minister of a sovereign prince only; and Sabuk-Tigīn was not yet independent.

1 The mode of spelling the word by its people, and on the authority of the

Burhān-i-Kāţi' and other works.

2 "In 369 H., Jai-pāl, 'Bādshāh' of Hind, as he is termed, marched an army towards Ghaznīn to attack Amīr Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Sabuk-Tlgīn; but an accommodation was come to, and Jai-pāl again retired." This is quite a different affair from that in which Sabuk-Tigīn assisted Amīr Pirey, mentioned in a previous note. It must be remembered too, that, at this time, the country west of the Indus, between Safid-Koh west, and the Salt-Range on the east, and Hindū-Kush, extending as far west as Kābul, was still under Hindū rule. The Afghāns had not extended northward of the river Kurmah [erroneously called the

Kurum and Kooruml at this time.

³ Our author says nothing about the affair of Bust in 370 H., or of Sabuk-Tigin's raid on the frontier districts of Hind in 376 H., when he carried off many captives and much booty. In the same year he took possession of the territory of Kuṣdār. In 378 H., Sabuk-Tigin again encountered Jai-pal, king of Hind, who was routed, and pursued by him. A peace was afterwards concluded, the terms being that "Jai-pal should cede unto Sabuk-Tigin four of the fortresses of Hind on the side of Ghasnin, and one hundred elephants." In 380 H., an occurrence took place, which few writers have noticed, namely, the imprisonment of Maḥmūd in the fortress of Ghaznin, by his father's orders, where he remained until the following year. In 382 H. Amfr Nūth, son of Manṣūr, Sainafi, reached Hiriz, attended by Sabuk-Tigin, and marched against Abū 'Alf-i-Simjūr, whom they defeated. See page 46, and note. In 384 H. Amfr Nūth conferred the government of Khurāsān upon Sabuk-Tigin and in the same year Amfr Nūth defeated Abū 'Alf-i-Simjūr at Nīthāpūr. In

In the month of <u>Shawwāl</u>, 384 H., his son, Amir Mahmūd, was made captain-general of the forces of <u>Khurāsān</u>, and received the title of Saif-ud-Daulah, while Amir Sabuk-Tigin himself received that of Nāṣir-ud-Din-ullah '. Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Simjūr they defeated and repulsed, and Khurāsān became cleared of their enemies.

Amir Sabuk-Tigin was a man of great valour and intrepidity, just and pious, faithful, true to his word, not avaricious of other men's goods, kind and compassionate to his people, and a discerner between right and wrong; and, in fact, every sign and indication of all such virtues and accomplishments as are desirable in kings and nobles, the Almighty had amply endowed him with. He ruled for a period of twenty years; and was fifty-six years old when he died. His decease took place on the frontier of Balkh, at the village of Madrū-mūe in the year 387 H.

His sons were Ismā'il 6, Naṣr, Maḥmūd, Ḥusain, Ḥasan, and Yūsuf.

II. SULŢĀN-UL-A'ZAM, YAMĪN-UD-DAULAH, NIZĀM-UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-ĶĀSIM, MAḤMŪD-I-GḤĀZĪ, SON OF SABUK-TIGĪN 7.

Sultān Maḥmūd-i-Ghāzī was a great monarch, and was the first among the sovereigns of Islām, who was styled

385 H. Sabuk-Tigin defeated Abū 'Alf-i-Simjūr, and Fāyik at Tūs. Among the events of the year 387 H. recorded in Faṣih-i, are the deaths of Amir Nūh, son of Manṣūr, Sāmānf, and Nāṣir-ud-dīn, Sabuk-Tigin, the Mawlā, or manumitted slave of the house of Sāmānf.

⁴ From the Sämänf sovereigns, see page 47. Abū 'Alī, the son of Abū Ḥasan-i-Sīmjūr was the person who was defeated : Abū-l-Ḥasan, the father, had died previously. See pages 45 and 48.

⁸ This name is written in various ways:—Barmal-Madrie, Madrie, Ma

6 Ismā'il succeeded his father; but our author ignores him as a sovereign, which is not correct, for Ismā'il was only dethroned in 389 H., two years after the decease of his father, by Maḥmūd, who sent him to the fortress of Kālinjar, "now known as Talwārah," according to Faṣiḥ-i. The same authority states: "some say Ismā'il was confined in the fortress of Jūzjānān." Fanā-katf states that Maḥmūd succeeded in 388 H., and that Ismā'il was sent to a fortress in 389 H.

7 Baizawi considers Mahmud to be the first sovereign of this dynasty.

Sultān's by the Court of the <u>Khalifāhs</u> of Baghdād. He was born on the night of 'Ashūrā, the 10th of the month Muharram, in the year 361 H., in the seventh year of the

government of Amir Balka-Tigin, at Ghaznin.

About one hour before his being ushered into the world, Sabuk-Tigin, his father, saw in a dream, that there began to issue from the chafing-dish [used in those countries instead of having fire-places in the wall, and placed in the centre of the apartment] in his room, a tree, which began to grow to such a height that the whole world began to be overshadowed by it. When he awoke from his sleep, he began to ponder in his mind what the interpretation of this dream could be, when a bearer of good news presented himself, bringing intelligence that the Almighty had been pleased to give him a son. At this joyful announcement Sabuk-Tigin became overjoyed, and said to the messenger: "I have given him the name of Mahmidi."

The same night also upon which Mahmud was born, the idol-temple of Wahand or Bihand [it may also be read Wahind, or Bahind], which was situated on the confines of Barshābūr³, on the bank of the river Sind, split asunder.

P Faşih-i says he was born on that date in 360 H.

1 The past, part, of the Arabic verb as used as an adjective, signifying-

laudable, praised, worthy, &c.

⁸ There is a different version given as to how and when Maḥmūd became std Sulţān. When Maḥmūd took the fortress of Tāk in Sijistān, by assault, and Khalaf was brought before him, the latter addressed Maḥmūd by the title of Sulţān. This pleased Maḥmūd so much that he gave Khalaf his life. The titles bestowed upon Maḥmūd by the Khalifah, and also bestowed, according to Baihakţ upon Maṣūd, were as follow: "The right hand of the empire, defender of orthodoxy, the guardian of the true religion and of the true believers, the regulator of the faith, the friend of the Lord of the Faithful." See note*, page 80.

² Out of the thirteen MSS. collated, four agree respecting the word Barshābūr, and three have Parshāwar. These are meant, probably, for the present Peghāwar. Six copies have Nishābūr; and six copies say that the idol-temple in question was situated on the bank of the Sudarah [Sudharah say-equiped and old name of the Chināh, see the Sadhūrā—]yya-farther on], and a fifth copy has, the bank of the Abi-Shudah [1:a2]. "Uthi PUţbā] quoted in Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. pp. 27 and 41, makes the "Sihūn" the Indus; and in Reynolds' version of the same work, the Indus is called the "Jihūn!" I need scarcely mention that the first is the Jaxartes, and the last the Oxus. In the last named version, also, we have "Wāmund" for "Wahihud." The name of the idol-temple is written in three different ways in the various copies of the original collated: x-y-which may be either Wabhind or Wabhand, in six MSS.; x-y-Bahind, or Bahand, or Bihand, in swey; and x-y-

He was endowed with great virtues and vast abili-

Wahand, or Wahind, in two. In seven copies, the relative & follows this name, but in three others we have & instead of & which I have certainly seen used for & but very rarely. The following will show at a glance what I mean. The original sentence, in the very old MSS. in my possession [which I call No. 1.], stands thus:—

I. 4	شكست	، سنده پ	ود برلب آب	رد برشاور ب	sic) در حد	
2.	,,	سند	"	برشابور	22	" وبهندکه
3.	22	سدرة	29	نشابور	"	39 29
4.	22	سدرة	,,	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	22) ;
5.	"	سدرة	"	پرشاور	27	j9 > 9
6.	"	سدرة	27	نشابور	**	" وبهندكه
7.	"	سنده	,,	پرشاور	"	" بهند که
8.	"	سند	,,	برشابور	,,	" بهند کي
9.	,,	سند	,,	برشابور	"	" ومهندكي
10.	"	شده	ِ لب آب	نشابور بر	99	,, وبهندكه
ıı.	"	سند	ر لب آب	برشابور ب	,,	" وبنهدكي
12.	22	سدرة	لب آب	نيشابور	,,,	" ويهندكه
13.	"	,,,	,,	,,	"	39 31

This place—Wahind, or Dahind, or whatever it may be proxed to be—is that which our author refers to, no doubt, and is the same place, probably, as mentioned by Baihak' in one or two places in his History, although he does not mention it as being on the bank of the river Sindh. I have never seen it written in a first The printed text, edited by Morley, has x-y-3 and a MS. in my possession has x-y-3. Some three years since I carefully compared the whole passage in the Jami'-ut-Tawarigh, with the work of Al-Fanikati, the Arabic copy of a portion of the former work, in the R. A. S.'s Library, and other works; and I am unable to agree either with Sir H. Elliot's first reading of it, in his Appendix p. 30, or Mr. Dowson's new reading, in Elliot's

ties; and the same predominant star was in the as-

HISTORY OF INDIA, edited by him, vol. i. pp. 47 and 48, both of which differ widely from each other. Neither do I agree in the theory that Uhand [Lus] not Ohind! so many miles above the junction of the Nil-8i, or river of Kābul with the Abā-Sind, or Indus, is the place indicated, in face of the statement of Abū Rihān, which is perfectly plain in the passage referred to, namely, that the river in question falls into the Abā-Sind, "in front of" or

opposite the fort of Yitur or Wahind.

If the western bank of the Indus were the right place to search for this spot. so difficult to trace, there is Mahaban [موند not much unlike بوند and موند مناسم to look atl together with Oong, Behoh, and Ram-takht, mentioned by Abbott -although, from his mode of rendering Oriental words, it is impossible to tell what the originals may be-in his "Gradus ad Aornon," in the Ben. As. Journal for 1854, and Rājah Hoḍaey's castle, as well as "Ohind." There are also extensive ruins of a temple on a hill called Takht-i-Bihi, about fifteen miles north-east of the Kābul river's junction with the Landaey Sind, and some thirty miles north-east of Peshawar, which I visited in 1849 [see my account of Peshawar, Bom. Geogr. Journal, vol. x., for 1851-2]. Can this be the idol-temple which fell when Mahmud was ushered into the world? In the same vicinity, and within a few miles of each other, are "Kapir di Giri"the Infidel's Mount, and "Pratah Minarah"-the Fallen Minar, in Pushto. which names bear a striking resemblance to Baihaki's fortress of "Giri" or "Giri," and "Man-Minarah;" but both the places I have mentioned are on the western, not the eastern bank, and the last lies above Uhand, which latter name, in all probability, is not ancient, but one of the many new designations given to places in that vicinity by the Yusufzi Afghans, when they first conquered those tracts on the Indus. I have made the early history of the Afghans my especial study for a particular purpose, and I have never met with the name of Wabhand, Wahind, Bahind, or Wahband in the histories containing the account of their conquests in those parts.

Since the above was written, I have looked over vol. ii. of Elliot's INDIA, and find that the author, at page 465, when referring to Mahmüd's fourteenth expedition into India, says that Farishtah in his work, as well as the "Taba-kāt-i-Akbart," and "Kanzu-l-Mahpün," which latter I have not examined, mention "the waters of Nūr and Kirāt" as falling into the Kabūl river, precisely as I had read the same words in the passage from Al-Brūnī; but the editor, Mr. Dowson, still persists, as he says in a note to the same page, in reading them "Nurokirát." Did he not consider that the second j in the words when the property of the same page, in and is well known still.

To return to the subject of Wahind. From the passage in the Jām'-ut-Tawārikh, and our author, "the fort belonging to the town or city of Gandhār, which place is called Wahind or Bahind, on the banks of the Sind, facing the junction of the Nil-Åb with the Abā-Sind," must be looked for east of the Indus, near Attak-Banāras, in the vicinity of which extensive ruins of an ancient city are mentioned in the account of the building of the former fortress in Akbar's reign. Apollonius of Tyana, in his "Travels," mentions a lofty temple as situated outside the walls of Taxilas, a few miles east of the Indus. [See Jour. R. A. S., vol. xvii: p. 76.] These ruins were again noticed in the writings of a Muhammadan traveller towards the close of the last century. However, under any circumstances, and in whatever manner we may read these names, which want the vowel-points, and are probably incor.

cendant at his birth as appeared at the dawn of Islām

rectly copied, the situation of the rivers, and the number mentioned, will not agree with actual facts. The Muhammadan traveller I refer to, states, from actual observation: "The Kabul river, after flowing through the darah of Mandror-called by the same name as the chief town of Lamghan-is joined, to the north of that place, by the Tahkri I soul, generally known as the river of Lamghan; and near the kok or mountain of Duruntha [درونتها] those streams are joined by the Surkh-rud [Red-River], which then flow past Jalalabad on the east, and near the town of Kamah are joined by the Chitrar or Chitral [also called the Kāmah], and thus united flow on towards Peshāwar. On issuing from the Khaibar mountains at Michani Inot Michnil, the united streams again separate into three branches, and thus [not united] pass by Peshawarwhich is some distance from the nearest branch-for some miles, and do not unite again until just after receiving the Landaey Sind and its tributaries at Nisatah. after which the united waters fall into the Indus a little above, and opposite Attak." The courses of rivers may alter in the lanse of centuries, in a flat country, as they have in the Punjab, in some instances, but not in such a mountainous tract as the Kābul and its tributaries flow through, on their way to the Indus. I cannot but coincide with Abu-1-Fazl, the secretary [but never "minister"] of Akbar, in his remarks upon the accounts of India, written by early travellers, such as Al-Biruni and others. He says, in the A'in-i-Akbari [I give the pith of his remarks merely], that "Fanākatī, Hāfiz-Abrū, and others, wrote down all the nonsense that was palmed off upon them; and, therefore, what they state is contrary to facts, and not to be depended upon, while other writers have wilfully perverted thent. How could it be otherwise, when such persons knew nothing of the languages of India, or of its people, or their customs? They could neither make investigations themselves, nor could they obtain efficient interpreters, or reliable information." See R. A. S.'s Journal, vol. iv. p. 356.

Farther investigation, since the above remarks were written, has, I think, enabled me to throw some light upon the situation of what is called Wahind and Bahind, and as to its correct name. The Tarikh-i-Mir'at-i-Jahan Numa, a general history by Muhammad Baka, contains the following respecting Mahmud's two first expeditions against Hindustan. "In 390 H., Mahmud set out for Hindustan and captured the fortress of Barjanid or Barjunid بوهندا possibly برجبد but this word is not quite certain], and again retired. In Shawwal, 301 H., he again set out towards Hindustan, and reached Peshawar with 10,000 horse, and defeated Jai-pal, who, with fifteen brothers and sons, was taken captive. This took place on Saturday, 8th Muharram, 392 H. From thence. Mahmud advanced to the fortress of suc [Bahindah], which was the residence of Jai-pal; and he subdued that territory." In a history of the Rajahs of Jamu, said by its author, a Hindu, to have been compiled from Hindū annals, بهتناته [Bathindah] is said to have been Jai-pāl's capital and place of residence, which Mahmud captured. Mirzā Mughal Beg, who, about eighty-three years since, made a survey of great part of the North-West Provinces between Dihli and the Sutlaj, the Punjab, and great part of Afghanistan, and the countries on the northern slopes of Hindu-Kush, in his account of the Lakhi jungle, says : "Bhatindah [المُقَدِّم], which is also called Whatindah [العقدة] is the name of a territory, with a very ancient stronghold bearing the same name, which was the capital of the Chāhil [tribe. Lakhi, son of Jundharah, of the Bhati tribe, having been converted to the Muhammadan faith, during an invasion by Sultan Mahmud of Ghaznin,

itself8. In the year 387 H.4, Mahmud proceeded to Balkh4, and

received the title of Rānā Laknī, and he and his tribe were removed thither. They found there some three hundred and fifty or sixty towns and villages of considerable size, some with large and fine buildings; and began to make inroads into the tracts adjacent, against the infidels." According to traditions quoted by this author, which are also to be found in other works, there were formerly two or three considerable rivers in this now sandy tract of country. In ancient times the Ghaphar flowed past Bhatnir, and "fell into the Sind [Indus] on the confines of Iasalmir. One of these rivers is called the Sadhura [see the various readings of the original at the beginning of this notel, which falls into the Ghaghar, and in its neighbourhood, at about five miles west, is a sacred pond or small lake, visited by hundreds of thousands of persons, and there is no other place accounted like unto it in sanctity." There is a great deal more about this district, but I have no space for it here. I think it very probable that-what has been called Wahind or Bahind is no other than Bhatindah or Whatindah, which, written without the points-مدده or مدده, are much the same in appearance as the words in the various MSS, of 'our author's text -say and says

As to some confusion in the arrangement of Elliot's INDIA, tending to distract, which I have referred to above, I would mention, with respect to the name "Wahind," that at p. 63, vol. 1, "Wahind" is said to be the capital of Kandahär [e] stands for g as well as k, and Kandahär in Afghänistän is abways with dj; in a note at p. 397, the "river of Wahand or Wahind-Ségar" is mentioned; in vol., ii. p. 28, in the extract from Yamini, "Wahind" is said to be a country; at p. 33, and other places, it is again called "the river of Wahind and at p. 444, "the river of Wahind or the Irodus." Notwith-standing all this, this identical passage in our author, after having been "revised and sundry long gaps filled up by the Editor," is thus translated [vol. ii. p. 269]:—"On the same night that he [Maḥmūd] was born, an idol-temple in India, in the vicinity of Parshawar, on the banks of the Sind, fell down I!" There is nothing like giving a bold translation.

* This last sentence is somewhat obscure in all the copies. It may be understood also to mean that his appearance was propitious to the ascendancy of Islām: , blb does not mean "the greatest champion;"

4 See note 5, page 75, for date of accession.

5 Balkh has been mentioned by more than one author, as the capital of Sabuk-Tigin's and Mahmud's dominions. In the same year wherein he overcome his brother (389 H.), Mahmud, according to Fasih-i, fought a battle against 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nuh, Samani, and the Samani dynasty terminated. See page 52. His independency may be dated from that time. In the same year, Arsalan-i-lazib fought an engagement with Abu-l-Kasim-i-Simjur, and compelled him to retire to Tabas; and Mahmud made his brother, Amir Nasr, the commander of his army (see page 51, note 8). In that same year, likewise, he made Balkh the capital of his dominions; and the Khalifah, Al-Kadir B'illah, sent him a robe of honour, with the titles of Yamin-ud-Daulah, and Amin-ul-Millat. Mahmud also received the submission of the Shar, as was the style of the rulers of Gharjistan [called by some Gharishtan], Abū Naṣr, son of the Shār, Rāshid, and of his son, Shār, Abū Muḥammad; and the Khutbah was read for Mahmud in that territory, and the coin impressed with his name and titles. In 390 H. Mahmud made a dash upon Nighāpūr, which he took possession of, and Bak-Tūzūn, the slave of the Sāmānī dynasty, fled; and in the same year Bughrāják, the uncle of Mahmud,

ascended the throne of sovereignty, and donned the robe of honour which had been sent to him from the Dār-ul-Khilāfat. At this time the throne of the Khalifahs was adorned by the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Kādir-B'illah.

When Sultan Mahmud ascended the throne of sovereignty, his illustrious deeds became manifest unto all man-

was slain by Tāhir, son of Khalaf, son of Ahmad, at Füshani. Mahmūd marched into Sijistan against Khalaf, who fled before him, and took shelter within the walls of the fortress of Tak, which Mahmud directed should be invested. This is a different place to Uk. For farther particulars respecting Khalaf, whose doings appear so obscure [Jour. R. A. S., vol. xvii. p. 147], see notes to Section XIV. Mahmud does not appear to have established his power in Khurāsān, for in 391 H., Amīr Abū Ibrāhim Al-Muntasir-the last of the Samanis, who is not even mentioned by our author-aided by Shamsul-Ma'ālī Kābūs, son of Washmgir, who sent his sons Dārā [see page 51] and Manuchihr, advanced with an army to recover Rai; but, having altered his plans, Abu Ibrāhīm, and his adherents, faced about, and marched on Nīshāpür, from which Nasr, Mahmud's brother, again fled, and Abu Ibrahim once more gained possession of Nishapur. Nasr, who had retired to Hirat, again moved to recover it, aided by Arsalan-i-Jazib from Tus. Abu Ibrahim despatched his forces under Arsalan-i-Balu and Abu-l-Kasim-i-Simiur to oppose them; but they were overthrown, and Abū Ibrāhim again retired from Nīshāpūr, and took refuge, in Jurjān, with Kābūs. Eventually he reached Sarakhs, and Amir Nasr marched against him and defeated him; and he fled for refuge to the tribe of Ghuzz. Nasr made prisoners of Abū-l-Kāsim-i-Sīmjūr, and Yūz-Tāsh, the Hājib of Abū Ibrāhīm, who had previously put Arsalān-i-Bālū to death for flying from Amir Nasr. In the following year, 392 H., Jai-pal, [which appears to be the title, not the actual name, of two or more princes], Badshah of Hind, as he is called, was made captive by Mahmud, "He was sold for," as the chronicler states, whose words I quote, or rather his ransom was fixed at "200,000 golden dinars, and 150 elephants; and the necklace taken from Jai-pāl was valued at another 200,000 golden dinārs. This battle took place on Thursday, 8th of Muharram, 392 H., in sight of Burshor of Hind." Here we might have expected to find "Wahind" or "Waband" mentioned. Whether this is what is now called Peshawar is somewhat doubtful, for up to the time of Bābar and Akbar, the latter city was called generally Bagrām, and is seldom mentioned, except by more modern writers of the Farishtah class. The chronicler adds: "Jai-pal, the Hindu, subsequently shaved his head, and mounted a funeral pyre, and died; for it is customary with Hindus, that any Badshāh of theirs, who becomes a captive to Musalmans, should abdicate in favour of another ruler. His son Tand-Pal [MS. تنديال but probably إنديال Anand-pal-is meant], succeeded him as ruler of Hind." In 393 H. the Khutbah was read for Mahmud in Sijistan, by Khalaf's own nobles, and his titles were impressed upon the coins. In the following year the fortress of Tak was captured, and Khalaf was made prisoner. The Sultan kept the territory of Sijistan entirely for himself, but gave the district of Juzjanan to Khalaf, who, taking his family with him, left Sijistan altogether. Afterwards, however, Sultan Mahmud gave the government of Sijistan to his own brother, Nasr; and the government of that province was joined to the appointment of commander of the forces [of Khurāsān].

kind within the pale of Islām, when he converted so many thousands [I] of idol-temples into masjids, and captured so many of the cities of Hindūstān, and overthrew and subdued its Rāes, Jai-pāl, who was the greatest of the Rāes of Hind, he made captive, and kept him [a prisoner] at Man-Vazīd⁶, in Khurāsān, and commanded that he might be ransomed for the sum of eighty dirāms⁷. He led an army to Nahrwālah of Gujarāt, and brought away Manāt⁸, the idol, from Somnāth, and had it broken into four parts, one of which was cast before the entrance of the great masjid at Ghaznīn, the second before the gateway of the Sulṭān's palace⁹, and the third and fourth were sent to Makkah and Madīnah respectively.

Concerning this victorious expedition the poet 'Unṣūrī composed a Kaṣīdah¹, or poem, two couplets of which are

here inserted :-

"When the potent sovereign made the expedition to Somnäth, He made the working of miracles his occupation. He staked the Chess of dominion with a thousand kings; Each king he check-mated, in a separate game."

Out of the different occasions in which the Sultān's greatness showed itself pre-eminent, one occurred during this expedition. When he retired from Somnāth, and desired to lead back the army of Islām by way of the desert's, to Sindh and Mansūrah, out of Gujarāt, he directed that guides should be procured. A Hindū presented himself,

6 Nearly every copy agrees in the name Man-Yazid [ومن يزيد]. "Yazd" is not meant. One copy has نو بريد

7 Sic in MSS., but I fancy the word "thousand" must have been left out. If not, Mahmüd did not set much value on his captive. See amount mentioned in note⁸, preceding page.

8 One of three chief idols of the pagans of Makkah was named Manät.
9 Some fragments of idols might still have been seen lying near the entrance to the Sultan's tomb a few years ago, and probably they are still there.

¹ The first two lines are corrected from 'Abd-ul-Kädir-i-Budäünf. The point of these lines lies principally on the play upon the terms in chess, lost in translation.

2 The Rinn or desert of Kachh. An author, quoting from the Tarikh.i-Nāşiri of Baihaki, relates a remarkable circumstance, which occurred upon this occasion: "On the Sultān's return from Somnāth, one of his huntsmen killed an enormous serpent or boa-constrictor, which was skinned, and found to be thirty ells (gaz) in length and four in breadth. Baihaki adds, 'Whoever doubts the correctness of this statement, let him go to the citadel of Ghaznin, and see for himself the skin in questioh, which is hung up like a canopy."

and offered to act as guide, and that sovereign, with the army of Islam, proceeded on his way. After the army had marched all night and next day, and the time had come round for the troops to halt, although search was made for water, none was any where to be found. The Sultan directed that the Hindu guide should be brought before him, and inquiries made from him. This was done, when the Hindū guide replied to the Sultān, saving: "I have devoted my life for the idol Somnāth, and I have led you and your army into this desert, in any part of which water is not to be found, in order that you may all perish." The Sultan commanded that the Hindu should be despatched to hell, and that the troops should halt and take up their quarters for the night. He then waited until night had set in, after which he left the camp, and proceeded to some distance from it, aside. Then, kneeling down, and with his forehead to the ground, he prayed devoutly and fervently unto the Most High for deliverance. After a watch's of the night had passed, a mysterious light appeared in the horizon, and the Sultan gave orders for the troops to be put in motion, and to follow him in the direction of the light. When the day broke, the Almighty God had conducted the army of Islam to a place where there was water, and all the Musalmans were delivered safely out of this impending danger,

The Almighty had endowed that ruler with great power of performing many miraculous and wondrous acts, such as He has not bestowed since upon any other sovereign, nor such vast military resources, so large a number of troops, and unbounded wealth. Sultān Maḥmūd possessed two thousand five hundred elephants; and his court was guarded by four thousand Turkish slave-youths, who, on days of public audience, were stationed on the right and left of the throne,—two thousand of them with caps, ornamented with four feathers, bearing golden maces, on the right hand, and the

³ A period of three hours.

^{* *}W signifying a Tartar cap, a sort of mitre or tiara made from leather or cloth or such like fabric, and covered with brocade or cloth of gold.

other two thousand, with caps adorned with two feathers,

bearing silver maces, on the left.

This monarch, by his manliness, his bravery and intrepidity, his wisdom and foresight, and his prudent counsels and wise measures, considerably extended the Muhammadan conquests in the east, and greatly increased the dominion of Islām in that quarter. The whole of 'Ajam', Khurāsān and Khwārazm, Tabaristān, 'Irāk, the territory of Nīmroz, Fārs, the mountain districts of Ghūr', Tukhāristān—all came under the control of his officers. The Maliks, or rulers, of Turkistān paid him obedience and acknowledged his superiority'. He threw a bridge over the Jihūn, and marched his forces into Tūrān, and Kadr Khān had an interview with him, as had the Khāns of the Turks likewise; and the Khākāns of Turkistān came and presented themselves before him, and tendered him their alleriance'.

6 That Mahmūd ruled "the whole" of 'Ajam, and Tabaristān, is an exaggeration. Not one word is mentioned, by other writers of any authority, as to his holding any part of Fārs, and in 'Irāk his sway was but partial over a portion.

7 The only notice of this contained in Faṣih-i, during the whole period of Maḥmūd's reign, is in the following words -- '400 H. Death of the son of Sūri, Malik of Ghūr, who was taken prisoner in an encounter fought by Sultān Maḥmūd, in Ghūr. He sucked poison from a ring he had, and destroyed

himself. Some say it occurred in 401 H."

a In the year 387 µt., the same in which Sabuk-Tigin died, and two years before Maḥmūd became ruler, Māmūn, son of Muḥammad Al-Farighūni, the Wāli, or ruler, of Jurjāniah Jalso written Gurgāniah], of Khwārazm died, and was succeeded by his son 'Alī ; and, in this same year, 'Alī was married to a daughter of Maḥmūd. 'Alī, however, died in 390 nt, and was succeeded by his brother, Abū-l'Abbās, son of Māmūn. He, in the following year, sent an envoy—supposed to be the author so much depended upon by Sir H. Elliot, and others, for his geographical knowledge of India—Abū Riñan, Al-Birni, to Maḥmūd, asking permission to marry the lady, his brother's widow. This was sanctioned by Maḥmūd, and Abū-l'Abbās married her.

9 In 396 H., Sulfān Maḥmid sent an envoy to Ī-lak Khān, the Turk, son of Bughrā Khān [for now the last of the Sāmānīs had been put to death, as already related], proposing that they should enter into an alliance, and that all the territory this side [on the left bank] of the Amūlah [Oxus] should belong to him, Maḥmūd, together with Khwārazm, and that all on the other side should appertain to Ī-lak Khān, and that they should not interfere with or molest each other's territories. Baihaķī says, writing in 451 H., that Kadr Khān at that period was called Bughrā Khān. It was in this same year that Maḥmūd undertook the expedition into Hindustān, against Bhfrā Rāc [also written] [see—Bajīrā in Faṣiḥ-ī, Biḥrāc d] [see—in Mirāt-i-Jahān-numā,] [see—Biḥrā by Yahyā Khān in his History, and [see]. Rajār-ī Baḥfrāc ba

At their request, the son of Saljūk, through whose activity, and boldness, too, the whole of the <u>Khā</u>kāns of the Turks were reduced to a state of helplessness, was permitted to

Sanian Rae in his work. He was doubtless chief of the tribe of Birar-See also Elliot. APPENDIX to vol. ii., pages 34 and 439, wherein great confusion appears to exist]. Bhira Rae was slain, and the fortress of Bhatiah near li. e. not far distant from Multan was taken. After this, the Sultan returned to Ghaznin, but in the same year he undertook an expedition against the Wali of Multan, Abu-l-Fath, who fled from that territory. Whilst Mahmud was absent in Hindustan, in 207 H., I-lak Khan broke the newly made treaty of alliance, and invaded Khurāsān. This made Mahmūd return to Ghaznin to make arrangements for marching against him, for I-lak Khan had penetrated as far as Hirat, which he took; but, in the following year, Mahmud encountered him at Balkh, and compelled him to retire. Khalaf, the late ruler of Sijistan, it was found, had been intriguing with him during Mahmud's absence, and had advised this invasion. On this account Khalaf was immured in the fortress of Juzdez of Kuhistan. In 401 H., Mahmud again advanced into Hindustan against the fortress of Bhim [also called Bhim-nagar], the chief of which was Bhim Naravan. There is no mention of any expedition undertaken in that quarter in Fasih-i, as contained in the Jami'-ut-Tawarikh. against Nārdīn; but, in some works, an expedition against Nandanah, in 404 H., is mentioned. In 407 H., Mahmud's son-in-law, Abu-l-'Abbas-i-Māmūn, Farighūni, ruler of Jurjāniah of Khwārazm, was murdered by some of his troops. Mahmud went in person into Khwarazm, defeated the insurgents, and put Nial-Tigin [called Alb-Tigin by Baihakil, the ringleader, and the murderers, to the sword, reduced that territory under his sway, and Altun-Tash, the great chamberlain, was entrusted with its government. I-lak Khan had died in Māwar-un-Nahr, in 403 H.; and in 408 H. Mahmud sought from her uncle, Tughan Khan, who had succeeded him, the hand of I-lak's daughter in marriage for his son Mas'ūd, whom he nominated as his heir and successor. Tughan Khan himself died in the same year, and was succeeded by his brother, Bughra Tigin, entitled Arsalan Khan. On that lady's arrival shortly after at Balkh, the capital was illuminated; and soon after Mahmud made over the government of Khurāsān to Mas'ūd, with Hirāt as the seat of government, having previously assembled the whole of his Ulus, or tribe, together, to take oath of fealty to his son. [According to Baihaki, however, this lady had been betrothed to Muhammad, Mas'ud's brother, but the former, having been immured in a fortress by the latter, when he ascended the throne, Muhammad could not marry her, and Mas'ud did, with the consent of her brother; but this was several years subsequent to the events above-mentioned.]

 pass the Jiḥūn with all his kindred and dependents, and cross over into <u>Kh</u>urāsān. The wisest and most sagacious men of that time considered the granting of this permission

activity and energy should be employed for two hundred years, they could not complete the like." Within this great temple were five idols of gold, five gaz or ells in height, and the eyes of one of them were formed of two rubies [Jami'-ut-Tawarikh-"of a dark red colour"], which were valued at 50,000 dinars of gold. The eyes of another were formed of two sapphires, of the weight of four bundred miskāls / [600 miskāls = 1 ser = 1 lb. 13 oz.] the immense value of which could not be computed. From the lower extremities of one of the idols, pure gold of the weight of 4400 miskāls was obtained. Besides these great idols, there were two hundred others of silver, in the temple, the whole of which were broken up; and the temple itself was overthrown, and set on fire. [Compare with Elliot, vol. ii. pp. 44, 45.] After this Kinnauj on the Gang. and other places, were captured, the details of which events are too long for insertion here; but among them is mentioned Nardin, the fortress of "Bramah" [perhaps the place called Bhawan or Bahawan by some authors called Mani, Asi. and other places. From the idol-temple of the first named, a stone tablet was brought, on which was written that the temple had been founded forty thousand years before. Jai-pal of Kinnauj fled across the Gang, on the bank of which were ten thousand idol-temples in seven fortresses. At the capture of Asi. Chand-pal Bhud, the sovereign of that part, was slain. In 410 H. Mahmud again entered Hindustan, "and was engaged [detained] therein for a period of four years" إجهار سال مكث واقع شد] during which time many conquests were made. In 411 H. Mahmud became greatly incensed against his brother Amir Nasr, who had been acting improperly and carelessly in his duty in command of his troops, being constantly engaged in wine-bibbing and pleasure, and, by his conduct, causing relaxation in discipline, "for, when the forces were about to march, his followers were generally found to be in the bazars, instead of present at their posts; and great excesses were committed by them." Mahmūd sent Khwajah-i-'Amid, Abū Naṣr-i-Mishkan, Al-Zawzani, to him about this misconduct. Nasr's reply was so becoming that Mahmud passed it over, at the same time saying to the Khwajah: "My brother Nasr is a very prudent and sagacious man." In 412 H., Tasdar تسدر [Naro ji] Jai-pāl, ruler of Hind [see Elliot, vol. ii. p. 12], was slain, and Bhim-pal, his son, succeeded to his sovereignty. In 414 H., Sultan Mahmud came to an accommodation, in a distant part [] of Hind with Beda [Nanda, in other works], on the latter's presenting 150 elephants, after which he returned to Ghaznin, and in the same year made a raid into the mountains inhabited by the Afghanian [sic in MS.], plundered them, and carried off much booty. This is the first time they are mentioned in the history from which I have taken these accounts. In 416 H. Mahmud made another raid upon them from Balkh, and fell upon them at night. In this same year, Jaghar Beg-i-Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ūd, son of Tughril Beg, son of Mika'il, the Saljuk, rose, and entered Khwarazm; and Bhimpal also died. In 417 H. the expedition against Somnath was undertaken, and a farther portion of Hind was subdued; some by treaty and agreement to pay the jazīah or capitation tax, some by force of arms and plunder of the country, and making captives of the people, and some by the people becoming converts to Islam. In 419 H. Mahmud proceeded into Mawar-un-Nahr, and had an interview with Kadr Khan, sovereign of Turkistan, and the treaty formerly existing between them was renewed and confirmed, on the agreement

a grave error in the Sultan's policy; for they perceived therein danger to the empire of his sons and descendants.

Sultān Maḥmūd entered 'Irāk and subdued that territory, and purposed proceeding to the Court of Baghdād to pay his respects'; but, on the receipt of a mandate to the contrary from the Lord of the Faithful, he retired, and

that a portion of Mawar-un-Nahr should be held by Mahmud, and some be incorporated with Kadr Khan's dominions; and a fresh treaty was written out upon these terms, and duly signed. On his way back, Mahmud granted an audience unto Isra'il, son of Beghu, son of Saliuk, son of Lukman, and brought him along with him. After a time Isra'il was immured within the fortress of Kaliniar, also called Talwarah, where he died. In 420 H. Mahmud slew [slain in battle with Mahmud] Majd-ud-Daulah, Buwiah, and acquired sway over 'Irak [a portion], and overthrew that branch of the Buwiah dynasty : and 'Irak was added to the dominions previously conferred upon Mas'ud. "On Thursday, the 14th of Rabi'-us-sani, 421 H. [A.D. 1030, about the middle of April], Sultan Mahmud died, and was buried in the Firuzi Bagh, or garden, of Ghaznin, after he had reigned thirty-three years. Some say he died in 420 H." These extracts were taken originally from the work entitled "Makamat of the 'Amid Abu Naşr," written by the 'Amid [--not Ahmad] Abū-l-Fazl, Al-Baihaki, so called from Baihak his birth-place, a small town in Zāwulistān, also called Mukir,

There are many materials for a complete history of this reign which, as regards India, is the most important one. Our author's account is, to use the words of Sir H. Elliot, "too curt;" and I have been compelled to make these notes much longer than I liked. Another reason, for my comparative minuteness, was, that the accounts of this reign, in most authors, are confused and erroneous, particularly in writers of modern times. As in other cases, the "classical" writers, and the old geographers, referred to by Abū-l-Fazl, appear to have led their votaries astray; and the names of persons and places are as diverse and different as the authors and translators themselves. Elliot's work contains a large amount of most valuable materials, but the mode of arrangement tends rather to confuse, as I have previously pointed out. Names of persons and places have been introduced from modern translations of works, instead of from the originals, where possible. Who would think of appealing to Dow or the like for the correct reading of proper names? For example : in note at page 19, vol. ii., wherein S. de Sacy is quoted, who says that Dow has "Abistagi, and Subuktagi for Alpteghin and Sebekteghin," his own blunder is far worse than Dow's, for neither of the words contains any gh in it. See note 1, page 58. In the extract from 'Utbi, page 20, where mention is made of the "fountain in one of the ravines of a very lofty mountain called the 'Ukba Ghúzak ['Ukbah-مبقه-means a pass], into which if any filth is thrown storms arise," which is quite correct, Dow, in his "Hindostan, page 27, interprets it, "if a small quantity of a certain drug should be thrown," &c. Reynolds, in his version of the Kitab-i-Yamini, has made terrible work of the proper names, which are written all sorts of ways. . He has Simjouri, Sinjur, and Simjur for one person; Bastí and Bostí; Muwid-Addowlat and Muwayyad-Addowlat, and the like, in scores of places.

1 Not mentioned in other authors, and very doubtful.

returned to Ghaznin, where he died at the age of sixty-one.

after a reign of thirty-three years, in 421 H.2

His sons were Muhammad, Nasr, Mas'ūd, Sulimāu3, Ismā'il, 'Abd-ur-Rashid, styled 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Amir of Ghaznin, and Ibrāhim, which latter had a son named Suliman.

III. AMĪR MUHAMMAD4, SON OF MAHMŪD.

Jalāl-ud-Daulah wa-ud-Din5, Muhammad, was a learned and virtuous-minded prince; and they recite [upon his authority of a great number of poems in the Arabic language.

When his father, Sultan Mahmud, died, his brother, Mas'ūd, was in 'Irāk'; and the great nobles and chiefs of

For the precise date of his decease, see note 9, preceding page. Among the different coins struck in Mahmud's reign one bore the following inscription:-"The right hand of the empire, Mahmud Sultan, son of Nasir-ud-Din, Sabuk-Tigin, Breaker of Idols." This coin appears to have been struck at Lahor, in the seventh year of his reign. The following territories are said to have been included in his empire: - Ghaznin, Zābulistān, Khurāsān, Khwarāzm, Chaghānian Tabaristan, Sipahan [Isfahan], Kabul as far as Kinnaui [sic in MSS.], the country around Kalinjar, Multan as far as Nahrwalah of Gujarat, Somnāth, the territory lying on the sea-coast of 'Ummān, Kuşdār, Sind as far as Siwastan bordering on Kirman, Kij, and Makran. His authority in a good many of these must have been very nominal.

3 In two MSS, the name of Mahmud occurs in place of Suliman, but the latter seems to be correct.

4 Most authors place Mas'ud before his brother Muhammad, and only consider the latter's reign to have commenced after Mas'ud had been dethroned and imprisoned in 432 H.

6 Other writers state that his title was Jalal-ud-Daulah and Jalal-ul-Millat. Guzidah says 'Imād-ud-Daulah was his title. His coins have Jalāl-ud-Daulah,

and Jamal-ul-Millat.

6 He was an authority with respect to the text of several Arabic poems. In poems like the Mu'allakat, for example, the texts furnished by various philologists differ considerably from each other. The original words are

از وی اشعار عربیت روایت بسیار کنند

7 Mas'ud was, of course, in 'Irak, as he held the government of all the western parts of his father's empire. He appears to have been at Hamadanbut one author, at least, says at Isfahan-when his father's death took place. See note 9 at page 87. Immediately on the decease of Mahmud, the Hajib, 'Ali Khweshawand, who was a relative of the late Sultan, and the Hajib, Bak-Taghdi, who was commander of the Māmlūks of the palace, entered into a compact "that they would act in concert with, and do nothing contrary to each other, but act in harmony in whatever might occur, and carefully hold the dargah or palace until such time as one of the late Sultan's sons should ascend the late Sultān's court, by mutual accord, raised Sultān Muhammad to the throne of <u>Gh</u>aznîn in the year 421 H. He was, however, a man of mild and unaspiring temperament, and possessed neither sufficient resolution of heart, nor decision of character, to govern the kingdom. A party, who were favourably inclined towards Mas'ūd, sent communications to him in 'Irāķ 's, upon which he assembled the troops of 'Irāķ and <u>Kh</u>urāsān, with the determination of proceeding to <u>Gh</u>aznīn; and he marched from 'Irāķ in that direction.

When the news of his coming, and his intentions, reached <u>Ghaznin</u>, Muhammad caused his forces to be got in readiness, and set out with the purpose of resisting his brother; and 'Alī Ķurbat' was the Hājib-i-Buzurg [Great Chamberlain], and the commander of his army.

When the forces reached Tigin-ābād, information of the advance of Mas'ūd having reached the camp of Muhammad,

the throne, when they would deliver it up, with the country [sic], into his hands." This compact was entered into by those officers, in the presence of, and with the advice, approval, and concurrence of the 'Amid [not' 'Ahmad'] Abi Nasri-Mishkān, the minister of the late Sultān.

8 Fasih-i says, that in the same year, 421 H., through the endeavours and efforts of the Hajib, 'Ali Khweshawand, and Yusuf, son of Sabuk-Tigin, brother of the late Sultan, Muhammad was confined within the walls of the citadel of Tigin-abad, and they awaited the arrival of Sultan Mas'ud, The Tazkirat-ul-Muliik calls the first mentioned person 'Ali, son of I-val-Arsalan, a relative of the late Sultan Mahmud; and says that Muhammad made his uncle [cousin?] Ya'kūb, son of Yūsuf, commander of his forces, and Khwājah Abū Sahl [not "Suhal"], his minister; but, that a strong party were inclined to his brother Mas'ud. Accordingly, Amir Iyaz, with the Ghulams, or slaves-the regular troops or guards as they may be termed-combined to espouse his cause, entered the royal stables, mounted the best horses therein, and set out to join Mas'ud, who was then at Isfahan. They joined him at Nishapur on his advance towards Ghaznin by way of Hirat. On this Muhammad, with all his followers, set out towards Hirāt in order to submit to his brother. Other writers differ greatly from our author, on very good grounds, in their accounts of his reign. Mas'ud is said to have written to his brother to say that he had no intention or desire to interfere with his sovereignty over the dominions-the eastern parts of the empire-left him by their father's will, but that it was absolutely necessary that his, Mas'ūd's, name should be first in the Khutbah. Muhammad replied in a surly manner. Mas'ud's partisans then seized Muhammad, as above related; and it is farther asserted that Muhammad had not. as yet, been blinded by them, but that he was deprived of his sight by order of Mas'ūd.

9'Alf Kurbat and 'Alf Khweshawand refer to one and the same person. Kurbat signifies "kindred," "affinity," and Khweshawand, "a kinsman," a relative." This is the 'Alf Karib of Baihaki.

they seized his person, deprived him of his sight, and placed him in confinement. After this act 'Ali Kurbat marched . the troops towards Hirāt, in order to meet Sultān Mas'ūd; and, having arrived within one stage of that place, he proceeded to present himself before the Sultan. Mas'ud gave orders to seize him, and Muhammad's whole army was plundered 1 and despoiled.

On this occasion his reign extended to a period of seven months. Subsequently, when Sultan Mas'ud, the Martyr, became the victim of misfortune at Mārigalah?, Sultān Muhammad, although he had been deprived of his sight, was brought forth and placed upon the throne, and he brought the army from thence back towards Ghaznin.

Sultan Mawdud, the son of Mas'ud, marched out of Ghaznin s, with the determination to take revenge upon his uncle for his father's death, overthrew him in the battle [which ensued], and put to death his uncle Muhammad with all his offspring 4. Muhammad, on the second occasion, exercised sovereignty for a period of four months. His martyrdom took place in the year 432 H.; and his age was forty-five years.

⁵ For particulars see reign of Mawdud, and notes. His reign is said to have extended over a period of nine months. The word غيرد signifying martyr, also means one who dies for a cause which he thinks just; and any Muham-

madan killed in battle is so called,

In Elliot's "HISTORY OF INDIA," edited by Professor Dowson of the Staff College, the latter is rather bitter [vol. ii., pref. ix], against the bad translation of extracts from our author, made for Sir H. Elliot, for his work, and, in several places, cries out against this kind of assistance. I doubt very much, however, whether any "officer," with even a practical smattering of Persian or "Urdu, would have translated "- جماله لشكر او را غارت كردند Ordered his whole force to be destroyed." فارس كردن "does not mean "to destroy." Mr. Dowson also translates this passage فارس كردن المجاد المادية لله المادية لله المادية الله المادية الله المادية الله المادية المادية الله المادية ا Mas'ud was killed at Marikala ;" but, as in the case above, صاحب واقعد does not mean "killed." His own words disprove his own translation, for, two pages farther on, comes the passage, "but in Marikala his Turki and Hindi slaves revolted, took him prisoner," &c.

² See note 4 at page 95.

³ See note 2 at page 96. 4 The Tazkirat-ul-Mulūk states that all were put to death by Mawdūd, except one son, 'Abd-ur-Rahim by name. "Amir Mawdud forbade that he should be injured, because he had been informed that, at the time of the murder of his father, Mas'ūd, one of 'Abd-ur-Raḥīm's brothers, out of insolence, had plucked the diadem which Mas'ud wore from that gallant prince's head, but 'Abd-ur-Rahim took it from his brother, and replaced it on the brow of Mas'ud again, and severely rebuked his brother for what he had done."

His sons were 'Abd-ur-Raḥman, 'Abd-ur-Raḥim, and Ahmad.

IV. SULŢĀN NĀŞIR-ŪD-DĪN U'LLAH6, MAS'ŪD, THE MARTYR.

Sulṭān Mas'ūd, the Martyr, bore the title of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn U'llah, and his surname was Abū Mas'ūd. His birth, and that of his brother, Sulṭān Muḥammad, took place on the same day?. Sulṭān Mas'ūd assumed the sovereignty in the year 422 H. He was generous and munificent to so great a degree that they called him a second Khalifah 'Alī—may God reward him!—and in valour and prowess he was a second Rustam. No man could lift his mace 9 with one hand from the ground; and no iron target used to stay his arrow. His father, the Sulṭān, used to be envious of him, and constantly treated him with harshness and severity², to such degree that he preferred a request to the court of Baghdād, that the name and title of Muḥammad should have precedence in the Khutbah over those of his brother Mas'ūd.

⁶ Other writers style him Nāṣir-ud-Daulah, and Nāṣir-ud-Din. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh gives him the title of Nāṣir-ud-din U'llah, wa Mu'in-i-Khalifah U'llah; but Baihaki, his biographer, styles him "Shihāb-ud-Daulah, and Kutb-ul-Millau Abī Sa'ād-i-Mas'ūd."

⁷ It does not follow that they were twins.

⁸ He ascended the throne of Ghaznin, at Hirāt, on the 1st of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 422 H., soon after which he gave orders to put the Hājib, 'Ali Khweshāwand, and his brother Mangirāk, to death, and confiscated all their property. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh agrees in this statement, and adds farther, that 'Ali Khweshāwand, the Hājib, had taken an active part in raising Muhammad to the throne, and had subsequently acted perfidiously towards him.

⁹ Mr. E. Thomas, in his numismatic "Chronicles of the Pathän kings of Delhi," asserts[p. 79], with respect to a coin of the Turkish slave-king, I-yaltimish, that the mace is "the special weapon of the great Mahmúd." The statement is erroneous, as-shown in the text. The mace was, by no means, an uncommon weapon in those days. See also under reign of Sulfan Tughril, son of Arsalan Shāh, last reign of Section XII.

¹ Mr. Dowson translates this passage [in the original—ناهای استان این او در هیچ یال اختی—"and even an etephant could not stand before him." The word here used signifies a plate of iron placed on a post used for tilting at, and as a butt for arrows.

² Mas'ūd, on one occasion, when writing to his envoy in Turkistān, mentions his father's having once ordered him back from Hirāt, when there as governor, and sent him to Multān, where he was kept in durance, but that he was never considered in any other light than his father's heir.

Khwājah Abū Naṣr-i-Mishkān ³ says: "When the [Kha-ilfāh's] letters patent were being read out in the audience hall of Sultān Maḥmūd, a weight came over the hearts of the great nobles and chiefs, as well as my own, because the marks of majesty and nobility of mind were more prominently impressed upon the brow of Mas'ūd. When Sultān Mas'ūd came out from his father's presence, I, Abū Naṣr-i-Mishkān, went out after him, and I said: 'O Prince, a heavy load has overcome the hearts of us, your servants, on account of the reversal of your august title in the mandate of the Khalifah.' Mas'ūd replied: 'Do not you be grieved. Have you not heard that "the sword is a truer authority than any writing?"' and commanded me to go back again.

By the time that I returned to the audience-chamber informants had already, without loss of time, acquainted the Sultān of this obsequiousness of mine, and he summoned me before him. When I came into the presence of Sultān Maḥmūd, he demanded, saying, 'Wherefore didst thou go out after Mas'ūd, and what wast thou speaking about?' I related all that occurred without withholding any thing, for, had I concealed any thing, my life would have been in danger. The Sultān said: 'I am aware that, in every respect, Mas'ūd excels Muḥammad, and that after my time the sovereignty will fall into the possession of Mas'ūd'; and I use so much ceremony now that this poor Muḥammad may, during my lifetime, experience a little honour and

³ Mas'ūd, as soon as he assumed the sovereignty, appointed this same person-whose proper name is Khwajah-i-'Amid, Abu Naşr-i-Mishkan, Al-Zawzani-his confident and secretary, which was the same office as he had held under the late Sultan Mahmud; and Tahir, the Dabir [secretary], who had previously held that office, was removed. In 423 H., Hasnak, who bore the title of Shaikh-ul-Khatir [great, honourable, &c.], who had been Wazir to Sultan Mahmud, and had also held the same office under Muhammad, was gibbeted by order of Mas'ūd, because he had been the most active in depriving him of the throne. He had, in all probability, influenced Mahmud in his harsh treatment of Mas'ud. In 426 H. Mas'ud ordered Khwajah-i-Fazil, Ahmad, son of Hasan, Al-Maimandi [from his native place, Maimand, a small town of Ghaznin], who had been long kept in prison by his late father, to be set at liberty, after which Mas'ud made him his Wazīr. It was on this occasion that he drew up his celebrated Mūāşafat, or stipulations on his duties, to be observed between his sovereign and himself, and which each of them swore to observe.

⁴ Our author does not appear to have known that Mahmūd, his father, had declared Mas ūd his heir, and made the whole of his udits or tribe swear allegiance to him in 408 H. See note 9, p. 85.

gratification, which, after I am gone, will not be left to him.' The mercy of God be upon them!"

The Khwājah, Abū Naṣr-i-Mishkān, says, "In this occurrence two things astonished me: one was the answer of Mas'ūd to me, spoken with such wisdom and discernment, and the second, the greatness of mind, and the perfect supervision of Maḥmūd, that such a trivial act of attachment could not escape him."

When Maḥmūd subdued 'Irāk he bestowed the throne of that territory upon Mas'ūd; and, previous to that event, the city of Hirāt, and Khurāsān, had been ruled in Mas'ūd's name. When he ascended the throne of Ṣafahān's, he seized the territory of Rai, Kazwin, and Hamadān, and the country of Ṭāram', all which he conquered, and he likewise overcame the Dilamān's. On several occasions he donned robes of honour conferred upon him by the Court of the Khalifahs. After the decease of his father, Maḥmūd, he came to Ghaznin, and took the government of his father's dominions into his own hands. Several times he led armies into Hindūstān', and carried on holy wars as by law enjoined. On another occasion' he marched into Tabaristān

⁵ See note 9, p. 85.

⁶ Isfahān or Safahān.

⁷ Tāram is in Lār, or Lāristān, a province of Persia.

⁸ Mas'ūd, in 424 H., wrested Kirmān from the Buwfah dynasty, who had long since declined; and sent Aḥmad, son of 'Alf, son of Nūh-Tigin, thither as governor. This, however, could have been temporary only, for in 433 H., after Mas'ūd's death, Karā-Arsalān Beg, son of Jagḥar Beg, wrested Kirmān out of the hands of Bahrām, son of 'Alf, the governor on the part of the Dīālamah sovereign, Abū Kālinjār, son of Sulţān-ud-Daulah, son of 'Izz-ud-Daulah, son o

⁹ In the year 772 H., Sulfān Fīrūs, Tughluk, was encamped near a place named Zafar-ābād, on his return from Bangāl. This was before he gave orders to found Jūnpūr [vul.] oumpoor]. "At this place were the ruins of several idol-temples, destroyed by Sulfān Mas'ūd, the Victorious, during one of his campaigns in Hindūstān. A fort there still retains [i. e. when the author, from whom the extract is taken, wrote] the name of Karār-kot, from Karār-Bīr, a demon killed by Rājah Rām Çhand, in the Tretā Jug." If it had not been stated that Mas'ūd destroyed these temples, I should be inclined to think this must refer to Mus'ūd-i-Karīm, only he sent his Ḥājib, and did not make a campaign in India in person, that I am aware of. Baihakī mentions nothing more than the expedition against Hānsī, in his work. Our author does not mention his authority for the statement that Mas'ūd led armies into India upon several occasions.

¹ Not "twice."

and Māzandarān; and, at the end of his reign, the Saljūks rose against him². On three several occasions he overthrew them in battle within the confines of Marw and Sarakhs; but, in the end, since it was the Divine will that the country of Khurāsān should pass unto the race of Saljūk, he encountered them in battle in Dāe-kān [Tāl-kān]³, and for

² Isra²Ii-i-Beghū, son of Sulimān, son of Saljūk, who had been immured within the walls of the fortress of Kālinjar, died there in 426 H. In the same year, Jaghar Beg, or Jaghari Beg, as he is also called [edu_yi*]—a name which most oriental writers, and all English writers but one, have, most erroneously, supposed to be "Jaríar" Beg—son of Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ūd, son of Mikā'li, son of Saljūk, son of Lukmān, rose, and took up his quarters at Marw. In the following year, Mas'ūd made all those persons who had received grants or presents from his brother, Muḥammad, refund them. This was done quite against the urgent remonstrances of his Wazīr. The sum produced is said to have amounted to eighty times a thousand thousand of dirans. In 429 H., Tughril Beg, son of Mika'il, son of Saljūk, assumed sovereignty at Nīshāpūr, and from that date their dynasty commenced.

3 This battle was fought in 431 H., but some writers differ as to 430, 431, and 432 H. The scene of the encounter is said to have been "the desert tract between Marw and Sarakhs, three marches from the former, near the fort of Dāndankād of Marw," which name is sometimes written Dāndankān, Dīdankān, and in other ways. It occurs, with a slight variation, in the Masālik wa Mamālik in one place, but it is correctly called Tāl-kān in another; and also occurs in Ibn Ḥaukal, in Baihaki, Yāfa'i, Gazdah, Jām'-ut-Tawārikh, Lubb-ut-Tawārikh, and the works of some other writers who copy from them, the only difference in writing the words being other with the only difference in writing the words being of the production—aduals

manufactures.

These names are however mere errors for Tāl-kān, which famous place, and Tāc-kān of Tukhāristān, are commonly mistaken the one for the other, as done by our author in the text above, or rather some scribe for him, because, at page 46, and other places, and in the last Section, the name is correctly given, and also an account of the siege of Naṣir Koh of Tāl-kān by the Chingiz Khān. In carelessly written MSS, seribes make very little difference between the letter | \(\ell \) here | without the points, and \(\ldots \) — \(\text{the min} \) = \(

Mr. Dowson Elliot's INDIA, Vol. II., page 273], who appears to have implicitly followed the printed text, has "Tālikān." This incorrect name, sometimes varied to "Tālikhān," is generally applied by European writers to Tāl-kān of Tukhāristān, without being aware of the existence of Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, or at least, without being aware of the difference between the names

of the two places.

three successive days he assailed and struggled with them; and on the third day, which was Friday, the Sultan was defeated, and retreated to <u>Ghaznin</u> by the way of <u>Gharjistān</u>.

Through the great dread which had now overcome him, he collected his treasures together, and came towards Hindūstān; and at Mārigalah i, his Turkish and Hindū slaves revolted against him, seized his person, and [again] set up his brother, Muḥammad, upon the throne, and sent Mas'ūd to the fortress of Gîrî i; and, in 432 H., he was martyred i. His age was forty-five years; and the period of his reign was nine years, and a little over. His sons were Maudūd, Majdūd i, Muḥammad, Ibrāhim, Izid-yār, Farrukh-zād, Shujā', Mardān Shāh, and 'Alī.

V. SHIHAB-UD-DAULAH, MAUDŪD, SON OF MAS'ŪD.

Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Abū Sa'd-i-Maudūd s, son of Nāṣirud-dīn U'llah, Mas'ūd, when the tidings of his father's murder reached him s, ascended the throne of his father's dominions.

⁴ A pass, in ancient times somewhat difficult, situated between Rāwal Pindî and Attak, a few miles east of Ḥasan Abdal. The hills around used to be infested with robbers, who generally chose this pass for attacking travellers and karwāns of traders, hence the name "hārī-galah." The emperor Akbar had a good road carried through the pass for about two miles. I have noticed it in my paper—"Diary of a March with the Bombay Column of the Army of the Panjāb,"—contained in the Transactions of the Bombay Geographical Society for 1850-51.

6 Baihaki writes it Giri [كرى] and others write it Giri [قرك] and Girā

6 He was not murdered until the 11th of Jamädi-ul-Awwal of the following year, 433 H., at which time, his nephew, Ahmad, son of the blind Muḥammad, pretending it was his father's command, put Mas'ūd to death, after a reign of a few days over eleven years, not nine as our author states, because he ascended the throne on the 1st of Jamädi-ul-Awwal, 422 H., and was murdered in the very same month of the year 433 H.; but he had certainly been in confinement since the previous year. Muḥammad is said to have lamented this act, and greatly reproached the murderers.

7 Appointed governor of the territory east of the Indus, with his head-quarters at Lähor, in Zi-Ka'dah, 427 H. Baihaki mentions two others, but merely gives the title of one—Amir-i-Sa'id—to whom Mas'ūd was much attached, and whom he proposed to make his heir, but he died at Qhaznin in 429 H. The other-was named Abd-ur-Razzäk.

Styled by some authors Shihāb-ud-Daulah, and Kutb-ul-Millat, 'Abd-ul-Fath-i-Maudūd, and Maudūd-i-Ghāzī. According to Baihaki, Mas'ūd's title

was Shihāb-ud-Daulah and Kutb-ul-Millat.

⁹ Maudūd was at Balkh, when the tidings of his father's imprisonment and murder reached him. He set out for Ghaznīn without delay. See note ², p. 96. At the period that Sultān Mas'ūd was about to proceed into Hindūstān, he had established Maudūd as his lieutenant over the territory of <u>Ghaznīn</u>, and its dependencies. Maudūd assumed the throne in 432 H., and assembled an army, in order to revenge his father, and commenced his march towards Hindūstān'.

Sulţān Muḥammad, son of Maḥmūd, who was Maudūd's uncle, had been brought forth from his place of confinement, by the rebellious retinue [of Maṣ'ūd], and had been raised to the throne by them, who, with their loins girded, stood before him [to do his behests]. The great nobles of Hindūstān submitted to him; and the Turkish slaves of Maḥmūd and of Mas'ūd, who had acted so perfidiously and with such hostility towards the latter, all had gone over to Muḥammad, and espoused his cause. After he had been made sovereign by them four months, an encounter took place between Maudūd and his uncle; and, by the will of the Most High, the victory was bestowed upon Maudūd, within the limits of Nagrahār [Nangrahār ²], and Muḥam

¹ Guzidah differs in the account of this affair. "When hostilities arose between Mas'ud, and the Saljuks, and Mas'ud had been defeated, he had to retreat to Ghaznin. He then determined to retire into Hindustan [which in nearly every case should be understood to mean the Panjab, except in the case of occasional expeditions beyond]. After Mas'ud had passed the Jilam [إجيام] his troops mutinied against him, and carried away the blind Muhammad from him, after which they placed a throne upon the back of an elephant, and seated Muhammad thereon. They then conducted him through the whole army; and Mas'ud was seized and brought before his sightless brother." The Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī, while confirming this, with the exception of mentioning the Ab-i-Sind, instead of the Jilam, adds that Muhammad gave up the direction of the affairs of government to his son, Ahmad, and that Muhammad only imprisoned his brother Mas'ud; but Ahmad directed that he should be put to death. This statement is confirmed by most other historians. Mas'ūd's object in proceeding into India, or rather his territory on the Indus and in the Panjab, was to raise a fresh army in order to take vengeance upon the Saljūks.

² Maudūd, on hearing of his father's murder, advanced with his troops towards Ghaznin to secure the capital; and Muhammad, who was on the confines of Sind Ii.e. on the Indus, in the Sind Sigar Do-āb], also hastened towards Ghaznin for a similar purpose. Every copy of the work I have seen has the name Nagrahār as plainly written as it is possible to write, yet Mr. Dowson translates it by the impossible name of "Takarhārid," and makes the error worse, by adding, in a note [Elliot, vol. si. p. 274]—"" or "Bakarhā," perhaps Bakhrālā, Firishta's text says 'Depūr', not 'Duntoor,' as in Briggs' translation]." Why "Bakhrālā" is fixed upon thus at hap-hazard, 'it would be highly interesting to know. 'Was it because there is a place axis of the Margalah Pass called all-5f.—Bak-rālāh, which happened to be not far of

mad was taken prisoner, together with his children and dependents. Sultān Maudūd wreaked vengeance upon him for his father's fall; and the murderers of his father, both Turk and Tāzīk, he put to death, and thereby gained fame and great distinction. Whoever were implicated in the shedding of his father's blood, the whole of them he put to death.

He returned again to <u>Ghaznin</u>, and took possession of the different parts of his father's dominions. He reigned for a period of nine years, and died; and his age was thirtynine years.

His sons were Mansūr, Muḥammad, and Maḥmūd; and the latter had a son named Sūlimān.

VI. 'ALĪ, SON OF MAS'ŪD, AND MUḤAMMAD, SON OF MAUDŪD, IN ASSOCIATION 4.

These two princes, uncle and nephew, were raised to the

towards the Jihlam [Ales]? Which is the most natural—one force marching from Ghaznin, and another marching towards it from the Mārgalah Pass—that they should meet about half-way, or at Bak-rālah? A glance at a map would show at once where those places lie. Maudind founded a Bāzār or emporium, at the place where he gained this victory, which Baihaki calls Dhūrī, and named it Fethā-Bād, which, in the advance to Kābul, in 1842, was occupied by the troops under the command of Gen. Sir R. Sale, G.C.B. The name has been incorrectly spelt, as usual, Futtehabad. Maudīd gained this battle 424 H.

² Our author has omitted to mention some of the chief events of his reign, as well as the date of his death. Both Guzidah and Faṣiḥ-i, as well as several other writers, state that Mandid died in the month of Rajab, 441 H., of colic, when on his way to meet Jaghar Beg, his father's old foe, whose daughter he had married. The capital of Jaghar Beg, at this time, was Marw.

A very unlikely arrangement, to say the least of it. Our author, here, is at variance with all works of undoubted authority. Yafa'i, Faşih-i, the Nigām-ut-Tawārikh of Baizawi, Guzidah, Jahan-Ārā, Lubb-ut-Tawārikh, Fanākatī, and several others state, generally, that on the death of Maudud, his son Mas'ud, in accordance with his father's will, was raised to the throne, and that his mother, the daughter of Jaghar Beg, Saljūkī, began to administer the government in his name, he being a child of three years of age. After he had been one month on the throne-some say ten days-with his mother's consent and approbation, the great nobles and grandees, by mutual agreement, set the child aside, and raised his uncle, Bahā-ud-Din, 'Alī, to the throne. No writer that I am acquainted with says one word about two rulers in joint occupation of the throne, except our author, who also makes a great blunder in calling Maudūd's infant son, Mas'ūd, by the name of "Muhammad." A very good reason is given in Guzidah for the child's being set aside. Bahā-ud-Daulah, 'Alf, married his brother Maudud's widow. on which she, probably, did not much mind her infant son being set aside for her new husband.

throne by the Turks and the chief men of the kingdom. Each and every person took possession of some office or other. As the two princes possessed neither capacity nor ability, and neither authority nor control, the utmost disorder and detriment continued to arise in the affairs of the country, the condition of the soldiery, and of the people in general. After two months they raised Sultan 'Abd-ur-Rashid to the throne, and sent the two princes back to a fortress again.

VII. 'ABD-UR-RASHID, SON OF MAHMUD.

Sulţān 'Izz-ud-Daulah-i-'Abd-ur-Rashîd ascended the throne in 441 H. 6. He was an enlightened and intelligent man, and was a depository of the oral traditions, which he was wont to narrate⁷; but he did not possess much strength of mind or intrepidity.

Seeing the repeated and successive changes and revolutions in the sovereignty, the Saljūks on the side of <u>Kh</u>urāsān coveted the throne of <u>Gh</u>aznin.* The sovereignty of

¹⁸ Fanākatī and Tārikh-i-Ibrāhimi say 'Alī reigned two years, after which, on 'Abd-ur-Raghīd rebelling, he fled from Ghaznīn. Guzdah agrees as to the number of years that 'Alī reigned, but says that his reign terminated in

443 H., and calls 'Abd-ur-Rashid his uncle.

6 Under the events of the year 443 H., Faṣiḥ-î notices—"a battle between Majd-ud-Daulah, Abū Manṣūr-i-'Abd-ur-Raṣhīd, son of Maḥmūd-i-Ghād, and Bāhā-ud-Daulah, 'Alī, son of Mas'ūd, and the overthrow of 'Alī after a reign, at Ghaznīn, of one year, and the accession of Majd-ud-Daulah before mentioned." Other authors also call him Majd-ud-Daulah. 'Yāfa'ī says that 'Abd-ur-Raṣhīd, who had for years been imprisoned in a fortress, escaped, raised forces, overthrew 'Alī, and ascended the throne.

7 Translated by Mr. Dowson-"used to listen to chronicles and write his-

اخبار سماع داشت و روایت کردی The original is اخبار سماع داشت

A much more probable cause is given for the advance of the Saljūks in other histories, which is as follows:—"After 'Abd-ur-Rashid had reigned one year, the daughter of Jagha Beg, in order to revenge the loss of her second husband, 'Ali, brought an army of Saljūks against him." It is farther stated that among the slaves of the Mapmūdi dynasty was one named Jughril, who was Amīr-ul-Umrā, who went and joined the Saljūks, conspired with them, fought a battle against 'Abd-ur-Rashid, and took him prisoner. The daughter of Jaghar Beg, widow of Maudūd and 'Alī, made 'Abd-ur-Rashid over to Tughril, and returned herself to Khuvīsān. Tughril imprisoned him in a fortress in the district of Maidān [near Kābul]. 'Abd-ur-Rashid was of such weak intellect that on one occasion, when Tughril was playing at Chaugān theire, 'Abd-ur-Rashid came forth to see the sport, and applauded Tughril. After a time 'Abd-ur-Rashid was put to death, at which period nine of the

Khurāsān had passed to Dā'ūd; and Alb-Arsalān, his son, having become the commander of his forces, they determined to advance against Ghaznīn. Alb-Arsalān entered [the country] by way of Tukhāristān, with a numerous army; and his father, Dā'ūd, advanced upon Bust, by way of Sīstān.

Sultān 'Abd-ur-Rashīd caused his forces to be got ready, and made Tughril, who was one of the slaves of Maḥmūd, and a man of consummate valour, general over them, and sent him against Alb-Arsalān. In front of the darah' of Khumār he inflicted a defeat upon Alb-Arsalān, and from thence pushed on towards Bust, and arrived there with the utmost expedition. When he came up with Dā'ūd, the latter retired before him, and Tughril pursued him into Sīstān, and overthrew Beghū, the uncle of Dā'ūd.

Tughril having gained two or three such like successes, returned to Ghaznīn, seized Sultān 'Abd-ur-Rashīd, and put him to death, after which he ascended the throne himself.

'Abd-ur-Rashid's reign was two years and a half, and his age was thirty years'.

VIII. TUGHRIL, AL-MAL'ŪN, OR THE EXECRATED?

Tughril was one of Mahmūd's slaves, and was endowed

grandsons of Maḥmud were still living. Yāfa'Î states that 'Abd-ur-Rashīd reigned nearly seven years, and died 450 II. No mention of Tughril is made; and the author passes immediately on to Ibrāhīm, without any notice of Farrukh-zād; but that work only contains a brief notice of the Ghaznawī rulers after Mas'ūd the Martyr. The Tagkirāt-ul-Mulūk states that he reigned four years. Faṣli-h states, and the Muntakhab-ut-Tawrikh agrees, that 'Abd-ur-Rashīd succeeded in 443 H., was impriuned in 444 H., by Tughril, who was put to death the same year, and that Farrukh-zād succeeded; but makes no mention of 'Abd-ur-Rashīd's death. Fanākatī says he died 450 H., and then makes a sudden jump from 'Abd-ur-Rashīd to Sulfān Ibrāhīm. Baizawī, in the Nigām-ur-Tawarikh, makes no mention of Tughril or the reign of Farrukh-zād, and says that 'Abd-ur-Rashīd reigned seven years, and died in 445 H., and yet states that his successor, Ibrāhīm, reigned from 450 H. to 402 H.

⁹ A "Darah" signifies a valley between two hills, through which a stream flows, and a pass between two mountains.

. 1 'Abd-ur-Rashid was present with his brother Mas'ud at the battle of Dandankad, or Dae-kan..

² Authors of any authority do not give Tughril a place among the sovereigns, because he was an usurper of forty days.

with great intrepidity and valour. During the reign of Sultān Maudūd, he left Ghaznīn, and went into Khurāsān, and entered the service of the Saljūks. He remained there for a considerable time, and made himself acquainted with their mode of warfare; and returned to Ghaznīn again in the reign of 'Abd-ur-Rashīd. He seized 'Abd-ur-Rashīd, and slew him, along with eleven other princes, and usurped the throne of Ghaznīn, and reigned over the country for a period of forty days, during which he practised great injustice and tyranny.

They inquired of him, saying: "Whence didst thou acquire ambition to reign?" He replied: "At the time that 'Abd-ur-Raghid was sending me forth to do battle against Alb-Arsalān and Dā'ūd, and was giving me my instructions, and had placed his hand in mine", terror had overcome him to that degree, that I could hear his very bones rattling from the state of trembling he was in. I knew that this pusillanimous man was incapable of sovereignty, and the ambition of reigning entered my heart."

After forty days of his rule had expired, a Turk named Nüsh-Tigin, a Silāh-dār, or armour-bearer, who happened to be standing behind Tughril, entered into an agreement with another, his friend, and they slew Tughril upon the throne itself; after which they brought out his head, and fixed it upon a pole, and had it paraded round the city; so that the people became free from anxiety and care 4.

IX. FARRUKH-ZAD, SON OF MAS'UD'S.

At the time that Almighty God brought down upon Tughril the just reward of his crimes, and delivered the

3 The mode of making a compact—giving one's right hand.

4 After Tughril had put all the princes he could lay his hands on to death, he compelled a daughter of the late Sulfan Mas'fd to become his wife. Soon after he made a great entertainment, when a number of champions, filled with loyalty to the Maḥmūdi dynasty, attacked him, and cut him to pieces.

⁶ Guzidah, Fasih i, and Tārikh i-i Ibrühimi, strange to say, call Farrukh zād son of 'Abd-ur-Raghid. His title was Jamāl-ud-Daulah, but, in the Muntakh ab-ut-Tawārikh, he is styled 'Imād-ud-Daulah, son of Masvād. Baihaki, in commencing one of the chapters of his work, states that he "began it in Zi-Hijjah, 450 H., in the reign of the Sultān-i-Muazzam, Abū Shujā'-i-Farrukh-zād."

people from his unbearable tyranny, and unlimited oppression, two princes of the Mas'ūdi family remained alive immured within the fortress of Bar-ghund'—one Ibrāhim, the other Farrukh-zād.

The accursed Tughril had despatched a party to that fortress for the purpose of putting them to death; but the seneschal, who was stationed therein, had taken one day to consider the matter, and had kept the party in question without the gates, under the agreement that they should be admitted on the following day, to carry out that wicked mandate. Suddenly, carrier pigeons⁸ arrived there, bearing the news of Tughril the Accursed having been killed.

After that execrable [man] was slain at Ghaznin, by the hand of Nūsh-Tigin, the chief men of the empire, and the Maliks, and Hājibs, sought for a sovereign. It was found that two princes still remained, immured within the walls of the fortress of Bar-ghund; so all of them set out towards that fortress, and desired to raise Ibrāhim to the throne: but his august frame had become overpowered by infirmity, and, as delay was impossible, they brought forth Farrukhzād, and congratulated him on his accession to the sovereignty, on Saturday, the 9th of the month Zi-l-Ka'dah, 344 H.

Sultan Farrukh-zād was a man of mild and amiable disposition, and just. As soon as he ascended the throne, he

⁶ Guzidah says three-Ibrāhim, Farrukh-zād, and Shujā'.

⁷ The same fortress is mentioned in Baihaki. Guzidah says Ghünd [əːə]. Bar [ˌˌ] in the Afghān language signifies "on," "upon," &c., and ghund [ːɪə] "round," "circular," and the like, as "a mound, a bluff, a detached hill," &c. A few copies have Buz-Ghund.

Beery copy of the work collated has fwith two exceptions, which have الرعاف
Beery copy of the work collated has fwith two exceptions, which have المواقع
Beery copy of the work collated has fwith two exceptions, which have given the write; but in the printed teat. That carrier pigeons, or rather doves, were in use long before, for transmitting news speedily, see note * at p 37. When the Crusaders under Godfrey were passing through the narrow defiles of Judea, a white dove, with a letter tied under its wing, from one Musalmän Amfr to his superior, gave information to the Crusaders of the foe's designs. This was but a short time previous to Farrukh-zād's reign. Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīh, subsequently to this, also established '#jegon patr's for the conveyance of news; and, in the latter part of A.D. 1179, when defeated by the Crusaders under Baldwin the latter part of A.D. 1179, when defeated by the Crusaders under Baldwin the latter part of A.D. 1179, when defeated by the Crusaders under Baldwin the Interpretation of Tripoli, the Grand Master-of the Hospitallers, and the Templars, near Jerusalem, "a victory was proclaimed at Cairo [Kāhirah], and pigeons spread the triumphant news over Egypt, to quiet the spirits of the public," by Salāḥ-ud-Dīh desire.

remitted the revenue of the territory of Zāwulistān, which had become ruined through [the levying of] heavy contributions in taxes and supplies, so that it became prosperous again. He brought under his control the frontier provinces of the empire, and governed his people with benevolence. He reigned seven years, when, suddenly, he was carried off by colic, in the year 451 H., at the age of thirty-four years.

x. Sultān ibrāhīm, Sayyid-US-Salāţīn. Sultān Zahīr-ud-Daulah, Nasīr-ul-Millat, Razzī-ud-Dīn,

1 The Taşkirat-ul-Mulük mentions that, soon after the accession of Farrukh-zād, the Saljüks advanced towards Ghaznin in great force, and were encountered by Farrukh-zād and his forces. The Saljüks were elfeated and numbers slaim, and some made prisoners. Subsequently, Alb-Arsalān advanced against Ghaznin, fought a battle, and gained a victory, in which most of the Mahmüdi chiefs were made captive, and carried away into Khurāsān. At last an accommodation was come to, and some of the captives were set free.

- ² Farrukh. zād, according to Guzîdah, reigned six years, in which several other authors agree; but the former gives the year 450 H., as that of his death, and says he bequeathed his sovereignty to his consin, Ibrāhīm. Faṣiḥ-i agrees in this, and also as to the year; but states that he reigned seven years, which is apparently correct, he having ascended the throne in the eleventh month of the year 443 H., and died in 450 H. According to Bailaakī, just quoted, we find he was alive in the last month of 450 H., but, as he died suddenly, he might have died in that same month. The Mintakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, however, says he began to reign Saturday, 9th of Zi-Ka'dah, 444 H., and died, in Ṣafar, 450 H. It he latter part of the year preceding Farrukh-zād's death, Alb-Arsalān, who had succeeded his father, Jaghar Beg, over the territory of Khurisān, ousted his great uncle, Beghü, from Hirāt, and had the Khuṭbah read there for himself.
- ³ The word used for colic is والتي and described as a pain in the bowels and in the side, but I suspect it must be some type of cholera or inflammation, as it seems to have carried off several of this dynasty.
- 4 Among the Wazirs or Ministers of Farrukh-zād was Khwājah Abū Bikri-Şāliḥ, who had previously held the government of Hindūstāu. Among the celebrated personages who died during his reign was Abū-Najm-i-Jyāz, Uimāk or Ī-māk, the slave of Sultān Maḥmūd, famous under the name of Iyāz. He died in the month of Rabī-ui-Awwal, 449 M.
- ⁵ Sayyid here means "lord," "prince," "chief of," &c. · His correct title, as given by most authors, is Zahir-ud-Daulah, Abū Muzaffar-i-Ibrāhim. The

Ibrāhîm, son of Mas'ūd, the Martyr, was a great and illustrious monarch, learned and accomplished, just and Godfearing, benevolent and compassionate, the friend of the learned, and supporter of religion.

After Farrukh-zād had ascended the throne, Ibrāhīm had been removed from the fortress of Bar-ghund to the fortress of Nãe 6: and, when Farrukh-zād died, all hearts decided upon the sovereignty of Ibrāhim. The Sarhang 7. Hasan, proceeded to his presence, and, accompanied by the chief persons in the state, conducted him from the fortress: and, on a Monday, at an auspicious conjunction of the planets in the high vault above, he ascended the throne. The day after he performed the customary mourning ceremonies for the Amir-i-Hamid-the Laudable Amir-Farrukh-zād, his brother, and paid a visit to his tomb, and to the tombs of his ancestors; and all the great nobles. ministers, and most distinguished personages accompanied him on foot, for he did not show [particular] favour or familiarity towards any person soever, and, on this account, awe of his authority was implanted in the hearts of all people's.

When the intelligence of his accession to the throne reached Dā'ūd, the Saljūk', he sent an embassy into Khurāsān; and entered into a treaty of peace with him. After Dā'ūd [died] his son, Alb-Arsalān, continued to abide by it: and Ibrāhīm brought under his entire control the

other titles, given by our author, are not mentioned by other writers. He was abstemious and continent, and renowned for his tact and excellent judgment. He wrote a beautiful hand, and every year sent a copy of the Kur'ān, written by himself, to Makkah, with other valuable offerings. Guzidah says the Saljūki monarchs used to style him "father;" and, when they addressed a communication to him, used to write his titles at the top of it.

⁶ This fortress was situated in the district of Wajiristan.

⁷ The meaning assigned to this word generally is—"A commissary, a serjeant, a commander, a superior officer," &c.; but, in the Burhān-Kāṭi', and other works of authority in these matters, it seems, more correctly, an officer who marched in front of the troops bearing the standard—equivalent to the Italian vorifiationier.

Da'tid died, according to most authorities, in Rajab, 451 H., though one says it took place in 452 H., and another in 453 H. Faşib, says, "In the year succeeding that in which Ibrahim ascended the throne, Jaghar Beg died." At all events he died a considerable time before Tughril, his brother.

dominions of his ancestors ¹. The troubles and disorders which had fallen upon that empire, through the vicissitudes of the times, and continual warfare, were all, during his reign, remedied and rectified, and the affairs of the empire of the great Mahmūd assumed fresh vigour. The ruinous places in the country were again repaired and restored, and he founded several towns ², such as Jaträbād (?) Khair-ābād, Aimin-ābād, and others in different parts.

During his reign many astonishing and uncommon occurrences took place; and Dā'ūd, the Saljūk, whose ravages, inroads, conflicts, and conquests might vie with the flashing

lightning, died.

The birth of Ibrahim took place in the year of the conquest of Gurgan, in 424 H., in the province of Hirat, and that monarch had forty daughters and thirty-six sons. All the daughters were given in marriage to illustrious Sayvids, and dignified 'Ulama"; and one of those princesses was married to the great-great-grandfather of [the author] Minhāj-i-Sarāj, and this was the cause of the removal of the writer's ancestors from Jūrjān. Imām 'Abd-ul-Khālik, Jūrjānī, who lies asleep within the Sarāe of Tāhir-ābād of Ghaznin, saw in a dream, whilst dwelling in Jurjan, in his youthful years, that an angel said unto him in the vision: "Arise, and proceed to Ghaznin, and seek a wife." When he awoke, he imagined that this dream might have been prompted by the devil; but, having dreamt the same dream three times successively, as therein commanded, he came to Ghaznin, and one of those daughters was bestowed in marriage upon him 4. That princess bore him a son, whom he named

¹ This is not correct, because the Saljūks held a very considerable portion of them.

² In Elliot's India, vol. ii. p. 277, this passage is translated—"Several fortified places and towns were founded," kc., but kashak does not mean fortified places; and, even were "kasr" read for it by mistake, it would not mean "fortified places." All autifors agree that Ibrāhīm, during his reign, founded naught but masjids, colleges, buildings for the accommodation of travellers, and works of public utility; and that he built nothing for himself.

³ Here Sayyid is the title of the chiefs of the family of Muhammad, descended from 'Alī, and his daughter Fātimah. 'Ulamā signifies the learned—theologians, ecclesiastics, doctors of law. Mr. Dowson translates the sentence, "nobles or learned men of repute."

Our author is so much taken up with his ancestor's grand alliance that he leaves out most of the principal events of the reign of Ibrāhim. After he

Ibrāhīm — Maulānā, Minhāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān-i-Ibrāhīm—upon whom be the mercy of the Almighty! He was the father of Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn, who was the father of Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dīn, 'Ujūbah-uz-zamān [the Wonder of his Age!], and he was the father of [the author] Minhāj-i-Sarāj.

Sultān Ibrāhīmwas a monarch of felicitous and prosperous career, and his reign extended over a period of forty-two years, and his age [at his death] was sixty years. He died in the year $402\,\mathrm{H}^{5}$

His sons were Maḥmūd , Is-ḥāk, Yūsuf, Naṣr, 'Alī, Bihzād, Khūrshed Malik', Khūb-chihr, Azād Malik, Malik-Chihr', Tughān Shāh, Azād-Mihr, Daulat Shāh, Azād-Chihr, Amīr Shāh, Nih-Firūzah' Tahamtan Shāh, Turān Shāh, Malik-Zād, Malik-Dād, Shams-ul-Mulk, Malik Sher, Sher Malik, Mas'ūd, Irān-Malik, Kaihān Shāh,

arranged matters with the Saljūks, by marrying his son, Mas'ūd, to a Saljūk princess, daughter of Malik Shah, and sister of Sultan Sanjar, and had no cause for farther anxiety respecting them, he carried his arms into Hind upon several occasions, and reduced many strongholds, and other places, among which is said to have been a populous city, inhabited by Khurasanis, whose ancestors had been expelled from their native country by Afrasiyab. There was a large hawz, or reservoir, there, said to have been half a league in diameter; 100,000 persons were made captive, and taken away to Ghaznin, and booty, in proportion, was captured. During the reign of Ibrahim, in 470 H., Abū-Fazl-i-Muhammad, son of Husain [not Hasain], Al-Baihaki, who had been secretary in the "Diwan-i-Insha," of Sultan Mahmud, son of Sabuk-Tigin, but, as the Deputy of the Khwajah-i-'Amid, Abu Naşr-i-Mishkan, Al-Zawzani, and a pupil and disciple of that great man, died. Abū-l-Fazl was the author of the work entitled the "Makamat-ul-'Amid-i-Abu Nasr-i-Mishkān," and the "Tārīkh-i-Āl-i-Sabuk-Tigīn," in twelve books or volumes, [called by our author the Tarikh-i-Nasiri], entitled Tarikh-i-Yamini. The first portion of the work, containing the reigns of Sabuk-Tigin and Mahmud, does not exist, and appears to have been lost for some centuries.

5 On the 5th of the month of Shawwal. One author says in Rajab, but gives no date. Faşih-î mentions the taking of Jerusalem by the Christians [August 15th, but some say 15th July, A.D. 1099] in this same year, and the slaughter of 80,000 Musalmāns. The year 492 H. began 27th of November, A.D. 1098.

⁶ In 471 H. Suljān Ibrāhim was apprized that his son, Saif-ud-Daulah, Maḥmūd, meditated flying to Suljān Malik Shāh, the Saljūk; and accordingly confined him within the citadel of Ghaznīn, and his partisans were sent to other fortresses.

7 One MS. has Munawwar Shah.

8 Malik Mihr.

So in two MSS., but doubtful. The whole number forty. I expect the text should be, "He had forty sons and thirty-six daughters,"

Jahān <u>Sh</u>āh, Firūz <u>Sh</u>āh, Mirān <u>Sh</u>āh, Yaghān ¹ <u>Sh</u>āh, Turkān <u>Sh</u>āh, Arsalān <u>Sh</u>āh, Tughril <u>Sh</u>āh, Kutlugh <u>Sh</u>āh, Muayyid <u>Sh</u>āh, Sultān <u>Sh</u>āh, Malik <u>Sh</u>āh, <u>Kh</u>usrau <u>Sh</u>āh, Farrukh Shāh, and Bahrām Shāh.

XI. 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN' MAS'ŪD, AL-KARĪM, OR THE BENEFICENT, SON OF IBRĀHĪM.

Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāhīm, who bore the title of Karīm, or the Beneficent, was a monarch of excellent disposition [and temperament], blessed with many virtues, just and equitable, and of auspicious reign.

He ascended the throne during the Khilāfat of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mustaghar B'illah [Abū-l-'Abbās], i-Aḥ-mad, son of Al-Muktadì Bi-amr-ullah. He was endowed with humility and beneficence to an extraordinary degree, and he suppressed all the oppressive usages which, before his time, had been established. The contingent taxes, which were exorbitant, he abolished throughout the Maḥ-mūdì dominions and in Zāwulistān; and likewise remitted all tolls and imposts throughout the whole empire.

All the great chiefs and nobles and grandees of the country were left in undisturbed possession of the [offices and possessions] which they had held during the reign of Sultān Ibrāhīm *; and he adopted the most beneficial regulations for the government of his dominions. Amīr 'Uzd-ud-Daulah wa ud-Dīn * was continued in the government of Hindūstān

¹ Tughān, in one copy.

2 The proper title of this monarch appears to be 'Ala-ud-Daulah.

³ Every copy of the work [and the printed text also], with one exception, perpetrates the great blunder of calling this Khalifah "son of Muktadir," instead of Muktadi. In Section IV., on the Khalifahs, our author gives the correct name.

Under the occurrences of the year 493 H., Faşih-î mentions an important matter, from which it would appear that the chiefs of Ghür were not, at the time in question, such great or powerful personages as Minhāj-i.Sarāj would lead us to believe. It says: "Husain, son of Sām, by conimand of 'Alā-ud-Daulah, Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāh'īm, obtained the government of Ghūr." I shall have more remarks to offer on this subject when I reach Section XVII.

4 Mr. Dowson renders this passage in the following manner: "He restored to the princes, nobles, and grandees, their possessions," &c. They must have been dispossessed of them in order to have them restored; but او الرادي - الكذب المعالمة المعالم

5 From the word "Amir" I should imagine this personage must have been either a brother or uncle of Mas'ūd's, [as before]; and, during Mas'ūd's reign, the Ḥājib-i-Buzarg [Great Chamberlain] died, and the Ḥājib, Ṭughā-Tigṅn, crossed the river Gang, in order to carry on holy war in Hindūstān, and penetrated to a place where, except Sulṭān Mahmūd, no one had reached so far with an army before.

During the sovereignty of Mas'ūd all the affairs of the state were conducted with perfect order and regularity, and no heart had any cause of care from any quarter. He was born at <u>Gh</u>aznin in 453 H, reigned seventeen years, and died in 509 H., at the age of fifty-seven. The sister of Sultan Sanjar, Saljūki, who was styled the Mahd-i-'Irāk for the 'Irāki spousel, was wedded to him.

His sons were Bahā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who had a son named Khaṭr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad; Sher-zād', Malik Arsa-lān, Farrukh-zād, who had three sons, 'Alī, Irān Malik, and Shah-zād; 'Alī, Bahrām Shāh, Malik-Chihr, Malik-zād, Mahmūd, Sulṭān Malik, who had three sons, Arsalān Malik, Al-Ḥasan, and Mīr-Nūk; and Jamshed Malīk, who had two sons, Khūrshed, and Tūrān Malik.

XII. MALIK ARSALĀN, SON OF MAS'ŪD.

Malik Arsaļān-i-'Abd-ul-Mulūk s, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, ascended the throne in the year 509 H. at Garmsīr itself s,

6 In Elliot's India, vol. ii. p. 278, "Mahd-i-Trāk" is translated "Cradle of Irāk." One of the meanings of mahd [2+] is certainly a cradle, and also a seat for the back of an elephant or camel; but another is "making a bed," and here mahd has the metaphorical meaning of a wife, hence the meaning is the 'Irak' wife. Balþakf, in his History, makes constant use of the word in this sense.

7 Our author, like some others, has left out one sovereign. Faşiḥ-î says that 'Alā-ud-Daulah, Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāhīm, died in 508 H., after a reign of sixteen years; and that he was succeeded by KAMĀL-UD-DAULAH, ŞHER-ZĀD, his son, in the same year; and in the following year Sherzād died, after reigning about one year, when Arsalān Shāh succeeded. Guzīdah confirms this succession of Kamāl-ud-Daulah, Sherzād, but says that he succeeded to the throne according to his father's will, and ruled for about a year, when his brother, Arsalān Shāh, rose against him, and put him to death, in 509 H. Other writers of authority likewise confirm the accession of Sherzād, who was the second son of Mas'ūd, while Arsalān was the third. Yāfa'ī and Fanākatī also state that Mas'ūd reigned sixteen years, and Baizawī confirms it:

8 His correct title is Sulfan ud Daulah, Arsalan Shāh, son of Mas'ūd, son of Ibrāhim; and, according to the Tārikh-i-Yāfait, he succeeded to the throne in accordance with his father's will. Some call him Abū-l-Mulūk.

Of The original is رخود گوسیز. The passage is translated in Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 278, thus: "Malik Arslan Abu-l-malik [sic] ascended the throne

and assumed the sovereignty of the empire of <u>Gh</u>aznin. Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh, his brother ', fled from him, and proceeded

into Khurāsān, to the court of Sultan Sanjar.

During the reign of Malik Arsalān some remarkable events occurred, one of which was that fire, accompanied by a thunderbolt, fell from the heavens, so that by that fire all the bāzārs of Ghaznin were consumed . Other untoward events and occurrences likewise took place during his sovereignty, so that people held his rule in detestation. He was possessed of great nobility of mind, energy, courage, and valour.

When he came to the throne he treated his step-mother 4, who was [styled] Mahd-i-'Irak, with indignity 5, and on that

A.H. 509 [A.D. 1115], and brought Garmstir and the kingdom of Ghazni under his rule." I wonder what throne he ascended if it was not that of the kingdom of Ghaznin?

1 Some copies say "his uncle," but this is an error, for Bahram was his

brother, as the names of the sons of Mas'ūd confirm.

3 These matters are not alluded to in the works I have been quoting, and

seem to have been taken from our author by more modern writers.

• means a step-mother.

⁵ He is said to have requested her to dance before him, for his amusement. This may have been one reason why Sultan Sanjar took up the insult to his sister, and the cause of his nephew, Bahram. When Arsalan came to the throne, he imprisoned the whole of his brothers except Bahram, who succeeded in reaching his uncle's court. Fanākatī makes a mistake in this matter. He says Sanjar was the son of Bahram's maternal uncle; but, as Mas'ud, Bahrām's father, married the daughter of Malik Shah, she was Sanjar's sister [as our author also states], he being Malik Shah's son. According to Guzidah, Fasih-i, and others, in 509 H., Sultan Sanjar, finding Arsalan Shah deaf to all the expostulations which he had made in behalf of Bahram, set out along with the latter for Ghaznin, attended by a numerous army. Arsalan came forth to meet them with 30,000 horse, but, after an obstinate engagement, was defeated and retired to Lahor. Having placed Bahram on the throne, and fixed a yearly tribute. Saniar returned to his own dominions; but, in the same year [500 H.]. Arsalan returned with an army, and defeated Bahram, who again took shelter in Sanjar's dominions. It was only in the following year that Sanjar became sole monarch of the Saljüks, after the death of his brother Muhammad, and had only a few months before acquired sway over 'Irak and Khurasan, his dominions before that having been but a portion of the latter territory. It was only in 511 H., that Bahram, having obtained the aid of an army from his uncle, who did not accompany him the second time, was able to move against his brother Arsalan again. In the encounter which ensued, Arsalan was taken prisoner, and thrown into confinement. Bahrām's reign really commenced in

account Sanjar became his foe, and gave assistance to Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh. Sanjar came against <u>Gh</u>aznīn, and Malik Arsalān fought a battle with him, and was defeated, and retired towards Hindūstān, where he fell into misery and wretchedness. He died 6 in the year 511 H., after a reign of two years, at the age of thirty-five years.

XIII. MU'IZZ-UD-DAULAH WA UD-DIN 7, BAHRAM SHAH.

Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Bahrām Shāh, was a person of handsome exterior, manly, munificent, just, and the sustainer and protector of his subjects. At the outset of his career, when Malik Arsalan ascended the throne, after the decease of their father, Sultan Mas'ud, the Beneficent, Bahram Shah proceeded into Khurāsān, the throne of which country was adorned by the great and inestimable sovereign, the august8, the martyr Sultan Sanjar; and Bahram Shah resided at his court for a considerable time. Sultan Sanjar led an army towards Ghaznin, and Malik Arsalan, after an engagement, was defeated, and Bahram Shah ascended the throne. Sanjar treated him with great honour, and Sayyid Hasan, a celebrated poet of Ghaznin, recited this ode [on that occasion] in the Audience Hall, in the presence of Sultan Sanjar, on whom be the mercy and the pardon of the Almighty! One quatrain of the ode in question is here inserted:-

" Of the eloquent of the world what is the strain,

That shall ever on earth be proclaimed?—

'A shout emanated from the seven heavens, That Bahram Shah is of the universe king.'"

511 H. In the following year Arsalan was released, but, being again found plotting, was put to death.

6 At Shah-abad, in Shawwal, 511 H.

7 Fasih-i states that his title was Yamin-ud-Daulah, in which Guzidah and other writers agree; but there are others also, but chiefly modern authors, who agree with the title in the text.

8 The word Sa'id—august—is not a proper name here. As Sanjar died a natural death it is difficult to conceive how he was a "martyr,"

It is the commencement of the poem. As Bahrām was a patron of learning and literature, a number of authors flourished in his reign, and numerous works, both poetry and prose, were written. The celebrated work, known as "Kalf-lah and Damnah," was translated from the Arabic [L₅U] into Fersian by Naṣr-ullah, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Ab-du-Majfa, [called "Hamīd" by Eastwick], in his reign, and was dedicated to Bahrām Shāh. Subsequently, the same work was translated in the reign of Sulţān Ḥusain, of the race of Taimītr, by Mullā Ḥasan-ʿWājr-du-Kāghiff, and entitled Anwār-ʿSuhailī.

Sultān Sanjar returned to Khurāsān again, and Bahrām Shah assumed the government of the country 1. He carried on holy wars in the direction of Hindustan; and, on the 28th of Ramazan, in the year 512 H., he took Muhammad Bahlim prisoner, and put him into confinement; but at last released him, and made over the whole of Hindustan to him. Again he rebelled, and founded the fortress of Naghawr, in the territory of Siwālikh, in the neighbourhood of Bīrah; and he had likewise numerous sons and followers and dependents. Bahrām Shāh, with the determination of extirpating him, advanced into Hindustan against his stronghold, and Bahlim 2 moved forward towards the confines of Multan, and fought an engagement with Bahram Shāh. The Almighty rewarded Muhammad Bahlim for his base ingratitude, and he, with his ten sons 3, together with their horses and arms, on the day of the battle, sank in a morass 4, so that no trace of him and them remained.

Bahram Shah returned to Ghaznin again, and between him and the Maliks, or chiefs of Ghür, hostilities arose; and an engagement took place between them, in which Daulat Shāh, a son of Bahrām, was slain 5. During that one campaign Bahrām Shāh sustained three defeats from Sultān

2 Two MSS. have and also in place of place of but either of them is a strange name for a Musalman.

3 A few copies have "two" sons; but, as he is said before to have had "numerous" sons, ten is the more probable number.

4 Mr. Dowson, Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 280, says, with reference to this passage, "The text has some unintelligible words, which vary in different هر زمين بريني or بوريني and then quotes "Briggs." The words are در زمين and are quite plain and intelligible. برس which is also sometimes written is the بوران signifies a ditch, a marsh, a place where water stagnates; and adjective derived from it.

5 Among the events of .521 II. Fasih-i mentions that "a battle took place between the troops, of Ghaznin, and 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, son of Hasab. Ghūri, at Tigin-abad. Hostility had arisen between them on account of that place, which was a city situated between Ghaznin and Ghür. The city was taken, and Bahram fled. In 522 H. 'Ala-ud-Din took Ghaznin, and made it

over to his brother. See Section XVII.

¹ One of Bahrām's coins struck at Lāhor in 548 H., contained in a work on the subject, bears the following inscription. Obverse-"Coin of the Dar-us-Sultanat-i-Lahor, in the fifth year of his prosperous and happy reign." Reverse-" A proclamation issued from the seven heavens, that Bahrām Shāh is of the universe king.' Anno 514." This inscription, it will be noticed, constitutes the two last lines of the quatrain given by our author, who, in another place, states that the coin of Bahram was stamped in Saniar's name, See under his reign, next Section.

'Alā-ud-Dîn, Ghūrī, and Ghaznīn fell into the hands of the Ghūrīāns. They set fire to it, and destroyed the whole [l] city. Bahrām Shāh retired into Hindūstān at this time, but, on the withdrawal of the Ghūrī forces, he returned to Ghaznīn again, and there died after a reign of forty-one years 6.

His sons were Jalāl-ud-Daulah, Daulat Shāh, slain in battle with the Ghūriāns; 'Alā-ud-Daulah, Dā'ūd' Shāh; Bahā-ud-Daulah, Sulṭān Shāh; Fakhr-ud-Daulah, 'Alī Shāh; 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Muḥammad Shāh; Samā-ud-Daulah, Mas'ūd Shāh; Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Mansūr Shāh; Mu'ayyan-ud-Daulah, Shāhan-Shāh; Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Khusrau Shāh; and Sayyid-ud-Daulah, Farrukh Shāh.

XIV. KHUSRAU SHAH, SON OF BAHRAM SHAH.

Sultān Mu'ayyan-ud-Daulah-wa ud-Dîn s, but, according to some statements, Tāj-ud-Daulah, Khusrau Shāh, ascended the throne in the year 552 H.

As the Maliks and Sultāns of Ghūr had shaken the empire of the house of Maḥmūd to its very foundations, and had wrested Ghaznīn, Bust, Zamīn-i-Dāwar, and Tigīnābād out of their hands, and had ravaged and desolated them, feebleness had come upon its government, and its glory and splendour had passed away. When Khusrau Shāh ascended the throne he was weak and powerless, and was unable to maintain his rule over the country.

A horde of the tribe of <u>Gh</u>uzz¹, who had acquired dominion and power in <u>Kh</u>urāsān, in the reign of the august Sultān, Sanjar, who had now passed away², marched an army against <u>Gh</u>aznīn. <u>Kh</u>usrau <u>Sh</u>āh was unable to resist

⁶ Great discrepancy exists with respect to the dates of Bahrām Shāh's death, and the accession and death of his son Khusrau Shāh, and also of Khusrau Malik, the last of the dynasty. For farther notice of this, see note 5, next page.

⁷ In one copy Zāwul Shāh.

^{*} In a few copies he is styled "Yamin-ud-Daulah" only; but the title above agrees with the statements of several other authors.

That is, "who were Maliks and also Sultans" from the text.
 Some lexicographers spell the word Ghazz, and some Ghuz.

Sulfan Sanjar died on the 16th of Rabi'-ul-awwul, 552 H., but a few writers say in 553 H. The former is correct.

them, and he accordingly retired into Hindustan, and Ghaznin was lost to him, and fell into the hands of the Ghuzz. They retained possession of that territory for a period of twelve years, until the august Sultan, Ghiyas-ud-Din Muhammad, Sam, led an army from Ghur to Ghaznin, overthrew Burāk , the Ghuzz chief, retook Ghaznin, and established [his brother] Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥammad, Sam, the martyr, upon the Ghaznin throne. Shāh had retired to Lahor, of Hindūstān. His reign extended to a period of seven years, after which he died 6.

3 The Tazkirat-ul-Mulūk contains a very good account of the reign of Khusrau Shāh, which I here make an extract from. "He succeeded his father, and as 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, son of Hasan, Ghūrī, was in full march upon Ghaznin, he, being unable to resist him with hopes of success, retired into Hindustan [here signifying the Panjab] and took up his residence at Lahor. He turned his attention to the government of the western portion of his father's dominions, which were now left to him; but, when 'Ala-ud-Din retired, after the plunder of Ghaznin, Khusrau Shāh returned to Ghaznin, and again took up his quarters there. Soon after, when the Ghuzz tribe took Sultan Sanjar, his great uncle, captive, and were advancing towards Ghaznin, Khusrau Shāh, who, probably, while Sultān Sanjar was in power, might have expected aid from him in some shape or other, now that he was a prisoner, was totally unable to resist them, and he again retired to Lahor, and died there in 555 H., after reigning eight years."

5 Great discrepancy prevails among authors respecting the latter part of Bahrām Shāh's reign, and the reigns of Khusrau Shāh, and Khusrau Malik,

which I will notice as briefly as possible.

The first events noticed in Fasih-i, under the year 523 H., are, "the return of Bahrām Shāh to Ghaznin, his encountering Saif-ud-din, Ghūri, and the capture of the latter." He was placed upon a bullock-not "a cow"and paraded through the streets of that city, and afterwards put to death. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, his brother, determined to revenge him, and marched towards Ghaznin with a numerous army; but Bahram died before his arrival, in that same year [523 H.]." An account of the plunder of the city, and massacre of the people then follows; and it is farther stated therein, that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jahan-soz, made over the sovereignty of Ghaznin to his nephews, the brothers Chiyas-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, and that "Khusrau Shah, who succeeded his father, Bahram, was inveigled by them, that same year, and immured within the citadel of Ghaznin, and the dynasty of the race of Mahmud, son of Sabuk-Tigin, ended?"-that is, terminated over the Ghaznin territory.

Yāfa'ī, Kāzī Baizawī, Guzīdah, Tārīkh-i-Alfī, and some others agree with the above statement, except as to the year of Bahrām's death, and the termination of the dynasty. These four works also mention 'Alā-ud-Din as the first of the Maliks-here, doubtless, signifying independent rulers-of Ghur; and they, correctly, it appears to me, account those previous to him to have been mere subordinate chieftains, for, if we consider the small extent of territory they could only have possibly possessed, their statements are to be relied

upon.

His sons were Mahmūd, Khusrau Malik, and Kai-Khusrau.

Guzidah says Bahrām died in 544 H. after a reign of thirty-two years, while Fanākarī asserts that he reigned twenty years, and died in 532 H. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, which is generally most particular and correct as regards dates, agrees with Guzidah as to the year, but confirms the statement of Vāfarī, Faṣih r̄, and the Nizām-ut-Tawārīkh, as to Khusrau Shāh having reigned but one year, after which the tribe of Ghuzz came against Ghaznīn, and he, being unable to cope with them, retired into Hind, and took up his residence at Lāhor, where he died in 545 H. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh however adds, that, in the Raugat-us-Şafā, the year 555 H. is given. Guzīdah also says this event occurred in 555 H., and in this Kāzī Baizawī agrees. Among more modern works, the Tagkirat-ul-Mulik and Tārīkh-i-Afī state that Bahrām died in 547 H., after reigning thirty-five years, and Khusrau Shāh in 555 H., and in this the Tahakāt-i-Akbarī, Badāūnī, and Firishtah, and other modern writers agree.

Our author states that Bahrām ascended the throne in 511 H., and died in 552 H. after a reign of forty-one years; and that Khusrau Shih, his son, succeeded, and reigned seven years, but does not give the date of his decease; but, by his statement, it would have been in 559 H., after which date his son, Khusrau Malik, succeeded. Their coins, mentioned farther on, tend to show the contrary.

As to 'Alā-ud-Dīn's making over the government of Ghaznīn to his nephews, there is not so much discrepancy in the earlier writers, with the exception of our author, who expressly states that they were detained within the walls of a fortress by him, and were only set at liberty by his son and successor, as mentioned in Section XVII., which see. This was the year after Saif-ud-Dīn's death, who, according to Faşih-i, was slain in a battle with the Ghuzz near Balkh, in which same year his nephew, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, succeeded him, and inflicted a defeat upon the Ghuzz, with considerable slaughter, and imposed tribute on them.

After Khusrau Shāh comes his son Khusrau Malik, or Malik Khusrau, as he is also styled. Yāfa'ī, Baizawī, Guzīdah, and Fanākatī say the dynasty terminated with Khusrau Shah, and make no mention of his son, as his successor. Perhaps they considered him as ruler of the Panjab only. The Tazkirat-ul-Mulük states that Khusrau Malik succeeded his father as ruler of the Paniab in 555 H., and was put to death in 583 H., after reigning twentyeight years, while the Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, which agrees in the date of his accession, says that he was immured in a fortress in Gharjistan in 583 H., and in 588 H. was murdered along with his son Bahram Shah, and the whole of the remainder of the Ghaznawi family then left. Rauzat-us-Safa, Habib-us-Seyr, Firishtah, and others say this occurred in 582 H., and Budāuni, who merely gives this ruler a place "because the author of the Tabakat-i-Akbari does so," as he remarks, says 583 H. Our author states that the Churis first appeared before Lahor in 577 H., and gained possession of it in 583 H., thus agreeing with some of the above statements, but mentions the year 598 H., as the year in which Khusrau Malik and all his family were murdered.

Faşil-i mentions the Ghūrāms as powerful in Ghaznīn and Hind in 566 II., that Ghiyāg-ud-Dīn took that capital from the Ghuzz tribe [What an accellent opportunity this would be, to the "comparative" or rather superiative "philologists," to have derived the name of Ghaznīn from the Ghuzz tribe [J] in 669 H., and made it over to his brother, Mu'tzz, as Walf. After referring to

XV. KHUSRAU MALIK, SON OF KHUSRAU SHĀH, THE LAST OF THE MAHMUDI DYNASTY.

Tāj-ud-Daulah, Sultān-i-Halim, or the Mild Sultān, Khusrau Malik, ascended the throne at Lahor.

He was a monarch of excessive mildness and beneficence, unassuming, and endowed with many good qualities, but addicted to pleasure. As he came at the close of the sovereignty of his family, no prepossessing memento of him has survived, and the sovereignty of that dynasty terminated in him. Anarchy and disorder at last showed itself in the affairs of his government, and all the Amirs and lesser officials of the country, both the Turks and the free-born [natives], all became too powerful for him to deal with, and the servants of the state and governors of provinces and districts exercised independent power, whilst their sovereign abandoned himself wholly to pleasure.

the defeat, by him, of a horde of the Sankaran, a sept of the Ghuzz tribe [not "a mountain" or "a town"] in 571 H., and his expedition against Nahrwalah in 575 H., the same work states, under the occurrences of the year 581 H. - "In this year an engagement took place between Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din Muhammad, son of Sam, son of Husain, son of Sam, the Walt of Ghaznin, and Khusrau Malik, at Lohof, in Hind. Khusrau was taken captive by stratagem; and the Sipāh-sālār, 'Alī Karmākh, who was Wālī of Multān previously, was left at Lohor as Walf, but some writers say this took place in

In Mr. Thomas's paper on the Ghazni Coins there is, unfortunately, no 582 H." notice of the last two monarchs of the house of Sabuk-Tigin, and there are no coins of theirs, or the dates above referred to might have been tested; but a work I have by me supplies some information on the subject, and confirms the statements of Fasih-t, and the older writers. A coin of Khusrau Shah's therein noticed, contains the following inscription, which I translate literally :-Obverse-"Stamped coin in the universe, with magnificence and grandeur,

the great Bādshāh Khusrau Shāh."

Reverse—"Struck in the city of Lohor, A.H. 552, the first of his reign." Another coin of his son, Khusrau Malik, also struck in the Panjab, contains the following inscription :-

Obverse — "Zahīr-ud-Daulah wa ud-Dīn, Sultān Khusrau Malik."

Reverse-"Struck in the city of Lohor, A.H. 555, the first of the reign." All writers agree as to the deceitful and treacherous conduct of Mu'izz-ud-Din, Ghuri, towards Khusrau Malik. After he had inveigled that unfortunate prince by his oaths and promises, he broke them, and sent him and the whole of the family then remaining to his brother Ghiyas-ud-Din, to be immured in a fortress in Ghur. Subsequently, when these very pious and model Sultans, as our author considers them, found those unfortunates in the way, they massacred the whole of them.

Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din Muhammad, Sam, used to advance every year from Ghaznin, and to possess himself of portions of Hind and Sind, until in the year 577 H., when he appeared before the gate of Lahor, and extorted a son and an elephant from Khusrau Malik, and then retired. Thus matters went on until the year 583 H., when he brought an army against Lahor and reduced it. Khusrau Malik was induced, under the faith of a treaty, to come out, upon which he was taken and sent off to Ghaznin, and from thence was removed to the capital, Firuz-koh, which was the seat of government of the elder Sultan, Ghivas-ud-Din Muhammad, Sām. That sovereign gave orders that Khusrau Malik should be immured within the fortress of Balarwan 6, in Ghariistan.

When the affair of Sultan Shah occurred in Khurasan. and the two Sultans turned their attention to that important enterprize, they put Sultan Khusrau Malik to death in the vear 508 H., and the latter's son, Bahrām Shāh, who was confined within the fortress of Saifrūd of Ghūr, was also murdered, and the dominion and dynasty of Nāsir-ud-Din, Sabuk-Tigin, became obliterated, and the sovereignty of Iran, the throne of Hindustan, and the territory of Khurāsān came under the sway of the Maliks and Sultāns of the house of Shansabāni.

Khusrau Malik's sons were Bahrām Shāh, Mahmūd Shāh, Jahān Shāh, Mas'ūd Shāh, Malik Shāh, and Khusrau Shāh.

7 See under Section XVII.

⁶ In the greater number of places where this name occurs in the different MSS., ale le is given; but it is also written Valarwan, Badwan, and in various other ways. Saifrūd is also written Sankarān in some copies. See note to Mu'izz-ud-Din's reign, Section XIX.

SECTION XII.

THE DYNASTY OF THE SALJŪKĪAH.

The author of the Tārìkh-i-Ṣānì¹, who was Ibn Ḥaiṣam, has thus related: that when the victorious Sulṭān, Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tighn, crossed the Jiḥūn, and the territory of Māwar-un-Nahr was left clear in his hands, Kadr Khān, who was the brother of the late I-lak [Khān], and of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty, entered into negotiation with the Sulṭān. Between the two potentates treaties of alliance and amity were entered into, and confirmed and cemented, and an interview took place between them².

After Kadr Khān had been received by the Sultān, the latter commanded, after the public reception, that the privy apartment should be cleared; and they held private conference together, and consulted confidentially on all the affairs of Irān and Tūrān. Kadr Khān preferred many requests to the Sultān, one of which was that he would remove the son of Saliūk *, the Turkmān, with his followers

At Section VII. page 11, the author calls the work Kaṣaṣ-i-Ṣānī, but the

signification is the same. See also note 3, page 56.

² This interview took place in 419 H. They entered into a treaty of friend-ship and alliance, the principal stipulation in which was, that a portion of Mäwar-un-Nahr should remain in the possession of the Sultān, and that some should belong to Kadr Khān, who is styled Bādshāh of Māwar un-Nahr. The Khwājah-i-'Amid, Abū Naṣri-Miṣhkān, Al-Zawzanī, relates that at that time the forces along with Sultān Maḥmūd were so numerous, that no monarch had ever so many under his standard before.

a With respect to the Saljūks and their rise to power, Oriental historians differ considerably; but space will not permit my noticing their discrepancies, except very briefly. Several authors altogether deny that Sulţān Maḥmūd suffered the Saljūks to enter Khuñsān, and assigned them lands therein—among whom is the author of the Rauşat-uş-Safa—and contend that the two brothers, Da'ud-i-Jaghar Beg and Tughril Beg [but our author states they were altogether separate from those under Yagh-mū or Yagh-nūt; still his statement is so confused as to be scarcely reliable], with their dependents, did not fross the Jāḥm into Khurāsān, until the reign of Mas'ūd, when they appropriated. Nisā and Abīward, but, at the same time, sent to tender their allegiance to that monarch. See note 3, p. 120. In the Tārikh of Abū-l-'Alā-l-Aḥwal, or the "Squinter,"

and dependents, from the country of Māwar-un-Nahr and Turkistān into Khurāsān. These followers and dependents

Saljūk is said to have been a descendant of Afrāsiyāb, and had four sons-Isra'îl, Mîka'îl, Müsa-i-Beghü (i. e. son of Beghül, and Yunas. The Jami'ut-Tawarikh says he had five; and that the name of the fourth son was Yusuf. and the fifth Yunas. Finding the lands they occupied too circumscribed, they were compelled, in 375 H., to leave their native pastures in Turkistan-one author says the Dasht-i-Khurz-and entered Mawar-un-Nahr, and took up their quarters in the Nur of Bukhara, and the Sughd of Samrkand, making the former their winter, and the latter their summer quarters. Mahmud. according to the "Squinter," was on friendly terms with them [see under his reign], and Isra'il came and waited upon him, when that monarch entered Mawar-un-Nahr, and was treated with great distinction. This was the occasion when Isra'il told the Sultan the effect which the sending of his two arrows and his bow would have, so well known as not to require relation here. [Gibbon incorrectly calls him Ismael !] The Sultan, it is stated, became suspicious of the Saljūks on this, and had Isrā'il seized, when in a state of intoxication, and sent to the fortress of Kalinjar in Hind; but a few authors, including our own, say "to the fortress of Multan," The former statement I think the most reliable. Isra'il remained in durance till his decease seven years after; but, previous to his death, he sent messengers to his brothers, sons, and kinsmen, and incited them to rebel. They sent to ask Mahmud's leave to cross over the Iihun into Khurasan; but Arsalan the Hajib, who was governor of that province, refused to grant it, and strongly advised the Sultan to refuse permission. Contrary to Arsalan's advice, he gave them permission; and they passed the Jihun, and took up their quarters in the pasture-lands about Nisā and Abīward. Mīkā'īl had two sons, Tughril, and Dā'ūd-i-Taghar Beg, who, from their talents and superior accomplishments, became the leaders of the tribe.

Other writers, however, say that Saljūk had four sons, Isra'īl, Mīkā'īl, Mūsā, and Yūnas; and that Begūū was the son of Mūsā. Mīkā'īl having been slain in one of the battles of that period, 'leaving two sons, Saljūk named those two grandsons, Dā'ūd-i Jaghar Beg and Tughril Beg, rulers of the tribe after his decease. When Maḥmūd of Ghaznīn subdued the territories of Māwar-un-Nahr, among other chiefs, Dā'ūd and Tughril, who had fought several battles with the rulers of Turkistān, and had acquired fame for valour, waited on Maḥmūd, and solicited that some portion of territory should be assigned to their tribe, as grazing-grounds for their folcks and herds.

Faṣiḥ-ī states that, previous to Maḥmūd's crossing the Jīḥūn and entering Māwar-un-Nahr, as early as 416 H., Dā'ūd-i Jaghar Beg, son of Mīkā'i, son of Saijūk—by this account Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg was Mīkā'i's grandson—had risen and entered into the Khwānazm territory, thus, in a measure, connrming a part of our author's statement. The same authority mentions that it was in 419 H., on the Sulṭān's return from Māwar-un-Nahr, that Isra'il, son of Beghū, son of Saljūk, son of Lukmān, had the interview with the Sulṭān, who brought him along with him; but soon after, on some account or other, Isrā'il was seized and sent to the fortress of Kālinjar. For Fankārt's statement on this subject, se note 3, p. 1266.

The above notice of the Saljūks has been taken from the Tārikh-i-Abū-l-'Alā, Guzīdah, the Lubb-ut-Tawārikh, Jāmī'-ut-Tawārikh, Abū-l-Fazi-i-Baihakī, Tārikh-i-Alfī, Mujāmī'-ul-Khiyār, Jahān-Ārā, and the Muntakhabut Tawārīkh, and others. Vāfa'ī differs considerably from these works and of Saljūk and his son were a tribe whose dwelling-place was the $N\bar{u}r^4$ of $Bu\underline{k}h\bar{a}r\bar{a}$, and they were all subject and

obedient to the Samani dynasty.

At the period in question the son of Saljūk had attained to man's estate, and, on account of his prowess and valour, his arrow and his sword, all the Maliks of Turkistan and the Afrāsivābi rulers were continually in fear. Not a bird in the air nor a deer of the plain escaped his arrow; and, like a whirlwind and a thunder-cloud, he was wont to enter the chase or the conflict, and used to vanguish every man who entered into a personal contest with him. Upon this occasion when Kadr Khan joined and accompanied Sultan Mahmud, and all were in attendance at his stirrup, and proceeding towards the Sultan's own tents, the son of Saljuk continued to ride on before them all, a Turkman cap placed jauntily on one side of his head, and bestriding a horse like the spur of a mountain, galloping about like a roaring lion, or the flickering lightning, in such wise that the forces of Turan and Iran were amazed at his agility and horsemanship.

As Kadr Khān had requested of the Sultān, so it was carried out; and, at the very time that Kadr Khān set out on his return [to his own territory], they brought a mandate [from the Sultān] to the son of Saljūk to remain in his tent, and gave orders that his followers, with his and their effects, should cross the river Jihūn into the confines of Khurāsān in company with the Maḥmūdi forces. Agents were directed to take care of them, and look after them; and, when they reached the bank of the Jihūn, they crossed the river along with servants of the Sultān.

At the time the command was issued that the son of Saljūk, along with his followers and dependents, should embark on boats, and pass over the Jihūn with their property and effects, the Hājib, Arsalān Khān⁵, who was

authors, but least from Guzidah. I have not completed the translation of that portion of Yāfa'ī as yet, therefore cannot make much use of it at present.

4 A district of the territory of Bukhārā so called.

It will be noticed that our author repeatedly quotes "the son of Saljūk," but gives no name; and, moreover, Isrā'll, to whom he must refer, was, by some accounts. Saljūk's son, and by others, his grandson

⁴ His correct name is Arsalān Khān. [agib [جاذب]] seems to have been an error on the part of some early copyist for Hājib [جاذب], and copied accordingly by Firightah, and other modern authors.

the Amir [Governor] of Khurāsān, and the greatest of the retainers of Sultan Mahmud, made a representation to that monarch, saving: "This which your Majesty has commanded is far from the cautious counsel of your servant, for, with your own hand, you have placed power in the hands of the enemies of your country, over the dominion of your descendants; and, in the end, by this tribe, disorder and tumult will be brought upon the empire." The Sultan, in reply, said: "What is your opinion in this matter?" The Hājib, Arsalān, answered: "My advice is this, that the whole of them be commanded to re-embark on board the boats, and then to sink them in the river; or otherwise to have their thumbs cut off 5, so as to render them incapable of discharging arrows in future." Sultan Mahmud answered: "Arsalan, thou art a hard-hearted man, indeed! To break one's promise, and slay the helpless, are not acts becoming a sovereign who possesses any feelings of honour, or a man who has any magnanimity in his nature; and, moreover, destiny cannot be averted by perfidy any more than by valour." However, after the son of Saljūk had been conveved across the Jihūn, it was commanded that he should be brought to Multan, while his kinsmen, and his other followers and dependents were assigned pasture-lands for their flocks and cattle in the territory of Khurāsān, such as Nisā. Nishāpūr, Bāward⁷, and other tracts in Upper Khurāsān.

As the Almighty had willed that, subsequently, this race should become great and powerful, and that from their posterity should spring puissant and mighty monarchs and rulers, notwithstanding Sultan Mahmūd afterwards regretted what he had done, still regret was of no avail, for regret cannot avert destiny.

Imām Abū-l-Fazl-i-Baihaķī states in his Tārīkh-i-Nāşirī8,

So in the text; but it must be presumed that the author meant the thumb of the right hand of all the males.

⁷ Also called Abiward; but, correctly speaking, Abiward is the name of the town, and Bäward the name of the district. Guzidah states that the people of Khurisān, in the parts where the Saljūks were located, became attached to the brothers Tughril Beg and Jaghar Beg.

a This portion of Bailnaki's work has not come down to us. He mentions the names of these chiefs in one or two places in the part relating to the life of Mas'id, and says that the people who entered Khurasan under Yagh-mir and other chiefs were Turkmans; and he always makes a difference between them and the Saljüks.

that, at the time that Sultan Mahmud carried across the Jihun four thousand Saljuk families, their Mihtars, or chiefs, were four persons, Yagh-mūr, Būkah, Kūk-tāsh, and Kazil, and in different parts of Khurasan pasture-lands were assigned to them, and they were made over to [the guardianship of] the great nobles of Khurāsān, and instructions were given to them that the Saljūks should, in no way, and on no account, be permitted to carry arms. Their chief', who was the eldest son of Saljūk, and famous for his manhood, was sent to Multan, along with two of his sons 2 likewise; and at Multan, after some time had passed away, they also died 3. The remainder of the Saljūk tribe, who had remained behind in Mawar-un-Nahr, were in the habit every year of migrating from Nur of Bukhārā to Darghān of Khwarazm, to the pasture-lands therein. They entertained innate enmity towards the Malik [chief] of Jund, whose name was Shah; and, in the reign of Sultan Mas'ud, the Martyr, the Amir [Governor] of Khwarazm, the son of Altun-Tash 5, rebelled against the Sultan's authority. The

Also written Yagh-mur.

2 All the copies of the work do not contain this last sentence about the

3 Faşih-î, Baizawî, and other authorities, mention the death of Isra'îl, son of Beghu, son of Suliman, son of Saljuk, at Kalinjar, in 426 H. His son had come with a party of followers from Mawar-un-Nahr to effect his release and carry him off. They had succeeded in getting him out of the fortress, but missed the road, were pursued, and overtaken. When his pursuers were in the act of securing him, he cried out to his son : "I shall never be released; do you seek to acquire territory." That same year Dā'ūd-i Jaghar Beg broke out into open rebellion; and took up his quarters at Marw.

4 Considered generally as belonging to Samrkand.

5 Altun-Tash, the Hājib, was appointed viceroy of Khwarazm by Sultan Mahmud in 407 H., after he [Mahmud] had proceeded thither in person, and had defeated the rebels, who had slain his son in-law, Mamun, son of Mamun, and had put Nial-Tigin to death, as related in the events of Mahmud's reign. When the Sultan returned to Balkh, after his raid upon the Afghans, Altun-Tāsh-i-Khwārazm Shāh, as he is styled, was sent for. He came and remained at Court three months. He then obtained permission to return; and, in the presence of Khwajah Ahmad-i-Hasan, Maimandi, the Wazir, and the Khwajah i-'Amid, Abu Nasr-i-Mishkan, gave his word, and swore, that he would never

¹ It will be doubtless noticed here that our author stated just a few lines above, quoting Baihaki, as he says, that the Saljuks, who crossed the Jihun into Khurasan, had four chiefs, and immediately after says, "their chief, who was Saljūk's son," died at Multan. He evidently confounds those of the tribe who entered Khurāsān with the remainder who stayed behind. See p. 121. Yana'i states that their place of abode was twenty farsakhs, or leagues, distant from Bukhārā.

Saljūks joined him in that outbreak; and, in the year 425 H, he bestowed upon them a tract of country belonging to the territory of Khwārazm, which they call Rabāṭi-Māṣah, as grazing ground for their flocks and herds. The chief of Jund, having received information as to their situation, made a raid upon them, and slew about eight thousand of the males, and but few of them remained, and they became totally at a loss as to what they should do in this state of affairs.

The Governor of Khwārazm, Hārūn, the rebel, the son of Altūn-Tāṣh [with whom the Saljūks had sided, as before stated] had [lately] been killed, and they found it impossible to continue to dwell in the territory of Khwārazm; and, through fear of the sons of 'Alī Tigin, the late ruler of Bukhārā, who was one of the Afrāsiyābī Khāns, or chieftains, they were unable to enter that territory. Out of necessity, therefore, they moved towards Nisā and Marw—in all about seven hundred horsemen—with their property, and their families and dependents.

Yagh-mūr, who was one of their chiefs, had died previously to this, and a son of his remained; and, when that portion of the tribe [who had escaped the sword of the Malik of Jund] came towards Nisā and Marw from Khwārazm, the son of Yagh-mūr' was unable to cope with them, for, although they were weak in numbers themselves, other tribes, such as the Niālīs', and others, had joined them. The son of Yagh-mūr [with his tribe, who had first crossed the Jiḥūn] retired before them, and entered 'Irāk, and seized upon Rai; and the Saljūks took up their residence in the

act contrary to the Sulfān's wishes and commands; and he left two sons, Saibī [?] and Yūsuf, at Court. In 422 H., after the accession of Mas'ūd, the Martyr, Altūn-Tāgh presented himself at Court, and was soon allowed to return. After he had departed, a number of the Sulfān's advisers worked on the mind of the Sulfān's on much about it, that he regretted he had allowed him to leave. A message was sent for him to return, but he made excuses, and did not do so. It was thought he had penetrated into the design against him; but subsequently he became satisfied, after receiving kind messages from the Sulfān. No mention is made in Faṣiḥ-I respecting this grant of lands by the "son of Altīn-Tāgh," to the Saljūša.

6 Here again our author says the son of Yagh-mur, but does not give any name. This is his constant failing.

⁷ The Nialis refer to the adherents of Nial-Tigin, viceroy of the Panjab, who had rebelled, and had been removed. See Baihaki.

grazing lands on the border of the desert [in the districts of

Nisā and Marwl.

The Almighty gave them strength and power, so that they possessed themselves of the territories of Khurāsān; and the east, and the west, and whatever the dominions of Islām were, wholly and completely came under the sway of their descendants, in such wise that their fame will remain upon the records of time unto the judgment day 8.

I. TUGHRIL, SON OF MĪKĀ'ĪL'.

The author of the Tārikh-i-Nāşiri 1, Imām Abū-l-Fazl-i-Baihaki, relates after this manner: that, at this period when the Saljūks entered the skirt of the desert of Khurāsān, and the son of Yagh-mur retired discomfited 2 before them, their Mihtars [chiefs] were three persons-Tughril and Dā'ūd, two brothers, the sons of Mikā'il, and their uncle Beghū; and all three in accord determined to tender their services to Sultan Mas'ud, and despatched a confidential agent to the Sultan's presence—he, at that time, having come to Nishapur from Gurgan-and solicited that the districts of Nisā, Farāwah, and certain places at the head of the desert might be assigned to them in fief3. In the missive

³ The commencement of the outbreak of the Saljuks was in 423 H.; and, in the same year, Kadr Khan, the Turk, ruler of Mawar-un-Nahr, died. Jaghar Beg, son of Abū Sulimān, seized Marw, and took up his quarters there in 426 H. The Saljuks made an attempt upon Hirat in 428 H., but were repulsed, and forced to retire. They returned however in the following year, and compelled the place to capitulate, and the territory was annexed in the name of Sultan Tughril Beg; but Sultan Mas'ud subsequently gained repossession of Hirat, and severely punished those who had, as he considered, so tamely capitulated to the Saljūks. See note 3, p. 129.

His correct name is Abū Tālib, Muḥammad, and his title, Rukn-ud-dīn, Tughril Beg, Yamin-i-Amir-ul-Müminin, or "The Right Hand of the Lord

of the Faithful." 1 This work is styled Tarikh-i-Mukaddasi-i-Nāşiri in two copies of the text at this place.

2 The word here used is "munhazim," signifying routed, put to flight,

discomfited in battle, dispersed, &c.

3 As from other writers, our author has not quoted Baihaki correctly. The text states that they sent a trustworthy agent to the Sultan. The following is condensed from what Baihaki says in this matter. Soon after Mas'ud arrived at Gurgan, a despatch reached his minister from Bu-Fazl, Suri, Diwan of Nishapur, which had been brought by horsemen in two days and a half from that city, intimating an irruption of Saljūks and Nialis from Marw, who had in question they had written their own names in the following manner:—"Tughril, and Beghū, and Dā'ūd, who

proceeded to Nisa, where they had joined the Turkmans [see note 8, page 110] there, and that they had been reinforced by other Saliūks and Khwarazmis: and further, that he, Bu-Fazl, enclosed therewith a communication addressed to him by Beghu, Tughril, and Da'ud, in order that the Sultan might give such orders upon it as he might deem fit. The communication began thus: "To his Excellency the Shaikh, the Illustrious Lord, the Sayvid Maulana Abi-ul-Fazl-i-Sūrī, from his servants, Beghū lit will be noticed that the uncle here takes precedence of the nephews], Tughril, and Dā'ūd, the Muwāli or lieges of the Amir-ul-Muminin;" and began, "We, your servants." They went on to state that they found it impossible to dwell in Mawar-un-Nahr and Bukhārā since the death of Ali-Tigin, who had been kind and friendly towards them, as his affairs were now administered by his two sons, inexperienced boys, who were hostile towards them. On account of the distracted state of Khwarazm, through Harun, its ruler, having being killed, they found it impossible likewise to remove thither; and therefore they had come to put themselves under the protection of the Sovereign of the World and Lord of Beneficence, the great Sultan. They hoped the Khwājah [Abī-ul-Fazl] would aid them at this juncture, and write on their behalf to the Khwajah, 'Abu Nasr [the Wazir], and advocate their cause as they were known to him. They farther solicited that, as through that minister's good offices [Khwājah Abū Naşr-i-Ahmad had previously been Wazīr to Hārun and his father], the late Hārun, Khwārazm Shāh, used to allow them to remove with their families and flocks into his territory in winter, he would assist them now. If the Sultan, they said, would accept their vassalage, one of them would constantly attend at Court [as a pledge of good faith], and the other two would serve him in such manner as he might command; and they would rest under his great shadow. They asked that the territories of Nisā and Farāwah, which lav on the edge of the Desert Ibetween the mountains bounding Khurāsān on the north-east, and the Jihun or Oxus], should be conferred upon them, in return for which they promised they would undertake to prevent any rebel from raising his head in Balkhan Koh, Dihistan, the direction of Khwarazm, or the Jihun; and would assail the 'Irakis [the Turkmans under Yagh-mur's son are here referred to] and drive them out. Their request was couched in civil words, to all appearance, but concluded as follows: "but if, which God forbid, the Sultan would not grant their request, and should refuse his permission, they did not know what the state of affairs might become, because they had no place on earth, and none remained to them. Not having the boldness to venture to address such an august person [as the Sultan's Wazir], they had addressed the Khwajah [Abi-ul-Fazl] to solicit him, Please God! to bring their request to a favourable issue,"

Sulţān Mas'ūd wished to move at once against them, so wrath was he at this insolent demand; and bitterly complained of the injury and trouble his father had entailed upon the empire and upon him, through allowing any of those "camel-drivers," as he styled the Sāljūks, to pass the Jihūn, in the first instance. The Wazir and some others counselled the acceptance of the allegiance of the Saljūk chiefs; but another party at the Court advised the Sulţān not to think of marching against them himself, or at the present time, as they would have it that the cattle of his army, after the late expedition, required rest. They advised that a reply should be sent to Abī-li-Fagl, telling

are the Mawāli [lieges] of the Lord of the Faithful, represent unto your presence," &c. The Almighty had been pleased to fill their hearts with much arrogance and contumacy; and, when the purport of their request was made known to the Sultān, he at once commanded that they should have a reply couched in courteous words, but a force of about 15,000 horse, under the command of the Sālār [general], Bak-Taghdi, was told off in the year 420 H.\(^4\), to proceed against them.

When that force reached the Saljūks, it fought a stubborn battle with them, and the Sultān's army sustained a defeat, and the Sultān, out of necessity, had to come to

him to acquaint the Saliūk chiefs, in reply to their demand, "to be under no concern, as they had come to their own homes [as it were], and that they were in his dominions, and under his protection;" and to pretend that he was going to march to Rai, but instead to proceed to Nishapur, and get a force ready to send against them unawares. The Sultan was induced to follow this advice, and the upshot was the despatch of 15,000 horse to Nisa. under the Hajib, Bak-Taghdi. He, on first coming upon the Saljuks near Sarakhs, defeated and routed them; but, soon after, his troops, who were already encumbered with baggage and women, having taken to plunder, he was himself overthrown, by the Saljūks, who had again rallied and attacked him. This took place in Sha'ban, 427 H., not in 420 H., as our author relates, and as is written in the ten copies of his work collated. After this affair, Mas'ud had to agree to their demands, they being the first however to open negotiations, and Farawah was given to Beghu, Nisa to Tughril, and Dihistan to Da'ud. Having obtained their demands, they became more insolent than ever.

4 Several other writers differ here, not only from our author, but also from Baihaki, who is very particular respecting dates. In the beginning of 426 H .. the Khāsah Khādim. Nūsh-Tigin, routed a body of Turkmans near Marw : and in the same year, a force of 17,000 horse, under the Salar, Bak-Taghdi, was sent against them. He was at first successful; but, the enemy having drawn him into the desert, where water was not procurable, and his troops being careless and over confident, he sustained a complete defeat in the eighth month of that year. In the following year, a force of 10,000 horse and 5000 foot was prepared to operate against the Saljūks, under the command of the Haiib-i-Buzarg, Subashi. In the first month of 429 H., in fulfilment of a vow made during illness, Mas'ud undertook an expedition against Hansi, captured it in the third month of that year, and in the fourth returned to Ghaznin. In the same year, Mas'ūd, being unable from the state of affairs to proceed against the Saljūks as he was desirous of doing, despatched orders to the Hajib to expel them from Khurāsān. Subāshī sent a reply to the effect that they were far more than he could cope with. Mas'ud imagined the Haiib was enhancing, or desirous of enhancing, his services, and sent him orders to march against them without farther delay. He did so, and his meeting them, and his defeat followed. The Hājib is styled Surbāshi, and Surpāshi by Guzidah, Sanbāshi in the Tārikh-i-Alfi, and Subāṣi by our author. The name mentioned by Baihaki is no doubt correct.

an accommodation with them. He bestowed Nisā upon Tughril, and the Dihistān on Dā'ūd, and gave Farāwah to Beghū. The Sulṭān then proceeded towards Balkh, and conferred the government of Hindūstān upon his son Maudūd s.

In 420 H., the Saliūks possessed themselves of the towns on the skirt of the desert, such as Marw, Sarakhs, and other places besides and solicited that Khurāsān should be made over to them. The Sultan thereupon despatched the Hājib, Subāsi, with a large army to expel them. An engagement took place between the Sultan's forces and the Saljūks, and the Sultān's troops were defeated 6, and the Saljūks acquired power over the territory of Khurāsān. They sent Ibrāhim, Niāliah 7, to seize upon Nishāpūr, and, subsequently, Tughril himself followed him thither. At Nishapur he ascended the throne, and became a sovereign: and the Khutbah was read in his name 8. He despatched Dā'ūd to Sarakhs, and nominated Beghū to proceed to Marw: and they took possession of Khurāsān, and onehalf of that territory passed from the sway of the servants of the Mas'ūdi dynasty 1.

⁵ Not so: Majdūd was viceroy of the Indian provinces, Maudūd was left at the capital; and subsequently, when Mas'ūd retired into the Panjāb, the latter was sent to Balkh, and he was with his father in the battle of Dandānkād.

⁶ Farther on, our author, when mentioning the council held by the Saljūks when they thought of leaving Mas'ūd's dominions, says, "They are said to have been defeated by the Sulfan's troops several times." See p. 130.

⁷ Ibrāhīm, son of Ni'āl, was Tughril's mother's brother.

⁸ Tughril Beg assumed sovereignty over a portion of Khurāsān, and ascended the throne at Nišhāpār in 429 H.; and the Saljūkā dynasty is considered by several authors to have commenced from that year. Others, however, with very good reason, say that the Saljūks only assumed independent sovereignty after the defeat of Sultān Mas'ūd at Dāe-kān or Dandankān [Dandankād], as stated by our author farther on. He acquired sway over a large portion of Western Asia, Khwārazm, Dihistān, Tabbas, Rai, Kazwin, &c., in 44 H., in which same year the Khalfāh, Al-Kārm, summoned Tughril to Baghdād, and ordered his name to be entered in the Khutbah, and impressed upon the coin. Frankatī states that the Khalfah sent a commission with a robe of honour to Tughril.

⁹ A paradox of our author's.

ا Tughril Beg died at Turusht إطبيقها near Rai, Friday, 8th of Ramagān, 455 H., at the age of seventy. His reign is variously computed: Fanākatī states that he died in 442 H., after a reign of ten years! From 429 H. to 455 H., however, is a period of twenty-six.

II. MALIK DÂ'ŪD-I-JAGHAR BEG 2, SON OF MĨKĀ'ĨL.

When Dā'ūd, after leaving the presence of his brother Tughril, came for the purpose of taking possession of Marw and Sarakhs, Sultān Mas'ūd was at Balkh, and he sent an agent to him [Dā'ūd] to see whether or not an accommodation could be brought about.

At that time Dā'ūd was in the neighbourhood of Marw, with his forces, and it was he who was the mover in all this boldness and audacity. He advanced to the gate of Marw. It was at the dawn of the morning; and the Mu'azzin from the top of a Minārah was proclaiming this verse:—"O Dā'ūd, verily we have made thee a sovereign prince on earth: judge therefore between men with truth "." Dā'ūd, hearing his own name, inquired of a learned person what was the meaning of this. The signification was explained to him, upon which he again drew his sword, and pressed forward after the troops of the Sulṭān, which were in Marw, and put the whole of them to the sword ".

At this period, when the Sultan's envoy from Balkh presented himself before him, a Mu'azzin at Marw was repeating this verse:—"Thou givest dominion unto whom Thou wilt, and Thou takest away dominion from whom Thou wilt."

³ This is not correct. A person was sent, according to Baihaki, to sound the Saljūks, and, as if coming as a friend to them, to induce them to open negotiations. They appeared quite willing to do so, and at once sent an agent to the Wazir. It was on this occasion that Mas¹ūd gave them the territory mentioned in note ³, page 122-3. The author makes great repetition through

mixing up the events of Tughril's reign with Da'ud's affairs.

4 Kur'an, chap. xxxviii.

6 A portion of the 25th verse of chap. iii. of the Kur'an.

² Also written Jaghari Beg. Guzdah has both Jaghar and Chaghar Beg. His title is Amir 'Imād-ud-Daulah, Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ud-i-Jaghar Beg. Guzdah, Faṣih-i, Fanakati, and several others, do not consider Dā'ud as a sovereign, and Alb-Arsalān is, by them, very properly, accounted the second monarch of the Saljūki dynasty, having succeeded his uncle Tughril. Dā'ud had died some years before. Fanākati likewise says that on the death of Isrā'ti, at Kalinjar, his son, Tughril, boke out into rebellion in 423 H., in the reign of Sultān Mas'ūd. This would imply that Tughril and the Saljūks had been quiet up to this time, but such is not the case; and Isrā'ti died in 426 H. See note 8, p. 120.

⁵ The above sounds all very well, and may be true; but it is not contained in Baihaki or any other historian with whom I am acquainted. The last sentence here, it would require the author himself to explain.

The envoy of Sultan Mas'ud perceived Da'ud, who had spread his felt saddle-cloth under him, seated on the ground, with his saddle placed on one side of him. Sometimes he would rest his head upon the saddle, and stretch himself out fon the felt] on the ground, and then again he would sit up. and support himself resting on his elbow. His quiver of arrows was placed near him, and at times he would draw forth an arrow from the quiver, and he would sharpen the head of the arrow, and then again he would smooth out the feathers of it. The envoy of the Sultan, having concluded his message, asked for an answer. Da'ud replied :- "What was this Mu'azzin calling out about 'Thou givest,' 'Thou givest'? Write that down." A scribe accordingly wrote down this verse on paper :- "Possessor of all power, Thou givest dominion unto whom Thou wilt, and Thou takest away dominion from whom Thou wilt: Thou exaltest whom Thou wilt, and Thou humblest whom Thou wilt." &c., and gave it to the envoy?. When the envoy reached the presence of Sultan Mas'ūd, and made known to him the condition and mode of life of Da'ūd, and placed before him the verse in reply to his message, he understood that the period of the sovereignty of the Mahmudi dynasty over the territory of Khurāsān had come to an end, and, in his heart, he relinquished all hope of holding it 8.

The Saljūks having acquired Sarakhs and Marw, and being left in undisturbed possession of the whole of those districts, Dā'ūd determined to attack Upper Khurāsān. Manifesting the utmost daring and boldness on that occasion, he again assembled together a force of II,000 horse, and pushed on to the gates of Balkh, where the Sultān was at the time, with all his great nobles and his forces. An elephant was tied up in a place in the outskirts of the city, and an elephant-driver had fallen asleep upon the animal's back. Dā'ūd came during the night, unfastened

⁷ It is strange that all this is neither to be found in Baihaki nor in the other authors I have been quoting.

⁸ The author here contradicts himself, as is not unusual; for the battle of Dāe-kān [Dandānkād] had not yet been fought, even by his own account.

⁹ Most copies of the work have "he came with eleven horsemen," which is absurd.

¹ Our author does not quote Balhaki correctly here, as the following extract, which I have made from the original, a good MS. copy in my posses-

the elephant, and drove it off, and, by the time the driver had awakened from his slumbers, the elephant had been

sion, and the printed edition of his work edited by Morley, will show. It will be found rather different to the translation given in Elliot, vol. ii. p. 142, "The Amir halted to celebrate the festival of No-roz, on Wednesday, the 8th of Jamadi-ul-Akhir. On Friday, the 10th of the same month, other news arrived [the sentence following and part of next is not in my MS.] that Da'ud had come to Tae-kan [Morley has Tal-kan] with a strong force, and well prepared. On Thursday, the 16th of the month, farther information was received that he had reached Par-yab [Far-yab is equally correct-p and f are interchangeablel, and that from thence he would speedily advance to Shiwar-kan IShaburghan of course is meant—the name is spelt both ways : and our author, as well as Baihaki, is perfectly correct as to the name, notwithstanding the efforts of editors to make out otherwise. In the Persian, b is often interchanged for f, and k for gh, and so, in reality, both ways of writing may be, and were adopted; but never with s for sh, except through an error of a copyist. The Burhan-i-Kata' says, Shaburghan, in ancient times, was the name of the city of Balkh, but now it is the name of a kasbah near it. Compare Elliot's INDIA, vol. ii. p. 142], and that wherever they appeared [Da'ud and his troops] there plunder and slaughter followed. On Saturday There the quotation which our author states he had taken from Baihaki follows], the 18th of this month, at night, ten Turkman [no such mode of spelling as Turkoman will be found in any lexicographical work : the derivation is from Turk, and manind -Turk-like = Turk-manl horsemen came by stealth, close to the Bagh-i-Sultan [the Sultan's garden-the garden in which the Sultan's palace was situated), and slew four Hindu foot soldiers. From thence they pushed on near the Kulianduiz [citadel], and there the elephants were kept. They espied one elephant, and on it a youth who had fallen asleep behind the neck of the animal [any one who has seen elephants and their drivers will know what is meant by this]. These Turkmans came up and began to drive the elephant, the youth being [still] asleep. The Turkmans passed on a farsang [or leaguel from the city, and then they awoke the youth, and said, 'Drive the elephant faster, otherwise we will kill thee.' He replied, 'I am obedient to your commands;' and began to urge the animal on, the horsemen following close behind, urging it onwards, and goading it with their lances. By the time day broke, they had gone a considerable, distance; and they brought the elephant to Shaburghan. Da'ud gave a present to the horsemen, and directed them to take it to Nishapur. From this the troops [of Mas'ud] acquired a very bad name, for people said, 'Among these men such neglect exists, that enemies are able to carry off an elephant from them.' The next day the Amir heard of it, and became very much irritated thereat, and reproved the elephantdrivers severely, and commanded that 100,000 dirams, should be deducted from them, for the price of the elephant, and several of them were castigated. [There is no mention of 'Hindu elephant-riders' in the MS., although Hindu Filbans are mentioned in the printed text, but even then it would not follow that they were Hindus in faith. 1

"On Monday, the 20th of this month, Alti Sakmān, the Ḥājib [Chamber-lain] of Dā'ūd, with 2000 horse, came up to the [very] gate of Balkh, and took up a position at a place called the Band-i-Kāñān or the Infidels' Dyke, and plundered two villages. When the news reached the city, the Amīr became very angry because the horses were in the Darah-i-Gaz, &c. There is not one word

taken away some five leagues, and the driver dared not utter a word.

Dā'ūd [then] advanced with his forces from <u>Shafūrkān</u> to 'Alf-ābād of Bal<u>kh</u>, and fought an engagement with the Sultān, but, notwithstanding all the efforts and endeavours of Dā'ūd, he was defeated.

In the month of Shawwāl of the year 429 H. the whole of the Saljūks assembled together, Tughril, Beghū, and Dā'ūd, and also the Niālis, and the Mas'ūdi and Maḥmūdī Turks ³, some of whom had joined the Saljūks. The Sultān marched from Balkh with his forces, and led them towards Marw and Sarakhs ³; and in the desert of Sarakhs an engagement ensued, which was contested from daydawn until the time of afternoon prayer, when the Saljūks were overthrown 4.

about Dā'ūd's coming up to the gates of Balkh, for Sakmān was driven off in the afternoon by one of the Hājibs with a small body of troops, and some under the Sipah-sālār; and the Turkmāns retired to 'Alf-ābād again, where they remained that night. He reported what had happened to Dā'ūd, who then advanced to 'Alf-ābād from Shaburghān. As soon as Amfr Mas'ād heard of his movements, he moved out to the Pul-i-Kārwān until troops arrived; and, on the 9th of Rajab, routed Dā'ūd and his troops as soon as they reached 'Alf-ābād from the direction of the desert.'

Several partial engagements took place up to the 5th of Shawwal; and, whenever the Sulfan's troops could get at the Turkmans, they overthrew them, and scattered them "like thin clouds before a Biscay gale," but the difficulty was to bring them to close quarters: they would not stand. At last, the Wazir contrived to come to an accommodation with the Saljūks, who appeared as willing as he was for that course, and tracts about Nisā, Bāward, and Farāwah, were assigned to them; but Mas'ūd agreed to it, fully determined to attack them next year. He then returned to Hifat. Our author, as on many other occasions, has misplaced events, putting those first which happened last, and vice verad, as Baihaķi's history shows; and in some cases, as in the following page, has mentioned the same events twice over.

The Turkish slaves who had been first entertained by Mahmüd and others, and since taken into pay by Mas'ūd, are here referred to. They may have been in some way kinsmen of the Saljüks. Some of them had deserted some time previously.

³ The Salţān marched against them by way of Hirāt, because the Saljūks, after having been compelled to withdraw from that place in 428 H., as already stated, had returned in the following year, and had compelled the defenders to surrender it, and the Khutbah had been read there for Tughril. Sulţān Mas'ūd took the opportunity, on this occasion, when marching against the Saljūks, to punish the Hirātis for surrendering so easily. He reached Hirāt in Zi-Kā'dah, 430 H., and proceeded by way of Mihanah [14s. or 14s. it is spelt both ways: European writers have transformed it into Maimanah].

4 The author here is quite confused: he makes out a second engagement, but no other engagement took place than is mentioned in the preceding note!

The Sultān, after this, returned to Hirāt; and the Saljūks, becoming aware of it, again-sought an accommodation; and, as a matter of necessity [on the part of the Sultān], once more a peace was concluded. However, Sultān Mas'ūd summoned troops, with all requisite stores and war-material, from Ghaznīn; but, when those reinforcements-reached him, famine prevailed in Khurāsān, and there was a great scarcity of forage. The forces of the Sultān had become quite powerless and ineffective, and the horses and camels had grown weak and emaciated. The Sultān, with his whole army, advanced towards Tūs; and Tughril retired from Nīshāpūr, and fell back upon Sarakhs.

All the Saliūks now met together, and came to the unanimous conclusion, that they had no longer any power to oppose Sultan Mas'ud and his forces; and, as they had been defeated several times, that it was advisable to make terms with the Sultan, or otherwise to move towards the territory of 'Irāk, and abandon Khurāsān altogether. The lion-hearted Amir Dā'ūd, who had no compeer in loftiness of spirit and energy, said :-- "Confidence is necessary in making conquests, even though it were necessary to devote [one's] life a thousand times over. I have no means or appliances to depend upon save war; so-Sovereignty or destruction!-Victory or death "!" When the Saliūk chieftains beheld this bold and intrepid bearing on the part of Dā'ūd, they coincided with him with one accord, Having come to this determination, they sent away all their families, and dependents, and effects, into the desert; while the horsemen, alone and unincumbered, took up a position on the skirt of the desert, at Dae-kan, prepared for war and conflict.

in which also the accommodation is also referred to, but it took place before the Sultan's return to Hirat.

From the description here, the reader would scarcely understand that the Sultān had advanced in the meantime from Hirāt to Nighāpūr. See note 7, next page.

5 Nearly all copies of the text have the words—"should not have confidence of heart;" but I read it as above, and the context proves the correctness of that reading.

⁶ There is nothing of this kind in Baihaki. What Da'id said was to the effect, that the heads of the tribe made a great mistake in imagining that they would be able to obtain territory so easily in 'Irak and farther west; and, that if they should move one step out of Khurāsan, Sultān Mas'ūd would not allow them to rest upon the face of the earth, and would raise up powerful enemies against them every where. He ended by saying that, at least, they should try the upshot of another engagement before deciding upon abandoning Khurāsān.

When the Sultan reached the spot, the battle commenced; and for three days, from morning's dawn to the setting of the sun, the conflict went on, until, on Friday, the 9th of the month of Ramazān, in the year 431 H., the troops of Sultan Mas'ūd became hard pressed, and his own Turkish troops even began to give way legion after legion. Sultan Mas'ūd was defeated ; and the Saljūks gained the victory, and assumed independent sovereignty.

7 This was Mas'ud's second expedition in person against the Saliuks. although his officers had previously encountered them upon several occasions. He had passed the winter of 430-31 H. at Nishanur, with his forces encamped in and about Baihak [not Baihaki's native placel, Khowaf, Bakhurz, Isfand, Tus, and other places facing the desert. The utmost scarcity prevailed, and grain had to be brought from a great distance. On the 28th of Iamadi-ul-Akhir of 431 H. was the vernal equinox fabout the end of March, 1030 A.D. J. and Mas'ud prepared for a fresh campaign. He had really made no preparation for it; but the Saljuks had issued from the Balkhan mountains and the desert, and were assembled around Sarakhs. The scarcity was so great that the force could hardly be prevented from melting away; yet the Sultan determined to advance to Marw, notwithstanding his Wazir and nobles advised him against it but Abu Nasr-i-Mishkan, the only one who could venture to speak his mind and expostulate effectually, was deadl, as the greater part of his men had lost their horses, and had to march on foot. The animals that remained also were nearly useless, whilst the Saljüks were in possession of Marw, and were well supplied with all things. He moved from Sarakhs on the 19th of Sha'ban towards Marw. The Turkmans soon appeared, and among them were many rebels who had deserted from the Turkish troops in India, and others; and, according to their usual mode of fighting, continued to harass Mas'ud's troops, who wanted for every thing, The details are far too long for insertion; but I may mention that Mas'ud and his troops fought under the greatest disadvantages, for the enemy had either emptied or filled up the few wells which the desert tract contained, while they themselves wetted their clothes beforehand, and carried water along with them. Mas'ud's men and their cattle suffered from heat and extreme thirst; and some of his Ghulams [Turkish slaves], who, on the march, had been obliged to ride on camels, in the confusion that ensued, made all the Tazik horsemen they met dismount and give up their horses to them, after which a large body of them deserted to the enemy. Mas'ud's forces became separated and confused; order was at an end; and leaders became separated from their men. "The Turkish troops," says Baihaki, who was present, "went one way, and the Hindu [i. e. natives of Hind, whatever their creed] another, and neither Kurds nor 'Arabs could be distinguished. A few Khowasis or bodyguards, who remained near the Sultan, made several and repeated charges upon the enemy; and Mas'ud himself, who carried a poisoned halberd or short spear in his hand, slew every one that came within arm's length of himman and horse. I saw Mawdud [the son of Mas'ud] myself, who was galloping his horse here and there endeavouring to rally men around him, but no one gave ear to him, for every one was for himself." This occurred on the 9th of Ramazān, 431 H., beyond the river Marw-ar-Rūd, two stages from Marw-i-Shah-i-Jahan.

After the battle was over, a throne swas set up upon the battle-field itself, and Tughril became sovereign s. Beghū proceeded to Marw, and Amir Dā'ūd led a force towards Tukhāristān and Balkh, and subdued the territories of that region. Subsequently, Tughril and Dā'ūd marched into Khwārazm, and secured that country; and some time after they had brought those countries under subjection, Tughril died, and Dā'ūd entered into a treaty with the Maḥmūdīs and the Sulṭāns of Ghaznīn, and became sovereign of Khurāsān and the territories of 'Ajam, and the universe was given up to him'.

He reigned for a period of above twenty years, and died in the year 451 H., and the throne of sovereignty became

adorned by the victorious Sultan, Alb-Arsalan.

III. SULŢĀN ALB-ARSALĀN-I-GĦĀZĪ, SON OF DĀ'ŪD-I- $\label{eq:condition} JA\underline{G}\underline{H}AR \ BEG.$

He ascended the throne of Khurāsān after Dā'ūd, in the year 451 H.², and the territories of Khurāsān, 'Ajam, with

8 · Baihakî does not say any thing about a throne.

9 Yāfa'ī says that great discrepancy exists among chroniclers respecting the date of the first assumption of sovereignty by the Saljüks, and differs much from them. Guzidah, Fasih-i, and other writers of authority, state that Tughril Beg assumed independent sovereignty over the greater part of Khurāsan, at Nishāpūr, in 428 H., while some few writers say, in 429 H. In 431 H., after the defeat of Sultan Mas'ud, and his retreat to Ghaznin, all Khurāsān fell into the hands of the Saljūks; and the two brothers, and Beghū, their uncle, divided the territory between them. In 432 H., Tughril, who had acquired territory farther west, in 'Irak-i-'Ajam, obtained the Khalifah's consent to his assuming sovereignty, and the title of Sultan. He made Rai his capital, and chose 'Irāk-i-Ajam, with its dependencies, as his portion. Khurāsān was reserved for the elder brother, Jaghar Beg-i-Dā'ūd, who made Marw [some say Balkh] his capital; and Beghū, the uncle, obtained Kirmān, Tabas, Hari [Hirāt], Bust, and as much of the territory of Hind as he could lay hands upon and filch from the Ghaznin rulers. [See page 99, in which his and Da'ud's defeat by Tughril, the slave of 'ABD-UR-RASHID, is mentioned by our author only.] He has made a complete muddle of Tughril's reign, as well as Da'ud's proceedings, and it is difficult to separate them, without a much longer note than space will permit.

¹ This is a good specimen of our author's random mode of writing history. Tughril, who was considered the head of the family, survived Da'ild some years, and died in 455 IL, as previously stated. Guzidala says he died in 453 H., Faṣiḥ-i 451 H., and some say 452 H. In nearly every copy of the text he is styled Alb'-Arsalān-i-Tughril Beg, a blunder sufficiently apparent.

His name was not Tughril.

² Alb-Arsalan ascended the throne of 'Irak and Khurasan in Ramazan 455 H..

the whole of 'Irāk, Khwārazm, Tabaristān, Kirmān, Fārs, and Sīstān he brought under his sway's. He also led an army into Turkistān and Tūrān, and the Maliks of Turkistān, and the Afrāsiyābî Amīrs, submitted to his authority.

The vastness of his forces, the immensity of his warmaterial, and the military resources of his empire, attained to such extent, that the intellect of the geometrician would remain in the labyrinth of helplessness, in an attempt to compute the quantity: as a poet—in all probability the Hakim Sanā'i—who, after Alb-Arsalān's decease, composed a dirge, says of him, in the following strophe:—

"Thou sawest the head of Alb-Arsalān elevated to the sublimity of the seventh heaven:

Come to Marw that thou mayest see the body of Alb-Arsalan buried in the dust.

Attended neither by train or guards, nor the moon-faced, dimple-chinn'd; Nor the steed press'd by his thighs, nor the reins within his grasp 4."

When Alb-Arsalān ascended the throne, he despatched ambassadors to the Court of <u>Ghaznīn</u>, and entered into the strongest terms of friendship and amity with Sulfān Ibrā-hīm⁸, and did not interfere with the <u>Ghaznīn</u> dominions. He occupied himself in holy wars against Turkistān and Rūm, and in securing possession of the territories of Ḥijāz

not before; but he succeeded to his father's dominions in Khurāsūn, at his father's death in 451 H., subject to Tughril of course. His correct name and title is 'Ugd-ud-Daulah, Abū Shujā'-i-Muḥammad, Alb-Arsalān.

3 Our author forgets to state, or did not know, that, by the will of Tughril Beg, Sulimān, son of Jaghar Beg-i-Dā'ūd, succeeded; but Kaltimish Jalso writter Katl-mish, son of Isrā'll, Tughril's uncle, with the aid of the Turkmäns, fought a battle with Sulimān, at Damghān, and overthrew him. On this Alb-Arsalān came against Kaltimish, and in the action which ensued, near Damghān, Kaltimish was killed by a fall from his horse, and Alb-Arsalān was left without a rival. The Khalifah, Al-Kā'lm Bi-amr-ullah, conferred upon him the title of Burhān-ul-Mūminīn. Yāfa'l, however, says that as no successor had been named by the will of Tughril, Sulimān, half-brother of Alb-Arsalān, ascended the throne, and that Kaltimish joined Alb-Arsalān against him.

4 This verse, minus the last half, is what Gibbon would lead us to believe was the inteription on Alb-Arsalān's tomb. The third line is different in some copies, and might be rendered:—"Neither with the glittering blade at his side," &c., or, "Neither attended by his train with the star [one of the emblems of royaltyl, nor the moon-faced," &c.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF T

5 See page 103, and note 9.

and Misr; and, influenced by the sense of pure faith and belief, he began to render services to the Court of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Ka'im. He was distinguished upon several occasions with honorary dresses from the Khalifah's Court, and the lieutenancy of the capital, Baghdād, was conferred upon him.

The writer and author of this TABAKĀT, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Al-Jūrjānā, intimates that, in the year 613 H., he was at the Court of Sijistān, and in that capital there was an Imām ⁶ [Patriarch], the teacher of the doctors in wisdom and philosophy, and the asylum of the learned of the time ⁷, whom they called Imām Rashīd-ud-Din-i-'Abd-ul-Majid. I heard him, when speaking of the magnificence and majesty of Alb-Arsalān, state, that that monarch, in the year 453 or 454 H.; had undertaken the subjugation of the territory of Turkistān. When he reached the frontiers of Kāsh-ghar and Balāsāghūn ⁹, messengers followed him thither, bringing intelligence that the Lord of the Faithful, the Khalifah, Al-Kā'im B'illah ⁹, had sustained a great mis-

It will, doubtless, be noticed that our author seldom quotes the writings of otherwise, and that most of his information is hearsay. The value, or otherwise, of his statements may be judged of accordingly. How he had been deceived by his "asylum of the learned of the time," may be seen from note², page 135. He only quotes Abū-l-Fagl-i-Baihaki for the Saljūk dynasty, a very good and trustworthy authority, but often quotes him incorrectly, as shown in the preceding notes.

7 The meaning of which is, that he was, by our author's account, one of the

most learned men of his time.

8 A city of Māwar-un-Nahr, near Kāṣhghar, and the capital of Afrāsiyāb, which continued the seat of government of his descendants until the time of Gür Khān [not Kor Khān, as Europeans generally write it].

stands for Charles and Charles

g as well as k in Persian, unless explained to the contrary.

9 Al-Kā'im Bi-amr-'ullah, The Kaisar of Rum, Armanus [Romanus], entered the dominions of Alb-Arsalan with the intention of invading Iran, but the greater part of his army perished through the excessive heat, and the Kaisar retired. Subsequently, Armanus again invaded Alb-Arsalan's dominions, and the latter, with 12,000 horse—a rather improbable number—marched to encounter him. They met at a place named Malazah-gird [the ancient Mauro-Castrum], in Azarbājian. in the vicinity of Akhlät, in which action the Kaisar was taken captive by a Rumi [Roman] slave in Alb-Arsalān's army, whose person was so weak and so contemptible, that at the time of mustering the army the 'Ariz Imuster-master, not a "general"] refused to take his name down, when Sa'ad-ud-Daulah, the Shabnah or agent of Alb-Arsalan, at Baghdad, said :- "Write down his name : who knows but that he might take the Kaisar prisoner!" Guzidah states that Alb-Arsalan himself ordered that his name should be taken down. The emperor Armanus [Romanus] was defeated and taken prisoner in 459 H. [after the death of Al-Kā'im], but was set at liberty the same year, on undertaking to pay "a early tribute at the rate of 1000 dinars a-day, or 360,000 dinars every year."

fortune—that an action had taken place between him and the Christians of Rūm, and that the troops of Islām had been overthrown; and further, that the Khalifah himself had been taken prisoner, and had been immured within the walls of a fortress, situated in the lofty mountains of the territory of Anbār¹ and the Jazīrah [Mesopotamia] on the frontiers of the empire of Rūm. The fortress in question is situated on a high hill, or mountain, on the bank of the river Furāt [Euphrates].

Alb-Arsalān, with a force of 180,000 horse, all brave and veteran soldiers, returned with the utmost expedition, in order to release the Lord of the Faithful, and revenge the defeat of the army of Islām. He pushed on with such speed, and made such long marches, that in the space of sixteen or seventeen days—God knows the truth of the statement—he appeared at the foot of the walls of that fortress, which was situated on the bank of the Furāt, from Balāsāghūn. Adopting such means of procedure as the occasion demanded, he called upon the governor of that fortress to embrace the Muhammadan faith, and caused him to be ennobled with the robe of Islām; and, with the aid of Almighty God, he released the Khalifah from confinement. He accompanied the Khalifah's sacred caval-

¹ There is a place of this name on the Euphrates, Felugia or Anbar, mentioned in Julian's campaigns as Pirisabur, and called the second city in Assyria, The Khalifah was confined at 'Ānah. See next note over leaf. A copyist miekt write, I, or ale

a Our author has made a muddle of the reigns of these Saljük monarchs, and betrays such complete ignorance here, that we may doubt his correctness in many other cases after and before. Both in the text above, as rendered faithfully, and word for word, and in the six lines devoted to the history of Al-Ka'fm's Khilāfat, in Section IV., our author plainly asserts that the Khalīfah's troops were defeated by the Naşarānīs or Christians, and that the Khalīfah's was made prisoner by them, and confined in a fortress on the frontier until released by Allo-Araciān. The author, apparently, had either no written authorities to refer to, or did not trouble himself to do so, and composed his work chiefly on hearsay, hence the woful blunder he has herein made. The Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh, strange to say, has made the same error. The Khalīfah Al-Kā'm never fell into the hands of the Romans, and was never confined in a fortress by them.

Our author has confounded the events of Inghril Beg's reign with those of Alb-Arsalān's. In 448 H. [Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh 'says in 447 H.] Al-Kā'lm summoned Tughril Beg to Baghdād, and directed that his name should be read in the Khuthah after his own, and also be impressed upon the coin; while the name of the Malik-ur-Raḥim-i-Abū Naṣr, son of 'Imād-ud-din, son of Sulfān-ud-Daulah, Buwfah, was to come in after Tughril's. Tughril finding his oppor-

cade to the precincts of the capital of Islām, and then solicited permission to return [to his own dominions]. Having obtained it, at the time of taking leave, Alb-Arsalān dismounted from his horse, and honoured his imperial lips by placing them to the hoof of the animal which bore the Lord of the Faithful, and kissed it. On this occasion, in return for these signal services rendered by him, during all this time, to the Court of Islām, he received this much commendation and esteem, that the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Kā'im Bi-amr-'ullah, thus expressed himself:—"Thou hast saved the servants of God from slaugh er, and the country from destruction." Let those who read these words calmly ponder in their minds between the extent of the services of Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāz'i, and on the sublime fortitude and high resolve expressed in the words of the

tunity, after pretending friendship towards, and alliance with, the Buwiah ruler of Baghdad, seized and imprisoned him. In 448 H. Al-Ka'im espoused the daughter of Tughril's brother [daughter of Da'ud-i-Jaghar Beg], Khadijah by name. In 450 H. Basasiri rose against the Khalifah, and put him in confinement in the fortress of 'Anah, a town of Diyar-i-Bakr, or Mesopotamia, on the east bank of the Furat, four miles from Rawa, and seven days' journey from Baghdad by karwan route. The Khalifah appealed to Tughril Beg, not to Alb-Arsalan, who did not come to the throne until nearly five years after. Tughril reached Baghdad in 451 H., Basasiri fled, the Khalifah was set at liberty, and Tughril went to meet him, and walked, on foot, at the head of the Khalffah's horse. On that occasion Al-Kā'im hailed him-"Yā Rukn-ud-din!"-"O Pillar of the Faith!"-and his title, which had been Rukn-ud-Daulah or Pillar of the State, was changed to Rukn-ud-din. Tughril entered Baghdad on the 14th of the month of Safar ; and in that same year also Da'id-i-Jaghar Beg, his elder brother, died. Some few authors say these events happened in 452 H. Basāsirī was soon after captured and put to death, but Fasih-i says he was captured before the Khalifah's release. In 455 H. Tughril espoused a daughter of the Khalifah's. The betrothal took place at Tabriz, but Tughril was desirous that the marriage should be consummated at his capital, which was Rai, and he set out for that city; but before he reached his palace, having halted a short distance from the city, to enjoy the cool air, hæmorrhage came on [not "dysentery"] and could not be stopped. He died 8th of Ramazān; and the Khalifah's daughter hearing of his decease, when on the way to join him, returned, a virgin bride, to her father at Baghdad.

I may mention that the Tarikh.i-Yafa'i, which is generally so very correct and minute in the description of important events, says not a word respecting any hostilities between Alb-Arsalān and the Romans, and nothing whatever

about Armanus [Romanus] having been captured.

The Khulāşat-ul-Akhbar turns the two expeditions of the Romans, in the last of which Romanus was taken captive, into one, and again makes the same Romanus a prisoner in Malik Shāh's reign. There is much similar discrepancy in some other authors, which I have not space to notice here.

Lord of the Faithful, and what amount of eulogium every one of them conveyed.

Alb-Arsalān's reign extended over a period of fourteen years. He ascended the throne in the year 451 H., and in the month of Safar, 465 H., he was martyred. May the Almighty again raise up their pure souls with like glory, and reserve them to Himself in Paradise above!

IV. SULŢĀN JALĀL-UD-DĪN, MALIK <u>SH</u>ĀH 5, SON OF ALB-ARSALĀN.

Sulṭān Malik Shāh ascended the throne at Marw, after the death of his father, and took possession of the whole of the territories of I-rān, Tūrān, the Jibāl [Highlands of 'Irāk], 'Irāk, Dīlam, Tabaristān, Rūm, Misr, and Shām, besides Diyār-i-Bakr, Arman, Sīstān, and Fārs; and in all the pulpits of Islām the Khuṭbah was read in his name, and the coin, both diram and dīnār, became ennobled by his titles.

He was, himself, a victorious and a conquering monarch, and governed with a firm hand; and was sagacious, brave, and just, and endowed with all the accomplishments befitting a sovereign and empire. He brought under his sway the whole of the countries of Turkistān, and sub-

³ The length of his reign depends upon how it is computed. If his accession to his father's territory be reckoned, of course it is considerably longer; but he succeeded as an independent sovereign in the tenth month of 555 H.

⁴ Our author does not say how his martyrdom took place. Perhaps his authority for the Khalifah's captivity in the Roman territory did not inform him. It is very interesting, but much too long for insertion here; but his assassinator was Yūsuf, a native of Khwārarm, the governor of the fortress of Barzam [on the Jiḥin], which Alb-Arsalān had taken. The murderer was nearly escaping, when a Farrāgh, or tent-pitcher, beat in his head with a wooden mallet, used for driving tent-pegs. This took place in Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 465 H. Other authors state that the name of the fortress in question was Firbad, or Firbag.

⁵ His title, according to most writers, was Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, and his patronymic, Abūt-l-Fath. The Nigām-ut-Tawārlkh and Jahān-Ārā say his title was Jalāl-ud-Daulah. The correct titles appear to have been Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dîn, Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Malik Shāh, Yamin [some say Kasim]-i-Amir-ul-Muminin.

⁶ In 468 H. Malik Shāh entered Māwar-un-Nahr, and subdued that territory, and took the Khān of Samrkand captive. He was taken all the way from Samrkand to Işfahān on foot; but, subsequently, he was taught better beha viour, and restored. In 471 II. Malik Shāh again entered Māwar-un-Nahr, and

dued the territory of Rūm; and the vice-royalty and sovereignty of Baghdād, subordinate to the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, were conferred upon him. In Makkah and Madinah, and in Yaman and the country of Hijāz, in the whole of the pulpits of Islām, the Khutbah was read in his name.

He carried on various hostilities, and undertook many holy wars in various parts of the country of the Turks and the territory of Rūm; and, on every side of the territories of the east and of the west, he acquired a kingdom, and placed viceroys of his own therein. He conferred the kingdom of Rūm upon one of his brothers, and, after him, he gave it to his own son, Maḥmūd⁷; and, up to this period, that territory is still in the possession of his descendants, as will, hereafter, please God, be mentioned ⁶.

removed, for the second time, Sulfmän Khān from the government. He was subsequently sent to the fortress of \bar{U}_{z} -gand [\bar{U}_{r} -ganj of the present day], and there immured. This is, no doubt, the same event as is referred to in the Jām'ut-Tawārkh, and in Alfī, but under a wrong year. In those works it is stated that Malik Shāh, nd 482 H., amexed the territory of Samrjand, taking it from Aḥmad Khān, son of Ja'far Khān, who was a great tyrant. He was the brother of Turkān Khātūn, the consort of Malik Shāh, who was mother of Sulfān Sanjar.

⁷ This is totally incorrect: Maḥmūd, son of Malik Shāh, was never ruler of

the territory of Rum. See note 4, page 157.

8 Our author's account of this reign is much the same as the tragedy of "Hamlet" would be with the part of the Prince of Denmark left out. I must give a brief outline of the chief events that occurred to make it intelligible:—

The year following his accession, 466 H., his brother, Takish [Tughān Shāh], rebelled at Hirat. He was taken and imprisoned at Isfahan, the capital. Then followed the rebellion of his uncle, Kawurd, according to Guzidah; but he was the founder of the Kirman dynasty of the Saljuks, which our author says not one word about. They met in battle at Karkh, near Baghdad, and Kāwurd was defeated and slain; but his son succeeded him in Kirmān, and was allowed to hold that territory. In 467 H. [Jami'-ut-Tawarikh and Alfi, mistaking the dates, or wrongly written in the copies of those works, say in 473 H. l his brother, Takish Ithis name is written by our author Takish; in the Shams-ul-Lughat, Tagish [Takish?]; and in the Burhan-i-Kati'. Takashi rebelled, and seized several districts in northern Khurasan, and shut himself up in Nīshāpūr. Malik Shāh sent an army against him [Jāmi'-ut-Tawarikh and Alfi say he went in person, and that it was in 476 H.]. In 468 H. he subdued Mawar-un-Nahr for the first time, previously mentioned. In the following year Antakiah [Antioch] was taken, and the territory as far as the sea-coast. In 471 H. Samrkand was taken, and Suliman Khan, the ruler, again deposed, and confined in the fortress of Uz-gand. On this occasion, Malik Shāh demanded the hand of Turkān Khātūn, daughter of Tumghāsh [also written Tughmākh] Khān, a descendant of Bughrā Khān. In 475 H. Khwarazm was subdued, and conferred upon Nush-Tigin, who founded the Khwarazm-Shahi dynasty. [See note 7, page 169.] The follow-

In the Muntakhab-i-Tārikh-i-Nāsiri, which work was composed by one of the great men of the Court' of Ghaznīn, I read that, upon a certain occasion, Sultān Malik Shah requested his Wazir, Nizam-ul-Mulk, to make ready his forces, as he had resolved upon proceeding into the territory of Misr [Egypt]. The Wazir, Nizām-ul-Mulk, represented, saying :- "It is right for the Sultan to ponder well over this undertaking, because that country contains the Karāmitah sect, and other heretics, and something of the profanities of their creed might come to the hearing of an orthodox monarch like his Majesty; and I do not consider it right that such depravity should find access to the royal mind." Sultan Malik Shah enjoined that they should be diligent in making due preparation for the expedition, as for him to repudiate that determination of his was impossible. Nizām-ul-Mulk [consequently] made great preparations, and got all things in readiness; and the Sultan, with a numerous army, set out in the direction of Misr.

When he arrived in the vicinity of it, the people of Misr hastened forth to perform the duty of receiving the Sultān; but he paid no regard to any one, neither did he turn his eyes towards any thing, until he arrived before the gate of

ing year saw the rise of Hasan-i-Sabbāh, and the heretic sect of Mulāḥidahs. In 480 H. Malik Shah gave the territory of Rum to Suliman, son of Kaltimish, which his descendants held for a long period of years. Sham he bestowed upon his brother, Tutash [تش not "Tunish"], who gained successes over the 'Arabs, Rumis, and Farangs. Other territories were conferred upon some of his Mamlüks or slaves, as will be mentioned hereafter. In 482 H. [the period assigned in Jami'-ut-Tawarikh and Alfi for the expedition into Māwar-un-Nahr, just referred to,] Malik Shāh undertook a campaign against the Kaişar, as the Greek emperors of Constantinople are termed by Muhammadan writers; upon which occasion, as related by all authors of repute, Sultan Malik Shah fell into the hands of a party of the Kaişar's soldiers; but, not having been recognized by any one, he was released through the great tact of his minister, Nigām-ul-Mulk. Next day, a battle took place between them, when the Kaişar was taken prisoner, on which occasion Malik Shah set him at liberty. In 481 H., as has been mentioned farther on, Malik Shāh went on a pilgrimage to Makkah. In 484 H., Nizām-ul-Mulk was deprived of the Wazirship through the intrigues of Turkan Khatun. In 485 u.. Malik Shah sent a force against the Mulahidahs, but it was defeated by those schismatics; and, in that same year, Nigam-ul-Mulk was assassinated by them. He was the first that fell beneath the daggers of that sect; and, within a few days over a month, Malik Shah himself departed this life at Baghdad.

the city of Misr². When he had passed over the ferry of Misr, and the river Nil, he inquired which was the palace of

Fir'awn [Pharaoh].

On being told where it was situated, he turned towards that direction, and ordered his army to halt on the spot where it then was. Sultan Malik Shah, attended only by a single stirrup-holder, set out alone towards the place indicated. He then dismounted from his horse, and, at the place where was the palace of Fir'awn, performed a prayer of two genuflections. He then laid his forehead in the dust, and lifted up his voice in supplication, saying :-- "Oh God, Thou didst bestow the dominion of Misr upon one, Thy servant, and he proclaimed, saying :- 'I am your most supreme Lord ';' but this Thy erring servant, having been exalted [by Thee] to the sovercignty of the countries of the east and the west, has come hither, and, bowing his forchead in the dust, says :- 'Great God! O Lord most High! be pleased of Thy grace and goodness to have mercy upon this Thy servant."

Then, raising his head from his posture of adoration, he came back, and, without entering the city of Mişr [at all], returned to Khurāsān. This anecdote is related to show the exalted nature of the faith of that just and victorious

sovereign 6.

3 Lit. "Where was the place of Fir'awn's throne," signifying his Court,

residence, &c.

4 Kur'an, chap. lxxix. Whatever the author of the Muntakhab-i-Tārīkh-i-Nāṣirī may have said on the subject, I may here mention that this statement of Malik Shah's having made a journey, accompanied by a "large army," into Egypt and crossed the Nile, is not confirmed, in fact, is not recorded in any history with which I am acquainted. Malik Shah certainly made a tour throughout his dominions, "from Antakiah of Sham and Ladakiah of Rum to Mawar-un-Nahr, the frontiers of Khata and Khutan; and from the Bahr-i-Khurz [the Caspian] to Yaman and Tayif." He also performed the pilgrimage to Makkah and Madinah; but there is no mention of Misr or the Nile. Some of the story-

² Al-Mişr—The City—Old Cairo, as it is called by the Chroniclers of the Crusades. Its inhabitants, in ancient times, were rated at two millions; and those of New Cairo [Kähirah] at four millions. The old city stood on the east bank of the Nile, and was some twenty two miles in extent. Some say its extent was thirty miles. Old Cairo, or The Misr, was, perhaps, deducting exaggerations, the largest and most densely populated city the world ever contained, after Kähirah, ancient Thebes, and Babylon on the Euphrates. The name Misr is generally applied at present to the whole of Egypt, but should be Diyar-ul-Mişriah, as in ancient 'Arab writings.

Another anecdote, respecting the same monarch, is narrated in the Muntahab-i-Tārikh-i-Nāṣirî; that some persons in Kuhistān sent in a memorial to the Wazīr, Nizām-ul-Mulk, to the effect that a wealthy person had died, leaving no other heir behind him than a sister's child, and that he had left great wealth, and further that it ought to go to the Bait-ul-Māl⁸ [the royal treasury]. Nizām-ul-Mulk, at a convenient opportunity, represented the matter to Malik Shāh, but he obtained no answer, and did not receive one, until after mentioning it three times. Malik Shāh said he would give him a reply respecting it on the following day; but, when it came, he set out for the chase.

Nizām-ul-Mulk, in his eagerness to augment the royal treasury, followed after the Sultān [to obtain the promised reply]. Malik Shāh had to pass the camp bāzār on his way; and, when he returned from the hunting-ground, gave directions to one of his attendants, saying:—"I am hungry; and in the bāzār I saw some wheaten cakes', and my appetite has a mind for some. Go and purchase as many as you can procure, and bring them hither."

When Malik Shāh approached the precincts of the camp, he ascended a rising ground, and sat down, until such time as they brought the wheaten cakes. He then made all the nobles with him sit down to partake of the cakes. There was one very large dish full*, which sufficed for more than fifty Maliks and Am¹rs, with their attendants. After he had eaten, Malik Shāh arose and inquired of his attendant:—"For how much didst thou purchase these?" The man, with eyes bent on the ground, replied:—"For four and a half dāngs* [little pieces] of coin." The Sulṭān then asked the whole of those present, whether they had had sufficient, to which they replied, that through the Sulṭān's liberality they had eaten all that they desired. Malik Shāh, on

books mention it, but the account is evidently copied from our author. The Ismā' \hat{i} li \underline{K} hal \hat{i} fahs were independent of Malik \underline{Sh} āh.

⁶ See note 5, p. 62.

⁷ Thin cakes of paste called "tutmāj."

⁸ All the copies of the work but two say there were ten large dishes full. One copy says two; but, as one large dish is mentioned in another work, which gives this same ancedote, I have adopted that reading.

⁹ A dang signifies a grain in general, either of wheat, barley, or the like, and is used to signify the fourth part of a dram. It is also used to signify the sixth part of a city, and the like.

hearing the price, defrayed the amount out of his own private purse; and, turning towards Nizām-ul-Mulk, he said:—"A poor frail creature like Malik Shāh, and a minister such as Nizām-ul-Mulk, and so considerable a number of followers, have eaten their fill at the cost of four and a half little pieces of coin; therefore it would be the height of inhumanity to covet the property of orphans. Whosoever hath amassed wealth, and hath accumulated both lawful and unlawful gains, did so in order that, after his decease, his property should go to his progeny and his dependents, and not that I should take possession of it Therefore give up the matter, and say no more on the subject." The mercy of the Almighty be upon him! and may those, who read this, utter a benediction to his memory and to mine.

Many monuments of the goodness and wisdom of that excellent monarch remain in the world, among which one is, that the astronomical calculations were, during his reign, tested anew, and the calendar reformed; and it was after the following manner:-It had been discovered from observations, that, from the want of an intercalation, very great confusion existed with regard to the lunar months, and that calculations had fallen into disorder, and that the zodiacal signs in the almanac had become involved in error. Sultan Malik Shah commanded that the most learned men in the science of astronomy, and the most profound arithmeticians, should make fresh observations, and that the seasons and months should be again tested and adjusted; and the first day of spring, which is the first degree of the sign Aries, became named, after that monarch, the No-roz-i-Jalali.

Nizām-ul-Mulk, Tūsi, who has left in the world so many proofs of his goodness and nobleness, was his Wazir; and Shaikh Abū Sa'id-i-Abū-l-Khayr, and Imām Ghazzāli lived in his reign. Sultan Malik Shah's reign extended over a period of twenty-six years, and, in the year 491 H.1, he died.

God alone is immortal.

¹ Sic in all copies of the work. Our author is greatly out of his reckoning here. According to the Jami'-ut-Tawarikh, Guzidah, Alfi, Fasih-i, Lubb-ut-Tawarikh, and all others of authority, Malik Shah died at Baghdad in the month of Shawwal, 485 H., six years before the date our author gives; and, according to the Nigam-ut-Tawarikh and others, in 471 H.

V. MUHAMMAD 2, SON OF MALIK SHAH.

When Sultān Malik Shāh took his departure from this world, three sons survived him. Muhammad, the elder,

² Here we have a specimen of our author's mode of writing history; and, if we may judge of the rest of his work from this part, but little dependence can be placed in him. He leaves out the reigns of MAHMÜD and BARKĪĀRŪK, the successors of Malik Shāh, entirely, a period of thirteen years! Space will

only permit me to give a brief summary of those events.

After Malik Shah's death, at Baghdad, his consort, Turkan Khatun, who had previously been plotting to secure the succession of her son, Mughis-ud-Din, Mahmud, set him up at Baghdad, and had the Khutbah read for him. She sent off'swift messengers to Isfahan to secure the person of Barkiaruk. the eldest son, who had been nominated heir and successor by his father. Having succeeded in securing him. Turkan Khatan, with her son Mahmad. advanced towards Isfahan, the capital. Barkfaruk, aided by the slaves and partisans of the late Wazir, Nizām-ul-Mulk, who had been removed from office at Turkan Khatun's instigation, because he opposed her views, succeeded in escaping from Isfahan to Rai, where forces flocked around him from all parts. He defeated bodies of troops sent against him upon two occasions, but was not powerful enough, as yet, to attempt to regain Isfahān, and so he remained at Rai. Turkan Khatun having died in Ramazan, 487 H., he moved against the capital, and Mahmud, his brother and rival, came forth to submit to him, and the brothers embraced each other. Some of Mahmud's partisans, however, succeeded in seizing Barkfaruk, and were going to deprive him of his sight, when Mahmud was seized with small-pox, and died on the third day. There is some discrepancy here, among a few authors of authority, who state that Barkiaruk's escape took place in 488 H., and that he again retired to Rai, where he was crowned and enthroned, and that he was again seized and imprisoned in 489 H., at which time his brother Mahmud died, as above related. However, on the death of his brother, Barkiaruk was brought forth from his prison, and raised to the throne; and, from this date, his reign properly commences. The Khalifah acknowledged him, and the titles he conferred upon him were, according to Yafa'ı, Guzıdah, and others, RUKN-UD-DİN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR, BARKĪĀRÜĶ; but Fasih fand others say, RUKN-UD-DIN, ABU-L-FAWARIS, were his titles. There was no peace for him still, and he had constantly to take the field. In 488 H. his uncle, Takish, revolted, but he was defeated; and, in the following year, he was moving against another uncle, Arsalān-i-Arghū, when a slave of the latter put his master to death, before Barkiaruk arrived. On the death of Arsalan-i-Arghu, who had held the greater part of Khurāsān, in 489 H., Sanjar, the third son of Malik Shāh, and full brother of Muhammad, was set up in Khurāsān; and, in 490 H., when in his eleventh year, his brother, Sultan Barkiaruk, nominated him to the government of Khurāsān as his deputy. In 492, M., the year in which Jerusalem was taken by the Crusaders, and Sultan Ibrahim of Ghaznin died, Barkiaruk's troops revolted against him, and he retired into Khūzistān. On this, his other brother, Muhammad, who appears to have been in revolt since 489 H. [some say 490 H.], moved from Artan of Azarbāijān to Hamadān, during Barkiaruk's absence, and assumed the throne. In Rajab of the following year, Barkiaruk marched against him, but was defeated, and had to retire into Khūzistān again.

they called by the name of Tir, and the second son was named Saniar, and the youngest, Mahmūd³.

Muhammad Tir, the eldest, ascended the imperial throne,

He, however, regained sufficient strength during the next year to be able to march against Muḥammad again; and, in Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, he defeated him in Trak, and Muhammad fled to Rai, at which time, according to Fasih-i, Sanjar joined him from Khurasan. In 493 H., according to Fasih-i, Barkiaruk was again defeated by Muhammad; and, in the same year, the former had to encounter Sanjar in Khurāsān, but he was again unsuccessful, and had to fly. Barkiārūk, notwithstanding he was exceedingly weak from severe illness, set out from Baghdad to oppose Muhammad; but the great nobles on either side succeeded in effecting an accommodation between the brothers, and Muhammad returned to Kazwin, of which part he had held the government previously. Muhammad, however, soon regretted what he had done, and further hostilities arose. Barkiarilk again marched against him, and, in Rabi'-ul-Akhir, 495 H., a battle took place between them near Sawah, in which Muhammad was defeated and routed, and he fled to Isfahān, followed by Barkīārūk, who invested him therein. Muhammad ventured out to try and raise the investment, but was again overthrown, and fled towards Khūe. Barkiārūk followed, and came up with him near Ganjah, and again defeated him. In Jamadi-ul-Akhir, 496 H., a peace was brought about, on the agreement that Muhammad should have the western parts of the empire, Azarbaijan, Sham, Arman, Gurjistan, and a part of 'Irak, and Barkiaruk the remainder of the empire. This having been agreed upon, Barkiaruk set out on his return to Baghdad; but his illness assumed a more dangerous form on the way thither, and he died on the 12th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 498 H., after a stormy reign of twelve years, having nominated his son, Malik Shah, his successor. This is a mere outline of the events entirely left out by our author; and, in the account which he gives of Muhammad's reign, he makes still more serious errors than before. Gibbon Ichap, Ivii I destroys the empire of the Saljuks in a few words. He asserts that "The greatness and unity of the Turkish empire expired in the person of Malek Shah," and of course never mentions his successors, 'Mahmud, Barkiarük, or Muhammad. A little farther on he does say that "Sangiar, the last hero of their race," was unknown to the Franks, and that he "might have been made prisoner by the Franks, as well as by the Uzes." He means the Ghuzz tribe probably; but he omitted to state that the first Crusaders were opposed, really, by about the least powerful of the Satraps of the Saljuk empire. The eight successors of this "the last of his race," as well as himself, will be mentioned farther on.

3 Our author is totally incorrect here again. Muḥammad did not succeed his father, as already shown, neither did three sons [most of the copies of the work say "tive" [lon ly surive Malik Shāh. There were four, the eldest of whom was Barklārūk; the youngest, Maḥmūd, an account of whom I have just given. The other two sons were Muḥammad and Sanjar, who were full brothers: an adopted son is also mentioned. The name Thr [_w] and Tabr [_w], for some copies say one, and some the other, given to Muḥammad by our author, is not mentioned in any other work, and the significations of either do not appear applicable. I am inclined to consider that he has confounded the name of Muḥammad with that of his uncle Tutish [_w2], the progenitor of the Saljūk dynasty of Shām, out of whose hands the Franks wrested Autloch, in the first Crusade.

and all the Maliks and great nobles, with their loins girded, stood before him ready to do his bidding. The Wazirs, or ministers of the east and the west, by their tact and experience, succeeded in securing possession of the whole of the territories of the empire; and the Sultans of the neighbouring countries submitted to his suzerainty.

Sultān Muhammad Tīr, however, was a person wholly given to pleasure; and, having found his dominions tranquil and undisturbed, he was in the habit of abandoning himself wholly to wine. He never led his forces in person towards any part of the frontiers of his empire, neither did he nominate any forces [under others for that service]; consequently, no event worthy of record took place during his reign, nor did his territories acquire any extension. His life of pleasure soon terminated; and, after passing two years in gaiety and jollity, he died; and the sovereignty passed to Sultān Saniar.

⁴ Muḥaminad, born 474 II., whose correct titles are Ghiyūṣ-ud-Dīn, Abū Shujū, Muḥammad, Kasim-i-Amīn-ul-Mūminin, whom our author calls a wine-bibber, and wholly addicted to pleasure, and who, according to his account, but on what authority he does not mention, peep led his troops or

account, but on what authority he does not mention, never led his troops or despatched any under his nobles upon any expedition whatever, was, on the testimony of authors of undoubted authority, one of the most intrepid of the Saljūk sovereigns, of high principle, faithful to his engagements, truthful, just, a cherisher of his subjects, and moreover pious and temperate. See Raugatus-Safā for his character. At the very outset of his reign, having claimed the whole empire as his right, he moved to Baghdad, against the adherents of Malik Shah, son of Barkiaruk, who had been set up as successor to his father's dominions, according to the terms arranged between Barkiaruk and Muḥammad already explained. Şadakah and Ayaz were defeated, Şadakah slain [Faşih-i, however, says he was put to death in 501 H.], Ayaz taken prisoner, and Malik Shah was seized and kept in confinement. In 504 H. Muhammad defeated the Mulähidahs, who had acquired great strength during the stormy period of Barkiaruk's reign, and had occupied a strong fortress of Isfahan, named Kala'-i-Shah. The place was reduced, and the leader put to death. After this, an expedition into Hindustan-the western frontier must be referred to-the destruction of a famous idol-temple, and the removal of the idol to Isfahan, is mentioned in some authors of authority. It seems improbable, but is distinctly mentioned, and further research may throw some light upon it. Faşih-i, however, does not mention it. Subsequently Muhammad despatched an army, under the command of one of his great nobles, against Almut, the stronghold of Hasan-i-Sabbah, the head of the sect of Mulahidahs, but the Sultan's death happening soon after prevented the expedition succeeding. Muhammad died in 510 H., but some authors say in 511 H., so that he reigned twelve years and nine months.

VI. SULŢĀN-UL-A'ZAM, MU'IZZ-UD-DUNYA-WA-UD-DĬN⁵, SANJAR, SON OF MALIK <u>SH</u>ĀH.

Sultān Sanjar was a great, dignified, and mighty monarch. His birth took place in the country of Sanjār, in the year 479 H., at the time when his father, Malik Shāh, was engaged in the service of the Court of the Khilāfat, and occupied in the disposal of the affairs of the Lord of the Faithful.

When his father died, Sultān Sanjar was in his tenth year, and his brother Muḥammad ascended the throne. After his brother's death, Sanjar was raised to the sovereignty; and was distinguished by the Court of Baghdād with a dress of honour, a standard, and a commission of investiture. At the capital, Marw of Shāh-i-Jahān, and throughout the whole of the territories of Islām, over which his father and grandfather had held sway, the Khutbah was read for him, and his name was impressed upon the coin.

When he attained unto years of discretion, the flower of youth, and the bloom of manhood, the dominions of the east and of the west came under the control and administration of the slaves and vassals of his empire? His first

§ Yāfa't says his titles were Sulţān-ul-A'gam, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, and his patro-nynic Abū Ḥāriṣ-i-Sanjar. Fanākait calls him Mu'izz-ud-Daulah; Faṣiḥ-t̄, Sait-ud-Daulah; Mirat-i-Jahān Numā styles him Sulţān-us-Salāṭin, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Abū-Ḥāriṣ, &c.; and Niẓām-ut-Tawārikh and Muntakhab say his patronynic was Abū-Ḥāriṣ-i-Ahmād.

On the death of Muḥammad, Sanjar, then the only surviving son of Malik Shāh, who had held the government of Khurāsān since his brother, Barkīarūk, conferred it upon him, assumed sovereignty over the whole empire, notwithstanding Muḥammad had bequeathed the sovereignty over 'Irāk to his son Maḥmūd. An engagement took place between Sanjar and his nephew, in which the latter was defeated; but Sanjar allowed him to retain the sovereignty, subject to himself. Maḥmūd did not enjoy it long, for he died the same year, and his son, Tughril, succeeded; but he too died the same year, and Mas'ūd's another son of Sulţān Muḥammad, succeeded. There having been two Mas'ūd's and three Tughril's, several authors, one of whom is generally so correct as to dates—the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh—have confounded them. See note ⁶, p. 151, and note ⁶, p. 173.

7 Sanjar did not succeed to the sovereignty over the whole empire until the death of his elder brother, Muḥammad, in 511 H. [Faṣiḥ-f says in 510 H.], although he had held great part of Khurāsān, almost independent, for some time previously. In 511 H., he was just thirty-one years old, and he then

assumed the title of Sultan,

hostile operations were directed against Muḥammad, Khān⁸ of Samrkand, whom he defeated; and, subsequently, Sultān Sanjar fought sixteen different engagements on different frontiers of his territories, and came forth victorious from the whole of them.

His reign extended over a long period of time; and public affairs went on in the highway of legality, and on the beaten track of equity and justice. The ordinances of the sacred law of Muḥammad, and the canons of the faith of Islām, conformable with the Divine commands, acquired fresh vigour and newness.

The countries of Khurāsān, 'Irāk, and Māwar-un-Nahr, became exceedingly populous and flourishing; and, at Baghdād, royal palaces were erected in his name. The viceroyalty, and the command of the troops of Baghdād, under the same conditions and provisions as those under which his forefathers had held these offices, indeed upon even more favourable terms, came into the possession of him, and of his representatives.

He installed his slaves in the government, and administration of every country. Arrān, 'Irāk, and Āzarbāijān he conferred upon Iladd-giz¹, who was his slave; and he

⁸ Sanjar fought several battles before he became supreme ruler, on the death of his brother, Muhammad. His first was with Daulat Shah, Wali of Balkh, who was his cousin-german. This took place in 491 H., but, as Sanjar was only then in his twelfth year, he could not have taken part in it. He may have been present with the army. The second encounter was with his elder brother, Barkiaruk [who had nominated him to the government of Khurasan in 490 H. l. in 493 H. The third was with Kunduz Khan, near Tirmiz, in 495 H. The fourth with Arsalan Shah, Ghaznawi, in 511 H. The first battle fought, after he became supreme sovereign in 511 H., was against his nephew, Mahmud, in the neighbourhood of Sawah, in 513 H., which appears to be that said to have been fought with Mas'ud. See page 151, and note 6. Sultan Sanjar fought nine battles, in the whole of which he was victorious; and was defeated in two, as our author himself allows a few pages farther on. The expedition against Ahmad [also called Muhammad] Khan, son of Sultman Khan, styled "Badshah" of Mawar-un-Nahr, took place in 524 H. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh mentions an expedition against "Muhammad Khan, Wall of Samrkand," in 514 H. It appears to be the same which Fasih-i, Guzidah, and Jahan-Ara place ten years after. Ahmad Khan was taken prisoner, but he was restored to his sovereignty in 530 H.

⁹ Our author's statements here are contrary to facts. See note 2 at page

¹ This name is wrongly given here in all the copies of the work but one, although, subsequently, when giving an account of him, the author calls him by his right name. As a is interchangeable with \(\ell\) it can be, and sometimes is,

was the father of the Ata-bak, Muhammad; and the Atabak, Uz-bak, and the Atā-bak, Akhtān², are both descendants of his. The territory of Fars was given to Sankur, who was the ancestor of the Atā-baks of Fārs; and the Atā-bak, Zangi, the Atā-bak, Duklah, and the Atā-bak, Sa'd, and his sons, are all his [Sankur's] descendants. The country of Khwarazm he conferred upon the son of Khwārazm Shāh, who was one of his [the Sultan's] servants, who was the father of I-yal-Arsalan, who was the father of Takish, Khwarazm Shah, father of Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh.

The Sultan of Ghaznin, Mas'ud-i-Karim [the Beneficent], son of Sultan Razzi-ud-Din, Ibrāhim,-May the light of the Almighty illumine their resting place ! - took the sister of Sultan Sanjar to wife. During the reign of the last, through the death of Sultan Mas'ud-i-Karim, it is said that dissension arose between the Sultans of Ghaznin. Malik Arsalān, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, ascended the throne at Ghaznīn, and Bahrām Shāh, another son of Mas'ūd, was with his father, in the district of Tigin-ābād of Garmsirs, at the time of his father's decease; and, from that place, Bahrām Shāh proceeded to the presence of Sultān Sanjar 4 [his maternal uncle], and for a considerable period continued in attendance at his Court.

After some time had elapsed, Sultan Sanjar came to Ghaznīn to the aid of Bahrām Shāh, and set Bahrām upon the throne of Ghaznin; and in that territory, and in Hindustan likewise, the Khutbah was read and the coin stamped, in Sultan Sanjar's name5.

This dominion and power which Sanjar possessed was more extensive than had been possessed by any of his ancestors. He conferred the territory of Mausil upon one

² No Atā-bak of this name occurs elsewhere.

3 See note 9, p. 107.

4 At this period Sanjar was merely ruler of Khurāsān, subordinate to his brother, although he succeeded to the whole empire shortly after.

5 Sanjar imposed a tribute of one thousand dinars per day upon Bahrām Shah; and, in 530 H., had to march to Ghaznin to enforce payment, and reduce him to submission.

6 It is beyond a doubt that the Saljūk empire was of the greatest extent in

Malik Shāh's reign. See latter part of note 5, page 140.

written Hatt-giz. This person's name has been incorrectly written "Atlakin," and "Ildekuz," in many translations. See page 170, and note 8.

of his slaves⁷,—and the Atā-baks of Mauşil, who have been up to nearly this present time, are the descendants of this slave of his, who was a Turk of <u>Khiṭā-</u> \hat{i} ,—and the whole of the territories of <u>Sh</u>ām were held by his slaves. Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dìn, of <u>Sh</u>ām, likewise, was one of the descendants of the Atā-baks of Mauşil, as will, please God, be hereafter mentioned. The Maliks of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and the Sulṭāns of the Jibāl 8 , were all subject to Sulṭān Sanjar.

During his reign hostility arose between the Sultāns' of Ghaznîn and the Maliks of Ghūr, and the latter were overcome. When, however, the territory of Ghūr came under the rule of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, he refused to pay submission to the Sultān; and an engagement took place between him and Sultān Sanjar in the neighbourhood of the mountain tracts of Hirāt, at a place named Sih Goshah-nāb', and the forces of Ghūr were routed, and Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn was taken prisoner'. After some time he obtained his release, and became one of the especial confidants and intimate companions of Sultan Sanjar.

About the time of the troubles consequent on the outbreak of the <u>Ghuzz tribe</u>, when 'Alā-ud-Din was in company one day with Sultān Sanjar, and engaged in a carousal, Sanjar, who was seated upon the throne, thrust out one of his august legs, and let the foot, on the sole of which there was a black mole, dangle over the throne." On 'Alā-ud-

⁷ See note 2, page 168.

⁸ Jibāl hère signifies the northern parts of Ghūr, Bāmīān, &c., not of 'Irāk.

⁹ Petty chieftains at this time, and holding but a very small tract of country. See note ³, page 106.

^{1.} This encounter took place before the gate of Aobah.

² Our author, being, such a warm partisan of the Ghūris and their Turk successors, would not probably mention, if he knew of it, the circumstance of Bahnim of Ghaznin sending the head of Saif-ud-Din, Sūri, son of Husain, son of Sām, to his uncle. Sultān Sanjar encountered the Ghūriāns upon two occasions. The first time, in 501 H., in which affair Husain, son of Sām, was made captive, and Sanjar gave orders to put him to death, but he was saved at the intercession of Shaikh Ahnad, Ghazzāli; and, it is stated, that for two years Husain used to light the fires for the cooks of the Sultān's army, to such misery was he reduced. For further details see Section XVIII. The second occasion, when, according to our author, "Alā-ud-Dh Husain, refused to pay submission to the Sultān," was in 547 H., just before Sanjar moved against the Ghuzz tribe, in which affair he was taken prisoner, and at the time when the Sultān's power was almost at the lowest ebb. See note's, page 155.

³ This statement is much more probable than that of the Rauzat-uş-Şafa,

Din's noticing this mole, he stood up and solicited that he might be allowed the honour of kissing it; and repeated these lines suitable to the occasion:—

"Verily the dust at the gate of thy palace is [my] diadem,
[And] this, the collar of thy service, is my adornment.
In the same manner as I kiss the mole on the sole of thy foot,
Even so good fortune [likewise] salutes my head 4."

Sultan Sanjar acceded to his request; and, when 'Ala-ud-Din knelt down and kissed the mole, the Sultan contrived to twist his toes in the hair about the face of 'Alā-ud-Din. and to keep him on the floor, 'Ala-ud-Din desired to raise his head from the ground, but was held down by his hair. Those present laughed, and 'Ala-ud-Din became disturbed, and his countenance changed. Sultan Sanjar, noticing his mortification, out of his princely beneficence and sympathy, said:-"'Ala-ud-Din, this jesting hath hurt thy feelings; let the dominion of Ghur be [my] amends to thee. I congratulate thee! Return again to thy capital and throne: thou art my brother! Now that the troubles with the Ghuzz tribe have arisen, take along with thee all the flocks of sheep and herds of horses and camels belonging to me. my own private property. If victory aid my efforts against them, and the outbreak of this tribe should be quelled, send them back to me again; but, if not, let them be. It is far better that they should remain with thee, than that they should fall into the hands of such ingrate rebels."

Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din returned to Ghūr, and through the magnanimity and generosity of Sultān Sanjar regained his throne. This was a tradition of Sanjar's beneficence and kindliness; but the author of this Tabakāt will here relate that which sets forth his sovereignty. I, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the year 611 H., when at Firūz-koh, which was the capital and seat of government of the Sultāns of Ghūr, heard [the following] from Amīr 'Alī, the Chā-ūṣh [pursuivant], who said that his grandfather was the Marshal of the retinue' of Sultān Sanjar: and that his grandfather stated, that, when Sultān Mas'ūd of 'Irāk, who was one of Sultān Sanjar's

and far more cleanly. The throne of state is not meant, but a chair or raised seat used on ordinary occasions. See Dorn's "fighans," part ii, p. 85.

1 The point of the original, of course, is partially lost in translation.

This seems to be about the only meaning applicable to the term

brothers' sons⁶, broke out into rebellion, and Karājah, the Sākī [cup-bearer], who was one of Sanjar's slaves, became his supporter in that revolt, the Sultān marched an army from Marw, with the object of falling upon the rebels unawares.

He reached the summit of the Sāwah Pass, at the foot of which, on the 'Irāk side, the rebels were encamped, and issued from it with a few followers; but, when his eye caught sight of the forces of the enemy, he reined in his horse, and came to a halt. A party of nobles, who had reached the spot where he was, he summoned to his side, and said to them:—"We have come upon this gathering,

6 Some discrepancy exists among historians respecting the sons of Muhammad. son of Malik Shah, the nephews of Sultan Sanjar. Guzidah and others mention an encounter between Sanjar and his nephew, Mahmud, in 513 H., in 'Irak, who was defeated and fled to Sawah, but mention no revolt on the part of Mas'ūd, who only succeeded to the subordinate sovereignty over 'Irāķ-i-'Ajam, on the death of his brother Tughril, in 529 H., who succeeded Mahmud, the other brother. In the enumeration of the different victories obtained by Sultan Sanjar during his reign, the Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh mentions one gained over his nephew, Mahmud, in the neighbourhood of Sawah, in 513 H., and a second gained over another nephew [?], Mas'ud, near Dinawr, in 526 H. ; but Mas'ud only succeeded his brother in 529 H. He may have been, however, rebellious before he succeeded. The cause for such discrepancy appears to have arisen from there having been two Mas'tids and three Tughrils, who held 'Irāk-i-'Ajam under Sanjar, on the authority of Fasib-i, who gives the events of each year in chronological order. That work states, that "Mahmud, son of Muhammad, Sanjar's brother, at his father's death in 510 H. [some say it took place in 511 H.], notwithstanding he had opposed his uncle in battle, was allowed to retain the government of 'Irak[-i-'Ajam]," but that he died in that same year. Tughril, his brother, succeeded him, but in that same year Tughril likewise died. On this, Mas'ud, the third brother, succeeded, and he became disaffected towards his uncle, who marched against him, and defeated him in 513 H. in sight of Hamadan [a long way from Sawah]. Mas'ud fled to Jurian; but he was permitted, shortly after, to resume his government, but under supervision. There is no mention of his having been taken prisoner, yet this is the account which agrees best with the statement of our author. This Mas'ud died in 525 H. The Jahan-Ara, and Muntakhabut-Tawarikh state, that Mahmud died in that year [Ibn-i-Khalkan says in 524 H.], and was succeeded by his brother, Tughril, who died in 529 H., and was succeeded by Mas'ūd; but, if Mas'ūd only succeeded in 529 H., how could he, according to the same authors, have been defeated by his uncle in 526 H. ? According to Fasih-i, Mas'ud was succeeded by Tughril, his brother, but probably his son, as the same author states that his brother Tughril died in the same year as Mahmud, who died in 525 H. [this date agrees with Jahan-Ārā and the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh above quoted], when Mas'ud, son of Mahmud [son of Muhammad], Sanjar's nephew, succeeded. He died in 547 H., and is said to have always been loyal to Sanjar. He was succeeded by his brother, Mughis-ud-Din, Malik Shah.

but we have but a weak following, while the enemy are very numerous: what is it advisable to do?" Some among the nobles replied, that whatsoever, in accordance with his Majesty's opinion, he might be pleased to command would be most advisable; but, if his Majesty would defer any movement until such time as the whole of the force should come up, and then dash upon them, it would be still more advisable. Others of the nobles said :- "These people too are his Majesty's servants; it is necessary that he should be pleased to show clemency towards, and have compassion on them, and give them intimation of the arrival of the imperial standards, so that the whole of them may be able to come and tender their services, and rest in safety under the shadow of the imperial protection and pardon." In short, each one of the great lords and nobles made representation of such opinions as entered their minds.

Sulṭān Sanjar [then] turned his face towards the Amir-i-Chā-ūsh, who was also Marshal of his retinue, and said:—"Chā-ūsh, what is it advisable to do?" The Chā-ūsh dismounted from his horse, and, bowing his head to the ground, repeated the following lines:—

"Great monarch I we ought to give battle; We should close with the foe. All the fierce lions of the forest Must be brought into the field, All the huge elephants of war Should doubtless be brought into the fray. It is the day of battle; it is meet to engage. It is the hour for action: it is well to be doing. If thou wouldst render the kingdom stable, It is essential that the sword should be plied."

The Sultān replied:—"It is necessary to act as the <u>Chā-ūsh</u> advises;" and at once, without any further delay, with as many cavalry as had come up, Sultān Sanjar dashed upon the rebel forces. Ķarājah, the cup-bearer, and Mas'ūd of 'Irāk were both taken prisoners, and the forces of this gathering were defeated and put to the rout, and the countries of 'Irāk and Āzarbāijān were recovered anew.

The Sultan returned to Khurāsān; and it was a constant practice with him to pass the hot season at Bukhārā, and the winter at Marw of Shāh-i-Jahān. It so happened, one year, that he remained longer than was his wont at Marw.

The temperature began to rise, and not one of his Court had the courage to represent that it would be well to return to the land of Bukhārā. The climate of Bukhārā agreed with a number of the nobles and great men. They urged Amīr-i-Mu'azzī that he should, by means of verse, bring the charms and beauties of the villas and gardens of the city of Bukhārā to the imperial hearing, so that Kamāl-uz-Zamān might, at an opportune time, sing it, accompanied with lutes.

Amír Mu'azzī, who was the Chief of Poets, or Poet-Laureate, and who, along with forty other adepts [in the art], was in the habit, on days of entertainment and at banquets, of recounting the deeds of the Sultān, and [of whom] it is related, that the whole of these [poets] were of his clan and followers, accordingly composed the following strophe⁷: and the Minstrel, Kamāl-uz-Zamān, early one morning, when the Sultān had taken his morning draught of wine, played⁸ it with such feeling and touching effect, that the Sultān, half-dressed as he was and in his slippers, came forth, mounted on horseback, and took neither

8 "Lutes" are mentioned above in all the copies; whilst here, it appears, the minstrel sang it, accompanying it with his lute.

⁷ Our author is unfortunate with regard to his quotations very often. These lines were neither composed by the poet Mu'azzi, nor were they composed to influence Sultan Sanjar to return to Bukhārā. It was neither his capital, nor did he "use" to pass the hot seasons there. The lines were composed more than two hundred years before Sanjar was born, with the title "Mir" instead of "Shāh," by Farid-ud-Dīn, Abū 'Abd-ullah, Muhammad, born at Rūdak of Samrkand, and hence known as Rūdaki, a famous poet, blind from his birth, but endowed with a very melodious voice, and he played enchantingly on the barbat, a kind of lute. He was also the first native of 'Ajam who composed a Diwan. The lines in question were composed to try and influence the Amīr, Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, Sāmānī, to return to his capital, which was Bukhara. One author states that he went to Hirat, and was so delighted with the place that he remained a long time, and even thought of taking up his residence there. His ministers, nobles, and troops, who longed to return to Bukhārā, were much put out at this, so much so that they, finding all remonstrance useless, even contemplated rebelling. Another writer, who gives a biography of Rūdaki, states that the place was Marw with which Nasr was so much taken up. But, be this as it may, the poet, Rūdaki, was induced to use his efforts upon the Amir. He accordingly composed these lines, and in the Sarāe or villa, in which Naşr had taken his morning collation, the poet sang them accompanied by his lute. Nasr became so enchanted on hearing some of the lines, that he did not stay to hear all ; but, without either turban or shoes, he at once mounted and rode off the first stage on the way to Bukhara.

rest nor repose until he reached the appointed destination :-

"The breeze from Mulian's rivulet reacheth me the same, Even as cometh the fragrance of a loving friend. The gravel of the Amu, and the roughness thereof, Appeareth like as the softest silk beneath my feet. The river Jihun, with its wide-spread surface, Reacheth, even now, to my white steed's very girlls9. O Bukhārā! rejoice, and be thou glad once more, For the Shah even now cometh a guest 1 unto thee. The Shah is a moon, and Bukhara a firmament; The moon likewise riseth the celestial vault within. The Shah is a cypress, and Bukhara is a garden; The cypress also cometh unto the garden now."

After a great part of his reign had elapsed, a body of people from Karā-Khatā-i, from Tamghāj, and the dependencies of Chin, entered the confines of Karā Kuram of Turkistān, and solicited Sultān Sanjar to assign them grazing-lands; and, with the Sultan's permission, they took up their quarters on those confines, in Bilasaghun, Kabalik, and Almālik, and made those parts their grazing-grounds.

When their progeny became very numerous, during the Sultan's reign, they rebelled against his authority, and fought a battle against him. Tāniko of Tarāz, at the nomination of Sunkam and I-ma, was at the head of the Khata'is. The Sultan's forces, from a long period of inaction, and enervated by protracted ease and luxury, were unable to cope with or stand before the enemy, and were overthrown; and they took Turkan Khatun, who was the Malikah-i-Jahan [Queen of the Universe], and consort of Sultan Sanjar, captive2.

⁹ The only other signification the word used will admit of is a boat, which does seem more appropriate, for I do not think the Jihun can be forded on horseback. I have doubts whether the word is correct in the original.

1 Sic in MSS.

As soon as this disaster befell Sanjar, his vassal, Utsuz [it is written "Itsiz"

² In 534 H. Sanjar marched to Samrkand, and fought a battle with At Khan; but he was defeated, and had to retreat to the fortress of Tirmiz, or Tirmid, as it is also called. Turkan Khatun, and the Malik of Nimroz, and many other great men, were left in the hands of the enemy. These infidels of Khatā-i, and Mughals likewise, overran Māwar-un-Nahr, slaying, devastating, and making the people captives; and, included in the numbers put to the sword by the invaders, were many great and learned men. The Khata-i's and Mughals remained in Mawar-un-Nahr until driven out by Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah. Guzidah and Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh state that this reverse took place in 535 H.

This was the first reverse the Sultān had ever sustained; and, subsequently, he concluded a peace with them, and the pasture-lands of Turkistān and Bilāsāghūn, along with the cities and towns included in those frontier tracts, were left in the hands of the Khaṭā-ī invaders. After the peace was concluded they sent back Turkān Khātūn to the Sultān again. The Hakīm [philosopher] Koshakī has written much satire upon this unfortunate event, which is contained in Dīwāns and [other] books.

When this reverse became public, the affairs of the empire began to decline, and to grow weak³; and, of the reign of Sanjar, sixty years⁴ had passed away. A body of the Ghuzz tribe, from Khandān⁵, now rose in revolt against the Sultān's authority⁶, and withheld the yearly tribute which had been previously fixed. The Sultān marched an army against them, and the Ghuzz were willing to pay a kalāh [ingot] of silver⁶ for each family, but the Sultān would not

in Burhān-i-Kāṭa', and in the Tāriṭh-i-Ibrāhīmī, "Utsiz," and by our author, "Utsiz "], son of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Nūṣḥ-Tigɨn, upon whom Sanjar's father conferred the rule over Khwārazm, threw off his allegiance. Sanjar invested him in Hazār-asp in 535 H., which was taken; but he treated the rebel leniently, and still allowed him to retain that territory. In 537 H. [Guzidah says in 535 H., while the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh says it happened in 536 H.] Gūr Khān, who, in concert with Āt Khān, defeated Sanjar in the Dasht, or Desert of Kaṭrān [o]-bā], on the frontier of Samṛṭand, died; and, after this happened, Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh expelled the infidels from Māwar-un-Nahr.

³ It was, according to Gusfadh and others, after Sanjar's defeat by the Khaṭā-i's and Mughals that 'Alā-ud-Din, chief of Ghur, ventured to show hostility towards him. Sanjar defeated him before Aobah in 547 H., and 'Alā-ud-Din was taken prisoner, but was subsequently released. Our author has mentioned this as about the first event of Sanjar's reign.

4 See note 1, page 157.

⁵ A tract of territory on the frontier of Chin. A few MSS. have Khutlan,

⁶ Fanākatī says that, when the <u>Ghuzz</u> tribe crossed the Jīhūn, Badr-ul-Mulk, 'Ajamī, the Sulţān's Wazīr, advised Sulţān Sanjar to attack them. This he did, and was overthrown and taken prisoner, and <u>Khurāsān</u>, Kirmān, and Fārs were seized by them!

The Sulfān marched against the Ghuzz in 548 H. The details are far too long for insertion here. Upwards of a hundred thousand persons, not including women and children, were afterwards massacred by the Ghuzz, and the territory of Khuräsān was devastated. In the following year was born Tamüchin, afterwards known by the name of Chingãr Khān.

7 Guzidah says "a maun [which signifies two pounds of twelve ounces each] of silver." Price, quoting the Khuläşat-ul-Akhbär, says "a guarter of a hundredweight of gold, besides 100,000 dinārs," which is ridiculous. Our

author's account is the most probable one.

agree to it, and, on this account, gave battle to them, and was defeated and taken prisoner.

On the Sultān falling into their hands, the whole of the Ghuzz dismounted before his stirrup, and saluted him, and tendered their services. The Ghuzz chieftains, such as Tūṭ̄, Kurgharat, Malik Dīnār, Ibrāhīm, and Khutalī, besides others, girded up their loins before the Sulṭān's throne [to serve him], and began themselves to issue mandates [in his name]; and they divided Khurāsān among themselves. Whatever it was requisite to do they did, and they used to state, "The Sulṭān commands this and that." The slaves and servants of the Sanjarī dynasty became dispersed and separated; and the affairs of the country became disorganized, and the thread of sovereignty snapped asunder.

After some time had passed—about a year, more or less*—one of the slaves, who was one of the Sultān's nobles, proceeded to the Sultān Sanjar's presence, and presented himself, and, as if going out on a hunting excursion, mounted the Sultān on horseback, and brought him away [out of the hands of the Ghuzz], and restored him to liberty once more. He conducted the Sultān to Marw*, and placed him on the throne again, and some of the still remaining adherents of the dynasty collected around him; but the Sultān's days had now drawn towards their close, and the sovereignty had grown antiquated and gone to decay. On Monday, the 24th of the month Rabi'-ul-Awwal, in the year 552 H., Sultān Sanjar died at Marw, and was there buried. His age was seventy-three years

⁹ Our author generally eschews dates. Here again we have a specimen of his mode of writing history, when he asserts that Sanjar remained in captivity "about a year, more or less." Sanjar remained nearly four years in the hands of the Ghuz, and, during this period, no efforts were made to effect his escape, lest his consort, Turkin Khätin, who appears to have again fallen into captivity, might remain in their hands. She having died, however, in 551 H., Sulfan Sanjar succeeded in gathing over the Ghuzz chief who had charge of him, so far as to get him to take him out on a hunting excussion to the banks of the jfhün. Arrangements had been made for the occasion, and Amfr Almad-i-Kamäl, governor of Tirmiz, was avaiting him on the bank, where he had got boats in readiness. The Sulfan succeeded in throwing himself into one, and his people got into others, and then made their escape. In Ramagan of that year, the Sulfan succeeded in assembling a force at Tirmiz, and he then set out, under its escort, to Marw.
9 See latter part of preceding note.

and a little over, and his reign lasted sixty-two 1 . The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

ACCOUNT OF THE SULȚĂNS OF RŪM², OF THE SALJŪĶĪAH
DVNASTV.

The Sultāns of Rūm were of the race of Saljūk, and were great and powerful monarchs; and, in the territories of Rūm and the country of Afranj³, numerous signs and marks of their goodness and benevolence, their expeditions and holy wars, their conflicts with unbelievers, buildings of public utility and charity, in the shape of colleges, mosques, monasteries for darwesh²s, karwānsarāes, bridges, and charitable and pious foundations, remain to this day; and the accounts of their descendants, their Maliks, and their Amîrs, and of their heroic achievements in that country, are recorded in trustworthy books.

When the Sultān of Sultāns, Sanjar, on whom be the mercy of the Almighty, ascended the throne of his father, and became established in the sovereignty of the world, and, when the territories of Islām, both east and west, were taken possession of by his servants, and the Khutbah was read for him from all the pulpits of Islām, and the money of the world became adorned with his name and titles, he conferred the kingdom of Rūm upon his brother, Maḥmūd, son of Malik Shāh. The whole of the Sultāns [of that country]

¹ Guzîdah says Sanjar died of grief on the 16th of Rahî-ul-Awwal 552 H., aged seventy-two years. The length of his reign must be calculated from the death of his brother Muḥammad in 510 H., at which period he was thirty-one years old. Previous to this he was but subordinate ruler of Khurāsān; and historians calculate his reign from the date above mentioned. Other authors state that he reigned forty-one years.

² Our author completed his work in 658 H., and Sanjar died in 552 H.; and, although the Saljük dynasty existed for thirty-two years after Sanjar's death, and had terminated ninety-eight years before our author closed his history, he says nothing about Sanjar's successors.

⁸ Europe, the countries of the Christians, and the Roman empire of the east. ⁴ All the copies of the text are alike here. Our author has made a precious hash of this Section of the Rümf dynasty of the Saljüks. Sanjar did not, as he states, first establish that dynasty, neither was Sanjar's brother, Maḥmūd, the first subordinate sovereign of Rüm, nor was his son, Mas'ūd, the second, nor were they ever its rulers. He has confounded the Sultans of 'Irāk and those of Rüm together. Sanjar's brother, Maḥmūd, moreover, died when in

are his [Maḥmūd's] descendants, an account of every one of whom is recorded in this Tabakāt, in order that its readers may call to remembrance, with a blessing, those who have passed away, and acquire some information respecting that dynasty*.

* I will now demonstrate what I have referred to by giving a brief account

of the rulers of Rum, of the Saljuk dynasty.

Kil-timish (At-Limish) Limible is evidently the same as occurs in the name of the Turkish slave-sovereign of Dithl, "I-yal-timish,"] son of Isrā'il, son of Saljūk, Alb-Arsalān's great uncle's son, according to the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, rebelled against him [Alb-Arsalān]; but, in an action near Dāmghān in Muḥarram, 456 H., Kil-timish was defeated, and was found dead on the field. Alb-Arsalān desired to put Kil-timish's sons to death, but was dissuaded from doing so by his Wazīr, and was induced to make Sulīmān, son of Kil-timish, viceroy of certain territories of Shām, and he was the founder of the Saljūk Sulīāns of Rūm. Guzīdah states that Kil-timish received the investiture of the government of Damashk, from Malik Shāh, at the time when he conferred so many territories upon others. See note?, page 168. Sulīmān, who was employed against the Christians in 467 H. [A.D. 1074-5]—but Faṣiḥ-ī and a few others say in 469 H.—succeeded by stratagem in wresting Anṭākāh out of the hands of Firdaus [Philaretus], Rūmī, after it had been in the hands of the Christians

his tenth year, in 489 H., only twenty-one years before Sanjar succeeded to the throne, and when Sanjar was about the same age. The first two sovereigns here mentioned as rulers of Rum, who undertook expeditions against "the infidel Afranj," were the first two rulers of 'Irak, subordinate to Sanjar, as will be seen on reference to the second Rumi sovereign, so called, and Sanjar's reign where Karajah, the cup-bearer, is referred to, page 151. From the third to the ninth, the rulers mentioned in this Section are correctly given as far as their names and a very meagre account of their reigns go; but the tenth ruler, again, was the last ruler of 'Irak, not of Rum. I noticed, when reading the work, that, at the latter part of the reign of Mas'ud, all the copies of the original contained matter totally unintelligible with regard to that sovereign. It is strange too that all the copies of the work should be the same, for some of the MSS. I have collated, one in particular, are certainly five or six hundred years old. Still more strange is it, however, that, not only should the author in his preliminary notice of the Sultans of Rum mention Mahmud, brother of Sanjar, as the first, but, that he should subsequently mention his undertaking expeditions against the Christians; and, with reference to the second ruler, Mas'ud, Mahmūd's son, he says that Sanjar, at first, conferred the throne of 'Irāk upon him [Mas'ud], thus inferring that, subsequently, that of Rum was given to him. The heading of a chapter or paragraph might be put in incorrectly by a copyist, but the sense of the matter cannot be, nor could Rum have been inserted for 'Irak. It is therefore evident that our author himself made a muddle of his work, and confounded the rulers of 'Irak with those of Rum, which, from other errors he has made, is not improbable. It will also be noticed that he makes no mention whatever of the Saljūks of Kirmān, consisting of eleven sovereigns, whose dynasty outlasted all the others—but he has also left out all the other 'Iraki rulers, except the two first and the last, who do duty for the Rumis-neither has he given any account whatever of Saniar's successors, nor does he notice at all other less powerful dynasties.

I. MAHMÜD, SON OF MALIK SHÂH.

On the throne of the territory of Rūm having been conferred upon him by Sulṭān Sanjar, his brother, he undertook many holy wars in that region, and on the frontiers of Islām. He marched armies against the infidel Afranj, and carried on holy war according to the canons and ordinances of the sacred law. He captured fortresses and cities, and ruled over the servants of Almighty God with justice and beneficence. After he had reigned for a considerable time he died.

II. MAS'ŪD, SON OF MAḤMŪD SHĀH.

Sulţān Mas'ūd was the son of Maḥmūd, son of Malik Shāh. At first, Sulţān Sanjar conferred the throne of 'İrāk upon him; and, on one occasion, through the power and authority which he had acquired in that territory, he combined with Karājah, the Sāķī [cup-bearer], and they rebelled against the Sultān.

The Sultān came upon them suddenly, and attacked them, and took both Mas'ūd and Karājah, the cupbearer, prisoners. After that occurrence the affairs of Mas'ūd went to ruin, and he never ascended the throne again; but, in the person of his son, Kazil-Arsalān by name, he acquired considerable power, and became sovereign, and carried on the government.

[Twelve copies of the original are all hopelessly defective here, and no two copies are alike. No break occurs in either MS. to indicate that any portion whatever has been lost or misplaced, or that any omission has been made in copying.

since 358 H. This was effected during the reign of the Greek emperor, Alexius Comnenus. I. SULĪMĀN [the Solyman of Tasso] acquired great renown by this, and, in 480 H., Malik Shāh [not Sanjar, as our author states, for he was then only an infant in his first year], conferred the sovereignty on him. He reigned twenty years, and was succeeded by his son, II. DA'ÜD, who

⁵ See the particulars, at page 151.

⁶ This is the only sense that is to be gathered from the original, and the statement is moorrect. See note ⁴, page 157.

⁷ Not even in the precious Paris copy, which M. Tascherau so fondly imagines to be in our author's own handwriting.

The context, in fact, proves that Minhāj-i-Sarāj considered Kazil-Arsalān to be the son and successor of Mas'ūd; and, such being the case, the extent of our author's knowledge of history is impressively indicated.]

III. ĶAZIL ARSALĀN', SON OF MAS'ŪD, SON OF MAḤMŪD, SON OF MALIK SHĀH.

After the decease of his father, Kazil-Arsalān acquired some little power, and possessed himself of some of the frontier districts of the territory of Rūm. He ruled for a short period and died.

IV. KULĮJ-ARSALĀN, SON OF ĶAZIL-ARSALĀN.

Kulij-Arsalān was the son of Ķazil-Arsalān, who was the son of Mas'ūd, son of Maḥmūd, son of Malik Shāh. He assumed the sovereignty of Rūm after the death of his father, and became a very great and powerful monarch. He possessed himself of the territories upon the confines of Rūm, captured many fortresses and strongholds, performed many heroic exploits, and acquired a great name on account of the infidel Afranj having been often worsted and overthrown by him.

All the Sultans of Rum glory in their connexion with him; and he obtained the felicity of martyrdom. He was interred at Kuniah, which is a large city in Rum.

ascended the throne at Kūnfah. He gained some successes over the Christians, and, after a reign of eighteen years, died in 518 H. His brother, III. KULIJ-ARSALAN, succeeded, who is said by one author to have fought a naval battle with the Christians, and, after an ardaous struggle, to have been victorious; but there is some discrepancy with respect to the date, and the story may refer to the previous reign. He reigned until 539 H., but some say until 537 H.; but, having been defeated in a battle with the 'Irāķi Saljūks, he was drowned whilst crossing a river, when retreating before them. His son, IV. SULTĀN MAS'ŪD, succeeded, who, after a reign of nineteen years, died in

⁹ Called Koniah by Europeans.

⁸ Mas'ūd, brother of Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyaş-ud-Dnn, Muḥammād, Sanjar's brother, had no son so named. The lines which follow are meaningless, but are alike in all the copies.

V. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KĀ-ŪS, SON OF ĶULĪJ-ARSALĀN.

Sultān 'Izz-ud-Din, Kai-Kā-ūs, ascended the throne after his father's death, and brought the country under his rule. He carried on holy war against the infidels of Afranj, and fought several battles with them in that country. He founded colleges and masjids, and left many monuments of his goodness and bounty behind. He was interred by the side of his father in the city of Kūnīah.

VI. KAI-KUBĀD, SON OF KAI-KĀ-ŪS.

Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Ķubād, ascended the throne on the decease of his father, Kai-Kā-ūs, and brought under his sway the territories of Rūm, and parts adjacent.

558 H. He was succeeded by his son, V. 'IZZ-UD-DIN, KULII-ARSALAN, who ascended the throne at Küniah. He annexed some of the territories of the Christians, and, after a reign of twenty years, died in 578 H. After him came his son, VI. RUKN-UD-DÎN, SULÎMÂN SHÂH, the eldest, and, between him and his brother Ghiyas-ud-Din, Kai-Khusrau, who had been nominated successor by his father, hostilities arose, which went on till 588 H. Kai-Khusrau fled to the Christians. Suliman annexed Arz-i-Rum and Kars [Kars], with their dependencies. He reigned twenty-four years, and died in 602 H. His son, VII. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KULĪJ-ARSALĀN II., son of Sulīmān, succeeded. He was an infant, and his uncle, Kai-Khusrau, having been recalled from the Farang, in 603 H., succeeded, after a year, in depriving him of the sovereignty, and Kulij-Arsalan was shut up in a fortress. where he died in 609 H. VIII. GHIYAS-UD-DIN, KAI-KHUSRAU, after dethroning his young nephew in 603 H., assumed the sovereignty. He took Antākiah from the Christians, into whose hands it had again fallen, in 603 H., and was himself killed in a battle with the ruler of Istanbul [Constantinople], after a reign of six years, in 609 H., but some authors say in the preceding year, and some, 610 H. This probably is the fifth monarch referred to by our author, under the name of Kulij-Arsalan, as he is the only one mentioned who attained the felicity of martyrdom in having been slain by the Christians. His brother, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kubād, rose against him, but had to submit, and was confined in a fortress.

Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau, having been slain in battle with the Christians, was succeeded by his son, IX. 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KĀ-ŪS, but he died after a short reign of about a year. Most authors do not mention this prince at all. He was succeeded by his uncle, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kubād, who is about the first of the sovereigns of this dynasty that can be traced by his correct name and title, from our author's account of them. X. 'ALA-UD-DĪN, KAI-KUBĀD, who had been immured in a fortress, succeeded his nephew, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kā-ūs, in 610 H., and is accounted one of the greatest sovereigns of the dynasty. Hostilities arose between him and the

He fought battles with the infidels of Afranj; and many indications of his goodness exist to this day.

He had sons, who acquired great renown, and became great men. He died on the 5th of the month Shawwāl, in the year 633 H., and he, likewise, was buried at Ķūniah.

VII. KAI-KHUSRAU, SON OF KAI-KUBĀD.

Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dîn, Kai-<u>Kh</u>usrau¹, was a great monarch of noble disposition and excellent qualities, just and impartial. Having ascended the throne after the death of his father, he took possession of the territories of Rūm, and assumed the government of them.

In this reign, the disturbance and disorder consequent upon the irruption of the army of infidel Mughals had reached the frontiers of Rūm². The Sultān, in such manner as he was able, entered into friendly relations with the Farang ³. He was assembling an army upon the frontiers bordering upon the territory of Islām, when, suddenly,

unfortunate but gallant Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the last of the Khwārazm Shāhīs. They fought a battle, in Ramaṣān, 627 H., in which Kai-Kubād was victorious. The Mughal, Uktāe Ka'ān, sent him a Yarlīgh [diploma] congratulating him, and the Khalīfah [for overthrowing a good Musalmān perhaps] conferred upon him the title of Sulfān-i-A'zam, wa Kasīm-i-Mu'azzam. He reigned twentysix years, and died in 634 H., having been poisoned, by mistake some authors say, by his son, Chiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau, who assumed the throne.

Our author is correct here as to the name and title. GHIYĀŞ-UD-DĪN, KAI-KHŪSRAU, the eleventh of the dynasty, is the man who poisoned his own father, of whom our author gives such a glowing account.

² An army of Mughals marched against him, under Tāju, Nūyān, and the Mughals obtained sway over the territory of Rūm, after an engagement at Koshah-dāgh, in 641 H. Kai-Khusrau died in 642 H., but Gurādh says in 644 H., and Jahān-Ārā and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh say in 643 H., but Raugat-us-Ṣalā says in 640 H., which is certainly incorrect. His son Sulimān succeeded.

³ The word "Farang" is used here in all the coptes, but Afranj is the word previously used. This, doubtless, is what Gibbon refers to in grandiloquent style, which often covers great errors:—"Flying from the arms of the Moguls, those shepherds of the Caspiah [whom he styles 'the strange and ravage hordes of Carismians,' thus indicating the extent of his knowledge of the untetr] rolled headlong on Syria; and the union of the Franks with the Sultans of Aleppo, Hems, and Damascus, was insufficient to stem the violence of the torrent." The "torrent" of course signifies the fugitive Sulfan Jalal-ud-Dîn flying from the Mughals, who was defeated by Alā-ud-Dîn, Kai-Kubād, as related in a previous note.

he was deserted and left alone by his troops. The Mughal forces made an inroad into that territory; and, after they again retired, Kai-Khusrau died in the beginning of Muharram, 643 H.*

He reigned for a period of eleven years, and named his son, 'Izz-ud-Din, Kai-Kā-ūs, his heir and successor.

VIII. 'IZZ-UD-DÎN, KAI-KĀ-ŪS, SON OF KAI-KHUSRAU.

According to his father's nomination as successor to the sovereignty, Sultān 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Kai-Kā-ūs, ascended the throne of Rūm in the beginning of the year 643 H., and the Maliks and other great nobles submitted to his authority 5.

As he was celebrated for his energy, his warlike accomplishments, and his nobility of mind, he strengthened his frontiers on the side of Afranj; and, as a matter of necessity,

⁴ Died in 644 H. according to Guzidah and Faşih-i, and in 642 H. according to the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh.

³ As is often the case towards the termination of a dynasty, authors here are at variance one with another vespecting the succession. Some say that <u>Ghiyasud-Dîn</u>, <u>Kai-Kā</u>nsrau, was succeeded by his son, "Izz-ud-Dîn, Kai-Kā-ūs, and that he, as our author states, <u>despatched</u> his brother Rukn-ud-Dîn, Kulij-Arsalân [called by others Rukn-ud-Dîn, Sulinan], to the camp of the Mughal Kā'an. The facts, however, appear to be as follow. On the death of <u>Ghiyās-ud-Dîn</u>, Kai-Khusrau, in 642-IL, his son, XII. RUKN-UD-DÎN, SULÎ-MÂN, succeeded. It was he who despatched his brother, 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Kal-Kubād, to the Court of Ab-ghā [called also Ab-kā] Khān, where he continued for a considerable time in distress and trouble. Having at length succeeded in his mission, he set out on his return, but Rukn-ud-Dîn, Sulîmān, suspecting he was coming with designs against him, had him put to death as soon as he entered his territory; and another brother, 'Izz ud-Dîn, Kai-Kā-ūs, fled to the camp of Barkā Khān. After a reign, so called, of twenty years, Sulîmān was himself put to death, by order of Ab-pāā Khān, in 664 H.

Others, on the contrary, say that Rukn-ud-Dīn, having succeeded in obtaining from the Mughal Ka'an, a grant of investiture for himself, on his retuint o Rüm, was the cause of great disorders; and that 'Iza-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau, fled to Istanbūl, and was proceeding to the Dasht-i-Kabchak to lay his case before the 'Ka'an, but died on the way, Rukn-ud-Dīn having in the meantime, with Mughal aid, assumed the sovereignty; but, after a short time had elapsed, Rukn-ud-Dīn [called Kulij-Arsalān by some and Sulimān by others] was found to have been intriguing with the ruler of Mişr, and was put to death in 664 H.

As our author finished his history in 658 n. I have no occasion to say more than that he records events respecting the Mughals which, evidently, belong to the reign of Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn, Kai-Khusrau, the seventh ruler, by his account, and has confused the events of the following ones.

consequent upon the power and predominance of the infidel Mughals over the dominions of Islam, he, in order to ward off [the inroads of] that race, despatched his younger brother into Turkistan to the Court of Mangu Khan, the Mughal, so that he might, under terms of peace; be left in

possession of his dominions.

On Rukn-ud-Din, Kulij-Arsalān, the envoy and brother of Sultan Kai-Kā-ūs, reaching the presence of Mangū Khan, the Mughal, he preferred requests, and made solicitations contrary to the mandate of his brother. He sought from Mangū Khān the territory of Rūm for himself, and likewise assistance from him to enable him to liberate that country from the hands of his brother. Mangu Khan gave him the daughter of the Nu-in [a Prince, or a great noble,] Aljaktā, the Mughal, and despatched Aljaktā, with his troops, to aid Rukn-ud-Din, Kulij-Arsalan [against his brother].

When they reached the Rumi territory, 'Izz-ud-Din, Kai Kā-ūs, retired before them; and Kulij-Arsalān and the Mughals became dominant over Rum. Kai-Kā-us went to Aor Khān of Rūm, and, having obtained aid from him, came and suddenly attacked the Mughals, and overthrew them'. He captured his brother, and immured him

in a fortress.

After some time, he, Kulij-Arsalān, succeeded in escaping, and went to the Mughals; and, as what has happened since has not become known to the author, this [notice of him] has been thus much abridged.

IX. ĶUŢB-UD-DĪN®, ĶULĪJ-ARSALĀN.

Trustworthy persons call him Rukn-ud-Din, Kulij-Arsalan, and say that he is among the Mughals, along with Hulau, the Accursed, in the direction of the terfitory of Azarbāijān. What the upshot of his affairs may be no one can say; but, please God, may they end well 9 1

6 Also written Nüyan.

8 One copy has Rukn-ud-Din.

⁷ Who Aor [in one copy Uz] Khān of Rum might have been, it would require our author to explain. No overthrow of the Mughals by the Saljuks of Rum is mentioned by other writers.

⁹ This short account varies, and is somewhat less in some of the copies or the work. Hulāū is also styled Hulākū.

[The author now returns to the last of the Saljūks of Trāk'. All the MSS, are alike here.]

X. TUGHRIL, SON OF TUGHRIL.

Respecting the descent of this Prince two different accounts have been given. Some relate that he is Tughril, the son of Tughril, son of Kazil Arsalān².

Sultān Tughril was a sovereign, and the son of a sovereign, and a person of great magnificence; and his reign was contemporary with that of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Takish, Khwārazm Shāh's.

His strength was so very great, that not a warrior of his day could lift his mace ' from the ground, and he was a man of great stature and of awe-striking presence. Persons of credit relate, that the hair on his upper lip was so long, that he used to draw his moustaches back, and put them behind his ears.

He was one of the brother's sons of Sultān Sanjar', and was [left] very young in years on the decease of his father. The sons of the Atā-bak Iladd-giz—who was one of Sanjar's slaves, and had, previously, been ruler of that territory, and had espoused Tughril's mother [grandmother of Tughril, widow of Arsalān, Tughril's father], after his father's death—had acquired power over 'Irāk; and, when their father died, they immured Sultān Tughril in one of the fortresses of 'Irāk, and took the country into their own possession'.

¹ All the copies are alike in this respect, and no hiatus whatever occurs in the different MSS. to show it. I merely discovered it from the names and events mentioned.

Not so: Tughril, the last of the dynasty, was son of Arsalān Shāh, and his tile was Rakn-ud-Din. There are no contrary accounts that I know of. One copy has Tughril, son of Arsalān, son of Kulij-Arsalān.

³ In some copies this paragraph is placed at the end of his reign.

⁴ See note 9, page 91.

⁵ He was Sanjar's brother's great-grandson, if not one generation farther removed.

⁶ I have been obliged to take a little liberty with the text of this paragraph, which, in all twelve copies, is in a hopeless state of muddle. No two copies are alike; and, as the text now stands, it is a mere jumble of words without any observance of grammatical rules. The literal translation of this passage, as it now stands, is as follows:—"He was one of the brother's sons of Sultan.

When Sultān Tughril reached man's estate, and became famous for his vast strength, his great bodily vigour, his nobility of mind, and his warlike accomplishments, a party [of adherents] rendered him aid, and set him at liberty from imprisonment. He came forth, and great numbers of the servants of his father and grandfather flocked around him. He assumed the Chatr [canopy of royalty], and became Sultān. The following are two lines from a poem composed on his escape fromconfinement, and his rise to dominion and power?:—

"The tidings reach'd Rai—'The Sultan is come!'—
And that august canopy of his is to Hamadan come."

After Sultān Tughril had acquired supremacy over the territory of 'Irāk, and had reigned for a considerable period, a number of his servants despatched letters to Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, and invited him to come into that country. In accordance with that request, Sultān Takish invaded 'Irāk with a large army. When the two armies came into proximity with each other, one or two ingrate slaves acted treacherously towards Sultān Tughril, and came up behind his august back and martyred him.

At this period his other followers were engaged in front, at the head of a pass, fighting bravely, and did not become aware of this piece of treachery, until those treacherous ingrates brought the august head of their sovereign to Sultan Takish, Khwarazm Shāh, who despatched it to that staunch and steadfast band of Tughril's followers.

Sanjar, and had been left, after his father ['s death] very young [in years]. The soms of the Atā-bak Īladd-giz, who was a slave of Sanjar's, having acquired power over 'Irāk, because his [sic] father was ruler of 'Irāk; [and], when he died, they imprisoned Sulfān Tughrill in one of the fortresses of 'Irāk, took his mother to wife [sic], and possessed themselves of the country." For a correct account of these matters see the following note, and note 7, page 169.

7 Jahān-Pahlawāu, the Atā-bak, on the death of his half-brother [see under Atā-baks of Agarbāijān and 'Irāk, page 171, and note all Arsalān Shāh, set up the latter's son, Tughril, as sovereign of 'Irāk, who was then seven years old. While his maternal uncle, Jahān-Pahlawān, lived, Tughril's affairs prospered, and he reigned in some splendour. Jahān-Pahlawān, however, died in 552 H., and Kazil-Arsalān, his full brother, desired to take his place as Atā-bak to Tughril. The latter, being impatient of restraint, would not brook it, and, accordingly enmity arose between them. For further particulars respecting Tughril and Kazil-Arsalān, see note and page 171, and note apage 172.

When they found what had happened, they declared that they would not cease fighting and using the sword, until he, Sultān Takish, should deliver up to them the murderers of their sovereign, whereupon they would yield to him. Sultān Takish complied, and delivered up the murderers, whom they sent to the infernal regions. Then, taking along with them the head of Sultān Tughril, they proceeded to the presence of Sultān Takish, and submitted to him. He took the head in his arms, and, along with them, performed the customary mourning [for the deceased]; and Sultān Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, took possession of 'Irāk's.

8 Tughril's death occurred in the following manner:-Takish of Khwarazm, having invaded 'Irak at the instigation of Kutlagh Inanaj, encountered Tughril's forces within three farsakhs of Rai, where Tughril had pitched his According to several authors Tughril and Kutlagh Inanai were engaged hand to hand, when Tughril struck his own horse a blow with his mace, which was intended for his opponent, and the horse fell with him, and Tughril was slain by Kutlagh Inanaj. I prefer, however, the circumstantial account of Yafa'i, who says that whilst Tughril was leading his troops in a charge, his horse stumbled, and Tughril was thrown to the ground. At this moment Kutlagh Inanaj reached the spot, and desired to give Tughril a finishing blow, and slay him before he was recognized. This he accomplished. and the body was then placed upon a camel and taken to the presence of Takish, "who, on seeing his enemy in this condition, knelt down and gave thanks to the Almighty for the mercy vouchsafed to him." His head was sent, as an insult, to the Khalifah at Baghdad, and his body was exposed upon a gibbet in the bazar of Rai, on Thursday, the 29th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 590 H. Thus ended the first dynasty of the Saljūks, who ruled over Khurāsān and 'Irak for a period of 161 years. This account of Tughril and his death is widely different from our author's. The Khalifah was hostile to Takish. See under his reign, Section XVI.

Our author does not give any account of the Saljūk dynasty of Shām, or of that which ruled so long in Kirmān.

SECTION XIII.

ACCOUNT OF THE SANJARIYAH RULERS.

The humblest of the servants of the Almighty's Court, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī, states, that, when the period of the dynasty of the Sanjarīyah expired, and no son remained unto Sulṭān Sanjar, nor brother's sons¹ [likewise], every one of his slaves held some territory among the dominions of Islām. These slaves assumed the title of Atā-baks [guardians and preceptors], and, to the brother's sons of Sulṭān Sanjar, they accorded the title of Sovereign, whilst they possessed themselves of the different territories of the empire¹.

These Atā-baks were of different races. One was the descendant of the Atā-bak, Ilatt-giz, to whom Sulṭān Sanjar had given the territories of 'Irāk and Āzarbāijān; the second, the Atā-bak, Sankur, to whom he had given

1 So in all the copies, but a few lines under our author contradicts himself. Our author appears quite as much in the dark with respect to the Atā-baks. if not more so than he is with regard to the Sultans of Rum. It was Sultan Malik Shah, the father of Sultan Sanjar-not Sanjar himself-who made several of his Mamlüks or slaves, as well as some of his relatives and nobles, rulers over different parts of his vast empire [see page 138], as the dates which I shall give will prove, and on the authority of authors of undoubted authority. such as have been already mentioned. For the information of the general reader uninitiated in Oriental lore, I would mention that the words Mamlūk and Ghulam, signifying "slave," must not be understood in the sense "slave" conveys in our language. These slaves were sometimes captives, but more often boys of Turkish origin, purchased by kings and their great nobles of traders-slave-dealers-and trained for the highest offices. They were sometimes adopted by their masters, and were frequently made governors of provinces, and leaders of armies. Numbers of these Turkish slaves possessed the throne of Dihli, as will hereafter be mentioned in these pages.

The Atā-baks, it must be remembered, notwithstanding our author's assertions, were, at the outset, more or less, subject to the sovereigns of the house of Saljūk, and acted as tutors and guardians of various young princes, which the word Atā-bak means, from the Turkish atā, father, and bath, a lord, a great man. Sanjar himself was put in charge of Khurāsān in the thirteenth year of his age, which signifies that the government was administered in his name, and that his Atā-bak carried on the administration.

the territory of Fārs; and, third, the Atā-baks of Mauşil, and the Maliks of \underline{Sh} ām³. Trustworthy authorities have related some little respecting the events [in the lives] of two of these dynasties, as has been [herein] recorded; and, with regard to the Atā-baks of Mauşil, as much as has been written respecting the affairs of Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn of \underline{Sh} ām is all the information that has been obtained, with the exception of that of which the \underline{Kh} udāwand-Zādah [son of a lord or great man] of Mauşil informed me, which was this much, that his eighth ancestor was a Turk of \underline{Kh} aṭā-ṭ, and the slave of Sulṭān Sanjar¹. Such being the case, this dynasty [of Atā-baks] has been classified into three sections⁵.

FIRST DYNASTY.

THE SANJARĪYAH MALIKS OF 'IRĀĶ AND ĀZARBĀĪJĀN.

Be it known that one night, at a convivial entertainment, Sultān Sanjar conferred sovereignty upon three persons—to Malik Utsuz⁶ he gave the throne of Khwārazm; to the Atā-bak, Îlatt-giz, the throne of Āzarbāijān; and the throne of Fārs to the Atā-bak, Sankūr⁷.

³ Respecting both of which dynasties he gives no account. From the remarks which follow, our author seems to have been at a loss for materials, and his statements fully prove it.

⁴ A vast deal of information, certainly,

⁴ It will be noticed that our author, who generally eschews dates, never gives a single date throughout his account of the three following dynasties, so called

⁶ Also written Utsiz, and in the Burhan-i-Kata', Itsiz.

⁷ Sanjar's father, Malik Shāh, who certainly held a greater extent of territory than any other of the Saljūk sovereigns, bestowed territories, that is the viceroyalty over them, upon his Mamliks and officers. Khwārazm he gave to Nūsh-Tīghn-i-Gharjah, who was also a slave, on his conquest of that territory, in 475 H. He was the progenitor of that dynastyl, and this happened five years before Sanjar was born. The latter, during his reign, in 535 H., endea-voured to reduce lisiz, the grandson of Nūsh-Tīghn, who died when Sanjar was in his truelfh year, but was unable, and Itsiz became an independent sovereign. On Āk-Sankur, the progenitor of the Atā-baks of Fārs and of Diyār-i-Bakr, Muḥammad, Sanjar's predecessor, bestowed the government of Halah, in 487 H., upwards of five years before. It was Maḥmūd, nephew of Sanjar, who gave Iladd-giz the widow of his brother in marriage, and the government of Āṣarbājjān, as mentioned farther on. I have been thus particular here in order to show the value of our author's statements with respect

When the next day came round, a number of his Wazirs, confidants, and advisers, represented to the Sultān, that, on the previous night, his Majesty had given thrones away to three different persons, out of whose hands he would not, hereafter, be able to disengage them. He inquired what three persons they were, and, when they informed him, he confirmed the appointments, saying:—"Those two first mentioned are my slaves, and the other is in my service. As there is no son to interpose, who would be heir to the sovereignty, it is better that my slaves should be paramount."

I. THE ATA-BAK, ILATT-GIZ®, US-SANJARI.

The Atā-bak, Īlatt-giz, was a slave of Sultān Sanjar's, and he was possessed of great strength and nobility of mind.

Having brought the territory of Azarbāijān under his sway, he performed many great acts; and many monuments of his goodness still remain in that country.

to the Atā-baks, whatever may be the value of what he says about Hindūstān. As the other slaves, who were appointed rulers at the same time, are not

mentioned by our author, I need not refer to them here,

8 The Ata-bak, Iladd-giz for Ilatt-giz, t and d being interchangeablel, was the slave of Kamal-ud-Din, 'Ali, Samairami, the Wazir of Sultan Mahmud, son of Sultan Muhammad, son of Sultan Malik Shah. [See note 6, page 146. As the author leaves out Mahmud's reign, it is not surprising that he makes errors with respect to Iladd-giz.] Samairam is one of the dependencies of Isfahan, and is said to have been founded by Sam, the son of Nuh [Noah], who gave it the name of Sam-Aram -Sam's resting-place [or place of rest]but, from constant use, in course of time, the name got corrupted into Samairam. After the Wazir, Kamal-ud-Din, was put to death, in the month of Şafar, 516 H., Îladd-giz became the servant of Sultan Mahmud, during whose reign he rose to the highest rank and dignity, and great power. Mahmud gave the widow of his brother Tughril, the mother of Arsalan Shah Isee page 165, where the author falls into utter confusion : this note tends to throw some light upon his statements therel, in marriage to Iladd-giz, and bestowed upon him the government of Azarbāijan. He became very powerful, and annexed Ganjah and Shirwan to his territory. He set up Arsalan Shah, son of Tughril, his wife's son, as sovereign, and, at once, assumed the entire direction of affairs, and all the power, Arsalan possessing nothing of sovereignty except the bare name. Iladd-giz died at Hamadan, according to Fasih-i, in 567 H., but some say in 569 H. In 557 H., an army of 30,000 Gurifs [Georgians] invaded Azarbāijān, destroyed the city of Dū-in, and slew 10,000 Musalmans, carried off a number of captives, and burnt the great Masjid. Shams-ud-Din, Iladd-giz, took the field with 50,000 horse, at Tabriz, in order to aid the ruler of Akhlat and the lord of Maraghah, and to revenge this invasion, which he effected in the following year.



The Almighty gave him worthy and accomplished sons; and he carried on wars with the infidels of Afranj and Karkh, and reduced the country, as far as the frontiers of Rüm, under his subjection, and conquered a great part of Irāk. He died after reigning a considerable time.

II. THE ATA-BAK, MUHAMMAD, SON OF ILATT-GIZ.

The Atā-bak, Muḥammad, was a great monarch, and succeeded his father on the throne? He took possession of the territories of 'Irāk and Āzarbāijān, and performed many illustrious deeds. He was just and of implicit faith, he founded colleges and masjids, and undertook many expeditions against the unbelievers. He likewise performed many gallant exploits in the direction of Karkh, and reduced the territory, as far as the frontiers of Rūm and Shām, under his sway.

He reigned for a considerable period, and had slaves who attained great eminence and grandeur, who, after him, took possession of the territories of 'Irāk', such as I-taghmish, and Ada-mish, and others besides them, the whole of which they held up to the time of Khwārazm Shāh, when the territories of 'Irāk passed out of their hands, and they died.

In the length of his reign², his justice, and his beneficence, the Atā-bak, Muḥammad, was a second Sanjar.

⁹ Hadd-giz was succeeded as Atā-bak by his son, Jahān Pahlawān, Maḥammad, by the widow of Sulfān Tughril, and half-brother of Arsalān Shāh. The latter having died in 571 H, the Atā-bak set Arsalān's son, Tughril, a child in his seventh year, upon the throne of 'Irīk's; but he was a mere puppet, and, except in name, the Atā-bak was sovereign. Jahān Pahlawān then despatched his full brother, Kazil-Arsalān, as his deputy, to Azarbājān. Jahān Pahlawān died at Rai in 582 H. There is a good deal of discrepancy among authors as to the dates of the deaths of these two Atā-baks.

1 As the Atā-bak, Muḥammad. Jahān Pahlawān, had several sons, who succeeded to his territories, the mention of his "slaves," who held them "up to the time of Khwärazm Shāh," is, like many other statements of our author,

inexplicable. No other writer makes such a statement.

² The Atā-bak, Îladd-giz, died in 567 H., some say in 568 H., and others, 569 H. He held sway about 35 years. The Atā-bak, Muḥammad, who, our author says, was "a second Sanjar in length of reign," only held power from the date of his father's death, until 582 H., just 15 years. He has confounded the father with the son.

III. THE ATĂ-BAK, YŪZ-BAK, SON OF MUHAMMAD, US-SANJARĪ.

The Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, was sovereign of Āzarbāijān. Some have said³ that he was the brother of the Atā-bak, Muḥammad, son of the Atā-bak, Ilatt-giz, the San-jarī.

Yūz-bak was a man of energy and experience, and reigned over the territory of Azarbāijān for a considerable time.

^a An absurd way of writing history, when he is not even certain of the names and descent of the people he pretends to write about, who flourished only a short time before he compiled his work. The Atā-bak, Jahān Pahlawān, Muḥammad, was succeeded by his brother, Kazil-Arsalān, not by Yūz-bak. At the decease of the former, Kazil presented himself before Sulfan Tughril, in expectation that he would permit him to act as his Atā-bak; jbut he, having experienced severity from Jahān Pahlawān, and having now grown older, was not inclined to have another master, and would not consent. Kazil, becoming hopeless of gaining his object, retired into Āṣarbājjān, and rebelled; but was defeated in an engagement with Tughril's partisans. In 583 u, Kazil had gained sufficient strength to be able to renew hostilities; and, in 586 u, he made Tughril prisoner, with his son, named Malik Shāh, and immured them in a strong fortress in Aṣarbājjān, and Kazil-Arsalān assumed independent sovereignty. Kazil-Arsalān was assassinated by the disciples of the Mulāḥidah in 587 u, after reigning five vears. Se enages 163 and 166.

He was succeeded by his nephew, Nusrat-ud-Din, Abu-Bikr, the son of Jahan Pahlawan, in the territory of Azarbaijan only, and 'Irak passed to his brother, Kutlagh Inanaj. In 587 H., the year after Abū-Bikr's death, Sultan Tughril effected his escape from imprisonment, and succeeded in reaching 'Irak. Kutlagh Inanaj, after marrying his mother to Tughril, combined with her to administer poison to Tughril in his food; but, having received a warning, Tughril compelled his wife to take it, upon which she almost immediately died. Kutlagh Inanaj was imprisoned for a time, but was subsequently set at liberty. He went to the Court of Takish, Sultan of Khwarazm, and brought him with an army upon Tughril, and, in a battle which took place between them, Tughril was slain, and the first dynasty of the Saljuks terminated. This will throw some light upon the almost unintelligible and confused account given by our author respecting the reign of Sultan Tughril, at page 166, and the very romantic, but not very authentic account of his death. It will be noticed that, up to this time, even the Ata-baks were nominally but the ministers of the Saljūk sovereigns, and not "great monarchs" who ascended "thrones," as our author asserts.

The Atā-bak, Uz-bak, or Yūz-bak [the name is written both ways], son of Jahān Pahlawān, was the tast of the Atā-baks of Āṣarbāijān, and succeeded Nuṣnt-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikt, in the government of that territory. He was the Atā-bak whose city of Tabrīz, Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the last of the Khwāramī Sulṭān, junested. Yūz-bak had ledt it, and had placed his consort in charge; and she, having fallen in love with Jalāl-ud-Dīn, became his wife, and surrendered the city to him. Yūz-bak died of grief and chagrin. For an account of this circumstance, see the reign of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Section XVI.

He continued in possession of it until the reign of Sultān Muḥammad, \underline{Kh} wārazm \underline{Sh} āh. Upon several occasions the forces of \underline{Kh} wārazm \underline{Sh} āh were appointed to act against him, but he did not fall into their hands, until he advanced into 'Irāk, being eager for the possession of Iṣfahān, and hostilities were going on between him and the Atā-bak of Fārs, Sa'd [son of Zang'i].

Unexpectedly, Sultān Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh, came upon them. The Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, was defeated and completely overthrown, and Āzarbāijān passed out of his possession, and he died.

IV. THE ATA-BAK, ABU-BIKR, SON OF MUHAMMAD.

The Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, was a great monarch; and the territory of 'Irāk, and the Jibāl [the mountain tracts of 'Irāk] came into his possession. He ruled his subjects justly and beneficently, and cleared the frontiers of his territory of enemies.

He founded colleges and masjids in 'Irāk, Arrān, and Āzarbāijān, and a very large college at Marāghah; and was the patron of ecclesiastics and learned men. He had numerous slaves, both of his father's and of his own, each of whom was Malik [ruler] in one of the cities of 'Irāk. He was the elder brother of the Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, and he reigned for a considerable time, and died, leaving no children behind him.

SECOND DYNASTY.

THE SANJARĪVAH MALIKS OF FĀRS.

I. THE ATA-BAK, SANKUR 4, US-SANJARI.

As soon as the throne of Fārs' was conferred upon the Atā-bak, Sanķur, by Sultān Sanjar, Sanķur brought that

4 Guzidah says that Āķ-Sanķur [turned into "Ascansar" by Gibbon], who held Halab of Sultan Malik Shāh, is the progenitor of these Atā-baks of Fārs.

We now come to the Atā-baks of Fārs, whom our author continually styles "great monarchs," who ascended thrones, although, at the very outset, he says the brothers' sons of Sanjar retained the title of Bādshāh. He begins with the Atā-bak, Sankur, and would lead his readers to imagine that he was the first of the rulers of Fārs who bore that title, and that Sultān Sanjar bestowed the

territory under subjection6, and acted with justice and

beneficence to the people under his sway.

On the death of Sultan Saniar, some of the brothers' sons of that monarch came into the territory of Fars from 'Irāķ. Sankur sent them to Istakhur, in that territory,

sovereignty of that territory upon him, as he did upon others of his slaves. Such, however, is not the case. The Atā-baks of Fārs were of the race of Salghur, a Turkman chief, who, about the time of the great movement of the Saljūks towards Khurāsān, made raids into that territory, and committed great ravages, until the Saljuks became complete masters of it, when that chieftain is said to have taken service under Sultan Tughril Beg, and Salghur and his tribe took up their quarters in Fars, Khūzistān, Luristān, and parts adjacent. From the downfall of the Dialamah dynasty to the rise to independent sovereignty of the Sankuriah, of whom our author's Sankur is the first, seven persons ruled over Fars, six of whom were governors on the part of the Saljuk sovereigns. The first of these was Fazl, son of Hasan, who in 459 H., after Alb-Arsalan, the previous year, had inflicted chastisement upon the Shabankārah, seized Mansūr-i-Fūlād Sutūn [Pillar of Steel], the last of the Dilami sovercigns of the family of Būwiah, and imprisoned him. He then seized upon Fars, which he appears to have been allowed to retain; but, subsequently, having become disaffected, he was replaced by the Amir Khumar-Tigin. him succeeded the Atā-bak, Jāwli [also written Chāwli], who reduced the power of the Shabānkārah. He was succeeded in the government by the Atābak, Karājah, who was slain at Hamadān [Guzīdah says in Fārs]. He was followed by the Atā-bak, Mangū [also called Mangūs], his son. Subsequently, the Atā-bak, Būzābah [also written Fūzābah, f being interchangeable with b], was made governor by Sultan Mas'ud, son of Muhammad, son of Malik Shah, Saljūki. He rebelled against Mas'ūd, son of Mahmūd, and was taken in an engagement with him, and put to death in 542 H. After this, Sultan Mas'ud made his brother's son, Malik Shah [Guzīdah says, Muḥammad], ruler of Fars. He was a youth wholly given to pleasure; and, after a time, he put to death, without cause, the Ata-bak [his own Ata-bak in all probability], Salghur. On this, Sankur-Tigin, son of Maudud, son of Zangi, son of Ak-Sankur, son of Salghur, rose against Malik Shah, and expelled him from the territory of Fars. Malik Shah went to his uncle's court, obtained assistance, and again entered Fars, but was unable to effect any thing; and, in 543 H., Sankur assumed independent sovereignty. The account given in Guzidah is somewhat different, but to the same purpose. It says, "Būzābah, having rebelled against Sultan Mas'nd in 541 H., was defeated before Hamadan, taken prisoner, and put to death in 543 H. The brother's son of Buzābah, Sankur, son of Maudud, in revenge for his uncle's death, seized upon the territory of Färs." All these events took place in Sanjar's lifetime. Sankur assumed the title of Muzaffar ud-Din, and ruled for a period of thirteen years, and died in 556 H. He was succeeded, not by his son, but by his brother, Tuklah. It must be borne in mind that all these Atā-baks were, more or less, subject to the successors of Sultan Sanjar, while the dynasty lasted. Mas'ud died in 547 H., and Malik Shah succeeded. See latter part of previous note, and note 6 page 146, and note 6, page 151.

6 The constant recurrence, throughout the work, of this stock phrase of our author's, may be partly accounted for from the fact that confusion, more or less,

arose on the death of each ruler.

and assigned a stipend, and furnished them with all things necessary for their support. Those princes were allowed to retain the empty title of Bādshāh, whilst Sankur, under the name of Atā-bak [guardian and preceptor], ruled over the territory of Fārs. Hereigned for a lengthened period, and died.

II. THE ATA-BAK, ZANGIT, SON OF SANKUR.

The Atā-bak, Zangi, ascended the throne of Fārs after the death of his father. He was a great monarch, and was just, and ruled with a firm hand; and he brought the dominions of his father under his control and government.

With respect to the rulers of the countries around, he guided his policy as the circumstances of the times rendered feasible; and he held the sovereignty of Fars for a long period, and died.

III. THE ATA-BAK, DUKLAH, SON OF SANKUR.

The Atā-bak, Duklah, after the decease of his brother, ascended the throne of Fārs. He was an energetic and rigorous monarch, and brought the territory of Fārs under his control.

Hostilities broke out between him and the Maliks of 'Irāk; and he collected together, from all parts of the courtry, a vast quantity of material and munitions, the like of which, to such an amount of wealth and treasure, none of his predecessors in the rule of Fārs had ever possessed.

He reigned for a long time, and died'.

7 Our author here again has made a great blunder. There were two Zang's and two Tuklahs [or Duklahs, d being interchangeable with 4]. The first, according to the Muntakjaba-ti-Tawarifk, Sankur's brother, Tuklah, having become suspicious of his brother's intentions, retired among the Faşla-wlahs. The chief rendered Tuklah assistance, and he, one night, suddenly fell upon Sankur by surprise, seized him, and immured him in the Kala'-i-Saftd. Tuklah then assumed the authority, and held it four years. He died in 555 H.; after which Sankur again obtained power, and in 556 H. he died. He was succeeded by his brother, Zangt, son of Maudidd.

⁸ Zangi, son of Mandöld, only reigned for a short period, and died in the following year, 557 H. He was succeeded by his son [not his brother: our author confounds the two Tuklahs into one], Tuklah, or Duklah, as our author now states. He was confirmed in possession of Färs by Suljān Arsalān, son

of Tughril, son of Muhammad, son of Malik Shah.

" Tuklah died in 590 H., but the Muntakhah-ut-Tawarikh says in 591 H.

IV. THE ATA-BAK, SA'D, SON OF ZANGI'.

The Atā-bak, Sa'd, was a great monarch, and ascended the throne of Fārs after the decease of his uncle [the Atā-bak, Duklah], and brought the different parts of that country under his rule, in the manner which has been described.

He was a most just and intrepid sovereign; and trustworthy authorities have related this, that the weight of hisarms and armour was so great, that a powerful man could not lift from the ground the armour he used to wear.

He led armies against 'Irāk upon several occasions, and in some engagements he was victorious; but, in others again, he was defeated, as happened when a battle took place between him and Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, undesignedly, and in the following manner. The Atā-bak, Sa'd, was marching an army into 'Irāk, with the object of capturing Isfahān; and the Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, son of the Atā-bak, Muḥammad, had come out of Āzarbāijān also, with the object of gaining possession of that city.

The two armies, of Fārs and of Āzarbāijān, were marching towards the same point from opposite directions, when Sultān Muḥammad³, Khwārazm Shāh, arrived [with an army] upon the frontier of 'Irāk. He obtained information that the Atā-bak, Sa'd, was marching an army from Fārs, towards the gate of Iṣfahān, in order to give battle to the Atā-bak, Yūz-bak, and he [Sultān Muḥammad] advanced with his troops towards the Atā-bak, Sa'd.

When the troops of Khwārazm Shāh came in sight, the Atā-bak, Sa'd, imagined that this was the army of the Atā-

¹ Duklah was succeeded by his cousin, the Atā-bak, Tughril, hrother of Zangf, and son of Sankur, son of Maudūd, son of Zangf, son of Ak-Sankur, the other brother of the first ruler; and hostilities went on between him and Sa'd, son of Zangf, for a considerable time, during which Färs suffered great desolation. At length Tughril was taken captive by Sa'd, who deprived him of his sight, and immured him within the walls of the fortress of Istākhur, where he died, 599 H. He was succeeded by Sa'd, son of Zangf, son of Maudūd, who is fourth according to our author.

² Not mentioned in any other place in the work.

³ Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad.

⁴ The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh and Jallan-Ara say this affair took place on the confines of Rai.

bak, Yūz-bak, and at once marshalled his ranks in order, and attacked the Sulṭān's army, and threw it into confusion. Suddenly, one of the champions of <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Shā</u>h's army joined spears with him; and the name of that champion was Kashkah's, who was the [Sulṭān's] Amir-i-Ākhūr [lord of the stables]. The champion hurled the horse of Sa'd to the ground, and wanted to slay him; but the Atābak cried out to him:—"I am the Atā-bak, Sa'd; do not slay me. Say, Whose army is yours?" The champion replied:—"The army of Sulṭān Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Shā</u>h." The Atā-bak rejoined:—"Take me to the Sulṭān's presence."

On reaching the Sultān's presence, Sa'd kissed the ground, and said:—"King of the Universe, by the great God, this your servant knew not that this was the king's army, otherwise he would never have drawn his sword."

The Sultān comforted and encouraged him, and forthwith had him remounted; and, on account of what had reached the ears of the Sultān respecting the great energy, manliness, and intrepidity, of the Atā-bak, Sa'd, he treated him with honour and reverence, and restored to him the dominion of Fārs, upon this stipulation—that one half of that territory should be held by the Maliks, or great nobles, and trusty retainers of the Khwārazm Shāhi dynasty, and the other half should belong to the Atā-bak.

The Sultan likewise appointed a force to accompany him, for this reason, that, on the Atā-bak, Sa'd, having been taken prisoner, his son, the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, had taken possession of the territory of Fārs, and had read the Khut-bah in his own name.

When the Atā-bak, Sa'd, with the forces of Khwārazm Shāh, and the Sāḥib [lord] Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Amīr-i-Ḥājī, who was despatched along with Sa'd by Khwārazm Shāh,

⁵ In some few copies Kashili, in others Kashiki.

⁶ In the year 603 R., Sa'd was taken prisoner on the confines of Rai by the troops of Sulfan 'Alā-ud-Din Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. He was released on the stipulation "that he should pay four daings [a daing is the fourth part of a dram, and the meaning here signifies a fourth part of any thing: some writers say a third] of the revenue of Fars and 'Irāk, which he appears to have then held, into the Sulfan's treasury," and, upon these terms, he was allowed to retain these territories. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh calls the Sulfan by the title of Kutb-ud-Din, and says that Sa'd was released on the intercession of the Mails of Zawzan.

reached the frontier of Fārs, the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, advanced to oppose them, and the father and son came to blows. The Atā-bak, Sa'd, wounded his son, Abū-Bikr, in the face with his sword, and the ranks of the Fārsi army became disorganized.

The Atā-bak, Sa'd, again ascended the throne of Fārs, and imprisoned his son. After this, Sa'd reigned for a considerable period over [half of?] that territory, and died after the misfortunes attending the irruption of the infidel

Mughals7.

The Atā-bak, Sa'd, was endowed with many distinguished virtues, and excellent qualities. In the first place, the flag, which, every year, he used to send along with the caravan of pilgrims on the journey to the Ka'bah [at Makkah], when the pilgrims returned, he used to have kept constantly set up before the entrance of his palace or pavilion; and, every time he came to the hall of audience, or his private apartments, he used to perform a prayer of two genuflexions under the flag in question, after which he would mount his This circumstance indicates how excellent was his faith: but, respecting his ostentation and pomp, a trustworthy person has related, that the revenues of one of the provinces of the territory of Fars was set apart for the expenses of his own wardrobe. The revenue of the province in question amounted, every year, to three hundred and sixty thousand golden dinars6, and, every day, one thousand dinars of red gold used to be expended upon his attire, in the shape of head-dresses, tunics, mantles, robes, and expensive fabrics, girdles, jewel-studded collars, and the like.

If any surplus remained over and above the necessary expenses of his wardrobe, he would purchase therewith

* I rather expect this is much more than all the revenues of Fars at present.

⁷ Sa'd died at Baigā in 625 H., but the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh says his death happened in 628 H., which is evidently incorrect. His Wazir, Khwā-jah Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, kept his death secret, and sent Sa'd's signet-ring to the Kala'-i-Safīd, and released Sa'd's son, Abū Bikr, who had been confined in that fortress for a considerable time, had him brought into the pavilion, and then said, as though Sa'd were still alive, "The Atā-bak is pleased to command 'the Atā-bak, Abū Bikr, is his heir," and he succeeded accordingly. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh says that Abū-Bikr was confined in the fortress of Iştalshur. Guzidah, on the other hand, says that, when Suljān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the last of the Khwārazm Shāhīs, entered Fārs, on his return from Hind, he set Abū-Bikr who same.

valuable gems and jewels, which used to be arranged about his head-dress, his tunic, and girdle. He never wore a suit but one day; the next day he would invest one of his nobles or grandees with it. May the Almighty have mercy upon him, and pardon his sins!

V.º THE ATA-BAK, ABŪ-BIKR, SON OF SA'D.

The Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr¹, is a great monarch, and he has brought under his sway the territories of Fārs.

When the Atā-bak, Sa'd; was sent back again to ascend the throne of Fārs by Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, under the agreement that one half the territory of Fārs should remain in the possession of Sa'd, and the other half be held by the Sulṭān, the latter despatched [a body of troops] along with the Atā-bak, Sa'd, under the Amīr-i-Ḥāji, Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Niṣhāpūrī, to enable Sa'd to re-possess himself of that half.

The Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, and his two brothers, Tahamtan and Sankur Shāh, with the troops of Fārs, advanced against their father, determined that they would not give up their dominions into the hands of their enemies². When the battle on both sides had been duly ordered, the Atā-bak, Sa'd, issued from the ranks of his forces, while his son, the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, came forth from the ranks of the troops of Fārs to encounter his father. Sa'd struck and wounded his son in the face with his sword, [and, seeing this,] the ranks of the Fārsì army gave way. Sa'd took his son, Abū-Bikr, orisoner, and put him in confinement.

When Sa'd departed this life, they brought forth Abū-Bikr from his place of confinement, and raised him to the throne of Fārs; and he brought under his rule the territories of his father, and his grandfather, and chastised his enemies.

After some time, he sent an army towards the sca [of Fārs³], and took the capital of the country of Kīṣh⁴,

⁹ He is the eighth, not the fifth, of the Atā-baks of Fars.

Shaykh Sa'di dedicated his Gulistan and Bostan to this prince.
 See page 178, and note ?

^{*} He annexed the greater part of the tracts lying on the side of the Gulf of Persia, such as Hurnür, Kaṭfi, Baḥrain, 'Ummān, and Laḥ-ṣā [u-l-], the Al-Ḥasā [u-l-] seemingly of Ibn-i-Baṭūṭaḥ, which he says was previously called Ḥajar. The Khwārazm Shāhī dynasty, at this time, had fallen.

⁴ Kish is described in old geographical works as a city, on a hill, on an

[together with] Bahrain and Hurmüz. He also despatched one of his brothers to the infidel Mughals, and entered into a treaty of peace with that race. He engaged to pay tribute and revenue to them, and brought reproach and dishonour upon himself by becoming a tributary of the infidels of Chin⁶, and became hostile to the Där-ul-Khiläfat.

Up to the time this history was written, affairs are in this state. May the Almighty God continue the Sultan of the Sultans of Islam, and the great nobles and lords of his Court, in sovereignty, and in rendering bounden duty to the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, and the house of 'Abbās, for the sake of Muḥammad, his family, and the whole of his companions and friends!

THIRD DYNASTY.

THE SANJARĪVAH MALIKS OF NĪSHĀPŪR.

I. MALIK MU-AYYID, US-SANJARĪ.

Malik Mu-ayyid was a slave of Sultan Sanjar's, and a Turk?. He held the government of the territory of

island, in the sea of Färs, called Hurmüz; and is said to be so called from its resemblance, when viewed from the hills, to a quiver for arrows, which Kish signifies. The word is sometimes spelt Kish, and sometimes Kesh. See note 3, p. 46.

5 At the time of the interregnum after the death of Changiz Khān, Abū-Bikr sent his brother, Tahamtan, to the presence of Üktäe Kä-äu with rich presents, and received from him a charter, and the title of Kutlagh Khān. He likewise obtained a charter from Hulākū Khān, and reigned for a period of thirty-three years.

6 The Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, died in 558 H., the very year in which our author completed his History. The dynasty did not terminate for several years after; and three persons, including a female, ruled over the territory remaining to

them, tributary to the Mughals, until 685 H.

7 The first of the Mu-ayyidiah dynasty was Mu-ayyid-ud-Dîn, who was one of the slaves of Sulfan Sanjar. As he was the Å'Inah-där, or mirror-bearer, to that monarch, he became known by the name of Mu-ayyidi-Â'dinh. After Sulfän Sanjar's death, he for a short time pretended to be obedient to Rukn-ud-Dîn, Maḥmūd, the son of Muḥanimad Khān, son of Bughrī Khān, who had married Sanjar's sister, who, when Sanjar fell into the hands of the Ghuzz tribe, was raised to sovereignty, derew of the sovereignty, derived him of his sight, and assumed the sovereignty over the tract of territory extending from Hirât to Rai. In 569 H., he undertook an expedition against Māzandarān, and made great bloodshed and devastation therein. He subsequently



Nishāpūr, and the parts adjacent, such as Jām, Bākhurz, Shangān, Sabrās*, Jā-jurm, Shāristānah, Khūjān, and other cities and towns which are dependencies of Nishāpūr.

He was a Malik of good disposition; and, when the Sanjari dynasty passed away, Malik Mu-ayyid, the sovereign of Khwārazm, the Maliks of 'Irāk, and the Sultāns of Ghūr, entered into terms of friendship and amity together for mutual support and security. Under the shelter and support of this arrangement, Malik Mu-ayyid continued for some years, and died.

II. MALIK TUGHĀN SHĀH, SON OF MU-AYYID.

Malik Tughān Shāh was a monarch of blooming prospects, and of handsome person, and greatly addicted to pleasure and gaiety. He used to spend his days in pleasure, in singing, and convivial meetings, along with his confidants and favourites, minstrels and singers and boon companions.

When the territory of Nishāpūr passed from his father under his own control, he entered into relations of amity and dependence towards the neighbouring Maliks and Sultāns, and rendered homage unto them; and, as he was incapable of injuring or molesting them, they all refrained from troubling him.

He passed his whole time in pleasure and jollity, dancing

[but, according to Faşih-t, in the same year], in concert with Sultān Shāh, Khwārazmī, the rival of Sultān Takish, encountered the latter in battle, was taken prisoner, and put to death by Takish. A portion of the territory of Sanjar's nephew, on the usurpation of Mu-ayyid, had passed into the possession of the Khwārazmī sovereign. See reign of Takish, V. of the Khwārazmī Shāhībs.

Some of these names are rather doubtful. Some copies have Sangān, and Shagān, and Sabrāsh, Bihrās, Sfrān, and Shfrān. Possibly, Sunkhās and Sannakān are meant.

9 The accounts of other writers differ considerably from our author's as to this prince and his doings. Tuphan Shāh, in 576 H., fought a battle with Sulfan Shāh, the Khwārazmī, and rival of 'Alā-ud-Dha, Takish, near Sarakhs, after Sulfan Shāh had returned from Gūr Khān's territory, whither he had fled after his previous defeat in which Tuphān's father was made prisoner. Tughān was routed, and sought protection from Sulfān Takish, and also from the sovereign of Ghūr, but without avail; and Sulfān Shāh possessed himself of Tūs and Sarakhs. Tuphān died in 581 H.

and wine-drinking; and, for the sake of his own pleasure and merriment, he had the sleeves of his vest made each about ten ells in length, to which small golden bells were fastened, and he would himself join in the dance. He soon took his departure from this world.

III. SANJAR SHAH, SON OF TUGHAN SHAH.

When Tughān Shāh ascended the throne of Nishāpūr, he entered into connexion with the Maliks of Ghūr, and despatched a confidential agent, and demanded the hand of the daughter of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad Sām, for his son, Sanjar Shāh. The chief men among the ecclesiastics and theologians of Nishāpūr accordingly came [into Ghūr], and the knot of that marriage contract was tied.

When Tughān <u>Sh</u>āh died, Takish, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh, marched an army from <u>Kh</u>wārazm, and advanced to Nishāpūr, and possessed himself of that city and territory, seized Sanjar <u>Sh</u>āh, and carried him away to <u>Kh</u>wārazm¹.

Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dîn released his daughter, Malikah-i-Jalālī¹, from her betrothal; and, according to the statement of Imām <u>Shāfi¹</u>, he gave her in marriage, in <u>Gh</u>ūr, to Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn². Sanjar <u>Shāh</u> died in <u>Khwārazm</u>.

¹ Sanjar Shāh succeeded to his father's territory; and Mangulf Beg, a slave of his grandfather's, through the youthfulness of Sanjar, acquired the whole power, and was in consequence put to death by Sulfan Takish. After this, Takish married Sanjar's mother, and gave a daughter of his own to Sanjar in marriage. In 591 H., Sanjar was accused of meditating rebellion, and was deprived of his sight. He died in 595 H., and his territory was taken possession of by the Khwärazm Shāhī sovereign.

² A title, not her name.

⁸ In three copies Ziyā-ud-Din.

SECTION XIV.

THE MALIKS OF SIJISTĀN AND NĪMROZ.

As this Tabakāt¹ is being written in the name of the great Sulṭān, the king of kings [over] both Turk and 'Ajam, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muzaffar, Maḥmūd, son of Sulṭān I-yal-timish—May his sovereignty endurel—and, as an account of all rulers and their Tabakāt is being penned, the author, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī, would state that he desires, to the extent of his capability, to commit to writing what has come to his hearing, and what he has himself seen respecting the Maliks of Ninnoz.

They were able and just monarchs, virtuous, and cherishers of the indigent, whose country, from the Sanjari era up to this time, when the territories of Iran have, through the cruelty and rapine of the infidels of Chin, become ruined, was adorned by the grandeur, the justice, the munificence, and the nobility of mind of those monarchs, and, therefore, the author desires that he himself, and those Maliks, may continue to call forth the favourable mention of those under whose notice this [account] may come, and, that a benediction may be offered for the sovereign of the present time.

The origin and lineage of these rulers from the previous Amirs, did not seem clearly deducible in History².

¹ The word Tabakät being a portion of the title of the original work, it has been used here, for convenience, in the singular form, although really the plural of ♣.

Paurai of 26.5
2 As in scores of other places, our author is also very incorrect here. He has already given us a Section on the Suffarfans of Sijistan or Nimroz, and has mentioned the names of the other sons of Lais, the Brazier; but he does not appear to, have known that the descendants of 'Umro, son of Lais, subsequent to his captivity, ruled over Fars [for a time] and Sijistan, although these events took place some three centuries before our author composed his work. There is consequently an hiatus of the reigns and struggles of no less than rix princes of this family, and the events of just one century are entirely passed over; and two Sections are given, and two dynastics made, of one and the same family, whatever claims Khalaf may have had to descent from the Kai-

I. TÄHIR, SON OF MUHAMMAD.

Trustworthy persons have related, that, when the dominion and sovereignty of the Maḥmūdī dynasty passed

antans. Our author appears here to greater disadvantage, as an historian, than even in his accounts of the Saljūks and the Kurds, which are sufficiently incorrect.

I will here briefly supply an account of the Şuffārfāns, passed over by our

author, in order to make the subject intelligible to the reader.

When 'Umro, son of Lais, was defeated under the walls of Balkh by Isma'il, Sāmān'il, in 287 H., as related at page 25, his grandson, TĀHIR, son of Muhammad, son of 'Umro, was set up as his successor. His career was a chequered one. He at first possessed himself of Fārs, and drove out the Khalffah's officers, but was subsequently obliged to relinquish it. Subsequently, however, the administration of the affairs of Fārs was conferred upon him by the Court of Baghdād; but, shortly after, a slave of his grandfather's rose against him, in that territory.

[In nearly every history in which this slave is referred to, his name is said to be Saikzi, Sabkri, Sankri, and the like; but further research, since note of page 34, was written, tends to show that this could not have been intended for the name of the slave, but of his race. He was a Sigizi, one of a people often mentioned in the following pages. "Sigiz, and Sigizi, is the name of a lofty mountain frange of hills 3] in Zabulistian, and the people dwelling thereabout are called after that mountain, Sigizis and Sigiziān. Rustam-i-Zāl is also called Sigizi on the same account. Some consider, however, that the meaning of Sigizi is Sistani, because the 'Arabs change the ginto', and call Sigistān, which is the proper name of that country, Sijistān, and Sigizi, by the same fashion, Sijizi." The Sigizis are not Afghāns, so must not be turned into Patāns, but there is a small tribe of that people called Sekarī.]

A battle took place between Tahir and the Sigizi slave, and Tahir was worsted, and fell into the hands of the rebel, who sent him, together with his brother Ya'kūb, to Baghdād, through which city they were paraded on a camel [one author says on two elephants]. This happened in the year 293 H., and Tahir died after having ruled for a period of six years. Some say he died

in 296 H.

On this, in the same year, LAIS, son of 'Alf, entered Fārs [from Sijistān], and the rebel Sigué slave fied; but, being supported by an army sent by the Khalifah under his general, Münis-i-Khādim, he was enabled to march against Lais. Although Lais made a gallant and vigorous dash upon their forces near Ujān, he was unsuccessful, and fell a captive into their hands, and the Sigué again acquired possession of Fārs. Soon after, however, the Khalifah had to despatch Mūnis into Fārs again, as the Sigué withheld the revenue [the Khalifah's share], which amounted to 400,000 dirams. The Sigué now offered to pay 1,000,000 dirams, but this offer was not accepted, and, after several encounters with Muḥammad, son of Ja'ar, the Khalifah's general, the Sigué fied to the fortress of Bamm, in Kirmān; but, as he was followed by that officer, he fied from Baum, and retired into the wilds of Khurāsān; and Muḥammad was entrusted with the administration of the affairs of Fārs and Kirmān.

over to the family of Saljūk, the nobles who were exercising authority in the country of Sijistān acquired power, and,

In that same year, Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, Sāmānī, took possession of Sijatān, and, as he had succeeded in making prisoner of Muḥammad, son of 'Alī, brother of Ya'kūb, 'Umro, and Mu'addil, sons of Lais, and the Sigizī also, they were despatched to Baghdād, by the Khalīfah's directions, and entered it paraded on elephants; and rich presents were sent by the Khalīfah to the Sāmānī prince, in return for this service.

In 299 H. [some say in 298 H.], Lais, son of 'Alf, died in Fārs, and his brother, MU'ADDIL, assumed the sovereignty over Sijistān, and drove out the Sāmānī governor, Abū Ṣāliḥ-i-Manṣūr, Sāmānī, cousin of Amīr Abū Naṣri-Almad, on which, the latter despatched a large army under some of his greatest nobles, such as Husain 'Alf, Marw-ar-Rūdī, Ahmad, son of Sahl, Muhammad, son of Mugaffar, Simjūr-i-Dowātī, &c. Mu'addil, on becoming apprized of this, sent his brother Muḥammad for supplies, to enable him to stand a siege, into Zamīn-i-Dāwar; but, as he happened to fall into the hands of the Sāmānī forces, Mu'addil, on receipt of the news of this disaster, came and surrendered on terms to those leaders, and was taken to Bukhārā, from whence he was sent to Baghādā. See page 34.

In the year 300 H., 'UMRO, son of Ya'kūb, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Umro, son of Lais-i-Ṣufār, rose in Sijistān, and assumed the sovereignty. Amīr Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, Sāmānī, again despatched a force under Ḥusain 'Alī, Marw-ar-Rūdī, against him.' After defending the capital for a period of nine months, 'Umro surrendered on terms of capitulation, and the territory of Nimroz received a Sāmānī governor.

In the year 309 H., AHMAD, said by Guzdiah to have been the grandson of Tähir, but by others to have been the son of Muhammad, son of Khalaf, son of Abū Ja'far, son of Laig [which Laig is not mentioned, but, if the Brazier be meant, Abū Ja'far must have been a fifth son, but no doubt he was a grandson], who was living in great distress and misery at Hirāt, chanced to come under the notice of Amīr Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, the fifth of the Sāmānī rulers, who bestowed upon Aḥmad-i-Ṣuffār the government of his native country, Sijisāh

Faşilı-îi, among the occurrences of the year 310 H., says, that by command of the Khalifah, Al-Muktadir, honorary dresses were bestowed upon Tahir and Ya'kib, son of 'Umro, Laig; but this must refer to Laig, son of 'Ali, son of Laig the Brazier, as Tāhir, son of 'Umro, the second of the dynasty, died at Baghādā many years previous to this. In 31 H., according to Faṣiḥā, Shāh Malik, son of Ya'kib-i-Laig, Şuffārī, with a body of Sigizīs, attempted to gain possession of Hirāt, but after a time left, and proceeded to Fūṣḥanj. He returned to the Daght of Mālān of Hirāt again, and invested Hirāt for four months, but had to abandon it, and he and his party retired discomfited. Smūt held Hirāt on that occasion.

Almad was succeeded as ruler of Sijistān by his son, KHALAF, but the date of the former's death or the latter's accession is not mentioned—it was probably in 331 H.—but, in 353 H., Khalaf set out on a pilgrimage to Makkah, leaving as his deputy, his son-in-law, Tähir, son of Al-Husain, to administer the government of Sijistān. Tāhir coveted his dominions, and, when Khalaf returned from the pilgrimage, he would not allow him to restime his authority. Khalaf proceeded to the Court of Manşūr, son of Nüh, Sāmāni, the cighth of that dynasty, who sent a force with Khalaf, which, after onsting Tāhir and reinstating Khalaf, returned to Bukhārā.

having tendered their allegiance to the Sultāns, Alb-Arsalān and Malik <u>Sh</u>āh, the states of Nimroz came under their sway, and they took possession of those territories.

Tähir now returned, and again dispossessed Khalaf, who, a second time, received aid from Manşūr, Sāmānī i but, by the time the Sāmānī forces reached Sistān, Tāhir was dead, and Ḥusain, his son, had succeeded to the authority. After considerable fighting, Ḥusain retired to one of the fortresses of that territory, and was therein invested. He despatched an envoy to Amīr Manṣūr's presence, who sent a mandate directing him to appear before him, and so Ḥusain was allowed to proceed to Bukhārā. This was at a period when the Sāmānī power was much weakened, and in the same year that Is-ḥāk, son of Alb-Tigīn, the Turk, encountered Abū-Alī-i-Lawīk, previously ruler of Ghaznīn.

Nothing more is mentioned about Khalaf except his rebellion against Nüh, Sāmānī, and the seven years' investment of his capital, until the year 300 H., in which year, Bughrājak, the uncle of Maḥmūd of Ghaznīn, was slain by Khalaf's son, Tāhir, at Fūṣḥaṇi. On this, Maḥmūd marched against Khalaf, who retired for shelter within the walls of the fortness of Tāk, and he was invested therein. In 393 H., Khalaf again withdrew from public life, and gave up the government of Sijistān to his son Tāhir, but, soon after, he regretted what he had done, resumed the authority, and put his son Tāhir to death. Some say he put two sons, Tāhir and 'Umro, to death with his own hand. This ruined Khalaf's affairs, and his nobles rose against him on account of this abominable conduct; and they invested him in the city which he had made his capital, and read the Khutbah, and coined money in the name of Sultān Mahmūd of Ghaznīn.

Maḥmūd, on account of this last act of Khalaf, again entered Sijistān, and Khalaf was defeated and retired once more to the fortress of Tāk, but it was taken by assault and Khalaf was captured. It was on this occasion that Khalaf, when brought before Maḥmūd, addressed him by the name of "Sulṭān" [see note 3, page 76], and his life was spared. The district of Juijānān was assigned for his future residence, and, with his family and dependents, he left Sijistān for ever and proceeded thither. Sijistān was conferred by Maḥmūd upon his brother Naṣr, and that territory continued for a considerable time in the possession of the Ghazawaws.

In 398 H. Khalaf was found to have been intriguing against Mahmūd with I-lak Khān, ruler of Turkistān, and was, in consequence, confined within the walls of the fortress of Juzdez. He died in the following year; and Mahmūd directed that his property and effects should be made over to his son, Abū-l-Hifs. Khalaf was a learned and intelligent man, and, by his command, the learned men of his time compiled a commentary on the Kur'ān in one hundred volumes, and at the expense of roo, coo dinārs; yet, with all this, he committed

the cruel act of slaving his own sons. See also note 8, p. 76.

The sovereignty of Sijistān, or Nimroz, having been taken from Khalaf, remained in the possession of the kings of Ghaznin for a considerable time. At length, by the support of the Sultāns, Alb-Arsalān, and Malik Shāh, a great grandson of Khalaf, TAHIR, son of Muḥammad, son of Tāhir, son of Khalaf, obtained the government of his native country; and the ruler's palace in Sistān is called the Sarāe-i-Tāhirī after him. This is the first of the rulers of Nimroz by our author's account, but the sixth of chroniclers of authority, after Ya'kib and 'Umor, the founders of the Suffarfan dynasty. A few authors



When the throne of sovereignty became adorned by the phomix-like splendour of Sanjar, the territories of Nimroz passed to Amir Ţāhir; and, in the service of that monarch, he gave proofs of his loyalty and good faith. The Sarāe-i-Ṭāhirf, or Ṭāhirf Palace, in Sīstān, which was the seat of government, was founded by him. He instituted regulations and precepts of government, brought under his control the different districts and dependencies of the country of Nimroz, reigned for a considerable time, and died. These Maliks claimed descent from the race of Kai-Kā'ūs. May the Almighty reward them!

Trustworthy persons have related that Sijistān is called Nīmroz for the reason that, in ancient times, the whole of that tract was a sea; and, when Mihtar's Sulīmān, reclining on the couch which the winds used to bear, had to pass over that country on his way from Fārs to the mountains of Sulīmān, which are opposite Multān, he commanded that that sea should be filled with sand. The Dīws, in the space of half a day, completed the task, and the sea became dry land; and the name by which it was called was Nīm-roz, signifying mid-day, and that designation continued to be applied to that country. God alone is cternal, and His kingdom only is eternal, without intermission and without wane.

II. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-FATḤ 4, SON OF TĀHIR.

Tāj-ud-Dîn was a great and a just monarch, and, when his father departed this life, in conformity with the mandate of Sultān Sanjar, Saljūkī, he assumed authority over the territory of Nimroz, and brought it under his sway. He spread the carpet of justice, and the people became obedient to his authority; and, both in the city and round about Sijistān, numerous monuments of his goodness remained.

mention that some writers consider Khalaf to have been a descendant of the ancient kings of Īrān.

⁴ See the short account of the descent of the Afghāns in the Introduction to my Afghān Grammar, last edition, page 7, respecting Mihtar Sulfmān and the Sulfmān mountains.

⁴ Styled Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fazl-i-Naşr, son of Tāhir, by others. He succeeded to the sovereignty in 480 H. He was just, vallant, and beneficent; and was loyal to the utmost degree towards Sulţān Sanjar.

He accompanied Sultan Sanjar in the campaign against Khitā, and took along with him the troops of Sijistān; and, when Sultān Sanjar's army was defeated, Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn, Abū-l-Fath, was taken prisoner. When they had taken him to the place where the camp of the Khita-is was situated, his feet were confined in a pair of wooden stocks and secured with a heavy chain, and he was kept in imprisonment.

A number of trustworthy persons have related, that one of the ladies of the Great \underline{Kh} ān [of \underline{Kh} iṭā] got a sight of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, and, secretly, used to entertain great affection for him, and to have all his wants, and even more, liberally supplied, and have great care and attention paid to him. That lady left not the least thing undone, or a moment to be lost, until, by her endeavours also, Malik Tāj-ud-Din was suddenly set at liberty, and was enabled to fly from the camp of the Khitā-is; and he brought back his chain and the stocks along with him to Sistan.

The territory of Nîmroz, which, during his captivity, had been deprived of his comeliness and munificence, now began to acquire fresh grace and elegance. The stocks and chain, which he had brought away with him [when he escaped], were, by his orders, hung up in the most sacred place in the great mosque [where the Imam stands during the prayers]; and Minhāj-i-Sarāj, the writer of this Tabaķāt, in the year 613 H., arrived in the city of Sistan, and, in

6 "Trustworthy persons" are constantly mentioned by our author, but it is

strange that they are nameless.

⁵ This battle having taken place in 534 H. [some say in 536 H.], and Tāj-ud-Din being above a hundred when he died in 559 H., he must have been about eighty years of age when taken prisoner.

⁷ I have constantly noticed, in several authors, that, when mentioning the country, the names Nimroz and Sijistan are applied; and that Sistan almost invariably signifies the city, the capital of the country; but I have also noticed that the latter name is sometimes, but not often, applied to the country also. There is one rather astonishing thing, however. Our author invariably says the city of Sistān was the capital; while travellers, such as Pottinger and Christie, and other European authors also, say that Dooshak, or Jalalabad, is the capital. "Who shall decide when doctors disagree?" The author of the MASALIK WA MAMALIK, who visited it before our author wrote, says that Zaranj is the capital, and that there is no city in the territory of Nimroz so large; and, further, describes the buildings and gates and other matters in such manner, that there can be no doubt whatever but that Zaranj was the name of the capital of Sijistān, or Nimroz; and no such city as Sistān is ever mentioned in that work.

the great mosque there, saw that chain and stocks; and whoever may have reached that great city, will also have seen them.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fath, was a learned and enlightened sovereign; and they relate that, sometimes, he would himself read the Friday's Khutbah; and this fact is an indication of the extent of his wisdom and knowledge.

He reigned for a considerable time⁸, and died; and his mausoleum is at Sistān.

III. MALIK-US-SĀ'ĪS *, SḤAMS-UD-DĪN MUḤAMMAD, SON OF TĀJ-UD-DĪN.

When Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fath¹, passed away, several sons survived him, and the eldest of them was Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. He succeeded to the sovereignty, and brought the territory of Nīmroz under his sway. He deprived one of his brothers, 'Izz-ul-Mulūk, of his sight, and put the rest of them to death; and he caused a great number of the Amīrs and Maliks of Nīmroz and Sīstān to be executed.

He was a sanguinary man, and it is related of him, that, at the outset of his reign, he killed eighteen of his brothers in one day. The royal palace, which he founded in Sistān, is [on this account] called by the name of Sarāe-i-Sīāsatī, or Palace of Slaughter; and, through his excessive murders and executions, the people's hearts became filled with terror.

At the time when the reign of Sultan Sanjar came to a termination, and the territories of Khurāsān, Ghaznīn, and Kirmān fell into the hands of the tyrannical tribe of Ghuzz, Malik Shams-ud-Din had already established his authority over Nimroz. On several occasions the Ghuzz forces resolved to subvert his rule, but they did not succeed in their design.

The grandfather of the author of this work, Maulana

⁸ He died in 559 H., after having reigned over N\u00e4mroz, subordinate to the Salj\u00e4k Sulj\u00e4ns, for just eighty years, and his age was above a hundred. It seems strame our author did not know the year of his death.

⁹ Torturer, executioner.

¹ It was with this ruler that Mu'izzud-Dia, Ghūri, the conqueror of Hindustan, passed one cold season, after he and his brother, Ghiyaş-ud-Din, had been released from confinement.

Minhāj-ud-Dîn, 'Uṣmān, Jurjānî, who was on his way to Ghaznîn and Lohor, on his return from the pilgrimage to Hijāz and the sacred Ka'bah [at Makkah], reached Sistān during the reign of Malik Shams-ud-Dîn. At that time there was residing there one of the great theologians, whom they called Imām Awhād-ud-Dîn, Bukhārî, one of the most eminent men of Khurāsān. He was also one of the incomparable ones of the world, and one of the colleagues of the Khwājah—a second Imām Nu'mān²—Abū-l-Fazl, Kirmānî. There was likewise there another man of learning, who went by the name of Imām, Kawām-ud-Dīn, Zawzanî, a talkative, open-mouthed, staring-eyed fellow, who was in the constant habit of annoying Imām Awhād-ud-Dīn, and of behaving insolently towards him in public.

Imām Sharaf-ud-Dīn, 'Attār, related this anecdote, which was told to him, respecting this man: that, when Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn arrived at Sīstān, it was customary with the rulers of Nīmroz to treat strange 'Ulamā with respect and kindness; and they used to command them to deliver a discourse, and expound some religious dogma, in their presence, at the Court. Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, accordingly, commanded that Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn should expound

a dogma at the Court.

The 'Ulamā of that city having presented themselves there, Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dîn expounded the dogma of defiling emissions. When the exposition was concluded, Kawām-ud-Dîn, Zawzanî, wishing, by his insolence, to annoy and mortify Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dîn, and to clash with him, said:—"We had heard great report of thy eminence, of thy learning and thy reputation; but this much was incumbent on thee, that, in the presence of such a great monarch, thou shouldst not have mentioned the precept of defiling emissions." When Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dîn perceived that he intended insolence and rudeness, he replied, saying:—"Maulānā Kawām-ud-Dîn, it is not necessary to make a long story of it; thou art filthiness itself. I beheld thee, and that precept came to my recollection"

At this rejoinder, Maulana Kawam-ud-Din was com-

Emissions in sleep, &c., requiring ablution afterwards.

² The celebrated Imam, Abu Ḥanifah of Kufah, was called Nu'man.

pletely silenced, and Malik <u>Sh</u>ams-ud-Dîn was so overcome with laughing, that he rolled over and over, almost beside himself, on his couch '. That day Imām Awḥād-ud-Dīn was made himself again by this rejoinder of Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn, who also gave éclat to that dogma likewise; and that monarch showed abundant kindness and consideration towards Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn.

Malik Shams-ud-Din reigned for a considerable time, and was put to death, and passed away 5.

IV. MALIK-US-SA'ÏD, TĀJ-UD-DĪN-I-ḤARAB, SON OF MUHAMMAD 6.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn was a great, learned, and just sovereign, and a cherisher of his subjects. He had a number of children, and, during his lifetime, two of his sons succeeded to the throne of Nīmroz, as will, please God, be hereafter mentioned?

The first incidents in his career were these. When Malik Shams-ud-Dîn, his uncle, came to the throne, he deprived his, Tāj-ud-Dîn's, father of his sight, and put the rest of his brothers to death. Malik Shams-ud-Dîn had a sister, who was aunt to Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn-i-Ḥarab, who possessed great influence; and, when the tyranny and oppression of Shams-ud-Dîn became unbearable, the people became quite sated of his rule, and prayed the Almighty to grant them redress.

A party of the nobles and chief men of the country of Nimroz sought the aid and assistance of that Malikah, the aunt of Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Harab; and they held counsel

⁴ A couch or sort of throne or seat spread with four cushions.

⁵ Our author, who has a peculiar way of his own for relating important events, says this ruler was martyred. He was such a blood-shedder and tyrant that his troops rose against him, attached themselves to lis sister, and put him to death. Our author relates it among the events of the following reign instead of here.

⁶ Styled Tāj-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, son of 'Izz-ul-Mulūk by Faṣiḥ-i, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab, son of 'Izz-ul-Mulūk, by others. Why he and some others are styled Ḥarab [in the very old MS.] have previously referred to the vowel points are given], and what the real signification of the word may be, it is difficult to tell; but some of the Mughal officers—not Mughals probably—are designated by this same appellation.

⁷ How could they possibly "attain the throne during his lifetime," unless they previously dethroned him?

together, and made arrangements for a change [of rulers], and fixed upon Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn by general consent. At that time he was sixty years of age, and none else remained of the descendants of the Maliks who was eligible for the sovereignty.

There is a place, outside the city of Sîstān, where, in ancient times, there was an old city, which place they call Hashnūe. At night, all the populace of Sīstān and the soldiery assembled there, and, in the morning they rose against Malik Shams-ud-Dîn, and put him to death with eighteen of his sons; and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Harab was raised to the throne. His father, 'Izz-ul-Mulūk, was still

living, but deprived of the blessing of sight?

When Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn ascended the throne, he governed the people with equity and justice, and all submitted to his authority. He entered into communication with the Sultans of Ghūr and Khurāsān, and became feudatory to them, and read the Khutbah1 in the name of the Sultans of Ghūr. He used his utmost endeavours in the support and encouragement of ecclesiastics and learned men2, and in securing the rights of the weak and helpless; and it was a rule with that family to show great honour and respect to strangers and travellers. Malik Tāj-ud-Din, in this respect, greatly surpassed his ancestors. He commanded, likewise, that for every mosque of Bukhārā a prayer-carpet should be woven, according to the size of each, and despatched to that city; and for the sacred mosque at Makkah, and the holy Ka'bah, he despatched carpets, mats, and the like, as well as vessels of different kinds, in great quantity.

During the reign of Malik Tāj-ud-Din, the father of the author of this volume, Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Din-i-Minhāj³

Therefore he was precluded from the succession.

⁸ Rather doubful, as the MSS, are all at variance here. Some have Hashūe, others Khushūdī and Hushnūdī, some Hasūe and Hashnūe. I do not find either of these names in the ancient accounts of Sijistān.

¹ The coin also was stamped with the titles and name of the Sultan of Ghūr.

² It must have been in this reign, not during that of the Blood-Shedder, that our author's grandfather met with such a good reception at the capital of Sijistān, as blood thirsty tyrants are not generally those who patronize priests and learned men. This seems confirmed by the author's own remarks a little farther on.

³ Sometimes he writes Minhāj-i-Sarāj, and at others Sarāj-i-Minhāj.

came to Sistān on two occasions. The first time, he went there on a mission from the august Sultān, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām; and on the second occasion¹, when he was proceeding from the presence of that monarch to present himself at the Court of the Khalifah, Un-Nāṣir-ud-Dīn 'Ullah, by way of Mukrān, he likewise passed by way of Sīstān, and received great kindness and benevolence at the hands of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab.

During his own lifetime, Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn made his eldest son, Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, 'Uṣmān, his heir-apparent; and, subsequently, when Nāṣir-ud-Dîn died, he nominated another son, Yamîn-ud-Dîn, Bahrām Shāh, as his heir and successor.

Towards the end of his reign, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn became totally blind. He had reigned for a period of sixty years, and his age was a hundred and twenty. He died in the year 612 H.

V. MALIK NĀŞIR-UD-DĪN, 'UŞMĀN-I-ḤARAB, SON OF MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn was a just monarch, and 'Āyishah Khātūn, the daughter of the Malik of Khurāsān, 'Umr-i-Maraghanī, was married to him. He had good and worthy sons; and, upon several occasions, he marched from Sistān with numerous forces, and joined the Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, in Khurāsān. At the time of the success at Nīṣhāpūr, he was present with that monarch's Court.

He was a Malik of good disposition, and the patron of learned men, and passed his life among men in [the exercise of] justice, beneficence, and humanity.

During the reign of his father, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, he acted as his representative and lieutenant, in the adminis-

⁴ See page 244. This was the occasion when the author's father, whilst proceeding by way of Mukrān to Baghdād, lost his life.

b He died during his father's lifetime; consequently, he is not entitled to be considered as one of the sovereigns of Sijistān, and he is not accounted such by other writers. He was a regent or lieutenant only; and, on account of the extreme age of his father, at his [Nāṣir's] death, his son, Yamīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, became regent.

⁶ His suzerain. See account of Ghiyaş-ud-Din in Section XVII.

tration of the government of the territory of Nīmroz; and, outside the city of Sīstān, on the bank of the river Hīrmand, he founded a large and noble palace.

He ruled the country for a considerable period, and likewise died during his father's lifetime.

VI. MALIK UL-GHĀZĪ, YAMÎN-UD-DAULAH WA UD-DĪN BAHRĀM SHĀH, SON 7 OF TĀJ-UD-DĪN-I-ḤARAB.

Yamin-ud-Dîn, Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh, was a firm and stern ruler, very severe but strictly just; and he continued to observe the rule established by his ancestors, of treating learned men and strangers and travellers with respect and reverence.

During the lifetime of Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn, his father, he became greatly distinguished, and was famous for his valour, sagacity, activity, and magnanimity. He ruled over the territory of Nîmroz for a considerable time during the lifetime of his father; and, when his father died, the sovereignty passed to him.

Both Bahrām himself and two other brothers were borne by a Turkish slave-girl; and, previous to his time, all the sovereigns and nobles, according to ancient custom, allowed their hair to hang loosely, and used to wear conical caps on their heads, with two or three fillets wound round them, with a black fillet over the others; but, when Malik Yamīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, came to the throne, his mother being of the Turkish race, he assumed the cap of sable, and camlet garments, and curling ringlets like the Turks; and both his brothers, one, Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn.

'Alī, and the other, Malik Shāh, likewise adopted similar costume.

The author of this work, in the year 613 H., set out from the city of Bust for the purpose of proceeding to Sīstān. When he arrived within a short distance of that capital, where there is a place which they call by the name of

Gumbaz-i-Balū<u>ch</u>—the Cupola of the Balū<u>ch</u>*—on the east side [of Sistān], at this place, a deputation received him, and

⁷ The grandson, not the son of Tāj-ud-Din. Bahrām Shāh was the son of

Nășir-ud-Dîn. See note ^b, preceding page.

^a One copy has Balūţ, but the rest have Balūj and Balūch. The place is not mentioned in the ancient accounts of the country. Balūt means an oak.

brought him to the city; and there, at a place which is named the Madrasah-i-sar-i-Ḥawz—the College at the head of the Reservoir—to the south of the city, which they call Dar-i-Ṭa'ām¹ and Bāzār-i-Farod, he alighted and took up his quarters*.

The author delivered a discourse in the private audience hall of that dignified sovereign, within the Sarāe-i-Siāsati; and, upon two occasions, he was honoured with robes of distinction from that beneficent monarch, consisting, each time, of three dresses; and, as long as the author remained at Sistān, every month, Malik Yamin-ud-Din sent him a liberal allowance in money and grain, and treated him with the utmost kindness and respect. After sojourning there for a period of seven months, the author returned again to Khurāsān.

Malik Yamin-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, ruled with great firmness and sagacity. It had been a practice of old, in the territory of Nimroz, among the tribes [therein], to be constantly quarrelling and fighting among themselves; and no person entered a city or town without being fully armed. When the sovereignty devolved upon Bahrām Shāh, he made every tribe give hostages, and kept them shut up in different fortresses, so that, in whatever tribe blood might be shed unjustly, the chiefs and head men of the tribe were held responsible for the crime. Through this stringent order such acts of bloodshed decreased.

Yamin-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, on two occasions waged holy war against the heretics of Kuhistān³, and carried on hostilities against them for a long time. Imām Sharaf-ud-Din, Ahmad³ of Farāh, who was the most eloquent man of his time, composed these lines on those successes, and in praise of them:—

⁹ One or two copies omit the "and."

¹ See page 20, and note 3.

² The places noticed here were at Zeranj, and their mention proves the statements of the author of the Masalik Wa Mamalik to be correct. See also note 7, p. 188.

³ The chief place of which is Ka'in, formerly of considerable importance. He led troops against those heretics upon several occasions.

⁴ Several other authors, and among them the author of the Nusakh-i-Jahān-Ārā, say, that Abū Naṣr, Farāhi, was the composer of these lines. He was the author of the celebrated lexicographical work entitled "Niṣāb-i-Niṣāb-ia."

"August and auspicious unto the world's people
Is the revered countenance of the Shāh of exalted descent.
At this warfare, which thou didst in Kushistān wage,
The globe is with justice, with equity, and requital, full.
Thou art the king of mid-day 3, and of thy day's reign
'Tis as yet but the propitious carly dawn thereof.
Like as the warriors of Muhammad exult in thee,
In such wise the soul of Muhammad in thee rejoiceth.
Continue in the world whilst the world hath freshness
From water and from fire, from earth and from air.
From the remembrance of the great king will not be obliterated
The encomiums of the Farah-i, if aught of memory remain 6."

After Yamin-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, had reigned for a considerable time, the calamities attending the irruption of the infidel Mughals arose, and Khurāsān became desolated

by them, and the kingdoms of Islam fell.

There is a fortress on the confines of Neh, in the territory of Nîmroz, which they call the castle of Shāhanshāhî; and the nephew of Bahrām Shāh, the son of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, had sold the fortress of Shāhanshāhì to the heretics of Kuhistān, and it was in their possession. Yamīnud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, at this time, despatched an agent to demand the restoration of that fortress, and further, to intimate that, in case any difficulty should arise, a force would be speedily brought against it.

On this account, disciples were nominated by the heretics of Kuhistān to remove him; and, in the year 618 H., on a Friday, when proceeding on his way to the mosque to perform his devotions, in the middle of the bāzār, four fidā'is, or disciples, surrounded him and martyred him.

VII. MALIK NUŞRAT-UD-DÎN, SON OF MALIK YAMÎN-UD-DÎN, BAHRÂM SHÂH.

On the death of Malik Yamin-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, the great nobles and chief men of Nimroz agreed together and raised to the throne Nusrat-ud-Din, the middle son of the late ruler. This caused agitation and commotion to

A play upon the word Nimroz, signifying mid-day. See p. 187.

⁶ Like all translated poetry, these lines, which are fine enough in the original, lose by translation, and the play upon words is generally lost. Two copies of the text contain one distich more, but the second line is precisely the same as the sixth line above, and therefore it must be an interpolation, or the first line has been lost.

arise in the country of Nimroz, and, in every direction, disorder and confusion occurred.

The eldest son of Bahrām Shāh, named Rukn-ud-Din, was detained in confinement [as a state prisoner]. The orthodox people of both parties were all partisans, well-wishers, and under allegiance to Amir Nuṣrat-ud-Din, while the whole of the heretics of the districts of Nimroz were friendly towards, and submissive to Rukn-ud-Din. After some months had passed away from the accession of Amir Nuṣrat-ud-Din, the heretics broke out into rebellion and brought forth Rukn-ud-Din; and, between Amir Nuṣrat-ud-Din and his brother, Rukn-ud-Din, an encounter ensued, in which Nuṣrat-ud-Din was defeated, and he retired into Khurāsān and Ghūr.

He returned a second time to Sistān, and liberated the country from the hands of Rukn-ud-Din; but, at last, as a body of troops of the infidels of <u>Chin</u> and <u>Mughals</u> advanced against Sistān, it fell into the hands of those infidels, and <u>Nuṣrat-ud-Din</u> obtained martyrdom, and died¹

viii. Malik rukn-ud-dı̈n, mahmud, son of yamı̈n-ud-dı̈n, bahrām $\underline{\mathbf{sh}}$ āh.

Malik Rukn-ud-Dîn, Maḥmūd, was a prince harsh, sanguinary, and cruel. The author of this work saw him, during the lifetime of his father, in attendance upon that sovereign. Rukn-ud-Dîn was a person of middle height, ruddy, and fair; and his mother was a Rūmī slave-girl. During the lifetime of his father he had been guilty of several perverse and contumacious acts; and his father, Malik Yamīn-ud-Dîn, Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh, on two occasions, had imprisoned him on account of his misdeeds.

Sultān Muhammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh, sent a mandate from <u>Kh</u>wārazm to Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh, requesting him to despatch a force from Nimroz to join him. In conformity

⁷ Rukn-ud-Dîn had been kept in confinement by his father, and was still imprisoned when his brother succeeded, for reasons afterwards explained. He soon after made his escape.

⁸ This accounts partly for his being kept imprisoned in his father's reign.
9 Size in MSS., and this difference between Mughals and infidels of Chin often occurs in the text.

¹ Nusrat-ud-Din was slain early in the Mughal troubles by those infidels.

with this command, Malik Yamın-ud-Dın, Bahram Shah, nominated his son, Rukn-ud-Dın, Maḥmud, to proceed with this army, and despatched it towards the confines of Khurāsān along with the applicant for assistance, who had come from Khwārazm Shāh, to the presence of that

Sultān [Bahrām Shāh].

When he had reached the limits of Fūshanj, and arrived near Hirāt, Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, while engaged in a drinking bout, slew the applicant in question, who was a Turk of distinction, and, out of fear for what he had done, returned towards Sīstān again. Malik Yamīn-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, on account of this misconduct, put him in durance, and despatched a numerous force under Amīr Shams-ud-Dīn, together with presents of silks and fine linen, and numerous expressions of obligation, with many apologies, to the presence of Khwārazm Shāh.

In that same year the calamities caused by the infidel Mughals happened, and those troops of Nimroz were ordered to the [frontier] fortress of Tirmiz². Chingiz³ Khān, the Accursed, advanced with his forces against it in person, and took Tirmiz; and the whole of the troops

of Nimroz were martyred therein.

When Malik Rukn-ud-Dîn, after overcoming his brother, assumed the sovereignty over Sijistān, he began to tyrannize, and stretched out the hand of violence and oppression; upon which, at the solicitations of the inhabitants of Sistān, his brother, Amir Nuṣrat, returned from Khurāsān, and between the brothers contention again ensued.

At this crisis an army of Mughals unexpectedly reached Sistān, and the whole were either slaughtered, exterminated, made captive, or martyred. The city of Sistān became

desolate, and its inhabitants obtained martyrdom*.

IX. MALIK SHIHAB-UD-DİN, MAHMŪD, SON OF ḤARAB .

When the army of infidels, after having reduced it to desolation, turned their backs upon Sistān, Malik Shihāb-

2 Sometimes spelt Tarmaz, but incorrectly.

Killed in battle with the Mughals, or slaughtered afterwards.

³ Chingiz and also Chingiz. The word is spelt both ways; the latter appears to be the most correct.

⁵ He is said to have been the son of Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, 'Usmān, brother

ud-Dīn, who had kept in concealment, came forth and took possession of Sīstān; but, as it was in a very ruinous state, and no inhabitants remained, he did not acquire much

strength or power.

A party of heretics gathered together in some force, and besought Shāh 'Uṣmān, the grandson of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān', Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab, to come from the city of Neh, and occupy Sistān. He called in the aid of a force of Khwārazm-Shāhī troops, from the Malik of Kirmān, whom they styled Burāk, the Ḥājib [chamberlain]. When that body of troops, from Kirmān, joined Shāh 'Uṣmān and came to Sīstān, Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, was martyred, and his brother, Amīr 'Alī-i-Zāhid' [a recluse, a holy man], ascended the throne. Still the government did not acquire stability, and he died.

X. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, BINĀL-TIGĪN*, KHWĀRAZMĪ.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn, Bināl-Tigîn, was of the same family as the Maliks [sovereigns] of Khwārazm, and was a son of one of the maternal uncles of Sulṭān, Khwārazm Shāh's; and, at the period that the Sulṭāns of Ghūr took Nishāpūr', Tāj-ud-Dîn, Bināl-Tigîn, with his cousin, Malik Fīrūz-i-I-yal-timish, came into Hindūstān.

At the time of the irruption of the infidels of Chin, and consequent calamities, this Tāj-ud-Din was in the service

of Bahrām Shāh. In some copies of the text he is styled son of Harab, and simply Mahmūd-i-Harab in others.

6 See page 196.

7 Neither of these persons is mentioned in Jahān-Ārā as ruler in Sijistān, but Bināl-Tigin is. Raugat-uş-Ṣafā, copying from our author, of course mentions the two first, but not the last. Shihāb-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, encountered Shāh 'Uṣmān and Bināl-Tigin, and was slain in battle; but Faṣiḥ-i, under the events of the year 646 H., mentions a Malik 'Ali, ruler of Ninnoz, having been put to death by Malik Shans-ud-Din, Muhammad, the Kurt.

8 Nial-Tigin, in some copies and in some other works, is totally incorrect. The name, as above, is corroborated by other writers; and, in the old copy of the text, the vowel points are also given. It appears to be an error of copyists

writing نیال for بنال

⁹ Which is not said. Some copies have Sulfans. Raugat-uş-Şafa says Sulfan Muḥammad. He certainly was of the same tribe as the Khwärazm Shāhf rulers.

1 See under reign of Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Ghuri, Şection XVII.

of Malik Karim-ud-Dîn, Ḥamzah, at Nāg-awr² of Siwālikh. All at once he sought an opportunity, slew Khwājah Najib-ud-Dîn; and an elephant, which was there, he sent on in advance³, and then set out towards Ūchchah⁴, and joined Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, Kubājah⁴. When Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dîn, Mangabarni, Khwārazm Shāh, reached the territory of Sind, Tāj-ud-Dîn, Bināl-Tigin, left Ūchchah and went and joined Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dîn. He accompanied him into the territory of Kirmān; and, in that country, the district of Khūk and Lūk⁵ was entrusted to his charge.

As the rival Maliks of Nimroz were struggling against each other, the grandson of Nāṣir-ud-Din, 'Uṣmān, whom they styled by the name of Shāh, sought assistance from the Malik' of Kirmān, who was the chamberlain, Burāk, Khiṭā'i. He despatched Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Bināl-Tigin, to Neh, to his aid, in the year 622 H., and, when he reached that place, he rendered him assistance, and assumed the authority himself, and took possession of the territory and city of Neh on his own account.

A body of people from the city of Sistān presented themselves before him, and sought his help and assistance, saying that, as they had killed Malik Shihāb-ud-Din, and

2 The proper mode of spelling this word, on the authority of the <u>Sh</u>ams-ul-Lughat and others, is <u>yik—Nāg-awr</u>; and Siwālikh is said to have been the name applied to the territory. Karim-ud-Din was the governor of the province.

3 This sentence is the same in all the copies of the text on which dependence can be placed. He slew Karim-ud-Din, and carried off a number of horses and several dephants.

4 Written الرجة Uchchah, and at times الرجة Uchchah, according to native authorities; but which English writers have turned into Uch and Ooch.

5 See Section XX., the third ruler,

6 In the majority of copies these words are thus written, but in some copies they are Jūk and Kūk, Jūk and Lūk, and Hūk and Kūrk or Kark, and Khūk and Kūk. These places are not mentioned in Masālik wa Mamālik. The Gorok of modern maps probably.

7 Styled Burāk Khān in one or two copies of the text. He was the brother of Taniko of Jaraz, the Amir-ul-Umrā of Gūr Khān, who was defeated in battle and taken prisoner by Sulfān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. See under

the tenth sovereign, Section XVI.

8 All the copies of the text, with two exceptions, say he did render assistance to Shāh 'Uşmān; but the only assistance he appears to have afforded was in joining Shāh 'Uşmān to overcome his rival, Shāh Malunūd; and, after the latter's defeat and death, Bināl-Tigin showed no further regard or respect to 'Uṣmān, but took possession of the country for himself.

9 See note 7, p. 199.

Sistān remained without a ruler, he should take <u>Sh</u>āh 'Uşmān to Sistān and set him up there. Tāj-ud-Dîn, Bināl-Tigîn, accordingly moved to Sistān, took possession of the city, and brought the territory of Nîmroz under his own sway.

At this juncture, Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, of Khāesār¹ of Ghūr, despatched this, his dependent, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, from Ghūr, on a mission to Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn. The author found him at the city of Farāh, in Dāwarī², and waited on him; and a firm compact was concluded.

After returning from thence, and reaching <u>Gh</u>ūr again, between Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn and the Mulāhidah heretics hostility arose, and an engagement ensued between them, and he was defeated. After this, he returned to Sistān again, and overthrew a body of <u>Kh</u>ārijī schismatics who had revolted against him.

In the year 623 H., the author of this work was despatched a second time, and he proceeded again to his presence; and, after that, Tāj-ud-Din came himself into Ghūr, and took possession of the fortresses of Tūlak and Isfirār; and, in this same year, after his return from Nimroz, the author had occasion to undertake a journey into Hind.

In the year 625 H., an army of Mughals advanced into the territory of Nimroz a second time; and Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigin, was invested within the walls of the fortress of Arg* of Sīstān. For a period of nineteen months he

¹ This journey is again referred to by our author towards the end of his work, under the heading "Downfall of the Mulāḥidahs," Section XXIII.; and this place is again mentioned, but is there written in two different ways—<u>Kh</u>āesār and <u>Kh</u>aisār.

² This word is used in all the copies of the text, with one exception, which has \$\(\pm\)_2\) [dirtie or darū-i]. This can scarcely refer to the district of Dāwar [not Dāwari], which lies more to the east. In the MASALIK WA MAMĀLIK the \$\(\pm\)_2\ [wädf is a valley, low-lying ground, &c.] of Farāḥ is mentioned; but this is an Arabic term, not a proper name. The "compact" here referred to could not have been very "firm," as may be seen from a more detailed account of these journeys of the author, under the head of "Downfall of the Mulāḥidahs," towards the end of the Section above mentioned.

3 The author contradicts himself, not an unusual thing, in the Section referred to in the previous note, which see.

4 The Burhān-i-Kā-ii' says, one of the meanings of the word Arg is "a citadel," but that it is also the name of a fortress in the territory, not the city, of Sistān. See note 9, p. 34, and the account of the investment of Sistān [as our author calls it] by the Mughals in Section XXIII., where the situation of this fortress is mentioned.

defended the place; and the whole of his followers with him in that stronghold, consisting of Ghūris, Tūlakis, Sigizis, and Turks, all perished. Taj-ud-Din himself received an arrow in one of his eyes, and he straightway fell from the battlements to the ground, and became a captive to the Mughals.

The fortress was taken, and the remainder of the people within the walls were martyred; and Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigin, was brought from Sistan to the fortress of Safhed Koh6, and at the foot of the walls of that castle they martyred him. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

⁸ See fourth paragraph to note 2, pp. 183-4.

⁶ Also called Sufed-Koh. Our author was once detained within the walls of his fortress by Bināl-Tigin.

SECTION XV.

THE KURDIAH MALIKS OF SHAM.

MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ, Jūrjānī, the humblest of the servants of the threshold of the Most High, begs to mention, that, as an account of the Maliks of the East and West, both infidel and of the true faith, has been detailed and recorded, to the best of his ability and power, and a small portion, in a condensed form, has also been related from the annals of the Maliks of 'Ajam and the East, this work has been embellished [!] with a description of the Maliks of Sham, Misr, Hijāz, and Yaman, who were Sultāns in Islām, and Maliks and warriors of the true faith, of great renown, and who, subsequent to the Sanjari and Saljūki dynasties, held sway over those countries. He has done so in order that the readers of this Tabakat, when these pages come under their observation, may remember the author with a pious benediction, and the Sultan of the Musalmans with a prayer for the stability and permanency of his sovereignty and dominion, and the increase of his conscientiousness and beneficence.

I. SULŢĀN NŬR-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD-I-ZANGĪ1.

Sultān Nūr-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-Zangi, was one of the Atā-baks of Mauṣil; and the Atā-baks of Mauṣil were

The first of this dynasty was ABU SA'ID-I-ĀĶ-SANKUR [turned into ASCANSAR by Gibbon], son of 'Abd-ullah, styled the Ḥājib, and Ibn-i-

¹ Sultān Nūr-ud-Dîn was not the first of this dynasty, neither was he a Kurd, nor of the Atā-baks of Mauşil, but, by our author? so wa account, "the descendant of a Turk of Khiţā;" and yet he places him at the head of the dynasty which he calls the Kurdiah Maliks of Shām! In this Section, above all the others in his work, and that is saying a good deal, he has greatly exposed his ignorance; and appears to have concocted, out of his own fertile imagination, the greater part of what he has here adduced, beyond what he heard of the rulers of Mauşil and Shām from a fugitive at Lakhnauti, in Bengal, who called himself one of their descendants.

descendants of slaves of Sultān Sanjar; and this bondman of Sanjar, who was the first Malik of Mauşil, was a Turk of Khitā.

This relation the author heard, in the city of Lakhnauti, from one of the descendants of that family, and the son of one of the Lords of Mausil himself. In the country of Hindūstān, and at the capital, Dihli, he was known as the Khudāwand-Zādah of Mausil. He was of the same progenitors as the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din [I-yal-timish].

Hājib, according to some. In 478.H., the year before Sanjar was born, Tāj-ud-Daulah, Abū Sa'īd, surnamed Tutish, son of Alb-Arsalān, the Saljūk, gained possession of Halab and its dependencies. Åk-Sankur, who was one of his brother's slaves, in whom he placed great dependence, he made his Deputy there. Tāj-ud-Daulah-i-Tutish at this time resided at Damashk. Åk-Sankur became disaffected, and Tutish marched against him; and, in a battle which took place between them, near Halab, in 487 H., Åk-Sankur was slain.

He was succeeded by his son, 'IMAD-UD-DIN, ZANGI, who had previously held the government of Baghdad under Sultan Mahmud, son of Muhammad, son of Malik Shah, Saljuki ; but, in 521 H. [some say 522 H.], through the efforts of the Khalifah of Baghdad, Mustarshid, 'Imad-ud-Din, Zangi, was appointed to the government of 'Irak-i-'Arab, the capital of which was Mausil-so called from being situated between 'Irak and the Jazirah [Mesopotamia], and derived from the 'Arabic - and Sultan Mahmud sent two of his sons, Alb-Arsalan and Farrukh Shah, to Zangi to be brought up; hence he was styled Atā-bak or Preceptor. In the same year he took Halab, and, in 523 H., the fortress of Himar, in Kurdistan, which he razed, and erected a fortress in place of it, which he named after himself, and it is still known as 'Imadiah. He acquired sway over the greater part of Sham, Diyar-i-Bakr, the Jaza'ir, and Mausil. Zangi was slain while besieging the fortress of Ja'bar. He was killed, some say, by his own slaves, in Muharram [Yafā'ī says in Rabī'-ul-Akhir], 541 H. We now come to Nūr-ud-Dīn, whom our author places as first of the Kurdish sovereigns of Sham.

On the death of Zangf, his two sons, Saif-ud-Dñ-i-Ephzf, and ARÜ-J-KASIM, NÜR-UD-DÎN, MAHMÜD, styled AL-MALIK-UL-ÂDIL [the Just Malik], divided their father's dominions among them. The former took Mauşil and its dependencies, and the latter Shām and its dependencies. Nūr-ud-Dĥn proceeded to Halab, and began to extend his authority. In 549 II. he gained possession of Damaghk, and his power and dominions were greatly extended. He also gained possession of Hims, Hāmah, Manbij, Ba'albak, and other fortresses in the territory of Rūm, and numerous strongholds in the country of the Farangs [the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem], more than fifty in number in all. He sent the Amìr, Asad-ud-Din, Sher-i-Koh, on three different occasions into Migr; and, on the third occasion, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn, Yüsnd, became the Deputy of Nūr-ud-Dîn in that country. See under Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîr,

² The word used is — another signification of which, but not applicable here I think, is the affinity between two men who have married two sisters.

³ And so the first—the Turk of Khiti—is here made "a Kurd." while his

This \underline{Kh} udāwand-Zādah stated to the author, that the whole of his ancestors were descendants of a slave of Sanjar \underline{Sh} āh; and, that he himself was the eighth in descent from that Turk of Khitā previously mentioned.

In short, Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn, who was Malik of Shām, was a just and conscientious monarch, and did a great deal of good. He undertook many expeditions against the infidels, and engaged in many conflicts with them. A number of Maliks [chieftains], Kurds, Turks, 'Ajamīs, and 'Arabs were in his service.

Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn left numerous marks of his goodness behind him in the territory of <u>Shām</u>, and reigned for very many years.

At the time of his death he left one son, named 'Alî, who succeeded him.

II. MALIK-UŞ-ŞĀLIḤ, 'ALĪ ', SON OF MAḤMŪD-I-ZANGĪ.

Malik-uş-Şāliḥ, 'Alī, ascended the throne of \underline{Sh} ām at the city of Damashk; and the great nobles and chieftains paid

brother Turk—the slave king of Dihli—is turned into "a Paṭān," i. e. an Afghān, by Dow and his copyists.

⁴ Nür-ud-Din reigned for a considerable time in great grandeur and glory, and the laudable course of his life, and his conduct towards his people, were such that he was accounted, by them, as one of the saints; and it is said, that prayers, offered up before his tomb, are effectual. He founded a great hospital at Damashk, and a university or college, and died in the month of Shawwäl, 569 H., but some say in 568 H., when leading an army towards Mişr against Şalah-ud-Din, who had become disaffected. Ibn-i-Khalkān says he died in the citadel of Damashk.

b His descendant, apparently, did not know how long his ancestor reigned. 6 Nür-ud-Din does not appear to have had any son called 'Alī; but certain it is that he was not succeeded by one of that name, as our author states, but by his son ISMA'IL, entitled MALIK-US-ŞĀLIḤ, then a mere child, being only in his eleventh year. Salāḥ-ud-Din, at first, read the Khutbah for him, and coined the money in his name, as he had done for his father previously; but in 570 H., the year after his accession, when in his twelfth year, Şalāḥ-ud-Din, taking advantage of his extreme youth, brought an army before Damaghly, and seized upon it and the greater part of Shām, leaving nothing to his benefactor's son but the city of Ḥalab and its environs, to which place Malik-us-Şāliḥ retired. He dwelt there till 577 H., when he died in his nineteenth year, much regretted by the people for his virtues; and, with him, this branch terminated.

If this account be compared with our author's, the absurdity and incorrectness of his statements will be sufficiently apparent, more particularly those contained in the last paragraph of his account of them. Of the Atā-baks of Mausil and several other dynasties, he gives no account. allegiance and submission to him; and the districts around Shām, and Ḥalab, and Diyār-i-Bakr, came under his sway.

When intimation of the decease of Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn reached Miṣr—and at this time the sovereignty of Miṣr had passed to Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf—as he owed a heavy debt of gratitude for favours conferred, Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn determined to proceed from Miṣr to the presence of Malik-uṣ-Ṣāliḥ, pay his obeisance to him, and perform the forms of condolence, and congratulate Malik-uṣ-Ṣāliḥ on his succession to the dominion of Shām, and then return again.

He set out from Miṣr [accordingly] with a body of troops and conducted it to \$\sum_{\text{D}}\text{Im}^7\$; and, as soon as he reached the frontier of that territory, information of his arrival was brought to Damashk. The heart of Malik-uṣ-Ṣāliḥ was filled with affright and consternation, and he asked advice of everybody as to what he ought to do. There was a servant of Malik-uṣ-Ṣāliḥ, who had also been an old follower of his father, Sultān Nūr-ud-Din, who was named Aymin, and he said to Malik-uṣ-Ṣāliḥ:—" It is advisable, when Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din comes, to turn your face towards Ḥalab and proceed thither, and relinquish Damashk and \$\frac{\text{Sh}}{\text{L}}\text{m}\$ to him, since fear of him has taken root in people's hearts.

⁷ A novel mode of expressing his gratitude. A traitor in Damashk, who had been gained over by Salāh-ud-Din, gave out that Salāh-ud-Din was coming merely to adjust the affairs of the child. Our author either forgets to allude to, or did not know of, the hostilities that took place between Salah-ud-Din and Saif-ud-Dîn-i-Ghāzī, the latter of whom sent his troops to aid his brother 'Izz-ud-Din, Mas'ud [they were sons of Maudud, sons of Zangi, cousins of Malik-us-Salihl, who advanced to Halab, and, taking his cousin Malik-us-Sālih and the latter's troops with him, marched to give battle to Salāh-ud-Din. The latter offered peace, which 'Izz-ud-Din refused; and, in Ramazan of 570 H., a battle took place near Hamah, in which Şalah-ud-Din was victorious. After this, Malik-uş-Şālih entered into terms with him for Halab and some other places. Further hostilities took place between Saif-ud-Din-i-Ghāzī, supported by his brother, and-but I might fill a volume by merely naming our author's misstatements, and other important matters which he has left out, without giving any details of the facts. He omits nothing that is childish and ridiculous; the ball, for example, overshadowing the sun [p. 215], the rings for the Christian captives [p. 221], and such like nonsense: it is the important events only that he eschews. Salah-ud-Din subsequently endeavoured further to "express his gratitude," by attempting, in 571 H., to gain possession of Halab. He remained a long time before it, without being able to take it. At last, a daughter of the late Sultan Nür-ud-Din was made over to him, and, for her sake, he left Malik-uş-Şālih unmolested.

He has great resources and a large army, and he is able to reduce the territories under his sway. He is likewise legitimately born, and has a well-disposed mind, and will respect your rights and the gratitude he owes to your father. If you should enter into hostilities with him, you have neither the means nor the power to oppose nor to resist him." The opinion of Malik-us-Ṣāliḥ was in accord with this fact; and he left Damashk, and retired to Ḥalab, and consigned the territory of Shām into the hands of Salāh-ud-Dīn.

Malik-uṣ-Ṣāliḥ passed the remainder of his lifetime at Ḥalab; and Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn served him in all honour and reverence, guarded his rights, and, in the observance of the laws of good faith, and the fulfilment of his engagements, he failed neither to observe nor to neglect the most minute thing.

III. MALIK AIYŪB, SON OF SHĀDĪS.

This Malik Aiyūb, son of Shādī, and his brother, Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, were two brothers, and sons of one of the

The correct titles and name of Salāḥ-ud-Din's father were Malik-ul-Afzal, Najm-ud-Din, Abū-Laghkar-i-Aiyūb.

Shādī, their father, son of Mardām, was born in a village of Agarbātjān, and belonged to a Kurdish tribe, which he left and proceeded to Baghād, with his two sons, Asad-ud-Dīn, Sheri-Koh, and Najm-ud-Dīn, Ajrūb. The sons entered the service of Bahrūz, the prefect of Baghādā, and were entrusted by him with the charge of the fortress of Takrīt, and there Shādī died. His tomb was still to be seen there when Vāfatī wrote; and within the walls of that stronghold Salāḥ-ud-Dīn was born. The brothers continued there for a considerable period; and, at the time when 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Zangī, in 'gaō' H, came to the aid of Sulţān Mas'ūd, Saljūt, and his brother Saljūt, Shāh, and his Atā-bak, Karājah, the cup-bearer, were routed, Zangī passed the Tigris near the fort of Takrīt, by means of boats provided by the brothers. Subsequently, Asad-ud-Dīn having slain a person, they had to leave the fortress of Takrīt, and they proceeded to Mausţi, and presented themselves at the Court of Zangī. He received them with great favour, and bestowed fiefs upon each of them.

Subsequently, when Zangi was assassinated, and his son, Saif-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī, succeeded him as ruler over Mauṣil, Naim-ud-Dīn-i-Ajvūb, who had been assigned the territory of Ba'albak by Zangī, finding Saif-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī unable to protect him, had to give it up, and went and entered the service of the then ruler of Damashk, named Majīr-ud-Dīn, Artūk [Artūkfah], who gave him a fief. Asad-ud-Dīn, Sher-i-Koh, Aiyūb's brother, went to Ḥalab and took service under Nūr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, Saif-ud-Dīn's brother, who had seen the honour with which he had been treated in his father's time, and he raised Asad-ud-Dīn to the highest position among his nobles; and, at he

Kurdish chieftains in the territory of Shām; and they passed a number of years in the service of Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn. They performed great deeds, and on the confines of Maghrab and of Shām, with numerous forces, they waged holy war, and fought engagements against unbelievers.

When Malik Aiyūb, son of Shādī, departed this life, he left four sons behind him: first, Malik Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf; second, Malik 'Adil-i-Abū-Bikr; third, Shāhan-shāh; and fourth, Saiī-ul-Islām': and Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, son of Shādī, as before stated, was the brother of Malik

Aiyūb1.

When the latter died, his sons were in the service of their uncle, Malik Asad-ud-Dîn; and the first person among them [sic in MSS.] who became sovereign of Misr was this same Asad-ud-Dîn; and the first one who acquired sovereignty in Shām was Salāh-ud-Dîn, Yūsuf, son of Aiyūb, as will, please God, be hereafter recorded ².

IV. MALIK ASAD-UD-DĪN 3, SON OF SHĀDĪ, IN MIŞR.

Trustworthy persons have related after this manner: that a body of Maghrabi 'Alawis laid claim to the Khilāfat',

taking of Damashk, Asad-ud-Dīn, Sher-i-Koh, and Şalāh-ud-Dīn, were in Nūr-ud-Dīn's service; and the former held the government of Hims.

⁹ Abū Laghkar-i-Aiyūb had siz renowned sons, the titles and names of whom, according to the years of their birth, are as follow:—1. Amīr.Nūr.ud-Daulah, Shāhan-Shāh. 2. Malik-ul-Muagzam, Shams-ud-Daulah, Turān Shāh. 3. Malik-uri-Nāṣir, Şalāḥ-ud Dīn, Yūsuf. 4. Malik-ul-'Adil, Saif-ud-Dīn [Daulah], Abū Bikr, Mul-ammad. 5. Malik-ul-'Azīz, Zahīr-ud-Dīn, Abū Farās-i-Tugh-Tigňn, Saif-ul-Islām. 6. Tāj-ul-Mulūk, Majd-ud-Dīn—the least in years, the greatest in learning and accomplishments.

Any one reading this would imagine that Aiyūb had been an independent ruler in Shām, and one of the dynasty, and that he had died before Asad-ud-Din, and before Salāḥ-ud-Din rose to power; but neither of these is the fact. Aiyūb merely hald Ba'albak of Zangi and another fief under his son. See

note , page 215.

² Here is another specimen of an author who "narrates his facts in a plain, straightforward manner, which induces a confidence in the sincerity of his statements, and the accuracy of his knowledge." He begins this Section with an account of the Kurdish rulers of Shām and Mişr, the two first of whom were Turks, and the third never reigned at all; while he himself states, subsequently, that the fourth was the first Kurd that ruled in Mişr, and the fifth, the first Kurdish ruler of Shām 1

3 His correct name and titles are Abū-l-Ḥāris, Sher-i Koh [the Lion of the

Mountains], Asad-ud-Din, surnamed Al-Malik-ul-Manşūr.

* Nearly three hundred years before Nur-ud-Din despatched Asad-ud-

and brought an army from Maghrab into Misr, and wrested it out of the hands of the governors and nobles of the 'Abbāsi Khalifahs.

The chief of them was named Al-Muntaşir s ; and some theologians regard them as Karāmiṭahs. The territory of Miṣr had continued in the possession of his descendants up to the period that an army of Afranj set out towards Miṣr, and plundered and sacked the country. The 'Alawis of Miṣr had not the power to resist them, nor to drive out that host of infidels; so they solicited aid from Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Din of Shām. He nominated Malik Asad-ud-Din, son of Shādī, to proceed into Miṣr, and expel the Afranj infidels from that country'.

Din into Mişr, viz. in 296 H.: In 351 H. they removed from the territory styled Maghrab, and took up their abode in the former country.

5 Abū-Tamim-i-Sa'd, Al-Mustanşir B'illah, was the eighth of the Ismā-'îliāns or Fāţimites. They had been in Egypt, and had founded Kāhirah upwards of sixty years before Al-Mustanşir succeeded to the Khilāfat. All

the copies of the text have "Muntasir."

6 Our author's statements here are totally incorrect. Asad-ud-Din, Sheri-Koh, was despatched into Miṣr—or more correctly Diyār-i-Miṣrīah, for Miṣr is the name of the ancient capital of Egypt, and Yāfa'ī and others make this distinction—upon three different occasions. The first occasion was in this wise: Shā'ūr, the Wazīr of Miṣr, who held the chief power, for the Ismā'īliān Khalifahs appear to have possessed little authority, had been ousted from office by a powerful rival, Zir-ghām by name, who obtained the chief authority, and put Shā'ūr's son, Tae, to death. On this, Shā'ūr came to the presence of Nūr-ud-Din to solicit his aid in restoring him to power; and, in Ramagān, 558 H. [according to some in 559 H.], Nūr-ud-Din despatched a numerous army into Miṣrāh for the purpose, under Asad-ud-Dīn, Sher-i-Koh, and Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, his nephew, accompanied him.

The objects of Nur-ud-Din, in sending this expedition, were twofold. One was to aid Sha'ur, and the second was his desire to know the exact state of the affairs of that country, as he had been informed that there was really no ruler in it, and that it might be easily annexed. Asad was therefore selected to command, as Nür-ud-Din had implicit confidence in him. He accordingly entered the Misriah territory in Jamadi-ul-Akhir, 559 H. [some say in 558 H.], and Zir-ghām was put to death, his head placed on a spear, and his body left to the dogs and jackals; but his remains were subsequently buried. Sha'ur again assumed the Wazir-ship, but, finding the presence of Asad and his army irksome, and fearing treachery on Asad's part, he sought an alliance with the Farangs [Latin Christians of Jerusalem] to counteract it. Asad in consequence was unable to hold his own in the Mişriah territory, and he accordingly retired into Sham again and returned to Damashk, and entered it in Zi-Hijjah, 559 H. [some say in 558 H.] Asad-ud-Din's thoughts, however, were concentrated on Misriah, and he was constantly pondering the subject. Shā'ūr, becoming aware of his ambition and covetous designs, entered into a treaty with the Farangs to aid him, in case of need, against the ruler of Sham.

On the news of these negotiations reaching the ears of Nur-ud-Din and

Malik Asad-ud-Dîn preferred a request to the Sulţān that he would appoint Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf, his nephew, to accompany him on the expedition. This was granted; and Malik Asad-ud-Dîn, along with Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn, set out from Shām towards Misr.

When they reached the frontier of that country, the infidel Afranj, having gained information of the arrival of the troops of Shām, reined in the bridle of their audacity, and they halted in that part of the country which they had then reached.

The troops of \underline{Sh} ām entered the territory of Miṣr, and acquired predominance over it; and, as they possessed great power and magnificence, the 'Alawis of Miṣr became timid of them, and repented of ever having sought their assistance, as they were not sufficiently strong to hinder them [the \underline{Sh} āmis] from the usurpation of power and authority over the country.

The Sayyid, who filled the *masnad* of the <u>Kh</u>ilāfat in Miṣr, had a Wazīr, who bore the name of <u>Shā-ūr</u>, and he summoned him privily, and commanded that he should write a letter, secretly, to the infidel Farangs, and tell them "neither we nor our troops will render any help to the <u>Shā</u>mīs, and we will not send them sufficient succour. It behoveth you to advance upon them: put forth your strength, and drive them out of this country, and all the

Asad, they consulted together, and the former, fearing lest the Farangs might gain a footing in Miṣrfah, and thereby acquire dominion over the whole of the parts adjacent, determined to despatch Asad with a large army against Shā'ūr, which commenced its march in Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 562 H., and Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn attended him, being in his service.

Shā'ūr, on this movement, called in the Farangs; and, with those allies, encountered Asad and his forces in several engagements, but without decisive advantage on either side. Nūr-ud-Dīn now created a diversion by sending a force against the Farangt territory, and succeeded in taking Montreal [7].b-1]. The news of this having reached Almeric [1,3-p], king of Jerusalem, an accommodation was entered into by the contending parties, under the agreement that not a man of either the Shāmis or Farangs should remain in the Miṣrfah territory, and that both armles should retire into their respective countries.

Asad-ud-Dīn, Sher-i-Koli, in 564 H., again advanced into the Miṣrlah territory, accompanied by his nephew, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, and a large army, and sought to subdue it. Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn succeeded in getting possession of Iskandarlah, but Ṣhā'ūr invested him therein with the forces of Miṣr, and Asad had to evacuate Ṣa'īd and march to his succour. At last a peace was come to, and Asad and Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn returned to Shām again. For an account of the third expedition see note 1, page 212.

spoil taken from them shall be yours." In short, the Miṣrīs sought, by such like treachery, to betray the army of <u>Sh</u>ām into the hands of the troops of the infidels of Rūm⁷ and the Farangs⁸.

In accordance with the solicitation contained in the letter referred to, the Farang infidels advanced upon the forces of Shām to give them battle, and drive them out of Misr. The army of the infidel Farangs amounted to 80,000 men, and that of Shām numbered 700 horse.

When the two armies came into contact with each other and the conflict and struggle began, the troops of <u>Sh</u>ām, on account of the smallness of their numbers, were unable to withstand their opponents; and, as a matter of necessity, they were discomfited, and fled, fighting, from the gate of Misr until they reached a place which is called Talbis. This place had a fortified wall all round it, and a citadel; and, in it, they sought shelter, and they shut themselves up within the walls. The troops of the infidel Farangs completely surrounded it, pitched their camp, and commenced their preparations for taking the place.

When the Shāmī forces perceived the extreme danger they were in, and that they were completely invested, besides the treachery of the 'Alawis of Misr, they all, of one accord, deliberated together, and discussed a plan of escape. Malik Asad-ud-Din and Şalāp-ud-Din told them, saying:
—"The plan of saving yourselves consists in staking your lives; in victory or death." They all, accordingly, agreed together; and, placing their hands within the open grasp of confidence, and with full trust in the Most High and Holy God, they, having quite resigned themselves to sacrifice sweet life if necessary, suddenly and unawares, issued from the place and commenced fighting the infidels, as by orthodox law prescribed: and heavenly succour came to their aid; and, according to the promise of Him who promised victory to

⁷ No troops whatever of the Greek empire were employed on the occasion; but, the fact is, our author was not acquainted with his subject at all, and has concocted much monsens.

⁸ The words Afranj and Farang are often used here indiscriminately.

On the preceding page he says Asad-ud-Din's troops "acquired predominance over the territory of Miṣr," and Shā'ūr had to call in the Christians to expel them, and immediately after tells this impudent falsehood. A very trustworthy writer certainly!

the true believers, He sent succour, and the army of the infidels was put to the rout, and the defenders of the truth gained the victory; and from that place to the gate of Misr¹, and in the vicinity, and in the parts round about,

1 The cause of the third expedition was that, in 564 H., the Faranes [King Almeric and the Hospitallers, A.D. 1168] invaded the Misriah territory, intending to seize it for themselves. They marched to Balbis [the ancient Pelusium], took it, and put the inhabitants to the sword. Again Sha'ur sought aid from Nur-ud-Din, who, fearing the Farangs and their designs, and possessing vast resources, sent a countless army [not 700 horse probably] thither under Asad-ud-Din, who, on this occasion, took with him his brethren [sic in MS.] and kinsmen, including Salah-ud-Din. The account of the advance of this host having been conveyed to the Farangs, they desisted from further operations, evacuated Balbis, and retired from the country, pressed hard in their retreat by Nür-ud-Din's Turkmans. The author, from whom I have been taking these extracts chiefly, says, "Salah-ud-Din told me himself that he [Salāh-ud-Din] did not accompany his uncle of his own choice; and further. that Shā'ūr used to promise to defray all the expenses of this expedition, undertaken on his account; but he did not fulfil his promises, and sometimes he would be with the Farangs, and at times he would be with the Amir [Asadud-Dinl. Fearing the perfidy and double-dealing of Sha'ur, Amir Asad resolved to seize him; and, one day, when Sha'ur, attended with drums and trumpets and banners, as is the custom with the Wazirs of Misr, mounted and set out with a cavalcade to visit Asad-ud-Din, the latter also mounted and rode forth to receive him; but, when they met, he seized Sha'ur by the collar, and gave a sign to his own followers to secure him. This was done, and Shā'ūr was detained as a prisoner in a tent. Shortly after, a body-servant arrived from the sovereign of Misriah [Abū Muhammad-i-'Abd-ullah, entitled 'Azid, the last of the Isma'ilis of Egyptl signifying his desire that the head of Shā'ūr should be sent to him. This was in accordance with the custom of the country, that any one who, by force, seized the Wazir's person, and cut off his head and sent it to the ruler, should have the robe of Wazir-ship forthwith brought to him; and, according to that custom, Asad cut off the head of Sha'ur [had it cut off] and sent it, and on the same day he assumed the robe of Wazīr-ship, and the supreme direction of the affairs of the country." This occurred 17th of Rabi'-ul-Akhir, 564 H.

Another account of the events ending in the death of Shā'ūr, quoted in Yāfa'ī, is not unworthy of a brief record here, and, in all probability, is the most correct. When Asad-ud-Din reached the Miṣrīah territory, and entered Kāhirah on the ryth of Rabī'-ul-Ākhir, 504 "n. 'Āṣid-i'-Ābd-ul-lah, the last of the Ismā'th Khalfāhs, on the Friday following, came forth and held an interview with Asad, and had him arrayed in a dress of honour, and treated him with great distinction. Asad now requested Shā'ūr to disburse the expenses incurred on his account, which he had agreed to defray; but Shā'ūr delayed. Asad sent a person to him with a message, saying, "My troops, through want of their pay, are much incensed against you; therefore be careful." Shā'ūr evinced no fear, and resolved to invite Asad to an entertainment in order to seize his person. This design having come to Asad's knowledge, Amfr' '12z-ud-Din, one of Nūr-ud-Din's nobles, and Ṣalāl-ud-Din, agreed together to kill Shā'ūr, and communicated the design to Asad, who forbade them to do so. Shā'ūr, subsequently, in order to visit Asad, without any bade them to do so. Shā'ūr, subsequently, in order to visit Asad, without any

they made heaps of the slain. Praise be unto God! May victory ever be theirs!

The troops of Islām having gained such a victory, at once appeared before the gate of Mişr. The Wazīr of Mişr, who was named Shā-ūr, performed the ceremonies of going to receive them; but, as soon as the sight of that victorious Sulṭān², Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, fell upon him, he, in the presence of Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, with his own august hand, struck off with his sword the wretched head from that accursed one's body.

The whole of the people of Misr and the forces of Shām agreed together, with one accord, to raise Malik Asad-ud-Dîn to the sovereignty; and he became sovereign of Misr accordingly, and obtained the throne of that country.

The 'Alawis of Misr, without molestation or impediment, were placed in seclusion, and the <u>Khutbah</u> was read for them in the same manner as before'.

The news of this success was despatched to <u>Shām</u>; and the territory of Miṣr, together with its coasts and confines, was taken possession of by Mālik Asad-ud-Dîn, who resided there for a considerable time; and he died.

suspicion, came to the bank of the Nîl, where his [Asad's] tents were pitched to enable his followers to visit conveniently the tomb of Imām Shāt'î. Amīr 'Izz-ud-Dîn and Şalāḥ-ud-Dîn, after they had received Shā'ūr, au ! the usual salutation of "Peace be unto thee," &c., had passed—Asad was not present at the time—dragged him from his horse, upon which his followers fled. They then handcuffed him, and kept him a prisoner in one of the tents, but did not dare to put him to death without the permission of Nūr-ud-Dîn [Asad?]. In the meantime, 'Âşid, the Ismā'li, sent an order to put Shā'ūr to death [according to the custom before mentioned], on which his head was cut off [by two slaves of Nūr-ud-Dīn] and sent to 'Āşid on a spear. After this, 'Âşid summoned Asad-ud-Dīn to his presence, who went; and the Warīf's robe was conferred upon him, with the title of Al-Malik-ul-Mangūr, Amīr-ul-Juyūgh.

2 At this time this "victorious Sultan" was serving under his uncle, who was himself serving Nur-ud-Din.

³ Asad-ud-Din was not raised to the sovereignty, and never occupied the throne of Misr. For the refutation of this absurd and untrue statement, see preceding note ¹.

4 At page 215 our author contradicts his own statement.

Asad did not enjoy his Wazir-ship very long; for on the 22nd [some say 26th] of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir of the same year, two months and five days after he obtained it—a "considerable time" truly—he died suddenly at Kāhirah. He was first buried there, but subsequently, according to his last wishes, his remains were removed to Madīnah. The "Lion of the Mountains" left a son, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Sher-i-Koh, entitled Al-Malik-ul-Ķāhirah. When his father died, Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn of Shām, deprived him of the fief of

V. SULŢĀN ŞALĀḤ-UD-DĪN, YŪSUF, SON OF AIYŪB-AL-KURDĪ.

Sulṭān Ṣaiāḥ-ud-Dīn was a great and illustrious monarch, and he waged holy wars and undertook many religious expeditions; and the Ķaiṣar of Rūm and the infidel Farangs, he encountered in many conflicts. It was most probable, that in all his doings, and throughout the whole of his career, the sword of heavenly success and divine victory attended him. The territories of Shām, Ķudsī [the Holy Land], Miṣr, Ḥijāz, and Yaman³, all came under his rule.

As the Most High God willed that, at this, the end of time?, His true religion should be manifested, and that the empire of Islām should be victorious, from every illustrious family He made choice of one sovereign, His servant, and, by means of the key of holy war waged by him, caused the gates of conquest of the countries of the infidels to be thrown open. In the same manner as in the countries of the East He distinguished Sultām Mu'izz-ud-Din, Mu-hammad-i-Sām, Shansabi [Shansabāni], Ghūrī, by great victories in the country of Hindūstām, as far as the boundaries of Chin; in the territories of the West, and in the country of Shām, He made Sultām Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din, Yūsuf, the Kurd, exalted by the conquests of the territories of Maghrab, and of the Afranj⁸, so that great victories were achieved by him.

He brought back again the realm of Misr from the hands

Hims; but, when Salāḥ-ud-Din, his cousin, gained possession of Shām, he restored Hims to him, and there he died in 581 H.

⁶ Şalāḥ-ud-Dhi had an elder brother named Malik-ul-Muagzam, Shams-ud-Daulah, Turan Shāh, and greatly esteemed by that Sulfan. He employed him in an expedition into Yaman, and subsequently sent him into Nübah [Nubia of Europeans], and he was afterwards placed in charge of Damashk. He died in Şafar, 576 H., and was buried in the Madrasah in sight of Damashk, which he had himself founded.

7 Our author has been as unsuccessful in foretelling the end of the world, as some others, his successors, who pretend to know the secrets of futurity and the will of Providence.

It is somewhat new to find that Salāḥ-ud-Dīn made conquests in Europe. He does not mean conquests in Palestine or the Greek empire, for he mentions them a little farther on. This is merely another of his audacious falsehoods. The words he uses are. منافل سلام الداني بوسف كرد عن را طبقوع دار مفرود از افرخ مخدوس كردانيد. of the Miṣri 'Alawis, who were the chiefs and heads of the Bāṭinah and Ķarāmiṭah heretics, under the sway of the Khalifahs of the house of 'Abbās; and Ķuds [the Holy City], 'Akkah [Acre], and a great portion of the territories of Rūm, and Filistin, he liberated from the hands of the infidel Farangs.

The beginning of his career was this. When his father, Malik Aiyūb, son of Shādī, departed this life, he was in the service of his uncle, Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, as has been already stated in what has been previously recorded, and used to be constant in his attendance at the Court of Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn. He had acquired great fame for his manhood, his activity, and his sagacity. He had also become an associate with Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn in the game of Chaugān, and playing at ball on the course.

One of the trustworthy has related after the following manner:—One day Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn was engaged with Sulṭān Nūr-ud-Dīn in the game at ball, and the ball fell between him and the Sulṭān. By his strength and agility, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, with one blow, bore away the ball from the Sulṭān in such a way, that, from the immense force with which his Chaugān struck it, the ball flew into the air so far that it became immersed in the light of the sun, and the shadow of it fell upon Nūr-ud-Dīn². When the Sulṭān noticed this circumstance, his heart became so overpowered with wrath, that he threw down his Chaugān in a rage and left the course. This circumstance filled Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn with fear and apprehension, and he began to conceal himself from

⁹ Here is another specimen of the false statements of our author, so "trustworthy." Asad died in 564 H., and Şalāḥ-ud-Dîn's father, Abū-Lashkari-Aiyūb, joined his son in Egypt in the following year, when Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn had succeeded to the Wazīr-ship held previously by his uncle. Şalāḥ-ud-Dīn had succeeded to the Wazīr-ship held previously by his uncle. Şalāḥ-ud-Dīn held his father to accept the office, but Aiyūb refused, saying, "The Almighty hath chosen thee, my son, for this office, and consequently no one else is worthy of it." Aiyūb was killed from highres statined by a falf from his horse, which threw him when he was viewing Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn's troops file past before the Bāb-un-Naṣr (the Naṣr Gate) of Ķāhirah, on an expedition against Karak, in Zi-Hījih, 567 h., about three years after Asad's death. Aiyūb entered Ķāhirah in Rajab, 565 M., and 'Āṣid, the Isma'filān Khalīfah, in order to gratify Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, came forth to receive his father, whom he treated with great reverence and distinction.

¹ Sic in MSS.

² Our author must have been a very simple-minded man indeed if he believed this; but many of his statements are equally childish and absurd.

the Sultan's sight, and seldom used to present himself to the Sultan's observation.

The author heard from Khwājah Muzhir, a merchant, that, at the period in question, one night Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn saw, in a dream, that he was in Miṣr, and that, at night, some people seized him, and took him away to the palace of the sovereign, and, having placed a tent-rope around his neck, they hung him up from the battlements of the palace. The terror which this produced awoke him from his sleep, and his apprehension became still greater than before, and he was constantly overwhelmed with anxiety. Unexpectedly, the envoy from the 'Alawis of Miṣr arrived to solicit aid from Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn, as has been related previously. The Sultān appointed Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn's uncle, Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, to proceed thither, and he solicited that his nephew, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, should be allowed to accompany him.

The latter was so overcome with fear, caused by this dream, that he went to an interpreter of dreams, and related the dream to him. The interpreter said:—"May the sovereignty of Misr be propitious! Allow no anxiety to find a way into thy mind, for the Almighty God will make thee a great king." On the strength of that interpretation, with a buoyant heart and with expanded hope, he reached Misr, where all those circumstances happened to him and to his

uncle, as already stated.

When his uncle died, the people of Misr and the troops of Shām were agreeable to his assuming the sovereignty, but he would not in any way assent to it. When the

4 Another of our author's absurdities or wilful perversions of facts. After the death of Assal-ud-Dîn, his nephew, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn, was chosen Wazîr, from among several candidates, by the Ismā'lii Khalifah, 'Āgid, as he considered Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn rather weak in intellect, and less to be feared than the others. in which he greatly deceived himself. Instead of seizing people's

a These are the exact words of our author; but the story is related somewhat differently. "One night, before he had gone to Migr, he saw in a dream that a party of people, having put a tent-rope about his neck, drew him up to the battlements of the metropolis of Migr by the neck. When Asad-ud-Dîn was about to proceed into that country, he used to endeavour to persuade Salāb-ud-Dîn to accompany him; but the latter, on account of this dream, which he kept secret, used to manifest great disinclination to accede. At length, having communicated the dream to an interpreter of dreams, he was told that it signified he should become ruler of that country, and after this he was quite willing to go."

importunity of people, however, exceeded all bounds, Sultan Salah-ud-Din commanded, saving: -- "I will comply

property and effects, Şalāḥ-ud-Din began to appropriate their hearts, by making them his own; and he likewise resolved to lead a new life, and renounced wine and women, riotous living and amusements, and other vicious practices. Having obtained the direction of the affairs of the country, Salahud-Din issued commands to read the Khutbah for Nur-ud-Din; and the latter addressed him in all his communications as the Amir-i-Sipah-salar ['Azid having previously given him the title of Malik-un-Nāṣir]. As Salāh-ud-Din acquired the attachment of the people, 'Azid lost it; and he now sent for his brothers, who were in the service of Nur-ud-Din, who would not allow them to go, mentioning, as his reason, his fear lest either of them should become hostile to his brother Salah-ud-Din, but the truth was Nur-ud-Din suspected his motives. However, when Nur-ud-Din subsequently despatched his troops to operate against the Farangs, who had invaded the Misriah territory, he entrusted Salāh-ud-Dīn's elder brother, Shams-ud-Daulah, Tūrān Shāh, with a command in that army, but with orders that he was not to consider Yusuf [Salahud-Din] as his younger brother, but as the lord of Misr, and his [Nur-ud-Din's] lieutenant and representative; and this order Turan Shah agreed to obev.

Ibn Aşîr says, that, when Şalāh-ud-Dīn had become firmly established, Nürud-Din sent to command him to give up reading the Khutbah for 'Azid, and to read it for the 'Abbasi Khalifahs. Salah-ud-Din excused himself by saving that the people were well-inclined towards the present family, and he feared, if he obeyed, that an insurrection would take place. Nur-ud-Din, however, wrote the second and the third time to order him to do so, and Salah-ud-Din, not daring to disobey the reiterated commands of his suzerain, was in a dilemma, but it so happened that 'Azid was about this time taken ill. Şalāh-ud-Din now consulted with the chiefs and nobles as to what should be done; but some said one thing and some another, and the difficulty was as great as before. At this juncture, a person of some note, named Amir-i-'Alim [Guzi-. dah calls him Najm-ud-Din], an 'Ajami, who had come to Misr, offered to take the initiative, if permitted; and, on the first Friday in the month of Muharram, before the Khatib [the preacher who pronounces the Khutbah] entered the pulpit, this 'Ajami got into it, and prayed for the 'Abbasi Khalifah. Imam Mustazi B'nūr-Ullah. The Misris who were present made no objection, and the next Friday Salah-ud-Din directed that the Khutbah for 'Azid should be discontinued at Kähirah and at Misr [the old capital], and that for Mustazi B'nūr-Ullah adopted, and also in other parts of the Diyar-i-Miṣriah. The disorder of 'Azid had increased, and this matter was, in consequence, not communicated to him, because, in case he ever arose from his bed again, he would soon hear of it, and if not, of what use was it to afflict him? Salah-ud-Din took care, however, to separate the family, slaves, and dependents of 'Azid from each other, and to provide for the security of the dying man's wealth and effects. Before his death, 'Azid sent for him; but, fearing treachery, as he pretended, Salāh-ud-Din did not go, and regretted it afterwards. 'Azid died 10th of Muharram, 567 H. [Fasih-i says 565 H.], and the 'Ubaidi Isma'ili dynasty terminated. [According to VERTOT vol. ii. p. 209, Şalāḥ-ud-Din had the Khalifah murdered in or out of his bath, and says it was narrated freely by the Christians, but that the Moslems were silent on the matter.] When the Abbāsi Khalifah, Al-Mustazi B'nūr-Ullah, received information that the Khutbah had been read for him in Mişriah, he despatched 'Imad-ud-Din, a

with your solicitations on the stipulation that you attend to a request of mine." To this demand of his they signified their assent. Sulfan Ṣalāh-ud-Dīn commanded that they should assemble, on the morrow, in the great mosque, at which time he would make his request known to them, and accept the sovereignty of Misr. To this all pledged their faith; and the next day they all assembled in the great mosque of Misr, and solicited that he would mention his request.

Şalāḥ-ud-Dīn demanded that they should give their allegiance to the Khalifahs of the house of 'Abbās as the successors of the Prophet and chief patriarchs. The people all agreed to pledge their fealty to the house of 'Abbās; and, at that time, the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mustazī B'amr-Ullah', filled the office of Khalifah, and the Khutbah was pronounced in the name of the 'Abbāsi family. A despatch announcing this triumph was forwarded to Baghdād, the capital of the Khalifahs, together with the standard of the Farangs, inverted, and the flags of the Karāmiṭah heretics, to the presence of the Khalifah, Al-Mustazī B'amr-Ullah.

From the capital of Islām, Şalāḥ-ud-Din received the title of Malik-un-Nāṣir⁶, and he became sovereign of Miṣr;

venerable and illustrious dependent of the 'Abbāsî dynasty, to Shām, with rich dresses of honour for Nūr-ud-Dīn—to the sovereign, not to his lieutenant, Salāḥ ud-Dīn,—but robes of honour were also despatched to Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, together with black hangings for the pulpits of Miṣriāh, as the Ismā'ilī

colour was green.

In 569 H. Nür-ud-Dîn directed Şalāḥ-ud-Dīn to assemble the forces of Miṣrīaḥ, and march against the Christian territory, and invest Karak, and promised to come himself likewise. Salāḥ-ud-Dīn peported his departure 20th of Muḥarram, from Kāhirah; and Nūr-ud-Dīn, on receipt of his despatch at Damashk, marched towards Karak, and, having reached it, fully expected the arrival of Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn and his forces. He was, however, too cunning to trust himself in the power of his master, and wrote excusing himself on account of pretended disaffection in Miṣrīah. Nūr-ud-Dīn repeated his commands without avail, and had serious intentions of marching into the country and removing his disobedient lieutenant. Ibn-i-Shadād gives a different account of this circumstance, which is too long for insertion here, and says it happened in 568 H. Nūr-ud-Dīn died in 569 H.

⁶ Faşil-î says that, the first time the Khutbah was read in the Diyār-i-Miṣrāh, it was read for Al-Mustanjid, who died in the beginning of the month of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 566 H., but, subsequently, the news of his death, and the accession of his son Al-Mustari B'uūr-Ullah Inot B'amr-Ullah] was received.

⁶ This statement is totally incorrect: the title was conferred upon him by 'Âzid, the Ismā'ili Khalifah, when Salāh-ud-Din became his Wazir,

and, at this time also, Sultān Nūr-ud-Dīn died. Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn marched into Shām, and assumed the throne of sovereignty, as has been previously stated. He conferred the [government of the] territory of Miṣr upon one of his sons, Malik-ul-'Azīz, and another son, Malik-ul-Afal, he nominated to be his heir; and upon his brother, Malik-ul-'Ādil, he conferred the province of Diyār-i-Bakr.

One of the most distinguished [persons] of the trust-worthy has related, that, when the news of the accession of Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn reached the territories of Rūm and the Kaiṣars* of the Farangs, a countless army came from the country of the infidels, and advanced into <u>Sh</u>ām, and fought a battle with Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn before the gate of Damashk*. The army of Islām was defeated and overthrown, and the Sultān, flying before them, retired within the walls of the city of Damashk. The infidels pitched their camp before the gates of the place, and the Musalmäns sustained great calamity and misery.

Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn assembled the inhabitants of Damashk in a certain place, in order to induce them to pledge themselves to make holy war upon the infidels, and to attack them and drive them away. He deputed one of the godly 'Ulamā to ascend the pulpit, to speak a few words in order to incite the people to holy warfare, and urge them

⁷ Nūr-ud-Din did not die until 569 H., and the Khutbah was read for the 'Abbāsis in 567 H.

⁸ The plural form is used in all the copies of the text collated.

⁹ This assertion is totally false: during the whole of the reign of Şalāh-ud-Din, and the numerous battles that took place therein, no battle was ever fought before Damashk between him and the Farangs. The rest of our author's statement may be depended upon accordingly. It is something like 700 horse routing 80,000 Crusaders, and their dead lying in heaps for miles. Our worthy author probably considered, when he wrote this, that, as Hindustan was such a far-off country, he might make any statement for the glorification of the Mussalman faith with impunity. The great battles that took place during the reign of Salāh-ud-Din, of course, are not mentioned, and were probably unknown to Minhāj-i-Sarāj, who was "so industrious in collecting information from 'trustworthy persons,' and who often [very!] mentions his authority for the facts he records"-of which, probably, the matter of the rings for the ears of the Crusaders farther on is one. Our author has evidently been confused about the investment of Damashk in the year 543 H., some years before Sulfan Nür-ud-Din obtained possession of it, when Şalāh-ud-Din was in his eleventh year, and in the defence of which city his eldest brother, Amir Nur-ud-Daulah Shahan Shah, so greatly distinguished himself, and died of the wounds he received on that occasion.

to enter into conflict with the infidels'. The godly ecclesiastic, with all sincerity of heart, turned his face towards Salāḥ-ud-Dîn, and said:—"Oh, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn, from thy mouth, thy tongue, and thy person, emanateth the effluvium of Satan's urine! How canst thou expect that the Most High God will ratify thy vow? how can it be regarded as real and sincere?"

This reproof, by the grace of God, took effect upon the august heart of Salāh-ud-Din. He got up, and on the hand of that godly ecclesiastic he expressed contrition, and renounced wine and all other sins. The people, with sincere eagerness and willingness, renewed to him their vows to undertake holy war; and from that very spot they turned their faces in the direction of the scene of holy warfare. The whole of the people issued from the city, and they fell upon the army of the infidels. The Most High God sent them heavenly assistance, and the enemies of the faith were defeated and overthrown, and such a vast number of them were sent to Hell by the stroke of the sword of the defenders of the true faith, as cannot be numbered or computed. The whole of the Maliks¹ [princes], and

² See beginning of note ⁴, p. 216. Our author confounds both times as well as events.

¹ Şalāḥ-ud-Dfn was too wise to trust to "the people" to make holy war and defend his cities. He depended more upon his hardy troops, well knowing that rabble cannot be turned into soldiers at a nod of the head.

³ Salāh-ud-Dīn's total overthrow, near 'Askalān, at the head of an immense force by the sick king Baldwin IV .- at the time that Salah-ud-Din marched against Jerusalem in Nov. 1179 A.D. = 575 H., when Odo de St. Amand, the Master of the Temple, at the head of eighty of his knights rode through Salah-ud-Din's Mamlük body-guard of a thousand picked men, in coats of mail and saffron coloured mantles, and penetrated to Şalāh-ud-Din's own tent, from which he with difficulty escaped almost naked, and had scarcely time to scramble up the back of a fleet dromedary and make for the desert-is an event which our author would scorn to chronicle. On this occasion, pigeons spread over Egypt the triumphant news of a victory, in order, as the Arab chroniclers say, "to quiet the minds of the people," although scarcely one of the Egyptian army ever got back to Egypt again. Neither would our author condescend to chronicle the crushing defeat, inflicted upon Salah-ud-Din and his immense host, by Richard Cour-de-Lion, and his French and Burgundian allies, near Arsuf, in 1191 A.D. =587 H., nor the alacrity with which, soon after, he agreed to enter into a treaty with Richard [who had rebellion at home to crush], when his forces were in such a woeful plight, but the real state of his affairs unknown to the Christians.

⁴ The word Malik may mean king here; and our author might have desired his readers to believe that all the kings of the Franks were made captive.

nobles, and chief personages among the Farangs were made captives.

The Islāmis having become victorious and triumphant, Sultān Salāh-ud-Din directed every one to devise [means] for the disposal of the Farang captives. At last the Sultan determined to set the whole of them at liberty, and they were set free accordingly; and he made them signify their repentance, and conferred gifts upon them. After they had departed to the distance of a day's journey, they sent a representation to the Sultan, saying:-"We are all your servants, set at liberty by you; send to each of us a ring that we may insert it in our ears, and then we will depart." The Sultan commanded that a sufficient number of rings should be prepared, of pure gold, sufficient to supply every one of them with one of the weight of one miskals; and they were sent to them, and the whole of the liberated captives inserted the rings in their ears, and they went away; and of that host not one person ever again came to fight against the Sultan's troops.

Sulţān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dîn became firmly established, and his illustrious deeds in Islām will endure. He reigned for a very long period, and died. He had six sons, whose titles were as follows?:—Malik-uz-Zāhir, Malik-ul-Afzal,

Probably he heard something about Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din's encounters with the Latin Christians and the battle of Tiberias, just before the capitulation of Jerusalem in 583 H., and has confounded them with the investment of Damashk by the Emperor Conrad and Louis VII. in 541 H., some years before the death of Zangi, Nūr-ud-Din's father, when Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din was about nine years old. He has made a precious hash of the account of the Kurdish rulers, and of Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din's reign in particular.

⁸ Rings in the ears are emblems of slavery. Bigoted Mullas, like our author, stick at no falsehoods in their endeavours to enhance the deeds of their coreligionists; but the 'Arab chroniclers of the Crusades are very different, and their writings, generally, bear the stamp of truth. I need scarcely say that their accounts are very different to our author's, and that such an absurd statement will not be found in any of their writings.

6 He knows all about the rings and their weight, but he does not know how long Salāh-ud-Din ruled, or when he died. All his sovereigns reign "for a long period, and die;" and the same stereotyped expression answers for Asad-ud-Din, Salāh-ud-Din's uncle, who never reigned at all, but was the Wazīr of Egypt for sixty-five days, and for Salāh-ud-Din, who reigned [after Nur-ud-Din's death] from (560 to 89 H.

7 Şalāh-ud-Dîn had a number of sons, but the names of six only have been recorded; the others may have died very young. The correct titles and names of the six referred to are as follows:—

1. Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-'Alī, Malik-ul-Afzal, Nūr-ud-Dīn, who was the eldest

Malik-ul-'Aziz, Malik-ul-Muḥsin, Malik-ul-Mu<u>sh</u>tammir, and Malik-uş-Sāliḥ.

VI. MALIK-UL-AFZALS, 'ALĪ, SON OF ŞALĀḤ-UD-DĪN, YŪSUF, SON OF AIYŪB, AL-KURDĪ.

Malik-ul-Afzal, 'Alī, was the heir of Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf; and on the death of the Sultān he ascended the throne of the territorics of Damashk and Shām'.

All presented themselves before him, and paid him homage, and submitted to him, with the exception of Malik-ul-'Azīz, his brother, who was ruler of Miṣr. He led an army into Shām in order to claim the sovereignty from 'Azīz; and Malik-ul-'Ādil, Abū-Bikr, son of Aiyūb, the brother of [the late] Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, and who held the territory of Diyār-i-Bakr, took part with [his nephew] Malik-ul-'Azīz. They invested Malik-ul-Afzal within the walls of Damashk, and for a considerable time contention continued between them. At length it was agreed that Damashk should be given up to Malik-ul-'Azīz, and peace was effected. The territory of Sar-ḥadd', which is a tract of country in Shām, was assigned to Malik-ul-Afzal.

son, and the heir-apparent. 2. Malik-ul-'Azīz, 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Abīt-I-Fatḥ, 'Uˈsmān, who was the favourite son. 3. Malik-ul-'Tāhir, 'Qhiyās-ul-Dīn, Abīt-Mansjūr-i-Qhāzī. 4. Malik-ug-'Zāfir, Al-Muṣḥtammir, Muṣaffar-ud-Dīn, Abīt-I-Kāsim, Abū-I-'Aabbās-i-Ḥuṣr, full brother of Zāfīr. 5. Malik-ug-'Zāhir, the remainder of whose titles and names are not mentioned, neither are the titles "Malik-ul-Muḥsin," nor "Malik-uş-'Şāliḥ" mentioned except by our author. 6. Malik-uz-'Zāhid, Majīr-ud-Dīn, Abūt-Sulfmān-i-Dā'ūd. He was the twelfth son of Salāh-ul-Dīn, and full brother of Zāhir.

8 For his correct name and titles see note? above. He was the eldest son of Sulfan Salāh-ud-Dīn, and his father's heir-apparent. On the death of his father, at Damaafk, where Afaal then was, and which he held the government of, he assumed the sovereignty over that territory, whilst his brother, 'Azīz, assumed sovereignty over the Diyār-i-Mişrfah, of which he held charge. Another brother, Malik-ug-Zalnir, held Ḥalab. Contention went on between the brothers, Afaal and 'Azīz, the latter supported by his uncle 'Adil, for a considerable time, the details of which are too long for insertion here. At last, Afaal was invested in Damaafk and made prisoner, and a portion of territory on the frontier was assigned to him.

Other writers place Malik-ul-'Aziz next after his father, as he assumed the sovereignty over the territory of Misriah, and overcame his brother, Malik-

ul-Afzal, who held Sham.

The word here used is unintelligible. It is written in different ways in nearly every copy محمد المعادة المنظمة المعادة المعا

He was a learned and very enlightened man', and composed beautiful poetry. The situation in which he was [now] placed, together with the condition of his brother, who was named 'Uṣmān [Malik-ul-'Azīz], and their uncle, Abū-Bikr [Malik-ul-'Ādil], he depicted in the two following couplets, and sent them to the Court of Baghdād, to the Khalifah, Un-Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-Ullah; for the office of Khalifah had fallen to Imām, Un-Nāṣir. The two couplets are as follows:—

"My lord! Abū-Bikr and his companion, 'Uṣmān, Have, by the sword, deprived 'Alī of his right. Remark the fatality of the name; how it suffers, from the last, The same wrong as from the first [generation] it endured 3.3

Atter some time expired, Malik-ul-'Azîz died, and Malik ul-Afzal was entreated to come into Misr. He proceeded thither, and from thence he brought an army into Shām. Malik-ul-'Azîz had made over Shām to his uncle, Malik-ul-'Ādil, and he and Malik-ul-Afzal came to a battle, and the latter was defeated. At length, however, Malik-ul-Afzal chanced to have a meeting with his uncle, who gave him Samisāţ. He remained there for a long time, and he died?

VII. MALIK-UL-'AZĪZ, 'UṢMĀN, SON OF ṢALĀḤ-UD-DĪN, VŪSUF, SON OF AIYŪB, AL-KURDĪ.

The name of Malik-ul-'Azīz was 'Uşmān; and, when Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn came to the throne of \underline{Sh} ām, and the

Other writers say Afzal was a state prisoner when his brother died, and that he was invited to Misr to act as Atā-bak to 'Azīz's son, Malik-ul-Manşūr.

² The celebrated historian, the learned Abū-l-Fath-i-Naṣr-ullah, son of Ziyā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Shibāni, surnamed Ibn Aṣir, was Malik-ul-Afaal's Wazir.

3 Yafā'ī has four lines more. The reference of course is to the Khalīfah 'Alī and the two first Khalīfahs.

4 All the copies of the text are alike here; but, as 'Azīz died in Misr, Afzal was invited to come to Misr. See last paragraph of the next reign, page 224.

After assuming the throne of Misr after 'Azīz's death, Afzal invested his uncle, 'Adıl, within the walls of Damashk, and reduced him to great straits; but his son, Kāmil, having advanced from the eastern parts with an army, raised the investment, and the father and son overcame Afzal, and deprived him of Misr, and he was fain to content himself with Samīṣāt.

6 Some write this name Samisat, others, Shamisat, and some, Samisat. The last, however, seems most correct.

7 In 622 H.

dominions of <u>Sh</u>ām and the territories of Miṣr, Diyār-i-Bakr, Filiṣṭin, and Sikandariah came under his sway, he conferred the throne of Miṣr upon his eldest son ⁸, who bore the title of Malik-ul-'Aziz. He brought that country under subjection, and was a man of tact and capacity, and in the guardianship of that country, he showed many laudable dispositions.

When his father, Sultān Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din, died, Malik-ul-'Azīz led an army from Misr and appeared before Damashk; and his uncle, Malik-ul-'Ādil, joined him. He wrested the territories of Diyār-i-Bakr and Damashk' out of the hands of his brother, Malik-ul-Afzal, and gave up to his uncle, Malik-ul-'Ādil, Shām and Damashk and the whole of that region, and returned again to Misr.

A short time afterwards the decree of destiny overtook him, and he sustained a fall from his horse, and broke his neck, and he died. After this occurrence, Malik-ul-Afzal came into Misr, and took possession of that country.

viii. Malik-ul-'Ādīl, abū-bikr?, son of alvūb, son of \underline{SH} Ādī, al-kurdī.

Some time subsequent to Malik-ul-'Ādil's having ascended the throne of the kingdom of Shām, and after he had defeated Malik-ul-Afzal, who had brought an army from the side of Miṣr, and he ['Ādil] had reduced the various provinces of the territory [entrusted to him] under his sway, the daughter of a Kaiṣar of the Farangs' entered

5 'Azīz was the second, not the eldest son. Afzal was the eldest of Salāḥ-ud-Dīn's sons, according to Yāfa'ā and other chroniclers. See note 7 D. 221. 'Azīz was merely his father's lieutenant in Misr.

⁹ The first attempt on the part of 'Azīz to deprive his brother of Damashk

did not succeed; but on the second occasion he succeeded,

1 See page 223, and note 4.

² His correct titles and name are, Malik-ul-'Ādil, Saif-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr-i-Muhammad.

3 Our author has neglected—for a very good reason, doubtless—to name his "trusworthy" authority for this statement, of a piece with the "rings," and the like. There is nothing whatever contained in any of the authorities I have consulted to warrant such an assertion, not even that a Christian female had had the misfortune to be his captive, and was immured in his haram, much less a Christian princess. Such a circumstance, if true, was not likely to have been passed over in silence.

his haram, and he married her, and that daughter bore him several children.

This Malik-ul.'Ādil was a sagacious, discerning, competent, experienced, and crafty man, and he ruled for a great number of years. He held possession of the different parts [of his territory], to the best of his judgment and ability; and his adversaries kept quietly and peaceably each within his own dominions, and hence he had but seldom to carry on hostilities.

He had several distinguished sons, who acquired great

4 Malik-ul-'Adil accompanied his uncle, Asad-ud-Din, when the latter was despatched into Misr by Nūr-ud-Din, at which time Salāh-ud-Din also went, as previously related. When Salāh-ud-Din acquired power in that country, he sent his brother, 'Adil, as his representative into Sham; and, when Salahud-Din marched against Karak, in Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 579 H., 'Adil was left in Misr, but he was summoned from thence, with all the available troops, to join Salah-ud-Din, as the Christians had assembled in strong force with hostile intent against the Musalmans. 'Adil joined him there accordingly, with an immense army, in Sha'ban of the same year. When Salah-ud-Din gained possession of Halab, in the same year, he bestowed it upon 'Adil, having taken it from his own son Malik-ut-Tāhir, to whom he had just before entrusted it. Salah-ud-Din was in the habit of placing his strongholds in charge of his brothers and nephews and other kinsmen, and not of entrusting them to his sons. At last, Suliman, one of the Amirs [nobles] of Halab, an old friend of Şalāḥ-ud-Din, expostulated with him on the subject and it took effect, and he at once gave back Halab to Tähir. When Sultan Şalāh-ud-Din went against Mausil, in Sha'ban, 581 H., and was taken ill, and a peace was concluded between him and 'Izz-ud-Din Mas'ud, of Mausil, he was joined at Harran, by his brother 'Adil, on whom he had conferred the fiefs of Harran, Ruha [Edessa], and Mīāfārķīn [Martyropolis], after which the Sultan returned to

After the Crusaders, under Richard Cœur-de-Lion and Philip Augustus, took 'Akā [Acre], in Jamādī-ul-Ākhīn, 587 n., when "the Musalmāns sustained such a great calamity," and the Christians were preparing to march against 'Askalān [Ascalon], Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, in consultation with the chiefs of his forces, determined to entrust his brother 'Adil with a portion of his army, to hold the Christians in check, whilst he himself, with the remainder, proceeded to 'Askalān to raze it, in order to deter the enemy from marching thither. Whilst engaged in this operation, during the same night, a messenger arrived from Mailk-ul-'Ādil, saying that the Christians were willing to make peace, if the coast towns were ceded to them. Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, finding his troops so disorganized and dispirited, was under the necessity of agreeding, and he wrote to 'Ādil to make an accommodation on the best terms he could. The authorities, from which these details are taken, agree generally with European chroniclers of the Crusades at this period, and their writings are free from such nonsense as our author writes.

'Adil did not succeed to the sovereignty of Egypt and Damashk until after the death of his nephew 'Arfz, and ousting the latter's son, Malik-ul-Manşūr, under pretence of serving whom he came into Misr, from the former country. The Khutbah was read for him there in Shawwal, 596 H., and at Halab, in 598 H., when he obtained sway over it and other parts of Shām and the castern provinces. renown, such as Malik-ul-Kāmil, Malik-ul-Muazzam-i-ʾIsā, Malik-ul-Ashraf, Malik-ul-Ārīte, Malik-ul-Āhāzīe, Malik-ul-Āhāzīe, Malik-ul-Amhad, Malik-ul-Amhad, Malik-ul-Amhad, Malik-ul-Amhad, and Malik-us-Ṣāliḥ-i-Ismāʾil. Each one of them was a sovereign¹ over a different tract of territory comprised within his dominions; and the annals of the good works, and the circumstances of the sovereignty of his sons, will remain [inscribed] on the pages of time, in the countries of Ḥijāz, Ṣhām, and Yaman, until the resurrection at the last day.

Each of the different portions of his dominions Malik-ul-'Ādil conferred upon one of his sons, whilst he himself continually moved about from one part to another with his forces, and, with equity and sagacity, guarded and watched

over them.

He always had a bow at his side, and such was his great strength, that no one in that part, or at that time, could bend his bow on account of its great tallness. He was noted, both by friend and foe, for his truthfulness of word. The whole of the enemies of his country, who were the infidels of Rūm and the Farangs, placed implicit trust in his word; for the dust of falsehood had never soiled the skirts of the robe of his word and his promise. Throughout his dominions no human being suffered from tyranny or oppression.

He reigned in tranquillity and affluence for a period of

thirty odd years, and died8.

* 'Abid, in one copy. 6 Ghani, in two copies.

7 The word used by our author is "Bādshāhs," but his sons were only his lieutenants charged with the administration, subject to his control. When he became firmly established in his dominions, he divided them among his sons, giving each of them charge of one or more provinces. To Mailk-ul-Kāmil he assigned the Diyār-i-Miṣriah, to Mailk-ul-Muagzam the territory of Shāmāh, to Mailk-ul-Aspraf the Shawfah (the eastern parts), and to Mailk-ul-Awad the territory of Mādār-thi; and, in 610 H., after he had established his authority over Yaman, and Awhad had been sent to Mādār-thi, another son, Mailk-ul-Mas'ūd, was sent to Yaman.

* Malik-ult'Adil died in Jamadf-ul-Akhir, 615 H., near the village of 'Alfin, in sight of Damashk, when moving against the Christians, who had entered the coasts of Shām. Hearing of his death, they gave up their designs on Shām, and turned their thoughts towards Egypt, and appeared before Dimyāt [Damietta]. He was a man of great wisdom and intellect, of considerable judgment and conception, of good disposition and temperament, constant to his religious duties and attendanceat public worship, a follower of the orthodox, inclined to learned men, and, altogether, a fortunate and argust personage. He was alike abstemious in his food, and moderate in his passions.

IX. MALIK-UL-MUAZZAM⁹, 'ĪSĀ, SON OF ABŪ-BIKR, SON OF AIYŪB, SON OF SḤĀDĪ, AL-KURDĪ.

Malik-ul-Muazzam was a learned monarch, and endowed with great accomplishments, and Almighty God had dignified him with great attainments.

Among the sons of Malik-ul-'Ādil, who observed the ordinances of the followers of the traditions of the sect of Shāfi'i, Malik-ul-Muazzam' was the only one who was of the sect of the great Imām, Abū Ḥanifah-i-Nu'mān, son of Sābit. Al-Kūfī.

During the troubles in the territories of 'Ajam, when the 'Ulamā of Khurāsān, and Māwar-un-Nahr, became dispersed at the period of the inroad of the infidels of Chin, Imām Sharaf-ud-Dîn, Adîmî, who was a prodigy in the science of theology and religious jurisprudence, and Imām Jamāl-ud-Dîn, Ḥaṣîri², who was a master in the science of physiognomy, came and presented themselves at his Court. Malik-ul-Muazzam became the disciple of these two great Imāms, and other eminent 'Ulamā,—the mercy of the Almighty be upon the whole of them!—and assigned them emoluments and rewards, and fixed places for their abode. He, however, sought mostly to secure the presence of Muhammad Husain³. Shībānī.

The brother of Malik-ul-Muazzam, Malik-ul-Ādil, was by the same mother as himself, and for a long time was

⁹ Most other writers place Mailk-ul-Kāmil, the other son of 'Ādil, next after his father as ruler of Miṣr; but our author has reversed them. Mailk-ul-Muazzam's proper titles and name are, Al-Mailk-ul-Muazzam, Sharaf-ud-Din, 'İsā. To read our author's account of him, one would imagine that he reigned over the whole of his father's territories, but such was not the case. He held a large portion of Shām, but never reigned in Miṣr at all; and, at his death, at Damashk, in 624 H., his son, Mailk-un-Nāṣir, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din-i-Dā'ūd, succeeded him as ruler of that territory. The latter died in 650 M.

One author says of him:—"He was a man of great firmness and resolution, bold and intrepid, of great stateliness and gravity, high-minded and enclowed with many virtues and excellencies, the friend and patron of ecclesiastics and learned men, strongly attached to the doctrines of the Hanifah sect, in fact, the only one of the race of Aiyūb who was a follower of Abū Ḥanifah. He had performed the pilgrimage to Makkah and Madinah, and was, altogether, one of the best and the most inestimable of men."

Also written, Haşirî.

³ In two copies, Hasan.

his brother's associate and lieutenant in the territory of Damashk [?].

Malik-ul-Muazzam reigned for a considerable period, and died.

X. MALIK-UL-KĀMIL 4. SON OF ABŪ-BIKR, SON OF AIYŪB. SON OF SHĀDĪ, AL-KURDĪ,

Malik-ul-Kāmil was his father's heir, and ascended the throne of Misr after his father's death. On the decease of his brother, Malik-ul-Muazzam, he brought the territories of Sham under his jurisdiction. He conferred the sovereignty of the territory of Yaman upon his son, who was named Malik Mas'ūd, and also brought Hijāz under his sway.

4 His names are Abū-l-Ma'ālī, Muḥammad, entitled Al-Malik-ul-Kāmil, Nasir-ud-Din. He was about the greatest of his family, and, of course, our author has said the least about him. He held the government of the territory of Misr during his father's lifetime, and at his death assumed the sovereignty over it. It will be remembered that his father, Malik-ul-'Adil, died when on his way to oppose the Christians, who, on hearing of his death, turned their arms against Misr. They had now reached Dimyat. Malik-ul-Kāmil assembled a large force to repel them, and was joined by his brother, Malik-ul-Muazzam, Lord of Damashk, who by his tact prevented Kāmil's being dethroned by his own nobles, and his brother Malik-ul-Fa'iz, Sābik-ud-Din, Thrähim. After the Christians had taken Dimvät, they determined to advance to Kähirah and Misr; but the Almighty gave Kämil success, and the Christians abandoned the strong position they had taken up in the prosecution of their design, and an accommodation was come to 11th of Rajab, 618 H., and the Christians returned to their own territories, after they had remained between Sham and Misr for forty months [four?] and seventeen days.

Malik-ul-Kāmil raised a dome over the tomb of Imam Shafi'i, on the banks of the Nil; and, when his brother, Malik-ul-Muazzam of Sham, died, and the latter's son, Malik-un-Nāsir, succeeded him, Kāmil marched from Misr to deprive him of his territory. He was joined by another brother, Malik-ul-Ashraf, Muzaffar-ud-Din, Mūsā; and, having subdued Shām in 625 H., he bestowed it upon Ashraf instead of the eastern provinces, which he resumed, and set out for those parts. It was at this time that Sultan Ialal-ud-Din. Khwarazm Shah, invested Khalat [also called Akhlat]. Kamil subsequently made his son, Najm-ud-Din, Abu-l-Mugaffar, Aiyub, his lieutenant over the eastern parts, and his youngest son, Saif-ud-Din, Abu-Bikr, lieutenant in the Misriah territory, and another son, Mas'ud, he sent into Yaman. The latter annexed Makkah, and the Hijaz territory; and the empire of Kamil became of vast extent. When the Khatib of Makkah, on Fridays, prayed for him, he styled him, "Lord of Makkah, 'Ubaidian, Yaman, Baidan, Mişr, Sa'idan, Shām, Sanādīān, the Jazīrāh, and Walidan, Sultan-ul-Kabilatain wa Rabb-ul-'Alāmatain-ush-Sharif, Abū-l-Ma'āli, Muḥammad, Al-Malik-ul-Kāmil, Nāşirusl-Din, Khalil-i-Amir-ul-Müminin." I have not space to say more. He

died at Damashk in Rajab, 635 H.

In the direction of Rūm and 'Arab, he undertook numerous expeditions against infidels, and waged holy war as by orthodox law required; and, after having ruled over the kingdom for some time, he died.

XI. MALIK-UŞ-ŞÂLIҢ, SON OF AL-KĀMIL, SON OF ABŪ-BIKR, SON OF AIYŪB, SON OF SHĀDĪ, AL-KURDĪ.

Malik-uş-Şāliḥ was his father's heir, and, when Malik-ul-Kāmil departed this life, Malik-uş-Şāliḥ ascended the

5 The nearer he approaches his own time, the more our author blunders, and the shorter and more confused his accounts become. Here, the ruler of Misr is said to be ruler of Sham, and vice versa. After the death of Malikul-Kāmil, his empire soon fell into utter disorder and confusion. His son, Malik-ul-'Adil, Abū-Bikr, who was quite a youth, succeeded; and his cousin, Malik-ul-Tawad, Muzaffar-ud-Din, Yunas, son of Shams-ud-Din, Maudud, son of 'Adil [Salāh-ud-Dīn's brother, and father of Malik-ul-Kāmil], became his deputy with the accord of the nobles of Kamil. Malik-ul-'Adil exercised the sovereignty, or held the name of sovereign rather, for about two years, when his nobles assembled together at Balbis, seized him, and sent for his brother, MALIK-UŞ-ŞALIH, NAJM-UD-DÎN, AIYÜB, who was at Damashk, which he had promised to give up to Malik-ul-Jawad for other territory. On this, Sālih's uncle, also called Malik uş-Şālih, 'Imād ud-Dīn, Lord of Ba'albak, being supported by Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, Asad-i-Sher-i-Koh, Lord of Hims, when Salih [son of Kamil] set out towards Misrah, and remained encamped at Balbis for some time, made a dash upon Damashk and gained possession of it. Malik-us-Sälih's [son of Kämil] adherents, fearing for the safety of their-families and homes at Damashk, deserted him, and left him nearly alone in his camp at Balbis, and went over to Salih, the uncle. The younger Salih, before he could fly to some place of safety, was pounced upon by Malik-un-Nāṣir, son of Malik-ul-Muaggam [son of the first 'Adil], Lord of Karak, who carried him off to that stronghold; but he set him at liberty again the same year, 637 H., and at the request of 'Adil's nobles, and attended by the same Naşir and his forces, Malik-uş-Şalih [son of Kamil] entered Kāhirah in Zī-Ka'dah of the same year. The author from whose work most of these extracts have been taken, says, "I was present there at the time, and Malik-ul-'Adil was brought forth seated in a covered litter, and under an scort, and immured in the fortress of Sultaniah."

Malik-uş-Şāliḥ regained possession of Damashk in 643 H., and proceeded thither, and, when on his way back to Miṣrāh, was taken dangerously ill, and had to remain at Shamim. The Christians had resolved to attack his territory, and they reached Dimyāf on Friday, 20th of Şafar, 647 H. The city was totally abandoned by its inhabitants, who fied. They gained possession of the place on the following Sunday. Malik-uş-Şāliḥ was removed from Shamim to Manşūrah, and had to be kept there, so ill was he, until the night of 14th of Sha'bān, when he died. His remains were deposited in the Jadlāhal Masjid, and for near three months his death was concealed, until his son, Malik-ul-Muagzam, Tūrān Shāh, arrived there from his fief of Kaif [or Kayif] when the Khuttah was read for him, and the father's death was made known.

throne of Misr, and took possession of the dominions of

his father and his grandfather.

According to the best of his capability, he provided for and advanced the sons of his uncles, and his own brothers, and took measures for the safety of his dominions; but his life was a brief one, and, after a short time, he died, leaving young children behind him.

Trustworthy persons have related, that, during the calamities and troubles which happened in Irān, when the irruption of Chingiz Khān took place, a body of Turks of Khwārazm, and [several] nobles of the Khwārazm.—Shāhi dynasty, retiring before the infidels of Chīn, after the defeat of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barni, son of Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, reached the territories of Shām and Miṣr, and possessed themselves of the dominions of the 'Ādilī dynasty. Some they slew, some passed away, and some remained. May the Almighty have mercy upon the whole of them!

Tūrān Shāh did not get on with his father's slaves [nobles and chiefs], and, after he had put some of them to death for their rebellious conduct, the remainder combined against him, and put him to death in Muharram, 648 H.

Mallic-ul-'Adil died in confinement in 646 H., and left a young son named Mughis-ud-Din, 'Umr. He subsequently had possession of Karak and its dependencies, but was invested therein by the rebel slaves, and capitulated on terms in 662 H., but was put to death by the usurper of the Migriah throne. Most authors consider the Aiyūb dynasty to have ended with Mallic-ul-Muaggam, Tūrān Shāh. There were other branches of the same family, who ruled in different parts until the irruption of the Mughals, but I have not space to mention them here.

SECTION XVI.

THE MALIKS OF THE KHWÄRAZM-SHÄHÏAH DYNASTY.

RESPECTING this notice of the Maliks of the Turks, and the Sultans of Khwarazm, the Almighty's humble servant, Minhāj-i-Sarāi, Jurjāni, states, that, as the account of the rulers of the different nations, from first to last, is now being compiled in the name of his Majesty, the Sultan of Sultāns of both Turk and 'Ajam, Nāsir-ud-Dunvā wa ud-Din, Abū-l-Muzaffar-i-Mahmūd, son of the Sultan I-valtimish-May the Almighty perpetuate his dominion and his sovereignty!-he thinks it expedient to enter here the account of the dynasty of the Sultans and Maliks of Khwārazm, the standards of whose sovereignty, after the decline of the Sanjari dynasty, began to float on high; into whose possession the whole of the territories of Iran came. after the extinction of the dominion of the Maliks of Ghur and Ghaznin; who undertook numerous expeditions against infidels, and waged many holy wars; the monuments of the goodness of whom abound in the land of Iran: and. who, in fact, were the last of the Sultans of Islam'.

I. KUTB-UD-DUNYA WA UD-DIN, I-BAK, THE TURK 2.

The ancestry of these Maliks was related by Malik

1 What of the slave who reigned at Dihli, who refused shelter to Sulţān Jalāl-ud-Din—he who is, and whose descendants are, so often styled "Sulţān over both Turk and 'Ajam," and "Sulţān of Sulţāns of Islām'?

² Our author, in his account of the first two personages of this dynasty, differs wholly from other writers, and, as he has constantly made great blunders respecting other dynasties, and at times quoted authors incorrectly, his statements here, although obtained, as he asserts, from a descendant of those rulers, must be received at their worth.

Baihaki, quoting from Bū-Rijān, mentions that the territory of Khwānam, always formed a separate sovereignty from the period when a kinsman of Bahrām-Gūr, the famous monarch of 'Ajam, acquired power over it, and also after its conquest by the 'Ambs; and further, that even after the 'Arib conquest it was not considered as a dependency of Khuñāšn, like Khuñān add

Tāi-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, who came from the border of Kir-

Chaghanian were, even in the time of the Tahiris. Rulers bearing the title of Khwarazm Shah are mentioned upwards of a century and a half previous to the dynasty now under notice, which I must briefly refer to. Our author himself adverts [page 38] to 'Abd-ullah, son of Ashkan, Khwarazm Shah, as early as 332 H.; and in the present Section farther on [page 233] again refers to them. In 386 H., mention is made of another 'Abd-ullah, styled Khwarazm Shah, who in that year was made prisoner by the forces of Mamun, son of Muhammad, Lord of Jürjaniah of Khwarazm. 'Abd-ullah was taken in fetters to fürjäniah, and subsequently beheaded; and the whole of Khwarazm passed under the rule of Mamun, son of Muhammad. The territories of Khwarazm and Jūrjāniah, had, for a considerable time, been in the possession of this family, who are styled Farighuni, subordinate to the Samani sovereigns. In 387 H., the same year in which Nuh, son of Mansur, Samani, Amir Sabuk-Tigin, and Fakhr-ud-Daulah, Dilami, died, Mamun, Farighuni, died also, and was succeeded by his son, Abū 'Alī, who was married to a sister of Mahmūd of Ghaznin. 'Ali died in 390 H., and was succeeded by his brother, Abu-l-'Abbās-i-Māmūn [son of Māmūn]. He despatched an envoy to Mahmūd, asking the latter's consent to his [Abū-l-'Abbās] espousing his brother's widow. the sister of Mahmud, which request was acquiesced in. This Abū-l-'Abbās was the patron of Bu-Rihan, who passed seven years in his service. The Khalifah, Kādir B'illah, sent him a dress of honour, a title, and addressed him as Khwarazm Shah; but, such was 'Abbas' attachment to for fear of?! Mahmud, that he did not make this matter known. In 407 H. his nobles and troops rose against him, because he meditated acknowledging the suzerainty of Mahmud, put him to death, and set up his nephew in his stead. Mahmud marched into Khwarazm, to revenge his brother-in-law, slew Alb-Tigin [some call him Nial-Tigin] 'Abbas' chamberlain, and other ringleaders, and the murderers of 'Abbäs, annexed the territory, and conferred the government of it upon his [own] Great Chamberlain, Altun-Tash, with the designation of Khwarazm Shāh. Abū Nasr, son of 'Abd-ul-Hirs, Farighūni, Wāli of Jūrjānān and the territory of Jawzjānān, of the same family, had died in 402 H., upon which Mahmud had annexed that territory, and had sent a Diwan of his own to administer its affairs.

Altim-Täsh, Khwärazm Shäh, presented himself at the court of his sovereign, Sulṭān Mas'ūd, in 422 H., and died from the effects of a wound received in battle in 424 H. His son Hārūn, who succeeded, became disaffected towards Sulṭān Mas'ūd, in 425 H., assumed independence, and intrigued with the Turkmāns and Saljūks. This fact our author alludes to at pages 120 and 121, but says nothing further. Hārūn was killed in 426 H., and was succeeded by his brother, Ismā'īl, who held Khwārazm for a short time; but he was soon after ousted by Shāh Malik, a neighbouring chief, upon whom Sulṭān Mas'ūd conferred it, provided he could drive out Ismā'īl. Ismā'īl, accordingly, having been driven out, took shelter with the Saljūks in Khuāsān. In 434 H. Sulṭān Tughril annexed Khwārazm to his dominions; and but little is said about it afterwards until 475 H., when Malik Shāh, Saljūkf, conferred the Intendancy of Khwārazm upon the slave, Nūsh-Tighri-Gharjah, the father of Kuṭb-ud-Dīh, Muḥammad, the first ruler of the dynasty mentioned by our author.

Balkā-Tigîn [Guzîdah and Jahān-Ārā style him Malkā-Tigîn, but it is an error], one of the slaves and grandees of the court of Malik Shāh, who held the office of Tasht-dār, or Purveyor, purchased Nūgh-Tigîn, much in the same manner as Alb-Tigîn, the slave of the Sāmānis, purchased Sabuk-Tigîn

man, in the year 622 H. 3, to the aid of the sons 4 of the Maliks of Nimroz, and arrived in that country, and the territories of Nimroz were left in his possession.

The author of this book came from Khāesār of Ghūr, on a mission from the august Malik, Rukn-ud-Din, Muḥam-mad, 'Uṣmān, Maraghani, in order to secure a compact, and arrived at Farāh of Sistān, and proceeded to the presence of Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Bināl-Tigin.

During the conversation at the interview, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn mentioned that Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Turk, came, with his tribe and kindred, towards Jund and Khwārazm, from the side of Ṣuḥāri³ [or Ṣaḥāri], and from among the tribes of Kiſchāk⁴ and Kankulī, and, for a considerable period, dwelt in those tracts, subject to the Khwārazm-hāhī rulers, Abū Ja¹ſar and Māmūn¹, and their posterity, and used to subsist in the wilds and pasture-lands.

upwards of a century before, at <u>Gh</u>arjah of Samrkand. Some consider he was of 1-ghūr descent, and that he was of the Bekdalf for Begdalf] tribe. After the decease of Balkā-Tigin, his slave, Nfigh-Tigin, who through his talents and sagacity had risen to distinction, succeeded to the office of <u>Tash</u>tdar; and as the revenues of the <u>Kh</u>wāmzm territory were assigned to defray the expenses of the Purveyorship, in the same manner as those of <u>Kh</u>tūstān were assigned for the expenses of the wardrobe, the government of the territory whence the expenses of the Purveyorship were drawn was conferred upon Ntigh-Tigin, with the title of <u>Kh</u>wāxam Shāh.

He placed his eldest son, Kuth-ud-Dīa, Muḥammad, with a preceptor at Marw, to be educated in a manner becoming his station, and on the death of Nuṣh-Tigh, his father, in 490 H. Jsone writers say in 491 H. J. the lieutenant of Sulṭān Barkiārūk, in Khurāsān, at the recommendation of Sanjar, Barkiārūk's brother—for Sanjar did not obtain the sovereignty until many years after—appointed Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Nuṣh-Tigh's son, after the removal of Alanjī, son of Taghdar [some call him Fāḥkār] to the government of Khwāram; and the title which his father had held was also conferred upon him. See page 169, and note *.

3 See page 199.

4 To the aid of one only; but all the copies have "sons of the Maliks," as above. See page 200.

a One copy has Ḥisārī [هاوي] which may be the most correct; but the majority of copies of the text have Ṣuḥārī, or Ṣaḥārī [هاوي]. Neither of these names occurs in the MaṣāLik-Wa-MaṇāLik. The latter word, if not a proper name, may be the plural of 'Arabic signifying "extending, wide [as plains], wild, desert," in which case the broad and extensive deserts of Turkistām would be meant. Yāfa-ī mentions Ṣuḥārā in one or two places.

6 In some few copies of the original, and in Yafa-f, this name is written with kh-Khifchāk. It is the name of a tribe of Turks, and of a desert of

Turkistan, commonly called Dasht-i-Kipchak.

7 These were of the Farighuni family mentioned in note 2, preceding page.

As Kutb-ud-Din was a spirited, enterprising, and highminded chief, and of admirable temperament, the leader-ship of the forces of the Maliks of Khwārazm was entrusted to him, until, as Providence had decreed, the ruler of Khwārazm at that period died, and no son of his survived who could take his place, and his dominions were left without a sovereign. A daughter, however, survived him; and the whole of the great nobles of Khwārazm agreed among themselves, and gave that daughter in marriage to Malik Kutb-ud-Din. The espousals having been concluded, the name of sovereign was assigned to that daughter, and the viceroyalty was conferred upon Malik Kutb-ud-Din, the Turk, her husband.

He brought the whole of the territory of <u>Kh</u>wārazm under his jurisdiction, and the tracts on the confines under subjection⁸; and by his alertness and his sagacity, restrained enemies and tyrants from violence and sedition. He also guarded the frontiers of <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh from the infidels

of Saksin, Bulghar, and Kifchak.

The Almighty so decreed that Malik Kutb-ud-Din had a son born to him by that lady [the daughter of the late ruler], and they gave him the name of Muhammad; and, after the termination of the lives of his mother and father, the sovereignty of Khwārazm devolved upon him.

II. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD®, SON OF Ī-BAK.

When the mother of Tāj-ud-Din, Muḥammad, passed away, and his father died, he became ruler of the kingdom

^{*} From what our author says, the reader would imagine that Kutb-ud-Dîn was an independent ruler, but such was not the case. He was ever loyal to his Saljūki suzerain, and was in the constant habit of attending the court of Sultian Sanjar every other year. When he returned to Khwärazm, his son, who succeeded him, Itsiz - called Utsuz by our author, and, by his account, Kutb-ud-Dîn's grandson—took his father's place at court, nominally as his representative, but in reality as security for his father's good faith. Kutb-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, died in 521 H. [some say in 522 H.], and was succeeded by Itsiz. By no other writer is Kutb-ud-Dîn styled I-bak. Our author's account of him is confused, and he has evidently lost himself here again. At page 148 he says Sanjar 'toonferred' Khwārazm 'upon the son of Khwārazm Ślāh, who was one of his servants, who was the father of I-yal-Arsalân, who was the father of Takish, father of Muḥammad;' and, at page 169, states that he gave the throne of Khwārazm to Malik Utsuz.

* The father of Itsiz [Utsuz of our author], according to all authors of

of Khwārazm in succession to them. He also had a brother, and of his own father and mother, younger than himself; and upon him he conferred the government of the tribes of Kankulī and Kifchāk, from which their own race had sprung, his brother having solicited it, and Malik Tājud-Dīn acceded to his request.

That same brother had sons' who acquired great distinction, and became powerful Maliks in Khurāsān and 'Irāk. During the time of Sulṭān Takish-i-Khwārazm Shāh, and his son, Sulṭān Muḥammad, they were Maliks of Khurāsān, like as was Ulugh Khān-i-Abi, Muḥammad, Khān of Guzarwān². Subsequently he became Khān of 'Irāk under the name of Atā-bak, or preceptor, of the great Sulṭān, Rukn-ud-Dìn, Ghūrì Shānastì, son of Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh.

Ulugh Khān-i-Abī, Muḥammad, had two sons, the eldest, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Azabar Shāh, and the younger, Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Ķutlagh Shāh; and there were likewise brothers' sons of Ulugh Khān-i-Abī, Muḥammad, in Hindūstān, such as Malik Firūz-i-I-yal-timish, son of Sālār, and Malik Tāj-ud Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, who left Hindūstān, and became Malik of Sīstān; and whose narrative this is.

This Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of I-bak, was an intrepid, just, and resolute sovereign; and he came to the Court of the Saljūk sovereigns, and paid homage to

authority—in fact, acc rding to all writers but our author—was Kuṭb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Nūsh-Tigin-i-Gharjah, the frest of the dynasty; and no person of the above name and title is mentioned by any other writer among the rulers of Khwārazm. I suspect our author has done much the same here as he has in his account of the Saljūks of Rūm—mixed up the affairs of two dynasties.

1 As other authors do not mention the name of any such ruler as Malik Taj.ud.Din, Itsiz being the second of the dynasty, and as our author himself gives no name to this said brother, although he gives names to his sons, it will be easily imagined that other authors do not name either the brother or his sons.

³ This name is somewhat doubtful, but the majority of copies have it as above written; and, in all probability, it is the place referred to by Yāfa-t, up the valley of the Murgh-āb river, which he writes Juzarwān. The other copies of the text have Gurdwān, Gurzawān, and Gūrwān; and one, which is generally pretty correct, has Guizarwān—g and j are interchangeable, and jz is often used for z.

This name too is doubtful: there are scarcely two copies alike. One has Urzulū, which is a proper name, as well as Hijzabr.

them. He performed great deeds, and ruled the people with equity and beneficence.

He reigned for a long time, subordinate to the Saljūks,

and died.

III. MALIK JALĀL-UD-DĪN, UTSUZ⁴, <u>KH</u>WĀRAZM <u>SH</u>ĀH, SON OF TĀJ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD.

Utsuz-i-Khwārazm Shāh, after the death of his father, Muḥammad, brought the dominions of Khwārazm under his authority, and ruled over its people with uprightness, justice, and beneficence.

On several occasions he had to move from Khwarazm,

4 Written Itsīz and Itsiz by others [and Ātsiz by Guzīdah], signifying in Turkī "lenn, fleshless, thin." His title was Muzaffar-ud-Dīn, but some writers say it was Abū-l-Muzaffar, 'Alā-ud-Dīn. He succeeded his father by farmān of Sultān Sanjar, his suzerain.

⁵ Kutbud-Din, Muhammad, son of Nüsh-Tigin, and father of Itsiz, died in 521 H. [some say in 522 H.], after a reign of thirty years, and was noted for

his lovalty to Sultan Sanjar,

6 He had really to fly, but our author softens it down. In the beginning of his career and government of Khwārazm, no one could have been more loyal towards Sulţān Sanjar than Itsiz was, and Sanjar was also much attached to him, more particularly because Itsiz had once saved his life. This moved the envious to sow the seeds of distrust and auspicion between them. In 527 H. Isome say when Sanjar marched against Bahrām Shāh of Ghanfin, but this can scarcely be, as that event occurred three years after]. Itsiz obtained permission to proceed to his government, although Sanjar suspected his loyalty; and in a short time after he openly showed his disaffection. Sulţān Sanjar marched against him in 533 H., and invested Hazār-Asp, which was taken. Itsiz was totally defeated, and fled; and the Sulţān installed his nephew, Sulmān Shāh, son of Muḥaimnad, as ruler of Khwārazm. As soon, however, as Sanjar returned to Khurāsān, Itsiz again appeared; and Sulīnān Shāh, not being sufficiently powerful to oppose him, evacuated Khwānzm, and returned to knis uncle's court.

Itsiz now [535 II.] assumed independence and the title of Būdahāh, and coined money in his own name; and this may be partly, if not altogether, accounted for by the fact that Sanjar had sustained a defeat at the hands of the infieles of Karī-Khiṭā only the previous year. Some authors contend that Sanjar's defeat took place in 536 II., and that Itsiz assumed independence in 537 II. The Sulṭān again determined to attempt to reduce him in 538 II., on which Itsiz sought with entreaties, prayers, and costly presents, to propitiate the Sulṭān's anger, and was forgiven; but soon after he again showed disaffection, treated the Sulṭān's farmān with contempt, and subsequently, in 541 II., despatched two criminals, released from prison for the purpose, to assassinate his benefactor, to show his gratitude, perhaps, for "the confidence and good-will" of the Sulṭān towards him, as our author says, and for pardoning his past offences. Again [in 542 II., or, according to Yāfa-ṭ, in 541 III.] Sanjat

sometimes out of necessity, and at others of his own free will. He marched forces against Jund, Turkistān, and Kiſcħāk; and through his wisdom, abilities, and skill, he was exceedingly fortunate in all his affairs. The Court of Khwārazm, through his enlightened policy and beneficence, became the resort of the most learned men.

After obligations and stipulations had been entered into, he presented himself at the Court of Sultān Sanjar, and for some time, in conformity with his commands, Malik Jalālud-Dīn, Utsuz, continued in attendance at the Court of that Sultān until he gained the confidence and good-will of Sanjar Shāh [Sultān Sanjar], who gave him back the throne of Khwārazm?.

After some period of time had elapsed, through the conduct of Malik 'Ali, Chatri', who was governor of Hirāt, with respect to Malik Utsuz, he [Utsuz] rebelled, and declined any longer to submit to the yoke, or to attend the Sulṭān's presence. When the dominion of the house of Sanjar came to an end, the sovereignty of Khwārazm, and the whole of the territory of Ṣuḥāri' [or Ṣaḥāri] of Turkistān, and Jund, fell into his hands, and were left in his possession?

marched against him, and invested Hazār-Asp a second time. After taking it, the Sulṭān was about to invest the capital, when, at the intercession of a holy man, namely, the Zāhid-i-Āhū-posħ, and the Sayyids and heads of the religious bodies, Itsiz again succeeded in proplitating the Sulṭān, and solicited permission to present himself before him, and sue for forgiveness. This he did, after a fashion: he came forth, and appeared before the Sulṭān, and from his horse bowed his head and retired. This took place Monday, 12th Muḥarram, Agā H. Sanjar was not in a position to renew hostlitites, so he passed his rebel vassal's conduct over, and allowed, or rather was obliged to allow him to continue in possession of the territory of Khwārazm. Soon after Sanjar became a captive to the Ghuzz tribe. See Sanjar's reign, page 154.

7 See page 169, where our author says that Sanjar bestowed the sovereignty upon "Utsuz"; but in this Section he has said that the throne descended to him from his ancestors.

8 This person, and what he did, are not mentioned by other authors that have come under my notice, with a solitary exception. Fasih frefers to it, under the year 542 H., in these exact words:—"Rebellion of 'Alf Jairf, Walf of Hirst, during the absence of Sulfan Sanjar, and his combining with 'Alfa-ud-Din, Hussin, Malik of Ghür i" nothing more. See reign of 'Alfa-ud-Din.

⁹ This is utter nonsense. See note ⁶ page 236. Itsiz merely acted according to the world's ways. When he found his suzerain weak and in difficulties he took advantage of it.

¹ This name is plainly written in nearly every copy. See note ⁵, page 233.

² Fasih-i says that Gür Khān, who, in concert with Āt Khān, defeated

The greater number of the most learned men of the Court had previously attached themselves to his service; and Imām Rashīd-ud-Dīn, Watwāṭ hadāyik-us-Sahr fī Dakāyik-us-Sahr ey fardens of Enchantment in the Subitities of Poesy for a the time, likewise, that Malik Utsuz was in attendanca at the Court of Sulṭān Sanjar, he became greatly attached to Sulṭān 'Alā ud-Din, Husain, Ghūrī, Jahān-soz hon account of his learning and talents, to such a degree, that when Sulṭān 'Alā ud-Dīn, Husain, returned again to assume the throne of Ghūr, the Almighty blessed him with a son, and he gave him the name of Utsuz.

Malik Utsuz reigned over Khwārazm for a long period 6

and died.

IV. MALIK, I-YAL-ARSALĀN, SON OF JALĀL-UD-DĪN, UTSUZ.

Malik I-yal-Arsalān ascended the throne of Khwārazm after the decease of his father, and assumed authority over the whole of his late father's dominions. He ruled his people with justice and benevolence', and concluded a

Sultān Sanjar a few years before, died in 537 H., after which Sultān Itsiz reduced Māwar-un-Nahr, which Sanjar had lost, under his sway.

³ What court is not stated, but Sulfan Sanjar's court, it is to be presumed. Courtier-like, finding Sanjar in difficulties, they sought a more powerful master.

4 This Rashid-ud-Din, Watwat, was a lineal descendant of the Khalifah 'Umr.

Al-Husain ['Izz-ud-Din], son of Sām, Ghūri, it is said, was made prisoner by Sanjar in 501 H.; but the person here referred to is his son, Jahān-soz, 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, son of Husain, son of Sām, taken prisoner in 547 H. See note ³, page 149, note ³, page 155, and account of 'Alā-ud-Din.

8 As usual, he reigned for a long period and died, according to our author, "who rarely indulges in high-flown eulogy, but narrates his facts in a plain, straightforward manner, which induces a confidence in the sincerity of his statements and the accuracy of his knowledge." Itsiz ruled over Khwärazm for a period of twenty-nine years, sixteen of which were independent, and died in 551 H.; and in the same year Turkän Khätün also died.

7 Styled Sultan by others.

8 How good all our author's rulers are! all so just and beneficent: never were the like known before or since. Immediately on assuming the throne, suspecting his younger brother, Sulimän Shäh, he seized and imprisoned him, and put a number of nobles, Sulimän's adherents, to death, I-yal-Arsalān was engaged in hostilities with the ruler of Samrkand, and subsequently, in 558 H., marched against Jadd-yäkh of Nighāpūr—Sanjar had lately died—and

treaty with the infidels of Kara Khita, whereby he stipulated to pay a certain fixed tribute yearly?

He contracted an alliance with the Khāns of Kifchāk, and guarded his dominions to the best of his power and ability. He became involved in disagreements and hostilities with some of the slaves of Sultān Sanjar who were rulers of Khurāsān, and peace was brought about in the manner he could best effect.

He reigned for a long time¹, and died leaving sons behind him, such as 'Alā-ud-Din, Taki<u>sh</u>, and Sultan <u>Sh</u>āh, Mahmūd.

V. SULTÁN TAKISH?, SON OF I-YAL-ARSALÁN.

Sultān Takish was a very great monarch, and was endowed with considerable attainments, capacity, and

engaged in hostilities with Rukn-ud-Dîn, Maḥmūd Khān, a grandson of Bugḥrā Khān on the father's side, and a nephew of Sanjar on his mother's; and, after an engagement with Mu-apyid-i-À'thah-dār [see note' fo page 186], returned into his own territory after effecting an accommodation. Subsequently, having, in the seventh year of his reign, neglected to pay the tribute to the ruler of Karā-Khṭtā-İ, the tormer sent a force against Lyal-Arsalān, and the latter's troops, which moved to oppose them, were routed. I-yal-Arsalān died from the effects of a disorder contracted during the war with the Karā-Khṭtā-İs.

If the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr [see p. 179], by becoming tributary to the Mughals, "brought reproach and dishonour upon himself," by bowing his head to circumstances which he could not remedy nor control, and when he was well aware that, at the nod of the Khāin of the Mughals, his territory could be subdued and desolated; what is the conduct of I-yal-Arsalān here, and what that of the Khalifah, Un-Nāṣir, when he, some years before Abū Bikr's day, sent an agent to the infidel Chingiz, and incited him to invade the territory of Islām out of hostility to the Khwārazm Sulfān, because he would not give him, Un-Nāṣir, a slice of 'Irāk'? Our author was too pious a Musalmān to name such a disgraceful act as this. See note's page 242, and page 265:

1 In this instance the "long time" was only eight years. I.yal-Arsalân died, according to most authors, in 567 H.; but one or two say it occurred in 568. As 'Takish rose against his brother, Sulfan Shāh, in the former year, it is natural to conclude that he could have had no occasion to do so in his father's lifetime.

² Styled 'Imād-ud-Din, Takish Khān. Some call him 'Alā-ud-Din. Other authors generally, with the exception of Yāfa-i, place Sulfan Shāh, Mahmūd, next after his father, Istiz, and before Takish; and do not bring in Takish at all until after Sulfan Shāh's death in 589 m. Sulfan Shāh succeeded to the throne according to the will of his father; and, as he was a mere boy, his mother, Malikah Turkān, conducted his affairs. She sent an agent to summon Takish, the eldest son by a different mother, who held the govern-

understanding, and was a proficient in the science of music.

When he ascended the throne he brought under his sway the different tracts of the territory of Khwārazm, and likewise some parts of Khurāsān, either by force of arms

or by peaceful means.

He entered into union with the <u>Kh</u>ān of Kif<u>ch</u>āk, who was named Akrān [or Ikrān], and married the daughter of that ruler. That lady acquired great celebrity in the world, and rose to great eminence, more particularly during the reign of her son, Sultān Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh. She was a woman of great firmness of character,

ment of Jund Isome say he retired thither] to Khwarazm. As he refused to obey, an army was sent against him. Guzidah and Yāfa-i state that Takish demanded a portion of his father's dominions, and was refused; on which he, in 567 H., rebelled, and determined to seek aid from the Khan-i-Khanan, or Great Khān of Karā-Khitā-i. The latter's wife, at that time, held the sovereignty, and Takish entered into an alliance with her; but no mention whatever is made by these or other authors as to Takish having taken either her or her daughter to wife, as they, no doubt, would have done, had such an alliance as our author refers to taken place. Takish, having reached her territory, agreed to make over to her the treasures and revenues of Khwarazm, as soon as he, by her aid, should obtain possession of it, and afterwards to pay a yearly tribute. A numerous army was accordingly sent along with Takish to put him in possession. Sultan Shah and his mother, as soon as they became aware of the combination against them, evacuated Khwarazm, and joined Malik Mu-ayyid-i-Ā'inah-dar, Wali of Khurasan [Nishapur. See page 180, and note 7], and Takish obtained possession of the Khwarazm territory. These events took place in 568 H.

Sultan Shah, however, acquired power over a considerable portion of Khurāsān, and hostilities went on between the rival brothers up to the end of Sultan Shah's life. He lived twenty-one years after these events. In 569 H. Malik Mu-avvid-i-A'fnah-dar, in order to aid Sultan Shah, marched in concert with him against Takish, and gave him battle; but they were defeated, and Mu-ayyid was taken and cut in two by order of Takish. Sultan Shah and his mother fled to Dihistan, followed by Takish and his troops. The mother of Sultan Shah was killed, after which Takish marched against Nishapur, the capital of Mu-avvid's territory. Hostilities having afterwards arisen between Takish and his former ally, Sultan Shah sought aid from the female ruler of Karā Khitā-i, and she and Sultan Ghivas-ud-Din, Ghuri, both rendered him aid. The details are far too voluminous for insertion here: suffice it to say that an accommodation subsequently took place between the brothers in 585 H.; but hostilities were again renewed in 589 H., in which year Sultan Shah died. After his death Takish acquired the whole power; and, according to Guzidah, he now for the first time assumed the title of Sultan, being without a rival. These events are referred to by our author in his accounts of Khusrau Malik, the last of the Ghaznawids, and in his account of the Sultans of Ghur, which see.

very impetuous, and of imperious temperament; and, during the reign of her son, she had the title of Khudā-wandah-i-Jahān [Princess of the Universe]. So great was her spirit, her haughtiness, and her resentment, when roused, that, on one occasion, she became enraged with her husband, Sultān Takish, on account of a female slave with whom he had formed a connexion, and followed him to the bath, and closed the door of the hot bath upon him, so that the Sultān very nearly perished. Information of the circumstance was conveyed to a party of the great nobles, and a number of lords and chiefs arrived, broke open the door of the hot bath, and took Sultān Takish out. He had been reduced to a state of lividness, and one of his eyes had been nearly destroyed.

Sultan Takish was a wise and sagacious monarch; and, with respect to his witticisms, they relate that on a certain occasion a necessitous person wrote to him a statement of his affairs, saying:-"If thou givest me one hundred dīnārs, what difference will it make to the amount of thy treasures?" The Sultan, with his own hand, wrote at the head of the statement, "one hundred dinars:" and this reply, in the opinion of men of learning and talent, was exceedingly clever. On another occasion a person wrote to him, saying:—"In being a Musalman I am thy brother: give me a portion of thy treasures." The Sultan commanded that ten dinars of gold should be presented to him. When that gift reached the indigent person, he wrote another communication to the Sultan, saying: - " I am thy brother; and yet, with all the treasures that thou possessest, not more than ten dinars of gold do I obtain4." The Sultan wrote in reply:—"If the rest of my brethren should demand their shares also, thou wouldst not have received even this much." May the Almighty have mercy on him!

Sultān Takish reduced a half of Khurāsān under his sway by force, and the Maliks [kings] of Māzandarān acknowledged his superiority. He also subdued a part of

³ It is customary, in the East, to write orders, decrees, &c., at the head of

⁴ This anecdote, or one very similar, is related of another before the time of Sultan Takish.

the territory of 'Irāk; and Sultān Tughril, of 'Irāk, who was the nephew of Sultān Sanjar, fell a captive into his hands."

Hostilities arose between him and the Court of the Khalifah on account of some of the territories of 'Irāk',

At page 165, which see, our author was in doubt as to who Tughril was. In 558 H. Kutlagh Inānaj, son of the Atā-bak, Jahān Palhawān, Muḥammad, sent envoys, one after the other, to Sulţān Takish informing him to inte escape of Sulţān Tughril, Saljūkī, from the fortress in which he had been immured, and inviting him to invade 'Irāk, promising to support him. For further particulars of these events, see note 8, page 167, and note 8, page 172, where our author entirely contradicts this statement respecting Sulţān Tughril.

6 The Khalifah, Un-Näsir, on Takish overrunning 'Iräk, and possessing himself of the strong places, was desirous that Takish should let him have some share of that territory, and make over some portion of it to his Diwäns. Envoys came and went between them; but, as Takish in the end refused to give up any portion, Un-Näsir, in 590 H., despatched Mu-ayyid-ud-Din, Ibn-ul-Kaşsah, or the Butcher's Son, with robes of honour, valuable' presents, and the like, in hopes that on his appearance at Hamadän he would be favourably received, and that Takish would come out to receive him, and do him honour as the Khalifah's envoy, and humble himself before him; but, on his reaching Asad-äbäd, the Sulgän despatched a force to compel him to retire. Mu-ayyid-ud-Din fled, and speedily placed the river Dajlah between himself and Takish's troops. After this, Takish pushed on to Dinawr, and plundered the place and country round, and returned to Hamadän laden with dirams and dinars, and other booty beyond compute.

In 593 H., shortly after his son, Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad, had been entrusted with the government of Khuräsän, after the death of his elder brother, he was recalled to proceed at the head of an army against Chā-ir Bukā Khān, the Ī-ghūr ruler. He conducted the campaign successfully, and Chā-ir Bukā was made prisoner, and brought to Khwārazm, in Rabī'.

Another expedition was undertaken shortly after against the successor of Chā-ir Bukā, which Takish conducted

in person.

At the end of the year 594 H. Takish marched into Khurāsān again. After three months'. hait at Shād-yākh he proceeded into 'Irāk against Miānjuk, the Atā-bak of his son, Yūnas Khān, who was disaffected. He passed the cold season in Māzandarān, and in the following spring pursued Miānjuk from one end of 'Irāk to the other. Miānjuk and his party were pounced upon and most of them put to the sword, and the rebel took shelter in Fīrūz-koh, from which stronghold he had ousted the Sulţān's seneschal some time before. It was invested and taken, and Miānjuk was placed on a camel and brought to Kazwin. He was imprisoned for a year, and subsequently exiled for life on the hostile frontier of Jund. After this Sulṭān Takiṣh is said to have received a dress of honour from the Khalifah, with the investiture [which he could neither give nor withhold] of 'Irāk, Khurāsān, and Turkistān!

In the following year, 595 H., the Wastr of the Khalifah, who was at Hamadān with an army, drove out the Khwārazmi troops, upon which Takish again entered 'Irāk from Khwārazm, and hostilities were renewed. The Wazir, however, who commanded the Khalifah's troops, had died a few days before the forces came into contact; but the fact was kept concealed, and was not

and Ibn-ul-Kaṣṣāb, who was the Wazīr of the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, entered 'Irāk [with an army] to repel Sulṭān Takish; but he was defeated, and retired to Baghdād again.

This disloyalty towards the <u>Khalifah</u> was a disaster to the empire of Takish, as Maulānā Zahir-ud-Din, Fāryābi, says in the following strophe:—

"Oh, Shāh i since 'Ajam, by the sword, to thee has been consign'd, Towards Mugtafā's place of repose, an army send. Then lay the Ka'bah desolate, and a fan bring, And like unto useless atoms, to the winds the dust of the Ḥaram send. Within the Ka'bah the drapper crumbleth away: place it in thy treasury, And, for the Prophet's tomb, two or three ells of matting send. When thou shalt have a perfect infidel become, rush on Karkh, And, then, the Khalffah's head to Khifta send."

Although Sultān Takish had entered into a treaty with the Sultāns of Ghūr³, nevertheless, through the hostility of [the Court of] Baghdād, Ibn-ur-Rabbi¹ came from Baghdād into the territories of Ghūr and Ghaznīn; and, on another occasion, Ibn-ul-Khatīb came to the Court of Fīrūzkoh, and one Friday read the Khutbah, and, whilst reading it, he made use of these words in the presence of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām :—"Ayyahu-l-Ghiyāṣ al-Mustaghāṣ min ul Takiṣh uṭ-ṭāghī ul-bāghī." "Hail! prop of defence against Takiṣh the traitor and the rebel!" At the time of Ibn-ul-Khatīb's returning to Baghdād!

made known until after the Khalifah's troops had been defeated and put to the rout. The body of the Wazir was exhumed, and the head cut off, and sent to Khwārazm. Farṣiḥ-i mentions this affair, but places it several years earlier, and calls the Wazir, Abū-l-Fazl-i-Muḥammad, son of 'Alī, styled Ibn-ul-Baizā; and further states that, Takiṣh being absent from 'Irāk at the time, the Wazir, with the aid of Kutlagh Inānaj, drove out the Khwārazmī itroops, and pursued them as far as Buṣṭām. After this Takiṣh again entered 'Irāk, and overthrew the Khalifah's troops.

7 The ascendency and power which Takigh acquired by this success, instead of being a blow to the prosperity of his rule, had quite a contrary effect. It became noised abroad throughout both 'Irāks, and thereby his affairs attained a greater grandeur than before. Possibly our author may refer to the inveterate hostility of the Khalifah towards his son and grandson, and his refusing aid to the latter when hard pressed by the infidel Mughals.

The Malik-ush-Shu'ara [Prince of Poets], Khwajah Zahir-ud-Din of Faryab, who died in 598 H.

N A treaty with the Sulfans of Chur is out of the question; in fact the author's own words disprove it. See also following note, and note 'p page 265.
1 A correspondence found when the son of Takigh acquired possession of

the father of the author, Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dîn-i-Minhāj, was despatched to the Court of Baghdād along with him, and, on the confines of Mukrān, the Maulānā was martyred? This intimation arrived from the Court of the Khalifah, Un-Nāṣir-ud-Dîn Ullah, about it, saying:—"Furthermore, Sarāj-i-Minhāj perished in an affray on the road: the Almighty recompense him!"

Sultān Takish-i-Khwārazm Shāh was in firm alliance with Khitā; and trustworthy persons have stated that Sultān Takish had enjoined his son, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, never to quarrel or embroil himself with Khitā, if he desired to preserve the safety of his dominions'; and it turned out as this wise monarch had said. They also relate, with respect to this subject, that the Sultān often used to say that there would be two judgment-days—one, that time which Almighty God has ordained; and the other, that which would happen when he should be removed from this world, through his son's bad faith towards the infidels [of Chin].

Sultan Takish reigned for many years, and died'.

Ghaznin confirms these hostile intentions. See note 4, page 265. In his account of the Khalifah, Un-Nāṣir, our author states that three envoys arrived from the Khalifah's court to solicit aid from the two brothers, Ghiṇṣā-ud-Dīn of Ghūr, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn of Ghaznīn; and that they were named respectively, Inām Shams-ud-Dīn, Turk, Ibn-ur-Rabbī', and Ibn-ul-Khaṭīb; and that his father was sent along with them when they returned to Baghdād.

2 Some copies merely mention that he died.

³ Yāfa-i says that Takish's last request was that his son should neither clash with, nor show resistance against, Gür Khān, nor depart from the agreement previously settled [the tribute], because Gür Khān was as a bulwark of defence in his rear against enemies in that quarter which he should not break down.

4 During his reign Takish became involved, upon more than one occasion, in hostilities with the Khitä-is and the rulers of Turkistān; and, towards the close of his reign, waged war upon the Mulāḥidah hereties in 'Irāk and Kuhistān. He gained possession of their stronghold of Arsalān-Kuṣhāc, the strongest fortress in Asia, it is said. He then left his son, 'Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alf Ṣhāh, in 'Irāk, with Iṣfaḥān as his place of residence, and set out on his return to Khwārazm, and reached it in Jamād'-ul-Ākhir, 596 H. The heretics supposed the Wastr, Nigām-ul-Mulk, to have been the author of their disasters; so they assassinated him. Sulān Takish resolved to avenge him. An army was despatched against them under his son, Kuṭb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, who laid siege to Turṣhīz. Our author chronicles his own father's death, but says nothing of the time or place of the decease of the sovereign whose reign he is supposed to be giving an account of; and, although Takish reigned so near his own time, our author does not appear to have known that he reigned for twenty-five years and six months, the last six and a half years being over 'Irāk' goog ver 'Irā

VI. SULŢĀN JALĀL-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD , SON OF I-YAL-ARSALĀN.

Maḥmūd, son of I-yal-Arsalān, Sulṭān Shāh-i-Jalāl-ud-Dīn, was a rash and impetuous monarch. When his brother, Takish, assumed the throne of Khwārazm, dissension arose between them, and he [Sulṭān Shāh] went from Khwārazm towards Khurāsān, and from thence came into the states of Ghūr, and presented himself at the Court of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām. Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and his Maliks⁴, treated him with honour and deference.

Between the Sultāns of Ghūr and Sultān Takish a firm compact existed; and some parts of Khurāsān had fallen into the possession of the Amīrs of the Ghuzz tribe, and some to the slaves of the Sanjarī dynasty, whilst others had become dependencies of the Court of Ghūr and Firūzkoh, and of Bāmīān.

Sultān Shāh solicited assistance from the Ghūriān Sultāns to enable him to liberate Khurāsān from the hands of his brother and the Ghuzz Amirs. They assigned him a fief for the present, and he was furnished with all things necessary as a guest; but they continued to observe the treaty between themselves and his brother, Sultān Takish, and hesitated to furnish him with the aid he sought?

also. Having despatched his son against the Mulāḥidahs, Sultān Takish was organizing forces at Khwārazm to follow, when he was suddenly taken ill. He recovered, and was advised not to undertake so long a journey, but he would proceed. He was taken ill again, and died on the way, in Ramaṣān, 596 m. See note 4, page 254. Many eminent and learned men flourished during his reign, and numerous works on poetry, medicine, and other sciences, were written and dedicated to him.

5 Styled Sultan Shah, Mahmud, by others.

6 In a few copies there is a slight difference in this clause of the sentence,

which, in them, is-"and the Maliks of Ghur."

7 After his defeat along with Mu-ayyid-i-A'finah-där, and the latter had been cut in two [see note so page 180], and Sulfan Shāh's mother had also been put to death by Takish, Sulfan Shāh went to Shād-yākh to Mu-ayyid's son, Tughān Shāh, who had succeeded his father, and took up his quarters in the territory of Nīṣhāpin. As Tughān, however, had not power to help him, he left his territory and went to the Sulfans of Ghūr [after obtaining written promises of favourable treatment], who received him well. Hostility having arisen shortly after between his brother Takish and the Karā Khīṭā-ī ruler, Sulfān Shāh was delighted, and entered into negotiation with that sovereign.

Sultān Shāh [consequently] left the territory of Ghūr, and proceeded to Māwar-un-Nahr and Turkistān, and sought assistance from the Great Khān of Khitā; and brought an army, and freed Khurāsān from the oppressive grasp and possession of the Ghuzz chiefs, and their tyranny ^a. He made Marw his capital, and marched an

who, to spite Takish, invited him to his Court. On leaving the Ghürlin territory he observed to the nobles of his party that it occurred to him, although he had to put up with some annoyance and mortification from him, that man [Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Ghūrī] would cause much sedition in Khurāṣān; and so it turned out.

8 He stated to the Khita-i ruler that the Khwarazmis and the troops generally were well inclined towards him, and thereby induced the Khan to send forces along with him to reinstate him. On their arrival before Kh warazm, the Khita-is were undeceived, and, finding that no advantage was likely to accrue by investing it, determined to retire again. Sultan Shah now solicited that a portion of the Khita-i army might be sent along with him into Khurāsān, against Sarakhs. This was assented to, and Sultān Shāh and his allies suddenly appeared before it. Malik Dinar, one of the Ghuzz chiefs, held it at that time; and most of his followers were put to the sword, and Malik Dinar himself was dragged out of the ditch of that fortress, by the hair of his head. The rest of his followers sought shelter within the walls. After this, Sultan Shah marched to Marw and there took up his quarters, and dismissed the Khita-1 troops to their own territory. He continued after that to make constant incursions against Saraklıs, until most of the Ghuzz were dispersed and driven from it, but Tughan Shah got possession of it. In Zi-Hijjah, 576 H., hostilities arose between Sultan Shah and Tughan Shah about the possession of Sarakhs; and an engagement was fought between them, in which the former was victorious and obtained possession of that place, and Tüs likewise. From this success Sultan Shah acquired considerable power, because he, contrary to Tughan Shah, was not taken up with cymbals and lutes, and such like frivolous pursuits. He made constant raids upon Tughan's territory, until his nobles and troops became greatly harassed and distressed; and they had mostly gone over to Sultan Shah, and no power was left to Tughan. He applied for aid both to Takish and to the Sultan of Ghur, and once went to Hirat, in person, to solicit assistance from Ghiyas-ud-Din, Ghūri; but all was of no avail. Disappointed and depressed, he lived on miserably till Muharram, 581 H., when he died. See our author's account of him at page 181, where he says "all rulers refrained from molesting him," The same night in which Tughan Shah died, his son, Sanjar Shah, was raised to his father's masmad, and Manguli Beg, his slave, was made his Atabak. The latter afterwards went over to Sultan Shah, who acquired sway over the greater part of Tughan's territory. Malik Dinar, the Ghuzz chief, went off to Kirman, and established himself as ruler therein; and everywhere the Ghuzz Turks were reduced to subjection, or rooted out. See page 182.

In the beginning of 582 H., Takigh having entered Khurāsān, Sulṭān Shāh marched against Khwārazm with a large army, in hopes of seizing it; but Takigh, in return, marched to Marw, Sulṭān Shāh's capital, and sat down before it. As Sulṭān Shāh found he could not gain admittance into Khwā.

army against Hirāt, and invested Füshani; and made raids

razm, and that Marw was in danger, he abandoned the attempt; and, on reaching Amūlah, left his army, and taking fifty picked men with him, made for Marw, passed through Takigh's army, and succeeded in throwing himself into Marw. Next day, on hearing of this feat, Takigh marched away to Shād-yākh, and, in Rabī'-ul Awwal, 582 H., invested Sanjar Shāh, and his Atā-bak, Manguli Beg, therein. After two months an accommodation was entered into, and several men of rank were left there by Takigh to carry out the terms, and he departed for Khwārmzm. Manguli Beg, as soon as Takigh had marched away, seized his officers and delivered them over to Sultān Shāh; and they were kept in durance for a long time by him, until a truce was brought about between the brothers, which, however, was but of short duration.

After the truce, Takish again moved against Shad-vakh, secured Manguli Beg, and then returned to his capital, Khwarazm. Sultan Shah, being ambitious of possessing Shād-yākh, now seized the opportunity and marched against it. He invested it for a time, but, finding the defenders had the best of it, he raised the investment and set out for Sabzwar, and invested that place. It capitulated on terms on the intercession of a holy man, and Sultan Shah, in conformity with those terms, entered it, remained an hour, and departed for Marw again. In Muharram, 583 H., Takish again appeared before Shadyakh, and it was forced to submit, and Manguli Beg came forth and capitulated. Sultan Takish entered it in Rabi'-ul-Awwal of that year. Manguli was compelled to disgorge the wealth he had deprived others of, and was afterwards delivered over to the son of an Imam, whose father he had put to death unjustly, to suffer death according to the law of kisas or retribution. Three months afterwards, Takish having set out for Khwarazm, Sultan Shah, finding the coast clear, made another effort to get possession of Shad-yakh; but, although the walls were for the most part destroyed, the place was obstinately defended. Takish marched into Khurāsān again on becoming aware of this movement on Sultan Shah's part, and the latter, hearing of Takish's entering Khurasan, burnt his battering-rams and made off. Takish remained all the cold season in Khurāsān, preparing for a campaign in Āzarbāfiān, and nearly all the Amirs of Khurasan, who had hitherto not presented themselves, now joined him. In the spring he returned from Azarbājjan, and encamped in the plain of Rādakān of Tūs, an accommodation having been come to between the brothers in 585 H., whereby Sultan Shah was left in possession of considerable territory in Khurāsān, such as Jām, Bākhurz, and other districts. Takish ascended the throne at Rādakān of Tūs [but not before], and soon after set out for Khwarazm. Peace continued between them until after the affair at Marw-ar-Rūd with the Ghūris, with whom Sultan Shah had previously been on the most brotherly terms, in which Sultan Shah was compelled to retire, and his power became much broken, when, having infringed some of the stipulations with his brother in 586 H., Takish again marched to Sarakhs, which Sultan Shah had made the depository of his treasures and military material. It was taken; but, subsequently, another accommodation having been arranged, it was restored to Sultan Shah, who again repaired it. In 588 H., Takish having entered Irak at the solicitation of Kutlagh Inanaj [see page 167, and note 1], against Sultan Tugaril, Saljüki, Sultan Shah seized the opportunity, marched with his forces against Khwarazm, and invested it; but, hearing of the return of his brother from the 'Irak expedition, he abandoned the investment, and retired into his own territory. Takish, having passed the winter at Khwarazm, marched against his brother, Sultan Shah, in the followupon the frontiers of the territory of Ghūr, and created

tumult and disorder. Some of the nobles and slaves of the Sanjari dynasty joined him-such as Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, who was governor of Hirāt, and used constantly to harass and afflict the frontiers of the kingdom of Ghūr. Sultān Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām, gave instructions so that his Sultāns, namely, Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sam, from Ghaznin, Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, from Bāmiān, and Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Harab, from Sīstān, all assembled, marched, and joined Sultān Ghiyāsud-Din, after which they set out for the purpose of repelling Sultan Shah.

They advanced into the valley of the river of Marw, and pitched their camp between Dazak [Dajzak?] and Marwar-Rūd, while Sultan Shah moved his forces from Marw farther up; and, for a period of six months, the two armies, Ghūris and Turks, were arrayed confronting each other. Sultān Shāh used to display great audacity and boldness, and was in the constant habit of cutting off the foragers [of the Ghurian army], whence it arose that Malik Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, the Turk, of Hindustan, who, at that time, was Amir-i-Akhūr [lord of the stables—master of the horse] of the Ghaznin' [ruler], was taken prisoner by the troops of Sultan Shah.

Matters went on in this manner, until, at the expiration of six months, an engagement took place, and Sultan Shah had not the power to resist his opponents, for the troops of Ghaznin crossed the river Murgh-ab and attacked the army? of Sultan Shah, who, unable to repel them, or make a stand

ing spring. As soon as Takish reached Abiward, negotiations for a peaceable settlement of their differences were entered into, and letters passed between the brothers; but, through the folly and precipitancy of Sultan $\underline{\operatorname{Sh}}$ ah, the negotiations were in abeyance, when he was betrayed by Badr-ud-Din, Ja'far, an officer in his service, who held Sarakhs for him. Ja'far delivered up the fortress to Takish, together with his master's treasures; and two days after, at the end of Ramazān, 589 H., Sultān Shāh died. He had reigned for twenty-two years.

9 His brother, his kinsman, and his vassal.

1 To Mu'izz-ud-Din, Sultan of Ghaznin, whose slave he was, and subse-

quently ruler of Dihli. 2 Five copies have "attacked the camp." Yāfa-i barely alludes to this affair on the Murgh-ab.

before them, was defeated; and, perplexed and distracted,

he retired towards Marw again.

Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, of Hirāt, who was with Sultān Shāh's army, fell into the hands of the troops of Bāmiān; and they brought his head to the presence of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and he commanded them to take it to Hirāt. Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn of Bāmiān [likewise], on that day, was assigned a chatr [canopy]; and he was honoured with the title of Sultān.

When they brought the head of Tughril to Hirāt, a Poet repeated these lines:—

"The head of Tughril, which he carried higher than the altitude of the heavens,

And which possessed the jewel and diadem of haughtiness and pride, Without a body, hath to Hari, a spectacle come,

For this reason, that he had an inclination for Hari in his head."

Sultān <u>Sh</u>āh, having been thus defeated, and his army routed and dispersed, retired to Marw; and this affair and this victory took place in the year 588 H.

Sultān <u>Sh</u>āh was [it appears] troubled with a complaint, for which every year he used to take a small quantity of a certain poison, in order to cure it; and, in that same year, the complaint increased, and as a remedy against it he took somewhat more of the antidote, and it killed him, and he died.

VII. YŪNAS KHĀN, SON OF TAKISH, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH 8.

Yūnas <u>Kh</u>ān was the son of Sultān Takish; and, when Sultān Takish subdued the territory of 'Irāk, and wrested it out of the hands of the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, the son of

a The seventh ruler and successor of Takigh was his son Sulfan 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad; and neither Yūnas Khān, Malik Khān, nor 'Alī Shāh, were ever rulers of Khwārazm, but merely held subordinate governments under their father. When Sulfan Takigh entered 'Irāk' in the beginning of 590 H., and Sulfan Tughril was slain in battle [see page 167, and note al, Takigh, after securing 'Irāk, conferred Iṣfahān on Kutlagh Inānaj, son of the Atā-bak Jahān Pahlawān, leaving the Amīrs of 'Irāk wirh him , and the territory of Rai and its dependencies was conferred upon Takigh's son 'Yūnas Khān, with Miānjuk as his Atā-bak and the commander of his troops. The whole of 'Irāk he never held. Takigh did not take 'Irāk from the Atā-bak Abū-Bikr, son of Muḥammad, for a very good reason that no such Atā-bak ever held it in the reign of Takigh.

the Ata-bak, Muhammad, and a second time caused its deliverance from Sultan Tughril, he conferred it upon his

son, Yūnas Khān. He was a monarch of good disposition, and used to live on good terms among his people, and brought 'Irak under his subjection. He began to enter into contention with the troops of the Court of the Khalifah, and that untoward circumstance became a source of misfortune to the sovereignty of his father, and to their dynasty4.

He reigned for a considerable time over 'Irak, and died.

VIII. MALIK KHAN , SON OF TAKISH, KHWARAZM SHAH.

Malik Khān was the eldest son of Sultān Takish, and was a mighty and arrogant monarch. He was endowed with great sagacity, wisdom, knowledge, and understanding,

nobleness of mind, and intrepidity.

When his father wrested Nishapur and other parts of that territory out of the hands of the Sanjari slaves, such as the descendants of Malik Mu-ayyid were, Sanjar Shah, who was the son of Tughan Shah, the son of Malik Muayyid, he induced, by treaty, to come out of Nishapūr1, and gave the throne of Nishāpūr to his son, Malik Khān.

When he assumed the throne of that territory, he brought under his sway the tracts of country around as far as the

- 4 Whilst his father was absent on the expedition against Ghā-ir Būķā Khān, the I-ghūr, in 591 H., Viinas Khān turned his arms [or rather his Atā-bak for him] against the Khalifah's troops in 'Irak. Yunas sought help to carry out this hostile purpose, from his brother Malik Shah, who held the government of Marw and its dependencies. Viinas, however, before being joined by his brother, had defeated the troops of Baghdad, and had acquired great booty. The brothers met at Hamadan, where they made some stay; and, after they had passed a jovial time together, Malik Khān-or Shāh, as he is also styledset out on his return to Khurasan,
- 4 His title was Naşir-ud-Din. When Sulţān Takişh entered Khurāsān in 590 H. on his way back from Irak, he heard of the illness of his son Malik Shah, who held at that time the government of Marw. Takish directed that his son should be brought to him; and, when they reached Tus, Sultan Shah recovered. His father transferred him to the government of Nishapur, which he had previously held, with Shadyākh as his residence in place of Marw, from the unwholesome climate of which his health had suffered; and an appanage was conferred upon his other son, Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad, in Khurāsān; and he was made his father's companion and favourite.

7 For the facts, see note 8 to Sultan Shah's reign, page 246.

gate ⁸ of 'Irāk; and a great number of eminent men assembled at his Court. He reigned for a considerable time, and died, leaving a son named Hindū Khān.

He [Hindū Khān] was an exceedingly intrepid, highminded prince, and was endowed with a poetical genius. After the decease of his father and his grandfather, he began to collect forces in Khurāsān, and, in consequence, his uncle, Sultān Muḥammad, son of Takish, reprehended him¹. Hindū Khān composed a few elegant lines, and sent them to his uncle:—

"A hundred treasure-hoards be thine: the keen poniard mine. The palace thine: the steed and the battle-field be mine. Shouldst thou desire that hostility cease between us, Be Khwāmam thine, King! the country of Khurīsān mine?."

⁸ Alike in all the copies. The Hulwan Pass may be called the "gate" of 'Irak.

⁹ Malik Shah having returned from Hamadan, as related in note 4, preceding page, as soon as he entered Khurāsān, despatched Arsalān Shāh, one of the nobles, to act for him at Shad-yakh, and set out himself for Khwarazm. During his absence great disorder and sedition arose in the Nishapur territory in consequence of disaffected persons inciting Sanjar Shah, son of Tughan Shah, who had previously been relieved of the cares of independent sovereignty, to rebel against Sultan Takish. He had been treated with the utmost kindness, the Sultan had married his mother, and after his daughter's decease, who had been espoused by Sanjar, he had also given him his sister in marriage, and was regarded as a son. He was accordingly summoned to Khwarazm and deprived of his sight, and his fief was taken from him. This was in 591 H., and in 595 H. he died. After Sanjar Shah's threatened outbreak, Sultan Takish had to march into 'Irak against the 'Iraki nobles, in consequence of his son Yūnas Khān's acts. It was on this occasion that the Khalifah's troops, after the death of their leader, the Wazir, were defeated. Takish returned into Khwarazm by way of Isfahan, and conferred the government of Khurāsān upon Malik Shāh, with directions not to go to Marw because of its unhealthiness. His partiality for it, however, was so great, that it drew him there. He was taken ill soon after, and returned to Nishapur : but his illness increased, and he died at the close of the year 593 H.

¹ Yafa-¹, which contains so much information respecting this dynasty, merely states that Sulfan Takish had to delay his departure on an expedition against infidels [heretics], fearing an outbreak on the part of Malik Shāh's sons. Accordingly, the Wazir, Şadr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, Harawi, was despatched to Shād-yākh to assume charge of affairs. He contrived to prevent any tumult, and sent the eldest son, Hindū Khān, to Khwārazm. Subsequently Sulfan Takish conferred the government of Khurāsān upon his son, Kulb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, who proceeded thither; and, two days after he reached Shād-yākh, the Wazir set out to join the Sulfān, in Zi-Hijiah, 593 it. Hindā Khān subsequently took service with his country's enemics, the Ghūrīs. See

note 7, page 255.

This line, according to two copies of the original, might be read :— "Be Khwārzun thine: mine alone the realm of Khuñasun."

Sultan Muhammad-i-Takish wrote the following lines in reply:—

"Soul of thine uncle I this ambition takes the path of insanity: This monition will take effect neither on thee nor on me, 'Till blood, to the hilt, shall the sword's blade smear: 'Till, of one of us two, triumph's fire shall the highest blaze."

Hindū Khān was not powerful enough to offer opposition to his uncle and his armies, and he came to the territories of Ghūr, and sought assistance; but he was unable to obtain it, and he pressed onwards for Khiṭā. He possessed mettle, but he was not favoured by fortune; and he was martyred on the confines of Bāmiān.

IX. 'ALĪ SHĀH 3, SON OF TAKISH, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH.

Sulţān 'Ali Shāh was a very great and illustrious prince; and, when the period came for his brother to assume the sovereignty, he made 'Alī Shāh ruler of Nīshāpūr. When the Sulţāns of Ghūr conquered 'Nīshāpūr, Malik' 'Alī Shāh, with other Maliks of Khwārazm, under terms of treaty, came out of that city, and presented themselves before Sulţān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, and the victorious Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din; and they brought Sulţān 'Alī Shāh [with them] to Ghaznīn. When Sulţān Muḥammad [of Khwārazm] appeared, the second time, before the gate of Nīshāpūr, and Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn', under terms of convention, came out [and surrendered the city], the Sulţān sent him back to Ghūr', and the Sulţāns of Ghūr sent back Malik 'Alī Shāh also, to his brother, Sulţān Muḥammad.

4 Nîşhāpūr capitulated on terms only. They were not observed fairly; and 'Alī Shāh and the Khwārazmī nobles and officers with him were treated with great indignity by the Ghūrs. See note7, page 255.

5 The titles Sultan and Malik are used here indiscriminately.

6 A kinsman of Sultān Ghiyāg-ud-Dfn and his brother.
7 Together with his garrison; and they had dresses of honour given to them, and were treated with the utmost consideration, in order to show the Ghüris how to behave to fallen foes.

³ His title was Tāj-ud-Din. He had been placed in charge of a part of Trāk, with Iṣſahān as the seat of government, some time before the accession of his brother Kuṭb-ud-Din, and when the Ghūrī Sulṭāns appeared before Shād-yākḥ, in Rajab, 597 H.—particulars of which are given under his brother's reign -Tāj-ud-Din, 'Alī Shāh, who had recently left 'Irāk, chanced to be there, together with a number of his other brothers' nobles and officers.

The latter bestowed the throne of Ṣafahān and 'Irāk upon his brother, 'Alī <u>Sh</u>āh, and, for a considerable period, he continued in that country; when, suddenly, he became overcome with fear and apprehension from some cause or other, and left it, and came into the territories of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and presented himself at the Court of Fīrūz-koh.

At that period, the throne of Fîrūz-koh had passed to Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad-i-Sām; and Sulṭān Muḥammad despatched envoys from Khwārazm to the presence of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, so that 'Alī Shāh was seized and placed in durance. At length, a party of 'Alī Shāh's followers devoted themselves to the cause of their master, and martyred Sultān Mahmūd, son of Muḥammad-i-Sām.

When the throne of the kingdom of <u>Gh</u>ūr had passed to the sons of Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmud, son of [Muḥammad-i-]Sām, an army from <u>Kh</u>urāsān⁸ arrived there in order to take possession of <u>Gh</u>ūr, as will subsequently be related; and the <u>Gh</u>ūriāns caused 'Ali <u>Sh</u>āh to be set at liberty, on the day that the <u>Kh</u>wārazmī forces gained possession of Fīrūz-koh.

'Alī Shāh proceeded to Ghaznīn, and there he continued as Malik for a considerable time'. Subsequently, Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, despatched persons who entered into engagements with him on favourable terms; so much so that 'Alī Shāh, placing faith therein, was induced to leave Ghaznīn, and join the Khwārazmī army and reached Tigin-ābād of Garmsīr. A party was [subsequently] appointed and despatched from Khwārazm, and in the year 609 H, they martyred 'Alī Shāh.

X. SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĬN', MUḤAMMAD, SON OF TAKI<u>SH,</u> KHWĀRAZM SHĀH.

Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, had five sons; the

⁸ Khwärazmi troops, though no doubt chiefly natives of Khuräsän—the Khuräsäni contingent.

One copy alone of the original contains the word "Malik." For a correct account of these matters, see the reign of Mahmüd, in Section XVII., for our author seems to have been determined not to relate anything not tending to the glorification of the Ghuris, and often distorts facts to suit his purpose.

^{&#}x27; Before he came to the throne his title was Kutb-ud-Din, but on his accession he assumed that of 'Alā-ud-Din, the title borne by his father.

first, Har-roz <u>Sh</u>āh; the second, <u>Gh</u>ūrī <u>Sh</u>ānastī²; the third, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī; the fourth, Arzalū <u>Sh</u>āh; and the fifth, Āķ Sultān³.

He was a great and potent monarch, wise, valiant, munificent, a patron of the learned, a conqueror, and impetuous; and, whatever qualifications it was desirable a great sovereign and just ruler should possess, the Almighty had endowed him with.

During the lifetime of his father, he bore the title of Kutb-ud-Dîn; and, when his brother, Malik Khān, died, his father conferred upon him the throne of Nishāpūr, and Malik Sharaf-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd-i-Ḥasan, was appointed to be his Atā-bak or governor; and, after some time, the command of the forces of Khwārazm was conferred upon him.

On the side of his mother, likewise, he was a prince of [the house of] Kifchāk and very great, his mother being the daughter of Kadr Khān of Kifchāk; and, from the days of his boyhood, the marks of intelligence and cleverness shone clearly and conspicuously on his brow. Every expedition on which his father sent him, in the direction of Jund and Turkistān, he brought to such a successful issue as was desirable, in fact even a better than could have been anticipated.

At the period when death overtook his father, Sultān Takish, Muḥammad was absent in the direction of Jund and Turkistān', and, when he obtained information of that

² This name is very doubtful. Three copies of the text, in two or more places, agree in the above reading; but others, again, have Naghānastî, Baghānastî, sup> The name of the first son here mentioned varies considerably in different copies. The majority have Har-roz Shāh, but the St. Petersburg copies have Birūz [Firūz?], Nimroz, and Fir Shāh, respectively. This last name is confirmed by other authors, as will be mentioned farther on. The name of the fourth also is written Azarlū, Arzalū, and Uzurlū. The whole of these names are omitted altogether in most copies of the text. Other writers say he had seven sons, three only of whom attained sovereign power. Guzīdah mentions their names as follows:—Ak-Suljān, Azlāk [one copy, Dzlāk], Kurjā [one copy, Būjā; Vafa-ī has Kūjāe] Tigīn [?], Ughūl Malik, Jalāl-ud-Din, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din [Fir Shāh], and Rukn-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī Shānastī. See note ² above. Vāfa-ī mentions another, Timūr Malik. See note ² page 285.

4 Nothing of the kind: our author commences this reign with a totally incorrect statement. He was engaged in the siege of Turshiz when the news of circumstance, he returned to <u>Kh</u>wārazm, and assumed the throne; and, in the year 595 H.*, he brought the dominions of his father under his own jurisdiction.

He conferred the throne of Nishāpūr upon his brother, 'Alī Shāh', as has been already stated; and despatched an envoy to the Courts of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and sought for peace; and I, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, heard from one of the trustworthy [persons] of the Maliks of Ghūr the statement, that one of the messages and requests of Sultān Muhammad was this ':—"I, Muḥammad-i-Takish, who am their ser-

his father's death was received, and another week would have-been sufficient to have taken it. His father's ministers kept the matter secret, and sent off to acquaint Sulfān Muḥammad of it. He concealed the matter from his army, and, feigning illness, prepared to retire. The Mulāḥidahs sent him valuable presents, and offered an additional sum of 100,000 dinārs as tribute. The Sulfān proceeded to Sharistānah, performed the funeral ceremonies of his father, and set out with all haste for Khwārazm. This is a most important reign, and such events as our author has related—a number of most important ones have been passed over—are either incorrectly stated, or moulded to the glorification of the Ghūrīs: hence the notes here will be found, I fear, voluminous, and, were I to notice every thing, I might almost fill'a volume.

5 Not so: his father died in Ramazān, 596 H., and Sultān Muḥammad ascended the throne in Shawwāl of that year.

6 See note 2, page 251.

7 This statement is ridiculous, and totally unworthy of credit; moreover, the events-which follow prove the contrary. No sooner had the Sultans of Ghür and Ghaznın obtained information of the death of Sultan Takish, "than the devil," as one of the authors from whom this extract is taken says, "excited their envy and ambition; and they, without loss of time, despatched a force to Marw under Muhammad-i-Kharnak, whilst they followed at the head of an immense force, including ninety great elephants like mountains in appearance." On reaching Tus they plundered and devasted the country, and slaughtered the people, and then marched to Shad-yakh. The Sultan's brother, Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, who had lately returned from 'Irāk, happened to be there, and the Ghurians obtained possession of the place by capitulation, a tower having fallen from the number of spectators in it, which they took as a good omen. This our author turns into a miracle in the account of Ghiyas-ud-Din, who, by his account, was a miracle-worker. This was in Rajab, 597 H. The place was given up to plunder, and 'Ali Shah, the Sultan's officials, and the chief men of the place, were inhumanly treated and sent off with the garrison to the capital of Ghur. By the fall of this place the Ghuris acquired temporary possession of the whole country, as far as Bustam and Jurjan. This effected, the brothers left a strong force at Nishapur [Shad-yakh was a portion of that city, or rather a fortified suburb] under Malik Ziyā-ud-Din; and Ghiyas-ud-Din repaired to Hirat, and Shihab-ud-Din into the Kuhistan against the Mulahidahs of that part, and afterwards returned to Hirat likewise. As soon as Sultan Muhammad heard of these troubles in Khurasan, he, in Zi-Hijjah of the same year [597 H.], set out at the head of his troops, and early in 598 H. encamped before Shad-yakh. After some skirmishing outside, the

vant, make this request, that the Sultāns would be pleased to accept my services; and, although I am not possessed of the worthiness of being a son, it behoveth that the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, should take to wife my mother, Khudāwandah-i-Jahān, and that he should accept me, Muḥammad-i-Takish, as his son and servant, in order also that I, his servant, may, by the name on the coin of that august monarch, and the Khuthah of that sovereign of exalted dignity, conquer the whole world; and, for the servants of the Court of the Sultāns—the asylum of the world—draw the sword, and become one of those servants."

When this overture had been delivered, the purport coincided with the inclinations of Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dīn, but did not accord with the sentiments of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn [the person chiefly interested], and he declined to ratify it . The latter Sultān assembled his troops, and marched into <u>Kh</u>urāsān, and subdued the whole of that territory; but, when he subsequently set out on his return, Sultān Muḥammad brought an army, and again recovered <u>Kh</u>urāsān.

Whenever the Sultans of Ghūr [and Ghaznin] used to march into Khurāsān, Sultan Muhammad used to retire [as they advanced] to the distance of two or three marches before them; and when they fell back he would follow them up at the distance of two or three marches. In

Ghūrīs retired within the walls "like mice to their holes," and the batteringrams were placed in position, and the ditch filled, when the Ghūrīs capitulated.
They were treated honourably, and sent back to Ghūr "with dresses of honour,
in order to show the Ghūrīs how to treat fallen foes." The Sulţān, after this
afiar, directed that the walls of Shād-yāk, should be razed. All these events
certainly look as though Sulţān Muhammad had solicited the Sulţāns of Ghūr
to accept his vassalage. After this the Sulţān proceeded to Marw and Saraḥths,
which last mentioned place was held by his nephew, Hindū Khān, and held by
him for the Sulţāns of Ghūr and Ghamin. On the approach of his uncle
Hindū Khān fed to Ghūr; but, as the governor in charge of Saraḥths, refused
to open the gates, Sulţān Muḥammad left a force to take it, and continued his
march to Khwārazm by way of Marw to prepare for a campaign against Hirāt.
In Zi-Ḥijāh of that year he encamped in the plain of Rādakān; and having
mustered his forces, both Turk and Tājzk, he commenced his march, and in
due time his tents were pitched in sght of Hirāt.

8 The text differs here in some copies. Some have "by the name and coin," others "by the name of the coin," &c., both of which are meaningless.

Not desiring to be roasted in a bath. His first title was Shihāb-ud-Din.
 The reader would imagine, from the above, that the Ghūriān Sultāns were

short, he never sustained a complete overthrow, and he used to give proofs of his skill and bravery; but, as those Sultans were monarchs of great power and magnificence, he was unable to cope with them effectually.

When the Sultans of <u>Gh</u>ūr died, Sultan Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh, appeared before the gates of Hirāt², and

in the constant habit of invading Khurāsān; but the facts are mentioned in the preceding note 7, page 255.

² Any one reading the above would imagine that Hirst sustained one siege only by the Khwärazmi forces during this reign, and that one after Shihāb-ud-Din's decease; and our author, whose idea of epitomizing events appears to have been to leave out three out of four, or combine three into one, has done the latter here. Hirst sustained no less than three sieges, and one of these occurred before the death of Chiyāṣ-ud-Din, and the second long before the death of Shihāb-ud-Din. The first occurred at the close of 598 H., upon which occasion, the Khwārazmi army having invested it, after the battering-rams had been freely plied on either side, the governor, 'Izz-ud-Din, 'Umr, Maraghani, a man of experience, saw no other remedy than to submit. He sent his son to the Sultān's presence, and the terms were agreed upon, and a large sum of money was paid as ranson.

Hearing of the investment of Hirāt, the Sultāns of Chūr and Chaznīn made all haste to endeavour to relieve it, and recover what they had lost in western Khurāsān; and Shihāb-ud-Dīn, at the head of a large army, advanced by way of Tāi-kān for that purpose. Sultān Muḥammad thought it advisable to retire, which he did, and proceeded towards Marw by way of Marw-ar-Rūd. When he reached Samkha he halted, and negotiations went on between him and the Ghūrīs, who sought the cession of some portion of Khurāsān, the details of which are too long for insertion here. These events took place in 599 H.

Shihāb-ud-Dīn, shortly after, however, heard of the death of his brother, and he hastily withdrew from Khurāsān, leaving Muḥammad Kharnak, the greatest of the Ghūri nobles, and the champion of Ghūr, to hold Marw. The latter, however, having been overthrown by a body of Khwārazmī troops, threw himself into that place, but it was captured, and his head was struck off and sent to the Sulfān at Khwārazm.

This success so greatly elated the Khwārazmī nobles and ministers that they advised the Sulṭān to march again against Hirāt, and to take possession of it, whilst the Ghūrīs were fighting among themselves about the late Sulṭān³ inheritance, as the Hirātās would receive him with open arms. In the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwāl, 600 H.—Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn had died in the previous year [some say he died in 598 H., and others in 597 H.]—the Sulṭān appeared before Hirāt for the second time; and, after immense stones had been poured into the bāzārs and streets of the place, negotiations for surrender were again opened by Albi-i-Ghāzī, the governor, sister's son of the two Ghūrīān Sulṭāns; and after stipulations had been entered into for the safety of life and property, and the payment of a large sum of money, the place was given up.

Some years passed between this affair and the next investment of Hirāt, during which time Shihāb-ud-Din invaded Khwārazm, and had to beat a precipitate retreat, particulars of which will be found under his reign farther on. Shihāb-ud-Din had subsequently entered into a treaty of peace with Sulfain Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh had been sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had had been sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had had seed sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had had seed sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had had seed sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had seed sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had seed sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had seed sassasinated, Khwārazm Shāh had seed sassasinate

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain-i-Kharmîl, Chūrî, came out and paid homage to him; and the Sultān brought all Khurāsān under his sway. When, by his command, Ḥusain-i-Kharmīl was seized by his troops, a Khwājah of Hirāt, named Sa'd-ud-Dîn, a native of Tirmiz, succeeded in getting away from the [Khwārazmī] army, and threw himself into

annexed the Ghaznin territory, and the successor of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din had acknowledged Sultan Muhammad's suzerainty before the next investment of Hirāt took place, on which occasion the waters of the Hari-rūd were dammed up; and 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain-i-Kharmil, one of the Ghurian nobles, had in the meanwhile become Wali of Hirat and its dependencies, which he held of Sultan Mahmud, son of the late Ghiyas-ud-Din. Kharmil, being suspicious of the upshot of the affairs of Ghur, sent to the Sultan repeatedly tendering his allegiance to him. The Sultan was occupied with the affairs of Khita-i at the time, and could not proceed to Hirat, as Kharmil solicited him to do, and to take possession of it and its dependencies. At length the Sultan set out for Khurāsān, and, having taken possession of Balkh by the way, he marched by way of Jazūran to Hirat. He entered it in Jamadi-ul-Awwal, 607 H. After this Mahmud of Ghur acknowledged his suzerainty, and read the Khutbah, and coined money in the Sultan's name, and sent him costly presents, including a white elephant. Kharmil was continued in the government of Hirāt with a salary of 250,000 gold dinars yearly out of the revenues of Khurāsān.

After the Sultan returned to Khwarazm, and became occupied in the affairs of Khita-i, and a rumour had spread abroad that the Sultan had been taken prisoner by the Khita-is, Kharmil became disaffected, and began intriguing with the Ghūrī ruler, and again coined money in his name [from this it would appear that the governor of every province had a mint, or rather coined money, at the provincial capital, and apologized for the past; but the Ghūris, being enraged at his past conduct, resolved upon hostility, and determined to try and oust him from Hirāt, and advanced with an army towards it. Kharmil, who in the meantime had heard of the Sultan's safety, fearing the consequences of his acts, and in order to palliate them, called upon the Khwarazmi nobles stationed in eastern Khurāsān to aid him in resisting the Ghūrīs. They came to his assistance with a body of troops, and, after oaths and stipulations of safeconduct, Kharmil came out, and in combination they routed the forces of Ghur; and this blow quite broke the little power still possessed by them. The Khwarazmi nobles now wrote to Sultan Muhammad, saving that Hirat was like a forest, and Kharmil like a lion within it, and thought the time propitious for getting rid of him. They kept on good terms with him until the Sultan's reply reached them, after which they invited him to a consultation. When the council broke up, the Malik of Zawzan, Kawam-ud-Din, invited Kharmil to his quarters to a feast and drinking bout. He excused himself under plea of want of leisure. Kawam-ud-Din seized his bridle as though determined to take no denial, and gave a sign to the rest of the nobles and chiefs along with him, who drew their swords, dispersed Kharmil's followers, and dragged him on foot to their tents. He was sent away a prisoner to the fortress of Salomad of Khowāf [another historian says "of Zawzan:" it is probably the Salā-Mihr of our author; see page 283], and his effects were seized, and a short time afterwards his head was sent to Khwarazm.

the city, and, for a period of eleven months, he continued to hold the place³.

The Khwārazmī army, by a contrivance devised by Ḥusain-i-Kharmīl, dammed up the water of the river of Hirāt above the city, and all round became like unto a sea; and matters assumed such an aspect, that, if the city had not been entirely surrounded by walls, the water, which rose higher than the housetops, would have overwhelmed it. As it was, upon one or two occasions the ground opened in the middle of the city, and water issued forth from the midst, but it was diverted [and the danger obviated].

For a period of eight months hostilities continued between the defenders of the city and the <u>Kh</u>wārazmī forces in boats'; and, when eleven months of the investment had passed, Sultān Muḥammad-i-Takish arrived' from <u>Kh</u>wārazm, and gave directions that the dyke [which kept the water in] should be opened; and, when the water flowed out, it carried along with it about three hundred

³ The steward or deputy in Kharmil's employ, Zaydi by name, a man of acuteness and cunning, managed to throw himself into the fortress, seeing the state of affairs, and shut himself up there. He was joined by Kharmil's followers and all the vagabonds and rascals of the city, among whom he distributed the wealth in Kharmil's treasury, and defied the Khwarazmi forces. It so happened that the Sultan, on account of the disaffection of a relative of his mother, who held the government of Shad-yakh, had come into Khurasan at this juncture, and had reached Sarakhs on his return. Zaydi now began to fear the consequences of his temerity, and to plead as an excuse that he could not place any confidence in the Khwarazmi nobles for his safety, and that he was merely awaiting the arrival of the Sultan at Hirat to give it up. This the nobles communicated to the Sultan, and solicited him to come. He did so, and, on being made acquainted with Zavdi's doings, his anger was so much kindled, that he ordered that the waters should be dammed up. When the waters had accumulated sufficiently the dam was opened, the waters rushed in, and one of the principal bastions fell. The ditch near was filled up with trees and rubbish, and rendered practicable for the troops; and one day, whilst Zaydi was entertaining his vagabond followers, the Khwarazmi soldiers planted the Sultan's standards on the walls, rushed in, slew them, and carried the place. Zaydi sought to get away unnoticed, but was seized, and dragged before the Sultan by the hair of his head. After this the Sultan directed that plunder should cease, and the shops were again opened; and thus was Hirāt freed from the tyranny of Zaydi and his gang. As Kharmil had been put to death some time before, his having advised the damming up of the Hari-Rüd is, like many other of our author's statements, purely imaginary.

⁴ Boats are not mentioned in all the copies.

⁸ Two paragraphs before this our author states that Sulfan Muhammad appeared before the gates of Hirāt and invested it, but now says quite differently.

ells of the walls of the city, and a breach was thereby effected; and, after fifteen days' fighting, the city was taken by assault.

After this success the Sultan marched to Balkh, and gained possession of that place likewise; and Malik 'Imād-ud-Dîn, 'Umr, Fiwāri' [native of Fiwār], who was governor of the province of Balkh, on the part of the Sultans of Bāmiān, was sent away [as a prisoner] to Khwārazm. From thence the Sultan set out towards Māwar-un-Nahr and Turkistān; and the whole of the Maliks and Sultans of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty, who held territory in the countries of Māwar-un-Nahr and Farghānāh, presented themselves before him.

He then turned his face towards Kulij' Khān of Khitā-i,

6 In some copies he is called Malik Imād-ul-Mulk, Āhwāzî; and in some it stated that he veent, in others that he was sent, and in others that he was sent, and so others that he was taken. Balkh was surrendered before the last investment of Hirāt, as mentioned in the preceding note. Imād-ud-Dīn, having been found acting perfidiously, instead of being put to death, was removed from the government of Balkh and sent to Khwārazm, and was employed elsewhere.

7 Our author has misplaced the order of these events and related them incorrectly, as well as confounded one with another. After the death of Sulfan Shihāh-ud-Dfn, Ghūrī, in 602 H., Sulfan Muḥammad, having no cause for anxiety respecting the safety of his dominions in Khūrāsān, turned his attention to Māwar-un-Nahr, which had remained in subjection to the infidels of Khījā-ī since the defeat of Sulfān Sanjar. The chiefs of that territory had repeatedly solicited him to deliver them from the yoke of those infidels, and, being quite wearied and disgusted with the constant arrivals of agents from Gūr Khān demanding payment of the tribute, which he had purposely kept in arrears, and which his father, Takish, had agreed to pay to the sovereigns of Khījā-ī for assistance rendered to him against his brother, Sulfān Shāh, he now readily acceded to these requests, considering himself powerful enough to ignore all future payments, which he had long considered dishonourable to his sovereignty.

Bulhārā at this time was held by a mean upstart named Sanjar Malik, It was annexed, and the upstart met with his deserts. The Sulfān then despatched an agent to 'Ugmān, Sulfān of Samrķand, of the race of Afrāsiyāb, and of the family of Bughrā Khān, the antagonist of the latter Sāmānān princes. He was already disaffected towards Gūr Khān, for he had solicited the hand of a daughter of the latter, and had been refused; so he became secretly a zealous ally of the Sulfān. This was in 606 H.; and, after consulting with the Sulfān of Sulfāns—as 'Ugmān had been hitherto styled—and his chiefs, Sulfān Muḥammad returned to Khwārazm to prepare for the campaign.

In the eastern parts of Gür Khān's dominions, his great vassals at this period began to act rebelliously; and Kojlak [called Koāhlak and Kūshlak by some writers, but not Kashlū, as our author writes it], son of Tāe-nāk [also written Tayā-nak] Khān, the Nāemān ruler, who had fled from the power of Chingiz Khān, and had sought Gür Khān's protection, was at his court, and ready to

take advantage of any outbreak against his protector.

and, throughout the territories of Khitā-ī and the country of Turkistān, as far as Bilāsā-ghūn and Kāshghar, the Khutbah was read for him, and the coin was impressed with his name. The forces of Khitā-ī, which, in point of numbers, were beyond account and computation, advanced to encounter him. At the head of these forces was Bāniko of Ṭarāz, a Turk of great age and wisdom, but victorious in battle. He had fought forty-five engagements, in the whole of which he had been victorious; and he had defeated Sultān Sanjar, son of Malik Shāh, and overthrown Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, before Andkhūd; and, at this time, he was at the head of that army.

When the battle ensued, Sultān Muḥammad received divine succour and heavenly assistance, and overthrew the host of Khitā-ī, and took Bānīko of Ṭarāz prisoner, and he was converted to the true faith by means of the Sultān himself, and was treated with respect and honour.

Sulṭān Muḥammad thought this opportunity propitious, and such as he had long sought. He accordingly marched to Samrkand, and, being joined by 'Uṣmān and other vassals, set out to invade Gūr Khān's dominions, reached the Jībūn of Fanākat, and crossed. Having advanced into the territory of Ṭarāz, the Khwārazmi forces found Bānīko [several writers call him Tānīko], of Ṭarāz—famous as Jai-tīmūr, son of Kaldūz, elder brother of Burāk, the Chamberlain, who.subsequently usurped the government of Kirnān—the commanderinchief of Gūr Khān's troops, at the head of a numerous, brave, and weilequipped army, drawn up to receive them. An obstinate and bloody battle ensued, in Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 607 H., which terminated in the complete overthrow of the Khīṭā-ī forces. Bānīko, of Ṭarāz, was wounded and taken, as related on the next page, and booty to a vast amount fell into the hands of the victors. This victory filed all the neighbouring rulers with fear and awe of Sulṭān Muḥammad's power, and he now assumed the title of "The Second

In the previous year Māzandarān had been annexed, and in this same year [607 H.] Kirmān was also added to his dominions. Who Kulīj Khān was it would be difficult to tell; he is a totally different person to Kojlak [Koshlak], by our author's own account, and cannot be intended for Gür Khān, as he mentions that ruler subsequently. Kashlū is evidently mistaken for Kojlak. Bāniko, of Tarāz, was Gür Khān's general, as stated above.

8 How absurd, or rather deceptive, our author's statéments are, compared with the accounts of writers who state facts, or who, at least, knew what they were writing about! Banko was wounded in this severe encounter, and was left on the field with only a slave-girl standing over him. A Khwärazmi soldier coming up was about to cut off his head, when the girl cried out to him not to slay him, for it was Banko. He was taken accordingly to the Sulţian's presence, and afterwards sent to Khwärazm as a trophy with the bulletin announcing the victory. When Sulţian Muḥammad returned to Khwärazm, on the termination of this campaign, he ordered Banko to be put to death, and

A reliable person among the trustworthy has related. that, when Baniko of Taraz became a Musalman, Sultan Muhammad was wont to show him great deference and respect, and used constantly to send for him, and was in the habit of questioning him respecting the past events [in the history of Khita-i, and the previous Maliks [kings] who had fought with him in the forty-five encounters he had been engaged in, the whole of which the Sultan made inquiry about of him. Upon one occasion, when engaged in such conversation, the Sultan inquired of him, saving:-"In all these battles which you have fought, and amid the monarchs you have defeated, which among the whole of them was the most valiant and the sturdiest in battle?" Bānīko replied :- "I found none more valiant, more impetuous in battle, or more intrepid than the Ghūri's : and, if he had had an army along with him refreshed and not worn out, I should never have been able to beat him: but, he had retreated before the army of Khwarazm, and but a small number of cavalry remained with him, and their horses had become thin and weak." Sultan Muhammad replied: "You speak truly." The mercy of God be upon them !

Sultān Muḥammad having gained such a great success, the second year after, again assembled an army, and led a force of 400,000 effective cavalry, both horses and riders arrayed in defensive armour¹, into Khiṭā-i, and completely

his body was cast into the river. There is not a word as to his having been converted to Islām. This was the "deference and respect" he received. What follows, as to the conversations about the <u>Gh</u>ūrīs, must be taken at its true value. See also note , page 283.

⁹ Here again we see the determination to glorify all things <u>Charian</u>. One of the oldest copies has "if his army and himself had been refreshed," &c. For a correct account of this affair, see the reign of Mu'izz-ud-Din, otherwise

Shihab-ud-Din, Ghuri, Section XVII.

After the victory gained over Bānīko, the Sulṭān marched against the Malik of Utrār, who, notwithstanding the Sulṭān had invited him to sever his connexion with Gür Khān, refused. His chiefs, however, on the approach of the Khwārasm-Shāhī troops, forced him to submit. He came out clothed in a winding sheet, and with a sword hanging about his neck, but was pardoned on the understanding that he should be removed together with his family, kinsmen, and dependents to Nisā, in Upper Khurāsān, and Sulṭān Muḥammad placed a governor of his own in Utrār. After this, the Sulṭān returned to Samrkand, and bestowed a daughter in marriage upon Sulṭān 'Uṣmān, and leaving an intendant of his own at Samrkand, returned to Khwārszm. It was at this time that he gave orders to put Bānīko to death; and ambassadors

overthrew Gür Khān, who was the Great Khān of [Karā] Khiṭā-i. The whole of the horses, camels, and other

from all parts hastened to tender their masters' submission; and it was at this period that disaffection showed itself at Jund among the remaining vassals of Kädir Khän [called Kadr Khän by our author, and some few other writers, who appear to have copied from him], and therefore Sulfān Muḥammad did not rest long at his capital, but put his forces in motion and marched to Jund. After exterminating those rebels, Sulfān 'Usmān and his family took up their residence in Khwārazm; and some authors state that he was soon after, in the year 609 H., put to death. Having disposed of the affairs of Jund, information reached the Sulfān that 30,000 of Gür Khān's troops had appeared before Samrgand, and invested the city.

The <u>Khiţā.</u>f forces used their utmost endeavours to take it, but their incessant attacks were of no avail. The Sultān was hastening his preparations to relieve it, when the <u>Khiţā.</u>f forces were recalled to act against Kojlak, the Nāemān, who was now making head again. The Sultān marched to Samrkand, and, having been joined by additional forces from various parts, set out from Samrkand against A'nak [or I'nāk, or Ighnāk?], the ruler of which was in alliance with Gür <u>Khān</u>. He had been summoned to submit to the Sultān upon very favourable terms, but, trusting to the strength of his fortress, refused. A force was detached against him, and he was compelled to submit

The Sultan, who had heard of Kojlak's successes, became more ambitious than ever, and Kojlak entered into secret negotiations with him, and incited him to another invasion of Gür Khān's territory. The agreement was, that whoever could first dispossess Gür Khān of the territories of Kāshghar and Khutan as far as the Jiḥūn should have them; and, in case the Sultan did so, Kojlak was to have the remainder. Gür Khān, having obtained information respecting the Sultān's movements, also prepared to oppose him.

The Sultan had traitors also in his camp. Two of his great vassals, the governor of Samrkand, and the Asfahed Salso written Assahed, the title borne by the Maliks of Tabaristan and Rustamdar], despatched agents to Gur Khan secretly, and offered to desert the Sultan with their troops on the day of battle. if, in case of success, the former should have Khwarazm and the latter Khurāsān assigned to him as the price of his treachery. This was guaranteed: and on the day of the engagement, when the ranks of the two armies were drawn up in array, the left wing of the Khita-is attacked the right of the Khwarazmis; and, as agreed upon, the two nobles with their troops. who appear to have been stationed in the right wing, retired from the field, and the Sultan's right wing was forced back and broken. In the meantime, the latter's left wing broke the right of the Khita-is and routed them, and the centres of both armies fell upon each other. The wings on either side began to plunder, and neither party knew whether they were the conquerors or conquered. It was usual with the Sultan to disguise himself on the day of battle, by dressing in the costume of the enemy; and on this occasion, in the utter confusion which ensued, the centres of both armies having become disengaged from each other, the Sultan got mixed up with the enemy's troops, and not being recognized by his attendants, for some days he was in the greatest danger in the very camp of the enemy. Finding an opportunity, however, he succeeded in getting away, reached the river of Fanakat, and restored fresh life to his troops. The news of the Sultan's disappearance, however, had spread into all parts of his dominions. Some said he had been killed, some that he had been cattle, baggage, and followers of the army of <u>Khiţā-i</u> were captured, and the Great <u>Kh</u>ān retreated discomfited before him. Suddenly <u>Kaṣh</u>tlū <u>Kh</u>ān, the Tatār, who had come from Turkistān, fell upon Gūr <u>Kh</u>ān, attacked him, and made him captive; and the whole of the dominions of <u>Khiţā</u> were left in the possession of Sulţān Muḥammad-i

made prisoner; for no authentic account had been received, and the ambitious were ready to take advantage of it.

As soon as he joined his army, messengers were sent out into all parts to intimate his safety; and the Sulfan returned to Khwāraxm to prepare for a fresh campaign. It was on the occasion of the Sulfan's disappearance, that Kharmil of Hirāt became disaffected, and began intriguing with the Ghūris.

The Khiṭā-i troops on their retreat through their own territory slew and plundered their own people, and devastated the whole country until they reached Bilāsā-ghūn, called Ghī-bālīgh, by the Mughals. On reaching that city they found the gates closed against them, for the inhabitants made sure that Sulṭān Muḥammad would annex that part, and that he must be following Gūr Khān's troops with his army, and therefore refused to admit them. All the promises and oaths of Gūr Khān and his Wazīr were of no avail; and the place was attacked and defended for sixteen days, in expectation of the arrival of the Khwārazmī troops. At last it was taken and given up to plunder and massarce, which went on for three days and nights, and a vast amount of booty was taken by the troops.

Two or three writers mention these occurrences immediately after the first defeat of Gür Khān's troops, when Bāniko was taken; but this is impossible, as, very shortly after the sacking of Bliāsāghūn, Gür Khān was seized by Kojlak, and his dynasty terminated after it had lasted ninety-five years. The cause of it was this:—Gür Khān II.—for he was the second of the name—was desirous of enriching hismelf and replenishing his coffers, by making his nobles and chiefs disgorge the booty they had acquired by the sacking of Bliāsā-ghūn and country round. This caused great disorders, which Kojlak becoming aware of, and finding that Gür Khān had been almost deserted by his troops, suddenly surrounded his camp. Kojlak treated him with respect, but possessed himself of great part of his territory. This took place in 610 H., and two years after Gür Khān was put to death—some say he died.

Most works are, more or less, defective with respect to the Sulfān's campaigns against Gūr Khān, and dates are not often mentioned. The Raugatus-Ṣafā only mentions one battle, others mention two; but Guzīdah says there were three battles in all, but gives no details. Here, I regret to say, my excellent guide, Yāfa-ā, which gives full details of two battles, already mentioned, becomes somewhat abrupt with respect to the affairs of Gūr Khān, and, possibly, there may be an hiatus in the MS, as, from the context, a third and more decisive battle is implied; and it must have been after a third encounter that Bilāsā-ghūn was saeked, and Kojlak was enabled to seize the person of Gūr Khān. The second encounter took place in for H, and Faṣlb-1, under the events of 612 H., mentions that, in that year, Sulfān Muḥammad acquired sway over the whole of Mavar-un-Nahr, which had continued in the possession of the infidels of Karā-Khiṭā-f, and the Mughals, since Sulfān Saujar's defeat. On the other hand, however, most writers state that Gūr Khān was taken prisoner in 610 H., and died in fot 2 H.

² Gross exaggeration, as shown by the notes.

Takish. The Sultān of Samrkand, and the Afrāsiyābī Sultāns, he directed should be removed from Samrkand³, and some of them were martyred.

From thence [Samrkand?] Sulţān Muḥammad advanced into 'Irāk, and the territories of 'Irāk, Āzarbāijān, and Fārs fell into his hands. He took the Atā-bak Sa'd captive in battle, as has already been stated, and the Atā-bak Yūz-bak was likewise put to flight'. He placed his son, Sultān

3 All the copies, except one of the oldest, are minus the words "from Samr-kand." Our author inverts the order of most of the events of this reign, as the previous notes show.

4 Our author, on a previous page, has mentioned the hostility existing between the 'Abbasi Khalifahs and Sultan Takish, Muhammad's father; and the arrival in Ghur of ambassadors from Baghdad to negotiate with the brothers, Sultans Ghiyas-ud-Din and Shihab-ud-Din, and his own father's return to Baghdad along with them; and, likewise, the Khalifah's continued enmity towards the son of Takish also. No sooner had Sultan Takish died. than the Sultans of Ghur and Ghaznin hastened to take advantage of the Khalifah's recommendation, notwithstanding our author's absurd statement at page 255. He was too orthodox a Musalman, of course, to mention such a horrid circumstance as the Khalifah, Un-Nāsir's, despatching an agent to the infidel Chingiz Khan, prior to the period of this expedition into 'Irak, inciting him to make war upon Sultan Muhammad-a Musalman, and of which faith he [Un-Nāṣir] was himself the patriarch and head! It was upon this occasion that, fearing to send a letter, the communication addressed to the traitor Muhammad, Yalwai, the minister of Chingiz, was written or rather tattooed [there is a precisely similar story in Herodotus] on the agent's shaven head. The hair was left to grow over it before he was despatched, lest even that mode of communication might be discovered. Among other causes of hostility was this :- The Sultan's flag, borne by the karwan of pilgrims to Makkah, was placed behind that of Jalal-ud-Din, Hasan, of Alamut, the Mulahidah heretic. lately turned orthodox; and another was that the Khalifah borrowed, so to speak, several Fida-is [volunteers, or disciples rather, of the head of the Mulahidahs are so called] from the former, intending to despatch them to assassinate the Sultan; and had sent some of these disciples to murder the Sharif of Makkah, but, instead, they assassinated his brother. Further, when Sultan Muhammad acquired possession of Ghaznin, after the death of Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz [styled Yal-duz, and Yal-duz by some], in 611-12 H., and gained possession of the treasury of the late Sultan Shihab-ud-Din, Ghūri, a document was found therein, from the Khalifah to the Ghurian Sultans, urging them to hostility against him [Muhammad], which accounted for the persistent hostility of the brothers towards him, notwithstanding our author's ridiculous statement referred to above. At length, in 613 H., the Sultan, having sufficient excuse, obtained the necessary decree from the chief ecclesiastic of his dominions, issued a proclamation to the effect that as long as a descendant of Fātimah lived the Abbāsis had no right to the Khilāfat, and that the then Khalifah was to be considered dethroned. His name was omitted from the Khutbah and the coin, and the name of Sayyid 'Alā-ul-Mulk [some few call him 'Ala-ud-Din] of Tirmid, a lineal descendant of Imam Husain, was inserted instead, and he was to be considered as the rightful Khalifah.

Rukn-ud-Dîn, styled <u>Gh</u>ūrī <u>Sh</u>ānastī, on the throne of 'Irāķ, and appointed <u>Ulugh Kh</u>ān-i-Abī Muḥammad, his Atā-bak and Lieutenant; and the Maliks of <u>Gh</u>ūr were directed to proceed into that territory.

Sultān Muḥammad now left 'Irāk, and set out on his return to Māwar-un-Nahr; but, turning suddenly off from

The Sulţān assembled an army accordingly for the purpose of proceeding to Baghdād, ousting Un-Nāṣir, and placing Sayyid 'Alā-ul-Mulk in his place.

On reaching Damghān, Sulṭān Muḥammad found that the Atā-bak Sa'd, ruler of Fārs, with an army, had reached Rai with hostile designs against the territory of 'Irāk. He pushed on without delay, and at once attacked him. The troops of Shīrāz were broken and overthrown at the first onset, and Sa'd was taken prisoner. The Sulṭān was for putting him to death, but Sa'd, having made interest with the Malik of Zauzan, was admitted, through him, to the Sulṭān's presence. Sa'd was released on the agreement to give up two of the strongest fortresses of Fārs, one of which was Iṣṭakhur, and to pay one-fourth of the revenues as tribute. Faṣṭh-Īṣṭates that this took place in 603 H.; but Yāfa-Ā and Guzīdah say it happened in 613 H.; while Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā, Khulāṣaṭ-ul-Akhbār, and some others, say in 614 H. It is somewhat strange that Sa'd did not attempt to shake off the yoke and break the treaty after the disasters which befell the Sulṭān soon after, if the two latter dates be the more correct. Sa'd made over his son Zangī as a hostage and was allowed to depart, as already related; see page 175 and page 177, note 2.

At this same time the Atā-bak Yūz-bak, ruler of Āṭarbātjān, had also marched from that territory with the object of invading ¹Irālş, and had reached Hamadān. The Khwārazmī forces advanced against him, but, on their reaching Hamadān, Yūz-bak decamped. The Sultān's nobles urged pursuit, but that monarch refused his sanction, saying that it would be a bad omen to take two kings in one year; so Yūz-bak got safely back to his own territory. As soon as he did so, however, he sent envoys with rich presents to the Sultān.

and acknowledged his sovereignty.

In the meantime, the advance of the Sultan into 'Irak had filled Un-Nasir and his people with terror. Un-Nāşir despatched an agent to Hamadān to endeavour to deter him by remonstrances and threats, but found them of no use with the Sultan with 300,000 horse at his back, who was resolved to persist. When he reached the Hulwan Pass [the town of Asad-abad] it was autumn, and, whilst there encamped, he encountered a heavy fall of snow. which rose even higher than the tent walls; and nearly the whole of the cattle of his army, and a great number of men, perished. This was the first disaster he had ever met with, and he had to abandon the expedition and return to Hamadan. When the cold season drew towards a close, he thought it advisable to retrace his steps. He returned to Rai, and remained in that part for a little while to repair his losses and reorganize his forces, and arrange the affairs of that territory. He was on his return from thence, where he had left his son, Rukn-ud-Din, in charge of the government, when a messenger reached him from the governor of Utrar, intimating the arrival there of a number of Tatar spies, as he termed them, with a large amount of valuable property. For details see farther on.

⁵ To serve with their contingents. They were subordinate then,

the banks of the river Jazār, he pushed on towards Bāmiān, and, suddenly and unawares, pounced upon Sultan Jalal-ud-Din 'Ali, son of Sam, ruler of Bamian, seized him, and mar-

tyred him, and then returned [to Khwarazm].

In the year 612 H., Sultan Muhammad advanced from Māwar-un-Nahr and came to Ghaznin, and suddenly and unexpectedly possessed himself of the Ghaznin territories Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, retired towards likewise. Hindustan, by the way of Sang-i-Surakh; and the countries of Ghaznin, Zāwulistān, and Kābul, as far as the banks of the Sind, came under the jurisdiction of the Khwarazmi nobles. The Kh'an-salar [the Sewer of the imperial householdl. Kuriz, was stationed at Ghaznin; and the countries of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, the Bilād-i-Dāwar [Zamīn-i-Dāwar], Jarūm, and the throne of the two Sultans, Ghiyas-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, sons of Muhammad-i-Sam, was conferred, by the Sultan, upon his eldest son, Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mangbarni, after which he himself returned to Māwar-un-Nahr,

In the year 615 H., he pushed on towards Turkistān in pursuit of Kadr Khan, who was the son of Yusuf the Tatar, and penetrated as far as Yighur [I-ghur] of Turkistan, so far to the north, that he came under the North Pole, and reached a tract where the light of twilight did not disappear at all from the sight; and, to the vision, in the direction of the north, the glow seemed merely to incline [change over] from the west to the east, and the light of dawn appeared and the day broke.

The matter was accordingly referred to the 'Ulama and Muftis of Bukhārā respecting the obligation to repeat the last prayer at night', [question being asked] to this effect :-

8 This name differs considerably in some copies of the text.

1 All the copies of the text are somewhat at variance here with respect to this name; but it is mentioned again farther on, and is quite plain in several copies. 2 Prayer before retiring to rest, repeated some two or three hours after sunset.

⁶ In most copies this part of the sentence is left out altogether. The name is also written Towar.

⁷ I-yal-duz [or Yal-duz] was taken prisoner and put to death by I-yal-timish in 611 H., before the Sultan entered the Ghaznan territory.

⁹ There is no expedition against any ruler styled Kadr Khan mentioned by other writers at this period, for it was in this very year that the Sultan fled from the Mughal invaders. Our author has evidently lost himself again. At page 254, he says the Sultan's mother was the daughter of Kadr Khan of Kifchak, and he, incorrectly, styles the governor of Utrar by the same name; and thus no less than three Kadr Khans are mentioned.

As the light of twilight did not disappear at all, whether the prayer before sleep was necessary or not? They, with one accord, wrote a reply, that the prayer before sleep was not necessary, when the prescribed time for it could not be found with the people inhabiting such region³.

Kadr <u>Kh</u>ān, the Tatār, having in this expedition been overcome, the calamity of the infidels of <u>Ch</u>in arose, and the darkness of the night of sedition and tumult showed its head from the mantle-collar of actuality, and was the beginning of dire misfortunes to the true faith, and the commencement of calamities and afflictions upon the Muhammadan people. That circumstance occurred after this manner:—<u>Ch</u>ingiz <u>Kh</u>ān, the Mughal, had a son, the eldest of all his sons, Tūshi by name. At this time, this

a Having noticed in the month of June at St. Petersburg that the light did not leave the sky during the whole night, and being desirous of discovering as nearly as possible how far north of the Siḥūn the Sultān may really have penetrated, as the territory of Tarāz is the most northern tract reached by the Sultān, according to Yāfa-ā, I referred the paragraph to the Rev. Robert Main, M.A., Radcliffe Observer, at Oxford; and to the kindness of that gentleman I am much indebted for the following explanation:—

"It is usually considered that twilight exists as long as the sun is not more than 18° below the horizon, and hence we shall readily find that the lowest latitude which will have twilight all night, at midsummer, will be 48° 30′ (= sun's solsitital N. P. D. -18° = 66° 30′ -18°). As we go northwards, of course the twilight will continue longer, till, at the Arctic circle, the sun does

not set on midsummer-day.

"I presume, therefore, that the Sulfān's expedition was towards the north, and the time not far from midsummer; and, from the expressions used, he must have been getting into rather high latitudes, where the sun, after dipping for a little while, would soon transfer the twilight glow from the west to the east. It would appear also that the Sulfān and his army had never seen this phenomenon before, by their apparent surprise at it, and by his sending for advice concerning the evening prayer."

From the above remarks it would also further appear, that Sulfan Muhamnad could not have had any people in his army who had ever been so far north before, and he and they were so much surprised that they concluded [or, rather, our author concluded] that they must be "under the North Pole." It also seems strange that he should see the necessity of writing to Bukhārā for advice, since we might suppose that the people of Khwārazm would have been aware of the fact of this phenomenon.

The territory of Taraz lies between 46° and 49° N. lat.

4 Also called Jūji. This affair took place a considerable time after the merchants had been put to death, and subsequent to the Sulfain's return from 'Irāţ, and, of course, our author has put it bēpre. See note ?, page 272. Whilst delaying at Samrkand, intimation was brought to Sulfain Muhammad that Tūk-Tughān, one of the chiefs of Turkistān, of the tribe of Takrij, was retreating before the Mughals towards Karā-Kuram, the locale of the Kankusli tribe, and that he,

Tüshi, by command of Chingiz Khan, his father, had come out of the territory of Chin, in pursuit of an army of Tatārs, and Sulṭān Muḥammad, from Māwar-un-Nahr and Khurāṣān, had likewise pushed on in the same direction: and the two armies fell in with each other.

A battle ensued between them, and the fighting, slaughter, struggle, and conflict, continued and was maintained from the beginning of the day until the time of

with some troops, had turned his steps in the direction of Fund. The Sultan now moved from Samrkand towards Jund, by way of Bukhārā, to guard his own territory, and prevent their entering it; but, hearing that they were pursued by a numerous army of Chingiz Khan's, under the leadership of his son, Jūji or Tūshi, the Sultan again returned to Samrkand, and taking with him the remainder of his forces, previously left there, advanced with great pomp at the head of a large force to Jund, thinking, as the author from whom a portion of these extracts are taken says, "to bring down two birds with one arrow." [In the meantime, in 615 H., Kojlak had been overthrown by Chingiz, and slain.] He pushed on [from Jund] until he reached a place in Kashghar, lying between two small rivers, where evidences of a late conflict, in the shape of fresh blood and numerous dead bodies, were discovered. Search was made. and one among those who had fallen was discovered to be still alive. From information gained from the wounded man, it was found that Chingiz Khan's troops had there overtaken Tük-Tughan and his followers, who had been defeated and put to the sword, after which Iuii and his Mughals had set out to rejoin his father. Hearing also that the Mughals had only marched that very day, the Sultan pushed on, and by dawn the next morning came up with them, and at once prepared to engage them. The Mughal leaders were not willing to fight, saving that they had been sent in pursuit of prev, which they had already entrapped, and had not permission from Chingiz Khan, but that they could not retire if the Sultan should attack them; and, at the same time, advised that he should not make matters worse than they were already between himself and Chingiz Khan, by any fresh act of hostility. Sultan Muhammad's good star was on the wane, and he attacked the Mughals, who stood their ground manfully. The right wings of either army, as is often the case in eastern as it has frequently been in western battles, broke their respective opponents, and the Mughals at last attacked the Sultan's centre, and forced it back some distance. The Sultan was in some danger, when his gallant son, Jalal-ud-Din, who had been victorious on the right, charged the Mughals in flank, and saved the centre from defeat. The fight was maintained with great obstinacy until night came, when each army retired to a short distance, confronting each other. The Mughals lighted an immense number of fires to deceive the Khwārazmīs, and decamped quietly during the night, and set out to join the camp of Chingiz, who was hastening his preparations for the invasion of the Sultan's territories. The Sultan halted on the field for a few days, and, after this occurrence, his mind, already much changed, appears to have given way entirely; and, having with his own eyes witnessed the vigour and tenacity of the Mughals, he became filled with apprehensions and misgivings, and retreated to Samrkand without attempting anything more. Irresolution and bewilderment now marked all his proceedings. For further particulars, see page 274 and note 1.

evening prayer, and the ranks of both the armies assumed the form of a circle. The right wing of the Musalman forces routed the left wing of the infidels, and pursued after them; while the right wing of the Mughal infidels routed the left wing of the army of Islām and pursued it, and, in this manner, the armies assumed the form of a circle. This battle was maintained from the dawn of day; and, when night came, the two armies separated from each other, and withdrew to a short distance. There was a small stream of water between them; and the two armies halted, facing each other, on the banks of that stream and bivouacked. When the morning broke [it was found] that the Mughal army had marched away. They had lighted great fires, and had decamped, and left them burning.

Sultan Muhammad having thus witnessed and beheld with his own eyes, in this encounter, the warlike feats, the activity, and the efforts of the Mughal forces, the next day retired from that place; and fear and dread of them took possession of his heart and mind, and he never again came against them. This was one of the causes of the miseries

and troubles which befell the people of Islam.

The second reason was this. When Chingiz Khan broke out into revolt in the land of Chin, and Tamghai, and the Greater Turkistan, and Altun Khan of Tamghai, who was sovereign of Upper Turkistan, and the lineal monarch of Karā Khitā-i6, was overcome by him, and the territories of Tamghāi, Tingit, and Yighur [I-ghūr], and Tatār, all fell into his hands; the news of these successes having come to the hearing of Sultan Muhammad, his mind became filled with ambition [for the possession] of Chin, and he became desirous of obtaining authentic information respecting the forces of the Mughals, and the condition of Chingiz Khan. Accordingly, the most excellent Savvid, Bahā-ud-Dîn, Rāzi7, with a party of other persons, were despatched on a

6 For our author's further and more detailed account of Chingiz Khān's proceedings, see last Section of this work.

⁵ Or, Upper Turkistan: the original word will serve for either.

⁷ Probably Ahmad, Khujandi, is the person whom our author has mistaken here; but I am rather inclined to think that this "excellent Sayyid" can be no other than the Badr-ud-Din referred to by Guzidah, who was the chief Diwan in Sultan Muhammad's service, and who became suspicious and disaffected on some account or other, and fled and took service with Chingiz. For account of further proceedings of this arch-traitor, see note 1, page 274.

mission to \underline{Chin}^{s} ; and, when these agents reached that country, \underline{Ch} ingiz \underline{Kh} ān sent trustworthy and confidential persons of his own, bearing numerous rarities as presents to Sultān Muḥammad.

I heard from the Sayyid Bahā-ud-Dīn—the mercy of the Almighty be upon him !—[who said :—] "When we reached the presence of Chingiz Khān, the accursed, the Wazīr of Tamghāj, and the son and the uncle of Altūn Khān, were brought in, and we were summoned. Then, turning his face towards them, Chingiz said :— Behold, my affairs and my sovereignty have attained to such a pitch of grandeur,

Be this as it may, our author differs wholly from other writers here. I have only space for a few details. A person named Ahmad, a merchant of Khujand, and two others, with a considerable quantity of merchandize suitable for the purpose, set out for the great camp of Chingiz Khan. At this time he had reduced under his yoke most of the nomad tribes of Mughalistan and Turkistan -Tatārs, Mughals, I-ghūrs, and others-and a portion of Chin and Ma-chin. The merchants were well received and liberally treated. Subsequently, Chingiz directed his sons, the great nobles, and others, to despatch servants of their own with merchandize into the territory of Sultan Muhammad, to accompany Ahmad of Khujand and the others on their return journey. A large party of merchants, numbering about 450, Musalmans it is stated, left Chingiz Khan's territory with property of immense value, and set out, accordingly, for the Sultan's dominions. At the same time, Chingiz Khan sent three agents of his own to the Sultan, intimating the despatch of these traders with the object of purchasing merchandize suitable for his camp; and, further, to state that he had reduced the refractory around him to subjection and considerable tracts under his sway, and that, in place of estrangement and distrust, intercourse and confidence might arise between them; that merchants and traders might be free to go and come; that their subjects and dominions might be secure and open to each other's people; and that they might aid and assist each other under any circumstances that might arise. When they reached Utrar on the Sihun, the frontier capital of the Sultan's dominions in that direction, the governor. Anial-juk by name, a kinsman of the Sultan's mother, who bore the title of Ghā-ir Khān [not Kadr Khān, as our author states], being offended at the impertinence of one of Ahmad Khujandi's party,-said to have been a Hindu-who addressed him in too familiar a style; and his cupidity likewise being excited by the arrival of all this treasure and valuable property brought by the merchants, sent off a messenger to the Sultan, announcing the arrival of a number of spies of the Tatar, Chingiz, on their way into Iran, and asked permission to put them to death and confiscate their property.

The Sulfan, whose mind was already disquieted at the successes of Chingir, deceived by the perficious message of Chā-ār Khān, and his temper still ruffled at the disaster he had so lately sustained, without thought or consideration most unfortunately gave his consent. The merchants, numbering about 450 Musalmāns, including Chingir's messengers, were put to death, with the exception of one person, who eventually escaped, and told the tale to Chingir's

and the whole of their property was confiscated.

8 Most of the MSS. are defective here, and do not contain the last sentence.

that the monarch of the [empire of the] setting sun has sent envoys unto me.' In short," said the Sayyid, "when he sent us away, he requested that envoys on both sides, and merchants, and kārwāns, should constantly come and go, and bring and take away with them choice descriptions of arms, cloths, and stuffs, and other articles of value and elegance of both empires; and that between the two monarchs a permanent treaty should be maintained."

He despatched merchants along with the envoys of Sultān Muḥammad, with about five hundred camel-loads of gold, silver, silks, and targhū [a description of woven silk of a red colour], together with other precious and valuable commodities, that they might trade with them. They entered the territory of Islām by way of Utrār.

At that place, there was a governor named Kadr Khān', and he sent an account to Sulṭān Muḥammad respecting the importance and value of the merchandize; and solicited permission from him, in a perfidious manner, to stop the party of merchants. Having obtained permission to do so, he seized the envoys and the whole of the merchants, and slew them, and took possession of all their property, and sent it to the Sulṭān's presence. Of that party, there was one person, a camel-driver, who had gone to one of the [public] hot baths, and he succeeded in making his escape by way of the fire place. He, having taken to the wilds, returned back to Chin, and made Chingiz acquainted with the perfidious conduct of Kadr Khān of Utrār and the slaughter of the party'.

Chingiz Khan prepared to take revenge2; and he caused

9 For his correct name and title, see preceding note?. At page 254, Kadr Khān is said, by our author, to have been the name of the ruler of Kir@hak, and, at page 267, we have another Kadr Khān, son of Yfsuf the Tatār. This is a hind.

I from our author's account of the putting the merchants to death, one would imagine that Chingiz Khān marched without the least delay, but a considerable time elapsed between that unfortunate act and the appearance of the Mughais before Utrār. The first took place in 614 H., and the second in 616 H.

² As soon as Chingiz became aware of this outrage, he despatched an envoy [some say, envoys] calling for redress for Ghā-ir Khān's perfidy, and demanding that the latter should be delivered over to him, to punish according to the Muhammadan law of kṛṣāṣ; but, as Ghā-ir Khān was related to many of the chief officers of his troops, the Sulfān was powerless to comply, even had he so desired, and, in an evil hour, gave orders to put the envoy to death likewise. The rage of Ghingiz knew no bounds: he collected his troops to

the forces of <u>Ch</u>in and Turkistan to be got ready for that purpose. Trustworthy persons have related, that, at the place where he then was, seven hundred banners were brought forth, and under every banner one thousand horsemen were arrayed. Every ten horsemen were directed to take with them three dried <u>Mughali</u> sheep, and an iron cauldron; and he set out on his way.

From the place where <u>Chingiz</u> was at this period, to the boundary of Utrār, was a three months' journey through the wilderness; and, along with his hosts, he despatched horses, mares, and geldings, without number, to supply them with milk, and for riding. The journey through the wilds was got over in a short time, and he issued forth on the Utrār frontier; and that fortress and city was taken, and

take revenge, and, according to a few authors, even despatched another envoy to announce his coming; but he took care in the first place to quell all disorders in his own dominions.

The Sultan having disposed of the affairs of 'Irak, and having left his son, Rukn-ud-Din, in charge of the government of the province-nominally, it must be understood, for Rukn-ud-Din was only in his fifteenth year-set out for the purpose of proceeding into Mawar-un-Nahr. On reaching Nishapur, on the 8th of Shawwal, 614 H., contrary to his wont, he gave himself up to wine and women. After delaying there more than a month, on the 10th of Shaban, he marched to Bukhara; and, it being spring, pitched his tents in the pleasant meads near that city. Having given himself up to pleasure there also for some time, he assembled the troops of that part, and determined to move against Kojlak, who had been extending his dominions to the territories towards the head of the Sihūn, and marched to Samrkand, after reaching which the same infatuated course of pleasure was followed. It was at this time that, hearing of the movement of Tük-Tughan [the Takna Khan of some European authors and translators] of the tribe of Makrit, the Sultan advanced towards Jund, and the engagement with the troops of Chingiz took place, which our author has related, out of its proper order, at page 268. For a correct account of that battle see note 4 to the page referred to.

3 In two or three copies "three," but seven hundred is the more correct number.
5 heep's or goat's fiesh saited and dried in the sun, called "lāndaey" by the Afghān.

One or two copies of the text have "in three months," but the majority have "in a short time." Utrār was, however, taken after four months. When the Sulfān retired to Samrkand, after the encounter with Tūshi, he had a force of 400,000 men. The greater part of these was left in Māwar-un-Nahr and Turkistān; 50,000 men were detached to Utrār to join Ghā-ir Khān; and when report followed report of the advance of Chingiz, 10,000 more were sent to reinforce Ghā-ir Khān, under the Hājib, Karājah. On reaching Utrār, Chingiz pushed on to Bukhārā, after leaving a force to invest the former place, which was not the first that was captured, as our author makes it appear. Faṣṭib-i says he reached it on the last day of Zi-Ḥijjah, 616 H., and entered it the following day.

the whole of the inhabitants were martyred. From thence Chingiz Khān marched towards Bukhārā; and, on the day of the Festival of the Sacrifice⁶, 10th of the month Zi-Ḥijjah, in the year 616 H., he captured the city, and martyred the whole of the inhabitants, put the 'Ulamā to the sword, and gave the libraries of books to the flames. They have related that the Imām-zādah, Rukn-ud-Dîn—the mercy of the Almighty be upon him!—when they were martyring him, repeated the following lines:—

"I said, that my heart said, 'It is murder committed by us 7."

I said, my soul said, that 'It is the carrier away of us.' I said, that 'Thy powerful dog has fallen on me.'

It [my soul?] said, 'Thou shouldst not draw breath, for it is brought upon ourselves 8."

Chingiz Khān, after the catastrophe of the city of Bukhārā, marched towards Samrkand, in which city Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, had stationed 60,000 horse, fully equipped and furnished ', consisting of different races of Turks, Ghūris, and Khurāsānis, together with the Maliks and troops of Ghūr, who were all included among that body of troops. After a few days, on the 10th of the month of Muḥarram, 617 H., Samrkand was also captured, and the whole of the inhabitants were martyred.

6 Abraham's offering up of his son Isaac.

7 That is "it [viz. this fact] is murder committed by us," in the sense, as it were, "we have done for ourselves."

8 These four lines are with difficulty translatable or intelligible, nor do the various texts enlighten us. Generally it seems a mere amplification of "we're undone," or "I'm undone." The first two lines are apparently the expression of the inner consciousness. The third line is the man's summary judgment. The fourth line is the reproof of conscience again, that he should spare his words. The latter part of the second line might be translated "the tearer of our curtain [honour]."

9 Yāfa-f says the Sulfān only left 30,000 men to garrison Bukhārā, and that 110,000, among whom were some of the greatest of his nobles and leaders, were left at Samrkand; and that 60,000 Tājiks [the forces of Chūr], each of

them a Rustam in valour, were stationed in other fortresses.

¹ When the Sulfān left Samrkand, dispirited and hopeless, he set out, by way of Nakhshab, towards Khurāsān. As he proceeded, he told the people of the places he passed by the way, to shift for themselves and provide for their own safety. Swift messengers were also despatched to Khwārazm, to tell his mother, to take with her all his family and effects, and proceed towards Māzandarān. Before doing so she caused all the state prisoners there, and such as were supposed ambitious of sovereignty, to be cast into the Jiḥūn. See page 279.

The Sultan's apprehensions and irresolution caused the utmost confusion in all state affairs; and, as if this was not enough, some astrologers began to When the accounts of these disasters came to the hearing of Sultān Muḥammad, the forces, then along with him before the gates of Balkh, consisted almost entirely of Tatār and Khitā-ī troops, whilst his own old soldiers and vassals had been left behind by him in Māwar-un-Nahr; and those people, on whom the most implicit trust and confidence could be placed, were also all away in those parts. The troops who were along with him [now] conspired together to seize him, and to make that act of perfidy and treachery the means of their own deliverance; and, having seized the Sultān, to take him and deliver him over as an offering to Chingiz Khān?

declare that the stars prognosticated his downfall, and that he would be unable to apply himself to any measures for effective opposition to the enemy. His chief men and his sagest ministers were paralyzed at all these misfortunes. The most experienced among them in the world's affairs urged that it was hopeless to attempt to preserve any hold over Mawar-un-Nahr, but that the utmost efforts should be directed to the preservation of Khurasan and 'Irak; to concentrate all his available forces, and raise the whole people to arms; to make the Jihun their ditch, and defend the line of that river. Others, cravenhearted, advised his going to Ghaznin, there to raise troops and make a stand, and, if unsuccessful, make Hindustan his rampart. The latter advice the Sultan proposed to follow, and he came as far as Balkh with this object, when 'Imad-ul-Mulk, who had great influence over him, arrived from 'Irak, from Rukn-ud-Din, the Sultan's son. 'Imad-ul-Mulk, who was a native of that part, advised the Sultan to retire into 'Irak, and assemble the forces of that ountry to oppose the Mughals. The Sultan's eldest son, Jalal-ud-Din, who had often before entreated his father to adopt vigorous measures, now again protested, and entreated his father to concentrate his troops, as far as lay in his power, and advance to meet the enemy; but, if his heart would not permit him to do so, to proceed into 'Irak, and leave the troops with him, that he might hasten to the frontier and attack the invading hordes, and see what Providence willed, that he himself, at least, might be exonerated before men. "If fortune favour me," he said, "I will carry off the ball of desire with the Chaugan of Divine aid; but, if fortune favours me not, neither will the finger of reproach be pointed at us, nor the tongue of malediction curse; and the world will not be able to say :- 'They have collected taxes and tribute from us for so long, and at a time like this they renounce our affairs, and abandon us to be captive to infidels." This counsel he continued to urge, and burned to receive his father's consent. All was of no avail : the Sultan's panic was so great that the sage advice of his son was considered the mere lispings of an infant.

² The Sultan left Balkh with the object of retiring into Trak; and with this intention was encamped on the bank of the Timid river [the Jiḥūn], when news of the fall of Bukhārā reached him, and, very soon after, that of Samrkand also. He now gave up all hopes of preserving his dominions. The majority of the troops with him then—and they were not numerous, and were in a disorganized state—were Turks of the tribe of his mother and her kinsmen, called Urāniān; and, during the confusion and distraction which had now arisen,

One of the party, however, presented himself before Sultan Muhammad, and told him all about the plot. The Sultan kept his own counsel; and, at night, he left the camp, in order to test beyond a doubt the perfidy of the conspirators. At midnight the party drew near to the imperial pavilion, formed a cordon about it, and completely surrounded it. Not finding him within the tent, they came upon the camp at that untimely hour, and the whole army fell into utter disorder and confusion. Sultan Muhammad was forced to fly, and set out towards Nishāpūr, and wrote mandates to the Amirs and Maliks in every part of his dominions, commanding them to put the fortresses of Khwārazm, Ghūr, Khurāsān, and 'Irāķ in a posture of they conspired against him. One of the Sultan's own ministers, the Diwan, Badr-ud-Din, previous to this, had fled, and had entered the service of Chingiz. Not satisfied with this, he had forged letters, as though the Sultan's nobles had written, tendering their services to the Mughal chief, and urging him to hostility against their sovereign; and also forged replies, as coming from Chingiz, promising them aid and assistance. These letters were made over to a spy, with instructions to let them fall into the hands of the Sultan's trusted followers. This caused suspicion to arise between the Sultan and his nobles; and, having been warned by one of them of the meditated treachery of the troops, he left his pavilion that very night, and changed his place of repose. The mutinous troops, in the night, took to their bows, and the next morning the pavilion was found like a sieve from the holes made by the volleys of arrows discharged into it. Finding, however, that the Sultan was safe, and their object discovered, these disaffected troops dispersed, and finally joined Chingiz. The Sultan now began to suspect his nobles, along with him, and they were mostly sent away, on some duty or other; and he then set out for Nishapur with all haste, and the greater part of his forces dispersed. On the way, he urged the people of the places he passed through, to see to their fortifications and means of defence, which filled them with perplexity and fear, and rendered easy matters difficult. On reaching Kalät, near Tus, he was induced to consent to make a stand there-it is a place of great strength, the upper part of which was said to be seven leagues round, and capable of an energetic defence [it is a valley, so to say, enclosed within lofty hills; Nadir considered the position so strong that he deposited his treasures therel-and to erect fortifications there. Some of the Sultan's effects were removed thither accordingly, and provisions were collected. This, however, was also abandoned; and, on the 12th of Safar, 617 H., the Sultan reached Nishapur, where he abandoned himself to pleasure -if such can be so called-more than ever, for he considered that fate was against him, and all state affairs were abandoned. Whilst thus occupied news reached him, in the following Rabi'-ul-Akhir, that an army of Mughals under Yamah Nu-yan, Sabtae, and Taghajar [some authors say Jabah Nu-yan, Swidae Bahadur, and Tukjar; the first some European authors call "Hubbe"], and other leaders, had, after the fall of Bukhārā, crossed the Ifhūn at Tirmiz, in Rabi'-ul-Awwal, in pursuit of him. He left Nighapur without delay, and fled by way of Isfarain to Rai. 3 The words "at that untimely hour" are contained in one MS. only,

defence; and throughout the empire of Islām disorder and tumult arose.

Chingiz Khān, having received information of the disorganization and dissolution of the army of Sulţān Muḥammad, after the capture of Samrkand, nominated a force of 60,000 Mughal horse, which was placed under the command of two Mughals, chiefs of high rank, one of whom was Yamah Nū-in, and the other Sahūdah Bahādur, to proceed in pursuit of the Sulţān. When this force had passed over the river [Jiḥūn], the Sulţān retired from Nīṣhāpūr, and set out towards Māzandarān, and his camp was pitched at the top of the Darah or Pass of Tamiṣhah¹, when the Mughal troops came upon him. The Sulţān was obliged to fly from thence, and entered the hills on foot, and got away; and, going from one range of hills to another, entered Māzandarān¹. The son of the chief of Māzandarān¹.

4 Only a single copy of the texts collated gives this name correctly.

5 Any one reading the above would imagine that the Sultan proceeded direct from Nishapur into Mazandaran, but such was not the case; he took a much longer circuit, as already shown. When he reached Rai news came to him from Khurāsān that a strange army had reached it, which report made him regret the haste he had shown in coming into 'Irak. He left Rai accordingly, and proceeded to the fortress of Kazwin [some say Karun], at the foot of which his son, Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, was encamped, with an army of 30,000 The Sultan sent his other son, Ghiyas-ud-Din, and his mother, and some of the ladies of his family, to the fortress of Karun-dujz for safety, and his own mother and the rest of the family to I-lal, a fortress of Mazandaran. He was advised by the Amirs of 'Irak to take shelter at Shiran-koh, and there concert measures and assemble troops, and oppose the Mughal army which was in pursuit of him. Again he declined, saying that it was not safe, and could not be defended against the Mughals; and this disheartened his followers still more. He was advised by some to start that very hour. Between Luristan and Fars, they said, was a range of mountains, called Tang-Talu, after they had passed which they would enter a rich country, and could take shelter there, collect troops, and, in case the Mughals should arrive, be ready to encounter them. Whilst considering this advice, which he thought good, news arrived from Rai of the Mughals having reached it; and now his followers began to desert him, as is the nature of the world, and to seek their own safety and interests. Almost deserted, the unfortunate monarch set out with his son, Jalal-ud-Din, and with scarcely any followers, for the fortress of Karun-dujz, whither he had previously sent Ghiyas-ud-Din and his mother and the ladies of his family. On the way he was actually overtaken by the Mughal advance; but the smallness of his party led to their not recognizing him. They gave them, however, a volley of arrows, which wounded the Sulfan's horse, but it brought him safely to Karun. He only stayed one day, and, after providing a fresh horse, made off in the direction of Baghdad. The Mughals appeared before Karun, which they attacked, and fighting went on as long as they thought the Sultan was there; but, finding this was not the case, and that he

who had joined him, was in attendance on the Sultan, and his own son, Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mang-barni, was also with him. Sultan Muḥammad embarked on the Sea of Khurz [the Caspian], and for a considerable time he continued on an island therein, in distress and affliction.

had set out towards Baghdäd, they followed on his tracks. They came up with a small body of his party, who acted as a rear-guard, and slew them; but the Sulfān having changed his route—he had found shelter in a fortress—they missed him, and at last gave up the pursuit. Having remained a few days at the latter place, the Sulfān set out towards Gflān, and then on to Asdār, where what remained of his treasures was lost. He then entered the district of Amul. His family had reached that part, and had taken shelter in its strongholds. The Mugghals were in pursuit, however; and he, having consulted with the chief men of those parts, it was determined that the Sulfān should seek refuge for a time in one of the islands of the Sea of Khurz, named Āb-l-Sugūn.

[A few words may not be out of place here respecting this island and its name. An old writer states that it was the name of an island [one of several], and of a small town of Tabaristān, in the district of Astarābād, three days' journey from Gurgān or Gūrgān, called Jurjān and Jūrjān by Muḥammadans, who change the gê's to j's according to the 'Arabic custom; and that it was also the name of a considerable river, which formerly came from Khwāraam [the Oxus; but more probably the river of Gurgān or Jurjān], and fell into the Sea of Khurz—the Caspian. When this river approaches the sea, it flows very slowly and quietly; hence its name, Āb-i-Sugūn, the tranquil or quiet river. Some, however, say the place where the river enters the sea was called by this name. The islands in question, for there were several, were situated near the river's mouth. That on which the Sulfān took refuge, and where he died, has long since been swallowed up by the sea. The Introduction of the Zafar-Nāmah says the sea is called Āb-i-Sugūn, and the island on which the Sulfān took shelter, Āb-gūn].

The Sultan, having taken shelter on one of them, moved occasionally, for safety's sake; and well he did, for a party of Mughals did actually come to the first island in search of him after he had left it. The army of Mughals under Yamah Nū-yān and others, who had reached Rai in pursuit of him, had returned on not finding him there, and invested the fortresses of Karun and I-lal, in which his mother and wives and children had taken refuge, and soon took them. The males were all slaughtered, even the infants, and the females were sent to Chingiz's camp. The thoughts of the dishonour of the females of his family, the slaughter of his children and his servants, and the miseries of his country, afflicted him to such a degree that he died of a broken heart, and in great misery, in one of the islands above mentioned, and was there buried. So great was the distress of the party, that his son, Jalal-ud Din, could not procure even a winding-sheet to bury him in, and he had to be consigned to the grave in part of the apparel which he had on at the time of his death. Subsequently, however, Jalal-ud-Din removed his father's remains from the island to the fortress of Ardas [?]. The Mughals, some time after, gained possession of this place likewise, and they exhumed his remains, and burnt them. That the Sultan died on his way to Khwarazm is like many other of our author's statements. He never left the island alive. His death filled Islam with distress; and this event took place in Shawwal, 617 H.

The Mughal troops, not finding the Sultān in the province of Māzandarān, passed out of it, and entered 'Irāk, on which Sultān Muḥammad, with the few horsemen who still continued with him, left the island; but he was prostrated with disease of the bowels, and melancholy supervened, and he became quite out of his mind. He urged his son, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, saying:—" Endeavour to take me to Khwārazm; for from thence was the commencement of our dominion." These lines, also, he often repeated:—

"When men become distracted about their own affairs,
Than that, it will be better that the thread of life were sever'd."

When his disease increased, he was totally unable to ride on horseback, and camels were procured for him; and he was placed in a camel-litter, and they sent him off towards Khwārazm. He died on the road, in the year 617 H.: and Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din brought his father's remains to Khwārazm, and buried them by the side of Sultān Takish, his father. Sultān Muḥammad's reign extended over a period of twenty-one years. May the mercy of God and His pardon be on him!

XI. KUTB-UD-DĪN ARZALŪ \underline{SH} ĀH, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, SON OF TAKI \underline{SH} , \underline{KH} WĀRAZM \underline{SH} ĀH,

Kutb-ud-Din, was the son of Sultan Muhammad, and his mother was a kinswoman of his father's mother, and of the family of Kadr \underline{Kh} an of Kifchāk; and he was the heir-apparent to the throne of \underline{Kh} wārazm⁵.

When the calamities consequent on the irruption of

6 The name of this young prince is written in various ways—not only in our author's text, but also by other writers—Azīlāk, Arzālā, Uzlāk, Arzalā, and Arzalāk; the last seems the most correct. Certain it is that he was not heirapparent to the Khwārazmī empire. The word Shāh or Sulţān affized to his other name signifies that it was not his title as sovereign, but merely one of his names. Other writers, with whom I am acquainted, do not account him as a ruler at all. It was through the influence of Turkān Khātūn, Sulţān Muḥammad's mother, that this boy, of very ordinary intellect, was set up at Khwārazm, during Jaiāl-ud-Dh'n's absence with his father. Arzalāk's supporters imagined, that, in case Jalāl-ud-Dh should ascend the throne and establish his power, they would not be permitted to do as they liked, as was likely to be the case with Arzalāk Sulţān as sovereign; and, as long as their objects were gained, they cared nothing for their country. Under such circumstances, it is not surprising that the Mughals met with little or no opposition.

Chingiz Khān arose, and Sultan Muhammad was obliged to fly from the banks of the Jihun and the vicinity of Balkh, and retired to Nishāpūr, the grandmother of Arzalū Shāh, the mother of Sultan Muḥammad7, and the people of Khwarazm, the Maliks, and the Amirs, concerted together, and raised Kuth-ud-Din, Arzalū Shāh, to the throne of Khwarazm, and the whole of them applied themselves to his service.

The Sultans and Maliks, from both the east and west, and of the countries of Iran and Turan, who were imprisoned at Khwarazm, were all drowned in the Jihun; and not one of them was left alive, by the time that one of the sons of Chingiz Khan, Tushi by name, with a numerous army, from Mawar-un-Nahr, was nominated to march into Turkistan and Khwarazmo and arrived before the gates of

the latter-named city.

As Arzalū Shāh did not possess the power to oppose him, he took along with him1 his dependents, his sisters, and mothers², the ladies of the Haram of Sultan Muhammad, his father, together with the Khudawandah-i-Jahan, his father's mother, and brought them into Tabaristan and Māzandarān, and threw himself into the fortress of Lāl in Tabaristān8.

7 Turkān Khātūn, the consort of Takish, the strong-minded woman, who roasted her husband.

8 All the copies of the text collated, with one exception, are defective

9 When Chingiz arrived at Utrar, he left a force to invest it, but pushed on with the bulk of his forces to Bukhārā; and it was only after the fall of Samrkand that troops were sent against Khwarazm. In the first place, he despatched his three sons, Tushi [Juji], Uktāe, and Chaghatāe, with several tumans or hordes thither; but, having quarrelled on the road, they came to blows, and a number of the Mughal troops were slain by each other. Chingiz then recalled them, and Tuli, his other son, was sent in command in their stead.

1 Other writers state, that after Jalal-ud-Din left Khwarazm for Khurasan, as mentioned in note 6, page 286, which see, his brothers, Arzalāk Sultān, Ak Sultan, and two others, followed after him, escorted by a body of troops, to endeavour to induce him to return. They did not overtake him, but encountered on their way the same body of Mughals their brother had so recently opposed and escaped from. They were all taken and, with their followers, put to the sword.

² The mothers of the different brothers of Arzalū [Arzalāk Sultan]-the other wives of his father, Sultan Muhammad, and his grandmother are

meant here.

3. See latter part of note 6, page 277. Alfi calls it the fortress of Lar-jar.

When Tushi, son of Chingiz Khan, appeared with his troops before the gates of Khwarazm, the people of the city [the troops quartered there] came forward to resist them, and fighting commenced; but, in the course of a very few days, Khwarazm was taken, and the inhabitants were martyred, and the whole city was razed to the ground, with the exception of the Kushk-i-Akhjuk, which was the ancient palace, and the sepulchral vault of Sultan Takish, Khwarazm Shāh, which was allowed to stand; but all else was overthrown.

After this, $T\bar{u}\underline{s}\underline{h}$ pushed on in pursuit of the dependents and ladies of Arzal \bar{u} $\underline{S}\underline{h}$ āh's family, captured them all, and martyred the whole of them. The mercy of the Almighty be upon them⁴!

XII. SULŢĀN RUKN-UD-DĪN, <u>GH</u>ŪRĪ <u>SH</u>ĀNASTĪ, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, <u>KH</u>WĀRAZM <u>SH</u>ĀH.

Sultān Rukn-ud-Dîn was another of Sultān Muḥammad's sons, and his birth took place on the night preceding the day on which Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn Muḥammad-i-Sām, Ghūrī, retreated from before the gates of Khwārazm in the year 601 H.; and, on that account, he was named Ghūrī Shānastī, that is to say, "The Ghūrī Breaker."

When the territory of 'Irāk fell under the sway of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, he conferred the throne of that country upon Rukn-ud-Dīn'. The daughter of Malik Ulugh Khān-i-Abi Muhammad, who was

4 Most of the copies of the text are defective here: only three have the last paragraph, and, of these, but two appear correctly written.

⁶ Rukn-ud-Din, was younger than his brothers, Jalāl-ud-Din, and Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din; but, having acquired greater ascendency, the government of 'Irāk was conferred upon him, when his father left 'Irāk on his last expedition into Māwar-un-Nahr. 'Yāfa-f says he gave himself up to excess—he was only fifteen—and his father had just become aware of his misconduct, when the Mughal troubles began. On the death of his father, the Amīrs of that territory became disaffected. He moved against them, reduced them, and gave them their lives, and overlooked their misdeeds, thinking kindness would be returned with gratitude. But, after a short time, finding he could not hold his own, he retired, after his father's death, accompanied by only a few followers, towards Kirmän. He reached Gawāṣhir, and was subsequently joined by the chiefs and partisans of the Malik of Zawzan [Kawām-ud-Dīn, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Abī-Bikr, son of 'Alī, Az-Zawzanī. His son, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, held Kirmān and its dependencies after his father's death but he was removed, held Kirmān and its dependencies after his father's death but he was removed, held Kirmān and its dependencies after his father's death but he was removed, seath but he was removed, seath but he was removed,

a descendant of one of the paternal uncles of the Khwārazm Shāhs, was given him in marriage, and the father-in-law was made the Lieutenant of Sultān Ruknud-Dîn, by Sultān Muḥammad; and the whole of the Maliks of Ghūr, and the troops of the Jibāl [of Khurāsān], were left to serve under him. When [his father], Sultān Muḥammad, retired from the territory of 'Irāk, the Turks of 'Irāk, who were slaves of the Atā-baks, assembled [their troops] together, and gave him battle, but the Khwārazm Shāhīs gained the victory, in the year 614 H.

Rukn-ud-Dîn reigned in 'Îrâk for a considerable period; and, when the Mughal troops reached that country, and tribulation befell the Musalmäns, the whole of the Khwārazm Shāhīs fell into captivity, in the year 617 H., and

were, in all probability, martyred6.

XIII. MALIK <u>GH</u>IYĀŞ-UD-DĪN, ĀĶ SULŢĀN⁷, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, <u>KH</u>WĀRAZM <u>SH</u>ĀH.

Ak Sulţān was another of the sons of Sulţān Muḥammad; and, when the latter obtained possession of the throne of

and the government was conferred upon Rukn-ud-Dîn.], who were in those parts. He divided the treasure, accumulated by the Malik referred to, among his followers, and advanced to Isfahian to endeavour to gain a footing in 'Irāk again. When he entered it, the Kāgā kept aloof, and Rukn-ud-Dîn thought it advisable to leave the city, and pitch his tents outside. He was soon attacked by the Kāgā's adherents, on a hint from their master, who skew 1000 of Rukn-ud-Dîn's followers, and lost many themselves. When the Mughals had disposed of other matters in Khurāsān, a force was sent against Rukn-ud-Dîn. He had given up all hope of acquiring possession of 'Irāk, and had retired to Firtz-koh, and the Tatār forces invested him therein. He held out for six months, at the end of which period he had to come down and yield. All the threats of the infidels could not induce him to bend the knee to their leader, and he was put to the sword, along with his followers and dependents, and the people of the fortress. This took place in 619 H.; but some writers say it happened in 618 H., and others, in 620 H.

6 Here, also; considerable difference occurs in the various copies of the text, and the style is different, as in several other places. Some have, "and the

whole of them were martyred."

7 Pir Shāh bore the title of <u>Chiyās-ud-Dīn</u>, and he was ruler [nominally] of Kirmān, after the Malik of Zawzan, and his son. Ak Sulţān was never put in charge of any territory whatever. Our author has perpetrated another great blunder here. Ak-Sulţān was killed at the same time that Sulţān Arzalak and two other younger brothers were massaered by the Mughals. See note 6, page 256.

Kirmān, and the *masnad* of Gawāshīr, he placed the Khwājah of Zawzan upon the throne⁸ of Kirmān. After some years, the Khwājah of Zawzan died. He was an excellent man, and founded colleges of great repute, and rabāts [hostels for travellers], and erected the fortress of Salā-Mihr of Zawzan.

When he died, Sultān Muḥammad had conferred the throne of Kirmān upon his own son, Āk Sultān; and he proceeded into Kirmān, and brought under his jurisdiction that territory as far as the sea-shore, and the frontiers of Mukrān. When the calamities caused by the Mughal

8 Utter nonsense: the Malik of Zawzan was merely governor on the part of the Sultān, and never ascended a "throne."

9 Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn, Pir Shāh, had been named ruler of Kirman by his father; "but what help is there, when man's proposals chime not with destiny's disposals?" When the convulsions arose at the outset of the Mughal troubles, Ghiyag-ud-Din determined to proceed into Kirman. At this time, Shuja'-ud-Din, Abu-l-Kasim, who had held the government on the part of the son of the Malik of Zawzan, was acting as the Prince's deputy. The "world being filled with tumult and sedition," he would not receive him, and the Prince was compelled to retire into 'Irak, where he stayed a short time. A party of his father's troops, which had remained in concealment, now joined him, and Burāk, who was a native of Karā-Khitā-i, also became his adherent. He was a relative-some say a younger brother, some the son-of Baniko of Taraz, and had been converted to Islām, and had risen in Sultān Muhammad's service to the rank of Haiib; and some writers state that he had been nominated preceptor to the young Prince. Be this as it may, on being joined by Burāk and his followers, Ghiyās-ud-Din marched into Fārs against the Atā-bak Sa'd [see note 4, page 266], who was routed. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din and his forces committed great devastation in Fars, after which he retired. Burāk, however, being aggrieved with him for some reason, deserted Ghiyas-ud-Din one night, and set out with his adherents, intending to proceed by way of Kich and Mukran into Hindustan, "to take service with I-yal-timish, ruler of Dihli, who was also a native of Kara-Khita-i." On reaching the frontier of Kirmān, Shujā'-ud-Din, Abū-l-Kāsim, who had been made governor of Gawashir for Ghiyas-ud-Din, but who had refused to receive him, was induced by some of the youths among his followers, who sought to plunder Burāk's party and carry off the "moon-faced Khita-i damsels" among them, to intercept Burāk by the way. They came into contact at Rūdbar of Jirfat, and, during the fight which ensued, a party of Turks, serving with Shuja'-ud-Din, went over to Burāk. Shujā'-ud-Dīn was taken and put to death, and Burāk acquired power over Kirman. This was in the year 621 H. Shuja'-ud-Din's son continued to hold the citadel until Jalal-ud-Din arrived. After his separation from Burāk, Ghiyās-ud-Din had taken up his quarters at Rai; and, when his brother, Jalal-ud-Din, reached 'Irak, after his return from Sindh, Ghiyasud-Din had joined him, had misconducted himself, and, finally, deserted his brother in an engagement with the Tatars, and finally retired into Khuzistan. See note , page 297. He then sent an agent to Burak to tell him of his arrival there. Burāk pretended to be overjoyed; and, after oaths and proirruption befell the empire of Islam, and Chingiz Khan became triumphant over Iran, a body of Khita-is, and some troops of Sultan Muhammad, along with Burak, the Chamberlain, a native of Khita, a newly converted Musalmān, proceeded into Kirmān, and contention and strife arose between them and Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din-i-Ak Sultan. The latter, not being powerful enough to repel the Khitā-is, out of necessity, left Kirman and proceeded into 'Irak to his brother, Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, leaving the Amir, Shuja'ud-Din, Abū-l-Ķāsim, in the city of Gawāshīr, which was the seat of government and capital of Kirman, with the name of Deputy and Seneschal of the city.

Burāk, Khitā-i, the Chamberlain, with a numerous army, appeared before the gates of Gawashir, and took up his position there; and contention went on between them, which continued for a considerable length of time, until the period when Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mang-barni, marched from the land of Sind, by way of Mukran, into Kirman. As soon as he arrived in the vicinity of the latter territory, Burāk, Khitā-ī, the Chamberlain, having obtained news of the coming of Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, proceeded to wait upon him, and pay him homage; and Shuja'-ud-Din, Abu-l-Kāsim, likewise, came out of the city of Gawāshir to pay

homage to the Sultan1.

When Sultan Jalal-ud-Din reached the city, he had but a small following with him, and, therefore, he became anxious with respect to Burāk, the Chamberlain, and made over the country of Kirman to him as governor, and proceeded into 'Irāk himself. After Burāk, the Chamberlain, had acquired possession of Kirmān, Ak Sultān, having

mises had been entered into by both parties, Ghiyas-ud-Din set out for Kirman with about 500 followers, and Burak came forth to receive him with a large following. They got on well together for some time, until Burāk began to treat the Prince with great arrogance, and finally demanded his mother in marriage. She gave a reluctant consent for the sake of her son. Two kinsmen of Burāk's now became partisans of the Prince, warned him of Burāk's designs against him, and asked his permission to kill him. Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, remembering his promises and oaths, refused. A few days after, Burāk became aware of all this; his two kinsmen were cut to pieces, Ghiyas-ud-Din strangled, and his mother and all their followers and dependents were put to death, every soul, even to the infant at the breast. Burak sent the head of Ghiyasud-Din to Uktae, son of Chingiz, and obtained from the Mughal the investiture of Kirman, which he held for eleven years, when it passed to his descendants. 1 His son came out and presented the keys of Gawashir to the Sultan.

quarrelled with his brothers, in 'Irāk, returned again into Kirmān, and obtained martyrdom at the hand of Burāk, Khiṭā-i, the Chamberlain, and died'.

XIV. SULŢĀN JALĀL-UD-DĪN, MANG-BARNĪ³, SON OF SULTĀN MUḤANMAD, <u>KH</u>WĀRAZM <u>SH</u>ĀH.

Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, was the eldest son of Sultān Muhammad, and was endowed with great heroism, valour, and high talents and accomplishments.

When his father, Sultān Muḥammad, acquired possession of the territories of <u>Gh</u>ūr and <u>Gh</u>aznin, he conferred them on Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and made over both those kingdoms to his charge; and deputies of his were placed in those countries. <u>Gh</u>aznin was given to Malik Kurīz⁴; Fīrūz-koh was entrusted to Mubāriz-ud-Dīn, Sabzwārī; and the Wazārat was entrusted to <u>Sh</u>ihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Alb, Sara<u>kh</u>sī. Kaṛmān was given to the Malik-ul-Umrā [Chief, or Noble of Nobles], Bur<u>sh</u>or⁴ [Peshāwar?] and Bū-bikrpūr [or, Abū-

² Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn was murdered in the fortress of Gawāghīr in 627 H. The ris some discrepancy as to dates, which I have not space to discuss, but the former appears the most correct, as Burāk evidently took advantage of Jalāl-ud-Dīn's defeat, mentioned in note 9, page 297, to make himself independent, and would scarcely have dared to put his brother to death while Jalāl-ud-Dīn had the power to chastise him.

⁸ In one of the oldest copies of the text where the vowel-points are given, he is called Mang-barni, and was so styled from having a mole on his nose. He was, according to Yāfa-i, and other trustworthy writers, the greatest, the most noble-minded, the most warlike, and the most devout of the sons of his father, and most worthy of the diadem of sovereignty. His valour viralled that of Rustam and Isfandiyār, and he was able, skilful, and sagacious. If there was any man in those days capable of coping with Chingiz successfully, it was he; and, from his subsequent heroic actions, there can be little doubt but that his efforts would have been crowned with success, if his advice had been acted upon, or he had had the direction of affinirs, and had been seconded by his brothers, nobles, and subjects, with that unity of purpose so essential in the hour of danger. His brothers, however, were selfish beyond measure, and cared for naught but their own interests and worldly pleasures and excesses, whilst Jailaud-Din was kept in constant attendance upon his father, contrary to his own inclinations.

⁵ This may refer to Peghāwar, which was called Bagrām up to Bābar's time, but there is a place named Burghor [1,54], much farther south, between Kandahār and the Indus; and our author, in his account of Maḥmūd of Ghamh, when referring to the idol-temple which fell at his birth, says it was near Barghabur [1,943]—quite a different mode of spelling. See page 76.

Bikrpūr] were conferred upon Malik I<u>kh</u>tiyār-ud-Dīn, Muhammad Alī-i-Khar-post.

When the irruption of Changiz Khān occurred, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, was in attendance upon his father, as has been previously recorded; and, when he brought his father's remains to Khwārazm and interred them, his brother [Arzalū Shāh] was seated on the throne of Khwārazm, although he was a [much] younger brother; and both the brothers were apprehensive of each other. Kutb-ud-Dīn, Arzalū Shāh, conspired against Jalāl-ud-Dīn, who, having obtained information of his design, came out of Khwārazm, and departed by the route of the wilds of Shāristān. From thence he proceeded to the westward of Nīshāpūr, and entered the desert between Khurāsān and Kirmān, with the determination of proceeding to Ghaznīn.

⁶ After his father had breathed his last and had been buried, Jalil-ud-Din left the island of Åb-i-Sugūn with a few followers, and set out for Khwārazm, where were his younger brothers, Arzalāk Sulţiān, Âk Sulţiān, Timūr Malīk, Aghūl Ṣāḥib, and Kajie Tigfin, with 90,000 Kankulīs. He had vast difficulties to encounter from the confused state of affairs at that time, the successes of Chingiz and his sons, and from his own countrymen, who considered that the glory of the house of Takigh had departed. It may be as well to mention, that the following notes give a connectific account of Jalil-ud-Din's life.

All men of experience, and the soldiery generally, were desirous of the sovereignty of Jalal-ud-Din, and, although the most solemn agreement had been entered into by the two brothers not to injure or molest each other, the ill-disposed Amirs of Arzaläk's party, who desired a weak and inexperienced Prince at the head of affairs for their own selfish purposes, combined to fall suddenly upon Jalal-ud-Din and slay him. He, finding such acts could be contemplated at such a time, and knowing the state of utter misery in which the country was now overwhelmed, considered it advisable to leave Khwarazm in the hands of his brother and his party, rather than weaken the little power still remaining by civil strife. He determined to proceed, attended only by a small following, by way of Nisä to Shad-yakh [of Nishapur]. As it was, an army of Mughals had already reached the Khwārazm territory, and Ialāl-ud-Din was closely pursued [near Astawah, according to Alfi,] by a portion of that horde, on his way to Shad-yakh, and had great difficulty in effecting his escape. His brothers-four in all-who had followed after him to try and induce him to return, or, more probably, because they could not stay any longer, fell into the hands of this band, and were all put to the sword. See note 1, page 280.

7 Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dîn only remained two or three days at Shād-yākh, in order to get together as many men as possible; and, on the 12th of Zi-Hijjah, he set out quietly at night, by way of Zawzan, towards Ghaznin, to the government of which part he had been nominated by his father. The Mughals were close at hand, and he had not left more than an hour before they appeared before the place. As soon as they found he was not there they set out in pursuit, and pushed on until they came to a place where two roads branched off. At

Trustworthy persons have related, that Jalāl-ud-Dīn, in that desert, saw Mihtar Khizr³, who foretold his sovereignty, but, under this compact, that the blood of no Musalmān should be shed by his hand. From thence, Jalāl-ud-Dīn proceeded into the territories of Nimroz, Bust, and Dāwar, and came to Ghaznīn².

Malik Khān of Hirāt, who formerly bore the name of Amīn-i-Ḥājib Amīn-ul-Mulk?]¹, and had killed Muḥammad Kharnak, Ghūrī, and who had, before the arrival of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, set out towards Hindūstān, at this time, that the Sultān came to Ghaznīn, likewise, joined him. Chingiz Khān detached an army, from his Mughal following, in search of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, towards Ghaznīn, and Fīkū² Nū-yān, this place the Sultān had left a small party of his followers, under an Amīr, with directions, in case of his being pursued, to resist the Mughals for a short region to give him time and then to the the other read. This was done; and

period, to give him time, and then to take the other road. This was done; and the Mughals, thinking they were on the Sulfān's track, took the wrong road. The Sulfān on this occasion is said to have made a march of forty farsakhs without a halt.

On reaching Zawzan he wished to enter and take some repose, and give rest to his horses; but admittance was refused, the excuse being, that, in ease of attack by the Mughals, the people could not hold out the place for an hour, and that any attempt at opposition would bring vengeance upon them. He, therefore, continued his route as far as Mābant-ābād [P]. He left that place at midnight, and at dawn the next morning the Mughals reached it. They followed in the track of the Sulţān as far almost as Yazdawāh [also called Zaudāh-Ēgedom of the maps?], a dependency of Hirāt [about seventy-five miles s.w. of that city], and then abandoned the pursuit.

8 Another of our author's childish tales, certified by "trustworthy autho-

rities."

9 The Sulţān, without further trouble, reached Ghaznin, on the 17th of Zi-Hijjah, 617 H. Amin Malik, called also Amin-ul-Mulk [he is styled Yamin-ul-Mulk in Raugat-uş-Şafā and Ḥabib-us-Siyar, and Yamin Malik by Alifi), the governor, who had 50,000 men with him, came out to receive th Sulţān, and both the troops and people rejoiced at his arrival, for the government of the territory formerly possessed by the Sulţāns of Ghūr had been pieviously assigned to him by his father. He encamped on the Maidāni-Salzo of Ghaznin; and, as soon as the news of his arrival spread abroad, chieftains and troops [who were in those parts previously, no doubt] began to flock to his standard from all parts around, and among the number was Sali-du-Din, Ighrāk, with 40,000 men, Kankulis, Khalj, and Turkmāns; and the Amīrs of Ghūr also joined him from the parts adjacent. His affairs now assumed considerable grandeur and magnificence, and a large army assembled around him.

¹ Some copies of the text, but they are those least to be depended upon, differ considerably here. They have, —"Malik Khān of Hirāt, who was named Amin-i-Hājib, at the outset of the events respecting Muhammad Kharnak, Ghūrī, before Jalal-ud-Din had come into Hindūstān," &c. The correct name of this chief was Amin Malik, and he is also called Amin-ul-Mulk.

·2 In some copies Fitkū.

who was \underline{Ch} ingiz \underline{Kh} ān's son-in-law, was the commander of that force.

Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn advanced against the Mughal army as far as the limits of Barwān³, and overthrew the Mughal

³ Early in the spring of 618 H. he put his forces in motion, and advanced to Barwān. Having encamped there, he received intimation that a Mughal army, under Bak-hak and Yam-ghūr [these leaders are somewhat differently called by some writers—Kam-chak, and Yighūr, Tamghūr, and even Balghūr], was pressing the siege of Wāmīan [Bāmīan, wand \(\delta\) being interchangeable]; and that it was in danger of falling into their hands, if not speedily relieved.

[With regard to these places-the town and fortress referred to-I must here make a few remarks. The town, or position, of Barwan, is likewise called Parwan, Farwan, Baran, and Barwan on the Ab-i-Barani, by as many different writers. The letters b, p, and f are interchangeable. The two first are undoubtedly incorrect. Babar and Abu-l-Fazl call the upper portion of the Kābul river the "Āb-i-Bārāni," and, in my humble opinion, this proves the correctness of the situation of this place, as given by Baihaki, Yafa-i, and Jami'-ut-Tawarikh-which latter work also states that it lies on the "banks of the Ab-i-Bārāni"-as situated between Ghaznin and Wāmiān, but nearer Ghaznin. What modern writers and travellers in Afghanistan call the Logurh [the Lohgar] river, the historians above quoted, and many others, call the Ab-i-Barani, and consider it, very properly, as the main stream of the upper portion of that river which, ultimately, enters the Indus above Atak. Barwan is also to be found in many maps, although the position may not be quite correct, at about five or six stages north of Ghaznin. With respect to the fortress invested by the Mughals, the Introduction to the Zafar-Nămah, an excellent and trustworthy authority, says it was "Bāmiān, also called Wāmīān;" and this last seems to be the name which some writers have mistaken for Wāliān. Certainly there is a place mentioned in the MASĀLIK-WA-MAMĀLIK named Wālīn, but one syllable less than Wālīān and Wāmīān, as being "the same distance from Khulum as the latter is from Balkh." There is also a Parwan or Farwan, on the Panj-hir river; but those who have seen the Parwan valley, north of Kabul, describe it as very tortuous, and, in many places, a mere rocky defile; and there is also the pass of the same name over Hindu-Kush, not the easiest by far. If Barwan, or Parwan, north of Kabul, could possibly be the place referred to, and Wālian-the Wālin of MASĀLIK-WA-MAMĀLIK, and which Mr. Thomas, R. A. S. J., vol. xvii. p. 86, calls "Wawalin," and considers to have been situated near the "modern Kundúz" [Kundus, by 'Arabs, Kunduz, is described as a very ancient place, by oriental writers, who say the correct name was Kuhandujz, signifying a fortress, but by constant use shortened into Kundus. Baihaki repeatedly refers to Kuhandujz, and constantly mentions Walwalij ولوالج also, but neither "Wawalin" nor Walin]——be the place to which the Mughals were laying siege, Jalal-ud-Din would have had to cross and re-cross the Hindu-Kush on this occasion, a rather difficult matter at any time, even for travellers, much more for an army of about 100,000 horsemen, in early spring, and a dangerous one too, considering that Chingiz, with his main force, was before Tae-kan, only about twenty miles from Kundus, while the Parwan Pass, and Sar-i-Ulang Pass, connected with it, and the other passes of Hindu-Kush, were no less than eighty miles off, or more. Jalal-ud-Din might have been cut off from the passes easily by a force from Chingiz's army whilst he was engaged with the

infidels. He encountered them upon three different times in that quarter, and on all three occasions success and victory

Mughal forces before Wāmīān, or Wālīān so called. Besides, we are plainly told that Barwān, on the banks of the Åb-i-Bārānī, was a town or city between Ghazmīn and Balkh. Chingiz himself came in pursuit of the Sultān, by way of Andar-āb. Kābul. and Bāmīān. 1

Leaving his heavy material and baggage at Barwān, Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn marched to the relief of the fortress; and, having come upon the advanced force of the Mughals in that direction, made a dash upon them, and inflicted a loss of 1000 men. The Sulṭān's troops being the most numerous, the Mughals retired across the river, destroying the bridge after them [this shows the river, whatever it was, was not fordable], and took up a position on the opposite side. Vollies of arrows were discharged on either side until night closed, and during the darkness the Mughals, according to their favourite manœuvre, seemingly, decamped. [If Walīān lay where Kundus does now, a messenger would have brought Chingiz with his whole army, or a large portion of it, from Tae-kān before night.] The Sulṭān now caused a great quantity of food and other necessaries [scarcely brought over the Parwān Pass] to be sent to the fortress

of Wamian, after which he returned to his camp at Barwan.

Chingiz, having heard before Tae-kan of this reverse, despatched another force of 30,000 picked troops, under Shabki Kotii Jaccording to Yafa-i, but by our author and some others, Fiku Nu-van; by the Zafar-Namah, Kankud and other leaders; and by others, Kübür] to take revenge, and prepared to follow in person; and one morning, in the early forenoon, about a week after his return to Barwan, intimation reached the Sultan that the Mughals were approaching. He at once put his troops in motion, and advanced about a league to meet them, and drew up his ranks in readiness to receive them. IIf the modern Parwan be the place, a position they were not likely to venture into with such a large force able to attack them within it, and a strong fortress in their rear, the Mughals must have been about to issue from the pass, and the Sultan must have advanced towards its entrance to receive them : but I doubt very much whether those who have seen those passes would consider such to be probable or possible.] Amin Malik had the right wing, and Saif-ud-Din, Ighrak, the left, while the Sultan took post in the centre. He gave orders for the troops to dismount, and hold their horses' bridles in hand. [Thrown over the arm probably, but scarcely to "bind the reins of their horses round their waists." What if the horses had taken fright? Even with the reins thrown over their arms, the men would have had to fight in a single rank-a strange mode of fighting. The probability is that the bridles of the horses were fastened at the saddle, to, or round, the horses' waists, which would enable a few men comparatively to look after them.] This they obeyed, determined to do or die. The right wing, under Amin Malik, being the strongest division of the Sultan's army, the Mughals directed their chief efforts against it, and it was forced back; but, prompt aid being afforded from the left and centre, the Mughals, in their turn, were compelled to give way. Not a man on either side turned his back : great valour was shown on both sides, and the fighting only ceased with the light.

Next morning preparations were made to renew the engagement, but the Sulfan's troops, having noticed the ranks of another division [the "wood and felt" ranks of the Raugat-uş-Ṣafa], apparently drawn up in rear of the Mughal ranks, conceived that reinforcements must have reached them during the night, and they seemed disinclined to encounter them. Counsel was taken as to the

rewarded him; but, on the news of these successes of his reaching Chingiz Khān, he, being at Tāl-kān of Khurāsān [Tāe-kān of Tukhāristān?] at the time, marched his armies towards Ghaznīn. Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīnwas unable to offer

advisability of falling back to and taking shelter near the foot of the hills, and retiring to the high ground and spurs; but the Sultan would not hear of such a prejudicial movement. The troops were directed to dismount as on the previous day [ordering them to dismount would indicate ground impracticable for cavalry, but dismounting to fight also indicates a determination to conquer or diel; and, on this occasion, the enemy's efforts were directed against the left wing under Saif-ud-Din, Ighrak, the valour and spirit of whose men they had had such recent proof of, and their best men were pitted against it. The troops of the left wing, however, stood their ground so determinedly, and plied their arrows with such effect, that the Mughals were hurled back. They having turned their backs without venturing to renew the attack, the Sultan directed that the tymbals should sound the charge, upon which the whole force mounted and charged the Mughals II fancy the Parwan Pass is not a nice place for a general charge by a numerous army of cavalry], who turned their backs and made off. Again they rallied, charged the Sultan's advanced troops, and inflicted a loss of 400 warriors; but the Sultan flew to the rescue, and again charged the Mughals and put them to final rout, making great slaughter among them. The two leaders returned with the remnant of their forces to Chingiz's camp at Tāe-kān.

The Sultān's troops, having defeated the Mughals, took to plunder; and, Ighrāk, about a horse, and Amîn Malik and Saif-ud-Dîn, Ighrāk, about a horse, and Amîn Malik, in the heat of the dispute, struck the latter over the head with his whip. The Sultān was unable [not 'unwilling'] to investigate the matter, because he doubted whether the Kankulis [Amīn Malik's followers] would submit to any decision. In consequence of this untoward event, Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk, smarting under the insult, stayed with the Sultān but for the day; and, when night set in, "with the instinct [and cunning] of the wild beasts," he marched away with his whole force towards the mountains of Kaṛmān and Saukurā [some say, 'Shautān].

This event completely broke the power of Jalal-ud-Dan, having deprived him of nearly half his army; and, under the circumstances, he thought it advisable

to retire to Ghaznin.

4 Chingiz Khān, who had now disposed of Tāe-kān, having become aware of this division among, and partial dispersion of, the Sulfan's array, hastened to take revenge. Leaving his heavy material behind at Buklān, he advanced with his whole available force, by way of Andar-āb, it is said, against Wāmiān or Bāmiān. [This certainly must be the Wālfān, as he would scarcely have left it unmolested.] He was detained a month before it, and, having taken it, he put every soul to the sword, and then set out against Sulfān lalāl-ud-Dîn.

The Sulfan, on becoming aware of Chingiz's intentions, being far too weak to make a stand against such forces, which no ruler of that time could outnumber, resolved to cross the Sindh, and retire into Hindustan [the reason probably was, that he claimed the western parts of the Panjab, and also of Sindh, as successor to the dominions of Mvitz (Shihāb)-du-Din, Ghūrī, and, leaving a garrison at Ghaznīn, he set out. Üz Khān was left at Kajlah [La Kajlā, probably, the name of a place on the route to the Indus by the Palwar Pass], with the rear-guard of the Sulfan's small force, to endeavour to

resistance to these forces, and retired towards Burshor [Pesha-

hold Chingiz's advance at bay, and give him time to send his family and effects across, and to get his followers across also, on the appearance of the Mughals, but Uz Khan was defeated and forced back. Chingiz, who saw through the Sultan's object, and knew that he had left Ghaznin fifteen days before his reaching it, pushed on with all possible celerity, and, after crushing the Sultan's rear-guard, made a forced march during the night. It was in the month of Rajab, 618 H. [corresponding to September, 1221 A.D., although a few writers mention Shawwal-December]; and, when the morning dawned, the Sultan, who was encamped near the bank of the river nearly opposite the Nil-ab ferry Ithe place where Timur is said, subsequently, to have passed the Indus, but he crossed at Dinkot], and who had along with him his family, dependents, and treasures, found the Mughals on three sides of him-they were in his front and on both flanks, and the river was in his rear. Notwithstanding the extreme danger of his situation, he was not to be daunted, and determined to stand his ground. The Mughals began by attacking his right wing fthe odds were more than fifty to one], under Amin Malik, a body of them having advanced along the river's bank to take him in flank; and they overpowered him, and most of his party were slaughtered. Amin Malik, with the few men remaining of the right wing, made for Barshawar; but, as the Mughals had occupied the route, he and they were all slaughtered by the way. The left wing, under Khan Malik, was likewise overwhelmed. The Sultan had kept up this unequal combat from dawn to noon, and was now left with the remains of his centre reduced by this time to about 700 men [some say 100 only]. He flew from the flank to the centre, and centre to flank of the enemy, and fought like a lion at bay, charged them repeatedly [the Mughals were commanded not to kill him, but to take him alive if possible], overthrowing numbers, and clearing a space around him at every onset, and filling them with amazement at his valour. All was of no avail; it was like attempting to stay the ocean's billows, for the Mughal forces increased every moment by the arrival of fresh troops, and pressed forward, every instant contracting the area round the gallant Sultan. [If the reader will examine one of the Panjab survey maps of this part, he will find that the nature of the ground was of some advantage to Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, by rendering it difficult for the Mughals to show an extended front.]

When he perceived that his situation was become desperate, and had gone beyond name and fame, he surveyed the scene with tearful eyes and fevered lip. At this crisis Ujāsh Malik [also Akhās], son of Khān Malik, his maternal uncle, seized the bridle of his horse, and dragged him away. With weeping eves, and his heart filled with a thousand pangs, he bade adieu to his wives and children, his mother, and other relations and dependents, called for his state charger to be saddled and brought forth, and, having mounted him, once more, like the crocodile, he plunged into the sea of conflict, and, having forced back the foremost of the enemy for a short distance, turned round, divested himself of his armour, slung his shield at his back, and, seizing his canopy without its staff, and urging his charger with his whip [spurs not used], he plunged into the Sindh, although the water was at a distance of eight or ten yards below the bank; and, armed with his sword, spear, shield, and quiver of arrows, "like unto a fearless lion rushing along a plain, he passed the Jihun, and reached the opposite bank in safety, after having been carried down some distance by the force of the current, and before reaching a spot favourable for landing." [A camel does not look very "proud" when crossing a river, much less the Indus, even in a boat. See ELLIOT, vol. ii., note 2, page 552.

war?]; and, on the banks of the river Sind, an encounter

Between a lion and a camel there is a vast difference, although they are but two points-is and is but who could mistake them, the camel being a very model of awkwardness? The word "Jihun," used by one of the authors from which this is taken, seems to signify any mighty river, as the Jihun of Sindh; and, in this sense, Ibn Khurdabih appears to use it. There is a place, on the west bank of the Indus, a little below Nil-ab, called Ghora-Trap, or the "Horse's Leap," and very probably the name is derived from the Sultan's feat above recorded. Chingiz Khan caused a monument [sie] to be erected where the battle took place. It has been said [ELLIOT, vol ii., App. page 571], that "the passage of the river [Indus] would have been no such very gallant feat [Columbus and the egg to wit: nothing is after it has been accomplished !I in that month [December] when the river was at its lowest." and reference is made to "Altamsh" [I-yal-timish] and old Ranjit Singh; but where did they cross? Where the river was broad and shallow, and the current not rapid: but where Jalal-ud-Din is said to have plunged in from the overhanging bank, some 25 to 30 feet above the water, was at a place a few miles below Nil-ab, where the river is about 180 feet deep, 250 yards wide, and running at the rapid rate of nine or ten miles an hour. The whole distance between Nil-ab and this place may be described as one immense and irresistible rapid. See Wood: "Oxus."] Chingiz, seeing the Sultan in the act of crossing, galloped to the bank; and some of his Mughals would have thrown themselves in after him, but Chingiz forbade them, and they took to their bows. A group, who witnessed the scene, relate that, as far as their arrows could reach, the water was red with blood, for several of his followers followed his example. Some idea may be formed, from what has been noticed above, of the value of the "UNIVERSAL HISTORY," the best authority for the English reader to consult, when it is therein stated, that Jalal-ud-Din, when in the middle of the riverrunning about nine miles an hour-"stopped to insult Jenghiz Khan, who was come to the bank to admire his courage, and emptied his quiver of arrows against him"!!

Having reached the opposite side, the Sulţān, slowly and sorrowfully, rode upwards along the bank until he reached a spot facing his own camp, and beheld the plunder of his family, kinsmen, dependents, his treasures, and all his belongings, without being able to render them succour, while Chingiz continued astride his horse on the opposite side, pointing out the Sulţān to his sons. The Sulţān now dismounted from his charger, loosened the girths, took off the felt saddle-cloth, together with his own tunic and cloak, and his arrows, and laid them in the sun to dry, and spread his canopy on the head of his spear, which he stuck into the ground to shade him from the sun. He remained all alone until the time of afternoon prayer, when about seven of his followers joined him, and a small tent was pitched for his convenience. Whilst the light permitted, he watched the proceedings of the Mughals, "whilst the heavens above looked down upon him with wonder and amazement, as though they said,—

Never hath the world beheld a man like this, Nor heard of one among the heroes of ancient times.

Chingiz Khān and the whole of the Mughals, who witnessed this wonderful feat, placed their hands to their mouths [denoting amazement]; and Chingiz himself, when he beheld the Sulfan's lofty bearing, turned his face towards his sons, and said,—"Such a son as this is worthy to survive his father! Since he has each gaid the vortex of fire and water, and reached the shore of escape,

took place between them. Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dîn was defeated and overthrown, and he threw himself into the river, and retired, discomfited, into Hindūstān.

The august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, despatched a force from his armies against him, upon which Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn turned aside, and proceeded towards Ochchah and Multān. From thence he entered the

countless deeds will be achieved by him, and vast trouble caused; and, as long as he lives, it is fallacious for us to entertain the hope of dominion and empire, and how then is it possible for any prudent man to be heedless of his actions!"

Several historians say, that this event occurred in the "vicinity" [2-6-7] Barghāwar; and, from this, we may judge how far Wālhind or Bahind, mentioned under Maḥmūd of Ghaanīn [page 76], may have been distant from

that place. See also note 5, page 285.

5 Here we have a good specimen of our author's wilful concealment and distortion of facts : he could not have been ignorant of these events, which happened during his own lifetime, in the country in which he was residing, and at Court, where all these matters were perfectly well known. He came first into Sindh in 624 H., not long after they happened. I must only give a brief summary of the principal events to elucidate Jalal-ud-Din's Indian career. and correct our author's blunders and misstatements. The Sultan, having crossed the Indus in safety, as soon as night came on, entered the Chul [uncultivated or desert tract] of Jaruk-called to this day, the Chul-i-Jalali-with his few followers, and was joined, by degrees, by stragglers from his army. until they numbered about 50 or 100 men, some badly armed. With this handful of followers he attacked a town, where there was a considerable force of Hindus, defeated them, and captured the place, and in it obtained some horses and arms. Shortly after, others of his men, who had escaped from the banks of the Indus, also joined him. He sent a force of 500 horse against another place in that vicinity, and again defeated the people of those parts, who showed hostility towards him. By degrees his force increased to between 4000 and 5000 men; and Chingiz, who was still in the vicinity of the Indus, on hearing of it, and fearing the energy of Jalal-ud-Din, despatched a force against him under a leader named Türtäe. The Sultan, not being strong enough to oppose the Mughals, retired through a part of the Panjab towards the frontier of the kingdom of Dihli. On this the Mughal leader again retired, after plundering the neighbourhood of Malkapur. The Sultan despatched an envoy to I-yal-timish, the slave-king of Dihli, on arriving near his frontier, requesting that the latter would assign a place for his residence for a short time. and urged this request upon the previous good understanding, which had existed between them as neighbours [his father's officials and the ruler of Dihli probably], and further urged the great advantage of mutual support, and that, even for humanity's sake, he would grant this favour of an asylum. "The base nature of the slave, however, was," as one author says, "unchanged in the king; and, sprinkling his head with the dust of churlishness and ill-nature, he, after taking a long time to consider on the subject, put the Sultan's envoy to death [some say he had him poisoned], under pretence that the envoy had been conspiring against him, but, in reality, fearing the effect upon his own Turkish followers, and probably the Sultan's superiority over himself, his warlike character, his nobility of mind, and great energy. The manumitted slave

territory of Kirman, and afterwards Fars. The Ata-bak,

excused himself by saving, that the climate of the country would not agree with the Sultan's health, but that, if he would accept a place in the environs of Dihli, one should be assigned to him. This, of course, was to get him into his power, if possible. As to I-val-timish sending "an army" against the Sultan, it is absurd; he knew better than to do that. He did send a great man as envoy, with rich presents and supplies, and false excuses, for the murder The Sultan, having returned to Balalah and Nikalah, of the Sultan's envoy. near Lahor, and his forces having now increased, by the arrival of many of his old soldiers, to the number of about 10,000, but by no means sufficient to bring the ruler of Dihli to account, despatched a portion of his army against the Hills of Jud. That force defeated the Khokar [or more correctly, Khokhar] chief, erroneously styled Rae Kokar and Kokar by most writers [the Ghakhars are quite a distinct racel, and returned with great booty. The Sultan demanded the chief's daughter in marriage, which was readily acceded to; and, moreover, the Rae sent his son at the head of a considerable body of his tribe, to join the Sultan's troops, and the title of Kutlagh [some say Kulij] Khan was bestowed upon the latter.

Hostility of long standing existed between the Khokhar chief and Kubāchah, governor of Sindh Ithe whole valley of the Indus, below the Salt Range, was called Sindh in those days], who had now begun to consider himself an independent sovereign. He was encamped near Uchchah with 20,000 men, and a force of 7000 was despatched against him, by the Sulfan, under Jahān Pahlawān, guided by the chief's son. They made a forced march, and, falling suddenly upon Kubāchah, in the night, totally overthrew him. Kubāchah got on board a vessel, and made for his stronghold of Akar and Bakar [Sakar and Bhakar? Jāmi'-att-Tawārīkh says, "two fortresses on one island"], "which are two islands in the river Sindh' "[more on this subject anon], and the Sulfān came to Üchchah. Kubāchah now managed to get back to Multān, after having, on the Sulfān's demand, paid him a considerable sum of money as tribute. The hot season coming on, the Sulfān returned to the Salt Range hills again, and, on the way, took a fortress called Bisirām or Bisrām pits.

Chingiz had despatched another army against him, and the Sultan was obliged to move towards Lower Sindh. On his arrival in sight of Multan, he sent an agent to Kubachah and demanded a contribution; but he, knowing the Mughals were on the move, refused, and showed determined hostility. The Sultan did not tarry in the vicinity, but proceeded to Uchchah, which, proving hostile also, he remained before two days, and set fire to. From thence he advanced to Sindustan [the name given by the generality of historians is Sīwastān-Alfi says, "Sadūsān, which is Sīwastān"]-the present Europeanized Sehwan. The city and fortress were held by a deputy of Kubachah's. Fakhr-ud-Din, Sālāri. A force sent out by him, under Lāchin, a native of Khitā, having been overthrown by the Sultan's vanguard under Uz Khan. Fakhr-ud-Din, on the Sultan's arrival, came forth, and delivered up the place. Jalal-ud-Din entered the city, and remained there a month, after which he conferred a dress of honour upon Fakhr-ud-Din, left him in charge as his lieutenant in Sindustan, and marched to Dibal and Damrilah. A Habash [Abyssinian or negro], who was ruler of that part, fled, got on ship-board, and escaped. The Sultan encamped near those places; and, from thence, detached a force, under Khās Khān towards Nahrwālah, from which he returned with immense booty. Sultan Jalal-ud-Din founded a Jami' Masjid at Diwal or Dibal, as it

Abū-Bikr, ruler of Fārs6, gave the Sultan his sister in

is also called, on the ruins of an idol-temple. [The situation of this place seems to have puzzled many. Istakhuri says it lies west of the river Mihran; Abi-l-Kasim, Ibn Hukal, says, in one place, that it lies on the sea-coast on the eastern bank of the Mihran; while, in another place, he says the waters of the Mihran fall into the sea east of Dibal. Abu I-Kasim-i-'Abd-ullah, son of Khurdad, Khurasani, author of the MASALIK-WA-MAMA-LIK, also says the Mihran passes Dibal on the east; but Abu-l-Fazl says. plainly, that Brāhmanābād was subsequently styled Dibal or Diwal and Thathah, and so does the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh and others also. Extensive ruins exist for miles around Thathah; and, in endeavouring to fix the site of Dibal, which the ancient geographers say was situated on the coast, and modern writers expect to find there still, the latter do not make allowance for alterations and changes in the course, and for the deposits at the mouth of the Indus, which, during the lapse of many centuries, have increased the distance of the present Thathah from the sea many miles. The mouth for mouths of the Indus must have changed considerably within the last 250 years, if Thathah and Diwal be one and the same place; for Paynton, in his account of the voyage of Captain Christopher Newport, who took out Sir Robert Shirley as envoy to Persia in 1613, says Sir Robert was landed there. He remarks,-"We came to an anchor near the city of Diul, in the mouth of the river Sinde, in 24° 30' N. LAT., and our varying at the same place 16° 45'." Thathah is in LAT. 24° 44', and Karāchi, which is also supposed by some to be the site of Dibal, lies in 24° 51'.]

Whilst in Lower Sindh, information reached the Sultān, that his brother, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Pîr Shāh, was established in 'Irāk', but that the troops, generally, desired his [Jalāl-ud-Dīn's] presence, and were calling for him to head them; and further, that Burāk, the Ḥājib, was in Kirmān, and was then investing the town [city] of Bardasīr. [Ibn Ḥūkal says—''Bardasir, which is to say, Gawāṣḥīh.'] These things, together with information respecting the movements of a large Mughal force [the one previously alluded to, which was despatched into the Mukrānā—the Mukrāns], and the return of Chingiz to his own country again, determined the Sultān to set out for 'Irāk by way of Mukrān, which he did in 621 H.; and, like Alexander before him, lost a number of his followers from the unhealthiness of the climate.

From this point, in order to save space, I must greatly curtail the notes I had written, although the remaining events in the career of Jalal-ud-Din are very interesting. The Sulţān entered Kimān, and Shujā-'ud-Din, Abū-l-'Kāsim's son, who held out Gawāṣhīr [also called Bardasīr] for Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, the Sulṭān's brother, and who was then holding it against Burāk, the Ḥājih, came out and presented the keys to the Sulṭān. Burāk pretended to submit and to be most loyal, and gave his daughter to the Sulṭān, but, subsequently, shut him out of the capital, and sent out his followers, although he pretended merely to hold it, and the territory of Kirmān, as the Sulṭān's deputy. Jalāl-ud-Din had matters of greater importance to engage his attention at that time, and he accordingly set out for 'Irāk by way of Shīrāz, and sent an envoy to the Atā-bak Sa'd to announce his coming.

6 Not so: the Atā-bak Sa'd still ruled in Fārs, and Abū-Bikr did not succeed him until 628 H.—seven years subsequently. How different was the behaviour of Sa'd to that of the "august Sulfān" of our author! As soon as the Sulfān's agent came, he despatched his son, Salghur Shāh, with 500 horse, to do him honour, and to apologize for not coming himself, because, some time

marriage, and entertained him as a guest. From Fārs, Jalāl-ud-Din entered the country of Āzarbāijān, and defeated the infidels of Gurj ⁷ [Georgia], and reduced that country under his jurisdiction.

previously, he had taken an oath which he could not break, that he would never more go forth to receive any one soever. Jaidi-ud-Din accepted his apology, received his son with great favour, and conferred the title of Farzand Khūn upon him. On the Sulţān reaching the neighbourhood of Sa'd's capital, he supplied him with every sort of thing that could be desired—clothes, arms, horses, supplies of all descriptions, and even Ḥabashī, Hindī, and Turkish slaves to serve him. After certain agreements and stipulations had been concluded between them, the Atā-bak Sa'd gave a daughter of his own in marriage to the Sulţān, the ceremonies of which were duly celebrated, and a thoroughly good understanding was established between them, and Sa'd was confirmed in his possessions. On his departure for Işfahān, the Sulţān induced Sa'd to release his son Abū-Bikr, who had long been imprisoned for hostility towards his father [see page 178], and Abū-Bikr was released and allowed to follow in the train of the Sultān.

Having entered 'Irāk, the Sulţān proceeded to Rai; and his brother, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Pīr Shāh, pretended to submit to his brother's authority. On the way to Iṣfahān, the Sulţān was joined by the venerable 'Alā-ud-Daulah, who bore the title of Atā-bak, and, for the last sixty years, had held the government of Yazl. He was the lineal descendânt of the last of the Dālalmah

rulers of the family of Buwiah. See page 66, and note 7,

Jalāl-ud-Dīn's affairs now began to acquire some stability. He determined to proceed to Shustar for the winter of 621 H., and afterwards, having previously despatched an envoy, to proceed to Baghādā and endeavour to establish friendly relations with the Khalīfah, and solicit his aid and support against the common enemy of their faith, or at least to obtain the countenance and sanction of the Khalīfah for his own efforts against them. All was to no purpose: the hostility of Un-Nāṣir towards the father was continued towards the son, although the common enemy of their faith was, so to speak, at his own gates. He not only refused to hold any communication with him, but sent two armies to expel him from his territory; but the Sulţān, who was compelled to fight in his own defence, defeated and routed both armies in detail, with much inferior numbers. Un-Nāṣir died in the following year, 622 H.

The Sulţān, unsuccessful at the court of Baghdād, determined to bring under his jurisdiction the subject province of Āarhātjān, in which the Atābak, Yūz-bak, the son of the Atā-bak, Jahān Pahlawān, ruled. Yūz-bak fed from his capital, Tabrīz, on the Sulţān's approach, and retired to his stronghold of Alanjūk, leaving his consort, the daughter of Sulţān Tughril [not Sanjar], Saljūk, in charge of the capital. She was aggrieved with Yūz-bak on some account, and stated that he had divorced her; and, having obtained a dispensation from the chief Ṣapī to that effect, she, after consulting with and obtaining the sanction of the chiefs and great men, agreed to deliver up Tabrīz to the Sulţān, if he would, after the prescribed period, marry her. The Sulţān agreed, and the capital was delivered up to him, and he entered it in 622 nt. Subsequently, he went to Nakhjūān, and espoused Shams Malikah Khātūn, as agreed; and, a few days after the news reached her former husband, the Atā-bak Yūz-bak, he died of grief and chagrin.

7 Soon after Jalal-ud-Din engaged in hostilities with the Gurjis, and was

He also fought engagements with the armies of Rūm and of <u>Sh</u>ām, and was defeated and overcome; but, at length, peace was concluded between him and the army of <u>Sh</u>ām. Tūrti, the Mughal, who had invested Multān s, left <u>Ch</u>ingiz <u>Kh</u>ān, and came and joined Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and became a convert to the Muhammadan faith.

The Mughal forces, upon several occasions, went in pursuit of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, but victory always attended him. At last, in the year 628, or 629 H., the Sultān was

successful against them; but was impeded in his operations by Burāk, the Hājib, throwing off his allegiance. He determined to move against the rebel at once, and acted with such celerity, that on the eighteenth day he reached Kirman from Tiffis, only 300 horse having kept up with him. Burak hastened to make submission, by sending apologies, rich and costly presents, and protestations of loyalty for the future, but did not, of course, venture into the Sultan's presence. The latter could do nought else than accept his submission, for during his absence, Malik-ul-Ashraf, ruler of Sham, instigated by Burak to create a diversion in his own favour, sent an army into the Sultan's territory, under the governor of Akhlät, who carried off Shams Malikah Khatun from Khūe, and dishonoured her [Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says, Malik-ul-Ashraf dishonoured her, and Rauzat-us-Safā says, it was the Hājib, 'Ali]; and the Gurits also rose. The Sultan lost no time in taking revenge, and carried slaughter and devastation up to the very gates of Akhlat. He had, however, to abandon his operations against it, from intimation that two Mughal armies had entered 'Irak. One of these supposed armies turned out to be Jahan Pahlawan, Ir-bak [Thus in one copy of Guzidah, with the diacritical points; in others, Ir-lak and Ir-lik; and in other writers, Uz-bak and Uz-bak and Uz-bak Khan, but I do not account the last three correct], and his followers, who had been left by the Sultan as governor of his conquests in the valley of the Indus. Jalal-ud-Din, however, broke up his camp before Akhlat, and retired into 'Irak to oppose the Mughals. Nearly every copy of the text has Karkh instead of Gurj.

3 This statement is not mentioned by other authors quoted herein, and is very doubtful.

⁹ In Ramaçãn 624 H. [Jāmi'-uh-Tawārikh and some others say, in 626 H., and others, 625 H., but the first, from other circumstances and data, is correct], he encountered the enemy between Iṣfahān and Rai. The right wing of the Sulţān's army, led by Uz Rhān, overthrew the opposing force of Mughals, when the Sulṭān's brother, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, who had charge of the other wing, deserted during the action, with all his adherents, and fied into Lūristān. [It was subsequent to this that he was put to death'by Burāk. See page 285, and note?.] This dastardly act on the part of his brother caused the Sulṭān's overthrow, and he had to cut his way out of the fight. He succeeded in reaching the neighbouring hills, and, after some days, reached Iṣfahān, to the joy and surprise of the troops and people, who feared he must have perished. The Mughals, after this, re red into Khurāsān again. Their object, at this period, seems to have been to prevent the Sulṭān's government from acquiring any stability, to ravage the country they passed through, and to endeavour to surprise him. In consequence of their retreat, the Sulṭān had time to renew

encamped on the confines of Āzarbāijān, on the side of <u>Sh</u>ām and Diyār-i-Bakr, when an army of Mughals came unexpectedly upon him, and he was obliged to fly '.

his operations in Gurjistān and Arman. He marched from Iṣfahān, in 625 H., and, having succeeded against the Gurjīs, marched to Akhlāt once more, took it by storm, captured the governor's [Ḥājib 'Ali's] wife, whom he made his slave, and amply revenged the outrage Shams Malikah Khātūn had suffered at her husband's hands.

Jalal-ud-Dīn now turned his arms against the Sulṭān of Rūm, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, son of Kai-Kubād, Saljūkī [see bottom of page 162], and Malik-ul-Ashraf, ruler of Shām, who had combined against him [all the Muḥammadan rulers at this time, with few exceptions, seem bent on their own destruction, and played into the hands of the Mughals], and had been joined by forces from Arman, Gurjistān, and Kifchāk [Krim 7]. In the first action, the Sulṭān overthrew a portion of them; but in a second engagement, having to dismount from his horse through illness, his troops, thinking he had retired from the field, became dispirited and gave way. They were not pursued, because the enemy considered their flight a mere stratagem of the Sulṭān's to draw them into an ambuscade. This is said to have taken place in Gay H. Jalāl-ud-Dīn had endeavoured [in 627-8 II.] to induce the rulers of Rūm and Shām to join him against the common enemy, but jealousy and suspicion on their part prevented so advantageous an alliance.

1 The end of the gallant Sultan's eventful career, however, was approaching. He had passed the winter of 628 H. in the neighbourhood of Irmaniah, when intimation reached him of the despatch of a fresh and numerous army of Mughals, under Jarmaghun, and of their early approach: He despatched Uz Khān, with a strong patrol, to make inquiries. He proceeded as far as Tabriz, where he was told that they had retired from the country again, and, without satisfying himself as to the truth of this report, he returned to the Sultan's camp with it. Thrown off his guard by this false report, the Sultan and his troops gave themselves up to festivity and carousal. After some time had elapsed, one night, in the month of Shawwal of the above year, the Mughals came suddenly upon him. The Sultan, who was sound asleep at the time from the effects of his potations, was aroused by Uz Khan, who urged him to fly. The Mughals had already got into his camp, and were slaying all who came in their way. Uz Khan kept them at bay for a short time, during which the Sultan was able to mount his horse, and fly towards the hills of the Kurds. He wandered about for some time, when sleep overcame him; he lay down, and fell fast asleep. A Kurd, attracted by the richness of his dress, seized him. The Sultan made himself known to him, and requested the man to conduct him to Malik Muzaffar, the then governor of Akhlat. The Kurd conducted him first to his dwelling, and then went back to the place where he had found the Sultan asleep to search for his horse, which had strayed whilst his master slept. Another Kurd, whose brother had been killed in the storming of Akhlat-some say by the Sultan's own hand-having heard where he was, came, during the absence of his clansman, and slew him in revenge for his brother's death.

With Jalāl-ud-Dîn, the Khwārazm Shāhī dynasty terminated. Some authors relate that he was not slain on the above occasion, but that he changed clothes with the Kurd, and turned devotee, and wandered about the world. Curiously enough, I have accidentally met with a confirmation of this. It is

He succeeded in reaching a place in the territory of \underline{Akhlat} , and halted to rest near a village, the chief of which recognized him. In a battle, which had taken place between the Sulṭān and the troops of \underline{Sh} ām, he had slain the brother² of that chief. Having the Sulṭān thus in his power, that chieftain martyred him. The next day, information was conveyed to the sovereign of \underline{Sh} ām, who was greatly grieved [at his fate]; and he commanded that the murderer should suffer condign punishment.

On the occurrence of this misfortune, the sister of the Atā-bak, Abū-Bikr, ruler of Fārs [Jalāl-ud-Dīn's consort], reached Shām. She was treated with honour and reverence, and was conducted back to Fārs.

Thus the dominion of the \underline{Kh} wārazm \underline{Sh} āhs terminated; and their remaining Maliks, and their followers, took up their residence in Shām and in Misr.

most interesting, and from one who attended him in his last moments. Shaikh 'Ala-ud-Daulah, Al-Byabanki, us-Simnani relates as follows :- "When at Baghdad, I used daily, at noon, to wait upon the pious and venerable Shaikh, Nūr-ul-Hakk wa ud-Dīn, 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān-i-Isfarāini-may his tomb be sanctified! I happened to go upon one occasion, at the usual hour, and found him absent from his abode, a rather unusual occurrence at that time of the day. I went again on the following morning to wait upon him, and inquired as to the cause of his absence on the previous day. He replied, 'My absence was caused through Sultan Jalal-ud-Din, Mang-barni, having been received into the Almighty's mercy,' I inquired, 'What, had he been living all this time?' He answered, 'You may have noticed a certain aged man, with a mole upon his nose, who was wont to stay at a certain place,' which he named. I had often remarked the venerable devotee in question;" and that was the heroic, but unfortunate Sultan, Jalal-ud-Din. According to this account, Jalal-ud-Din could not have died until 688 H., above sixty years after the period above mentioned.

2 The most reliable copies have "brother;" others, "brothers and sons;" and some again, "sons" only.

SECTION XVII.

THE <u>SH</u>ANSABĀNĪAH SULŢĀNS, AND THE MALIKS OF GHŪR.

MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ, Jūrjānī, the servant hopeful of the Divine mercy-the Almighty guard him from negligence and inadvertency !-- says, with respect to this account of the Shansabāniah Maliks of Ghūr, after this manner:-That the following pages are illumined with the sun of the illustrious race of the Sultans of Ghur, together with that of the offset of the fragrant tree of the Maliks of Ghūr-may the Almighty God render their dust fragrant, and assign to them a habitation in Paradise!—in the manner of a record, from the dawn of the morning of their dominion, and the noon-day splendour of their sovereignty, together with the genealogy of their family, until the expiration of the empire of that princely house, and the last of the Maliks of that kingly dynasty-the mercy of the Almighty be upon those among them who have passed away1 !-- in such wise as masters have, in histories, made mention of them, in order that the robe of this chronicle may be adorned with an account of them, and also, in order that this [their] servant, and his priestly family, may acquit themselves of some portion of the debt of gratitude for benefits received, due unto those Sultans-the light of the Almighty illumine their tombs !-- and, in order that such as may inspect these pages may, please God, derive profit and instruction.

Be it known, that that master of eloquence, Maulānā Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubārak Shāh, of Marw-ar-rūd—the light of the Almighty illumine his tomb!—has strung the genealogical pearls of the Sultāns of this dynasty on the thread of poetry, and, having arranged those pearls in perfect

¹ When this flourish was penned they had ceased to hold any territory for nearly half a century.

order, has affixed the head pearl of that string to the oyster-shell of the illustrious dynasty of Zuḥāk, the Tāzī; and, from the time of those Sulṭāns up to the first commencement of the sovereignty of Zuḥāk, he has mentioned the whole of them, father by father.

This book2 their servant, Minhāi-i-Sarāi, inspected in the year 602 H., before the exalted throne in the sacred haram [private dwelling] of that lady, the Princess of the Universe, and the most excellent of her day and of the age, the glory of the world and of the faith, the sovereign of all good qualities among the race of mankind, Mah Malik, daughter of the august Sultan, Ghiyas-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din, Abi-ul-Fath, Muhammad, son of Sam, Kasim-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminin-may the light of the Almighty illumine them! This Queen of the Universe used to bestow her fostering care and protection upon this frail creature [Minhāj-i-Sarāj], and, in her own princely hall, as though he had been a child of her own, he was brought up; and, in his younger years, he used, day and night, to dwell within her haram, and, under her blessed sight, he used to receive instruction.

That princess was possessed of many virtues and endowments. First: she departed from this transitory sphere, and passed to the eternal mansion, within the veil of maidenhood. Second: she knew the whole of God's word [the Kur'ān] by heart. Third: she was a depository of all the traditions of martyrdom. Fourth: she used, once a year, to devote a certain period to religious exercises, and would repeat the whole Kur'ān in two genuflexions of prayer. Fifth: when her father, Sultān Chiyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, went to the mercy of the Almighty, for a period of seven years the light of the sun and of day never shone upon her, and she continued in constant and solitary prayer. The mercy of the Almighty be upon her, and may her happiness and her reward be ample in heaven!

In short, that master of eloquence, Maulānā Fakhrud-Dīn, Mubārak Shāh, has composed that genealogical list in verse, in the name of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, Jahānsoz: and, at the outset, I heard from the sacred lips of that

² One historian quotes a portion of Fakhr-ud-Dīn's work, but it is too long for insertion here. He was a Saiyid, hence he is styled <u>Sh</u>āh.

most excellent of her time, and <u>Kh</u>adijah^a of the age, the Malikah-i-Jalāli⁴, that, when some portion of the book and chronicle in question had been composed in verse, through a change which had showed itself in the temperament of Fa<u>kh</u>r-ud-Din, Mubārak <u>Sh</u>āh, this poem was neglected by him until the time when the throne of the kingdom became adorned and beautified with the majesty and august splendour of Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Din⁶, Muḥammad-i-Sām, when this chronicle became graced with his name

and titles, and was brought to completion.

The Chronicler relates after this manner: - The Almighty knoweth the truth !- that this dynasty are called Shansabāniān with reference to their paternal ancestor [Shansab by namel, who, after the removal of the sons of Zuhāk, grew up in the country of Ghur, and attained great authority. power, and superiority, and acquired a name. The great probability is, that this personage lived in the time of the Khilāfat of the Lord of the Faithful, 'Ali-may God reward him !-- and that he received conversion to the faith at the hand of 'Ali himself', and that he took, from that Khalifah, a mandate and a standard; and to every one of that family, who used to sit upon the throne, that covenant which the Lord of the Faithful, 'Ali, had written, used to be presented to him, and he would agree to abide by it, after which he would become [legally] king. family likewise were among the clients of the Khalifah 'Ali; and affection towards the High Priests of the family of the Chosen One used to be a firm tenet in their creed.

ACCOUNT OF THE FIRST [ANCESTORS] OF THE FAMILY, THEIR GENEALOGY, AND THEIR PROGENITORS, UP TO ZUḤĀK, SURNAMED TĀZĪ.

Zuḥāk has been mentioned in the section on the ancient kings of Irān; and the duration of his reign was a thousand years less one day and a half.

8 Muhammad's first wife.

The same lady he previously referred to under the name of Māh-Malik.
One of the oldest MSS, has Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, the younger of the two brothers.

⁶ Jahān-Ārā, and some other histories distinctly state that Shansab, son of Kharnak, was contemporary with the Khalifah'Ali, and that he was converted to the Muḥammadan faith by him. Compare our author's statement above with that at Dare 312.

The learned in chronology differ considerably with respect to his ancestry and his forefathers, from Mihtar Ādam down to Mihtar Nūḥ, on account of the great lapse of time?. The fraternity, who account Zuḥāk among the descendants of Sām, son of Mihtar Nūḥ, relate as follows:—Zuḥāk³, son of 'Ānmān ['Ulwān], son of 'Amlāk ['Amlāt and 'Alāk], son of 'Ād, son of 'Āṣ ['Awaṣ and 'Awaz], son of Iram, son of Sām, son of Nūḥ, son of Lamak; while others again have related that his [Zuḥāk's] name was Biwar-āsp, son of Arwand-āsp, son of Tūḥ, or Tawaḥ [Tarḥ], son of Kābah [Kāyah?], son of Nūḥ.

Some, on the other hand, have stated:—Biwar-āsp, or Biwar-asp, son of Ārwand-āsp, son of Zankabā [Ranbakā], son of Tāzio-barsed [Tāzio-barsid, Tāzio-barshed, Tāzio-

7 The Muḥammadan historians are at variance respecting the descent of Zuḥāk. Our author, in his account of him in Section V., says he was called Diwar-āsp, and that God sent Nūḥ to him to exhort him to repent of his misdeeds, and that Nūḥ continued for ages to do so. He would not repent, and the Flood followed. Our author then copies Tabart [tolerably correct], and says that that author [the most trustworthy perhaps of any] states that Biwar-āsp lived before the Flood, in which he perished; and, one thousand years after the death of Nūḥ [compare with his statement here and at page 312], a king arose of the seed of Sām, son of Nūḥ, named Zuḥāk, who was a sorrerer.

Immediately after quoting Tabari, our author again says that Pesh-dad, son of Hoshang, had a son, Täzio by name, who is the father of all the 'Arabs. He had a son Zankabā, who had a son Ārwand-āsp, who was father of Zuhāk. The Tārikh-i-Mukaddasī, there quoted by him, says Zuḥāk's name is Biwar-āsp, son of Arwand-āsp, son of Yarah, son of Kayah, son of Nayah, son of Nayah, son of Yarah.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, Tārikh-i-Ibrāhimi, and some others, say the 'Ajami's call Zuhāk, Biwar-āsp, and that the Patriarch Ibrāhim lived during his reign; but further state that great discrepancy exists among authors as to his descent. The 'Arabs say he was brother's son of 'Shadād-i-'Ad, and trace his descent to Iram, son of Sām, brother of Arākhahād, while he Irāni's say his name is Ārwand-āsp, son of Rīnkāwar [Zankabā?], son of Sāhirah, son of Tūjz, son of Farāwal, and that Tūjz was Hoghang's brother. Gurāfdah and others trace his descent from Jamāhed, and say he was his sister's son; but the greater number of chroniclers agree that he was sixth in descent from Kaitmurt, also written Kaitmurs. The people of Yanan, again, say Zuhāk was of Yaman, of the tribe of Tubba' [the royal tribe of Arabia Felix, of whom Balkis, Queen of Sheba [Sabā], was one], and that he was the first of the Fir'awns of Migr.

It will be well to mention here that the first name given in the following pages is the one considered most trustworthy from comparison, and in which the greater number and best copies of the text agree; and that those within brackets are less so according to position.

9 Alwand-āsp and Ārwand-āsp are also the names of the father of Luhr-āsp, also called Ārwand Shāh.

narṣad, Tābūr, Tāzbū, and Tāzbūr], son of Farāwwal [Farāwal, Karāwal?], son of Sīā-mak, son of Mub<u>sh</u>ī [Mu<u>sh</u>bī], son of Kaiū-murṣ, son of Ādam—peace be unto him!—while others again say:—Kaiū-murṣ, son of

Lāwad, son of Sām, son of Nüh.

The writers of chronicles [other than those above?] relate after this manner, that Ārwand-āsp was the father of Zuḥāk¹, and son of the son of Tāzīo-barsed [Tāzīo, Tāzbū, and Tāzbūr]; and, with the concurrence of historians, Tāzīo-barsed, likewise, was the father of all the 'Arabs, and brother of Hoshang Malik²; and the 'Arabs are called Tāzī¹ through affinity to him. He held dominion and sovereignty over the nomad tribes of 'Arabs, as did his descendants after him. From him the authority passed to his son, Zanbakā [Zankabā²], and from him to the latter's son, Ārwand-āsp [Ārwan-āsp], who was a just, wise, and Godfearing man. He had a son, Zuḥāk by name, who was exceedingly malicious and factious, a blood-shedder, and a great tyrant, and a cruel man, whom Shaiṭān [Satan] had led astray from the right way¹. He dug a well in the

¹ According to Tabari he [Zuḥāk] was a descendant of Ḥām, son of Nūḥ, and after the Flood there was no king upon the earth for a thousand years, until Zuḥāk, the sorcerer, arose; but there are different accounts of him, and great discrepancies exist among authors concerning him. There are the remains of an immense fortress near Bamiān, still known as the castle of Zuḥāk-i-Maria, or Zuḥāk of the Snakes.

2 Hoghang is considered the fourth in descent from Ådam, and was the son of Slā-mak, who was son of Kaiimurt. Some consider him to be Arfakhghā, son of Sām, who composed the Jāwldān-Khirad. He is said to have founded Istakhur—Istakhur is the 'Arab form of writing it—of Fārs, Bābal, and Sūs.

a Called also Tail by 'Ajamis, and hence the name Tailk It added to 'Ajami names forms a diminutivel, by which the descendants of 'Arabs were styled who were born in and had grown up in 'Ajam. At present the term is used with respect to Persian-speaking people who are neither Turks nor 'Arabs, and of which race the inhabitants generally of towns and cities in Afghānistān, and several districts likewise under Afghān sway, and also of several independent states to the north, consist. The Afghans often style them "Tājik-Mājik." Numbers of 'Arab tribes, or parts of tribes settled in different parts of 'Ajam, after its conquest by the first Musalman invaders, and several tribes dwelling among the Afghans, and often confounded with them. claim 'Arab descent. In my proposed history of the Afghan tribes, I shall be able to enter into more detail on this subject. Modern philosophers, however, are, as a matter of course, divided in opinion about the derivation of the name, and also as to the descent of the people; but why should we begrudge them the infinite pleasure of still speculating upon the matter, and trying to make every other account fit that of certain Greeks? See page 309, A few copies have "from the right way, so that he dug a well," &c.

path which his father was wont to pass, and Ārwandāsp, who had become old and infirm, fell into it, and was killed.

Zuḥāk now became sovereign over the 'Arabs, and, after Jamshed [Jamshed's time?] conquered the whole world, and by sorcery and tyranny brought the whole of it under his sway. The author of the Tārikh-i-Mukaddasi states, that Zuḥāk possessed a cylinder, made of gold, in which were seven apertures, each of which was named after one of the seven climes of the four quarters of the earth. When the inhabitants of either of these climates happened to rebel against his authority, he would raise incantations in the aperture named after such climate, and breathe into it, and famine, pestilence, and calamity would arise in it.

After a thousand years of his sovereignty passed away, Almighty God was pleased to release the world from his tyranny and oppression, and the kingdom came to Faridūn. He seized Zuhāk, and confined him in a pit on mount Dimāwand, in Trāk.

ACCOUNT OF BUSTAM, MALIK OF HIND AND OF SIND 7.

This Bustam Malik held the dominion of Hindustan⁸ at the hand of Zuhāk, and he was one of Zuhāk's descendants,

According to trustworthy authorities, this Biwar-āsp became styled Zuḥāk, from the old Persian words ω is a dah-āk, signifying "ten vices and defects;" and the 'Arabs, in copying the name, used ω for a or and transformed it into ω ω by changing the salso into With this change of letters, the original meaning of the word became changed, for ω ω [Zuḥāk] signifies "a mocker," "laughing."

His vices and defects were hideousness, dwarfishness, excessive arrogauce and pride, shamelessness, audacity, gluttony and voracity, a foul tongue, recklessness, lying, injustice, ferocity and tyranny, depravity of heart, and stolidity. These are rather more than ten however. Raugat-us-Safa says Biwar is from the Pahlawf, and in Dari means ten thousand, and, therefore, Dah-āk received the name of Biwar-āsp because he had always ten thousand 'Arab horses in his stables.

⁶ Tabari says his age was a thousand years, while other writers state that he reigned for that period of time.

7 Nine copies of the text have "Malik of Hind and of Sind," and others have "Hind and Ghin." In the map, if such may be so called, secompanying the account of Sijistan and adjacent parts, in the "MASALIK-WA-MAMALIK," the river of Hind and Sind adjoins Ghir on the north-east.

8 Sic in all copies of the text.

namely*:—Bustām, son of Mîhshād [Mishhād, Mamshād, Shamād, Shād, Shihād, and Shihādan], son of Narimān [also called Nadimān], son of Afrīdūn [or Farīdūn], son of Sāhind [Sāmind and Sāmid], son of Sifand-āsp [or Isfandasp], son of Zuhāk, son of Suhrāb¹, son of Shaid-āsp, son of Siāmak, son of Marnīās [Marsās and Marnās], son of Zuhāk the Malik.

When Zuhāk was made captive, Afrīdūn despatched an army to take possession of Hindūstān; and Bustām, who did not possess the power to oppose the forces of Afrīdūn, retired towards the mountain tracts of Shaknān¹ [Shaghnān] and Bāmīān, and therein took up his residence. On a second occasion the forces of Afrīdūn were directed to proceed in search of him; and Bustām had several times, for the purpose of hunting and in his rambles, come from the mountains of Shaknān and Tukhāristān³ into the mountain tracts of Ghūr. That district was called Hazār-Chashmah [the thousand springs] on account of the number of rivulets in it; and Bustām, at this time, retiring before the army of Afrīdūn, came into Ghūr, and at the foot of the mountain of Zār-i-Margh⁴ [the place where Margh grows] he fixed his residence⁴.

Jahān-Ārā has Shahrān.

² The letters k and gh are interchangeable. A few copies have عقال for عقال أ ³ Not Hwen Thsang's "Tokháristán," extending "ten days" journey by thirty," but a much smaller Tukhāristān is meant here.

4 Zar signifies a place of growth, and "margh" is the name of a species of verdure called also farez, which any browsing animals feed on with great

avidity. It is odoriferous, the reed scoenanthemum.

⁹ Other writers say that Bustam was one of the descendants, not sons, of Zuḥāk, and that his progeny increased in Ghūr up to the time of Shansab, who was contemporary with the Khalifah, 'Alf. Shansab was the son of Kharnak, and from him descended Bustam, as well as Pūlād. See page 311.

⁶ Other authorities state that when Faridün overcame Zuhäk, a number of his descendants fled, and took shelter in the mountains of Ghür; and that Buṣṭām, who was one of his progeny, and who held Hindustān, being unable to cope with the forces of Faridün, he [Buṣṭām] also took shelter in Ghür. The place he took up his residence at was, from the number of its springs and rivulets, called Hazār-Chaṣḥmah, and was an exceedingly pleasant and strong spot, and therefore he chose it, saying to himself "baro; ma-andech!"—"Go to; don't be concerned!" and that spot was subsequently called Mandesh. Buṣṭām prospered there, and his descendants multiplied, and they were rulers, one generation after the other. Other writers say he first fled for shelter "to the mountain tracts of Bāmfān, which lie between Balkh and Kābul, and from thence entered the difficult country of Ghūr, in which he founded several strong fortresses. He had wandered about in several parts previously before teaching

At this point in the account of Bustam, the masters of history have two traditions, one of which is that just related. The other tradition is from the Muntakhab-i-Tārikh-i-Nāṣiri, which one of the great men of Ghaznin composed in the time of the Sultan i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Sām—the Almighty illumine his tomb!—which is as follows:—

"When Afridūn overcame Zuhāk, and took the dominion from him, two brothers, his sons, reached Nihāwand. The elder brother bore the name of Sūz*, and the younger was called Sām. The elder brother, Sūz, became Amir [chief or ruler], and the younger, who was named Sām, became the Sipah-sālār [leader or commander of his forces]?

"Amir Sūz had a daughter, and the Sipah-sālār, Sām, a son; and these two cousins had, in early childhood, been betrothed to each other, and they had fixed their hearts upon each other. The Sipah-sālār, Sām, died; and his son had become valiant and a great warrior, so much so, that in that day he had no equal in manliness and valour. After the decease of his father, certain envious and malicious persons arose, who slandered him to his uncle, Amīr Sūz, in consequence of which his uncle became irritated against him, and he determined to bestow his daughter upon the son of some one of the Maliks of the parts round about.

"When his daughter became aware of this, she made her cousin acquainted with it, so that, one night, he came and unfastened the gate of the fortress, and, having loosed and brought out ten chosen horses from the stables of Amir

Ghūr; and, as soon as Faridūn became aware of his whereabouts, he despatched large forces against him; but, after protracted hostilities, the forces of Faridūn were glad to accept terms, on account of the difficult nature of the country, and the strength of Busṭām's castles. Tribute and taxes were imposed upon him [Busṭām], and he had to content himself with Ghūr, and not to molest other parts of the country. His descendants increased and multiplied up to the time of Shansab, who is said to have been converted by 'Ali. The Jāmi'.ut-Tawārikh states that the Ghūris are styled Bani Rāsib, otherwise famous under the name of Uz-Zubāk.

5 Two copies of the text, which are reliable, have "ten chosen horses of his father, from the stables of Amir Suz."

⁶ Some copies have Sūr, but the oldest have as above. One has Sawār 1 7 Such being the case, wherefore any cause of dispute afterwards, and appeal to the Khalifah, as to who should be ruler and who commander of the troops? See page 313.

Sūz, he set the damsel and her servants upon them and made off, taking away as much coin as he was able to remove. With all diligence possible he made for the foot of the mountains of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and there he took up his quarters. The girl and her cousin said [to each other], 'Za-o [i. e. Az-o] ma-ande<u>sh</u>'—be not afraid of him—and the name of that place became Mande<u>sh</u>'; and there their affairs assumed stability'."

According to the first tradition, however, when Amîr Bustām, with his followers, took up his residence in that locality, information was conveyed to Afrîdūn. He was desirous of sending forces, for the third time, for the purpose of destroying and exterminating Bustām and his followers, or to take him [alive] if possible. The sons of Afrîdūn, Tūjz and Salm, by means of treachery, killed their brother, I-raj, who was on the throne of Irān²; and,

i. e. There they settled down permanently.

In his account of Faridān in Section V., our author says Ī-raj, the youngest son, held the countries of 'Irāki-i'Arab, and 'Irāki-i'Ajam, and Hind and Sind. Salm signifies peace, Tūjg [also Tū]], boldness, daring, and Ī-raj, vaisdom vuith tact. The Rauyat-ut-Ţāḥirin states that he held Khurāsān, and only a portion of Hind and Sind.

The Rangat-us-Safā and some others say that a sept of the descendants of Zuhāk, not the sons of Zuhāk, finally took up their residence in the mountain tracts of Ghūr, and that they were hard pressed for some time by the forces of Faridūn, and became as desirous of accommodation as Faridūn's general was of granting it; and the Zuhākis agreed to pay taxes and tribute, and not to

encroach on other territory. See note 5, page 306-7.

In the account of the ancient kings of Asia, contained in the Raugat-ut-Tāhirin, taken from the work compiled from ancient records in the Pahlawi language in 259 H., and which work, subsequently, was partly put into verse by the poet, Dakiki, in Ismā'il Sāmāni's reign, and afterwards resumed by Anṣān', and completed by Firdausi, in Maḥmūd of Ghaznin's time, but of course greatly embellished by the poets; and also in Tabari, and Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, there are detailed accounts of the reign of Faridin; but although the death of i-raj is given therein, and agrees with what our author says [he doubtless took his short notice from Tabari], of course, nothing whatever is mentioned about Buṣṭām. Karṣh-āsp, ancestor of Rustam, held Kābuļ.

^{9 &}quot;Lamandesh" in most copies of the text, but impossible from what he has just stated. Some copies are very different here, in style as well as words, and have, "They said that the name of that place was Dū-mandesh, and at this time, on account of that great personage's coming thither, the name became Bulandesh." The I. O. L. MS., and R. A. S. MS., both agree that the name was "Roz-mandesh, and the name became Bulandesh," but omit the first clause of the last sentence. Mandesh is mentioned by some old writers as the name of a stronghold in Khurāsān. Desh must not be confounded with the Sanskrit word Det-a country, &c. See note 6, page 306.

on that account, <u>Sh</u>āh Afridūn was greatly afflicted in heart, and distressed in mind, and he did not obtain his revenge upon Bustām. The latter, having found time and opportunity, turned his attention to peopling and rendering habitable the mountain districts of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and parts adjacent.

He despatched trustworthy agents to the presence of Shāh Afrīdūn, and sought for peace. Afrīdūn complied with the request of Bustām, and, as he had now obtained security and safety, the followers, dependents, and partisans, and the 'Arab tribes akin or related to Zuḥāk, from all parts around, turned their faces towards the mountain district of Ghūr, and took up their residence in that country, and the number of those tribes became very great.

As Almighty God had willed that from that race pious kings and potent sovereigns should arise, He prospered and blessed those tribes so that they attained unto the faith and covenant of Islām; and from the mine of the seed of

Zābul, and Sijistān for Faridūn, and any petty chief would naturally have been tributary to the former. The nephew of Karsh-asp, Nariman, had a son named Sam, who was father of Zal, father of Rustam. Sam is said to have held Zābul, and Kābul, as far as Hind, in feudal sovereignty from the rulers of Iran. What I wish here to draw attention to, however, is the following: "Zāl, having succeeded to his father's fief, went to Kābul [Zābul?] from Zarani [founded by Karsh-asp], and MIHRAB SHAH, of the race of Zuhak, the Tāzī, the tributary ruler, came forth to receive him, and acknowledged his supremacy. Mihrāb Shāh gave his daughter to Zāl, and she was Rustam's mother." Subsequently, this same Mihrāb Shāh is said to have led the right wing of the army of Kai-Kubad, the first of the Kaianian dynasty, in the expedition against Afraslyab, the Turk. The Jami'-ut-Tawarikh also states that, when Afrasiyab crossed the Jihun into Khurasan, he detached a force to intercept Sam, or keep him in check; and, when the force reached the Hirmand, Mihrāb Shāh, who held the city and fortress of Zābul, as deputy of Zal, sent a message, as a ruse only, to its commander, saying, "I am neither Zābulī nor Īrānī, but of the race of Zubāk; and am lovally inclined to Afrāsiyab." These accounts are, at least, equally as trustworthy as the legends of Greeks about themselves, and perhaps more so. I hope very shortly to give them in detail. I am one of those [weak-minded persons perhaps] who consider the historians of a country best qualified to write its history-its early history at least-and prefer the accounts of ancient Persia, given by the old Īrāni and 'Arab writers after the time of its conquest, to those of Greeks who do not even know the names correctly, just as I should esteem the history of England, from the pen of a Hume or a Lingard, superior to one written by a native of India who had sojourned three months in London, or by a Chinaman who had never visited it.

^a One copy has, "and he did not give his mind to taking revenge on Bustām."

them the gems of sovereignty were arranged upon the thread of dominion. Some thousands of mosques were founded in place of ancient idol-temples; and the laws and canons of Islam were promulgated to the very extremity of the region of Hindustan which adjoins that of Chinthe mercy of the Almighty be upon them! These Sultans likewise acquired slaves, every one of whom spread the carpet of justice upon the surface of the world, and raised palaces of beneficence and munificence; and, up to this present time, the heir of that sovereignty and successor to the functions of that empire, is the pearl of the ovstershell of ascendency, out of the ocean of dominion, the Great Sultān, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abi-l-Muzaffar, Mahmūd, son of the Sultan, Kasim-i-Amir-ul-Mūminin 4-the Almighty perpetuate his sovereignty and dominion, and may he long reign!

The Sultans of the Shansabi dynasty have been divided into four groups :- I., that class, the mention of which will now be recorded, of which Sultans Firuz-koh was the seat of government; II., the dynasty of the Sultans of Bamian, who were a branch from this great tree of sovereignty; III., the dynasty of the Sultans of Ghaznin, which was the capital of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Ghāzi, son of Sam, and his own particular slaves, every one of whom, after him, ascended the throne; and IV., the dynasty of the Sultans of Hindustan, the heritage of which dominion, and the sovereignty of which monarchy passed to them, and after whom the race of Shamsi's became established upon the throne of royalty. May the Almighty purify the tombs of those who have passed away, and prolong the sovereignty of those remaining to the judgment day!

As much as was discoverable respecting this race in chronicles has been recorded [here], although, in the com-

⁵. Only a single copy has this passage correct. The slaves here referred to were not relatives nor kinsmen of each other. Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish. however, married a daughter of Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, his owner, who ruled in Hindustan; and the dynasty of the former, from his name, Shams-ud-Din, is

styled the Shamsi or Shamsiah dynasty.

⁴ Some of the best copies of the text have, "son of the Sultan of Sultans," and omit the Kasim altogether. If the Shausabani Sultans had any right to assume such a title [explained farther on], neither the slave, nor the slave's son, this "pearl of the oyster-shell of ascendency," the poor puppet to whom our author dedicated his work, had the most remote right to assume it.

pilation of it, there was not an uninterrupted succession to be set forth.

I. AMĪR PŪLĀD [OR FŲLĀD], GHŪRĪ, SHANSABĪ.

Amir Pūlād, Ghūrī, was one of the sons of Malik Shansab', son of Kharnak; and he brought' under his jurisdiction the districts of the mountain tracts of Ghūr. He rendered the names of his fathers immortal; and, when the advocate' [of the cause] of the house of 'Abbās, Abū-Muslim-i-Marwazī', arose, and considered it expedient to oust and to expel the Amīr of the family of 'Ummīah from the territory of Khurāsān, Amīr Pūlād led the forces of Ghūr to the aid of Abū-Muslim-i-Marwazī', and greatly distinguished himself in supporting and assisting the house of 'Abbās and the family of the Prophet.

For a long period the dominion over Mandesh³, and the authority over the mountain tracts of <u>Gh</u>ūr was exercised by him. He died; and his dominions remained in the possession of the sons of his brother⁴, and, subsequently, their affairs [and proceedings] were not to be discovered, up to the time of Amīr Banī, the son of Nahārān.

II. AMĪR BANIĪ. SON OF NAHĀRĀN, SHANSABĪ.

Amir Banji, son of Nahārān, was a great lord, and, in Ghūr, his memory is undying; and he is accounted among the greatest and most famous of the Maliks of that country.

⁶ At this place, in some copies, a totally distinct idiom is used to express the same sense.

⁷ See note 9, page 306.

⁸ Some copies have "came" under his jurisdiction, and others "were" under, &c.

⁹ It is something new, certainly, to find that "Şāḥib-i-Da'wat" means "a founder."

¹ That is, a native of Marw.

² In the accounts of Abū-Muslim, the quondam "founder" of this house of 'Abūās, and in the accounts of those transactions in the history of the Khalfishs, there is no mention, of course, of the great support they received from Pulād the Ghūrī. Some writers say that the fief of Ghūr was conferred upon Amīr Pulād and his descendants on account of the services rendered by him, and that he added to it by annexing other tracts of country.

⁸ All the copies of the text here, with few exceptions, write this name differently as well as incorrectly. There is no doubt that Mandesh is the correct name. See note ⁸, page 306, and note ⁸, page 308.

⁴ Which brother is, of course, nameless.

The whole of the Sultāns were descended from his sons'; and his genealogy has been thus made out:—Banjī, son of Nahārān, son of War-meshī, son of War-meshān [Warmaṣān, Dar-manshān, War-mashān, and War-heshān], son of Parwez, son of Parwez', son of Shansab, son of Kharnak', son of Bain or Bayyin, son of Munghī', son of Wajzan [Wazn, Wazan, and Warat, or Darrat, or Dirat?], son of Hain [Hīn, or Hunain?], son of Bahrām, son of Hajash, or Khajash, [Jaḥs, or Jaḥsh?], son of Ibrāhīm, son of Mu'ddil [Ma'add, or Ma'id], son of Asad [Nāsad?], son of Shadād, son of Zuḥāk.

Amīr Banjī was excessively handsome, and of excellent disposition, and endowed with all good qualities and natural gifts. When the dominion of the house of 'Abbās acquired stability', and the empire of Islām came under the sway of the Khalīfahs of that family, he presented himself at the Court of the 'Abbāsī Khalīfahs; and the first person of the Ghūrīān race who proceeded to the Khalīfah's Court', and brought [back] a covenant and a standard, was Amīr Banjī, son of Nahārān.

Son or Ivanaran,

The cause of his proceeding to the presence of the Lord of the Faithful, Hārūn-ar-Rashid, was this:—In the territory of <u>Gh</u>ūr there was a tribe who are called <u>Shisanian</u>,

⁵ And from him, too, we may suppose.

6 Jahān Ārā has Nahāwān [and Nahādān], son of Wār-mesh [and War-mesh], son of War-manshān; and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārlkh has Nahāwān, son of War-manshān; and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārlkh has Nahāwān, son of War-mesh, son of War-mesh. Firishtah [Muḥammad Kāsim, not "Briggs," who turns Shansabī into Skisty I], to judge from three or four copies of the text, has made a terrible hash of these qames; and, of course, Dow scarcely ventures to meddle with them, but those he does interfere with he succeeds, as with others in every place in his volumes, in making so ridiculous that their own mothers could not distinguish them. But what can be expected of a translator who does not appear to have known what "μερισμιανικής "manalists, historians" [meant, which he, in his innocence, styles "Moα CHAN, the historian" [vol. i. p. 131], and yet his work is the great cabbage-garden for modern historians of India for the million!

7 One copy alone of the text has "Parwez, son of Parwez," but it is one of the best copies I have.

Respecting this name there is not the least doubt: "Harnak" is not correct.

Another name for Utarid [Mercury] is Munshi.

' Hārūn-ar-Rashīd, to whose court Amīr Banjī went, was the fifth 'Abbāsī Khalīfah.

² See page 302, where <u>Shansab</u> is said to have been converted by the <u>Khalf-fah</u>, 'Alf, and to have brought back with him a covenant and a standard.

That is to say, the name of the tribe was Shis, and, when speaking of its people, Shisan or Shisanian.

and they assert that, in the first place, their ancestor embraced the true faith, and then the Shansabanian did: and Muhammad, in the dialect of Ghur, they call Hamad [Ahmad?], and, after they had embraced Islam, they became styled Hamadi [Ahmadi?], that is to say, Muhammadi. In the time of Amir Banji, the Mihtar [chief] of the tribe of Shisanian was an Amir named Shis. son of Bahram: and, in the language of the Ghūris, Shis they call Shis, and this tribe they call Shisanian, after the name of this Amir. Now between Amir Shis and Amir Banii, son of Nahārān, dissension arose about the lordship of Ghur; and [in consequence] disturbance ensued among the people of that territory. The whole agreed together, on either side, that both the Amirs, Banji and Shis, should proceed to the presence of the Khalifah, and whichever should bring back from the Court of the Khilafat a covenant and a standard should be accounted Amir. Both disputants made their arrangements with the determination of undertaking their journey, and setting out towards the Dar-ul-Khilafat. The throne of the Khilafat. at this time, was adorned by the radiance of the Lord of the Faithful, Hārūn-ar-Rashīd.

The chronicler relates that, in that country [Ghūr] there was a merchant, a Yahūdī [Jew], [a follower] of the religion

⁴ By nearly every other writer of authority they are said not to have embraced Islām up to the time of Ḥusain, son of Sām, son of Ḥasan, who was made ruler of Ghūr by Mas'ūd-i-Karīm, Sultān of Ghaznīn. See page 321 and note?

I have several times mentioned that the various copies of the text collated may be divided into two sets, which, in many places, differ considerably in idiom. At this place, the oldest and best copies have Khamad [1.4], Khamadî [1.4], Khamadî [1.4], and also at page 369, whilst the more modern copies have Hamad, and Hamadî, with the exception of the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, which, at page 369, has Khamadî also. The points of letters are often omitted in writing, and might be written for the standard part of the standard be written for the standard part of the standard be written for the standard part of the standard be written for the standard part of the standard be written for the standard part of the standard be standard the standard part of the standard be standard the standard part of the stan

^{*} That is to say, the Ghüris did not correctly pronounce the \Leftrightarrow g, lisped s of the 'Arabs, but pronounced it as common s.

of Mihtar Mūsā [Moses], on whom be peace! This merchant entertained a friendship for Amīr Banjī. He had travelled a great deal, and had acquired great experience in the ways of the world, and had frequented the capitals of the rulers of the countries around, and had become acquainted with the usages and forms of etiquette of the Courts of Sultāns and Princes; and he set out in com-

pany with Amir Banii.

He was acquainted with the objects and intentions of Amir Banii, and he said to him :- "If I should instruct thee in etiquette, and make thee acquainted with the usages of decorum and politeness, and give thee proper knowledge of the forms and ceremonies observed at the Court of the Khilāfat, and in the presence of sovereigns, so that on that account the authority and government of the territory of Ghür shall be conferred upon thee, do thou enter into a covenant with me, that, in every tract that I may desire, throughout the whole of thy territory, thou shalt assign a locality to, and cause to settle therein, a number of the Bani-Isra'il [children of Israel], followers of the faith of Mihtar Mūsā, in order that under the shadow of thy protection, and beneath the guardianship of thy Maliks and thy offspring, they may dwell in peace and tranquillity 6." Amir Banji, son of Nahārān, entered into a covenant with that merchant of the Bani-Isra'il, and said :- "When thou teachest me the usages of politeness, and instructest me in the rules of conduct and demeanour necessary to be observed before princes, and in paving homage at the Court of the Khilafat, I will fulfil the whole of thy requests, and fully satisfy thy desires."

This covenant having been duly settled on both sides, the merchant of the Bani-Isra'il commenced to instruct Amir Banji in the polite usages necessary to be observed before princes, and at the Courts of sovereigns, and the requisite forms of respect and reverence needed at the

⁶ I would here call the reader's particular attention to the universal tradition of the Afghāns, recorded in all histories of them, respecting their claim to Israelitish descent. But they consider it an insult to be called Yahūdīs or Jews, and declare that they are Banī-Isrā'īI. Many European writers declare most energetically that such a descent is impossible. Perhaps if it had been recorded in Greek or merely mentioned by one of that nation, they would have been equally emergetic in the other way.

Khalifah's Court. The merchant likewise began to put in order and make ready a dress for him, consisting of a tunic, a cap, boots, and breeches, and to perfect him in riding and in the mode of wearing his arms, in such wise, that his rival, \underline{Sh} is, son of Bahrām, knew nothing whatever of all this [preparation] until they arrived at the \underline{Kh} alifah's capital.

Shis, son of Bahrām, proceeded thither just as he was, in the short Ghūriān garments which he was accustomed to wear at home, whilst Amir Banji, son of Nahārān, entered the Khalifah's capital in a dress befitting an Amir, and becoming a great personage.

After they had been permitted to make their obeisances before the Khalīfah's Court, when a convenient opportunity arose, each of the disputants represented what were his objects and wishes, in a respectful manner, and with many expressions of his devotion and loyalty, and stated to the Wazīr and the Ustād-ur-Rāz-bān' the matter of the dispute between them, and made fully known what were their desires and requirements. The Lord of the Faithful, Hārūn-ar-Rashīd, after he had been pleased to peruse their statements, and his august consideration and attention had been drawn to their case, was pleased to regard Amīr Banīj, son of Nahārān, with favour.

As Amir Banji was blessed with great good fortune, combined with a most felicitous destiny, and his good nature was adorned with gracefulness of manners, the Lord of the Faithful was pleased to remark:—"Hazā Ķasīm," that is to say, "This Banji is good looking, has a noble bearing, and appears endowed with the necessary qualifications of government and sovereignty, combined with good looks and artlessness of nature. Let the whole of the territory of Ghūr be made over to him, and let the championship of the forces of the country of Ghūr be entrusted to Shīs, son of Bahrām." Both of them were invested with a robe of honour of the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, and these titles were bestowed upon them, and they took their departure, and returned to Ghūr again, according to the command of the Khalīfah's Court*.

⁷ The Ustad-J-Raz-ban was an officer who represented to sovereigns the statements of persons who desired that their cases should be investigated by the monarch himself.

⁸ Another author, who says nothing whatever about any Jew merchant,

From that time forward, the title of the <u>Sh</u>ansabāniān Sultāns, according to the august words of the Lord of the Faithful, Hārūn-ar-Ra<u>sh</u>id', became Kasim-i-Amir-ul-Muminin—the Lord of the Faithful's handsome [one].

When these two personages returned to <u>Gh</u>ūr again, the government of the territory [was assumed] by the <u>Sh</u>ansabānis, and the championship of the forces by the <u>Sh</u>iṣānis, and that arrangement continued up to the present age according to this settlement. The Sultāns were all <u>Sh</u>ansabānis, and the Champions, such as <u>Mu-ayyid-ud-Dîn</u>, <u>Fatḥ-i-Karmākh'</u>, <u>Abū-l-'Abbās-i-Shīs</u>, and Sultmān-i-<u>Shīs</u>, were all <u>Shiṣānis—the</u> mercy of the Almighty be upon the whole of them!

III. SÜRİ, SON OF MUḤAMMAD.

From the time of the government of Amīr Banjī up to the present period [of Sūri's rule], nothing was found in

relates that Amfr Banjî, having added considerably to his previous territory by seizing other tracts, became one of the most powerful of the Maliks around. He was famed for his noble qualities and disposition; and, during the Khläfat of Härün-ar-Raghīd, he proceeded to the Dār-ul-Khläfat. He was treated with great favour on account of the successes which had been gained, by his efforts, in the arrangement of the important affairs of the house of 'Abbās; and, on beholding him, the Khalifah uttered these words: "Hagā-Kasīm," which is to say "good looking;" and, consequently, he obtained the title of Kasīm-lamfī-ul-Mūminīn. He returned to Ghūr again, with a robe of honour and a patent of investiture. The dominion over those parts continued in the possession of himself and his descendants until the time of Sūrī, the son of Muḥammad, who was one of Banjī's descendants, and lived in the time of Maḥmūd of Ghannīn.

No other Khalifah confirmed it, I fancy, if Hārūn bestowed it. By our author's own account, they did not even assume the title of Sulfan up to Saifud-Din, Sulf's time. He was seventh after this Sūri.

1 Some copies have in and one has but Karmākh is correct.

² Jahān-Ārā and Mūntakhah-ut-Tawārikh differ from our author considerably here [he certainly acknowledges his want of materials]:—Sūrī, son of Muḥammad, was the grandson [farzand-zādah] of Amīr Banjī, and he flourished, not in the time of Maḥmūd of Ghanīn, but in the time of the Ṣufāriān. Sūrī's son, Muḥammad, was a contemporary of Maḥmūd's. The Raugatuṣ-Ṣafā, Fasib-i, and others also, state that Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, was a contemporary of Maḥmūd'; but that, when Sulţiān Maḥmūd got rid of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, ruler of Ghūr, his grandson, Ḥasan by name, through fear of the Sulţiān, retired into Hindūstān, with his famīly, and took up his residence in that country. What reason there could have been for this, when the father could stay, is not given. Some others, again, say that sometimes Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, would be obedient to Sulţiān Maḥmūd, and, at others, in open revolt, as circumstances permitted, until, after some years, to others, in open revolt, as circumstances permitted, until, after some years, some yea

chronicles respecting the state of the country of Ghūr that could be particularly enlarged upon; and, as the compilation of this TABAKAT was completed at the sublime capital, Dihli-may its pre-eminence never decline !- and the kingdoms of Islam were thrown into convulsion through the irruption of the Mughal infidels-the Almighty confuse them !-- and the country had become isolated, and the extreme parts disturbed and unsettled, it was impossible to copy from the history which the author had examined in the territory of Ghūr3. As a matter of necessity that which has been obtained from the Tārikh-i-Nāsiri, and the Tārikh of Ibn-Haisam-i-Sāni, together with some traditions from the priesthood of Ghur, have been [therefore] recorded; and the author hopes that he may be forgiven by those who look into the work [for any errors or shortcoming that may be found in it].

They thus state, that Amir Sūrī was a great Malik, and that most part of the territory of Ghūr was under his jurisdiction; and, as in some parts of that country, such as Zāwulistān¹, the people, both high and low, noble and ignoble, were not [yet] exalted to the excellence of Islām, they were, at that time, at continual feud one with another. When the Şuffārīān came out of the territory of Nimroz, and advanced to Bust and the district of Dāwar, and Ya¹kūb, son of Lais, attacked Lakan the Lak¹, Amīr of

partly by stratagem and partly by peaceful means, the Sulţān succeeded in securing Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, whom he took along with him towards Ghaznīn, but that he died by the way, at Kīdān. The Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī gives a more trustworthy account, and which, if dates are examined, certainly seems correct. For further particulars see note 7, page 321.

3 The history in verse composed by Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubarak Shah,

mentioned at page 300.

4 Great discrepancy exists in most of the copies of the text with respect to this name. Some have Wälishtän, Wäeshän, and Wälshiän; but two good copies have Zäwulistän very plainly written, and that may be considered the

correct reading.

§ Ya'kūb-i-Laiş reduced Bust, Zamin-i-Däwar, Ghaznin, Ṭukhāristān, and other tracts in 256 H., and, in the previous year, fought an action with Tūk, son of Muklas, in Kirmān; but who Lakan the Lak [some copies have Lak-Lak] was it is difficult to say. There is no mention of this matter in any author with whom I am acquainted; but Lak is the name of a sept of nomad Kurds, of which people there seems to have been a considerable number in those parts at that time. There are some tribes dwelling among the Aighāns to this day, erroncously supposed by Englishmen to be Afghāns, who claim to be Kurds.

Aytkin-ābād⁶, which is the district of Rukhaj, the tribes of the <u>Gh</u>ūris fortified themselves on the summits of the rocks, and remained in safety; but they used to be at constant enmity with each other—the followers of Islām and the unbelievers^r—so that they were in the habit of keeping up a war from kūshk to kūshk⁸, and lived in a constant state of contention and strife.

Through the natural impregnability of the strong mountains which are in <u>Ghūr</u>, others [foreigners] used not to subject them to their power; and the head of the whole of the Shansabānīs of Mandesh was Amīr Sūri.

There are five great and lofty mountains in Ghūr, respecting which the people of Ghūr are agreed that they are the strongest mountains in the world. One of these is Zār-i-Margh of Mandesh, at the foot of which mountain is the kūshk and capital of the Shansabānis, and they [the people of Ghūr] contend that the Simurgh nourished Zāl-i-Zar [Zāl, the ruddy-faced], who was the father of Rustam, in that mountain. Some of the dwellers at the skirt thereof maintain, that it was in one of the years between 500 H. and 600 H., when the sound of lamentation and regret issued from that mountain, "Zāl-i-Zar hath passed away." The second mountain [range] has the name of Surkh-Ghar and that also is in the Mandesh district.

² That is, those not yet converted to the Muhammadan faith, and, probably, some of the Banf-Isra'il before referred to, and such tribes as have since retired northwards towards Hindū-Kugh, or have now nearly disappeared.

³ A kū<u>sh</u>k here means a fortified village, and also a castle, &c. See note ²,

page 331
9 There would be considerable difficulty in finding "the mountains of Rásiát, which are in Ghor," for a very good reason—that they do not exist. The word "rāsiāt" is not a proper name, but the plural of "rāsiāh," which means "strong mountains." See Ellio's INDIA, vol. i, p. 284.

1 From this statement it is plain, as in Baihaki's account farther on, that Ghūr was under several petty chiefs. Sūri was chief of Mandesh only.

² The word koh, here used, may signify a mountain range, or a single mountain.

* It is impossible to fix the names of two of these five ranges with any degree of certainty, for there are scarcely two copies alike out of the twelve

⁶ Same copies have Lātkīn-ābād, but the above is the correct reading; but Rughaj— في — which is said to have been a district of the territory of Bust, might be read Zaranj—زم—and I am almost inclined to consider the last reading correct. All the copies of the text are more or less imperfect here. One copy also says plainly that "the tribes of Ghūrīs sought shelter on the borders of Sind," and this seems the preferable reading, but the majority of copies are as above.

in the limits of Tajir-Koh4. The third mountain is Ashuk. in the district of Timran, the size and altitude of which is greater than that of any other part of the territory of Ghur; and the district of Timran is [situated] in its hollows and [on] its sides. The fourth is the mountain range of Warani, in the valleys and on the skirts of which are the territories of Dawar and Walisht, and the kasr6 of Kajūrān. The fifth is the mountain of Ro'en, in the central part of Ghur, of immense strength and altitude: and they have stated that the fifth mountain [range] is the Fai [defile, pass] of Khaesār, the length, extent, and loftiness of which is beyond the bounds of conjecture, conception, and understanding. In the year 590 H., one half of the trunk of an ebony tree was found at the summit of it, more than one thousand mans1 in weight; and no one was able to conceive how, or in what manner, it could have been brought, or have fallen there.

collated. One, the very old copy I have often referred to, has مرفظ Sur<u>kh-Gh</u>ar, as above, which means the red mountain, and the next oldest copy مرفظ و between which two words there is but a very slight difference. The remaining copies have مرخف مرمون مرخور مرحفر and the like.

As many other copies have من المراحق على المراحق المر

6 Kaşr and Küghk have both one meaning: the first is 'Arabic and the last Persian. See note 2, page 331.

7 From this remark it is evident our author does not describe these mountain ranges from his own knowledge.

⁸ Faj is not a proper name: it means a wide and open route or road between two mountain ranges; a pass. Khaesär is a well-known place, and is mentioned in a number of places throughout the work, and therefore the "Faj Hansár" is as much a myth as the "mountains of Kásiát."

9 The printed text, the I. O. L. MS. and the R. A. S. MS., have "a kaşr [see meaning of kaşr, note 2, page 331] of the trunk of an ebony tree"!!

¹ The *man* varies from forty to eighty pounds in different parts. The former probably is meant here.

IV. MALIK MUHAMMAD, SON OF SÜRİ.

Abū-l-Hasan-ul-Haisam, son of Muhammad-i-Nābi2, the historian, relates in this wise:-that, after the sovereignty of Khurāsān and Zāwulistān passed from the Sāmānis and Suffārīs, and devolved upon Amīr Sabuk-Tigin³, he had, upon several occasions, marched forces from Bust towards the mountain [tracts] of Ghūr, and had put numbers to the sword; and, when the throne fell to Amir Mahmud-i-Sabuk-Tigin, the sovereignty of Ghur had passed into the hands of Amir Muhammad, son of Sūri', and he, having brought the territories of Ghur under his sway, sometimes would pay obedience to the Court of Sultan Mahmud-i-Ghāzi, and at other times would act in a rebellious manner, and manifest a refractory spirit, and would withhold the amount of tribute and arms' stipulated; and, relying on the faith of his strong fortresses, his power, and the ample number [of his people], he used continually to show hostility.

The heart of Sultan Mahmud, for this reason, was ever

² Every copy of the text, with one exception, says "Nabi" here, instead of Sani, and therefore, as I previously conjectured, the correct name of the history so often quoted must be the Tārīkh of Ibn Haişam-i-Nābī, entitled the Kişaş-i-Sānī.

3 See page 74, where our author says that Sabuk-Tigin took possession of Ghur, together with Bust, Zamin-i-Dawar, Bamian, and all Tukharistan. Here we might have expected to have heard something of Alb-Tigin, Balka-

Tigin, Abū 'Ali-i-Lawik, and Pirey. See note 5, page 71.

4 Our author is quite correct here [and Ara and some others agree] with regard to Muhammad, son of Suri, having been contemporary with Mahmud. The reason why the great blunder has arisen that it was Suri who lived in Mahmūd's time, is, that some authors and translators, in their simplicity. thought the words "Muhammad-i-Süri" signified one man, instead of which they mean Muhammad, son of Süri. Another matter I would also remark upon :- Sultan Mahmud made raids upon the Afghans in 411 H., and again in 416 H., but they are never mentioned in connexion with the Ghuris by Baihaki and such like trustworthy authors, a pretty good proof, were any wanting, that, although the Afghans are Patans, the Ghuris are not, and never were so accounted by any historian, nor by the Afghans nor Ghuris themselves. It does not follow that, because a Tajîk is called Suri, he should be of the Afghan clan of Sur, of the tribe of Ludi, so styled from their progenitor named Sur, but not Suri. It is a curious fact that the Afghans are not mentioned by our author but once, towards the end of the work.

5 Ghur appears to have been famous in those days for the manufacture of warlike weapons.

on the watch, and, on account of his [Muḥammad's, son of Sūri,] numbers, his power and dignity, and the fact of the great [natural] strength and altitude of the mountains of Ghūr, the Sultān used well to consider in his mind, until, with a large army, he came into Ghūr, and he [Muḥammad, son of Sūri,] was invested within the fortress of Ahangarān. Muḥammad, son of Sūri, held out the fortress for a considerable period, and defended it energetically; but, after some time, the stronghold was gained possession of by his descending from it, on terms of accommodation, and presenting himself before Sultān Maḥmūd.

The Sultān took him, together with his youngest son, who was named <u>Shis</u>, away to <u>Ghaznin</u>, because Amir Muḥammad-i-Sūri entertained the greatest affection for his youngest son, <u>Shis</u>. When they reached the precincts of Kidān, Amir Muḥammad-i-Sūri died. Some relate after this manner:—that, when he became a prisoner, through the proud spirit within him, he was unable to brook disgrace. He had a signet-ring, beneath the stone of which some poison had been set; and, at this time, he availed himself of it, and died?

⁶ Not mentioned in his account of the strong fortresses of <u>Gh</u>ūr, but there was a place called Dîh [village] of Āhangarān [Āhangarān is the plural of Āhangar, a blacksmith], near <u>Gh</u>azuīn, and the river of Āhang, which flowed past that city. 'Utba' also mentions it. See following note.

7 Before giving the accounts of other authors, I will first give an extract from the Kitāb-i-Yamini of 'Utba', as he was a contemporary of Maḥmūd, but

he seldom mentions dates.

He says, Mahmud became greatly incensed against the tribes of Ghur, who were unbelievers, on account of their waylaying caravans and levying blackmail, thinking their hills and defiles impregnable. An army, consisting of horse and foot, was assembled to punish them, and Altun-Tash, the Haiib. and Arsalan-i-Jazib [called a Multani, but it appears he had only held the government of Multan] were appointed to the command. They set out, but had such hard fighting with the Ghüris that Mahmüd, finding they made little progress, resolved to proceed in person, attended by a body of his Ghulams, He succeeded in defeating them, and, after penetrating narrow passes and defiles, made a road which enabled him to reach Ahangaran, the stronghold of their Malik, who was called Ibn-i-Suri [i. e. "Suri's son" and thus he agrees with our author, and others I have quoted, to the effect that the correct name of this chief is Muhammad, son of Suri, son of Muhammad. See also Baihaķī's account farther on]. Sūrī's son, with a force of 10,000 men, came out of his stronghold, and, being intrenched behind walls [breastworks?], and availing himself of the ravines, hills, and broken ground, succeeded for half a day in resisting all efforts to dislodge him. Mahmud had recourse to a Sultan Mahmud sent his [Muhammad's] son, Shis, back

stratagem. He directed his troops to face about, as though about to give up the contest and retire. This had the desired effect; and Sūrl's son, the Hindū las 'Utba' calls him], came froft from his strong position to follow in pursuit. The Sultān faced about, and defeated him. Sūrl's son was taken, together great booty, consisting of arms and other war material. Sūrl's son subsequently poisoned himself by means of his ring, which contained poison.

'Utba' also makes a difference, as do all writers of any knowledge of their

subject, between Ghuris and Afghans, and never confounds them.

Other writers contend that Muḥammad and his son, Ḥasan by name, not Shīṣ, were made captive by Maḥmūd, and imprisoned. Their place of confinement was the upper story of a tower, thirty ells from the ground, an aperture of which faced the open country. Muḥammad gave himself up for lost, but, not wishing that his family should be ruined, desired Hasan to make for Ghūr. He contrived to effect the escape of his son by tearing up the blanket given him to lie upon, to make it into a rope, by means of which he lowered Hasan to the ground, who escaped to Ghūr. As soon as the Sulfām became aware of Ḥasan's escape, he put Muḥammad, the father, to death. Ḥasan obtained the rule over Ghūr, and had a son, Ḥusan by name, who had seven soons. This is the 'Izz-ud-Ohū, Ḥusain, the IXth chief of our author.

Jahān Ārā, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, and some others agree as to Muḥammad, Sūrī's son, having been made captive by Maḥmūd, but, like our author,
contend that he [Muḥammad] was succeeded by his son Abū-'Alī, who had
always been obedient to Maḥmūd, and that he was appointed to the chieftainship of Ghūr by that Sultān; and that afterwards Abū-'Alī was ousted by his
nephew, 'Abbās, son of Shīs [who had been taken captive with his father].
The chieftainship then passed into the hands of Muḥammad, son of 'Abbās,
then to Kuṭb-uḍ-Dīn, Ḥasan, his son, and then to the latter's son, Ḥusain, the
'Izz-uḍ-Dīn, Ḥusain of our author. He, as well as other writers, does not
make any remark whatever upon Abū-'Alī's having been deprived of the chieftainship by 'Abbās, son of Shīs. In this case the line terminatei in Abū-'Alī's
family, and passed to the younger branch, and thus the Ghūrīān Sultāns are

not descended from him at all, but from Shis.

The Rauzat-us-Safa considers this statement weak, and quotes, as does also the Habib-us-Siyar and the Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā, another tradition to the effect that when Mahmud marched an army into Ghur, and took Suri [Muḥammad, son of Sūrī-Rauzat-uş-Şafā makes this blunder here, after having previously called him by his correct name] captive, and put him to death, his grandson [if such be correct, what became of the son?] Hasan, with his family, through fear of Mahmud, fled into Hind; and, as they had not yet been converted to the Muhammadan faith, they took up their residence in an idol temple [in a Dharm-sālā perhaps]. This Ḥasan had a son named Sām, who, after his father's decease, was converted to Islam. He proceeded to Dihli, and followed the occupation of a trader [and, according to the Rauzatus-Safā only, used to carry goods from Hindustan to Ghur, and bring other commodities back from thence. This seems strange however, since, if he could have gone back to Ghur in this way, his father surely need not have left it. unless he liked]. He had a son named Husain, who was endowed with many excellent qualities. After some years had passed away, and Sam had acquired considerable wealth, the desire of returning to his native mountains induced him to set out for Ghur. He embarked on one of the seas [the word used also signifies a large river, which is probably meant here] of Hind, together with his

to Ghur again. He had [already] conferred the govern-

family and effects, on board a vessel which met with a contrary wind, which raised a violent storm. The vessel and all on board, with the exception of Husain, son of Sam, went to the bottom. Husain, when the ship was sinking, succeeded in getting upon a plank or log of wood, and, at the very same time, a lion [Dow calls the lion " his father," mistaking w for w or wl, which was being conveyed upon the vessel's deck, also sprang upon it, and for three days and nights Husain and his strange companion remained in this state upon the log, at the end of which period they were wafted to the shore. The lion made for a neighbouring forest, and Husain for a town near by. Being a stranger and not knowing any one, and the time night, he went and lay down upon one of the benches or platforms, which are to be found in front of almost all shops in India, and fell fast asleep. The watch on going their rounds perceiving him there, and, not knowing who he was, took him for a thief, and dragged him away to prison, where he remained for about seven years. The governor of that place having been attacked with a dangerous disorder, by way of atonement, ordered all the prisoners to be set at liberty. Husain, son of Sam, by this means obtained his freedom, and set out for Ghaznin. On the road thither he fell in with a band of robbers, who, finding him a powerful and intelligent youth, induced him to join them, and he was provided with a horse and arms. It so happened, however, not long after, that a band of troops in the service of Sultan Ibrahim of Ghaznin, which had been for some time on the look out for the robbers, came upon them unawares, and made the whole gang captive. They were brought bound into the presence of Sultan Ibrahim, who directed that they should suffer death. One after the other several underwent their sentence, until it came to the turn of Husain, son of Sam. While the executioner was blindfolding him, he exclaimed, "O God! I know that error is not agreeable to Thee, why then is it that I, although innocent, am thus to suffer death?" These words affected the executioner, and the matter was represented, through one of the Court, to the Sultan, who directed that Husain should be brought before him. He stated his pitiful case to Ibrahim, who, on hearing it, took compassion on him, pardoned him, and enrolled him, in a subordinate office at first, among his chamberlains. When Sultan Mas'ud, surnamed the Beneficent, succeeded his father, Ibrāhim, he conferred upon Husain, son of Sam, son of Muhammad, [grand(?)]son of Suri, the government of the district of Ghur, and the title of 'Izz-ud-Din. Some say Ibrāhim gave Husain a kinswoman of his own in marriage [our author states, at page 105, that one of his own ancestors married a daughter of Sultan Ibrahim]. After Husain's death, enmity arose between his descendants and Bahrām Shāh, Mas'ud's son, as mentioned by our author farther on, and as will be hereafter noticed. Many authors very properly consider 'Ala-ud-Din to be the first of the dynasty, and the dynasty to consist of five persons only, whose dominion lasted sixty-four years, the others being merely accounted petry chieftains.

There can be no doubt whatever that the Ghūris were merely petty mountain-chiefs up to the time of Sultān Maḥmūd of Ghaznīn, and the extent of country they dwelt in proves it; but, as the Ghaznawîd dynasty declined, the Ghūris waxed stronger and more independent after the decease of Masūd-i-Karīm [the Beneficent], who gave the government of his native country to Husain, son of Sām, when the Ghaznawîd empire began rapidly to decay. Our author's desire at all times appears to be to glorify the Ghūris, and, therefore, the fact of their having been merely petty tributary chiefs did not chime in with his wishes. We find Maḥmūd and his son Masūd continually passing

ment of <u>Gh</u>ūr upon Muḥammad-i-Sūri's eldest son, Amir Abū-'Ali, as will, subsequently, be recorded.

from Ghaznîn to Balkh and Kābul, Ghaznîn to Hindūstān, Ghaznîn to Sijistan, and from Ghaznin to Hirat, and thence up the valley of the Murghāb; and Mas'ūd appears to have passed through Ghūr to Ghaznin, when he had to fly, after his defeat by the Saljuks, and yet we hear not a word about these powerful rulers of our author, although the Sultans must have passed through the mountain tracts of Ghur constantly-in fact the Sultans of Ghaznin held several fortresses in Ghur; and Tigin-abad was in that very part, and Muhammad, brother of Mas'ud, was confined in the fortress of Nae in Wajīristān, one of the very districts mentioned by our author as forming part of the Ghūrian dominions. I think 'Utba' and Baihaki were more than likely to have had thorough knowledge of these potent Maliks and sovereigns so called, yet Baihaki and 'Utha' treat them as very petty chieftains, although they held some strong fortresses. Our author quotes Baihaki constantly about other matters, but not here in regard to what happened under his [Baihaki's] own observation as it were; and this looks suspicious. I will now give an abridged account of what he does say respecting Sultan Mahmud's proceedings with respect to Ghur, and of the expedition undertaken by his gallant son, Mas'ud, against some of its petty chiefs, during the time he held the government of Khurasan, before he succeeded to the throne of Ghaznin.

"In the year 401 H., Sultan Mahmud went on an expedition into <u>Gh</u>ur against the infidels of that part, by way of Zamin-i-Dāwar, taking along with in his two sons, Mas'ūd and Muḥammad, both at that time in their fourteenth year [they were not twins], and also their uncle [Maḥmūd's youngest brother],

Yūsuf, then seventeen.

"These three young Princes were left in Zamin-i-Dawar, with the heavy matériel and baggage, and Mahmud left them there because he considered that district auspicious, it having been the first territory entrusted to him by his father. Amir Sabuk-Tigin. The parrator of the preceding and following events, 'Abd-ul-Ghaffar, says, 'my grandfather, who related this, was at that time in the service of Batikin, the Zamin-Dawari [i, e. of Zamin-i-Dawar], who was governor of that district on the part of Sultan Mahmud, and he [my grandfather] was directed to remain in attendance on the Princes.' IThere is not the slightest allusion either to Suri or his son here, although it is the year in which his son Muhammad is said to have been made captive by Mahmud] * * * * In 405 H., Mahmud began to make raids upon Khawanin, which is a tract of Ghür, adjoining Bust and Zamin-i-Dawar, in which were infidels exceedingly tall and strong, and they held many passes and strong fortresses. On this occasion the Sultan had taken along with him his son Mas'ūd, and he then greatly distinguished himself, and showed many proofs of his manhood and valour. When a body of them [the infidels] retired for refuge to their stronghold, one of their chiefs was standing on a tower of the fort, and was acting with great insolence and audacity, and galling the Musalmans, when Mas'ud, who was fighting on horseback, hit him in the throat with an arrow, and he fell dead from the tower. The chief's companions became heart-broken at this, and surrendered the fortress; and all this was accomplished by one wound dealt by a brave hand. Amir Mahmud was delighted with his lion-like son, and, whilst he was yet in his youth, made him his heir, for he knew that after his own death there was no one able to maintain the dynasty but he. [See note 4, page 92.] * * * * In 411 H., Mas'tid [he had been declared heirapparent, and appointed governor of Khurasan, with Hirat as the seat of V. MALIK ABŪ-'ALĪ, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, SON OF SŪRĪ.

Amir Abū-'Ali, son of Muḥammad-i-Sūri, was a man of

government] proceeded to Hirāt, and determined to undertake an expedition into Ghūr.

"He set out from Hirāt, in Jamādi-ul-Awwal, with a strong force of horse and foot, and five light elephants. The first march was to Badṣḥān [one MS. has Badṣḥāhān], and the next to Khuṣān [one MS. Chaṣḥān or Chuṣḥān; but several of these names cannot be considered certain, although all available MSS. have been compared, and the printed text of Morley, which has been carefully edited], and then to Barān [MS. Parāyān]. There a halt took place to allow all the troops to come up, after which Prince Mas undended to Pār [MS. Bār], and from thence, after two days, to Naṣḥṣḥab [MS. Naḥṣḥab or Niḥṣḥab], and then to Bārh-i-Wazīr, outside; and that Ribāt [public edifice, a kārwānsarāe] is the commencement of the frontier of Ghūr.

"When the Ghuris became aware of this movement of Amir Mas'ud, they retired to their strongholds and deliberated about making resistance. Before he set out on this expedition, Mas'ud had conciliated Bu-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf [Bu or Abū-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf would signify the father of Hasan, and son of Khalaf. According to some authors already quoted the son of Muhammad, son of Suri. was named Hasan. See para. 2, page 321], one of the most notable of the chieftains of Ghur, and had induced him [Bu-l-Hasan] to submit to his authority; and it had been agreed, that, on the Amir's troops reaching that Ribat, Bu-l-Hasan should present himself there with his forces fully equipped. On the day Mas'ud reached that place, Bu-l-Hasan joined him with a considerable force, amounting to 3000 horse and foot, and brought along with him numerous offerings and contributions in the shape of shields, armour, and whatever was most esteemed of the produce of Ghur. Mas'ud treated him with favour, and he was followed by Sher-wan. This was another of the chiefs on the frontier of Ghür and Güzgänän [pronounced and written Jüzjänän by 'Arabs']. and he too came attended by numerous forces, horse and foot. He likewise had been conciliated by Amir Mas'ud, and he brought along with him offerings beyond compute. Amir Muhammad [Mas'ud's brother] had used the utmost endeayours and contrivances to induce this chieftain to come and attach himself to him, because his territory adjoined Muhammad's appanage, which was Guzganan, but he had declined because people were more inclined towards Mas'ūd.

"Having been joined by these chiefs, Mas'ūd resumed his march, but went on in advance himself, slightly attended by about fifty or sixty ghulāms, and 200 foot, selected from each datath or band. He reached a fortress which they called Bar-tar, an exceedingly strong place, and garrisoned by a numerous and well-armed force. He prepared to attack it, his party not being patient enough to wait for the arrival of the army. He led the way himself, followed by his ghulāms and the foot, and they shouted the takbir, on which the accursed unbelievers (these Ghūris were not Muhammadans) of this fortress of Ghūr sprung up infuniated, and set up a yell sufficient to rend the ground. Mas'ūd ordered his ghulāms to take to their bows; and they kept up such an effectual fire of arrows, that not a Ghūri dared show his head above the walls, and this enabled the foot, by means of lassos Jused up to a recent

good disposition and excellent qualities, and was highly commended for the excellency of his faith.

period] to assault one of the bastions. They effected an entrance, and drove the Ghūris beföre them, and, being joined by the ghulāms, completely cleared the walls and bastions, making great slaughter among the unbelievers, and taking a great number of captives and a considerable amount of booty of all descriptions. After the fortress had been captured, the main body of the troops arrived, and many were their praises and congratulations, that such a

strong fortress had been taken by such a mere handful of men.

"From thence Mas'ūd marched towards the tract of Zarān [in one copy of the original, Razān, but the first is the most probable], the people of which agreed to pay taxes and tribute, and presented contributions in gold, silver, and arms. From that part to the district called Jarīs laiso Kharūs and Harūs] where War-mesh-i-Bat dwelt, was a distance of ten farsalghs [leagues]. The Amīr did not commence hostilities against this chief, War-mesh-i-Bat, because he had sent an agent to the young Amīr tendering submission and allegiance, and had promised that, when Mas'ūd should return to Hīrāt, he would present himself before him, and enter into stipulations respecting tribute. That district, and the place where this chieftain dwelt, were excessively strong, and the most difficult portion of the whole territory of Ghūr, its people the most warlike and the strongest men in that part. It had been the capital of the Ghūrīs in bygone times; and, whatever ruler held that tract, the whole of the rest of the territory used to submit to him, up to the time that Amīr Mas'ūd marched into that part of the country."

There can be no doubt but that Baihaki, who was a native of the Ghaznin district, and who wrote his work at Ghaznin upwards of a century before our author composed his history, must have had a much greater knowledge of Ghür and its people; yet this extract makes the accounts of Ghur and of the Ghuris more puzzling than ever. That the latter were not all converted-if any were-to the Muhammadan faith is clear, and it is also clear that up to this time they were under several petty chiefs, independent of each other, though perhaps nominally acknowledging the supremacy of the chief of Zarān, whose place of residence had been the capital of Ghur in bygone times. But the name of this chief is the most perplexing. In Morley's edition of the text of Baihaki he is called Ra'fs-i-Bat, or Tab إليس بت or تب], and, in a note, Ramish A MS. in my possession has War-mesh ورنس and in another place إرميش but, the passage being so important, I sent it to Professor Rieu, of the British Museum, who has been so very kind as to compare my translation with another copy of Baihaki in the British Museum, and, from what the Professor says, there is no doubt that the first name is War-mesh, and this is remarkable, because this very name occurs among the names of the ancestors of Amir Banii [see page 312], and occurs again at page 366. What Bat or Tab idol-worshipper, infidel; but that all the known copies of the original should have left part of the name out [Morley collated his edition of the text with four or five copies] is improbable. The word is not Pus'hto, and there is no Afghan tribe or clan of this name. Had the Ghuris been Hindus instead of Taiiks, we might suppose it was a corruption of Sanskrit Bhat, a hero, a warrior. I dare say, however, that some one will be able to account for the name, and perhaps show to his own satisfaction that this chief must have been one of the Bhati tribe of Jats now in the Panjab. We might as well have Bhatis in Ghur as "a fugitive band of Crusaders" from Palestine

At the time when his father held the sovereignty of

in the army of Ghūrfs who conquered the upper provinces of India, according to the interpreters of the poem of the Bard Chand—but I have forgotten myself. Eat might be Pat, and that will be surely founded upon and shown to be part of the word Paṭān, and can be made "Pathan," "Patan," or "Pahtan," with the greatest ease. If it were not a dangerous practice to tamper with proper

names, I should be inclined to read, Shis.]

"The Amir now despatched an intelligent person to this chief, and two men of Ghür of the followers of Bü-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf and Sher-wan were sent along with him to act as interpreters, with a message combining threats and hopes, as is usual on such occasions. The agent departed, and the Amir followed in his steps. The former, and the others with him, reached the place in question, and he delivered his message to those arrogant fellows [sic], who manifested great fierceness and defiance, and said that the Amir had made a great mistake in imagining that either the people of that part or that district were similar to those he had met with and had passed through; that he had better come there, and he would find sword, spear, and stone [rock] ready for him. This insolent message roused the ire of Mas'ūd. He halted his troops for the night at the foot of the mountain, arms were distributed, and, at dawn, the force moved forward. The drums and trumpets sounded, and the soldiers began to ascend the heights, on which the Ghūris showed themselves like so many ants or locusts on the tracts above them, horse and foot, all well armed, and occupying all the paths and defiles leading to it, who raised shouts and yells, and began casting stones with their slings, at Mas'ūd's force.

"The best of it was, that that mountain was somewhat depressed, and partly composed of earth [not very rocky?] and accessible in every direction. The troops were told off in parties, to advance by the different practicable paths. and Mas'ūd himself kept parallel to them, for the fighting there was likely to be severe. Bü-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf, and his men, were sent to the right, and Sher-wan, with his contingent, to the left. The accursed ones evinced the utmost daring, and pressed forward with impetuosity, particularly in front of the Amir, and they disputed the greater part of the ground with determination. The troops were hard pressed, and the enemy crowded towards the standards of the Amir, and the fighting became desperate. [This reads something like an UMBEYLAH expedition.] Three mounted warriors of the enemy succeeded in getting close up to the Amir, who, perceiving them, smote one of them full on the breast with his mace of twenty mans in weight [the man varies from forty to eighty pounds], which laid him sprawling on his back, and prevented his rising again; and the ghulams attacked the other two, and hurled them from their horses. This was enough for the Ghūris, who gave way; but they continued, now and again, to face about and dispute the ground, until a village ftown] was reached at the foot of the mountain fon the other sidel, and, on the way thither, numbers were slain and made captive. The fugitives threw themselves into this place, which was of vast strength, and contained numerous kūshks [here kūshk seems to mean a castle or fortified house], after the manner of the Ghūris, and sent away to a stronghold, at a distance in the rear, their women, children, and everything they could remove. The unbelievers resisted obstinately up to the time of evening prayer, and great numbers of them were killed, and numbers of Musalmans were martyred [Mas'ūd's troops are referred to here]. When the night closed in, the unbelievers decamped, and the village [or town] was taken possession of by the troops, who occupied themselves, throughout the night, in plundering it.

Ghūr, and the mountain tracts of Mandeshs, the whole of

8 This tends to show that Ghur and Mandesh were separate tracts.

"At dawn next day, the Amir again moved forward towards their [other] stronghold, two leagues distant. He had to pass through a constant succession of defiles and passes, and did not reach it till the time of afternoon prayer. They found a fortress, as they had been informed, stronger than any other in the whole of Gibri, and no one recollected hearing that it had ever been taken by force of arms. Mas'ūd, having reached it, disposed his forces around this stronghold, and, during the whole night, preparations were made for attacking it, and the battering rams were placed in favourable positions."

I must here still further curtail this interesting account of the expedition for want of space. Suffice it to say that breaches were made and brayely assaulted and as bravely defended, the Amir being ever in front, and thereby inspiring his men with strong hearts. After four days' very severe fighting, each day increasing in severity, it was carried, at last, sword in hand, the Ghūrīs defending every inch of the breach. Great numbers of them were slain and taken prisoners, but the latter were protected on making their submission, while slaves and booty to a vast amount were captured. Mas'ud had it proclaimed that he gave up all gold, silver, slaves, and other booty to the troops, but that all arms and war materiel taken was to be brought to him. A great quantity was accordingly brought and laid before his tent, and such as was most valuable or rare he selected, and divided the rest among his soldiers. Of the prisoners, one half was made over to Bü-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf, and the other half to Sher-wan, for them to take to their own territories. Orders were also given to raze that stronghold, so that, from thenceforth, no rebel might take shelter therein. When the rest of the Ghuris found what had happened to the tortified town and the other stronghold, they began to fear, and became submissive and willing to pay tribute and obedience; and even War-mesh-i-Bat began to quake. He made intercession through Bu-l-Hasan-i-Khalaf and Sher-wan, and sent an envoy, tendered his submission, and increased the amount of tribute and contributions. His offers were accepted on the stipulation that every castle he [War-mesh] had taken on the side of Gharjistan should be given up. Although War-mesh ground his teeth at this, he could do nothing else than agree, and those fortresses were given up to governors of the Amir. Whilst the latter was still in Ghur, that chief sent in his contributions and offerings; and, subsequently, when Mas'ud reached Hirat, Warmesh-i-Bat presented himself at the Court, was well received, had a dress of honour conferred upon him, and returned to his country along with the two other friendly chieftains.

After the capture and destruction of the fortress above referred to, Amîr Mas'id advanced against another, a famous place, and of vast strength, named Tür [this name is doubtful, the variants are Būr and Nūrī]. It was carried by storm after a week's fighting and great slaughter, and the two friendly chiess took part in it. Mas'id placed a governor of his own in the place, after which he set out on his return to Hirāt. At Mār-ābād, ten farsakhs [leagues] from that city, large quantities of arms and war matériel, as stipulated for by others of the Ghūrīs to avert molestation, were found already collected, together with what War-meshi-last had despatched.

The narrator, 'Abd-ul-Ghaffar, then adds, that "no sovereign ever acquired such power over Ghūr as the martyr, Mas'ūd, did; for, although the first

the people had their eyes upon him, and affection towards him was instilled into their minds. Notwithstanding that his father used to act in a rebellious and contumacious manner towards Amīr Sabuk-Tigin, and his son, Sulţān Maḥnnūd, Amīr Abū-'Alī at all times used to manifest his fidelity and allegiance towards the Sulṭān; and he was in the habit of writing letters containing the expression of his fealty and his affection, and despatching them to Ghaznīn, the capital.

When the contumacy and defection of his father went beyond the bounds of forbearance, Sultān Maḥmūd brought an army against him from Ghaznīn; and, after considerable effort, the Sultān succeeded in securing the person of Amīr Muḥammad-i-Sūrī; and took him away along with him towards Ghaznīn, and bestowed the government of Ghūr upon Amīr Abū-Alī, his son.

As soon as Amir Abū-'Alī became installed in the government of Ghūr, he conferred great benefits upon the people, and directed the erection of many buildings of public utility. Masjids and colleges were founded in Ghūr, and he also built a Jāmi' Masjid, and liberally endowed the whole of them. He held priests and ecclesiastics in great respect, and considered it incumbent on himself to venerate hermits and recluses.

During his time, the people of the territories of <u>Gh</u>ūr dwelt in tranquillity and repose, and his brother, <u>Sh</u>īs, son of Muḥammad, passed his days under his protection.

When the appointed period of Amir Abū-'Ali's dominion came to an end, and the empire of <u>Ghaznin</u> [also] reverted from Maḥmūd to his son, [Sulṭān] Mas'ūd, a son of Amir <u>Shis</u>, 'Abbās by name, having attained great dignity and power, broke out into rebellion, seized his uncle, Amir Abū-'Ali, and reduced the whole of the country of <u>Gh</u>ūr under his own sway; and the reign of Amir Abū-'Ali came to a termination, and he died.

Musalmāns [the 'Arabs] conquered 'Ajam and Khunšsān, they found it impossible to enter Ghūr; and, although Sulfān Mahmūd, on three separate eccasions, by the same route of Zamīn-i-Dāwar, attacked different frontier tracts of Ghūr, yet he did not penetrate into the defiles and more difficult parts; still, it was not through inability to do so, for his designs and objects were different to those of his successor." VI. MALIK[®] 'ABBĀS, SON OF <u>SH</u>ĪṢ, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, SON OF SŪRĪ.

Amir 'Abbās was a warlike, intrepid, and pitiless man, and endowed with great manliness, strength, and activity. When he attained the full vigour of youth, and his whole strength, he entered secretly into a compact with a party of adherents and young men, and gained them over to his own rebellious views. He then suddenly rose, and seized his uncle, Amīr Abū-'Alī, ruler of Ghūr, and imprisoned him, and appropriated the whole of his uncle's property, his treasures and his hoards, to himself. He was exceedingly determined, cruel, and tyrannical; and lawlessness and injustice were engrafted in his nature.

He commenced to act illegally, and began to seize people's possessions and property, so much so that the commonalty, and his own immediate followers, were quite miserable, and became perfectly helpless in his hands, and to such degree, that, for a period of seven years during his reign, no animal—such as the horse, camel, cow, or sheep—brought forth young, and the rain from the heavens ceased to fall; and, according to one story, women also did not bear children, through the ill-luck consequent on

his tyranny.

The chronicler thus states, that he possessed two fine [and powerful] dogs, which were constantly kept fastened by heavy chains, and iron collars round their necks. One of these dogs had been named Ibrāhīm of Ghaznīn, and the other, 'Abbās of Ghūr. These animals used constantly to be brought before him, and the chains to be removed from them, and they were set to fight together. Whenever the dog bearing his own name overcame the other, that day Amīr 'Abbās would make great rejoicings, and bestow liberal presents; but, on days when the dog named Ibrāhīm of Ghaznīn gained the advantage [over his antagonist], he would become infuriated, and greatly ill-treat and torment people, and not a single person among his favourites and attendants dared to say anything to him.

With all this tyranny and oppression, however, he was

⁹ Two copies of the text style him Amrr-ul-Kāmil—the perfect or thorough Amrr.

gifted with a profound knowledge of astrology. He had taken great pains with respect to that science, and had shown vast perseverance and assiduity in its acquirement. and had gained a deep knowledge of it. In the country of Mandesh, in the Khittah [district] of Sangah, the original fortress which Bustam-i-Zuhak had founded, he [Amir 'Abbās] directed should be entirely reconstructed; and skilful artisans were obtained from parts around [for the purpose]. The walls, after the manner of a parapet, were carried from that castle, on two sides, to the strong ground on the summit of the mountain of Zār-i-Margh; and at the foot of that mountain, on a knoll, a lofty Kasr [castle] was directed to be raised, with twelve towers; and in every tower, in likeness to the zodiacal circles in the firmament. there were thirty openings-there were six towers towards the east and north, and six others towards the west and south-marked out; and these were so arranged that, every day, the sun would shine through one of those openings approximate to the position of its rise1. By this means he used to know in what degree of what sign of the zodiac the sun was on that particular day; and this performance indicates the proficiency and knowledge which Amir 'Abbas had attained in the science of astrology.

During his reign, likewise, the Kasrs of <u>Gh</u>ūr were constructed³, and plenty reigned throughout the country; but, as people now abominated him for his excessive tyranny,

¹ See the view of the Castle of Zuhāk in SALE's "Defence of Jalālābād," and also in HART's "Character and Costume of Afghānistān." The view in the first-mentioned work answers tolerably well to this description. It is much to be regretted that no effort was made to explore Ghūr, even by means of natives, or gain some information about it, during our occupation of Afghānistān. What a field it must be for archeological research!

² The Persian word "t\u00e4\u00

oppression, and injustice, and the empire of <u>Ghaznin</u>, and throne of sovereignty, had passed to Sultān Razzi-ud-Din, Ibrāhim, son of Mas'ūd, a party of the most powerful and eminent men, and the nobles of <u>Gh</u>ūr, despatched letters to

Ghaznin, imploring the Sultan's assistance.

In conformity with these solicitations, Sultān Ibrāhīm marched a large army into <u>Gh</u>ūr; and, when he reached it, the whole of the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr went over to that monarch, and they delivered Amīr 'Abbās into the Sultān's hands'. He commanded that Amīr 'Abbās should be placed in confinement, and he took him away to <u>Gh</u>aznīn, and conferred the territory of <u>Gh</u>ūr upon his [Amīr 'Abbās'] son, Amīr Muḥammad'.

VII. AMĪR MUḤAMMAD, SON OF 'ABBĀS.

When Sultān Ibrāhim, son of Mas'ūd, seized Amir 'Abbās, and sent him away to Ghaznin, at the solicitations of the chief personages and eminent men of Ghūr, he made over the country to Amir Muḥammad-i-'Abbās'.

He was endowed with great good nature, was of exceeding amiability of heart, and of excellent disposition, most just, conscientious, and merciful, a patron of the learned, an impartial judge, and a cherisher of the weak and helpless. In the place of every one of the odious and hateful proclivities towards inhumanity and tyranny which were in his father, the disposition of the son was implanted with a thousand amiable and admirable qualities.

³ These operations are not mentioned by other authors; but a few notice, very briefly, that Amir 'Abbās carried on hostilities with Sultān Ibrāhim.

4 This too is pretty good proof, by our author's own account, that the Ghūris were subject to the Sulfans of Ghazin; but, as the power of the latter declined, consequent on the rise of the Saljūks, and after Mas'ūd-i-Karim's

death, the Ghuris acquired more power. See top of next page.

b. Which is impossible, if what other writers state as to Ḥusain, son of Sām, having been saved from shipwreck, and Ibrāhīm's son, Mas'ūd-i-Karīm, having conferred the chieftainship on him, be taken into consideration. Mahammad, son of Sūrī, was taken prisoner in 400 H., or, according to some accounts, in 401 H. From that time, up to 493 H., when Mas'ūd-i-Karīm conferred the fiel of the tributary province of Ġhūr upon Ḥusain, son of Sām, son of Ḥasan, son of Mahammad, son of Sūrī, none of this family held independent sway over Ġhūr. As already shown from the account of Mas'ūd the Martyr's expedition into it, it was held by several petty chiefs independent of each other. See note 7, page 321.

When the territory of <u>Gh</u>ür was assigned to Amîr Muḥammad, the whole of the grandees, the chiefs, and most distinguished personages of the country, submitted to his authority; and, to the best of his ability and power, he began to labour and study to revive and restore the observances of goodness and utility, and the laws and usages of benevolence, beneficence, and justice. He used to render homage to the Sultāns of <u>Ghaznīn</u> with heartiness and loyalty, and pay them submission and vassalage, and used to despatch the fixed tribute regularly.

During his reign the gates of repose and tranquillity were opened to the people of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and they all passed their days in the enjoyment of peace and security; happiness and plenty reigned; and his country, his people, and his retainers dwelt for a long while in the enjoyment of competency and affluence, up to the period when he passed away and was received into the mercy of God.

VIII. MALIK ĶUŢB-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤASAN, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, SON OF 'ABBĀS.

Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn, Ḥasan, the grandfather of the great Sultāns of Ghūr , was a just Amīr, high-principled, and of handsome countenance. The proofs of his goodness, equity, clemency, and beneficence were sufficiently obvious and manifest to the inhabitants of Ghūr.

Such factions as were in the habit of acting contumaciously he used to occupy himself in chastizing and overthrowing, and considered it incumbent on himself to punish severely the disaffected and seditious. The tribes of the territory of Ghūr, having sprung from families of 'Arabs 7, and having been nurtured, and grown up, in a

7 See note 4, page 320. The Afghans have, certainly, as well as other mountain tribes, behaved at all times in the manner mentioned here, but so

⁶ According to the statements of other authors given in note ⁷, page 321, the grandfather of the Sulfans of Ghūr, that is to say, of Sulfan ¹Ala-ud-Dīh, and his brothers, was Hasan, son of Muhammad, son of Sūrī, who was let down from the tower by his father, and who had a son, Ḥusain, the IXth chief mentioned by our author. But, according to the other tradition quoted by Raugat-ug-Sāf, Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, and other histories, in the same note, their grandfather would be Sām, son of Ḥasan, grandson of Sūrī, who was drowned. See note ⁴, page 335, in which it is stated that "Ḥusain, son of Sām, of the race of Sūrī," was taken captive by Sulfān Sanjar in 501 H.

mountainous tract of country, obstinacy, turbulence, and contumacy were implanted in the constitutions and characters of the whole of the <u>Ghūriān</u> tribes. Feuds and contentions would continually arise of one tribe against another, and conflicts constantly ensue. Every year one district or another of the territory of <u>Gh</u>ūr would manifest antagonism [to the constituted authority] and withhold the payment of the regulated amount of revenue; and up to [near] this present time, when the dominion of the <u>Gh</u>ūriān Sultāns came to its termination, the state of these peoples continued to be seen and witnessed [after the same fashion].

Upon one occasion, during the time of Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn, Ḥasan, a tribe who dwelt in Tak-āb of the territory of Wajiristān, rose in rebellion. Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn, with his followers and the chiefs of Ghūr, appeared at the foot of that Kūshk and the stronghold of that faction, and summoned them to surrender. They refused to submit, and commenced hostilities. Unexpectedly, by destiny's decree, an arrow from the bow of fate came from the rebels and struck Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn in the eye, and, as it had wounded a mortal part, he died from the injury. His retainers and followers, immediately on seeing the effect of that arrow's wound, with the utmost daring, and putting forth all their energy, attacked and carried the Kūshk and stronghold by storm, and put the whole of the rebels to the sword, and that place was completely destroyed. Up

have the people styled Kohistänfs, who inhabit the valleys immediately north of Käbul, and also the Balüchis, and they [the latter] have not yet, I believe, been quite made Patäns of, although some progress has been made towards it. Such conduct seems inherent in all mountain races, whether in the east or in the west.

8 There is a river and valley of Tag-āo, or Tag-āb, in Afghānistān, but to them cannot possibly be referred the locality indicated here, for they are some sixty miles to the asstward of Kābul. I think the translation of this compound word may throw some light on its whereabouts. The word "Tak-āb," or "Tag-āh," both of which forms are correct, also the forms in use among natives of those parts—Tak-āo and Tag-āo, and Āb-i-Tang—are described by an old author as "ground furrowed by water [a ravine or series of ravines], a defile, a valley between two mountains, and ground, whether in a valley or not, in which, here and there, water collects and remains, and in some places flows, and in which there is pasture and much verdure. They are also used for the name of a territory, and there is a small district so named." I think the place alluded to by our author is not far from Āb-Jstādah, but more to the west. Wajfristān has been often mentioned in the account of the Ghazanwids.

to the time of the last of the Sultāns of $\underline{Gh}\bar{u}r$, and the termination of the sovereignty of the \underline{Sh} ansabānīs, no king would grant permission for the restoration of that $K\bar{u}\underline{sh}k$, its equipments, and the suburbs of that place, with the exception of the $K\bar{u}\underline{sh}k$ of Amīr \underline{Kh} arnak, which was in that \bar{Ab} -i-Tang, for his ancestors had always been obedient.

When Kutb-ud-Din, Ḥasan, departed this life, his son, Amīr Ḥusain, succeeded him.

IX. MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN, ABŪ-UŞ-ṢALAŢAIN', SON OF KUTB-UD-DIN AL-ḤASAN.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, was a sovereign 'upright, of handsome countenance, devout, and endowed with all good qualities, and distinguished for his many virtues. During the period of his rule, the territory of Ghūr and the Bilād-i-Jibāl '[mountain country] were populous and prosperous; and the tribes and inhabitants of those tracts enjoyed ease and content, and, under his protection, lived in safety and security. Priests, recluses; and holy men, and the whole of the people, without interruption, attained the fulfilment of their requirements and desires in an abundant degree.

The Almighty God blessed his devoutness and good disposition by bestowing upon him seven sons, the fame of whose sovereignty and dominion became published throughout the seven climates of the world. Of these sons four attained unto empire and dominion; and from them descended sons of renown in the world, who became

⁹ Discrepancy more or less exists among all the copies of the original here. The oldest and most trustworthy are as above. The Paris copies too are defective, and in one copy the last part of this sentence runs —"No sourcing set about the restoration of that Kūghk, except Amîr Kharnak, who was in the neighbourhood of that Åb-i-Tang, and those parts were obedient to him."

¹ One of the oldest copies has "Abū-l-Mulūk" here, instead of Abū-uş-Salatain.

² See note ⁴, page 320, and note ⁵, page 332. 'Izz-ud-Din, the title, signifies "Glory, &c., of the Faith," but "'A'iz-ud-Din" nothing, for it is meaning-less. Husain also is his correct name, confirmed by numerous other authors, and Hasan was his father's name, as our author states.

³ <u>Gh</u>ūr is mountainous enough, surely, as well as the Bilād-i-Jibāl. From our author's statement, however, they are separate tracts of country.

sovereign princes, as will be subsequently narrated and recorded.

This Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, was firmly attached to and in amity with the Sanjari dynasty and the Saljūki sovereignty; and every year he used to despatch to the court of Sultan Saniar such things as had been customary and established, such as armour, coats of mail, steel caps, and other equipments, and war material⁵. There is also

4 His "attachment to the Sanjari dynasty" may also easily be accounted for. In 501 H., Sultan Sanjar, whilst in charge of Khurasan, nine years before he became supreme ruler of the Saljük empire, fought a battle with the Maliks [here a further proof that there were several petty chiefs] of Ghur, who were of the race of Suri, and Husain ['Izz-ud-Din, Husain, of our author], son of Sam, was made prisoner. Sultan Saniar ordered him to be put to death: but, at the intercession of the celebrated Shaikh Ahmad, Ghazzālī, the Sultān of Mashā'ikh, as he is styled, he was spared, and set free. For two years he used to light the fires of the cooks of the Sultan's army, until, one day, the Amir of the troops of Khurasan, 'Imad-ud-Daulah, Kimaj, chanced to meet with him. He took compassion on Husain, and represented his case to the Sultan, who directed that Husain should be brought to his presence. When he was admitted, he kissed the ground of the Sultan's court. Sanjar said to him :- "I understand that thou hast neither wealth nor power left to thee, notwithstanding thou wast a chief and leader. Has neither kindliness nor sympathy been left to thee?" Husain replied :- "When this head was my own head, I had the good fortune to be attended by a thousand servants, but now that it belongs to thee, thou keepest me thus wretched and abject."

Rashid-ud-Din, who also relates this anecdote [but, strange to say, under the account of his son, 'Ala-ud-Din, although he calls him Husain too, and leaves out all mention of the first part of the name, 'Ala-ud-Dinl, says that Husain wandered about the Sultan's camp for two years as a mendicant four author would scorn to relate this, as it did not tend to the glorification of the Ghuris, and their slaves, his patrons], when "one day Amir Kimāj was passing the shop of a cook, he chanced to notice Husain, who was attending the fire, and watching the cook's pot." When admitted to the presence of the Sultan, Rashid-ud-Din says the Sultan thus addressed Husain :- "I gather that thou hast neither wealth nor power left to thee: hast thou not the means and the power of keeping one head and face clean?" The rest of the anecdote agrees with Fasih-i, related above.

Sultan Sanjar was touched, took pity on him, pardoned him, and sent him back to his native country attended by a large following; and to the end of

his days Husain paid obedience to that monarch.

Fasih-i further states that "Husain, son of Sam, who escaped drowning, and the sword of the executioner," only died in 545 H. He ruled that territory justly; and, up to his time even, great numbers of the inhabitants of the mountain tracts of Ghur had not been converted to Islam, but were made converts of by him. This Husain, the same chronicler states, was succeeded by his son, 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, in that same year. For further particulars, see under 'Alā-ud-Dīn, note 2, pages 347 to 350.

5 Ghur, and mountain tracts around, appear to have been famous for the manufacture of arms and armour; and iron mines must have been worked therein.

a remarkably fine breed of dogs in <u>Gh</u>ūr, so powerful that, in frame and strength, every one of them is a match for a lion. A number of this breed of dogs, with valuable collars round their necks, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, was in the habit of sending to the Sulṭān's [Sanjar's] presence; and he used to receive in return dresses of honour and many valuable presents.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn likewise was wont to keep on terms of amity and friendship with the Sultāns of Ghaznîn'; and for a considerable length of time the government of the territory of Ghūr was held by him up to the period when he died.

He had [as before stated] seven sons, the eldest of whom was Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, of Bāmiān, but an account of whom will be contained in another chapter on the Sulţāns of Bāmiān, which will commence with a mention of him, and be therein recorded.

The names of his sons are as follow:—Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, Amîr of Bāmiān and Tukhāristan; Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Amīr of Ghūr and Firūz-koh; Malik-ul-Jibāl, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Amīr of Ghūr, and Firūz-koh; Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, sovereign of Ghūr and Ghaznīn; Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain', sovereign of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, and Bāmiān; Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn,

⁶ This fine breed of dogs, or rather one very similar, still exists among the Ghalzi tribe of Afghāns, who trace their descent on the father's tide only from the son of a chief of Ghūr, whom their traditions style Shāh Ḥusain; but he fled from Ghūr, and took shelter among the Afghāns at a much earlier period, in the time of the Khalifah, 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Mirwān, who reigned from 66 H. to 86 H. He was adopted by an Afghān Shaikh; but the names of his ancestry, as mentioned by the Afghān historians, do not agree with those mentioned by our author. This Shāh Ḥusain's grandiather, according to them, was forty-ninth in descent from Zubāk. Had not the names and the dates been so very different, I should have been inclined to consider Shāh Ḥusain of the Ghalzis, and the Ḥusain of others, who was saved from ship-wreck, and received the fief of Ghūr from Mas'ūd-i-Karim, as one and the same person.

⁷ Sultān Mas'ud conferred the sovereignty upon [Izzad-Dīn] Husain in 493 H., the year after the decease of his own father, Sultān Ibrāhīm. It is no wonder he kept on good terms with his suzerains. Faṣiḥ-faṣys he died in 545 H., and that this was the same Husain, son of Sām, and one of the kindred of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī. See preceding page, note * It is strange, but several of the best copies of the text have "Sultāns of Ghūr and Gharnīn"

⁸ In two copies he is here styled Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din-i-Sam.

Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>arnak, Malik of Mādin of <u>Gh</u>ūr; and Malik <u>Sh</u>ujā'-ud-Din, 'Ali, Amir of Jarmās' of <u>Gh</u>ūr.

X. MALIK-UL-JIBĀL, ĶUŢB-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF ['IZZ-UD-DĪN] AL-ḤUSAIN.

Of the seven sons of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, the eldest among them all was Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, of Bāmiān, mention of whom will be made in the other chapter [referred to previously], the foundation of the dynasty of the Sultāns of Bāmiān dating from the rise of his power¹. His mother was a Turkî handmaid; and after him, in succession [in age], came the Malik-ul-Jibāl [the Lord of the Mountains], Ķuṭb-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad². His mother was a woman who was of no high descent, and was the Ḥājibah [Chamberlain] and attendant of the mother of the other

9 Some copies have Harmas, and some Barmas.

¹ This was the proper place to have separated these dynasties, as this chief was the first of the rulers of Ghūr and Pirūz-koh after the patrimony had been divided. This has been done by other writers, but they make Kutb-ud-Din the first of the dynasty of Ghūr and Ghaznin, and his brother, Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, second. Had our author given an account of Saif-ud-Din second, as in the order of the events, instead of faat, he would have saved his readers some

perplexity and trouble.

2 So far, other writers agree pretty well with our author, but here considerable difference arises. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, quoting other authors. says, that Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad, who is known as the Malik-ul-Jibal [Lord of the Mountains], was sent for by Bahram Shah of Ghaznin-after he had made an accommodation with the sons of 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain-and that he made him his son-in-law; but, through his having been suspected of a crime, he was removed by poison. This is said to have been the first enmity that arose between the Ghaznawids and the Ghuris, but such is not correct, as already shown. Jahān-Ārā agrees with the above, however, with this exception, that, in the latter, it is stated that he, the Malik-ul-Jibal, came from Ghur and presented himself at the Court of Bahram Shah. The Tarikh-i-Ibrāhimi, and some others, however, agree more with our author's statement. and say, that Malik Saif-ud-Din, Süri, on the death of his father, 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, succeeded to the dominion of Ghur, and divided the patrimony among his brothers, one of whom [Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad] became irritated with his brothers, and went to the Court of Bahram Shah, who put him to death for some reason; and this caused enmity between the two houses. Rauzat-us-Safā and some others, however, consider this statement very weak. and quote the tradition which I have already given at page 321, note 7, and state, that, after the death of Husain, enmity arose between his descendants and Bahram Shah of Ghaznin, and hostilities took place between them upon several occasions, which will be subsequently referred to.

sons, the Sultāns, namely, Sultān Sūrī; Sultān ³ Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām; Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain; Amīr [Shihāb-ud-Dīn] Muḥammad; and Amīr [Shujā'-ud-Dīn] 'Alī', the other sons of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain.

When Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, who was the father of the Sulṭāns, departed this life, Sulṭān [Saif-ud-Dîn] Sūrī, in succession to his father, ascended the throne and divided his father's dominions among his brothers. An account of Sulṭān Sūrī will, please God, be given in the chapter on the Sultāns of Ghaznīn.

In this division, the territory of Warshādah 6 was assigned to the Malik-ul-Jibāl, Kutb-ud-Din, Muḥammad, and there he fixed his seat of government. Subsequently, it so happened, that he had to seek for a [suitable] place in which to found a strong fortress and a handsome city, such as would be suitable to his dignity. He despatched persons on whom he could depend into the parts adjacent, until [at length] his opinion led him to fix upon the position of Firūz-koh, and he founded the fortress and city of Firūz-koh?

Sultān Sūrī made the fortress and town of Istiah his capital, and to Malik Nāṣir ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Mādīn

³ Styled Sulfan without reason: Malik is his correct title, as given at the head of this notice in the copies of the text.

⁴ These two last, here styled Amirs, are the sixth and seventh sons mentioned over leaf, viz. Malik Shihāb-ud-Din [called Nāṣir-ud-Din subsequently], Muḥammad, and Malik Shujā'-ud-Din, 'Alī, the XIIIth and XIIIth of the family.

⁵ See note 4, page 336.

⁶ Some few copies have Warshad, and Warshar.

⁷ In several other places our author mentions "the territory of Ghūr and the Bilād-ul-Jibāl," thus indicating that they were separate; and yet Fīrūz-koh was the capital of the Bilād-ul-Jibāl, and in his account of the division of their father, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain's, territory, and the names of the districts, the vahole appear included in Ghūr, of which Fīrūz-koh was the capital! The mention of the places shows the extent of the territory held by these chiefs—the mighty monarchs of our author. It is a curious fact, and a very important one, that the name of Kandahār nerve once occurs in our author's work. It is not strange, however, because Kandahār is a comparatively modern place, and is not mentioned by contemporary writers, under that name at least, until very many years after our author's time. Tradition says that Kandahār sfands a few miles east of an ancient city named Waihind; and Masson also refers to it, but calls it Vaihund. Can this be the place the idol-temple of which fell on the night of Mahmūd of Ghannin's birth?

⁸ Other old writers call this place "Ista, which is the name of one of the mountains of the range between Ghaznin and Hirat," and give the vowel points. The Burhān-i-Kāti' also confirms it.

⁹ There is no son of this name among those previously mentioned. Pro-

was given. Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, had the district of Sangah, which was the capital of Mandesh, assigned to him; and the district and castle of Wajīah' were made over to Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn; and the probability is that the territory of Kashā [or Kashā] was fixed upon for Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn.

By heaven's decree, however, contention arose between the Malik-ul-Jibāl [Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad], who was at Fīrūz-koh, and the other brothers; and the Malik-ul-Jibāl became indignant with his brothers, and withdrew to Ghaznin; and it was [at this time] the reign of Bahram Shāh. This Malik-ul-Jibāl was endowed with great beauty and comeliness, and urbanity to perfection. When he reached Ghaznin he opened the hand of munificence and liberality; and affection for him, according to the saying, "Man is the servant of kindliness," began to take root in people's hearts, and became firmly established. The inhabitants of Ghaznin entertained a great liking for him, but a number of envious persons set upon him, and had it represented to Bahrām Shāh that he [the Malik-ul-Jibāl] was, with treacherous eyes, regarding that sovereign's haram [some female or females of his family], and was expending his property liberally, with the object of rising against him [Bahrām Shāh]. The latter issued commands to administer to him, secretly, poisoned sharbat [which was done], and he died; and they, moreover, buried him at Ghaznin. On this account, enmity and hatred arose between the Mahmūdī family 2, and the family of Shansabi, and the race of Zuhāk 3.

When the account of what had befallen Kutb-ud-Din reached def Sultan Surt's hearing, he marched an army to Ghaznin and took that country, as will be hereafter recorded, since, although this was the place for mentioning

bably, Shihāb-ud-Dīn is meant, or, otherwise, Shihāb is a mistake for Nāṣir; but there is a Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Muḥammad, mentioned immediately after Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, at page 343, which see.

l One of the Paris copies has مناف — the Maiden's Castle—but the majority, including the oldest copies, have وهي and some have معرب , which a copyist may have read . دختر one copy has هي.

² Their enmity, according to other authors, appears to have had a different origin. See under 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, page 347.

3 All the copies collated agree with regard to this part of the sentence—"the race of Shansabi and the race of Zuhāk."

4 Four different verbs are used in the different copies of the text in this sentence, although the signification conveyed is much the same.

and recording the proceedings of Sultān Sūrī, still, as Sultān Sūrī was the first person of this family who assumed the name of Sultān, and the first to ascend the throne of Ghaznīn, an account of him will, please God, be given in another chapter, at the beginning of the liistory of the Sultāns of Ghaznīn.

XI. SULŢĀN BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, SON OF 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN'.

When the Malik-ul-Jibāl retired to <u>Ghaznīn</u> [as previously related], and left the buildings of the city of Fīrūz-koh in an unfinished state, Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, came from [the territory of] Sangah to Fīrūz-koh, and went on with the building of the city and fortification, and brought to completion those edifices and the royal palaces. He also commanded the erection of the fortresses of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and contracted alliance and entered into amity with the <u>Shārs of Gharjistān</u> ⁶. He ascended the throne of Fīrūz-koh in the year 544 H. ⁷ When the construction of the capital of Fīrūz-koh was completed through his propitious auspices, he gave directions for the construction of four strong fortresses on the confines of the territory of <u>Gh</u>ūr, Garmsīr, <u>Gh</u>arjistān, and the mountain tract of Hirāt, and the Ķaṣr

⁵ In some copies the names of his children follow immediately after his name and title.

⁶ The Shārs of Gharjistān, who had for many years acknowledged the suzerainty of the Sāmānīs, had submitted to the suzerainty of Sulṭān Maḥmūd as early as 389 ir. The Shār, Abū Naṣr, son of the Shār, Rāshid, and Abā-Naṣr's son, the Shār, Abū Muḥammad, acknowledged the Sulṭān's suzerainty in that year, and read the khuṭbah for him, and impressed his name and titles upon their coin. In 405 H. the Shār, Abū Naṣr, who had become disaffected, was seized and imprisoned by Maḥmūd's command—his father, Rāshid, is said to have solicited protection some time before, and it was granted PUtha' agrees, and says ''he went into retirement'']; and he had presented himself at Court. The Sulṭān purchased from him [the Shār] his possessions in Gharistian, and Am and acure the price in money to him. This was one hundred and forty-six years before the time our author says Bahā ud-Dīn, Sām, became ruler. The Shār, Abū Naṣr, died in prison, at Hirāt, in 406 H., after which the Shārs are not mentioned by other writers.

⁷ Bahā-ud-Dīn died in 544 H., the same year in which he succeeded. His brother, Sūrī, had been put to death, and Bahrām Shāh of Ghaznīn had died the previous year. Our author's mode of arrangement here causes confusion. Bahā ud-Dīn is the third of the dynasty of Ghūr and Ghazuīn, and only succeeded after Sairud-Dīn had been put to death. See also the Kitāb-al-Yamīnī of Al-YUba'.

of Kajūrān in the district of Garmsīr and <u>Gh</u>ūr, the fortress of <u>Sh</u>er-Sang in the mountains of Hirāt, and that of Bindār [or Pindār], in the hills of Ghariistān, and Fīwār, between

Gharjistan and Faras [or Baras].

After the martyrdom of [Saif-ud-Din], Sūri [vet to be mentioned), as Sultan Baha-ud-Din was the eldest of the five brothers [styled Sultans], the sovereignty of the kingdom of Ghur devolved upon him. The Malikah of Kidan. who was also of Shansabani lineage, the daughter of Malik Badr-ud-Din of Kidan, was married to him, and Almighty God blessed him with two sons and three daughters by that Malikah of high descent. The sons were Sultan Ghivasud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām 8, and Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din. Muhammad-i-Sām-the Almighty illumine them !- the amplitude of whose dominions comprehended the eastern quarter of the world, and the fame of whose expeditions against infidels, whose holy wars, the energy and vigour of whose rule, justice, and beneficence will continue imperishable and manifest on the outspread world until the latest revolutions of time. Some of those glorious actions and annals in the account of each of them, by way of ensample, will, please God, be subsequently recorded.

Of the daughters, one was the Malikah-i-Jahān , mother of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangī; the second, the Hurrah-i-Jalālī, mother of Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, son of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, of Bāmīān; and the third daughter was the Malikah-i-Khurāsān, the mother of Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzī', son of Malik Kazil-Arsalān, Saljūķī, the brother's son of Sultān Sanjar.

When the account of the affliction and degradation which had befallen Sultān Sūrī at Ghaznīn, through the hostility and perfidy of the retainers of the Maḥmūdī dynasty, reached the hearing of Sultān Bahā-ud-Dîn, Sām, he came to the determination of wreaking vengeance upon the inhabitants of Ghaznīn, and, without occupying himself

9 Malikah-i-Jibāl in nearly every copy, but the above is correct.

⁸ Sām was not his name, nor the name of his brother; neither does our author mean that such should be supposed; but some translators have supposed it was the son's name instead of the father's.

¹ Other authors style him Alb-i-<u>Gh</u>āzī only. He held the fief of Hirāt subject to the <u>Gh</u>ūri Sulfān upon one of the occasions when Sulfān Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh, invested it. See note ³, page 257.

in mourning ceremonies for his brothers ², he assembled the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and of the parts and tracts around, and on the confines of it, and of the hill-tracts of Jarūm and <u>Gh</u>ar jistān; and, having arranged and ordered them, he turned his face towards <u>Gh</u>aznin in order to accomplish that important matter. After great preparation, and being fully equipped, he moved forward, and a large army marched under his standards. When he reached the district of Kidān, excessive anxiety and grief for the death of his brothers, and the strength of his feelings, brought on an attack of illness, and there [at Kidān] he died ³.

In the same manner as Sultān Sūrī, at the time of his proceeding against and capturing Ghaznīn, had entrusted the capital of the kingdom of Ghūr, and had made over the government of that territory to him, Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, the latter, at this time, when about to march an army himself against Ghaznīn, assigned the capital of Ghūr, and the rule over the territory of the Jibāl [mountain tracts] to Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain-i-Jahān-soz [his brother], and consigned to him his children, dependents, Amīrs, property, and effects.

When Bahā-ud-Dīn died at Kīdān, and that circumstance came to the hearing of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥuṣain, he, likewise, without occupying himself in mourning ceremonies, assembled 'together the forces with all celerity, and set out towards \underline{Ghax} nīn.

XII. MALIK <u>SH</u>IHĀB-UD-DĪN⁵, MUḤAMMAD, [<u>KH</u>ARNAK,] SON OF AL-ḤUSAIN, MALIK OF MĀDĪN OF <u>GH</u>ŪR.

Malik \underline{Sh} ihāb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, \underline{Kh} arnak, was the brother of the Sultans; and the district of Mādīn, which

² His two brothers, Kutb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī.

4 Here again some copies of the text use different verbs to express the

same meaning.

³ He is said to have died of small-pox, but the word used also signifies a tumour, and the like. Raugat-us-Şafā and some others say Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, died of phrensy, or inflammation of the brain, on the way back to Ghūr, after the taking of Ghaznin by 'Alā-ud-Din, and his brother, Saf-ud-Din, Sūrī, who was left there as ruler! See note 's, page 347.

⁵ He is called Nāṣir-ud-Dīn repeatedly in most of the copies of the text, and in some, although the heading is written Shihāb-ud-Dīn, he is styled

was his territory, and is a tract of country on one of the confines of <u>Gh</u>ūr, had been assigned to him by the mutual consent of his brothers, after the decease of their father.

He had two sons, one of whom was Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, whom they placed upon the throne, at the capital, Firūz-koh, during the absence of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, in Khurāsān, and his attendance' at the Court of Sulṭān Sanjar, an account of whom will be hereafter recorded. The second son was Malik Saif-ud-Dîn, Sūrî', who, after his father's death, succeeded him in the possession of the district of Mādîn. This Malik Saif-ud-Dîn, Sūrî, had three children, one a daughter, and two sons, and the daughter was older than the sons. She was married to the holy warrior and martyr, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad-i-Sām; and by her that conquering Sulṭān likewise had a daughter who died a maid's, and whose tomb is at the capital city, Ghaznîn.

Of those two sons of Malik Saif-ud-Dîn, Sūrî, one was Malik Shihāb-ud-Dîn, 'Alî, of Mādīn, who was martyred by the Turks of Khwārazm' during the period of their domination. The second son was Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, Abū-Bikr; and the writer of this book, in the year 618 H., waited upon him in the territory of Kazīw [or Gazīw]' and Timrān, and witnessed numerous marks of urbanity and generosity from him. At that period the author had espoused' a daughter of one of the great men and a kinsman of his own. That was in the period of his first manhood, and in that same year in which Chingiz Khān, the

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn in the account of him. As 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, had no son of this name, and as all the copies agree in the list of the seven sons, as to Shihāb, I have adopted that reading here, which is certainly correct. This Shihāb-ud-Dīn had a son named Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, and hence the mistake may have arisen.

⁶ His captivity in fact, but this our author did not consider necessary to mention. See note ³, page 358.

7 Not to be confounded with 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jahān-soz's son, nor 'Alā-ud-Dīn's brother. There are three of his title in all.

Several copies have "died in her infancy." This can scarcely be correct, as it may be doubted whether the tomb of an infant would have been mentioned.

9 See note 1, page 274.

1 A few copies have گربر [Karfw or Garfw], and others كريو and گربود Was about to espouse? in a few copies; but if he had not espoused this wife he would not probably have required a horse.

accursed, crossed the Jiḥūn into Khurāsān, and was bent upon marching to Ghaznīn. In short, the author memorialized Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, for a horse, and, in verse, represented the matter of his marriage with one of his own kinswomen for that Malik's information. In reply to that versified narrative, he composed this quatrain, and with his own august hand wrote it on the back of the story, and put it into the author's hands:—

"God willing, affliction will have departed from thy heart, And that pearl of great price will have been by thee bored s. The horse thou hast solicited of me requires no apology. With the horse, much more apology might be made 4."

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, sent his humble servant a dun-coloured horse of three years' old, ready saddled and caparisoned—the Almighty reward him for it!

That Malik-zādah, after the calamities which befell Ghaznîn and Ghūr⁶, came to the city of Dihlî, and presented himself at the Court of the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn [I-yal-timish], and was received by him with honour and kindness, and, from the Maliks and other nobles, he received deference and respect.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, died at the city of Dihlī in the year 620 H.

XIII. MALIK <u>SH</u>UJĀ'-UD-DĪN, ABĪ.'ALĪ, SON OF AL-ḤUSAIN, [SON OF SĀM], SON OF AL-ḤASAN, <u>SH</u>ANSABĪ.

Malik Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abī-'Alī, son of Al-Ḥusain, son of Al-Ḥasan, was removed from this world in his early manhood, and his existence terminated whilst he was yet in the flower of his youth. A son survived him, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn,

³ A virgin is styled an "unbored pearl."

⁴ This somewhat obscure line may imply that the donor might have made applopies because the present was not more valuable.

At the hands of the Mughals.

⁶ From the heading the reader would suppose this article to have contained an account of Shujā'-ud-Dîn; but he is finished in two or three lines, and the article contains an account of his son and grandson. Neither of these two brothers, Shihāb-ud-Dîn, nor Shujā'-ud-Dîn, can be considered as belonging to the dynasty any more than the whole of the race, as they never held overeign power. They are not named even, separately, by other writers.

Abū-'Alī; and the brothers [of Shujā'-ud-Dīn, Abī 'Alī'] with one accord, when dividing the dominions of Ghūr, had invested him [Shujā'-ud-Dīn] with the district of Jarmās. When he died, they conferred the district of

Jarmās upon his son, 'Alā-ud-Din, Abū-'Ali.

The Malik-ul-Jibāl, Ķuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who had been martyred at Ghaznīn, had left a daughter, and she was given to 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Abū-'Alī, in marriages'; and, after that noble lady was espoused by him, the Almighty blessed them with a son, who had the good fortune of becoming both a Ḥājī [a pilgrim] and a holy warrior', namely, Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Pearl of Ghūr', and it happened in this wise:—When [his father] Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Abū-'Alī, died, and his son grew up, the Almighty bestowed such grace upon his mother that she decided upon undertaking a journey to the Ķiblah, and up to that period not one of the Maliks of Ghūr had attained that felicity.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Dîn, in attendance upon his mother, was proceeding on the journey to the holy places by way of Hirāt, Khurāsān, and Nīshāpūr. At that time Sultān Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, was at Nīshāpūr, and Malik Ziyā-ud-Dìn, in the habit of a Sayyid, with his hair twisted into two long ringlets, presented himself at the Court of that Sultān, and had the happiness of being permitted to

kiss Sultan Takish's hand.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn [in the company of his mother] had the happiness of performing the orthodox pilgrimage with great reverence, and with the observance of all the rites and ceremonies. He gave directions to build a <u>Khān-kāh</u> [chapel] at Makkah, and provided all the necessary funds for raising the structure, and left trustworthy persons of his own to see it carried out.

He also returned, along with his mother, to the territory

7 Abū, or Abī-'Alī : either is correct.

9 He accompanied his second cousin, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, on his campaign

against Rāe Pathorā of Ajmir. See page 125.

⁸ Our author's mode of narration tends to confuse. This 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Abū-Alī, is the father of Ziyā-ud-Dīn, afterwards styled 'Alā-ud-Dīn. See note ', page 394, and note ', page 394.

¹ These words درّ غور Durr-i-Ghūr, occur again in the list of Maliks at the end of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn's reign, and in some other places.

of <u>Gh</u>ūr; and she acquired the name of the Malikahi-Ḥājī [the Pilgrim Princess], and founded a great number of masjids, pulpits, and colleges in the <u>Gh</u>ūriān country. May they both become acceptable in the sight of Almighty God!

XIV. SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN, SON OF ['IZZ-UD-DĪN,] AL-ḤUSAIN, SON OF SĀM, SON OF AL-ḤASAN2.

When Sultan Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, son of [Izz-ud-Dīn,] Al-Ḥusain, who was marching an army against <u>Gh</u>aznīn,

² Of all the persons mentioned in Oriental history, greater discrepancy occurs with respect to 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jahān-soz's name and proceedings, probably, than recarding any other man.

Some authors call him Hasan, son of Husain; some [but these authors are but two] Husain, son of Hasan; some, Husain, son of Husain, son of Hasan, son of Sām; others copy our author, while others again, and they seem most correct—they certainly are as to his own and his father's name—style him 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of ['Izz-ud-Dīn], Al-Husain, son of Sām, son of Hasan [Sūti's grandson], son of Muḥammad, son of Sūti.

With respect to his rise to power, the different accounts [I quote here from sixteen authors] may be classed under no less than five heads.

The first is, that, after Sulfān Bahrām of Ghaznin had been put in possession of the throne by his maternal uncle, Sulfān Sanjar, distrust arose between them [Sanjar marched to Ghaznin to bring Bahrām to submission in 530 H., according to Faṣiḥ-fl, and, on this, Bahrām began to enter into friendly negotiations with the sons of 'Izz-ud-Din, Al-Husain, and invited one of them to his capital, and expressed a wish to take him into his service, in order to strengthen the bonds of friendship between the two families. Kuṭb-ud-Din, Muḥammad [the Malik-ul-Jibāl of our author], the didæx of the sons, proceeded to Ghaznin, and for some time he was treated with great distinction, but was subsequently guilty [or suspected I] of some crime, and was put to death by Bahrām Shāls orders.

Enmity now arose between Bahrām and the sons of Al-Ḥusain, and they began to attack each other's territory, and several encounters took place between them [Faṣiḥ-î says they fought about Tigh-ābād as early as 521 H., but this may be an error for 541 H.], and our author himself in his account of Sanjar's reign, page 149, says that hostilities arose in that reign "between the Sulţāns of Gharin and the Matiks of Ghūr, and the latter were overcome," and, subsequently, refers to the time when "the territory of Ghūr came under the rule of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain,' and, on the death of Al-Ḥusain, their father [in 545 H., according to Faṣiḥ-l̄, but it must have been five years earlier, at least], hostility, which hitherto had been concealed, was openly shown by 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, and his borbothers, and they rose against Bahrām Shāh, and he set out on an expedition against Ghaznīn, accompanied by Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrf, and Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sūm ['Alā's full brothers]. They were opposed by Bahrām Shāh, who was defeated, and retired into Hind.

Having obtained possession of Ghaznin, 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, left his brother, Suri, as ruler there, and returned to Ghur. [This event is said to

in order to take revenge for [the slaying of his brothers], Sultan Suri and the Malik-ul-Jibāl, died on the way thither,

have occurred in the fifth month of the year 543 H. [October, 1052 A.D.], and by Figsih-i in 542 H. [October, 1051 A.D.], but, as the father only died it i said in 545 H., both cannot be correct.] On the way back his brother, Sām, died of inflammation of the brain [phrensy, according to some, a tumour, or

small-pox, according to others].

In the following winter Bahrām returned from Hind with a numerous army and several elephants, and appeared before Ghaznīn. Sūrī came out with 300 Ghūrīs and 1000 Ghuzz Turks, and endeavoured to reach Ghūr, but the Ghuzz deserted to Bahrām, and Sūrī was taken, paraded on a bullock through the city, and hung along with his Wazī. This occurred in 543 H. according to Faṣiḥ-ā, but in 544 H. according to several other trustworthy authors. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Hussin, again marched to Ghaznīn to avenge Sūrī, again took the city, plundered, and fired it, then abandoned it, and returned to Fīrūz-koh, destroying all the buildings raised by the Maḥrmudī family, on his way back. This is said to have taken place in 547 H., but such cannot have been the case: it must have been towards the end of 544 H., or early in 545 H., at the latest. Alfī says in 547 of the "Riḥlat" [death of Muḥammad, not the Hijrah], which would make it as late as 558 H.

Most of the authors from which the above is taken contend that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, was the first of the family who attained to independent sovereignty, that the dynasty consisted of five sovereigns, and continued for a period of sixty-four years. It terminated in 607 H., so must have commenced in 543 H.

'Alī, Jatrī, and 'Alī-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, were defeated by Sultān Sanjar in Sanj

Fanākatī says, and somewhat astonishing it is, that Ḥusain, brother of Sām, was put to death by Bahrām Shāh's orders, and he Ḥusain] went to Sulṭān Sanjar and solicital aid. Sanjar ara sisted him with an army! and he then fought a battle with Bahrām Shāh, who was defeated and retreated into Hindistān. After this, the same author states—and the Jāmi'-wit-Tawārthe agrees—that Ḥusain [Alā-ud-Dh] left his brother Sām in charge of Ghaznīn, and returned himself to Ghūr. He then agrees with the statements of other writers as to the hanging of 'Alā-ud-Dh's brother, but says it was Sām [Bahā-ud-Dh], not Sūrī, that Bahrām Shāh took and hung after his return from Hindistān. Ḥusain returned, made a general massacre, and devastated the place, and 70,000 persons were slain. On this Sulṭān Sanjar ravolved to proceed against him, and, in a battle, Ḥusain was taken prisoner. For further particulars regarding this see page 357, and notes ² and ² page 358.

The second account is, that Husain [Izz-ud-Din], the father of the seven sons, raised to the rulership of Chūr by Mas'ud-i-Karim, having died in 545 H. Işdo H. 1] was succeeded by the most prominent of his sons, 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, who rebelled against Bahrām Shāh, marched against Ghaznin, took it, during Bahrām's absence, and set his brother, Suri, upon the throne of the Mahmūd's. Soon after Bahrām returned, and hung Sūri. The remainder

of the account agrees pretty well with the first.

The third is, that Bahrām Shāh was dead before 'Alā-ud-Dîn reached Ghanîn the second time, and in this statement a number of the most trustworthy authorities agree, and further that Khusrau Shāh, his son, had succeeded just before 'Alā-ud-Dîn's advance, and, on his approach, Khusrau Shāh

at Kidān, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din ascended the throne of the dominion of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and assembled the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr, of

abandoned <u>Ghaznin</u> and fled to Lähor [Baizawi states that it happened in 550 H.; but this is the only authority for that date, which cannot be correct; and if Sūrī, according to the other statement, was put to death in 544 H.; 'Alā-ud-Dīn would scarcely allow six years to elapse before avenging him]. On 'Alā-ud-Dīn's departure, <u>Khusrau Shān returned to his devastated and ruinad capital</u>, and continued there until the <u>Ghuzz Turks</u>, who had defeated and made captive Sultān Sanjar, <u>Khusrau's maternal great uncle, invaded Khurāsān</u>, and appeared before Hirāt, and from thence advanced towards <u>Ghaznī</u>n.

Sanjar had marched against the Ghuzz in 548 H.—some few authors say in 547 H.—and was taken prisoner in the first month of the former year [March, 1056 A.D.]; they had invested Hirāt in 549 H., and gave up the attempt early in 550, and then appear to have advanced towards Ghaznīn, and this must have been the year in which Khusrau Shāh finality abandoned Ghaznīn, and

not that in which 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, devastated it,

Some writers, who agree generally with this last account, say that Khusrau Shāh had reigned about a year when 'Alā-ud-Dīn arrived in the neighbour-hood of his capital, and that he [Khusrau Shāh] was taken, and confined within the walls of the citadel, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn set up his two nephews, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and Mu'zz-ud-Dīn, at Ghaznīn. Most authors say Khusrau Shāh died in 555 H., but others again state that his death took place in 544 H., and according to our author, who says he succeeded in 552 H., and reigned seven years, it would be in 559 H. See note '6, page 112.

The fourth account is, that, on the death of the father, [Izz-ud-Din, Al-Husain, Saif-ud-Din, Sürf, succeeded him, and that he seized upon Ghaznin, while his other brother, 'Alfa-ud-Din, Husain, seized upon Ghir. This is said to have taken place in 543 H., and it is further said that, after Sürf had been hanged, Bahā-ud-Din, Saim, set out to average him, and died

on the way [in 544 H.].

The fifth account agrees pretty well with our author, and may have been partly copied from his work, although such a fact is not mentioned. It is the effect, that Sūrf took Ghaznīn to avenge the death of his brother, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, put to death by Bahrām Shāh, and that, after Sūrl's death along with his Wazir, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sam, set out to avenge him, and died on the road. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, followed, on which Bahrām Shāh fled, and the city was taken. The date of the first capture of Ghaznīn is said to have been 542 H., or 543 H. [Our author says that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, his brother, set out on his expedition against Ghaznīn, in 544 H.—the first date he gives in the whole Section—and tends to show that Ghaznīn must have been taken in 543 H.]

It is absurd to suppose that Ghaznin was taken by 'Alā-ud-Dīn in 550 H., and still more so to suppose that 547 of the Rihlat could be the possible date; and, although the exact date is not to be found in authors generally, it is quite clear that Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, took it first in the fifth month of 543 H. [middle of October, 1051 A.D.] Bahām returned in the depth of winter [probably in January, 1052 A.D.], and hung him. Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, his brother, succeeded him as ruler of Ghūr in 544 H., and died soon after, in the same year; on white Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, who was not one to allow face or six years to kalpac, at

the capital, Firūz-koh, and of Gharjistān, and determined

to march against Ghaznin.

When Sultan Yamin-ud-Din3, Bahram Shah, became aware of this matter, and of his ['Alā-ud-Dīn's] intention, he caused the troops of Ghaznin and of Hindustan to be got ready and organized, and led them from Rukhai and Tigin-ābād, in the district of Garmsir, towards Zamin-i-Dāwar. As Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, with his forces, had [already] reached Zamin-i-Dāwār, Sultān Bahrām Shāh despatched envoys to him, saying, "Return again to Ghūr, and in thy ancestral possession remain in quietness, for thou wilt not be able to resist my forces, for I bring elephants [along with me]." The envoys having delivered the message with which they were entrusted to Sultan 'Alaud-Din, he replied, saying, "If thou bringest elephants, I will bring the Kharmil: but, God knows, indeed, thou fallest into error, that thou hast put my brothers to death, and I have not slain any person belonging to thee. But hast thou not heard what Almighty God says6?-" Whosoever is

once marched against <u>Ghaznin</u>, and took it towards the close of the same year, 544 H., the same in which Guzdah and a few others say Bahrām died. What tends to prove all this is, that in 545 H. 'Alā-Jud-Din was taken captive by Sulṭān Sanjar, after the former had sacked <u>Ghaznin</u>, and was detained in captivity some two years, during which time another ruler was set up in <u>Ghūr</u>, and 'Alā-ud-Din only obtained his release just before Sulṭān Sanjar set out on his unfortunate expedition against the <u>Ghuz</u>, which was in 547 H., for Sanjar was defeated by them and taken prisoner, on the first day of the first month, Muḥarram, 548 H. [20th March, 1056 A.D.]. See also page 358, and notes ² and ³.

Alā.ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, made no attempt to retain possession of Ghaznīn, and he abandoned it, and retired into Ghūr, but destroyed every building pertaining to the Maḥmūdī sovereigns, on his way back. The reason why he abandoned it must have been his fear of Sulṭān Sanjar, or of Bahrām's or Khusrau's return, as the case may be, and of meeting a fate similar to his brother Sūrī's.

In three copies of the text at this place he is called Yamin-ud-Daulah. In his account of Bahrām Shāh's reign our author styles him Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, and says Khusrau Shāh's title was Mu'ayyan-ud-Din. See pages 109 and 111, and note 5.

4 A small tract of country in the district of Bust.

⁸ The word المنظم an elephant, is used in most copies of the text, but to make sense of the passage I have been obliged to make it a plural. The context shows there must have been more than one elephant. Some other authors have مرحل which certainly agrees better with مرحل and might be translated the chief, head, or leader of the elephants, alluding to some famous warelephant he may have had.

6 On the Kur'an's authority only. It is rather strange that in his account

slain unjustly, we have given his heir, or next of kin, power [to avenge him]; but let him not exceed bounds in putting the slayer to death, because he likewise will be assisted and avenged?"

When the envoys returned, both armies were marshalled in ranks and made ready for the conflict. Sultan 'Alaud-Din called unto him two Pahlawans [champions] of his own, who were the leaders of the army, and famous warriors of the kingdom of Ghur, and both of them were named Kharmil. One was Kharmil-i-Sam, Husain, father of Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain-i-Kharmīl; and the other Kharmil-i-Sam, Banji; and both of them were famed in their day for their valour and prowess. He said unto them:-"Bahrām Shāh has sent a message, saying, 'I bring elephants [against thee];' and I have sent a reply, 'If thou bringest elephants, I bring the Kharmil.' This day it behoveth that each one of you champions should overthrow and bring an elephant to the ground." They both kissed the ground and retired [to their posts]; and, at a place which they call Kotah-baz*, the two armies came to an encounter. When the battle commenced, both these champions dismounted, fastened up the skirts of their coats of mail, and entered the fight. When the elephants of Bahrām Shāh made a charge¹, each of those champions attacked an elephant, and got beneath the armour of the animals, and, with their poniards, ripped open the bellies of the elephants. Kharmil-i-Sam, Banji, remained under his elephant, and it fell upon him, and he and the elephant perished together. Kharmil-i-Sam, Husain, brought his

of Bahrām Shāh's reign, pages 109—111, our author does not even mention Sūri's name, although he refers to 'Alā-ud-Din, Ḥusain, the brother, and the capture of Ghaznīn.'

⁷ Ku'rān: S. 17, 35.

⁸ One copy has Künahlor Günahl-wäz, and two copies have Kotah-bäz-bäb. This last appears incorrect, and bäb seems merely bäz repeated in error by the copyist. Katah-wäz cannot be meant, although me and o are interchangeable: Katah-wäz is much too far to the east. One copy has Goshah-i-näb. A place of this name, or Sih Goshah-i-näb, has been mentioned at page 149, but this again is too far to the west. See also page 358.

The word used signifies to fasten up or back. "Throwing off their coats of mail" would scarcely have been likely at a time like this, and the text contains the word "skirs" moreover. See Elliot, NDIA, vol. it, page 287.

¹ Both the British Museum copies have, "when the clephants of Bahrām Shāh charged the clephants, each of the champions," &c.

elephant to the ground, and got away in safety, and

mounted [his horse] again.

When the battle was duly ordered, Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, after he had arrayed himself in all his panoply, commanded that a surcoat of crimson-coloured satin should be brought to him, and he put it on over all his armour. His kinsfolk and his intimates inquired:-"What device is this of the king's, that he covers his armour with a crimson surcoat?" He answered:- "For this reason, that, in case my body should be wounded by arrow, lance, or sword, the redness of my blood, by means of the crimson surcoat, will not show upon my armour, so that the hearts of my followers may not become dejected." The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

The troops of Ghūr have a method, in the practise of fighting on foot, of making a certain article of one fold of raw bullock-hide, over both sides of which they lay cotton, and over all draw figured coarse cotton cloth2, after the form of a screen [or breast-work], and the name of that article of defence is kārwah. When the foot-soldiers of Ghūr place this [screen] upon their shoulders, they are completely covered from head to foot by it; and, when they close their ranks, they appear like unto a wall, and no missile or arms can take any effect on it, on account of the

quantity of cotton with which it is stuffed3.

² Called karbās.

When the engagement was fairly begun, Daulat Shah, son of Bahrām Shāh, with a body of cavalry and an

3 Our author has described this instrument of defence tolerably well, but not exactly. The word karwah is contained in Pus'hto, and this means of protection was used by some of the Afghans in former times, before fire-arms came into use. The karwah was made from a raw bullock, cow, or buffalo hide stuffed with straw or hay [cotton would be too expensive], and rolled along before troops on foot, when advancing, to defend them from the arrows of their opponents. In the battles between the Yusufzi and Dilazāk tribes

of Afghans, in the fifteenth century, of which before long I hope to be able to give an account, the Utman Khel, one of the lesser and of the many still independent Afghan tribes [who never paid allegiance to Durrants or Bārakzīs] who accompanied the Yūsufzīs when the latter first appeared east of the Khaibar Pass, on one occasion formed the advance of the allied forces. and used these stuffed hides above described. They are said to have been very expert in their construction; but I do not think this mode of fighting will be sufficient to prove that the Ghuris were "Patans." or Patans Ghuris. Compare Elliot, India, vol. ii. pages 287-8. See my Afghan Dictionary, second edition, p. 1151. London: 1867.

elephant*, made a charge. Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din directed that the foot-soldiers should open their rank of kārwahs, in order to allow Daulat Shāh to enter with his whole division. They opened their ranks accordingly. When Daulat Shāh, with his body of horse and the elephant, entered, the infantry closed the breach in their ranks again, and completely surrounded that Prince on all sides; and he, with the whole of that body of horse, were martyred, and the elephant was brought to the ground, and also killed.

When the troops of Bahram Shah witnessed that disaster and slaughter, they fell into disorder and gave way. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din followed in pursuit, from stage to stage, as far as a place which they call Josh-i-Ab-i-Garm [the jet of hotwater], near to Tigin-ābād, where Sultān Bahrām Shāh faced about, and a second time prepared to renew the engagement; and the whole of the forces then assembled under him again gave battle, but were defeated and put to the rout, and only stopped at the gate of Ghaznin. Sultan 'Alā-ud-Din followed in fierce pursuit, so that Bahrām Shāh, for the third time, assembled the troops of Ghaznin, the men of the city, and a large levy of footmen, and gave battle for the third time; but he was unable to overcome [the enemy], and was again defeated. 'Alā-ud-Din took the city of Ghaznin by storm, and, during seven nights and days, fired the place, and burnt it with obstinacy and wantonness.

The chronicler states that, during these seven days, the air, from the blackness of the smoke, continued as black as night; and those nights, from the flames raging in the burning city, were lighted up as light as day. During these seven days, likewise, rapine, plunder, and massacre were carried on with the utmost pertinacity and vindictiveness. All the men that were found were killed, and the women and children were made captive. 'Alā-ud-Din

⁴ One elephant only is mentioned, and it is not stated that Daulat Shāh was mounted on it. It appears to have been intended to break the rank of kārwas with it.

⁵ Our author himself says that Saif-ud-Din, Sūrf, was the first of the brothers who came into contact with Bahrām Shāh, and 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, the last; but he has so arranged his work that his account of Sūrf comes Joar. The reader will perhaps find it less perplexing if he should read the account of Sūrf, at Section XIX., first, then that of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, at page 341, and this notice of 'Alā-ud-Din last.

commanded that the whole of the [remains of the] Mahmūdi Sultāns should be exhumed from their graves and burnt, except those of Sultan Mahmud, the Ghazi, Sultan Mas'ud, and Sultan Ibrahim ; and, during the whole of these seven days, 'Ala-ud-Din gave himself up to wine and carousal within the palaces of the Sultans of Ghaznin. During this time he gave directions so that the tomb of Sultan Saif-ud-Din, Sūri, and the mausoleum of the Malikul-Iibāl [Kutb-ud-Din, Muhammad], were sought out, and coffins prepared; and caused preparations to be made for putting his whole army into mourning?. When the eighth night came round, and the city had become entirely desolated and consumed, and its inhabitants massacred, Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, on that night, improvised several strophes eulogistic of himself, and gave them to the minstrels, with directions to sing them accompanied by their changs and chighanahs before him: and the lines. which are appropriate, are as follows:-

"The world knoweth that I of the universe am king 1. The lamp of the family of the 'Abbasis am I. 'Alā-ud-Dīh, Husain, son of Husain, am I, Whose house's sovereignty be ever enduring ! When on the bright bay steed of my dominion I sit, One, to me, will be both the heavens and the earth. Death sports around the point of my spear : Hope follows [as goad] the dust of my troops 2. I should roam the world through, like unto Sikandar: I should in every city another sovereign place. I was determined on this, that of the vagabonds of Ghaznin I would set a river of blood running like unto the Nil. But they are maudlin old dotards and infants. And my blooming fortune maketh intercession for them. For their own sakes I have granted them their lives, That the granting of their lives may of mine be the bond3."

Other writers state that the bones of the whole of the Mahmüdi sovereigns were exhumed and burnt, with the sole exception of those of Sultan Mahmüd.

⁸ He was gifted with a poetical genius.

Several other works which give this poem leave out these two lines.
As far as can be judged from all the exaggeration contained in these

The greater number of copies of the original leave out the words by—mourning—entirely; whilst the Bodleian MS., the R. A. S. MS., and one of the Paris copies have be—food! The other Paris copy has ab-fighting, making war, &c.!!

⁹ The first is a kind of guitar, or harp, and the latter a kind of violin.
¹ 'Alā-ud-Din had evidently an exalted opinion of himself, or had imbibed more strong drink than was good for him.

He then commanded, saying, "I have spared the remainder of the people of Ghaznin," and he arose from the assembly, and went to the hot-bath; and, on the eighth day of these proceedings, he got up at day-dawn, and, accompanied by the whole of the troops of Ghūr, and the Maliks [chiefs], came to the mausoleum of his brothers. He then donned mourning garments, together with his whole army, and, for [another] seven nights and days, he remained at the mausoleum observing funeral ceremonies.

During this period the whole Kur³ān was read through several times, and alms were there distributed; and the coffins of his brothers were placed on biers⁴, and he ['Alā-ud-Din] marched from <u>Ghaznīn</u> towards the districts of Dāwar and Bust. On reaching the city of Bust, he entirely destroyed the palaces and other edifices⁶ of the Maḥmūdī dynasty, the like of which were not to be found in the regions of the world⁶; and the whole territory, which appertained to the Maḥmūdī sovereigns, he directed should be ravaged and desolated⁷.

He returned to <u>Gh</u>ūr, and, by his command, the corpses of his brothers were deposited by the side of their ancestors. He had ordered that several Sayyids of <u>Gh</u>aznīn should be seized, according to the law of retaliation, in the place of Sayyid Majd-ud-Dîn, Mūsawī, who was Sultān Sūrī's Wazīr, and who, along with Sultān Sūrī, they had hung up from one of the arches of the bridge?] of <u>Gh</u>aznīn,

boastful effusions of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, he seems to have imagined that his own life might be lengthened in proportion to the lives he spared, after he had caused almost the whole of the inhabitants of Ghaznīn to be massacred!

4 The word ... has other meanings besides "cradle." Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. p. 289.

5 Such as mosques, colleges, fortifications, &c.

6 Some ruins of those edifices still remain. An intelligent man, a native of Kandahär, and an Afghän, says these ruins are of immense size and height, particularly one arch, which was standing some few years since, said to have been one of the great mosque. There was also a stone bridge across the river Hirmand, near this arch, called the Pul-i-Ashikān—the Lovers' Bridge remains of which may still be seen.

7 The whole of the district of Zamin-i-Dāwar, I presume. The territory of the Mahmūdi sovereigns, even at that time, was of great extent, and Ghūr formed only a very small portion of it.

8 The word used by our author signifies tombs, sepulchres, and the like, which, of course, would scarcely be interred. The coffins and their contents were interred.

9 The word used here is Tak, signifying an arch, among other meanings,

and they were brought before the Sultān. Bags were filled with the earth¹ of Ghaznīn, and placed upon their backs, and [they were] brought along with him to Fīrūz-koh, the capital; and, on reaching that city, the Sayyids were put to death, and their blood was mixed with the earth which had been brought from Ghaznīn, and from it several towers² were erected on the hills of Fīrūz-koh, which towers, moreover, were still remaining up to this present time. The Almighty pardon him!

After he had wreaked such vengeance as this, and returned to the capital again, 'Alā-ud-Dîn desired to devote himself to pleasure and revelry; and he gathered around him minstrels and boon companions, betook himself to conviviality and carousal, and improvised lines which he directed the minstrels to sing, and accompany on their harps and violins.' These are the lines:—

"I am [he] in whose justice the world hath exultation;
And I am [he] through whose munificence the treasury sustaineth injustice.
The finger of his hand, to his teeth, the enemy placeth',
When, to the string of the bow, I the thimble apply .

and it is also a proper name; but no word signifying a bridge is used in any copy of the text collated, but some other writers say it was the Tak Bridge—the bridge leading to Tak, in Zabulistan, probably. Another writer, however, says, Sūrī and his Wazīr were hung at the head of "the Bridge of Two Arches"— "", and this is probably correct. In his account of Sūrī, farther on, our author says it was the Bridge of One Arch. See the first of the Ghaznīn dynasty, Section XIX.

1 Khāk signifies earth, not "dirt." The context shows what this earth was intended for, but dirt would scarcely have answered for making mortar.

2 Another author states that it was the remainder of the people of Ghamin—not Sayyids only—that 'Alā-ud-Din removed, and that they were laden with sacks of earth from that city, and on their arrival at Firūz-koh they were slaughtered, and a building was raised from the earth which was mixed with their blood. The word used by our author signifies a tower, bastion, &c. The probability is that they were small towers, such as are raised for landmarks, and that the earth brought from Ghaznin, mixed with the blood of the Sayyids, and amalgamated with the mortar, was used for these buildings.

³ Here again the idiom of the different copies of the original varies so much that it would lead one to imagine that the work of our author must, originally, have been written in a different language. One set of copies has مطرفان را فيمود تا در جاف و جاف اندوند و بطائعة بوذند و باخارت من المعالى من المعالى من مرافق من المعالى على المعالى من المعالى ا

4 In token of astonishment,

A sort of thimble used by archers to protect the left thumb from the bowestring.

When my bay steed leap'd a square within the ranks, The adversary no longer knew ball from square. When, out of hatred towards me, Bahrām £hāh' bent the bow, I pluck'd, with my lance, the quiver from his waist. The support of my foe, although they were all Rācs [and] Rānahs, I reduced, with my mace, to atoms, both Rāc's and Rānah's head. To draw forth vengeance by the sword, I have indeed taught The sovereigns of the time, and the kings of the age. Ah, ravishing Minstrel! since I am released from war, Sing that strain indeed, and that melody enkindle. When fortune hath been grasp'd, it is not right to renounce The singers' melody, nor the fire-worshippers' pure wine."

Trustworthy persons have related after this wise, that, when Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn ascended the throne of Fîrūz-koh, he ordered his nephews, Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn, Muḥammadi-Sām, and Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad Sām, sons of Sultān Bahā-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad Sām, to be imprisoned, and they were confined in the fortress of Wajîristān¹, and an allowance was fixed for their support.

He ['Alā-ud-Dīn] also began to show a contumacious spirit towards Sultān Sanjar, and manifested open hostility

6 These two lines evidently refer to the game of Chaugān, from which the lately introduced game of Pola is derived. The text of these lines varies considerably in different copies of the original, but I have rendered the translation as close as possible; still the meaning is not clear. Probably horse and rider bore everything before them, and spread terror among the foe, and struck Bahrām Shāh with amazement.

7 From this line, if correctly quoted, it was Bahram Shah who encountered 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain : but other authors, as already noticed in note 2, page 347. distinctly state that he was dead before the second expedition against Ghaznin; but whether Bahram or Khusrau Shah-the measure would not be lost if "Khusrau" were substituted for Bahrām-it would appear that Rājpūt and other Hindu princes and chiefs were in the Ghaznawid army on this occasion. See account of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, the second of the Ghaznin dynasty. In his account of Bahram Shah's reign, pages 109 to 111, our author says that he returned to Ghaznin after 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, withdrew, and died there. Those authors who contend that Bahram Shah had died a short time before 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, appeared before Ghaznin, state that it was his son, Khusrau Shah, who left it on his approach, and who returned to it after the departure of the Ghurians, and finally relinquished it on the advance of the Ghuzz Turks, in 548 or 549 H., after the defeat of Sultan Sanjar, and his falling a captive into their hands in that year, two years only before the death of 'Ala-ud-Din.

8 The word غوره is used in all but one copy of the text, which has signifying "a ball," and may even be the most applicable meaning after all.

9 Sām [Bahā-ud-Din] was the name of the father only.

¹ The fortress of N\u00e3e probably, which stronghold was used as a state prison by the Ghaznawid Sult\u00e3ns.

towards him². What the Sultāns of <u>Gh</u>ūr had stipulated for, and which used to reach the Sanjarî Court every year, such as arms and armour, rarities, and offerings, 'Alā-ud-Dîn withheld; and matters reached such a pass, that Sultān Sanjar assembled a numerousarmy, and determined to march into the territory of <u>Gh</u>ūr.

Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn collected the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr, and advanced to meet the Sulṭān as far as the limits of the town of Nāb, between Fīrūz-koh and Hirāt, in the valley of the Hariw-ar-Rūd. There is water there, and a delightful and extensive plain³, which they call Sih-goshah-i-Nāb;

² This seems to confirm the statement of Faṣiḥ-f [note 4, page 336], that Husain ['Izz-ud-Din], son of Sām, 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain's father, had also been made captive by Sulṭān Sanjar, some years before, and made tributary. Under the reign of Sanjar also, our author states, page 149, "The Maliks of Ghūr and Sutṭāns Ganjar. It is probable that, as Sulṭān Sanjar. It is probable that, as Sulṭān Sanjar had dethroned Sulṭān Arsalān, and had set up Bahrām Shāh on the throne of Ghaznin, he [Sanjar] received, as lord-paramount over Ghaznin also, the tribute formerly paid by the chiefs of Ghūr to the Sulṭāns of the Maḥmūdī dynasty. When Bahrām executed Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, 'Alā-ud-Dīn's brother, he sent his head to his uncle, Sulṭān Sanjar. See also Fanikatīf's statement, para. 10 to note ², page 348.

3 Two copies have, "There there is a delightful river and an extensive plain;" but of course the Hariw or Hari-rud, as the river of Hirat is named.

was there, and the extra river appears redundant.

Faşih,î states that the battle took place before Aobah, near Hirāt [Aobah is Pug'hto for "water"], and in this Jahān-Ārā agrees, but the Tārikh-i-Ibrāhīmī savs it took place at Marān-zād, but both places are in the Hirāt district, and

not far from each other.

In the year 5,44 H. [Faşiþ-î says as early as 5,42 H.], 'Alī, Jatrī, [called Chatrî by our author] who held the fief of Hirāt, during Sulţān Sanjar's absence, had become disaffected towards the Sulţān, in what way is not mentioned, for but little is said about him in history. [See note § page 237.] He concerted with 'Alā.-da-Dīn, Ḥusain, 'Mallie of Ģlūr,'' in this hostility, and Sanjar marched against them. They were defeated and overthrown in 545 H.—some say in 5,44 H., and Faşiḥ-î 5,47 H.—and 'Alī, Jatrī,' 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Ģlūrī, and the Malik-zādah, Ṣhams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [son of Faghrud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, of Jāmān, elder brother of 'Alā-ud-Dīn], were taken prisoners, the last by the hand of the Sipah-sālār, Baraukṣah. Orders were given to put 'Alī, Jatrī, to death at once, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn was thrown into prison; but Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, having obtained 5,0,00 dinārs from Bāmīān, the sum demanded for his rausom, that sum was paid to Baraukṣaḥ, and he was set free. After some time, Sulṭān Sanjar took compassion on 'Alā-ud-Dīn, set him at liberty, and made him one of his boon companions.

Fanakatī here relates the story respecting ["Alā-ud-Dhn] Ḥusain, which Faṣiḥ-i, and some others relate of his father, Ḥusain, already recorded in note ', page 336; but, although Faṣiḥ-i relates matters entirely different here respecting 'Alā-ud-Dhn, Ḥusain, and gives such circumstantial details, I still cannot but consider Rasḥid-ud-Dhn's account correct notwithstanding, who,

and at that place an engagement took place between the two armies. Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, a day before the battle was fought, had directed so that the ground in rear of the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr had been entirely laid under water; and he had caused it to be proclaimed that the ground in the rear had become quite flooded, and that whoever should attempt to fly to the rear would get into the mud, and stick there.

When the battle was arranged, and the two armies came in contact, a body of about $6000 \ \underline{Gh}$ uzz, Turk, and \underline{Kh} alj horse, which was stationed on the right of the army of \underline{Gh} ūr, deserted, and went over to Sultān Sanjar, and submitted to him, and the troops of \underline{Gh} ūr were defeated and overthrown. The whole of the Amīrs and warriors, and

however, styles both of them Ḥusain, without giving their titles. The anecdote is much the same in both authors.

Faṣiḥ-ī says, "When Ḥusain [Tzzud-Dīn, Ḥusain, of our author], son of Sām, was taken prisoner, the Ṣulṭān commanded that he should be put to death, but, at the interession of Shakik Aḥmad [the Imām-i-Rabbānī of Raṣhid-ud-Dīn], Ghazzālī, he was spared, and set at liberty. This was in the year 545 H. For two years he used to light the fires of the cooks of the Sulṭān's army [our author would scorn to relate this, as it did not tend to the glorification of his patrons], until one day, the Amīr [commander] of the troops of Khurišān, 'Imād-ud-Daulah, Ķīmāj, chanced to meet with him." Fanākatī says, for two years [Alā-ud-Dīn] Ḥusain wandered about the bāzārs of Sanjār's camp [or capital] as a mendicant, when one day as Ķīmāj was passing the shop of a cook he noticed Ḥusain, who was attending the fire and watching the cook's pot.

Kimāj took compassion on Ḥusain and made known his case to the Sulţān, who directed that he should be brought to his presence. When admitted, he kissed the ground before the Sulţān, who said to him:—"I understand thou hast neither wealth nor effects left unto thee. Hast thou no sense of cleanliness left thee either?" [Rasphid-ud-Din says, "Hast thou no the means and power of keeping one head and face clean?"] Husain replied:—"In the days when this head was mine own head I had the good fortune to be attended by a thousand servants, but, now that it belongs to thee, thou keepest it thus wretched and abject." The Sulţān was touched; he pardoned him, treated him with honour, and sent him back to his native country attended by a large retinue; and to the end of his days Ḥusain paid obedience to that record?

'Alā-ud-Dîn, Husain, was restored to the sovereignty of Ghūr in 547 H., just before Sultān Sanjar moved against the Ghuzz. He was defeated and made captive in the first month of 548 H., and, when released in 551 H., no power was left to him. 'Alā-ud-Dîn died a month before Sanjar's release. Several authors mention Sanjar's having bestowed a casket of gems, one night at a convivial meeting, upon 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, but treasure, flocks, and herds are not referred to. See page 238, and note 5.

distinguished men of the <u>Gh</u>ūriān army, got entangled in that swampy ground and morass. Some of them obtained martyrdom, and some were made captive, and Sultān 'Alā-

ud-Din himself was taken prisoner.

Sultān Sanjar commanded that he should be put in confinement, and they brought gyves of iron to place on his legs. He urged that it was requisite they should make a representation [from him] to the Sultān, saying:—"Do unto me as I intended to have done unto thee, for I obtained gyves of gold, in order that, thereby, reverence for thy sovereignty might be so much the more preserved." When this request was made known, those identical gyves were called for, and, when they were obtained, those very same gyves were placed upon 'Alā-ud-Dīn's legs, and they mounted him upon a camel, and Sultān Sanjar returned [to his own territory].

As the report of 'Ālā-ud-Dîn's wittiness of temperament, and quickness of intellect, was much talked about at that period, and had become famous, and Sultān Sanjar had heard a great deal about it, either the next day, or a few days after, he sent for him, treated him with honour, and set him at liberty [from his gyves]. A salver of precious gems had been placed near the masnad of the imperial throne, and that was bestowed upon 'Alā-ud-Dīn, who arese and made his obeisance, and spoke these lines, befitting the circumstance. The following is the quatrain:—

"In the rank of battle the Shāh took me, but did not kill, Notwithstanding, of a verity, I was full worthy of being slain. A casket of precious gems he bestow'd upon me: In such wise his mercy [was], and his bounty such 4."

Sultān Sanjar made him one of his associates and boon companions, and there was no pleasure-party without the presence of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, until one day, during a banquet, the sight of 'Alā-ud-Dīn fell upon the sole of Sultān Sanjar's foot, who, seated on his throne, had extended one of his legs, upon the sole of the foot of which there was a large mole. He arose, kissed the mole, and improvised the following lines:—

⁴ Some other authors quote these lines differently, particularly the two last.

"Verily the dust at the gate of thy palace is [my] diadem s, And [this], the collar of thy service, is my adornment. In the same manner as I kiss the mole on the sole of thy foot, Even so good fortune [likewise] salutes my head."

This anecdote has been already related in the account of Sultan Sanjar's reign. The latter gave him back again the throne of Ghūr6, and he commanded that stores, treasure, all his herds of horses and camels and cattle, and flocks of sheep, his own personal property, should be made over to 'Alā-ud-Din; and Sultān Sanjar said:-"'Alāud-Din, thou art in the condition of a brother to me. Return, and take all these things-cattle and treasurealong with thee, and remove them to the country of Ghur. If the divine decree should in such wise will, that this host of Ghuzz should be overcome, and we should obtain the victory, when these things shall be demanded of thee, send them back to me; but otherwise, if it should turn out that my dominion shall have come to an end, and the thread of the empire's regularity shall have been severed, it is far better that these things should remain with thee than that they should fall into the hands of the Ghuzz7."

During this period of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din's absence' from the capital of the kingdom of Ghūr, a number of the Amīrs, Maliks, and the great men and judges of the Jibāl [mountain tracts] and of the territory of Ghūr, had agreed together to bring Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Ḥusain', son of Muḥammad, of Mādin, who was the brother's son of 'Alā-ud-Din, and place him upon the throne of Fīrūz-koh. A' body of disobedient persons of the territory of Kaṣḥi', who excel all the rest of the people of Ghūr in arrogance and obstinacy, had committed great violence, and by their turbulence and clamour, under pretence of grants, gifts,

⁵ The first line here is slightly different in some few copies, and varies a little from what was given at page 150, and reads, "Verily the dust of the steed's hoof is my diadem," but the rest agrees with the former version. Other authors quote the line as given in the text above.

⁶ The Tarikh-i-Ibrahimi says "both Ghur and Ghaznin."

⁷ Another author says that Sultan Sanjar bestowed a standard and kettle drums upon 'Alā-ud-Dīn, and restored him to the rulership of Ghūr.

⁸ Captivity did not sound well in Minhāj-i-Sarāj's ears apparently.

⁹ Some have Hasan.

¹ This word is written "Kasi" in several copies.

alms, and robes of distinction, had appropriated the royal

treasure and property.

When Sultan 'Alā-ud-Dîn came towards Ghūr from Khurāsān with all that treasure, cattle, and wealth [conferred upon him by Sultān Sanjar], he first proceeded in the direction of the territory of Kashi, destroyed the whole of their Kūshks [fortified villages], which exceeded a thousand Kasrs in number, and every one of which, in strength and height, was such, that the decision of conjecture and conception could not admit a plan of it.

After having taken vengeance upon the rebels of the Kashi territory and other mountain tracts, he ['Alā-ud-Dīn] returned to the capital Fīrūz-koh, and, before his reaching it, they had killed Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-i-Muḥammad, as will, subsequently, be recorded. When Sultān'Alā-ud-Dīn arrived at Fīrūz-koh, and [again] seated himself on the throne of his ancestors, he turned his attention to the making of fresh conquests. He brought under his sway the districts of Bāmīan and Tukhāristān', and seized the districts of Dāwar, Jarūm, and Bust also; and, of Khurāsān, took the fortress of Tūlak, which is situated in the mountains in the vicinity of Hirāt, after a period of six years'.

There was a poet within the fortress of Tūlak, whom they called by the name of 'Umr-i-Sarāj; and, when hostilities were about to come to an end, and the fortress of Tūlak was about to be gained possession of by terms of accommodation, he composed some verses, two lines of which, which were deserving [of insertion], are here brought in:—

"Seated on horseback, galloping up-hill and down, Thy object is Tūlak: lo! there is Tūlak."

In their language, galloping up-hill and down-dale is called "Wurlak-Fülak'" "The mercy of God be upon them!"

2 See the Tukhāristān dynasty farther on.

³ According to this statement, 'Alā-ud-Dīn must have been investing this

place during the whole of his reign, for he only ruled six years.

⁴ These words vary in most of the copies of the text, but the best copies have as above written. Some have "Urlak-Fulak," "Warlak-Tulak," and "Wurkal-Tukal." The words are unintelligible, and are certainly not Pus hto.

From that place 'Alā-ud-Dīn turned his face to the conquest of Gharjistān; and took to wife the lady Ḥūr Malikah, who was the daughter of the Shār, Shāh [by name], son of Ibrāhīm, Shār, son of Ardshīr, one of the Maliks of Gharjistān'; and the valley of the Murghāb river and [its] fortresses came into his possession. The fortress of Sabekjī' [or Sabegjī], however, held out, and carried on hostilities [against him] for six years'; and of this time, for a period of three years, he sat down continually before it, until it was given up to him.

Towards the end of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din's life, Mulā-hidah emissaries came to him from Alamūt's, and he treated them with great reverence; and in every place in Ghūr they sought, secretly, to make proselytes. The Mulāḥidah [heretic] of Alamūt had set his ambition on subjecting the people of Ghūr [to his heresy], and making them submissive. This fact became defilement which adhered to the train of the 'Alā-i robe of sovereignty. Of his life, however, but a short period remained, and he died, and they buried him by the side of his ancestors and his brethren? The Almighty forgive him!

⁵ See note 6, page 341.

o The name of this place is doubtful. The majority of copies have as written above ما المنافع but other copies have منافع سيخي سيخ المنافع ال

⁷ See note 3, preceding page.

^{**} Alamüt, from Jl and Level — the eagle's [not vulture's] nest—the name of the stronghold of Hasan-i-Şabbāh, the Shaykh-ul-jibāl, or the Old Man of the Mountain, or Chief of the Assassins, as the chief of this sect used to be called. The person here referred to, however, is MUHAMMAD, son of BUZURG-UMĪD, the third of the Alamütfahs, who died in 557 H. In Elliot, India, vol. ii. pages 289-90, he is turned into "the Muláhi-datulmaut"! See page 365, and note 3.

^{&#}x27;Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, died at Ḥirāt in 551 H., the same year in which Sulfan Sanjar escaped from the Ghuz, and Itsiz, Khwāram Shāh, died, according to Faṣli-İ, Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh, Ḥabil-us-Siyar, Haft-Iklim, Mir'āt-i-Jahān Numā, and several others, but, according to Jahān Ārā and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, in 556 H., but this is incorrect. Jamābī says in 566 H. 1 Our author, although brought up in the residence of his niece, and the glorifier of all things Ghūriān, appears neither to have known the year of 'Alā-ud-Dīn's death nor the extent of his reign. He reigned six years.

⁹ How many sons he had our author did not appear to consider necessary

XV. MALIK NĀŞIR-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN, SON OF MUḤAMMAD, MĀDĪNĪ.

When Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, was made captive in the engagement with Sultān Sanjar, the [affairs of the] territories of Ghūr and the Jibāl [mountain tracts] became weak and disordered. The refractory and disobedient of Ghūr began to show contumacy, and each tribe fortified itself in the hills and defiles in which it dwelt, and commenced carrying on strife and hostility one against the other.

A party of the great Amirs who still remained [for a great number had been slain or made captive in the battle against Sulţān Sanjar] brought Maliv Nāṣir-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Muḥammad, Mādini, from Mādin, and placed him on the throne of Firūz-koh¹. The treasures of Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Din, and the treasures of his son, Sulţān Saif-ud-Din, he took into his own possession; and the whole of the precious things, treasures, and valuable property, and other effects stored up, he expended upon those Amirs, and great men, and on mean persons, and seized upon the dominions of Ghūr. His strength lay in the support of the rebels of the Kashi country.

This Malik, Nāṣir-ud-Din, had a great passion for women and virgins, and he had taken a number of the handmaids and slave girls of the haram of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din under his own control, and used to have recourse to them. When Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din, having been dismissed with great honour and respect from the presence of Sulṭān Sanjar, set out towards the dominions of Ghur, and reached the hill country of Hirāt, and the news of the advent of his exalted banners was brought to Firūz-koh, terror, and fright, and the fear of retribution, threw all hearts into dread.

A party, who were loyally devoted to the 'Alā-ī dynasty, secretly instigated and incited those slave girls of 'Alā-ud-Dīn's haram, who had been taken into Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn's haram, so that they sought an opportunity; and, at

to state here; but we shall find that he had two at least, both of whom succeeded to the sovereignty.

¹ He is not mentioned as a ruler by other authors, who pass at once from 'Alā-ud-Din, Ḥusain, to his son; but there is no doubt about Nāṣir-ud-Din, Ḥusain, having seized the sovereignty and held it during the former's captivity.

a time when Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din was lying asleep on his couch, they placed the pillow of the couch over his face, and, with all their force, held down the four corners of the pillow until they suffocated him, and he died.

XVI. SULŢĀN 2 SAIF-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN.

When Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn departed from this world, his son, Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, with the concurrence of the whole of the Maliks, Amīrs, and chief men of Ghūr, ascended the throne of Fīrūz-koh.

He was a youthful and good-looking sovereign, and was beneficent in disposition, just, the cherisher of his subjects, and patronizer of his servants, bountiful, munificent, openhearted, and liberal, humble, conciliating, pious, orthodox, and steadfast in the faith of Islām. When he ascended the throne, he, at the outset, repudiated acts of tyranny and injustice; and for all the injustice, oppression, and violence which his father had committed, he commanded that restitution should be made; and he carried out his purpose according to the institutes of justice, and the ways of rectifude.

Those emissaries who had come from the Mulāḥidah [heretic] of Alamūt [towards the close of his father's reign], and who, secretly, had exhorted every person to the vanities of heresy and schism, he directed should be brought to task, and the whole of them, by his orders, were put to the sword. In every place wherein the odour of their impure usages was perceived, throughout the territory of Ghūr, slaughter of all heretics was commanded. The whole of them were sent to Hell, and the area of the country of Ghūr, which was a mine of religion and orthodoxy, was purified from the infernal impurity of Karāmiṭah³ depravity by the sword. By this orthodox war upon infidels, love for him became rooted in the hearts of the people of Ghūr and of the territory of the Jibāl; and the

² Styled Malik by several authors.

⁸ Our author makes no difference between Mulățidahs and Karămiţahs, but they are different sects. See Sale, Ku'aān, Preliminary Discourse, pages 130-31.

whole of them bound the girdle of his service round their loins, and placed the collar of obedience to him about the neck of sincerity.

One of the proofs of his equity, and of the goodness of his rule, was this, that he gave orders for the release from the fortress of Wajiristān of both his uncle's sons, <u>Gh</u>iyāş-ud-Din, Muḥammad, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, the sons of Sām, and he cherished and caressed them, and allowed them perfect liberty of action.

During his reign people, both comers and goers, enjoyed plenty, repose, and security beyond compute; but that youthful monarch of excellent disposition had but a short life, and his reign only extended to the space of one year and little more. The mercy of God be upon him!

The cause of his loss of life was this: - One day, seated in his pavilion, he was discharging arrows at a butt; and the Amirs of Ghur had been directed to be present, and were in attendance. The Sipāh-sālār [commander of the troops], War-mesh, son of Shis, who was the brother of Abū-l-'Abbās, son of Shis, and the brother of Suliman, son of Shis, was also in attendance on him. It was the custom with the Amirs of Ghur, and the Maliks of the Iibal, at that period, that upon whomsoever they would confer honour, him they should present with a golden gauntlet studded with jewels, after the same manner as, in these days, they bestow a girdle; and on the hand[s] of this commander. War-mesh, son of Shis, were two gem-studded gauntlets4, which Malik Nāsir-ud-Din, Husain, Mādini, had honoured him with; and both those gauntlets were from the treasury of Sultan Saif-ud-Din's own haram. When he perceived those two gauntlets belonging to his own haram upon the hand of War-mesh, the honour of manhood, and the dignity of sovereignty, began to flame up within his heart, and the fire of wrath burst forth, and he said:- "Run, War-mesh, and bring back my arrow from the butt." When War-mesh turned his face towards the

⁴ The word used is المسواد a glove or gauntlet; a bracelet may have been what our author intended, as it is difficult, I should imagine, to wear reve gauntlets on one hand, but he says "on the hand," not the hands. The word for bracelet, however, is مسود Other writers say, a bracelet, which Näṣir-ud-Din, Rusain, had taken from one of 'Alā-ud-Din's wives, and presented to Wat-megh. It is the father's haram at page 364.

butt, in order to carry out this command, and his back was turned towards the Sultān, he, Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, fitted a broad steel-headed arrow to his bow, and drew the bow-string to his ear, and discharged the arrow with such force into the back of War-mesh, that the feathers of the arrow passed out through his breast, and he fell down dead on the spot 6.

As the empire of the Sanjari dynasty had come to an end, the Amirs of the tribe of Ghuzz had acquired power, and had taken possession of the different parts of the territory of Khurāsān, and their violence and depredations had extended in all directions; and the disquietude and affliction consequent upon these depredations used to reach the frontier districts of the kingdom of Ghūr, and the borders of the hill tracts of Gharjistān.

When Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn brought the dominions of his father under his jurisdiction, he assembled his forces, and set out for the purpose of restraining the aggressions of the Ghuzz, and reached the confines of Gharjistān, and the district of Mādīn. From thence he advanced to Rūdbār⁸ of Marw, and passed beyond Dajzak, which is a large city [town?], and came to a battle with the Ghuzz.

The Sipāh-sālār, Abū-l-'Abbās, son of Shīs, who was the champion of Ghūr, of the family of the Shīsānīs, and who nourished revenge in his heart on account of War-mesh, son of Shīs [his own brother], and waited his opportunity, on the day of the encounter with the Ghuzz, came behind the back of the Sultān, Saif-ud-Dīn, and thrust his spear into his side, and hurled him from his horse, and exclaimed [at the same time], "Men are not killed with their faces to the butt, as thou didst kill my brother, otherwise they [themselves] get killed at such a place as this "."

⁵ The arrow-head called bel-ak, formed in the shape of a shovel; hence its name—a little shovel. It is also called the "huntsman's arrow-head," and a double-pointed arrow-head also.

⁶ The "meek, conciliating, and pious" youth did not hesitate to shoot an enemy in the back !

⁷ Some copies of the text have Fārus, which is sometimes written Kādus, instead of Mādīn. See page 374, and note 6.

⁸ Rūd-bār also means "a river in a valley," but here refers to a place so called.

⁹ Some writers mention that he was "killed in battle with the Ghuzz of Balkh," and that it happened in 558 H.; but he is said to have reigned some-

When the Sultān fell, the troops of Ghūr were defeated and routed, and they likewise left the [wounded] Sultān on the field. A Ghuzz [soldier] came upon him, and, as yet, the Sultān was still alive. The Ghuzz, when he noticed the princely vest and girdle, was desirous of despoiling him of them. The fastening of the Sultān's girdle would not come open quickly, on which the Ghuzz applied his knife to the fastening, and divided it. The point of the knife entered the stomach of Sultān Saif-ud-Drīn with force, and from that wound he obtained martyrdom.

XVII. SULŢĀN -UL-A'ZAM, GHIYĀS-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-FATḤ, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, ĶASĪM-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN 2.

Trustworthy persons have stated, after the following manner, that Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and his brother, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, were both born of one mother; and that Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn was the elder of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn by three years and a little more. Their mother was the daughter of Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Kidānī, both of the lineage of Banjī, son of Naharān, and also of the seed of the Shansabānīs. The Malikah, their mother, used to call Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn [by the name of] Ḥabashī; and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn. Zangī³; but, originally, the august name of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn was Muḥammad, and the name of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was Muḥammad, and the name of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was

thing less than two years, and, in this case, if his father died in 551 H., there are three or four years unaccounted for, and, if the former date is correct, 'Ala must have died in 556 H., or his son must have reigned about seven years; but, as our author says that 'Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'who succeeded him, died in 599 H., after a reign of forty-three years, Saif-ud-Dīn, 'Alā's son, must have been killed in 556 H. Some other authors, however, say 'Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn only reigned forty-one years, which would make 558 H. as the year of Saif-ud-Dīn's death correct. The Mi'rāt-i-Jain Numā says that lis father died in 551 H., and Saif-ud-Dīn reigned one year and a half, and by some accounts seven years, and that he was killed in a battle with the Ghuz of Balkh. In all probability he was killed in 558 H.

1 Styled "Malik" by many authors, like the whole dynasty,

² The legendary etymology of this assumed title has already been given at page 315; but its real meaning was, probably, co-sharer, or the like, from a share, portion, &c. See also page 316, and note *.

3 Why their mother called them by these "pet" names does not appear. We must suppose that they were both very dark indeed, as both words signify Abyssinian, Ethiop, negro, &c. also Muḥammad. In the dialect of Ghūr they call Muḥammad. Ahmad t.

When Malik Bahā-ud-Dîn, Sām, died within the limits of Kidān, and Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, ascended the throne of Firūz-koh, he commanded that his two nephews, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn and Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, should be imprisoned in the fortress of Wajiristān's, and fixed but a small allowance for the supply of their wants'. When Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Dîn departed from this world, Sulţān Saif-ud-Dîn directed that they should be released from that fortress, and he allowed them entire liberty of action. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn took up his residence at the Court of Firūz-koh in amity with Sulţān Saif-ud-Dîn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, his brother, proceeded to Bāmiān to the presence of his paternal uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd.

Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn accompanied Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dîn, serving along with the army, on the expedition against the Ghuzz tribe; but he had, however, but a small following through want of means and scantiness of resources; but every one, among the old servants of his father and of his mother, used clandestinely to afford him some little help.

<u>Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn</u> continued always in the service of Sultān Saif-ud-Dîn up to the time when the heavenly decree arrived, and Sultān Saif-ud-Din was removed from the throne of life imperial to the bier of premature death⁷; and the army of <u>Gh</u>ūr, discomfited, came out of the district of Rūd-bār and the borders of Dajzak towards <u>Gh</u>arjistān by way of Asir Darah and La-wīr [or Lū-ir?], and passed beyond Āſshīn, which was the capital of the <u>Sh</u>ārs of <u>Gh</u>arjistān; and, when they reached the town of Wadāwaigd⁸, the Sipāh-sālār, Abū-l-ʿAbbās, son of <u>Sh</u>īs, who

⁴ See note 4, page 313.

^a A few authors have stated that the two brothers were placed in charge of Ghaznin [not a province of Ghūr] by their uncle, 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, but such is not correct, and our author's statements here and at pages 357 and 366 are quite correct, and are confirmed by many authors of undoubted authority. See also Thomas: THE PATIAN KINGS OF DEHLI, page 10.

⁶ See paragraph 14, note 2, page 347.

⁷ For shooting the greatest of his chiefs in the back, in a cowardly manner, in a fit of jealousy.

⁸ The text here in all the copies is more or less exceedingly defective, and it would be almost impossible to make anything of this passage without collating the number of copies I have seen. As it is there is some doubt about two or three of the proper names. Some copies have Abar [24] and Asir

had unhorsed Sultān Saif-ud-Din with his spear, there presented himself in the presence of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din; and such of the most powerful and illustrious personages, and the Amīrs and Maliks of the troops of Ghūr and Gharjistān as were present, he assembled and brought together, and they all gave their allegiance to the sovereignty and dominion of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, and they raised him to the throne, and congratulated him on his accession to the supreme power. Command was given to erect a castle there [where this occurred], and up to this time, wherein the calamity of the infidel Mughals arose, that town and castle was inhabited. From thence they conducted him to the city of Fīrūz-koh, and, when they reached the city, they placed Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din on the throne.

Previously to this, his title was <u>Sh</u>ams-ud-Dîn; and his brother's, <u>Sh</u>ihāb-ud-Dīn; but, after he had been on the throne some time, his own title was changed to Sulṭān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dîn; and, after the successes in <u>Kh</u>urāsān, his brother Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn's title became Sulṭān

Mu'izz-ud-Din 9.

When his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Dîn', became cognizant of his brother <u>Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn's</u> situation, he proceeded to the presence of his uncle, Malik Fa<u>kh</u>r-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, and asked his permission, and came to Fīrūz-koh, and he was invested with the office of Sar-i-Jāndār [or chief armour-bearer], and he used to be always in attendance on his brother, Sultān <u>Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn</u>. The territory of Istiah² and Kajūrān were entrusted to his charge.

[رزاود]] for Asir [رزاود]] and Wajzāward [رزاود] for Wadāwajzd [رزاود]] Some copies may be read any way, and have no diacritical points. The name of the capital of Marijstām, which is also called Gharchistām, is also written in various ways, and, in some copies, is unintelligible; but the above reading is confirmed by Yāfa-ī, who gives a detailed account of the Shārs; but Faṣiḥ-ī calls the town Afshīnah. Ibn-Ḥukal says, the two [chief] towns of Ghar-jistān are مناه المناه

² Several years after his brother's accession. Modern writers of Indian history generally, and European writers, English in particular, put the cart before the horse in this respect, but the latest version of his name, in this way, occurs in THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF INDIAN HISTORY, where he appears as "Shahab ood Deen, Mahmood Ghoory"! Shihab has a meaning,

but "Shahab" none: moreover his name was not Mahmud.

¹ The writer does not mean that he was then Mu'izz-ud-Din, but subsequently.
² Written by some other authors, Istiya. It is the name of a small district and range of hills between Ghaznin and Hirāt.

When the [Sultan's] pavilion was brought out of the city of Firuz-koh, and conveyed towards Ghurs, the contumacious of Ghur began to manifest opposition. The Sipāh-sālār, Abū-l-'Abbās, son of Shis, who had raised him to the throne, possessed great authority and influence. and the refractory of Ghūr used to shelter themselves under his protection. Both the brothers continued to nourish revenge in their hearts against him [Abū-l-'Abbās], on account of his having killed their cousin. Sultan Saif-ud-Din, and they both concerted a design [against him]. It was determined between them, that one of their own immediate Turkish followers should carry it out [in the following manner]:-When Abū-l-'Abbās should enter the audiencehall, and should stand up in the assembly to make his obeisance, and Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din should raise his hand to his cap4, the Turk should strike off Abū-l-'Abbās' head; and such was done.

After Abū-l-'Abbās had been put to death, <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dîn acquired strength, and the grandeur of the realm increased. The uncle of the brothers, Malik Fa<u>kh</u>r-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, of Bāmiān, being the eldest of the seven Sultān brothers', and there being neither one of them remaining [but himself], he became ambitious of acquiring the territory of <u>Gh</u>ūr and the throne of Firūz-koh. Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kimāj [a noble] of the Sanjarī dynasty, who was Malik [ruler] of Balkh, he sought aid from, and despatched envoys to Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz', of Hirāt, and asked assistance from him also. Subsequently, the

³ From the manner in which our author here expresses himself fand the sentence is the same in all the copies collated], Ghür must have been the name of a town as well as of the whole country. From many of his expressions, however, in other places, Früz-koh would seem to refer to one district or territory, Ghür to another, and the fluid to a third.

⁴ The word here used signifies not a cap exactly, but a head-dress made from the fur or skin of an animal, of cloth or other texture, or of cloth of gold, and the like, made into a head-dress, a tiara, diadem, &c., but not a turban. Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, the elder brother, engaged Abā-l-'Abās in conversation, whilst the other brother gave the sign for his assassination. Abū-l-'Abās appears to have suspected treachery, for he had half drawn his dagger from its sheath when he was cut down. This is a specimen of the noble qualities of those amiable and pious sovereigns of our author, and is quite in keeping with their treachery, or at least with Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's towards Khusrau Malik. See note 8, pages 112-13.

⁵ They were not all styled "Sultan," even by his own account.

⁶ I-yal-duz of others.

troops of Bāmiān and the forces of Balkh and of Hirāt advanced from different directions towards Firūz-koh.

Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, of Bāmīān, being the uncle of the Sultāns, and there being a great number of the Amīrs of Ghūr in his service, and he claiming the territory of Ghūr by right of heritage, set out at first, and Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kimāj, the Amīr [ruler] of Balkh, began to follow after him, at the distance of some leagues, by the route of Upper Gharjistān, while Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz, marched to Firzk-koh with his army from Hirāt, it being the nearest route by way of the Harīw-ar-Rūd ', or valley of the Harī river.

Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn came out of Fīrūz-koh, and proceeded to a place which is called Rāgh-i-Zarīr ⁸ [the Zarīr plain] and the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr there assembled around them. Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz, of Hirāt, used the utmost expedition, being ambitious of this, that perhaps the capture of Fīrūz-koh and the destruction of

the Ghūrian army might be achieved by him.

When he arrived near to the position of the <u>Gh</u>ūriān forces, and both armies confronted each other, and preparations were being made for coming to action, so that only about the distance of half-a-league intervened between them, and the ranks of either army could be seen by the other, two <u>Gh</u>ūriān warriors from the midst of the army formed a compact, and came to the front of the [marshalled] ranks, and presented themselves before the Sulṭān, dismounted from their horses, and, bowing their faces to the ground, said, "We two your servants will disperse the army of Hirāt;" so by command they mounted, and, rousing both their horses, they drew their swords, and, like the fierce blast, and the flying cloud, they approached towards the ranks of the Turks of Hirāt, crying out, "Where is Malik Yal-dūz?" We seek Malik Yal-dūz?"

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz, was standing beneath his canopy, and his troops all pointed towards him, so that those <u>Gh</u>ūriān warriors knew which was Yal-dūz; and both

⁷ This clause of the sentence is only contained in the best copies of the text.
⁸ In some copies "Rāgh-i-Zar," which is much the same, zar signifying golden or yellow, and Zarfr the name of a grass yielding a yellow dye. One old copy has Weig, which signifies pure.

of them like hungry lions and rampant elephants fell upon Yal-dūz, and brought him from his horse to the ground by the wounds inflicted by their swords. When the troops of Hirāt beheld this heroism, boldness, and intrepidity, they gave way and took to flight. As Almighty God had brought those two Sultāns, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din, beneath the shadow of His kindness, He made such a victory and triumph as this a miracle of theirs.

The next day a body of horse legislative equipped and ruthless, was nominated to proceed against the force of Kimāj of Balkh. They fell upon his army unawares, put it to flight, took Kimāj, and slew him, and brought his head to the presence of the Sultāns together with his standard. Then the head of Kimāj was placed in a bag, and entrusted to a horseman's charge, and they sent him to meet their uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd. The latter had arrived near at hand; and, when they [the Sultāns] had despatched the head of Kimāj, they put their forces in motion to follow, and pushed on towards their uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn.

When that horseman brought the head of Kimāj to the presence of Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn he determined upon returning, and made his troops mount; and, by the time they had become ready prepared to begin their retreat, the two Sultāns had come up [with their forces] and had occupied all the parts around. On reaching the place where their uncle was, Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn at once dismounted from their horses, and proceeded to receive him, and paid him great attention and consideration, and said, "It is necessary that your lordship should return;" and they conducted him to their camp and seated

⁹ This "miracle" is not mentioned by other authors, with the exception of a very few who copy from our author. The Raugat-us-Şafa says that the brothers despatched two bodies of troops to oppose the advance of two of the confederates, the ruler of Hirāt, whose name is not given, and Kimāj of Balkh; and that the Ghūrīān forces slew both of them, and returned triumphant to the presence of Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn, who despatched the head of the son of Kimāj of Balkh to his uncle, who repented of his expedition, and sought to retire. Troops had been despatched, however, to surround him, and the brothers followed; and, when they found Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ad, their uncle, had been intercepted, they went to him. Then follows much copied almost word for word from our author.

¹ Three copies of the text have "several thousand horse," &c.

him on a throne, and both those sovereigns ² stood up before him with their hands stuck in their girdles [in token of servitude]. From this Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn became filled with shame and compunction, and, overcome with humiliation, he spoke to them some words of rebuke, arose, and said, "You mock me!" They mollified him by many apologies and excuses, and accompanied him one stage, and sent him on his return back to Bāmīān; and the territory of Ghūr was left vacant to Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn.

After that event he proceeded into Garmsir and Zamini-Dāwar, and that tract was liberated 3; and, as Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-dūz, of Hirāt, had been slain, and the army of Hirāt had returned thither discomfited, Badr-ud-Din, Tughril, who was one of [Sultān] Sanjar's slaves 4, took Hirāt into his own jurisdiction, and held possession of it for a considerable time, until the inhabitants of Hirāt despatched petitions to Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din inviting him

[thither], and that success was also achieved.

² Mu'izz-ud-Din was not then a sovereign prince, and did not become so nominally until after the taking of Ghaznin from the Ghuzz.

² He obtained possession of Baiglasis at the same period, and is said to have entered into a connexion with the chiefs of Gharjistän, and established his sway also over that tract of country. From whose possession Garnisfr and Zamfni-Däwar were "ilberated" our author does not state. Faşih.f, however, mentions that in the same year in which he succeeded his consin, 558 H., Ghiyās-ud-Dîn fought an engagement with the Ghuzz, vanquished them, and imposed tribute on them. The Ghuzz were doubtless in possession of the districts mentioned above.

4 See note 5, page 379.

5 This "success" could have been but a very temporary one, for, by our author's own account, Tughril was in possession of Hirāt up to the year when Sultān Shāh, Khwārazmi, was defeated by the Ghūris, which event took place in 588 H. In another place, our author, referring to this "taking" of Hirāt, says it happened in 571 H., yet seventeen years after Tughril still, by his own

account, held Hirat. See page 249, and note 5, page 379.

During the Khilaiat of the Abbasi Khalifah, Mihdi, the Ghuzz entered Māwar-un-Nahr from the north, and became converts to Islām; but Mukanna'-inMif [the 'great Mokanna' of Moore's poem of "Lalla Rookh"], the false prophet, reduced them under his sway. When the 'Abbāsis set about putting down Mukanna', the Ghuzz deserted him, and retired to the more southern parts of Māwar-un-Nahr. They were constantly engaged in hostilities with the Kārlughiah Turk-māus, who were generally victorious over them. The Ghuzz were in the habit of paying tribute to the sovereign of the period, and, when Sulfan Sanjar ascended the throne of the Saljūts, Ago.oc Ghuzz families entered the territory of Khutlān and Chaghāniān, and paid a tribute of 24,000 sheep to the royal kitchen. In 545, ft., according to Alfi, when Amfr Kimāj iku Kimāj mentioned above, and in note '9, page 336, also probably] was Wālf of

After some years Fāras and the territory of Kāliyūn [or Kāl-yūn], and Fiwār and Baghshor⁶, came into his posses-

Balkh, the Ghuzz became disaffected about the collection of the tribute. Kimāj was at enmity with Amīr Zangī, son of Khalīfah, Shaibānī, the Wālī of Tukhāristān Ithis was a short time before Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, Ghūri, became ruler of Tukhāristān and Bāmiān], who, seizing the opportunity of Kimāj's absence at the court of Sultan Sanjar, and fearing lest the Ghuzz, who had lately been worsted by the Karlughs, and had abandoned Mawar-un-Nahr, and contemplated migration into Khurāsān, might be induced to join his enemy. Amir Kimāi, he invited them to take up their quarters in Tukhāristān. wherein he assigned them lands. In a dispute about the revenue, brought about by Kimāj out of enmity to Zangi, the Ghuzz slew him and one of his sons, and, at last, Sultan Sanjar moved against them, and he fell captive into their hands. Saniar returned from captivity in 551 H., having effected his escape by the aid of Ahmad, son of Kimai, governor of Tirmid [see page 155. and note 6, and note 8, page 156], and died in 552 H. In 553 H. the Ghuzz poured forth from Balkh [the province of?], and moved towards Sarakhs. Mu'ayyid-i-'Ā-īnah-dār, the slave of Mahmud, Sanjar's nephew, and, afterwards, ruler of Nishapur [see note 7, page 180], and other parts of Upper Khurāsān, made a night attack upon them, and overthrew them with great slaughter. He encountered them again, two months after, in sight of Marw, whither they had moved, when the Ghuzz were victorious, and they carried on great depredations in Khurasan. Other events followed, which are too long to be related here; but, subsequently, Mu'ayyid became independent, and acquired power over greater part of Khurasan. The Ghuzz were in possession, however, of Marw, Sarakhs, Balkh, and some other tracts; and some parts were under the sway of the Khwarazmis. Hirat was held by a chief named Malik Aetkin, who, in 559 H., marched into Ghur with a considerable army; but, the Ghūris being prepared to receive him, Aetkin was slain in the battle which ensued. This in all probability is the Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, of our author. He was succeeded at Hirat by one of his own officers, styled Babar-ud-Din in Alfi, and he must be our author's Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril. This chief, not considering himself safe from the power of Amir Mu'ayvid, and having some previous acquaintance with the Ghuzz chiefs, called upon them to help him, intending to give up Hirat to them. On the appearance of the Ghuzz, however, the people of Hirat rose against Babar-ud-Din, and put him to death in the same year. [See note 2, page 239.] Mu'ayyid was himself put to death in 569 H. Saif-ud-Din, Muhammad of Ghur, was slain when engaging the Ghuzz of Balkh in 558 H., and in the same year his successor, Ghiyag-ud-Din, defeated them with great slaughter, and imposed tribute on [some portion?] of them, and in 571 H. his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, encountered a tribe of them, as will be mentioned under his reign. Ghiyas-ud-Din, Ghuri, gained possession of Hirat [temporarily?] in 571 H. These events appear to be identical with what our author relates above. See also second paragraph to note at page 349, page 367, and note 5, page 379.

6 With respect to these proper names there is great discrepancy in the different copies of the text. The majority of the best and oldest copies are as above; but in place of Fāras, some have Fādas and Kādas, and one Kādush, which place is mentioned, in several places, written in the same manner. In place of Baghshot, contained in one set of copies, Saif-rid is contained in the other set. I have before alluded to this curious fact that the twelve copies collated appear, in several places, to be two distinct sets of the original. In

sion; and, when these parts came under his jurisdiction, he took to wife the daughter of his uncle, the Malikah, Tāj-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Gohar Malik [Malikah?] the daughter of Sulṭān'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain. The whole of Gharjistān, and Tāl-kān', and Juzarwān's, devolved upon him; and Tīginābād, out of the district of Jarūm's, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn made over to his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, after he had returned from Sijistān'. He [now] began to despatch [bodies of] horse towards Ghaznīn, and the district of Zābul, and parts adjacent thereunto; and, at that period, the territory of Kābul, Zābul, and Ghaznīn were in the hands of the tribes of the Ghuzz, who had wrested them out of the possession of Khusrau Shāh². The reign of Khusrau Shāh had terminated, and his son, Khusrau Malik, had made Lohor his capital.

The Amīrs of the Ghuzz [tribe] who were in Ghaznīn, not being able to oppose the forces of Ghūr [in the field] threw up intrenchments, and, from the excessive firmness of the Ghuzz, the Ghūrīān army very nearly sustained an overthrow. Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn retired, and despatched a body of Ghūrīāns to the aid of Ṣultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's. Suddenly a body of Ghūzz warriors attacked [the army of Ghūr], and captured the royal standard of the Ghūrīāns, and carried it away within their own intrenchments. The Ghūrīān forces in the right and left wings imagined that the list of places and territories acquired at the end of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn's reign farther on, the name of Baghshor is not mentioned. It is probable that Ffwār and Baghshor are correct, and that one has been omitted by

different copyists.

7 A different place to Tae-kan.

This is the place referred to fifth paragraph of note 2, pages 257-8.

In a few copies "and the district of Jarum and Tigin-abad," &c.

1 See page 184.

² This remark confirms the statements of those authors who state that Kharsau Shān returned to his sacked and devastated capital after 'Ala-ud-Din, Ḥusain, had abandoned it, and also tends to show that it must have been the same monarch, and not his father, who fled from Ghamin when 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain, appeared before it. See para. 10 to note ², p. 347, and note ³, p. 350.

³ The whole of this sentence, and the first word of the next, are neither contained in either of the Paris copies, nor in the Bodleian MS., the L.O.L. MS., 1952, or the R. A. S. MS.; and, certainly, the passage is somewhat obscure. It would appear that Qhiyās-ud-Din retired to obtain reinforcements, and also that he subsequently returnal [as mentioned a few sentences after], which latter statement is contained in those very copies which omit the former. The Sulfan, however, could not have retired to any very great distance, otherwise he would not have been in time to take part in the closing scene of the battle.

the royal standard had accompanied their own centre into the intrenchments of the enemy, and they advanced to the attack in all directions, broke through the intrenchments of the Ghuzz, and carried them, and put the Ghuzz to the rout. The news reached Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn, who returned; and the troops of Ghūr commenced slaughtering the Ghuzz, and laid the greater number of that race on the earth, and Ghaznîn was left in the possession of the Ghūrīs. This victory was gained in the year 569 H.*

When <u>Ghaznin</u> was conquered, Sultan <u>Ghiyaş-ud-Din</u> placed his brother, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, upon the throne of the Maḥmūdis', and returned himself to Firūz-koh.

After two years, he [Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Din] summoned his troops [again], and the armies of <u>Gh</u>ūr and <u>Gh</u>aznīn were got ready, and he advanced to the gates of the city of Hirāt. The people of that place had been manifesting signs of duty and desire [to place themselves under his rule]. When Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, became aware of this [latter] fact, he evacuated the city of Hirāt, and retired to the <u>Kh</u>wārazm-<u>Sh</u>āhis'; and, in the year 671 H.', the city of Hirāt was taken possession of. Two years subsequent to this, Fūṣhani was taken; and, after these successes, the

⁴ This is the second date given by our author throughout the whole of this Section. At page 112 he says the Ghuzz held possession of Ghaznin twelve years, and here says Ghiyās-ud-Din took it from them in 569 h., by which account they must have got possession of it in 557 H. Khusrau Shāh died in 555 H.; so, if the above dates are correct, they could not have wrested Ghaznin out of his hands. I think our author is pretty correct as to the period the Ghuzz held Ghaznin, and they appear to have obtained possession of it in 557 H., or 558 H., probably after the death of Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Hussain's son, and defeat of the Ghūzz by Ghuzsain's son, and defeat of the Ghūrīāns by the Ghuzz.

From which time only he is entitled to be styled Sultān. Faşiḥ-I says that as early as 566 H. the Maliks of Ghūr had acquired power in the Ghazafin territory and in part of Hind, and the Khwānam Shāhis in 'Irāk and Khurāsin ; but agrees with our author as to the date of the acquirement of the city of Ghazafin, but some other authors state that it was taken in 568 H. It was in 569 H. that Malik Mu-ayyid-i-Ā'hah-dār, in concert with Sultān Shāh, fought an engagement with Sultān 'Imād-ud-Dfn, Takish. See note 7, page 180, and note 7, page 245.

⁶ Faşih-f does not mention the acquirement of Hirāt among the events of 5-countered the Sankurān, a sept of the Ghuzz tribe, and slew many of them. Some other authors, who say that Ghaznin was taken in 568 H., state that Hirāt was acquired two years after—in 570 H. The particulars of Tughril's death will be found at page 379.

⁷ See note 5, page 379.

Malik of Nīmroz and Sijistān despatched envoys, and he enrolled himself among the vassals of that Sultān.

Subsequently to these events, the <u>Ghuzz Maliks</u> who were in Kirmān^a paid submission to him; and different parts of the territory of <u>Khurāsān</u>, which were dependent upon Hirāt and Bal<u>kh</u>, such as <u>Tāl-kān</u>, And<u>khūd</u>, Maimand^a Fāryāb, Panj-dīh, Marw-ar-Rūd, Daj<u>z</u>ak, Kilaf^a, the whole of those towns came into the possession of the <u>Ghiyās</u>i officers, and the <u>Khut</u>bah and the coin became adorned by the august name of Sulṭān <u>Ghiyās</u>-ud-Dīn.

After some time, Sultan Shah, Talal-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of I-yal-Arsalan, Khwarazm Shah, was ousted by his brother, Takish, Khwarazm Shah, and presented himself at the Court of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din2. After a time he became seditious, as has been previously recorded, and departed for Khitā, and from thence brought aid, and took Marw, and began to ravage the frontier districts of the territories of Ghur, and commenced harrying and plundering them, until, in the year 588 H., Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din commanded, so that Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din from Ghaznin, Malik Shamsud-Din3 of Bāmiān, and Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Harab, from Sijistān, with their forces, assembled at Rūdbār of Marw, and they came and confronted the forces of Sultan Shah, who, with his troops, marched out of Marw, and proceeded up [the river]; and, in opposing the Sultan, used to make irregular and sudden attacks, and to continually harass the foragers of the Sultan's army. For a period of six months

⁸ Malik 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Dīnār, the Ghuzz chief, driven out of the territory of Sarakhs by Sulfan Shāh, Khwārazmī [see note 8, page 246], retired towards Kirmān in 581 H.; and, taking advantage of the distracted state of that kingdom, succeeded in establishing himself therein in Rajab, 583 H., and reigned over it for a period of eight years, and his son succeeded him. The subjection of the Ghuzz rulers of Kirmān to Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn is not confirmed by other authors.

⁹ Called also Maihand by some other writers. "Meemuna" and "Meimuna" are mere Anglicised forms, according to the rule of writing Oriental names contrary to the mode of the inhabitants of places, and also contrary to the way in which they are stock.

¹ This name is somewhat doubtful. Some have Kaghif, but the majority of copies have كونف the كونف probably of Ibn-i-Ḥūkal.

² See page 239 and note ³.
³ The same that was taken prisoner in the battle with Sulfan Sanjar, along with 'Alfa-ud-Din, Husain, and 'Alf, Jatri, and ransomed for 50,000 dinars. See note ³, p. 358.

this harassing warfare went on; and the two armies continued in proximity to each other until Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn commanded that a ferry over the river Murgh-āb should be sought for, and he crossed it [with his own forces], and the other troops crossed over after him; and Sultān Shāh was defeated and out to the rout.

This success was gained in the year 588 H.⁴; and Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, the Sanjari, in that encounter, fell into the hands of the Bāmiān troops, and they brought his head to the presence of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn⁴. On that day, likewise, Malik Shams-ud-Dīn of Bāmiān, son of Malik Fakhrud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, who was the Sulṭāns' uncle, obtained [the honour of] a canopy of state, and they gave him the title of Sulṭān.

In this same year likewise, previous to the time that the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr, <u>Gh</u>aznin, and Bāmiān were about to assemble at Rūdbār of Marw, for the purpose of restraining Sultān <u>Sh</u>āh, commands had been issued for the martyrdom of the gentle and beneficent Sultān, <u>Kh</u>usrau Malik⁶. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

Every year fresh successes were taking place in different directions of the territories of Ghūr', until, in the year

⁴ This was the year in which, according to most writers, and also our author himself, Mu'-izz-ud-Din of Ghaznin defeated the Rae of Dihlî.

⁴ Our author, in another place, page 377, says Ghamin was taken in 569 H. Johnes say, in 568 H.J. and that in 571 H. Hirāt was taken, and Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, evacuated the city on the approach of the Ghūrīs, and joined the Khwārazmīs. The Ghūrīs could not have held Hirāt very long, for this affair with Sulfān Shāh, in which Tughril was taken, took place, by our author? own account, in 588 H., seemeten years after that evacuation of Hirāt by Tughril, and he is even then styled "Tughril of Hirāt" by our author, and so he styles him in his account of Tughril and his death, at page 249. From this it is obvious that the Ghūrīs could only have held Hirāt for a very short time after 569 H., and Tughril must have regained possession of it soon after, and only finally left it, on the advance of the Ghūrīs against Sulfān Shāh, in this year, 588 H., or, more correctly, in 587 H. See note ³, page 374.

⁶ One of these pious brothers and model Sultáns of our author, Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, having deceirally invelgled this amiable monaron into his power, broke his promises, and sent him and his family away into Ghūr to his other worthy brother who immured him in a fortress. At the time in question, finding Khusrau Malik an obstacle in their way, they had him put to death, and also his son, Bahrām, Shāh. Here our author says it took place in 588 H., and 587 H., in his account of Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, but, in his account of Khusrau Malik, he says it happened in 598 H.! See pages 114 and 115, and note to page 112, para. 10.

⁷ Sic in all the copies.

506 H., Sultan 'Ala-ud-Dins-i-Takish, Khwarazm Shah, died. Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din moved into Khurāsān with the armies of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and advanced to the gate of Nishāpūr. While the forces occupied a position in the vicinity of Nishāpūr, and hostilities commenced, trustworthy persons have, among the miracles of the victorious Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, related on this wise, that one day he mounted, in order to reconnoitre a place from which to attack the city, and rode round the edge of the ditch, and reached a spot from whence, in his august opinion, he determined to make the attack, as being the point where the capture of that city was likely to be effected9. He made a sign with his whip, saying :- "It is necessary that the battering-rams should be planted from this tower to that tower, in order to make a breach, and enable a general assault to be made, so that the capture of this city may be effected, and this victory achieved." At the very time that he made this indication [with his whip] towards those towers, the very portion of the walls of the city which he had pointed out, and the [two] towers, with everything near them, gave way, and the whole fell down, and became destroyed in such wise that not one brick remained upon another, and Nishāpūr was taken. Malik 'Ali Shāh', son of Sultan 'Imad-ud-Din, Takish, Khwarazm

8 At page 255, in our author's account of his succession, he says, "'Alaud-Din, Muhammad, son of Takish, brought his father's dominions under his own jurisdiction in 595 H."

9 If we choose to be guided by what English and some other European writers of Histories of India say, on the authority of translations of Firishtah's work, from which their inspirations are drawn, Ghivas-ud-Din was either a mere imbecile or a puppet, for he is said by several of them to have "retained nothing of the empire but the name," whilst others, including Elphinstone, of whom I expected something better, rush into the almost opposite extreme and say, that "he appears to have resumed his activity before his death, and to have been present in person in all the campaigns in Khorásán except the last;" but they forget, or, more likely, are unable to, mention, when all these campaigns took place, and against whom. The fact is that none of these statements are correct. Ghiyas-ud-Din reigned in glory to the end of his days, and his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, held the sovereignty of Ghaznin subject to him, and undertook the conquest of Upper India by his commands. His last campaign, according to Yafa-i, was in 597-8 H., only a few months before his death. See the specimens of translations under his brother's reign, Section XIX., and note 7, page 255, and note 2, next page.

1 He is styled "Sultan 'Ali Shah," and "a very great and illustrious prince," at page 252, and also "Malik" in some places.

Shāh, together with the Khwārazmī Maliks who were there, and chiefs, and other persons of distinction, such as Surtash and Gaz-lak Khān, and a considerable body of others, fell into their hands?

To Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Abū 'Alī, Shansabī, who was the uncle's son³ of both the [Ghūrān] Sulṭāns, and the son-in-law of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, they gave the government and throne¹ of Nīṣhāpūr, and returned [to their own dominions] that same year. The next year [597 H.] they advanced to Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān, and took it; and Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak, they installed at Marw; and conferred the government of Sarakhs upon their uncle's son, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangī, who was the son of Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, Bāmiānī. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn acquired jurisdiction over the whole of that territory, and Khurāsān became clear⁴.

Malik⁵ 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh, used great endeavours that they [the Sultāns] might perhaps

² Yāfa-i gives the following account of this "miracle" which our author makes so much of. "In the month of Rajab, 597 H., the Ghuris with an immense army, and ninety great elephants, each of which was like a mountain in size, advanced against Shad-vakh [of Nishapur] where was, at that time, 'Alf Shah, Sultan Muhammad's brother, who had very recently arrived there on his return from 'Irak, and several men of distinction in the service of his other brothers. The Churian Sultans [the two brothers], in order to reconnoitre the place, were making a circuit around it, and came to a stand opposite the city [Nishapur]. A vast crowd of people, from within Shad-yakh, in order to gaze upon the Ghurian army, flocked to one of the towers facing it. Suddenly the tower gave way, from the crowd within it [the fortifications at the time were not in good repair, and fell down. This the Chur's took as a good omen, and, during the same day [through this accident], took possession of the place." Another author states that the place was at once assaulted, captured, and plundered, and the date given is Rajab, 597 H., not 596 H., as our author states. Nishapur was retaken from the Ghuris five months after. See page 393, note 8.

⁸ This is incorrect. See page 346, and note ⁸ and note ⁹, page 391.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Din was merely left in charge as governor. The "throne of Nishāpūr," is one of our author's absurdities.

⁵ After getting possession of Nishāpūr Sultān Chiyāṣ-ud-Dîn returned to Hirāt, and his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, marched into Kuhistān for the purpose of destroying the strongholds of the Mulābidah heretics of that part, and, after several [minor] encounters with them, an accommodation was brought about, and Junābād was occupied, and the Kāṣī of Tulak [the same who was previously left as governor of Tabarhindah. See the reign of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn. Section XIX.] was left there in charge.

⁶ Sulfan, by his own account, and a much greater one than either of the Ghūris in many respects, and the ruler of a far greater extent of territory.

consent to accept his services [as their vassal], and relinquish Khurāsān to him again; but it was not given up to him. Trustworthy persons7 have related after this manner, that, when Takish, Khwārazm Shāh [the father], died, Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah [the son], sent envoys to the presence of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, the purport of their embassy being to the effect, that, between the Sultans of Ghur and his father, a compact of friendship and unanimity was firmly established. He, their servant, desired that, according to that same compact, he might be [accounted] in the series of their other servants. If his exalted opinion thought well of it, the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, should take his [servant's] mother to wife, and consider him, his very humble servant, as a son; that from the Ghiyasiah Court he, his [Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din's] servant, might receive an honorary robe, and a patent of investiture for Khurāsān and Khwārazm⁸, and his servant would set free all the territory of 'Irak and Mawar-un-Nahr from the hands of enemies.

When they [the envoys] had discharged the purport of their mission, Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn did not become agreeable to the proposed union, and hostility arose. As the Almighty God had ordained that the whole of the dominions of Irān should fall under the sway of Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh', he, upon several occasions, towards the close of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn's life, retired discomfited before the forces of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and, at last, those Sultāns died before him.

Upon several occasions rich dresses of honour from the Court of the Khilāfat, from the Lord of the Faithful, Al-

Here again our author brings forward his absurd statement as to this mighty monarch's seeking to become the vassal and servant of the <u>Gh</u>ūrfs, which is not worthy of the least credit whatever.

7 Who, as usual, are nameless.

8 Very probable, seeing that his ancestors ruled over it for more than a century previously, and over all Khuräsin and greater part of 'Iräk, by our author's own accounts, for many years. See the reign of Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din. Muhammad, farther on, where at treaty with the Khwärazmīsis mentioned.

⁹ Sulfan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, recovered most of his Khurāsān possessions, which the Ghūrīs had overrun the previous year, in 598 H. See previous note, and our author's own account of Sulfan Takish's conquests at pages 241-2, and note ⁸, page 393, and his account of the Khwārazmī Sulfans generally.

Mustazī B'illah¹, and from the Lord of the Faithful, Un-Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Ullah, reached the Court of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn. On the first occasion, Ibn-ur-Rabbi' came; and the Kāzī, Majd-ud-Dīn, [styled] the Model, went along with him to the Court of the Khilāfat, and, on the second occasion, Ibn-ul-Khaṭīb came; and the father of this their servant, Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dīn, son of Minhāj-i-Sarāj, he [the Sulṭān] nominated to proceed along with him to the Court of the Khilāfat². On the arrival of the honorary dress from the Court of Un-Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Ullah, the imperial naubat³ five times a day was assumed by the Sulṭān.

His dominions became wide and extended, and from the east [eastern extremity] of Hindūstān, from the frontier of Chin and Mā-Chin, as far as 'Irāk, and from the river Jiḥūn and Khurāsān to the sea-shore of Hurmuz, the Khutbah was adorned by his auspicious name. He reigned for a period of forty-three years.

His bounty and benefactions, bestowed upon the meritorious, the learned, the recluse, and the devout, reached to the extremes of the empire of Islām, from the east to the west, to 'Arab and to 'Ajam, to Turkistān and to Hind; and the names of all those meriting his bounty and charity were recorded in his civil courts and record offices. His life extended to a period of sixty-three years; and the removal of this great monarch from this transitory sphere to the eternal habitation took place at the city of Hirāt, on Wednesday, the 27th of the sacred month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal', 599 H. His mausoleum was raised by the side of the Jāmi' Masjid of Hirāt. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

The Most High God had adorned the incomparable nature of the victorious Sultan, Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muham-

¹ The Khalffah's proper name and title is Al-Mustazī Bi-Nūr Ullah. He died 575 H.

² The Khalifah was stimulating the Ghūrian Sultans to hostility against Sultan Mühammad's father, Sultan Takish, and afterwards did the same with respect to himself. See page 243, and note 1.

³ Kettledrums and other instruments sounded, at stated periods, before the gate of sovereigns and great men.

⁴ Some copies have the 7th, but the 27th of the month is confirmed by other authors. His tomb was on the north side of the Jami Masjid which he had himself founded. Some authors state that 597 H. was the year of his decease, and others again, 598 H.

mad-i-Sām, with divers virtues and endowments, both outward and inward; and his Court was graced with learned doctors of religion and law ecclesiastical, accomplished scholars, illustrious philosophers, and the celebrated in eloquence; and his magnificent Court had become the asylum of the world, and the retreat of the worthy and laudable persons of the earth. Chiefs of the [holders of] religious tenets of every sect were there gathered together, incomparable poets were there present, and masters in the art of poetry and prose were entertained in the service of his sublime Court.

At the outset of the career of those sovereigns [Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din], both the brothers followed the tenets of the Kirāmi sect, in imitation of their ancestors and [the people of] their dominions; but Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sam, the younger brother. when he ascended the Ghaznin throne, the people of that city and territory being followers of the tenets of the Great Imam. Abū Hanifah of Kūfa, in conformity with them. adopted the doctrines of Abū Hanifah. Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din. however, saw, whilst in a dream, that he was used to be in the same masjid along with the illustrious Kāzi, Wahid-ud-Din, Marwazi, who followed the religious doctrines of the Traditionists, and who was one of the leaders of the Shāf'i sect. Unexpectedly, Imām Shāf'i himself enters, and proceeds to the Mihrāb7, and begins to repeat the prayers; and Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, and Kazi Wahidud-Din, both of them follow Imam Shaf'i in so doing,

On awakening from his dream, the Sultan commanded, so that, at break of day, Kazi Waḥid-ud-Din was requested to deliver a discourse. When he occupied the seat of the pulpit, he remarked, during the discourse, saying,

7 The chief place in a masjid where the priest prays with his face turned towards Makkah.

³ The Kirämis, also called Mujassamiän—Corporealists—the followers of Muhammad, son of Kiräm, 'are one of the subdivisions of the Sifati sect who follow the tenets of Muhammad, son of Idris, Ush-Shāt'i. Ghiyāş ud-Din being of that sect, the offices of Iratin and Khaṭtib of the great masjid of Hirāt, and other minor offices, were conferred on its ecclesiastics.

⁶ The four orthodox sects of Muhammadans are Traditionists.

^{*} The different copies of the text express this clause of the sentence in three different ways, and use three different verbs although their meanings are similar.

"Sovereign of Islām! this your servant hath during the past night dreamt a dream," and he related the very same dream that the Sultān had himself dreamt, for he had had one like it; whereupon, when the Kāzī descended from the chair, and went up to make his obeisance to the Sultān, the latter seized the blessed hand of Kāzī, Waḥid-ud-Dīn, and adopted the tenets of Imām Shār'i?

When the withdrawal of the Sultān to the sect of the Traditionists became divulged, a load came upon the hearts of the 'Ulamā of the sect of Muḥammad-i-Kirām [the Kirāmīs]. Of this body, the great ecclesiastics were numerous; but, at that time, the most eloquent among them all was Imām, Ṣadr-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Haiṣam, the Niṣhāpūrī, who was resident at, and the head of the college of the city of Afṣhīn of Gharjistān. He composed a strophe on the Sultān, and in it censured his withdrawal from the sect; and, when that strophe came to the Sultān's knowledge, his sacred mind became much irritated with him, and Imām Ṣadr-ud-Dīn found it impossible to continue to dwell within the dominions of Ghūr. The strophe is this:—

[This polemical squib is of some length, and varies more or less in almost every copy, is of no particular interest, and need scarcely be translated.]

Imām Ṣadr-ud-Din, on this account, removed out of the territory of \underline{Gh} ūr, and proceeded to $Ni\underline{sh}$ āpūr, and there he remained for the space of a year; after which he despatched [another] strophe to the presence of the Sultān, so that he was sent for to come back again, and a robe of honour was despatched; and he returned to the Court from $Ni\underline{sh}$ āpūr again. Strophe:—

[These lines have also been left out for the reasons previously given. As may be imagined, they are as full of fulsome adulation as the first were of aspersion.]

Trustworthy persons have thus related, that Sultan Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, in his early youth, was greatly addicted to conviviality, and fond of the sports of the field; and from

⁹ The Aşār-ul-Bilād states that Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn used to copy Kurāns with his own hand, and sell them, and give the money they were sold for in alms to the poor. The celebrated Imām, Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, son of 'Umr of Rāz, wrote and dedicated to him a work entitled Laṭāit-i-Ghiyāṣi. See under the reign of Mu'uz-ud-Dīn, Section XIX.

the capital city, Firūz-koh, which was the seat of government, as far as the Zamin [district] and town of Dawar. which was the winter capital, not a human being dared to pursue the chase. Between these two cities [towns] is a distance of forty leagues, and he [the Sultan] had commanded that a pillar should be erected at each league of distance: and in Zamin-i-Dawar he had laid out a garden. and he had given it the name of Garden of Iram1, and certainly, for pleasantness and freshness, no such garden had ever been seen in the whole world, nor did any monarch possess the like of it. The length of this garden was more than sufficient for two courses of a horse, and the whole of its glades were adorned with pine and juniper-trees, and various sorts of shrubs and odoriferous herbs; and the Sultan had commanded, so that, adjoining the wall of that garden, a plain had been cleared corresponding in length and breadth with the garden itself.

Once every year he used to give directions, so that for a distance of fifty or sixty leagues or more, a nargah? [semicicle] of huntsmen would be drawn out; and it would require the space of a whole month for the two extremities of this semicircle of huntsmen to close up. More than ten thousand wild beasts and animals of the chase, of all species and descriptions, used to be driven into that plain; and, on the days of chase, the Sultan was in the habit of coming out on the pavilion of the garden, and holding a convivial entertainment; and his slaves, his Maliks, and the servants of the Court, one by one, with the royal permission, would mount on horseback and enter the plain, and chase and kill the game in the Sultan's august sight.

Upon one occasion he was desirous of entering the plain and enjoying the sport, upon which Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubārak Shāh', got upon his feet, and repeated a quatrain. The Sultān retracted his intention, and devoted himself

2 One set of copies of the original use the word it and the other ye are both of much the same signification.

¹ The famous garden of Shadad, son of 'Ād, described by the eastern poets as a perfect model of the promised Muhammadan Paradise.

³ If such can be called "the chase."

⁴ The same who composed the History of the Shansabānis in verse, referred to by our author at page 300. Other writers state that he was one of the most learned of his time in the science of astrology.

to enjoyment. The following is the quatrain in question:-

"To follow the wine, the beloved, and enjoyment,
Will be better than that thou shouldst pursue the chase.
When the gazelle of paradise is within thy net,
Of what use that thou shouldst follow the mountain goat?"

Trustworthy persons have related that, when Sultan Ghiyāş-ud-Din forswore wine, and devoted himself to rectitude and goodness, at the period that Sultan Shah. Khwārazm Shāh, brought the forces of Khitā against Khurāsān, and made Marw his capital, the latter began to harry the border-tracts of the territory of Ghur, and brought his troops to the Dahānah-i-Sher-the Lion's Jaws-[Pass] of Sarakhs, and despatched an emissary to the presence of the Sultan, Ghiyas-ud-Din, and preferred certain requests of his own to him. The Sultan commanded that an entertainment should be prepared to do honour to the envoy. and a gay party was brought together. Wine was circulated among the Maliks and Amirs of Ghūr, and the envoy was treated with great honour; and he was plied with wine, in order that, when in a state of inebriety, the disposition of Sultan Shah might be discovered from his emissarv.

For the Sultan's own drinking, sweet pomegranate juice was poured into a flask, and, when it came to the Sultan's turn to pledge, they would fill his goblet with that pomegranate juice, and would present it to him. When the envoy of Sultan Shah became excited from the effects of the wine, he rose to his knees, and requested a minstrel to sing the following quatrain, which he accordingly did:—

"Of that lion whose abode is within the Lion's Jaws, 6
The lions of the universe are in great affright.
Thou shouldst, O lion, from 'The Jaws' show thy teeth,
Since these are [as though] in 'The Lion's Jaws' from terror."

When the envoy called for this verse, and the minstrel sang it, Sultan Ghiyaş-ud-Din's colour changed, and the

⁵ See page 246 and note 8.

The point of these lines depends upon the play on the word Dahānah. It signifies the jaws, the mouth of a pass, yawning, and the like.

Maliks of Ghūr became much agitated. Khwājah Ṣafi-ud-Dìn, Maḥmūd, one of the most distinguished of the Wazirs of his Court, and who was a miracle of wit and address, and endowed with a forcible poetic genius, and composed excellent poetry, arose to his feet, and, looking on the ground, in reply to the envoy, called on the minstrel for this verse:—

"On that day when we shall raise the standard of hostility,
And shall take in hand the enemy of the territory of the world,
Should any lion from 'The Jaws' (Jarel show his teeth,
We, with our mace, will crush his teeth within 'The Jaws.'

Sultan Ghiyaş-ud-Din was greatly pleased at this, and bestowed a liberal present upon the Khwajah, and honoured him with honorary dresses of great value; and the whole of the Maliks commended him. The Almighty have mercy upon the whole of them! and may He keep the Sultan of Islam, the sovereign of the seven climes, the great king of kings, the lord over all the rulers of Turk, 'Arab, and 'Ajam, the defender of the world and of the faith, the glory of Islam and of the Faithful, the aider of kings and emperors, the protector of the dominions of the Almighty, the pastor of the servants of God, the aided by Heaven, the victorious over the greatest of all species, the place of safety to the orthodox, the heir of the dominions of Suliman, ABU-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAHMUD, son of the Sultan [I-yal-timish], the Kasim [the co-sharer] of the Lord of the Faithful, in sovereignty and dominion for years unending, permanent and lasting, for the sake of His Prophet Muhammad, on whom be peace abundantly abundant7

⁷ I have generally abstained from giving our author's fulsome and unctuous prayers for his patron, the puppet and recluse, who nominally ruled at Dihli; but this was such a currious specimen that I could not leave it out. It shows that our author did not stick at any exaggeration—and the above contains many—and is a convincing proof that he "rarely indulges in high-flown eulogy, but relates his facts in a plain straightforward manner," &c. We must not imagine that all the epithets bestowed upon these rulers by their parasites were the titles they assumed.

Titles and Names of the Sultan 8:-

US-SULŢĀN-UL-A'ZAM',

GHIYAS-UD-DUNYA WA UD-DÎN,

ABŪ-L-FATḤ, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF SĀM

ĶASĪM-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN.

Offspring.

Sulţān-ul-A'gam, <u>Gh</u>iyāş-ud-Din, Maḥmūd. Malikah-ul-Mu'azzamah, Jalāl-ud-Dunyā wa-ud-Din.

Length of his reign —Forty-three years.

Summer capital:—The City of Firūz-koh of <u>Gh</u>ūr. Winter capital:—The district of Dāwar.

Kāzīs of his Court,

Ķāzī-ul-Ķuzāt [Chief Ķāzī], Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Harawī. Ķāzī Shihāb-ud-Dīn, Ḥarmawādī2.

Wazīrs of the Kingdom.

Shams-ul-Mulk, 'Abd-ul-Jabbār, Kidāni. Fakhr-ul-Mulk, Sharaf-ud-Din', Wadāri'.

⁸ From the way in which his titles and names are here written in the very old copy of the text, within a circular area, it is evident that this was the inscription on his coins.

⁹ A few copies have "Mu'aggam," but it is incorrect.

¹ Forty-one in a few copies.

Also written Harmabādī in one or two copies: probably Jarmabādī or Jarmawādī may be more correct.

³ Sharaf-ul-Ashraf.

In one copy Fardari.

'Ain-ul-Mulk, Sūrāni [or Sūriāni]. Zahir-ul-Mulk, 'Abd-ullah, Sanjari. Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Dīw-Shārī [or Dīw-Shāhī]. Maid-ul-Mulk, Khwajah Safi-ud-Din.

Standards.

On the right, Black; on the left, Red.

Motto on his august Signet.

"For me God alone is sufficient."

His Sultans and Maliks.

Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sam, his brother, ruler over Ghaznin.

Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Mas'ud. Bāmiāni.

Sultān Bahā-ud-Din, Muhammad Sām, Bāmiāni.

Malik Tāi-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Harab, Sijistāni.

Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Alb-i-Ghāzī, son of Kazil Arsalān. Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Muhammad, Timrāni.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangi, son of Mas'ūd, Bāmiāni.

Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Yūsuf, Timrāni.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Durr-i-Ghūr [the Pearl of Ghūr]5.

Malik Nāsir-ud-Din, son of Sūri, Mādini.

Malik Badr-ud-Din, 'Ali, Kidāni.

Malik Shāh, Wakhshi [of Wakhsh of Badakhshān].

Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Timrānī.

Malik Tāj-ud-Din of Mukrān.

Malik Mu-avvid-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, Timrāni.

Victories and Conquests 5.

The territory of Hirat, [defeat of] Kimai, Dawar, Faras' Kāliyūn, Fiwār, Saif-rūd, Gharjistān, Tāl-kān, Juzarwān,

5 See page 346, and next page.

⁶ The list of these victories and conquests is only contained in three copies of the original. Even if a place was evacuated before the arrival of the Ghuris, it is styled a "conquest" on their reaching it. What the "conquest" of Nimroz and Sijistan was may be seen from what our author himself says at page 378. The Malik of Sijistan merely acknowledged his suzerainty.

⁷ Also written Baras. See page 375 and note 6,

Jarūm, Tigin-ābād, Kābul, 'Ighrāk', victory over Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, of Hirāt, Ghaznin, Fūshanj, Sijistān, Nimroz, Maimand [or Maihand], Fāryāb, Panj-dih, Marw-ar-Rūd, victory over Sultān Shāh, Lohor' and Maro Malkah[?]' Nishāpūr, and Nisā.

XVIII. MALIK-UL-ḤĀJĪ, 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF MALIK <u>SH</u>UJĀ'-UD-DĪN, ABĪ.'ALĪ, SON OF ['IZZ-UD-DĪN], AL-ḤUSAIN, SON OF AL-ḤASAN, <u>SḤ</u>ANSABĪ.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, was the son of Malik Shujā'-ud-Dîn, Abā-'Alā', and he was the uncle's son of both the Sulṭāns, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, and was older than either of the brothers. He had performed the pilgrimage, as well as fought against infidels; and, in addressing him, they [the Sulṭāns] used to style him Khudāwand [my Lord]. The daughter of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, who was named Māh Malik [Malikah], and styled by the title of Jalāl-ud-Dunyā wa-ud-Dīn, whose mother was the daughter of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jahān-soz, was married to Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn'.

That daughter was a highly dignified princess, and knew the sacred Kur'ān by heart, and she had also committed to memory the Akhbār-i-Shihābī [the Shihābī traditions*],

In some copies but it is evidently the tract from whence Saif-ud-Din, who joined Sulţian Jalal-ud-Din, Khwārazm Shāh, at Ghaznin [see note 9, page 287,] against the Mughals, took his name.

⁹ Lohor will, of course, be repeated as one of Mu'izz-ud-Din's victories, as Ghiyās-ud-Din never passed the Indus.

¹ This name is doubtful, and is not very plain in either copy of the text. It might be, Mar and Malkah. No such place is mentioned in the account of his reign, and some of the places here recorded as conquests were derived by marriage, or their rulers, as in the cases of Sijistān and Nīmroz, merely acknowledged his suzerainty.

² See page 346, para. second. This Malik-ul-Ḥājf, or the Pilgrim Malik, was, by our author's own account, the son of Abū-'Alf, son of Shujā'-ud-Din, Abī-'Alf, and therefore he was not the uncle's son of the two Sultan brothers, but the son of their uncle's som—a second cousin.

To save perplexity to the reader, I must mention that this personage is the same as was mentioned at page 346 by the name of Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Pearl of Ghūr. See also page 393, and note 9.

³ She was first betrothed to Sanjar Shāh, son of Tughān Shāh, son of Mu-ayyid.i-A'nhal-där, Malik of Nighāpūr; and, after his, Sanjar Shāh's, captivity, betrothed to Zyā-du-Din, Muhammad. See page 182.

At page 301, our author states that this princess was the depositary of the traditions of martyrdom [خیادت]; but, it is evident, from what he says here,

and her handwriting was as pearls befitting a king. Once every year she was in the habit of performing a prayer of two genuflexions, during which she would repeat the whole Kur'ān from beginning to end. The cause of her passing from the world a maid was this, that, before he was joined in wedlock to her, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, possessed a Turkish hand-maid, who was the mother of his son [Rukn-ud-Dīn]; but he had contracted marriage with her, and was not capable of consummating his marriage with this princess. In beauty, purity, and self-restraint, she had no equal in the whole world.

The mother of the writer of these pages was the foster-sister and school-companion of this princess; and this devotee [himself] was brought up in the princess's own hall of favour and her haram of chastity, up to the period of his entering upon the bounds of adolescence, in the service of her royal dwelling, and her private apartments. The maternal uncles' of this devotee, and his maternal ancestors, were all attached to the service of that princess's Court, and to the Court of her father; and this poor individual [himself] received many proofs of that lady's favour and bounty: God reward her! At last her martyrdom and death took place in the territory of 'Irāk during the calamities which arose on the irruption of the infidels [the Mughals]. The mercy of the Almighty be upon her!

During the lifetime of Sultān Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din held in fief, belonging to Ghūr, the district of Bust, and Wajiah [or Wejah] of the territory of Garmsir [of Ghūr], and Urgān [or Urkān] of Ghaznin '. In the battle

and from what other writers state, that the book in question was the work entitled "Akhbār-i-Shihābī" [[-], the Shihābī Traditions, so called from the author's name, or the person to whom he dedicated his work.

^a A few copies have غوال —brothers, instead of غوال —maternal uncles.

^a The text is hopelessly defective here, and of the whole of the twelve copies collated no two agree, except the I. O. L. copy and the Ro. As, Soc. copy, but they agree in leaving out several words. The two oldest copies agree as above given, with the exception that one has Wurmaghān [عربات المعالم المعال

which the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, fought against Pīthorā Rāe of Ajmīr', and in which the Sultān was defeated, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, accompanied the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, and, during that expedition, did good service. When the Sultāns of Ghūr proceeded into Khurāsān, and Nishāpūr was taken, 'Alā ud-Dīn was installed in the territory of Nishāpūr, and, for a considerable period', he remained at the city of Nishāpūr, and acted towards its people with justice and beneficence.

When Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, arrived from Khwārazm before the gate of Nīshāpūr, 'Alā-ud-Din defended the place for some time. At last he entered into a convention, and surrendered the city to Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and returned again into Ghūr.

When Sultān Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn was removed to the Almighty's mercy, the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, conferred the throne of Fīrūz-koh, and the territories of Ghūr, Gharjistān, and Zamin-i-Dāwar, upon him; and, in the Khutbah, his title became Malik 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad. Previous to this they used to style him Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn', the Pearl of Ghūr.

⁷ The I. O. L. copy, and also the Ro. As. Soc. MS., and one of the others, have—"In the battle which Sulfan Ghiyāg and Mu'izz-ud-Dîn fought," &c. See under Mu'izz-ud-Dîn. Section XIX.

8 Nishāpūr [Shād-yākh] was taken in Rajab 597 H. Five months afterwards-in Zi-Ka'dah-Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, appeared before it. Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn had been left there, in command, at the head of a large force; and the walls [which, like the walls of Jericho, had fallen when Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din performed the miracle of pointing his riding whip at them, as related by our author at page 380] had been put into thorough repair. The Ghuris came out to fight, but, finding what the Sultan's army was, "they retired," says Yafa-i, "like so many mice into their holes." The walls were pounded to dust and the ditch filled, when Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn sent out the chiefs of the 'Ulama to solicit quarter for himself and troops. Sultan acceded to his request, and he and his troops were treated with honour, and sent back to Ghur. So the Ghuris only held Nishapur about five months. It must have been on this occasion that Ziyā-ud-Din stipulated never again to draw his sword against the Sultan, referred to at page 418. After retaking Nīshāpūr, the Sultan advanced to Marw and Sarakhs, which latter place was held by his own nephew, Hindu Khan [see page 252], on the part of the Ghūris. He fled to Ghūr on the approach of his uncle, but, the officer he left in charge not presenting himself, Sultan Muhammad left a force to invest it, and set out, vid Marw, for Khwarazm to prepare for an advance upon Hirat.

Our author has a peculiar way of his own for distracting his readers very often. After giving an account of Malik Ziyā-ud-Din, under the heading of his grandfather, Shujā'-ud-Din, at page 345-6, and calling him there by the title of Ziyā-ud-Din, he is here introduced again under a totally different

He held possession of Firūz-koh and the territories of Ghūr and Gharjistān for a period of four years; and in the year 601 H., when the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, proceeded towards Khwārazm, and took [with him] the armies of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, conducted sundry of the troops of Ghūr into Mulhidistān' and Kuhistān, and advanced to the gate of the city of Kā-īn, and [from thence] pushed on to Junābād of Kuhistān', and captured the castle of Kākh of Junābād; and, after having performed numerous feats of arms and holy warfare, he returned into Ghūr again.

When the Sultān-i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, attained martyrdom, Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of [Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn] Muḥammad, son of Sām, advanced out of Bust, which was one of his fiefs, into Zamīn-i-Dāwar; and the Maliks and Amīrs of Ghūr joined Sultān Maḥmūd, and

he set out towards the capital city, Firūz-koh.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Dîn came from Firūz-koh into <u>Gh</u>arjistān, and, when he reached the head of the bridge over the Murgh-āb river, the Sipah-sālār, Ḥasan-i-Abd-ul-Malik, came up after him, and caused him to turn back; and, by command of Maḥmūd, he was confined in the castle of Ashiyār of Gharjistān.

name; and it is only now, after three or four pages, that he tells us that 'Alā-ud-Dīn is the same person as figured before, in another place, under the title of Ziyā-ud-Dīn. The fact is, that his correct title, np to this time, was Ziyā-ud-Dīn; and, when Suljān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn conferred the throne of Fīrūz-koh and other tracts upon him, his title was then changed to 'Alā-ud-Dīn. Suljān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn held him in great estimation, and he appears to have deserved it; and this fact, taken in connexion with Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn, Maḥmīd's real character, noticed farther on, will account for the Suljān's making him sovereign over Ghūr in preference to Maḥmūd, and also for Maḥmūd's enmity towards him, and the murder of his son, Maḥmūd-l-Tān Shāh.

Not the name of a territory. It is derived from mulhid—heretic, &c. The Kuhistän of Khuräsän was full of these schismatics. All the copies of the text have the conjunction and between Mulhidistän and Kuhistän; but it reads redundant, and "the heretical country of Kuhistän" appears to be the

more correct rendering.

² Junābād, also called Gūnābād, is situated between Tabas and Hirāt. Kākh itself means a castle, a lofty building, and the like; but here refers to a small town of that name, a dependency of Junābād,—the "Goonabad" of Frazer and the maps.

³ Our author takes a most round-about way of relating ordinary events, and seems desirous of making a mystery of them. Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, unable to resist the combination against him, retired from Firūz-koh, was pursued, and imprisoned.

When Sultan Mahmud was assassinated, and the sovereignty of Ghur fell to Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz-i-Husain', he caused Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, to be released from the fortress of Ashivar, brought him to Firuz-koh, and treated him with honour and respect, until he slew the Sipah-sālār, 'Umr-i-Shalmatī, for murdering his son, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Mahmūd-i-Īrān Shāh. The cause of it was this, that, when Malik 'Ala-ud-Din, in the reign of Sultan [Ghiyās-ud-Din], Mahmūd, son of Muhammad-i-Sām4, was seized [as just previously related], his son, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Mahmūd-i-Iran Shah, retired to Ghaznin. He was a prince of sufficient greatness, and endowed with perfect wisdom, knowledge, and understanding, and famed for his lofty-mindedness and activity From Ghaznin he proceeded into Garmsir, and from thence came into Ghūr; and the Kashi people, who were the [most] refractory of Ghūr, to the number of about 50,000 men6, joined him. Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of Muhammad-i-Sam, with about 500 horse, of the main portion of his army, and some 2000 or 3000 foot, came forth from Firūz-koh, and a fight took place between them, and defeat befelf the Ghūriāns7; and Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Mahmūd-i-Irān Shāh, discomfited, retired to Ghaznin, and again came into Garmsir. He was seized by the Khudawand-zadah, Saifud-Din, Timrani, and he brought him to the presence of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, who directed that he should be imprisoned in the residence of the Amir-i-Hājib, 'Umr-i-Shalmati.

On the day that Sultan <u>Ghiyāş-ud-Din</u>, Maḥmūd, was assassinated, the Turkish slaves of Maḥmūd raised a tumult, and despatched one, who was named Amir Mangbaras-i-Zard, to put Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-

⁴ Another son of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Jahān-soz. He was named Utsuz after the third monarch of the Khwārazmī dynasty. See page 238.

⁵ That is to say, Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Mahmūd, son of Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām.

⁶ Five thousand more likely. Our author grossly exaggerates the numbers here. See page 399.

⁷ From this it is evident that the Kashis were Ghurians.

⁸ The son of a lord or great man.

⁹ There is some discrepancy with regard to this person's name. Some copies of the text have مربور مسئور مربور المربور المعارض المربور المر

Irān Shāh, to death. The writer of these words, Sarāj-i-Minhāj, states on this wise:—I was in my eighteenth year in the year 607 H.¹, and was present at the entrance [gateway] of the Sultān's palace, in the capital city of Firūz-koh, standing looking on, as is the custom among youths, when this Amīr Mangbaras-i-Zard came riding up with a wallet, with blood dropping from it, hanging from his arm. The head of Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd-i-Irān Shāh—may he rest in peace!—he had placed in that wallet, and he

entered into the Sultan's palace with it.

I now return to my relation again:—In the reign of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz-i-Ḥusain, when Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, obtained an opportunity, he seized Amīr 'Umr-i-Shalmatī, saying, "Thou hast used thy endeavours in bringing about the murder of my son;" and at night he slew him. Early the next morning, when [Sultān] 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, became aware of it, and the Amīrs of Ghūr demanded redress, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, issued commands for Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, to be imprisoned the second time in the fortress of Balarwān of Gharjistān. The remaining account of him, respecting what befell him when he ascended the throne of Fīrūz-koh the second time, will be related at the end of this Section.

XIX. SULŢĀN <u>GH</u>IYĀŞ-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD, SON OF <u>GH</u>IYĀŞ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, <u>SH</u>AN-SABĪ.

Sulţān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, son of Sulṯān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, was a sovereign of good qualities, and conviviality, pleasure, and jollity were dominant in his disposition³.

When Sultān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, his father, died , Maḥmūd was desirous that his uncle, the Sultān-i-<u>Gh</u>āzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, should assign to him the

Zāl, which means old, decrepit, &c. One copy has Mangūras-i-Zūd suwār, which would signify Mangūras, the swift or quick horseman.

1 Our author, being in his eighteenth year in 607 H., would have been in his sixty-mith year when he composed this work.

The palace or residence of the Sultans.

See note 3, para. 3, page 400, and page 405.

The L O. L. MS.,

52, is minus a leaf here.

throne of his father. But that expectation was not fulfilled, and the throne of Firūz-koh was conferred upon Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad', the Pearl of Ghūr, to whom the daughter of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, was betrothed'; and the territory of Bust, Isfizār', and Farāh, were given to Sultān Mahmūd'.

In the year in which [his uncle] the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī led an army into Khwārazm, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, marched the troops of Bust, Farāh, and Isfīzār, into Khurāsān, and proceeded to the gate of Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān; and in that expedition he manifested many marks of skill and activity. When the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, was assasinated, Maḥmūd determined to proceed from Bust to Firūz-koh, and, when he reached Zamīn-i-Dāwar, the Khalj' Amīrs of Garmsīr, with a numerous following, joined him. The Amīrs and Maliks of Ghūr all came forth to receive him; and, in the year 602 H.³, he reached Firūz-koh, and the throne of Ghūr came into his possession, and he brought the territories of his father under his jurisdiction³.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, retired from Fīrūz-koh into Gharjistān, and therein he was taken prisoner,' and

⁵ Styled Zivā-ud-Din before he was raised to the throne of Firūz-koh.

⁶ She was either the full or half-sister of Mahmud.

⁷ In some copies written Isf irar—the present Sabzwär.

⁸ Not styled Sultan until he gained the throne after the death of his uncle. His title had been Malik hitherto.

⁹ The compact which our author states to have existed previously between Maḥmūd and Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, at page 400, may have been entered into at this period. See also note ³, page 400. The object he had in marching to Marwi-Shāh-i-Jahān does not appear, neither in the account of his uncle's reign is it referred to.

¹ The Khalj tribe, I beg to remark, are neither Afghäns nor Paţäns, although some persons have made such an absurd assertion. I shall have more to say about them as I proceed.

² In this same year Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mubārak Shāh, the author of the history of the Ghūrīs in verse, referred to at page 300, died.

⁸ When information reached Mahmüd of the assassination of his uncle, Sulţan Mu'izz-ud-Din, he, in the first place, sent intimation to his brother-in-law, 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad [the Pearl of Ghūr], son of Abi-'Ali, and called upon him to acknowledge his authority. Mahmüd also communicated the tidings to 'Izz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, Wāli of Hirāt. Both of them, however, declined to acknowledge his authority, on which Mahmüd advanced to Firūz-kol with a large army. On this the generality of the Ghūrān Amirs deserted the cause of 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad, and went over to Mahmūd, and he gained possession of Firūz-koh, and throw 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad into confinement. See also note 'p page 400.

was confined in the castle of Ashiyār, as has been previously recorded; and when the whole of the various parts of the dominions of Ghūr, and Gharjistān, Tāl-kān, and Guzarwān 4, and the district of Fāras 5, and Garmsīr, came under the sway and jurisdiction of his Slaves, such as Sulṭān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn I-bak, and other Turk 6 Maliks and Amīrs, who were Slaves of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, each of them despatched a person of rank to the presence of his Court, and solicited from Sulṭān Maḥmūd letters of manumission, and the investitures of the territories of Ghaznīn and of Hindūstān respectively'.

He despatched a deed of investiture of the territory of Ghaznîn and a canopy of state to Sulţān Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yalduz³; and, when Sulţān Kuṭb-ud-Dîn, I-bak, advanced to Ghaznin, he despatched Nigām-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, to Firūz-koh, in the year 605 H.º; and Sulṭān Maḥmūd directed that a scarlet canopy of state and a deed of investiture of the government of the dominion of Hindūstān should be

sent to him.

Throughout the whole of the territories of $\underline{Gh}\bar{u}r$, $\underline{Gh}aznin_1$ and Hindűstän, the $\underline{Kh}u$ tbah was read for Sultān Maḥmūd, and the coin was stamped with his name 1 ; and, as he was

⁴ Also with j, as at page 376; and in the same way as Sijistān for Sigistān, the one being the Arab mode of writing the word, and the latter the local,

5 This name also is written Baras; and in some few copies Kadus. See

page 342.

All these Slaves were of Turkish parentage. Maḥmūd having succeeded to the sovereignty of the dominious of his late uncle, the latter's slaves became his slaves also, according to Muḥammadan law, by succession. It is not to be supposed that either Yal-dūz [I-yal-dūz] or Ī-bak were then styled Sulṭāns, or that our author means it to be so understood. They were styled so ultimately. See note's, pace 406, and page 502.

I Just above he says, "Yal-duz, I-bak, and other Turk Mailks and Amfrs;" but all could not have demanded the investitures of Ghardin and Hindistits Val-düt [I-yal-düz] and I-bak sent agents to Sulţān Maḥmid expressing their loyalty, submission, and obedience to him; and in the whole of the empire the Khutbah was read for him and the money stamped with his name and titles.

8 Two copies of the text add here, "in order that he might assume juris-

diction over the Ghazuin territories.'

⁹ See the reign of Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, beginning of next Section. There our author contradicts this statement entirely, and says Kutb-ud-Din received the investiture in 602 II., and that he went to Lohor to receive it.

¹ These events occurred, as our author here states, in 605 II.; but Tāj-ud-Dīn, Lyal-dūz, appears to have received the investiture of Ghaznīn some time previous to this, and it is somewhat strange that he should have continued to coin money in the name of the late ruler, Mu'zz-ud-Dīn, after what our auther

the heir of the kingdom of his father and his uncle, all the Maliks and Sultans paid reverence to his dignity, and showed the obedience of vassals unto him².

When one year of his sovereignty had passed, Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Maḥmūd-i-Irān Shāh, son of Malik 'Alā-ud-Din', Muḥammad, advanced from Ghaznin towards Fīrūz-koh, as has been previously recorded', and Sultān Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, marched from Fīrūz-koh, and put him to the rout, and about 5000 Ghūrīs [in that affair] bit the dust.

After a period of two years and a half, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Utsuz, son of ['Alā-ud-Dîn] Ḥusain, who was his [Maḥmūd's] father's uncle's son, proceeded from the country of Bāmīān into Khwārazm, and sought assistance from Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, to enable him to seize the dominions of Ghūr. The Malik-ul-Jibāl, Ulugh, Khān-i-Abi-Muḥammad', and Malik Shams-ud-Dîn, Utsuz, the Ḥājib, who were two of the greatest of the Turkish Maliks of the Khwārazm Shāhs, with the troops of Marw and Balkh, Sarakhs and Rūdbār, were nominated to give him assistance, and he ['Alā-ud-Dîn, Utsuz] proceeded by way of Tāl-kān towards Ghūr.

Sultān Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Mahmūd, brought out his forces from Firūz-koh, and on the limits of Maimand and Fār-yāb⁷,

here states, and even after Sultān Maḥmūd, the former's successor, had given Tāj-ud-Dīn his freedom with the investiture of Ghaznīn, much more up to the year fio H., when even Maḥmūd had been killed in 607 H. But see page 497, and 500—505; and Thomas: Coins of the PATHÁN KINGS OF DELHI, page 30.

² He was heir certainly in name at least; but the two favourite slaves of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn already possessed the greater portion of their master's dominions, from which Maḥmūd would have, in all probability, been unable to oust them. Mu'izz-ud-Dīn had, on more than one occasion, expressed a desire that these slaves, especially I-yal-dūz, should succeed to his dominions. See page 500.

Styled Ziyā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, before he came to the throne from which Maḥmūd deposed him. See page 393, and note ⁹, and page 408.

4 Page 395.

5 Our author styles him "Sultān," as well as many others, before their

attaining sovereignty.

⁸ Referred to in the account of the Khwārazm Shāhīs. He subsequently became the father-in-law of Rukn-ud-Dīn, son of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. See page 235.

7 Also called Fār-āb, Fār-āw, Bār-āb, and Bār-yāb. This battle and victory of Mahmid is not mentioned by other authors. See also pages 409 and 414

at a place which they call [by the name of] Sālūrah8, a battle took place between the two armies. The Almighty bestowed the victory upon Sultan Mahmud, and 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz, and the Khwarazm Shahi Maliks, and the

troops of Khurāsān were overthrown9.

When four years of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud's reign had expired, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, 'Alī Shāh', son of Sultan Takish, Khwarazm Shah, sought refuge from his brother's [Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh] presence with Sultan Mahmud. On the Khwarazmi Sultan becoming aware of this, he despatched distinguished personages [as envoys] to Firūz-koh. During the lifetime of the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, a firm compact existed between Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmūd³, son of [Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn], Muḥammad-i-Sām, and

8 A few copies have Aslūrah.

9 See note 3, below.

1 His title was Tāj-ud-Dīn, not 'Alā-ud-Dīn. See the account of him. page 252-3. He had been a prisoner in Ghur some few years previously, and was known to the Ghūriān Princes.

2 The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, and R. A. Soc. MS. both have-"when Sultan Takish became aware of it." Takish had been dead many years. The

printed text, of course, is the same.

3 By this statement our author entirely contradicts that made at pages 256 and 382, and the present statement is certainly one more likely to be correct. It tends to confirm what Yafa-i and some other works say, and which I shall

presently refer to.

Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, after the death of his father, expected that his uncle, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, would have placed him, the son, on his late father's throne of Firuz-koh and the kingdom of Ghur; instead of which, knowing Mahmud's love of wine and other sensual pleasures, he bestowed it upon the son-in-law of the late Sultan, Malik Ziya-ud-Din, the Pearl of Ghur, and gave the western districts of the empire to Mahmud as his appanage, as stated by our author at page 472. On this account Mahmud entertained no very good feeling towards his uncle, and he may have entered into communication secretly with the Sultan of Khwarazm, who was naturally hostile to Mu'izz-ud-Din; and such an understanding as our author mentions may have been entered into at the time Mahmud went on the expedition to Marw, mentioned at page 397, when Mu'izz-ud-Din invaded Khwarazm.

I rather expect, however, that our author, who rarely indulges in dates, has confused the events of this period, as Mahmud, previous to the assassination of his uncle, was not in a position to enter into "a firm compact" with Sultan Muhammad, unless secretly. Yafa-i says [and Jami'-ut-Tawarikh agrees] that when Mahmud seized the throne of Ghur, shortly after his uncle's death, "he gave himself up to drinking and riotous pleasures, as was the habit of the Amirs of Ghur, and attended to singing and jollity, whilst he neglected the affairs of the kingdom, and could not endure the fatigues of war. His great chiefs and nobles, perceiving his weakness of character, began to

Muhammad-i-Takish, Khwārazm Shāh, that friendship and concord should exist between them, and that the

⁴ Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Takigh. Before he succeeded his father, his title was Kuth-ud-Dīn; See note ¹, page 253.

grow disaffected; and 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, the Walī of Hirāt, who was the greatest prop of the Ghūrlān empire, took precedence of all the other chiefs in tendering allegiance to the Sulṭān of Khwārazm, and despatched agents repeatedly soliciting that the Sulṭān would annex Hirāt. Although that monarch had other important matters to attend to, still, fearing lest a portion of the Ghūrlān dominions, such as Balkh and districts around, might offer allegiance to the ruler of Karā-Khiṭā, and that that city might fall into his hands, he determined to move towards Balkh."

"The Walf of that part, styled 'Imād-uād:Dīn, the chief of the Nāmān [Bāmāna] Amīrs [called by our author, at page 260, 'Imād-uād-Dīn, 'Umr, Fiwārī], at first was most warm in his professions of loyalty and fidelity, and Balkh was made over to the Sulfān, who continued the government, as heretofore, in the Wālf's hands'; but, being afterwards detected in acts of treachery, and an intercepted letter having been placed in his hands, he threw himself at the Sulfān's feet. His life was spared, but he was sent away to Khwānam, after being allowed to take what treasure and other valuables he desired with him. His son [name not given] was also removed from the charge of the fortress of Tirmid, and that important post was made over to the guardianship of Sulfān 'Ugmān of Sannrṣand.'

The Tārīkh-i-Alft-differs considerably on these matters. It is stated therein, that, on the death of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn becoming known to Sulṭān Muḥammad, he assembled a large army for the purpose of attacking Balkh, then held by the officers and troops of Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of the late Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sam, of Bāmiān and Tukhārsitān, and invested that stronghold. At this crisis, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, had led an army against Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, ruler of Ghaznīn. On this account Sulṭān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmtid, who had intended to march his forces against Hitat, to reduce 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, to obedience, paused in order to see what the upshot of the other two affairs would be.

Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Àlī Shāb [Sulṭān Muḥammad's brother, who subsequently took refuge with Maḥmūd], who commanded the forces investing Balkh, being unable to take it, Sulṭān Muḥammad proceeded thither in person, and summoned the governor to submit. All was of no avail, and the Sulṭān determined to proceed without further loss of time to Hirāt, when news reached him that Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and his brother, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, had been defeated by Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, taken prisoners, and thrown into confinement. This happened, according to Faṣṭḥ-l̄, in 605 R. On this, 'Imād-ud-Dīn ['Umr], Governor of Balkh, bopeless of succour, surrendered the place. He was treated with honour and kiodness, and continued in charge of Balkh, as before. After this, Sulṭān Muḥammad advanced to Bāṭhūz, got possession of that stronghold likewise, and then he returned to Kahwārazm.

This latter statement is incorrrect. The Sultan proceeded to Hirat before returning to Khwarazm, as will be presently stated.

The Ghūriān Amīrs and Chiefs, who were in accord with Amīr Maḥmūd, were preparing forces, says Yāfa-ī, to attack Sultān Muḥammad's forces then

enemy of one should be the enemy of the other; and, on this occasion, Sultān Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, sent

before Balkh; but the Sulfan's troops made a swoop upon them, like a falcon on a covey of partridges, and routed and dispersed them before they had had time to complete their preparations. This must have been the affair called a victory of Maḥmūd's by our author. The territory of Balkh was now entrusted to the charge of Badr-ud-Dîn, Jā'lish [?], with a strong force to support him; and, after having disposed of the affairs of Balkh, the Sulfan proceeded by way of Juzarwān [or Guzarwān] to Hirāt, which he entered in the middle of Jamādī-la-Awwal, 605 H., to the great joy of its people. [Yāfa-i is, as well as other writers, somewhat confused as to the dates here, and says this took place in 607 H., and so it is stated in note 3, page 257-258, taken from that work; but it is evidently an error for 605 H., as it was only in the third month of 607 II.—some say in 606 H.—that the Sulfan first defeated the forces of Katā-Khiṭā under Bāniko of Tarāa, and a month after Maḥmūd Ghūti's atalh, if he died in Safar 607 H., as our author and some others say, and not in 609 H.

Rulers and chieftains from the adjacent parts now hastened to tender submission and allegiance to the Sultan, and to present themselves; and among these was the Malik of Sijistan [Yamin-ud-Din, Bahram Shah?], who was received with great honour. 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, son of Khar-mil, was continued in the government of Hirat and its dependencies, as previously related; and the Sultan, having disposed of these matters, despatched several ecclesiastics of the Kirāmi sect [Yāfa-i says in 606 H.] with proposals to Amir Mahmud, ruler of Firuz-koh and Ghur. Mahmud accepted those proposals. which were, that he should acknowledge the suzerainty of Sultan Muhammad. He despatched valuable presents to the Sultan from the hoards accumulated by his ancestors and his uncle, and, among other rarities, a white elephant. [A white elephant is said to have been captured in the battle in which Jai Chandra, Rājah of Kinnauj, was defeated by Mu'izz-ud-Dîn. See page 470.] Amīr Maḥmūd was named Nāyab or Deputy of the Sultan, for whom he read the Khutbah, and stamped the coin with his name. This must be the treaty our author refers to, but he has confused the events. This acknowledgment of the superiority of the Sultan is evidently what Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, took umbrage at, as mentioned in Alff, in note7, page 433, when he set at liberty Jalal-ud-Din, 'Ali, of Bamian, who, in 605 H., along with his brother, was taken prisoner in a battle against him [I-val-duz], and sent him back to recover the throne of Bamian, which probably was early in 606 H.

Sulţān Muḥammad, leaving 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, as Waii of Ḥināt, returned to Khwāram, and subsequently entered on the campaign against Gür Khān of Ķarā-Khiṭā. 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, hearing the report of the Sulṭān having been killed or taken captive in the second engagement with Gür Khān's troops [see page 258, and last para. of note], began to pave the way to make his peace with his former sovereign, and he again read the Khuṭbah for the ruler of Ghūr, and substituted his name on the coin. This must refer to Maḥmūd, as his young son, three months after his father's death, was taken away to Khwārazm, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Usuz, had been set up by the Khwārazmī Sulṭān as ruler of Ġhūr; and, such being the case, Maḥmūd could not have been assassinated in Ṣafar, 607 H., for this reason, that these events took place in the latter part of that year, or even in 608 H.; but if Ṣafar, 607 H., is correct, then Maḥmūd was dead one month bofore the first battle between the Sulṭān and Bānfa to Tarāz.

'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, son of Khar-mil, finding almost immediately after that

Maḥmūd a copy of that treaty, with a request, saying, "As 'Alī \underline{Sh} āh is the enemy of my dominion, it is necessary that he should be seized." In compliance with the terms of that compact, Sultān Maḥmūd seized 'Alī \underline{Sh} āh, and imprisoned him in the Kaṣr, which they call the Baz' Kushk-i-Sultān, at Firūz-koh.

That Kasr' is an edifice the like of which is not to be found in any country or in any capital—a Kasr in height and area, and with buttresses, balconies, and turrets, and of

the Sulfān was safe, to get himself out of this scrape, sent a requisition to the Khwāraxmī nobles located in Eastern Khurāsān for aid against the Ghūrīs, who, on account of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain's perfidy, were marching against him. This evidently is the matter referred to by our author at page 503, where he asys I-yal-dīz aided Maphmid against 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, but distorts the facts to suit his own purposes and inclinations, about the Sulfān of Khwārazm "flying before the forces of Ghūr and Ghaznīn;" and what Alfī refers to, namely, that Amīr Ismā'li, Maḥmūd's general, sent against 'Izz-ud-Dīn, was defeated and taken prisoner, and the remnant of his army returned to Fīrūz-koh. See note 's page 504.

With the aid of the Khwārazmī nobles of Khurāsān the Ghūrīs were overthrown, and this affair broke their power entirely, and their party dispersed; and 'Izzu-d-Dīn, Husain, was also seized and put to death, as related at page

258, last para., note 2,

The Habib-us-Siyar states that Sulfan Muhammad demanded that Mahmūd, Ghūri, should seize the former's brother, Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, and send him back in conformity with the terms of treaty previously existing "between himself and the late Sulfan, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn" [see note 8, page 481], but says nothing about a previous treaty between him and Mahmūd. This event, our author says, happened in the fourth year of Mahmūd's reign, which, by his own account, would be towards the close of 606 H. The treaty thus referred to is doubtless the treaty mentioned by Fasih-ī and others, which took place between Sulfān Muhammad and Sulfān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, after the latter's disastrous campaign against Khwāram.

I have burthened the text with this lengthy note in order to show what discrepancy exists with regard to the events in the history of the Ghūris about this time, and to show the impossibility of the correctness of the dates given by several authors. Yāfa-ī and Faṣiḥ-ī and several others [see note*, page 407] also say that Maḥmūd was assassinated in 609 H., and the Mir Āt-i-Jahān Nimā confirms it. It is also certain, from our author's statements, as well as from the statements of others, that Maḥmūd was assassinated in the same year as Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh was; and that event, even our author says, happened in 609 H. See also page 253.

It is moreover proved beyond a doubt, that, soon after the decease of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, the Ghūrian rulers became mere vassals of the Khwarazmi sovereiens, who, at last, annexed the whole of their extensive territory as far

as the Indus, or even to the Jihlam.

4 The word bas [µ], which is doubtless correct, signifies a mound, the spur of a mountain or hill, high ground. Some of the more modern copies have abas [µ], and some leave out the word altogether.
6 The signification of Kishk and Kasr has been given in note 2; at page 331.

such configuration as no geometrician hath made manifest. Over that Kasr are placed five pinnacles inlaid with gold, each of them three ells and a little over in height, and in breadth two ells: and also two gold humāe7, each of about the size of a large camel. Those golden pinnacles and those humās, the Sultān-i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, after the capture of Ajmir8, had sent in token of service, and as valuable presents, to This brother! Sultan Ghivasud-Din Muhammad-i-Sam, with many other articles of rarity, such as a ring of gold, with a chain of gold attached, the dimension of which was five ells by five ells, and two great kos [kettle-drums] of gold, which were carried on carriages. Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din directed that the ring and chain, and those kharbūzah 9 [kettle-drums], should be suspended before the portico of the Jami' Masjid at Firūzkoh; and, when the Jāmi' Masiid was destroyed by a flood, the ring, chain, and those kharbūzah [kettle-drums], the Sultan sent to the city of Hirat, so that after the Jami' Masjid of that city had been destroyed by fire, they rebuilt it by means of those gifts1.

Sultān Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Mahmūd, son of [Ghiyāş-ud-Din], Muhammad-i-Sām, was a sovereign very great, beneficent,

7 A fabulous bird peculiar to the East. It is considered to be a bird of happy omen, and that every head it overshadows will, in time, wear a crown. See also G. P. R. James's ATTILA, chap. vi.

8 The word used is الله signifying small turrets in the wall, and also sometimes used for battlements, cornices, pinnacles, &c. The last is the most probable meaning here, or possibly small open domes, such as we see in some

old Hindū buildings.

⁹ The text here again is very defective in all but the three oldest copies. Some of the more modern copies have "one kos," and state that the ring was "five ells by five dls," and instead of Kharbüzah have jazīrah, which signlifes an island. The same word occurs in Firightah—the original text I mean—who says two were presented to Kuth-ud-Din by the ruler of Ajmīr, which Dow, vecorrectly, translates "two melons of gold," without apparently knowing what they were; but Brigos, by way of improving on Dow, turns them into "two tents of gold tissue"!! See his translation, vol. 1, p. 194-5.
The word 1954 or 1954 a musk melon, suggests the shape of these drums.

1 Î do not find any notice of this fire în other works, not even in Faşiḥ-î which generally contains minute particulars of every event occurring at Hirst, as the author was a native of that city. Rauşat-uş-Şafā merely mentions that Maḥmūd finished the Masjid of Hirāt which had been left unfinished at his father's death, and this statement is confirmed by the Khuläsat-ul-Akhbār and some other histories. I do not find any account of a flood. Amîr 'Alî Sher, the celebrated Wazīr of Sulţān Ḥusain, Bahādur Khān, subsequently rebuilt

this masjid in 905 H., just a year before his death.

humane, munificent, and just. When he ascended the throne he opened the door of the treasury of his father. That treasury remained untouched as before, and Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Din had not appropriated any portion of it; and they have related, that of pure gold there were four hundred camel loads, which are eight hundred chests—but God knows best—and rich garments, vessels, pearls, and jewels in proportion, together with other valuable property of every description, the whole of which he disposed of.

During his reign gold, apparel, perfumed leather2, and other things, through his munificence and his presents. became very cheap. He also purchased a number of Turkish slaves, and greatly valued them all, and raised them to competence and wealth; and his presents, gifts, and donations were constantly reaching people, until one day, during the second year of his sovereignty, the son of his aunt, the sister's son of the Sultans [Ghivas-ud-Din, Muhammad, and Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad], Malik Tājud-Din, died 3, and no heir survived him, and his effects and treasures, consisting of ready money, gold and silver vessels, a vast quantity of wealth, were brought to the presence of Sultan Mahmud. He commanded that a banquet and festal entertainment should be arranged beneath [the walls] of the Kūshk, which is situated in the middle of [the city of] Firuz-koh4.

He spread the carpet of pleasure, and directed that festivity and gaiety should be the order of the day; and, from the time of meridian prayer to the period of evening prayer, the whole of that money, consisting of darhams and dīnārs, contained in leathern bags and in scrips, was poured out of the windows of the Kasr. As it was a

² Perfumed leather [25] must have been extremely valuable in those days.

³ Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Zangi, son of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, sovereign of Bāmfan and Tukhāristān. He was taken prisoner in battle with a body of Khwārazmit troops in the vicinity of Marw-ar-Rūd, at a time when peace existed between the Sultān of Khwārazm and Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, of Ghazmin, and sent to Khwārazm with other chiefs taken at the same time, and their heads were struck off. See page 425, and page 425, note 4.

⁴ The text varies here again. The oldest copies are plainly written as above; but, according to some, the sentence may be read: "in the Kaşr of Nar Küşhk which is [situated] in the midst of [the city of] Firūz-koh," and, according to others, merely "in the Kaşr which is [situated] in "&c. It is quite a different place to the Kaşr of Baz Küşhk. The Europeanized **loz** is derived from this latter word.

public banquet and a largess to both high and low, great and small, every description of the different classes of the people of the city of Firūz-koh were arriving in crowds at the foot of the $K\bar{u}_{2}hk$, and kept themselves under the Sultān's observation. To each class of persons he was giving a liberal share of dishes, long-necked flasks, lamps, ewers, cups, platters, bowls, goblets, and other vessels of different descriptions, all of gold and of silver, and, among other presents, above a thousand slaves of his own, both male and female, which he repurchased again from their [new] owners. The whole city, from those largesses, became [so to speak] filled with gold.

Sultan Mahmud was a overeign of very great good qualities, and his alms, donations, and honorary robes, to a large amount, were received by all classes of the people; but, as the decree of fate had [now] come, the motives of its advent began to appear. Having, at the request of Sultan Muhammad. Khwarazm Shah, seized the latter's brother, 'Ali Shah, and imprisoned him, 'Ali Shāh's servants, followers, and dependents, consisting of 'Irāķis, Khurāsānis, Khwārazmis, and Turks, in great numbers, together with his mother, his son, and his women, along with him, the whole of them agreed together with one accord, and several times, by means of each of the most notable among them, sent messages, secretly, to Sultan Mahmud, saving: "The reliance we have in the Sultan is, that as we have all come and sought refuge with his Highness, in the service of our master, 'Ali Shah, and have thrown ourselves under the shadow of the Sultan's power and protection, it behoveth he should not deliver us up into the hands of the enemy, for to seize and make captive of those who have sought one's protection will not turn out fortunate, otherwise we will make sacrifice of ourselves, and let it not be that the Sultan should be in dread of his life from us."

As the decree of destiny had gone forth, this communication, which they continued to represent to the Sultān, was without any effect whatever, and a party of 'Alī Shāh's dependents used, at night, to ascend to the summit of the hill, called Koh-i-Āzād, which was facing the Kaṣr, and the sleeping apartment of Sultān Mahmūd, and there they sat concealed, and examined the Kaṣr and noticed the Sultān's sleeping apartment, and marked the way to the

place. All this they had done, until on the night of Tucsday, the 7th of the month of Safar, in the year 607 H.*, four individuals of the party referred to climbed up on the roof of the Sultān's Kaṣr, and assassinated him, and got away again by the same road as they had got up. They then crossed the river of Fīrūz-koh*, which flows in front of the Kaṣr, and also climbed to the top of that high hill [the Koh-i-Āzād], and cried out with a loud voice: "O focs of our Malik! we have killed the Sultān: arise, and search for your Malik?!" When the day broke, the whole city became agitated; and they buried the Sultān in the Kaṣr itself, and subsequently the body was removed to Hirāt, and finally interred in the Gāzār-gāh *[catacombs] of Hirāt,

The eldest son of the Sultan, namely Bahā-ud-Din, Sam, was raised to the throne.

⁶ There is considerable discrepancy among authors respecting the year of Mahmūd's assassination. Yāfa-ī, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, Faşiḥ-ī, Alfī, Lubb-ut-Tawarikh, Guzidah, Mir'at-i-Jahan-Numa (which says "after reigning nearly eight years"], and some others say it happened in 609 H., while Jahān-Ārā, Rauzat-us-Safa, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, and a few others agree with our author's statement here as to the year 607 H. The former says it took place on the 7th of Şafar, whilst the latter, Rauzat-uş-Şafā, and some others say, on the 3rd of Safar. Habib-us-Siyar, on the other hand, affirms that it happened in 606 H., Khulasat-ul-Akhbar, 607 H., and the Tarikh-i-Ibrahimi, that it happened on the 3rd Safar, 597, but this must mean the year of the Rihlat [death of Muhammad), not the Hijrah [Flight], between which two eras a period of about eleven years intervenes; and 597 of the former is about equal to 608 of the latter. There is no doubt but that Mahmud was assassinated in the same year in which Firuz-koh was taken by the Khwarazmis, and Taj-ud-Din, 'Ali Shah, put to death; and this last event our author himself states, at page 253, took place in 609 H. The words سع without the diacritical points, may be easily mistaken by a copyist. See note 6, page 410.

⁶ A feeder of the Hari Rud probably, if not the main stream, which rises in Ghur.

T It is not certain who killed Maḥmūd; and authors are at variance on this point. Raugat-uṣ-Ṣalā agrees with our author, but merely copies his statements. Ḥabīb-uṣ-Ṣiyar of course agrees with Raugat-uṣ-Ṣalā. Vāfa-i, Faṣiḥ-i, Tāriḥ-i-lībrāhīmī, and a few others, state that he was found dead on the roof of his palace, and that his slayer was not known, and Jahān-Ārā, and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, agree with our author. Another writer says 'Alī Shāh slew him with his own hand.

⁸ Sometimes written Gazar-gah as above, and also Gazar-gah. It signifies the place of caves or hollows, a grave yard, catacombs. There is one at Shfraz in which the Poet Sa'di was buried, and the one near Hirat in which the venerated Khwajah 'Abd-ullah, Angari, was buried. The meaning of gazar is certainly a bleacher or washer, and gah a place, but the above term does not refer to any "bleaching ground," as a modern writer terms if, except that it is the bleaching ground for dead men's bones.

XX. SULTĀN BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, SON OF GHIYĀS-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD, SON OF GḤIYĀS-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, SHANSABĪ.

Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, son of Sultan Mahmud [at this timel was about fourteen years of age, and his brother, Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, about ten. mother was the daughter of Malik Tāj-ud-Din, of Timrān: and in the haram likewise were two daughters by this Malikah.

When Sultan Mahmud was martyred, the next morning, all the Amirs of Ghur and the Turk Amirs assembled together, and raised Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, to the throne of Firuz-koh; and the Malikah-i-Mu'izziah, who was the mother of Bahā-ud-Din, and the other children of Ghiyāsud-Din, Mahmud, incited the Turkish slaves 1 to slay the competitors for the sovereignty2. Of that party one was Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Mahmud-i-Iran Shah, the son of Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Abi-'Ali, and they martyred him, as has been previously recorded.3 Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Timrāni, was imprisoned, as was Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Mādīnī, likewise, who was the son of the uncle of the Sultans [Ghiyas-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud-Din]; and the Ghūri and Turk Amirs, in concert, stood around the throne with girded loins.

The followers of 'Alī Shāh, after five days, when they found the city had become tranquil, and that 'Alī Shāh still remained in durance, contrived to get up another tumult. They placed a number of men in chests, and pretended that they were going to bring treasure 4 into the city from without, such was the plan they chose to enable them to enter the city and create another disturbance; but, unexpectedly, one among them who had conceived the idea of this wicked action came and gave information about

Her title, not her name.

² Several Princes of the family who were supposed likely to cause trouble, and interfere with this arrangement, were put to death by his supporters.

I In some of the more modern copies this is reversed, and they have "the Turkish slaves incited her," &c.

³ See pages 394, and 396. At page 399 this is differently related. 4 Other writers say, "cases of merchandize;" and that forty-five persons were made to come out of these chests, and were, at once, put to the sword.

it. The chests were seized at the gate of the city, and about eighty men came out of the chests, of whom three were of those who had killed Sultān Maḥmūd⁵. All three were made a public example of and put to death, two others were cast headlong from the hill [of Azād] and seventy-five were thrown at the feet of the elephants and killed, amid the clamours and reprobation of the crowd.

Subsequent to this, Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Abī-Alī, Jahān Pahlawān, from Fīwār and Kāl-yūn presented himself [at the court]; and, when three months of the sovereignty of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, had passed away, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz [son of 'Alā-ud-Dīn], Ḥūsain [Jahān-soz], who was in attendance on Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, solicited aid from that monarch to enable him to possess himself of the dominions of Ghūr. Malik Khān [governor] of Hirāt, who at the commencement of the reign of the Khwārazmī Sulṭān bore the title of Amīr-i-Ḥājib, and who was an 'Ajamī Turk' of great intrepidity, and the slayer of Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak', was nominated to proceed from Khurāsān to render assistance to 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, son of ['Alā-ud-Dīn], Husain.

Malik Khān, with the forces of Khurāsān, set out accordingly to assist Sulṭān. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz-i-Ḥusain, in possessing himself of Fīrūz-koh. When they arrived in the vicinity of Fīrūz-koh, the Maliks and Amīrs of Ghūr took counsel together, and came to the conclusion that it was advisable to release Malik 'Alī Shāh from confine-

⁴ If it was so well known that 'Alf Shāh's followers had done the deed, it seems strange that they should have been allowed even to approach the gate, and that they should have come near the place and thus thrust their heads into danger.

⁶ That is a Turk born in 'Ajam. This personage is mentioned in a number of places. He is the chief who joined Sulfan Jalāl-ud-Dîn, Khwārazmī, in after years, with 50,000 men, was present in the battle of Barwān, and was the unfortunate cause of Saif-ud Dîn, Ighrāk's desertion. Our author styles him Malik Khān, Amin-i-Hājib, at page 287, but more correctly, Amir-i-Hājib, at pages 415, 416, and the last Section on the invasion of the Mughals. His correct name appears to be Malik Khān, entitled Amin-ul-Mulk, the Amir-i-Hājib. See notes to pages 287-291. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh styles him 'Amin Malik of Hirāt.''

⁷ See note 9, page 287, and note 5, page 471.

Subsequently perhaps styled Sulfan, after he had been set up as a vassal of the Khwarazmis, but Malik is more correct.

⁹ Some copies are much more curt with the following passage.

ment, and treat him with great honour and reverence, so that, on his account, some of the <u>Kh</u>urāsāni forces might evince an inclination towards that Prince, and, as he was also the adversary of his brother [Sulţān Muḥanmad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Shāh</u>], he might, in concert with this sovereignty, oppose in battle the forces of <u>Kh</u>urāsān. Malik 'Ali <u>Sh</u>āh they accordingly set at liberty, and they appointed Amirs to the [defence of] different sides around the city'.

Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, son of 'Alī, son of 'Abī-'Alī, and Amīr 'Uṣmān-i-Khar-faṣh², and other Amīrs, with troops, were appointed to occupy the summit of the Kohi-Maidān, and Amīr 'Uṣmān-i-Maraghanī, who was the Sar-i-Jāndār [the Chief Armour-Bearer], with a body of forces, was named to occupy the upper part of the Kohi-Āzād³. Other Amīrs, such as Muḥammad-i-'Abd-ullah, and Ghūrī, Shalmatī, and 'Umr, Shalmatī', were nominated to the Zār-Margh gate¹; and on a Thursday, during the whole day, round about the city and on the hills constant fighting went on. On a Friday, in the middle of the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, in the year 607 H.¹, the city [of

1 After strengthening the defences as well as they were able.

² This is evidently a nickname or byname [like <u>Khar-mfl</u>, <u>Khar-mak</u>, &c.] of no very complimentary nature—Ass-like. "Fagh" has, however, other significations, which see. "Two good copies have مرفض and مرفض respectively, but no doubt مرفض is intended.

³ This was the hill the followers of 'Alī Shāh used to climb to reconnoitre

the palace of Sultan Mahmud.

4 Some copies have "Salmani" and "Suliman," but the above is correct.

Some few copies of the text, the best Paris copy included, name it the Tara in gate. It is possible a gate might subsequently have been so named in remembrance of the victory over Pithora Rae, but the other best and oldest

copies are as above.

6 Sulţān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, having delivered Hirāt from 'Izz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mil, did not interfere in any way with Sulţān Maḥmūd, Ghūri, who had previously acknowledged his suzerainty, as already stated in note ³, para. 10, page 402. While, however, Sulţān Muḥammad was engaged in a campaign beyond the Jiḥūn, his brother, Tāj-ud-Din, 'Alī Shāh, having become dissatisfied with his brother, the Sulţān, left his dominions and sought the Court of Maḥmūd, who received him honourably and with distinction, and supplied all his requirements. After some time had passed 'Alī Shāh [and some of his adherents probably], managed to effect an entrance, secretly, into the Sarāe-i-Ḥaram [private apartments] in the middle of the day, where he found Maḥmūd saleep on the throne, and slew him, and no one knew who had done the deed. It however became noised abroad, that Tājaud-Din, 'Alī Shāh, had conspired against him, in order to obtain the throne of Ghūr for himself.

Firūz-koh] was taken [by the <u>Kh</u>wārazmi forces], and the dominion of the family of [<u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Din] Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, passed away.

I have already pointed out [note \$, page 407] what discrepancy exists between authors as to the year of Maḥmūd's assasination, and that, in all probability, 609 II. is the correct date, and not 607 II. Our author himself says, in his account of Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alf Shāh [page 253], that he was put to death in 609 II. and every copy of the text available agrees, and 'Yāf-ā, and 'Faṣiḥ-ā, and Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh confirm it; and, from the various accounts of these events, it is beyond a doubt, that both Maḥmūd and Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alf Shāh, were put to death in the same year, probably within a few months of each other, and before 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, ascended the throne, subject to the Khwārazmīs.

Our author here says it happened in the fourth year of Malmūd's reign, and, as he ascended the throne about the middle of 602 H., this would make it before the middle of the year 606 H.; and, in this case, the date given by most authors for the battle between Sultān Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and Bānīko of Tarāz, namely Kabī'-ul-Awwal 607 H., cannot be correct, as it is certain that the Sultān entered Hīrāt, after 'Lz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mīl, had been put to death, in Jamādī'-ul-Awwal, 607 H., three months after the date of Maḥmūd's assassaination given by our author and several others. See note 7, pages 260-261

Fasjib-i distinctly states, that, after Maḥmād had been killed in 609 II., as no one remained of the descendants of the Sulfāns of Ghūr worthy of the wand of sovereignty, the chief personages of Fīrūz-koh concerted together [our author's own statement above tends to confirm this, although probably he did not like to acknowledge that the Ghūrān Amīr's had set up a Khwārazmī as ruler], and raised Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī Shāh, to the throne. They then despatched an emissary to the presence of Sulfān Muḥammad, to represent to him the facts of the case, and to solicit him to confirm 'Alī Shāh in the sovereignty. The Sulfān Iseemingly] acceded to their request, and despatched Muḥammad-i-Baṣhīr arrived and began to congratulate 'Alī Shāh Ait the was to solicit him to conform the third that the conformation of the case of his chamberlains] with a robe of honour for 'Alī Shāh. After Muḥammad-i-Baṣhīr arrived and began to congratulate 'Alī Shāh with the usual ceremonies, 'Alī Shāh proceeded towards an inner apartment and commenced arraying himself in the robe, when Muḥammad-i-Baṣhīr drew his sword, and with one blow struck off his head; and congratulation was turned into condolement.

After this event no other could be found capable of the sovereignty, and Firūz-koh and Ghūr, and parts adjacent, were left in the possession of the Khwārazmī Sultān.

Habīb-us-Siyar says that Khwārazm Shāh, unable to secure his brother's person, advanced upon Chūr with a numerous army. The Chūrian nobles released 'Alī Shāh to create a diversion, but it was of no avail, and Frūz-koh was taken in 607 H. Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣalā states, that, after two or three days fighting in the hills and around the city, it was taken, as our author mentions, in the middle of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 607 H., and in this Jahān-Ārā, Muntakhāb-ut-Tawārikh, and others agree, the latter giving the 15th of that month as the exact date, which was just three months and seven days after the death of Mahmīdi, if he died in that year.

The statement of Yafa-i is different from those of other authors, who probably copied from our author's work, but as the former work gives far more details

The Amirs, who had been despatched to occupy the hill-tops around, all escaped in safety, and 'Ali Shah, and Malik Husām-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Abi-'Ali' of Kāl-yūn, went out by the gate of the Reg Pul of Bust 8, and each and every one of them betook himself to some part or other. Malik Husām-ud-Din betook himself to Kāl-yūn, and 'Ali Shāh set out towards Ghaznin. Sultān A'lā-ud-Din. Utsuz, was placed on the throne, and Malik Khan of Hirat returned thither.

Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, with his brother [Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muhammadl, his sisters, and his mother. together with the treasure then ready at hand, and their aunt the Malikah-i-Jalālī, the daughter of Sultan Ghiyāsud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām, who was betrothed to Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, and the whole, with the bier of Sultān Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, were conducted towards Khurāsān. The bier of Sultān Mahmūd was deposited in the Gāzār-gāh [catacombs] of Hirāt. The dependents, the married and the younger ladies of the family, and their property were removed to Khwarazm; and, up to the time of the troubles caused by the irruption of the infidels of Chin, they continued in Khwarazm, and were treated with esteem and honour.

Chroniclers have related in this wise, that, when the Mughal troubles arose, the mother of Sultan Muhammad. Khwārazm Shāh, had those two Princes [Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sam, and Malik Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad drowned in the Jihun of Khwarazm 9-the Almighty have mercy upon them and forgive them !

Two daughters of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, up to the date of the composition of this History [are still living |- one is at Bukhara, and the other is at Balkh,

9 See page 280

respecting the Khwarazmis than any other writer with whom I am acquainted, its statement, taken in consideration of what our author mentions, appears worthy of credit. Jahān-Ārā, another good authority, states that it was 'Alāud-Din, Utsuz, with an army sent along with him by Khwarazm Shah, who invested Firuz-koh, and took the city in the year and date above-mentioned, when Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, and his brother were sent away to Kh warazm and met the fate mentioned by our author, at the time of the irruption of the Mughals.

⁷ Styled Jahan Pahlawan at page 409. The "sand," or "gravel gate" leading to Bust. The text is very defective here, in nearly every copy.

married to the Malik-zādah of Balkh, the son of Al-mās, the Ḥājib.

XXI. SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, UTSUZ, SON OF SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, AL-ḤUSAIN, JAHĀN-SOZ.

Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz', was the son of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Jahān-soz, and was left by his father [at his death] very young in years; and he had grown up in the service of the two Sulṭāns, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and Mu'izzud-Dīn, but served the greater portion of his service at the court of Ghaznīn with Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn.

The chronicler relates after this manner, that, upon one occasion, Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn was attacked by the cholic, to such degree that people had given up all hope of his recovery. The Amirs of Ghūr agreed together, in secret, on this matter, that, if the Sulţān should unfortunately die, they would raise Sulţān² 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Utsuz, to the throne of Ghaznîn. Almighty God sent the draught of health from that dispensary, whence "indeed, when 1 am sick HE healeth me³," to Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, and he recovered.

Certain informers' made the Sultān acquainted with this circumstance, and this compact; and he commanded that it was necessary that 'Alā-ud-Din should be removed from the court of Ghaznīn lest, through the wrath of humanity, odium might chance to touch him. 'Alā-ud-Din proceeded to the court of Bāmiān to his uncle's sons; and [at that time] the throne of Bāmiān had passed to Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām', son of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, son of Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd. After he [Utsuz] had pro-

¹ Habīb-us-Siyar, and some others likewise agree with our author, and say that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ustus, was set up by Khwārazm Shāh after the dethronement of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām; and that 'Alī Shāh fied to Ghaznīh after the capture of Fīrūz-koh. The reason why this Khwārazmī, or rather Turkish name, was given to 'Alā-d-Dīn is mentioned at page 238. He was, no doubt, set aside by Abū-l-'Abbās-i-Shīg who slew Utsuz's brother, Saif-ad-Dīn, Muḥammad, for killing his brother, War-megh, otherwise he was the next heir to the throne after his brother stuffan Saif-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad.

² Not Sultan at that time, for he had not then come to the throne.

³ Kur'ān : chap. 26, verse 80.

⁴ It appears that all rulers had these news-givers or informers in their employ.

See page 428 for the account of him.

ceeded thither, they treated him with reverence, and the district of Nãe⁶ of Bāmtān was assigned to his charge.

After some time his [Utsuz's] daughter was given [in marriage] to his [Sultān, Bahā-ud-Dīn's] eldest son, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad', as will subsequently be, please God, recorded in the Section on the Maliks of Bāmīān.

The course of the days allotted to the extent of the dominion of the Sultāns, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, having run their course, and Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, having likewise died , Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, proceeded from the court of Bāmiān to the presence of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, to solicit assistance to enable him to obtain possession of the dominion of Ghūr and the throne of Firūz-koh. He was treated with great honour there, and received the most princely usage, and the Amīrs of Khurāsān, such as Ulugh Khān-i-'Abi-Muḥammad', Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Utsuz [the Ḥājib], and the Majd-ul-Mulk, Wazīr of Marw, with the whole of the troops of Upper Khurāsān were directed to afford assistance to Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, in possessing himself of the territories of Ghūr'.

Sultān Maḥmūd advanced out of Firūz-koh to meet them and overthrow their forces, as has been previously recorded³; and they [the <u>Kh</u>wārazmī nobles] retired, and again resumed their duties in the service of Sultān Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Shā</u>h.

6 This place is often mentioned in Baihaķī.

7 See account of him, No. III. of Section XIX.

8 Bahā-ud-Din of Bāmiān must be meant. Maḥmūd's son, Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, only reigned three months, but he did not die until cast into the Jiḥūn between ten and eleven years after these events, and after the slaves of Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din had succeeded to the whole of his dominions. See page 409.

⁹ The reader will not fail to observe that this mighty sovereign to whom the latter <u>Gh</u>ūris appealed when they wanted help, and whose suzerainty the nephew of Mu'izz-ud-Din acknowledged, is the same that our author would make us believe sent such abject petitions to <u>Gh</u>iyāg-ud-Din and his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, mentioned at page 381-z.

¹ Styled Malik-ul-Jibāl at page 399.

2 Scarcely probable, even by our author's own account, if the "firm compact" mentioned at page 400 is correct; but, as mentioned in note 3, page 400, the "treaty" must, really, mean Maphind's acknowledgment of Sulfan Muḥammad's supremacy, which took place after the affair here alluded to. The defeat of the Khwarazmi troops is not mentioned by the various authors. I have quoted, but quite the contrary.

3 At page 400.

Matters continued in this wise until after the assassination of Sultān Maḥmūd, when Malik Khān of Hirāt, the Amīr-i-Ḥājib, and [Malik] 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, from Bust, and the forces of Khurāsān, advanced towards Fīrūz-koh'; and they placed 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, on the throne of Ghūr, and Malik Khān of Hirāt again retired.

The Maliks and Amirs of <u>Gh</u>ür submitted to Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Utsuz; but hostility showed itself between him and the Turk Amirs of <u>Gh</u>aznin, and Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, and Mu'ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad-i-'Abd-ullah, Sistāni's, who was the Wazir of <u>Gh</u>aznin, and in pomp like a sovereign, encountered Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, in the limits of Kidān and the Margh-i-Nūlah, in battle, and the army of <u>Gh</u>aznin was defeated and overthrown.

Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, was a just monarch, learned, and a patron of learned men; and the Kitāb-i-Mas'ūdī, on ecclesiastical jurisprudence, he knew by heart. In the promotion of 'Ulamā [theologians], and the bringing up of the families of men of learning, he used to do his utmost, and every one among the sons of 'Ulamā, whom he continued to find diligent and persevering, he was accustomed to honour with his benevolent repard.

When he ascended the throne he set at liberty Malik ⁶ 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad, from the fortress of Ashiyār of Gharjistān; but, on account of his killing 'Umr-i-Shalmati, the Sulṭān again shut him up within the walls of the fortress of Balarwān.

Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, reigned for a period of four years, until Malik Naşîr-ud-Dîn, Husain, the Amīr-i-Shikār [Chief-Huntsman], brought an army from Ghaznīn against him and a battle took place between them in the

Compare the account at page 409, and on the preceding page. In a few copies of the text the words "and [Malik] 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz," are left out.

⁵ Styled Sanjari in the list of Mu'izz-ud-Din's ministers and nobles, at page 205

⁶ Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, the last of the dynasty. See page 417.

⁷ Subject to Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah.

⁸ Any one reading this would imagine that this Naşîr-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, was some independent chief who had made war upon 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Livu.' He was sent by Tāj-ud-Dîn, I-yal-dūz, against 'Alā-ud-Dîu, who, being a vassal of the Khwārazmis, was naturally inimical to I-yal-dūz, the trusted Slave the late 'Sulfān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, and on whose side most if not all, of the

centre of Ghūr, within the limits of Jarmas. The right wing of Sultan'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz's, army was commanded by Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, son of 'Ali, son of Abi-'Ali , who attacked the left wing of Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Husain's, troops, and overthrew and routed [that portion of] the Ghaznin forces, and pursued the fugitives [off the Malik Nașir-ud-Din, Husain, [with his centre] charged the centre of the Sultan's army, and wounded him with his spear, and a Turk among the troops of Ghaznin smote the Sultan on the head with his mace in such wise that both his august eyes exuded from their sockets 1, and he fell down from his horse. Malik Naşîr-ud-Dîn, Husain, remained on horseback over the head of the Sultan, when Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, returned from the pursuit of the routed left wing of the Ghaznin army, and charged Malik Naşir-ud-Din, Husain, and again recovered the [wounded] Sultan, and conveyed him towards the district of Sangah, and on the way the Sultan was received into the Almighty's mercy?. They buried him by the side of his kindred, the Maliks of the family of the Shansabanis.

Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, reigned for a period of four years and a little over; and, after his death, his sons became dispersed. One of them, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, went into Gharjistān to the castle of Sivā-Khānah s, and

Turkish Amirs were ranged, whilst the Ghūri Ami s were on the opposite side.

⁹ This chief is again mentioned by our author in his account of the Mughal invasion of these parts. Malik Kutb-ud-Din was directed by Sulţān Muḥammad, Khwānsam Shāh, under whose rule the Ghūriān empire west of the Indus had fallen, to put all the fortresses of Ghūr into a state of efficiency for defence against the Mughals Malik Kutb-ud-Din, at last, succeeded in reaching Hindustān after a narrow escape of falling into the hands of those infidels.

1 The idiom here, as in many other places, differs considerably, for example one set of copies has هر دو چشم از جای برخاست

2 This event happened, near Ghaznin, in 611 H. 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, ruled over Ghūr for about four years; and most authors state that he was the last of the race of Shansabāni who held sovereign power, and, with him, the dynasty terminated. This must have happened very shortly before the death of Lyal-dūz, who was put to death in the tenth month of this year, according to some, and in 612 H. according to others; but it is very probable that Lyal-dūz did set up the favourite and trusted kinsman of his late master. See page 418.

³ Several of the more modern copies of the text have Satā-Khānah for Siyā-Khānah. This fortress is again referred to in the last Section containing the

account of the Mughal invasion.

there he remained for some time; another, Malik Naşîr-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, went to the fortress of Bindār [or Pindār], in Upper Gharjistān, and long continued there. The youngest son, Jamshed by name, during the troubles of the infidel Mughals, entered into the district of Hariw-ar-Rūd, and, in the Darah of Khisht-Āb¹, he was martyred [by Mughals]. Those two elder sons of the Sulṭān, through the calumny of Malik Khān of Hirāt, received martyrdom at the hands of the slaves of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. They strove greatly, and strained every nerve; but, as it was not the Divine will, neither one of them attained unto sovereignty.

XXII. SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF <u>SH</u>UJĀ'-UD-DĪN-I-ABŪ-'ALĪ*, THE LAST OF THE SULŢĀNS OF GHŪR*.

Previous to this, in several places, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥam-mad, has been made mention of, that, at the outset of his career, he used to be styled Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, and when, after Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥam-mad, son of [Bahā-ud-Dīn] Sām, he ascended the throne of Firūz-koh, his title became Malik [Sulṭān] 'Alā-ud-Dīn'.

Since Malik Naṣir-ud-Din, Ḥusain s, at this time martyred Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz, Firūz-koh, and the dominion of Ghūr came under the control of the Amirs and troops of Ghaznin, and of Ghūr. They, in concert, set up Malik Ḥusām-ud-Din, Ḥusain-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād', over Firūz-koh, and they repaired the fort of Firūz-koh, and, in the midst of the city, and on the hill of

⁴ Khisht and Khusht, in Pushto, signify damp, wet, humid, dank, soaked, &c., and āb is Persian for water. The Pushto equivalent for water is ac-bah.

⁵ Our author makes the same blunder here as at page 391. Shujā'-ud-Din, Abū-'Alī, was 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad's, grandfather. See page 346.

⁶ This should be, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, restoral. See page 391.
7 See pote 3 page 202.

⁷ See note 8, page 393.

⁸ Previously mentioned as Amir-i-Shikar, or Chief Huntsman. The idiom here varies considerably.

⁹ One copy of the text has "Sih-Zarrād," and another Si-Zad. He was set up as temporary ruler perhaps. He is, no doubt, the same person who is referred to by our author in his account of the Mughal invasion, and who, at that time, held the fortress of Sangah of Ghir for Sulfan Muḥammad Khwāram Sihāh, and his son Sulfan Jalāl-ud-Din.

the fortress of Baz Kūshk, they placed a barrier of iron, and raised a rampart, and commenced hostilities. They brought Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, out of the castle of Ashiyār [of Gharjistān] and carried him away to Ghaznin. These events happened in the year 610 or 611 H.²

When Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, reached Ghaznīn, Sultān Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, treated him with great honour and reverence, and commanded so that they took the canopy of State of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn from the head of that monarch's mausoleum, and they raised it over the head of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, and he [Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz] gave him the title of Sultān, and sent him to the capital, Firūz-koh.

He returned to Ghūr again; and, when he had ruled for a period of one year and a little more, and the Khutbah was read, and the money was coined in his name, and his title of Sultān was made universally [public] in the Khutbah, Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, sent him the treaty which the Sultān had, at Nishāpūr, taken from him, to the effect that he ['Alā-ud-Dîn', Muḥammad] should never, at any time soever, draw sword against him [Sultān Muḥammad]. Accordingly, in the year 612 H., Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, delivered up the city of Firūzkoh to the trusty officers of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm

1 The text here is very defective in most copies, and varies considerably both in words and idiom. Whom hostilities were carried on with does not appear.

I do not think any of his coins have been found.
 At that time styled Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. See note ⁸, page 393.

² Sultan Mahmud was killed, according to our author and some other writers [see note 5, page 407 and 410], in the second month of the year 607 H.; and 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, was killed after a reign, by our author's account, of four years and a little over, which, supposing the "little over" to have been one month only, would bring us to the third month of the year 611 H.; and, according to several authors, on the 3rd of the tenth month of that same year, Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, was himself put to death at Budā'un by I-bak's son-in-law, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, who then ruled at Dihli. If these dates be correct, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, could not have reigned more than six months, which is evidently incorrect. Jahan-Ara says he vacated the throne, and retired to the court of Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, leaving him to take possession of the country, after he had reigned one year and a little over. This would bring us to about the fourth month of 612 H.; and the Muntakhabut-Tawarikh states that I-yal-duz was defeated and put to death in this year, not in 611 H. The period assigned for Utsuz's reign is probably too great. See under Täj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, No. IV., Section XIX.

<u>Shāh</u>, and was himself conducted to <u>Kh</u>wārazm, and was treated with great honour and veneration ⁵.

He took up his residence near to the Malikah-i-Jalālī, the daughter of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, who was joined in wedlock to him. They dwelt together in the Khwārazmī dominions for a considerable time, and [at length] death's decree arrived, and he was received into the Almighty's mercy. During the period of his own dominion and sovereignty, he had despatched trusty and confidential persons, and had acquired a place adjacent to [the tomb of] Shaikh Abū-Yazīd, Busṭāmī, and had caused the position of his tomb to be fixed upon; and, at the time of his decease, he had made it his last request that his body should be removed from Khwārazm to Busṭām.

5 Tāj-ud-Dīn, I yal-dūz, being dead at this time, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, was deprived of his support; and this may have been another reason for his abdicating. Several other authors agree with respect to this year, but others again distinctly state that Sultan Muhammad obtained possession of Firuz-koh and Ghur, and also of Ghaznin, in 611 H. Ghur, as previously stated, had been subject to him in the time of Utsuz. Yafa-i says: "After these events [before related], in 611 H., [the Jami'-ut-Tawarikh agrees,] news reached the Sultan [Khwārazm Shāh] that Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, had died at Ghaznin four author and several others state that he was put to death at Buda'un], leaving no heir who was capable of succeeding him the left no sonl, and that one of his slaves had assumed his place. This determined the Sultan to devote his energies to the annexation of that territory, together with other extensive provinces. Having effected his purpose, Hirat, Ghur, Gharjistan, and Sijistan, and the territory as far as the frontier of Hind, an extensive empire, and containing many flourishing cities and towns, previously ruled by Sultan Mahmud-i-Sabuk-Tigin and his descendants, up to the period of the rise of the Sultans of Ghur, fell under his sway, and he nominated his eldest son, Jalal-ud-Din, to the government of it," and a Khwarazmi Amir [see page 257] was appointed to rule it as his deputy or lieutenant. See the reign of Yal-duz further on.

In the treasury, at <u>Chaznin</u>, where Sultan Mu'zz-ud-Din had placed them, were found, at this time that Sultan Muhammad obtained possession of <u>Chaznin</u>, several documents from the <u>Khalifah's Court</u> to the <u>Ghurian Sultan</u>, inciting them to hostility against him, and vilifying and maligning him and his acts. The finding of these documents proved to him that the hostility of the <u>Churian Sultan</u> him proceeded from the instigation contained in them. He did not make known the contents of these documents at this time, intending to do so after sufficient time had elapsed for him to free the countries of the East. See note 4, page 265.

⁶ How was it possible for them to have dwelt legether, when, as our author himself states at pages 301 and 392, the marriage was never consummated, and the princess died a maid? They may have resided near each other. She had been betrothed to Tughan Shāh, grandson of Malik Mu-ayyid-i-A-fnah-där. before she was betrothed to Ziyā-nd Din. See page 18-0.

When, in accordance with his last will, they conveyed his remains to Bustām, the attendant at the Khānkah [monastery] of Bustām, the night previously, saw Shaikh Abū-Yazīd in a dream, who said to him, "To-morrow a traveller and guest arrives: it behoveth that thou shouldst perform the rite of going forth to receive him." At the dawn of the morning the attendant of the Khānkah set out from Bustām and, at about the first watch of the day, the bier of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, arrived from the direction of Khwārazm. It was conducted with all reverence and veneration into Bustām, and they buried him likewise adjoining the Shaikh-ul-'Arifain, Abū-Yazīd—the mercy of the Almighty be upon them!—and the Maliks of Ghūr, and the Sultāns of the Shansabi race, by the extinction of his dominion, came to a termination.

SECTION XVIII.

THE <u>SH</u>ANSABĀNĪAH SULTĀNS OF ŢU<u>KH</u>ĀRISTĀN AND BĀMĪĀN.

MINHĀI-I-SARĀI, JŪRJĀNĪ, the humblest of the servants of the Almighty's threshold, thus states, that, as Almighty God raised up great and powerful Sultans from the race of the Shansabanis, who were Maliks over the mountain tracts of Ghur, and brought within the grasp of their jurisdiction, and under their subjection, sundry territories of the countries of 'Ajam and of Hind, one of those territories was Tukhāristān and the mountain tracts of Bāmiān, the rulers of which part have been famous and celebrated upon all occasions, from the most remote ages, for the grandeur of their station, the abundance of their riches, the vastness of their treasures, the number of their mines, and their buried wealth; and, on sundry occasions, the sovereigns of 'Ajam, such as Kubād and Fīrūz', these rulers have vanquished and overcome. That tract of country has also been famed and celebrated, to the uttermost parts of the countries of the world, for its mines of gold, silver, rubies. and crystal, bejādah [jade], and other [precious] things.

When the sun of the prosperity of the Maliks and Sultāns of Ghūr ascended from the eastern parts of eminence, and Sultān' Alā-ud-Din, Ḥusain, Jahān-soz, had wreaked vengeance upon the people of Ghaznīn, he had leisure to turn his attention to the subjugation of that territory. After having subdued it, he installed therein his eldest brother, Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, and from him descended an illustrious posterity, and Maliks of grandeur and dignity, the marks of whose equity and beneficence,

1 See note 8, page 423.

² The name of a gem, by some said to be a species of ruby, and by others a species of sapphire; but jade is no doubt meant. Goez refers to a species of jasper found in these parts.

and the fame of whose munificence and obligations conferred, became published throughout the four quarters of the world3. The mercy of the Almighty be upon the whole of them!

I. MALIK FAKHR-UD-DÎN, MAS'-ÜD, SON OF 'IZZ-UD-DÎN, AL HUSAIN, SHANSABĪ.

Malik Fakhr-ud-Din. Mas'ūd, son of Al-Husain, was older than his other six brothers; and his mother was a Turkiah 4. He was a sufficiently great monarch; but, as he was not by the same mother as [his brothers] the Sultans, they did not permit him to occupy the throne of the dominions of Ghur, for this reason, that five other brothers 6, both on the side of the father and mother, were Shansabānīs, while the Malik-ul-Jibāl, Muhammad, who attained martyrdom at Ghaznin, was by another mother, who was the attendant of the mother of the Sultans, and Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, was by a Turkish bondwoman, as has been previously stated.

After Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain [Jahān-soz], became disengaged from taking revenge upon the inhabitants of Ghaznin, and had demolished the Kasrs of Bust, which was the place of residence of the house of Mahmud, he caused an army to be got ready from the capital of Ghūr, and marched towards Tukhāristān, and, in the subjugation of that territory, and the strongholds thereof, manifested great alertness and dexterity; and the Amirs of Ghur, in that army, displayed such valour and martial heroism. that, if Rustam-i-Dastan' had been present, he would have

recited the story of their valour.

When those tracts were taken possession of, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Husain, placed Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud [his brother], upon the throne of Bamian, and that territory was com-

³ A term constantly quoted by Eastern authors before the time of Columbus. 4 The feminine of Turk. 5 They only assumed the title of Sultan some time subsequent to this period.

and, of course, were not all Sultans at once. 6 Here our author refers over again to the "Sultans" just mentioned. There is no improving his style without taking great liberty with the original.

7 Dastan, a name of Zal-i-Zar [Zal of the Golden Locks], the father of Rustam.

mitted to his charge. Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, having ascended the throne, the adjacent hill territories, [namely] the mountain tract of <u>Shaknān</u>, <u>Tukhāristān</u>, as far as Dar-gūn¹, and Bilaur, and the tracts towards Turkistān

8 Here, again, our author contradicts his own previous statements. At page 339 he says that, on the death of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain [the father of Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, and others], Saif-ud-Dîn, Suri, the eldest legitimate son, who succeeded to his father's authority, dividat the dominions among his six brothers and himself, and that, in that division, Bāmiān voas assigned to the eldest brother, Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd. Now he states that 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, conquered this territory several years subsequently, after he had destroyed the city of Ghazain. Iahān-Ārā also states

that, in the division of the father's hereditary patrimony among the brothers,

Bamian went to the eldest son by a Turkish bond-woman, Fakhr-ud-Din,

The idder Chroniclers contain a great deal respecting the affairs of Tukhūristān and the Hayātillah, whatever "the delay-stamped annals of Senaccherib"
[Sennacherib T] may say. Ihni-Khurdid-bih, in his account of the Turks, also
refers to them. Hayāti [Jk-], according to the ancient dialect of Bukhārā,
is said to signify a man of great strength and size; the 'Arabs made ir Hayāti
[Jk-]'—the plural form of the word, applied to the people generally, being
Hayātilah [-ik-]. One writer states that Hayāti was the name of the territory of Khurlān, a dependency of Badakhāhān, also called Kol-iā [Kol-iāhāb, which signifies a lake]; but this is contrary to the Masālik wa
Makālik, and to our author's account.

Firuz, son of Yazdijurd, son of Bahram-i-Gur, when his brother Hurmuz ascended the throne, fled from his fief of Sijistan, by way of Gharjistan and Tukhāristān, and sought shelter and aid from Khush-nawaz, the king of the Hayatilah. According to the Rauzat-ut-Tahirin, the name of the ruler he sought aid from was Faghāni, the Chaghāni, or Shāh of the Chaghānians. He espoused the cause of Firuz, and agreed to aid him with 30,000 men if Firuz would cede to him Tirmid and Wesah. Another author calls the people of Tukhāristān itself Hayātilah likewise. By Faghāni's aid Firūz gained the throne of Iran; and for many years subsequent to this, and during several succeeding reigns, there was alternate peace and war between the sovereigns of Īrān and the Hayātilah rulers. In the time of Nusherwan, the Hayātilah, heing without a ruler, are said to have chosen Faghāni [this would seem, from what was stated above from another author, to be the name of the family, not the person's name], the Chaghanian ruler of Tukharistan. I have neither space nor time to say more at present; but will merely observe, that, by some modern writers, Tukhāristān and Turkistān are often confused, one for the other.

9 Shaghnān and Shaknān are synonymous: "Shighnan" is not correct, but such as one would adopt who could not read the original for himself, and depended entirely on the statements and translations of others.

i Considerable discrepancy exists here, in some copies of the text, with respect to these names. The best copies have as above, although the oldest leaves out the and, which makes it Dar-gim of Bilaur. The next best has Dar-gin for Dar-kot or küt], which, if the _of the original MS. was written rather long drawn out, as is often done, might be mistaken for _o The next best copies, which are comparatively modern, have Dar-gin for Dar-gor], and one Dar-bin.

to the boundary of Wakhsh² and Badakhshān, the whole came under his jurisdiction ³.

Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, had able and accomplished sons; and, when Ķimāj', from Balkh, and Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz', from Hirāt, who were slaves of the Sanjari dynasty, conspired to eject Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn, Muhammad-i-Sām, in order to take possession [of the country] as far as Firūz-koh, and the Ghiyāṣiah sovereignty was, as yet, in the morning of its ascendancy, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, rendered assistance to them, under the stipulation that whatever pertained to Khurāsān should go to them, and what belonged to Ghūr to [him] Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd'.

When Almighty God bestowed victory upon Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, of Hirāt, was slain, he despatched the head of Yal-duz, 7 to his uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, whose forces had arrived near at hand. Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn followed in pursuit of them, and Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn was put to the rout. Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn discerned him, and caused him to turn back again, and conducted hīm to his camp, and there placed him on the throne s; and Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, both of them, stood before the

[or Dar-bor]. The printed text, and one of the most recent copies, have Dar-kūfah; and the former, in a note, Bür-Bilaur; and, in brackets, as the probable reading, "Darwāz and Bilaur;" but the different copies of the text collated do not show that this is at all the correct reading.

2 Also called Khutlan.

³ The dominions of the Sultāns of Bāmfān and Tukhāristān, according to Jahān Ārā and several other works, extended north to the territory of Kāṣḥ-ghar; south as far as Gharjistān and Ghūr; east to Kaṣḥmīr; and west as far as Tirmid. See note 6, page 426.

4 This appears to be the same Amir Kimāj referred to in note 3, page 358; and he is probably the same as mentioned in note 5, page 374; and this Yal-duz [I-yal-duz] must be the same who is mentioned in the same note, which see.

⁵ See pages 371-4.

6 Mr. E. Thomas, in his paper on the "Coins of the Kings of Ghazni," Ro. As, Journal, vol. xvii., in a note, page 199, erroneously states that, "On the first rise of Chiás-aid-din, Fakir[Fakhr]-qu-d-din aids him, under the condition that all the conquests in Khorásán should pertain to the former, while the acquisitions in Ghór should fail to his own share." The conditions were between Kimāj and Yal-duz and Fakhr-ud-Din, not Ghiyās-ud-Din.

7 See the account given in Ghiyāş-ud-Din's reign, where our author says

that Kimāj's head was sent, page 373, and note 9.

* A round-about way of stating that they took him prisoner.

throne in attendance on him. Chroniclers state that Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, became enraged [at this], and that he reproached both of them unjustly, saying that they mocked him. His words were these: "You two rascally boys laugh at me!" The Almighty's mercy be upon them!

This exclamation of his has been mentioned here for this reason, that the beholders and readers of these pages may know the laudable qualities of these two monarchs, the extent of their compassion and elemency, to what degree they guarded the honour and respect [due] towards their uncle, and to what extremity they bore his injustice?

When the two Sultans¹ became disengaged from this audience, they caused complete arrangement to be made for the return of their uncle, and conferred honorary dresses upon the whole of his Amirs and Slaves, and caused them to return. Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, retired towards Bāmiān again; and there he acquired great power, and the Sultans and Maliks of Ghūr used constantly to pay him homage.

His career came to an end in [the enjoyment of] sovereignty ³, and he ruled for a long period and died. He had several worthy and deserving sons. Sultān <u>Sh</u>amsud-Dîn was the eldest, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn, Zangî ³, and Malik Husām-ud-Dîn, 'Alī.

II. SULŢĀN <u>SḤ</u>AMS-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF MAS'ŪD. SON OF AL-ḤUSAIN, <u>SḤ</u>ANSABĪ.

When Malik Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, of Bāmiān, was

⁹ We have ample proofs of their amiability and long-suffering, from our author's point of view, in the fate of Suljān <u>Kh</u>usrau Malik and his family, and 'Abbās-i-Shīs.

¹ Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, the younger brother, only received the title of Sultān some time after this occurrence.

² Such are the words in the original: it seems a truism if the passage is not corrupt.

^a This is the Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangi, who had his head struck off at Khwānzm, mentioned in note ^a, page 481. He can scarcely be the same person as mentioned at page 342, because the latter's mother was one of the sisters of the two Sultāns, Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn. If he is, his father, Fakkn-ud-Dīn, Mas'ud, must have married his own niece; while his son, Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, must have married her sister, a most unlikely alliance, illegal according to Muḥammadan law. There must have therefore been two persons named Tāj-ud-Dīn, Zangi, but of the same race.

E e

taken to the Almighty's mercy, his eldest son was Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad 4, and they raised him to the throne of Bāmīān; and the sister of the Sultāns Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn was married to him, which princess's title was Ḥurrah-i-Jalālī. She was older than either of the Sultāns, and was the mother of Sultān-Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, the son of [Shams-ud-Dīn] Muḥammad.

When Sultān Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad, ascended the throne of Bāmiān, in accordance with the last will of his father, and with the concurrence of the Amirs, Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din sent him a robe of honour, and paid him abundant deference and respect. He brought the whole of the territory of Tußhāristān under his sway, and, subsequently, the city of Balkh, Chaghāniān , Wakhsh, Jarūm, Badakhshān, and the hill tracts of Shaknān , came under

5 The best Paris copy, the I. O. L. MS., and the Ro. As. Soc. MS., have

Işfahān!!

6 Others say Balkh, Bughlan or Buklan [both are correct], Chaghanian, and some part of Badakhshan. According to our author, his father, Fakhrud-Din, Mas'ud, held sway over some of these very tracts, now mentioned as "subsequently" coming under the sway of the son. However, it is clear, whatever "Hwen Thsang" may say to the contrary, that Tukhāristān was but a district or province of Balkh, and not a vast tract of country "reaching from the frontiers of Persia" [wherever that might mean in those days] "to the Thsung-ling or Mountains of Pamir;" and that "the great Po-chu or Oxus" did not "run through the middle" of the Tukhāristān here referred to, for the very good reason that it lies south of the Jihun, Amu, or Oxus. The MASALIK WA MAMALIK plainly states, that of Balkh there are a number of divisions and districts, such as Tukhāristān, Khulum, Samnagān, Bughlan, Zawālin Ithis, in all probability, is Mr. Thomas's "Warwalin" [وروالين] -the first , is the copulative conjunction, and the, wants the point to make it;]; and Baihakis, Walwālij — وأوالي —may be traced to the same source. Of this Tukhāristān, Tāl-kān was the chief and largest town. Had such a place as Walwālij been capital of Tukhāristān, our author would, without doubt, have known of it, and have mentioned it here. Chaghanian and Wakhsh lie to the northward of this Tukhāristān, and are accounted in Māwar-un-Nahr, as this latter term signifies, viz. beyond the river. "The Wakhsh-Ab-river of Wakhshissues out of Turkistan into the territory of Wakhsh, runs onward towards Balkh, and falls into the Jihun, near Tirmid." In his account of the Mughal invasion, our author mentions Balkh [بلي] and Walkh [ولنو] sometimes as one and the same place, and, at others, as separate places.

While on this subject, I must now mention another matter. In the MASALIK

⁴ This is the Mailk's son, <u>Shams-ud-Din</u>, Muḥammad, who was taken prisoner by the Sipah-sālār, Barankagh, along with 'Alā-ud-Din, Husain [Jahān-so2], and 'Alī, Jatrī, in the engagement with Sultān Sanjar before Aobah in 547 H. <u>Shams-ud-Din</u>, Muḥammad, obtained 50,000 dinārs from Bāmiān for his ransom, which sums was paid over to Barankagh. Our author, had he known this, is not likely to have related it.

his jurisdiction. He marched forces in every direction, and throughout the whole of those parts his mandates were obeyed.

In the year in which the Sultans of Ghur and Ghaznin led an army into the territory of Rūd-bār of Marw, to repel Sultan Shah, the Khwarazmi 7, Sultan Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, by command of the Sultans, brought the forces of Bāmiān and Tukhāristān and joined them. On the occasion of Sultan Shah's overthrow, Malik Baha-ud-Din, Tughril, of Hirāt, who had been a slave of Sultan Sanjar, and who, obliged to evacuate Hirāt, had joined Sultan Shah, in this engagement fell into the hands of the troops of Bāmiān. They slew him, and brought his head to the presence of Sultan Ghivas-ud-Din. The Sultan [in consequence] became very cordial towards Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, and upon this very occasion his advancement 8 took place, and he received the title of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, and a black canopy of state was assigned to him.

Previous to this, neither Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, nor he had any canopy of state, and his designation was Malik Shams-ud-Dīn; but, when he acquired a canopy of state, he obtained the title of Sulṭān ²; and by Sulṭān Chiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, who were his uncle's sons, he was treated with great honour and reverence.

wa Mamālik, Bāmīān is described as "a town about half the extent of Balkh [in those days Balkh was a very extensive city], Situated on a hill, and in front of it flows the river which runs through Gharjistān." The Tārīkhi-Alfī, a work of great authority, Jahān-Ārā, the Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, and some others, distinctly aver that there was no town whatever called Bāmīān, which is the name of the country, and that Rāṣī [[--]], Raṣī [[--]], was the name of its chief town, which place was totally destroyed by Chingiz Khān on his advance towards Ghaznīn. The Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh says Bāmīān is also called Tukhāristān! Rāṣī is probably the place called "Gūlgūlih" by Masson, but such name is not to be found in any Persian history that I know of. The Mughals styled it Manbālig—the unfortunate city—after its ruin.

⁷ See pages 249, 378, and note⁵, page 379.

^{**} The printed text and I. O. L. MS. 1952, and two others, have its—to repulse, drive away; and, in the R. A. Soc. MS. is—repulsing, driving away!

⁹ The text here exhibits considerable variations, and great differences of idiom express the same signification. Some authors state that, on this occasion, Mu'izz-ud-Din also received the title of Sulfan, and that before his title was only Malik.

The Almighty bestowed upon him worthy and excellent offspring, and blessed him with six sons 1; and for a considerable time the country of Tukhāristān continued under the jurisdiction of his officers. He patronized learned men of distinction, and they took up their residence in his dominions; and acted with equity and beneficence towards his subjects, and died renowned and popular; and, after him, the sovereignty came to Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām.

III. SULŢĀN BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, SON OF SULŢĀN <u>SH</u>AMS-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD.

Sulţān Bahā-ud-Dîn, Sām, was a very great and august monarch, and was just and enlightened. He was the patronizer of learned men, and the dispenser of equity; and, in his day, the whole of the learned 'Ulamā were unanimous, that there was no Musalmān sovereign who was a greater cherisher of learned men, for this reason, that his intercourse, his communion, and his converse, were exclusively with 'Ulamā of judgment and discrimination.

He was, on both sides, a <u>Sh</u>ansabāni², and his mother was the Ḥurrah-i-Jalāli, the daughter of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, the sister of the two Sulṭāns, and older than either of them. Kāẓi Tāj-ud-Din, Zawzani, who was the most eloquent man of his day, [upon one occasion] was delivering a discourse within his [Bahā-ud-Din's] palace, and, during the invocation, the Sulṭān said: "What adornment can I give to the bride of the realm upon the face of whose empire two such moles exist, one <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Din, and the other Mu'izz-ud-Din ³!" The Almighty's mercy be upon them all!

² The mother of his grandfather, Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ud, was a Turkish

¹ Our author, like others, does not even give the names of these sons. Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, however, was not the eldest of the sons of Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad. When the latter died, the Bāmiān nobles raised his eldest son, 'Abbās, by a Turkish wife, to the throne. The two brothers, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din, were angry at this, and they deposed 'Abbās, and set up their sister's son, Sām, and he received the title of Bahā-ud-Din. 'Abbās might have been here entered among the rulers of Tukhāristīn and Bāmiān as well as Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, among the sovereigns of Ghazmin.

³ These are our author's exact words, but what the "invocation" was our chronicler does not say; but it is a way he has of mystifying his own statements. The fact is, as related by another author, that the Kāzī, mentioned

In short, the admirable benevolence of that monarch towards the 'Ulama of Islam was more than can be contained within the compass of writing. That Miracle of the World, Fakhr-ud-Din, Muhammad, Rāzi 4, composed the Risālah-i-Bahāiah in that Sultān's name; and for a considerable period he continued under the shadow of that sovereign's favour and protection. That Chief of learned Doctors, Jalāl-ud-Din, Warsak 5, during the Sultan's reign, attained the office of Shaikh-ul-Islam of the district of Balkh; and Maulana Saraj-i-Minhaj f, that Most Eloquent of 'Ajam, and the Wonder of his Age, was sent for, secretly, by Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, from the Court of Firuz-koh, who despatched a seal-ring of turquoise stone with the name of Sam engraved upon it, and with great respect and reverence invited the Maulana to his Court. When this circumstance occurred, the writer of this History, Minhāi-i-Sarāi, was in the third year of his age.

The requests and solicitations of Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, were continuous and unremitting. The reason of this was, that, during the time of [his father] Malik ⁷ Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Maulānā proceeded from Ghaznīn towards Bāmiān, and, at that period, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, held charge of the district of Balarwān ⁸. He paid his respects to the Maulānā, and sought to retain

above, began one day from the pulpit to eulogize Bahā-ud-Dīn, and was extolling the flourishing state his dominions were in, when that monarch exclaimed: "What adornment can I give unto the kingdom's bride, when on the cheek of her sovereignty are already two such moles?" The word khāī significs a mole, and also a maternal uncle; and the moles here referred to are his two maternal uncles. (Phivās-ud-Dīn and Muǐgz-ud-Dīn.

4 Jahān-Ārā and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh say that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, was a learned monarch, and a friend of learned men; as an example of which he entertatined, near his person, the Imān Fakhr-ud-Dīn, or Rāz, and treated him with great favour and consideration. They do not, however, mention "that Most Eloquent of 'Ajam, and the Wonder of his Age," our author's father; in fact, I have never noticed his name mentioned in any other work. This same Imām was subsequently accused, by some parties, of having brought about the assassination of Sulfān Mu'tzz-ud-Dīn. See note ', page 485, and note ', page 385.

⁵ In some copies Warsal and Kadsak. The above seems the most correct.

6 Our author's father.

7 Sultan Shams-ud-Din, whose reign has just been given.

The majority of the best copies are as above, but two others have "Balwan," and three others "Barwan," and one "Balarwan of Bamian;" but at page 113 our author says Balarwan is in Ghapitstän.

him, and showed him great respect and veneration; and he had both seen and heard his soul-inspiring discourse, and his heart-expanding conversation, and the pleasure he had derived therefrom remained impressed upon his royal mind, and he was desirous of enjoying all the delicacies of the benefits of the Maulānā's conversation? When Bahā-ud-Dìn, Sām, reached the throne of sovereignty of Bāmān, he sent for the Maulānā repeatedly, and charged him with the administration of all the offices connected with the

law, and sent him his private signet-ring.

The Maulana proceeded to the Court of Bamian from the Court of Firuz-koh without the permission of Sultan Ghivās-ud-Din: and, when he arrived in that part, he was treated with great respect and honour, and the whole of the [legal] functions of that kingdom, such as the Chief Kāzī-ship of the realm and other parts, the judicial administration of the triumphant forces, the chaplaincy of the State 1, together with the office of censor 2, with full power of the ecclesiastical law, the charge of two colleges, with assigned lands and benefactions abundant, all these offices the Maulana was entrusted with. The diploma conferring the whole of these offices, in the handwriting of the Sāhib3, who was the Wazir of the kingdom of Bāmiān, up to the present time that this TABAKAT was put in writing in the sublime name of the great Sultan, Nasir-ud-Dunya wa ud-Din, Abū-l-Muzaffar-i-Mahmūd, son of Sultan I-val-timish, Kasim-i-Amir-ul-Mümminin4-whose monarchy may the Almighty perpetuate !- still exists in the Kharitah [a bag of embroidered silk containing the author's diplomas; along with his banner and his turban of honour. The mercy of

⁹ Allowance must be made for a little family blarney.

¹ Here, too, the text varies much. One set of copies—the oldest—has as above مثالث علم الله و القال ديم و تفال الله و القال ديم و تفال من الله و القال الله و القال الله و القال الله و القال الله و القال الله و القال دعالي حشم متصور و خطابت "the Chief Kagt.ship of the country, and settlement of the requests of the triumphant forces or retinue."

² An official who examines the weights and measures, and has a supervision over merchants and shop-keepers, superintends the markets, and fixes the price of grain, &c. He can whip those found wine-bibbing, and interfere in other matters relating to public morality.

³ The title given to a minister.

⁴ This title is totally incorrect. See reign of Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, Section XXI.

the Almighty be upon them! This fact is recorded in the narrative to show the admirable faith of that pious ruler.

In short, he was a great monarch; and his dominions assumed great amplitude and expansion, and comprised the whole of the country of Tukhāristān and its dependencies, together with other territories, namely, in the east 5, as far as the frontier of Kashmir, and, in the west, as far as the boundary of Tirmid and Balkh: north, as far as the bounds of Kāshghar; and south, as far as Ghūr and Gharjistan, in the whole of which the Khutbah was read for him and the money impressed with his name 6. The whole of the Maliks and Amirs of each of the three kingdoms, namely, Ghur, Ghaznin, and Bāmiān, after [the decease of] both the Sultans [Ghiyas-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud-Din], turned their eyes on him; and, when Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din. Muhammad-i-Sām, was martyred, the Maliks and Amirs of Ghaznin, both Ghuris and Turks, with one consent, requested him to come [and assume the sovereignty]. Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, accordingly, determined to proceed from Bāmiān to Ghaznin, and set out in that direction with a numerous army.

⁵ At this period there were powerful sovereigns ruling over Kashmir and its dependencies, also the Jahängiriah rulers of Suwät, who held sway over a large portion of the mountain districts to the west, and the Sultāns of Pich, of whom more anon.

⁶ How much of this tract never yet heard the Khutbah?

⁷ Firishtah's History, or rather the translation of Firishtah's History, which supplies the chief materials for the Histories of India, so called, here says [that is the text]:—"The inclination of the Khwājah, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk [a title given to Wazīrs], and the Turk Amfrs, was towards the sovereignty of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Mahmūd; and the Ghūrd Amfrs, in secret, entertained the idea of the sovereignty of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām." This is nearly in the words of our author, whom he quotes; but Dow, vol. i. pp. 149-50, translates this passage thus: "The Omrahs of Ghor, inxisting upon Baha-ul-dien, the King's cousin, Governor of Bamia, and one of the soven sons of Huszein; and the Vizier [Chaja-ul-Muluck! 1], and the officers of the Turkishmerecarie, on Mamond, son of the former Emperor, the brother of Mahommed Ghori." Bisucs, vol. i., page 186, renders it: "The chiefs of Ghor claimed if for Baha-ood-Deen, the King's cousin, Governor of Bamyan, and one of the seven sons of Eis-ood-Deen Hoossein; while the Vizier and the officers of the Toorky metremaries espoused the cause of Mahmood," &c.

This is faithfully rendering the text, certainly; but it so happens that Bahāud-Dīn, Sām, was neither Governor of Bamyan, nor was he one of Eis-cod-Deen Hoossein's ['Izz-ud-Dîn, Husaîn's] sons, but certainly his grandfather, Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd, was 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Al-Husaîn's, son.

When he reached the district of Kīdān⁸ he was attacked with diarrhea, and, only nineteen days after the martyrdom of the victorious Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, died. His reign was fourteen years ⁹.

IV. SULŢĀN JALĀL-UD-DĪN, 'ALĪ', SON OF BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, SĀM, BĀMĪĀNĪ.

When the victorious Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammadi-Sam, obtained martyrdom, and Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, departed this life on the way [to Ghaznin], the heirs to the sovereignty, then remaining, were of two branches of the Shansabaniah race-one, the family of the Sultans of Bamian, and the second, the family of the Sultans of Ghur. When they conveyed the bier of the victorious Sultan from Dam-yak2, the Turkish Slaves of the [late] Sultan, the great Maliks and Amirs, took the Sultan's bier, together with vast treasures, and the magazines of military stores, from the Amirs of Ghūr. Those Ghūriān Amirs, who were in the army of Hindustan, were inclined towards the sons of Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, and the Turk Amirs were inclined to Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, son of [Ghiyās-ud-Din,] Muḥammad-i-Sām, the [late] Sultān's nephew 3.

8 It seems somewhat remarkable that Kidän proved fatal, according to our author, to so many of the Shansabāni chiefs. Muḥammad, son of Sūri, and Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, son of 'Izz-ud-Din, Al-Ḥusain, also both died at Kidān. See pages 221 and 343.

⁹ He died in Sha¹bān, 502 H., and reigned fourteen years. He must therefore have succeeded to the throne about the middle of the year 588 H., which was the year in which Sultān Mu'izz-dd-Din defeated Rāe Pithorā at Tarā'in.

¹ Nearly every copy of the text is incorrect here in giving the name of 'Alā-ud-Din 'Ani ', and 'Alā-ud-Din ', 'Alī ; and 'Alā-ud-Din ' is again' mentioned in them as the last of the Shansabī rulers of Ghaznin, and he never ruled over Tukhāristān. The best Paris copy, however, contrary to all the others examined, has both brothers here. Jahān-Ārā and some others have the same; but, in them, the brothers are not mentioned again, and the dynasty of Tukhāristān terminates with them. Raugat us-Şafā agrees with the above, and mentions 'Alā-ud-Din among the Ghaznin rulers, his proper place.

² See note ⁵, page 486.

3 Our author here contradicts the statement made in the preceding page. The fact was that all the Amirs, both Turks and Ghūris, seemed desirous that Bahā-ud-Dîn, Sām, should succeed to the supreme authority; but after his death they became divided, when the choice lay between his son, 'Alā-ud-Dīn,

The <u>Gh</u>ūriān Amirs, such as were at <u>Gh</u>aznin, namely, the Sipah-Sālār [the Commander of Troops] <u>Kh</u>aro<u>sh</u>ti ', Sulimān-i-<u>Sh</u>is, and others besides them, wrote letters to 'Alā-ud-Din, and Jalāl-ud-Din [sons of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām], and prayed them to come to <u>Gh</u>aznin, and they came thither, as will be subsequently recorded, please God, in the Section on the Sultāns of <u>Gh</u>aznin.

When Jalāl-ud-Dîn had seated his brother on the throne of <u>Gh</u>aznīn, he returned himself, and ascended the throne of Bāmiān. A trustworthy chronicler related that they [the brothers] divided the treasures at <u>Gh</u>aznīn, and that the share of Jalāl-ud-Dīn amounted to two hundred and fifty camel-loads of pure gold and of jewel-studded articles of gold and silver, which he conveyed along with him to Bāmiān.

A second time he assembled an army against <u>Gh</u>aznin, and drew together forces from every part of his dominions, consisting of <u>Gh</u>ūris, <u>Gh</u>uzz, and Beghū, and proceeded to <u>Gh</u>aznin, and was taken prisoner, and was subsequently

Muḥammad, and Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, the late Sulṭān's brother's son; notwithstanding that Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, at the time of his death, had expressed a wish that his two sons should proceed to Ghaznīn, and endeavour, by conciliation, to gain over the Wazīr, the Turkish Slaves, and the Ghūrīn Amīrs, and take possession of Ghaznīn; after which 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the eldest, was to have Ghaznīn; after which 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, sarther on. Several authors consider the dynasty to have ended with Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām.

4 There is some doubt with regard to this probably by-name: some have Kharosh, Kharoshti, Haroshti and Harosh, and Harost and Harost. The majority of the most generally correct copies are as above. See Section xxiii.

5 Nameless, of course.

6 This name is uncertain. The majority of copies have Beghū, as above; whilst the oldest copy has Beghūr [not I-ghūr]; whilst the best Paris copy, and the three which generally agree—the I. O. L. copy, the Ro. As. Soc. MS., and the Bodleian copy—have Sakrār [j.ž.]. There is a tribe of the Ghuzz mentioned at page 377, note 6, under the name of Sankurān. Perhaps Beghū may be another tribe of the Ghuzz also, and the Sankurān may also have been included in this levy of troops.

7 After Sulfan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, reached Hirāt [in Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 605 H.], he sent agents to Sulfān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmīd ſsce note ³, page 400]; and, among other matters, interceded for Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl. Maḥmīd accepted the terms offered by Sulfān Muḥammad, and an accommodation took place between them. This evidently refers to the acknowledgment of Sulfān Muḥammad's stuceninty by Maḥmūd, mentioned in the note just referred to. Another author, however, states, that, after disposing of the affairs of Balkh, Sulfān Muḥammad proceeded to Guzarwān, which was the ancient fiel of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of

released, and returned to Bāmiān again. During his absence, his uncle, Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din's, Mas'ūd, had seized the throne of Bāmiān. Jalāl-ud-Din came back with but a few men, and one morning, at dawn, attacked his uncle unawares, took him prisoner, and put him to death, and the Sāḥib who had been his father's Wazîr he caused to be flayed alive; and he brought the country [again] under his jurisdiction.

He reigned for a period of seven years, when Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, made a forced march against him from the banks of the river Jadārah, and suddenly fell upon him², and took him prisoner; and the whole of that treasure which he had brought from Ghaznin, together with the treasures of Bāmiān, Sultān Muḥammad appropriated, put Jalāl-ud-Dīn to death, and retired '.

Khar-mil [see pages 474, 475], and was then being invested by Abū-'Alī [an officer and probably a kinsman of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd], and that this same Abū-'Alī was made the means of communication, in behalf of the

son of Khar-mil, with Mahmud.

Be this, however, as it may, when Tāi-ud-Dīn, I-val-dūz, became aware of the accommodation between Mahmud and Sultan Muhammad, he demanded of Mahmud why he had made friends with the enemy of the Ghuris. He received, in reply, the answer, that his, I-val-duz's, bad conduct had been the cause of it. When this message was delivered to him, I-yal-duz released Jalal-ud-Din, 'Ali, brother of 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, gave him one of his own daughters in marriage, and sent him, with a considerable army, to Bāmīān, where Jalāl-ud-Dīn's uncle, 'Abbās by name, had assumed the sovereignty after the imprisonment of himself and brother. One of I-yal-duz's chiefs, Abi-Dakur [Zakur?] by name, then accompanying him, advised Talalud-Din, 'Ali, to face about, and march back against Ghaznin itself, so that they might put an end to the career of that slave, referring to I-val-duz, whose servant he was. This Ialal-ud-Din, 'Ali, declined to do: upon which Abi-Dakur separated from him, and retired to Kābul, which was his fief. Jalālud-Din, 'Ali, continued his march to Bāmian, the capital of which was Rāsit for Rasifl, and recovered the sovereignty from his uncle 'Abbas. See next page, and latter part of note 6, page 426, and account of the III. ruler, 'Alaud-Din, Muhammad, and I-yal-duz, IV. ruler, farther on.

⁸ One of the oldest copies has Sulfan Fakhr-ud-Din, Mas'ūd, son of Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad; but all the others have 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd. See note 's page 436. Alfi, Jahān-Ārā, and Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, call him

'Abbās. Raugat-uş-Şafā, Mas'ūd.

This is the circumstance referred to at page 269. There the name of the river, in the majority of the best copies, was Jažir [جزار]; but it appears that Jadārah [بانه] or Jadār [بانه] is the correct name. See page 267. Some copies of the text make a great hash of this name, and have مصروب المنابق

1 Rauzat-uş-Şafā says, but follows our author generally, "when Khwārazm Shāh came into Māwar-un-Nahr [the southern part of it], he made a forced

Jalāl-ud-Din was a very great monarch, and of great intrepidity, alertness, and gallantry, an ascetic, devout and continent, so that during the whole of his lifetime no inebriating liquor had ever passed his blessed lips, and the cincture of his garment had never been undone to any unlawfulness. Manliness he possessed to that degree, that no prince of the Shansabānān race came up to him in vigour, in valour, and in arms. He was wont, in battle, to discharge two arrows at one aim, and neither of his arrows would miss the mark, and neither animal of the chase nor antagonist ever rose again from the wound of his arrow. At the time when the Turks of Ghaznin followed in pursuit

arrow became [subsequently] a place of pilgrimage.

With all this strength and valour Jalal-ud-Din was mild ³
and beneficent; but manliness availeth nothing against destiny, and, as his time was come, he died ⁴.

of him, at the Hazār Darakhtān [place of the Thousand Trees] of Ghaznīn, he had struck the trunk of a tree with an arrow, and had overturned it [!]; and every Turkish warrior who reached the tree would make obeisance to the arrow, and would turn back again: and [the tree of] this

V. SULŢĀN 'ĀLĀ-UD-DĪN, MASIUD, SON OF SULŢĀN SHAMS-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD.

At the time that the sons of Sulţān Bahā-ud-Dîn, Sām, namely, 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, and Jalāl-ud-Dîn, 'Alā, were both made prisoners at <u>Gh</u>aznin, 'Alā-ud-Dîn,

march, and, quite unexpectedly and unawares, appeared before Bāmfān [Rāṣif?] seized Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, killed him, gained possession of his treasures, and carried them off. The Afghāns will have to keep a sharp look out now, or they may be served in the same fashion, and find a foreign force from "the intermediate zone" pounce suddenly on Bāmfān some fine morning.

In some modern copies of the text Hazār-Darakht. There are several places of this name. It may be that on the route between Ghaznin and Gardaiz.

3 The flaying alive of the Wazir, for example. See page 437.

4 Other authors state that, after a nominal reign of seven years, Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Alf, fell into the hands of the Khwārazmis, and that he was the last of the race that attained power; but what his subsequent fate was is not stated. Our author says he was put to death by the Khwārazmis, but when or where is not mentioned. See his reign, farther on.

Mas'ūd5, son of Shams-ud-Din, ascended the throne of Bāmīan, and took to wife the daughter of Malik Shāh of Wakhsh, who had been married to [and left a widow by] his brother, Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam. He conferred the Wazīr-ship upon the Sāḥib, the Wazīr of Bāmiān, and assumed sway over the dominions of Tukhāristān.

When Jalal-ud-Din was released from Ghaznin, he turned his face towards Bāmiān. In the fortress of Kāwik⁶ was a person, one of the godly ecclesiastics, a holy man, whom they called Imam Shams-ud-Din-i-Arshad [the most upright]. Jalāl-ud-Din came to pay him a visit of reverence, to obtain a good omen from his words, and his benediction. This personage was a holy sage, who, after the acquirement of all the knowledge and science pertaining to the [written] law, had withdrawn from the world, and devoted himself to the worship of Almighty God. and who, having turned his face towards the Court of the Most High, had became a worker of miracles and the foreteller of the future.

When Jalal-ud-Din paid him a visit, and sought the assistance of this Imam's blessed spirit, he enjoined him, saving: "Certainly, repossess thyself of the throne of Bāmiān; but take care that thou slayest not thine uncle,

for, if thou slavest him, they will also slav thee."

Having performed his visit to the holy man, Jalal-ud-Din retired and went away; and, when he had turned his back, that holy Imam predicted, saving: "The hapless Jalal-ud-Din will kill his uncle, and they will kill him also:" and, in the end, so it turned out, as that unique one of the world had foretold. Jalal-ud-Din moved onward from that place where he then was, with his followers, and,

6 The name of a pass and fortress, now in ruins, in the range of Hindu-kush, called Kawak by modern ravellers. Some of the copies of the text have

كنارنك and كاريك

⁵ The Raugat-us-Şafā, which appears to have blindly followed our author, here calls this ruler Mas'ūd only, and, of course, agrees with our author's statement respecting his usurpation of the government and his subsequent fate. Other writers, however, including Jahan-Ara, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, and Tarikh-i-Alfi, state that the news of the defeat of the two brothers, and their having fallen prisoners into the hands of I-yal-duz, having suddenly reached Bāmiān, there being no one else to undertake the government, their uncle, 'Abbas, whose mother was a Turkish bond-maid, naturally assumed it : but when they, having been set at liberty, returned in safety, he gave up to them the authority again. See note 1, page 428, and page 433, and note 7.

THE SHANSABANIAH DYNASTY OF TUKHARISTAN. 437

at the dawn of the morning, fell upon his uncle, took him prisoner, and put him to death, and flayed alive the Ṣāḥib, his Wazīr, as has been previously recorded ⁷.

7 Our author has not yet finished his account of Jaläl-ud-Din, 'Ali'; he merely leaves it for another dynasty, and relates his farther proceedings, in the account of his brother, 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, which see.

SECTION XIX.

ACCOUNT OF THE SULTANS OF GHAZNIN OF THE SHANSAB-ĀNĪAH DYNASTY.

THE frail and humble author [of these pages], Minhāj-i-Sarāj-i-Dîn-i-Minhāj '—the Almighty shield his deformity! —thus states, that this Section is confined to the mention of the Shansabānī Sulţāns from whose majesty the throne of the court of Ghaznīn acquired splendour and magnificence, and from whose sovereignty the countries of Hind and Khurāsān became glorious, the first of whom, of the Shansabī race, was Sulţān Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, and, after that, Sulţān' Alā-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain took Ghaznīn, but did not rule there. After that, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Mu-ḥammad, son of Sām, captured it ²; and, when he attained martyrdom, he devised that throne to his own slave, Sulṭān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and with him that sovereignty terminated. The mercy and pardon of the Almighty be on the whole of them!

I. SULŢĀN SAIF-UD-DĪN, SŪRĪ, SON OF 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, AL-HUSAIN.

Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, was a great monarch, and was greatly endowed with valour, vigour, clemency, decision,

¹ A title he sometimes gives himself which will be explained in the Prefatory Remarks. The 'deformity' was not bodily.

² I fear our author had a very bad memory. At page 377, and 449, he says his elder brother, Ghiyās-ud-Din, took it, and conferred the government of it on Mu'izz-ud-Din, as his lieutenant. Here it is contradicted, and the copies of the text agree as to this name. Here too he says that Mu'izz-ud-Din "devised" the throne of Ghanin to his slave, Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, and, in his account of the latter, that he desired to bequeath it to him. The idiom of the text here again differs, but only the idiom, in the two different sets of copies.

justice, beneficence, a graceful presence, and kingly grandeur. He was the first person of this race to whom they accorded the title of Sultān 3.

When the news of the misfortune which had befallen his elder brother, the Malik-ul-Jibāl', was brought to his [Saif-ud-Dîn, Sūrî's] hearing, he set about taking revenge upon Sultān Bahrām \underline{Sh} āh, and caused a numerous army to be got in readiness from the different tracts of \underline{Gh} ūr, and set out towards \underline{Gh} aznīn, overthrew Bahrām \underline{Sh} āh, and took \underline{Gh} aznīn. Bahrām \underline{Sh} āh fled from before him, and retired

³ This personage should have been mentioned first after the death of his father, whose successor he was, and when the dominions were divided, and separate petty dynasties formed. Who "they" were who accorded him the title of Sulfan the chronicler does not say.

4 Kuth-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Malik-ul-Jibāl. Jibāl signifies mountains: "Jabbāl" nothing. At page 339 our author states that Saif-ud-Din, Sūrī, in succession to his father, ascended the throne of Ghūr, and divided the territory

among his brothers.

Alfi says that Bahram Shah put Kutb-ud-Din, Ghuri, the Malik-ul-Jibal, to death in 536 of the Rihlat [547 H.], on which 'Ala-ud-Din, Al-Husain, [Guzidah and Khulāşat-ul-Akhbār, and Habib-us-Siyar also agree] advanced against Ghaznin for the purpose of avenging him. Bahram Shah fled to Karman, situated in a strong country surrounded by hills, where cavalry could not act, and made it his residence. 'Ali-ud-Din, having gained possession of Ghaznin, left his brother, Saif-ud-Din, Suri, there, and returned himself to Ghur. Suri, placing dependence on the Amirs and troops of Ghaznin to support him, remained there with but a few of the Ghūriān troops. When winter arrived, Bahram Shah advanced from Karman with an army of Afghans and Khalifs, which he had raised, on which the Amirs seized Süri. This took place in Muharram 537 of the Rihlat [548 H.], but Guzidah and Jāmi'ut-Tawārikh say in 544 H., and both Guzidah, Habib-us-Siyar, and Fanākatī state, that Bahrām Shāh was dead before 'Alā-ud-Din [who is said to have been known as A'RAJ, or the lame from birth] reached Ghaznin the second time.

Since writing note 2, page 347, I find that, in 543 H., some time after Sulfān Sanjar's defeat by the Karā-Khiṭa-is [authors disagree as to the date of his overthrow. See note 2, page 154], and when he had retired into 'Irāķ, Sulfān Bahrām Shāh, his sister's son, sent him a despatch intimating his recovery of Ghaznīn, and the death of Sām and Sārī, 'the Ghūr's Inamely, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, and Saif-ud-Dīn, Sūrī. See pages 340—343,] who had previously acquired power over that territory, on which Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Khālid, Fūghanjī, a poet of the Court of Sanjar, composed the following lines :—

"They, who in thy service falsehood brought, The capital-stock of their heads in jeopardy placed. Far remote from thee, Sam's head, in frenzy sank, And now the head of Suri they've to 'Irak brought."

This tends to confirm the date mentioned by Guzidah and others, and to show that the Ghūris had been guilty of hypocrisy, as many authors state, towards Bahrām Shāh, as well as Sultān Sanjar. See page 343.

towards Hind, and Saif-ud-Dîn, Sūrî, ascended the throne of Ghaznîn, and made over the dominions of Ghūr to his brother, Bahā-ud-Dîn, Sām, the father of [the Sultāns] Ghivās-ud-Dîn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dîn.

Having brought <u>Ghaznin</u> under his sway, the whole of the Amirs and soldiery, the notables and great men of <u>Ghaznin</u> and of the adjacent parts submitted to him; and he bestowed upon those classes ample gifts and favours, so much so, that the soldiery and Amirs of Bahrām <u>Shā</u>h became overwhelmed in the benefits he bestowed upon them.

When the winter season came round, he commanded that the forces of <u>Gh</u>ūr should have permission granted them to return to their own country, and entertained the followers, soldiery, and petty officials of Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh in his own service, and placed confidence in them. The Sultān and his Wazīr, Sayyid Majd-ud-Dīn, Mūsawī, along with a small number of persons from among his old retainers, were all that remained with him, and the rest [both] at the court, and [stationed] in the <u>Gh</u>aznīn territory, were all the soldiery of <u>Gh</u>aznīn.

When storms of snow and excessive cold set in, and the roads and passes of Ghur became closed from the excessive snow, and the people of Ghaznin became aware that it was impossible that troops or succour could reach Ghaznin from the side of Ghur, they despatched letters, secretly, to the presence of Bahrām Shāh, saying, "throughout the entire city and parts around, only a small number of persons have remained with Sultan Suri of the forces of Ghur, the whole of the remainder are the servants of the Mahmudi dynasty. It behoveth [the Sultan] not to let the opportunity slip through his hands, and he should repair to Ghaznin with all possible haste." In accordance with those letters and solicitations, Bahrām Shāh, from the side of Hindūstān, advanced unexpectedly and reached Ghaznin, and made a night attack upon Sultan Suri. He came out of Ghaznin with his own particular followers who were from Ghūr, and along with his Wazir, Savvid Maid-ud-Din, Mūsawi, took the road to Ghur 6.

Some copies have, riayā,—the people, the peasantry, &c.
It would have been just as difficult for him to reach Ghūr from Ghaznīn, as it was impracticable for troops from Ghūr joining him at Ghaznīn.

Bahrām \underline{Sh} āh's horsemen set out in pursuit of him, until they discovered him in the precincts of Sang-i-Surā \underline{kh}^7 [the Perforated Rock or Stone]. Sulṭān Sūrī, with the few followers that were along with him, joined battle with Bahrām \underline{Sh} āh's cavalry, and fought and opposed them as long as it was possible so to do; and, when compelled to fight on foot, they took shelter on the hill [side]. It was impossible to surround the Sulṭān, his Wazīr, and his own followers, whilst an arrow remained in their quivers. When not an arrow remained in their quivers, Bahrām \underline{Sh} āh's troops, by [entering into] stipulation, and pledging the right hand, seized them, and secured them 8 .

When they reached the gate [one of the gates?] of the city [of Ghaznīn], two camels were brought, and Sulţān

⁷ There are three or four places bearing this name, the correctness of which there is 'no doubt of. It is the name of a botal or pass near the Halmand river, about N.N. W. of Ghaenin, on the route from that city, and also from Xābul into Ghūr; but "Sang-i-Surkh, a strong fort in Ghor, probably near the Hari river," is as impossible as "the mountains of Faj Hanisár" and "the Rásiat mountains."

⁸ If a little liberty were taken with the text, then it might be "by promise feater), and their [Bahrām's officers] pledging their right hands, they were captured and secured," &c.; but, seeing that they were at the nurry of Bahrām's troops, I do not see what stipulations were necessary. Our author, as usual, wishes to soften it down.

According to others, he was not so much honoured as to be placed on a camel, but was seated, with his face blackened, on an emaciated bullock, and paraded through the capital. From statements noticed in Dow's and BRIGGS' translations of FIRISHTAH'S History, to which all modern compilers of Histories of India resort, as authorities not to be doubted, but which statements, I was convinced, could not be correct, I have taken the trouble to examine Firishtah's text, more particularly, because that writer quotes our author as one of his principal authorities, and often quotes him verbatim. I have also used in this examination the lithographed text which Briggs himself edited, or, rather, which was edited under his superintendence; and, as I expected, particularly in the passages now to be pointed out, I have found Firishtah generally correct, and his translators wholly wrong. I am not the first, however, who has noticed them, and I beg leave to observe that I have no desire whatever to take, from Dow or Briggs, any credit that may be due to them, although I dare say there are some who will view what I have done in quite another light; but if truth in history be desirable, and correct translations of native historians wanted, it is time that these grave errors were pointed out and corrected, however distasteful it may be to those who have written their histories, fancying these versions reliable, and disgusting to those who, not even knowing a letter of any Oriental alphabet themselves, have presumed to declare such Histories compiled from such incorrect translations, " works of undoubted authority," To expose and correct such errors is a duty, when it is taken into consideration that such incorrect statements, which are not con-

Sūrī was seated upon one, and his Wazīr, Sayyid Majd-ud-Dīn, Mūsawī, was placed on the other, and they were both

tained in the original work, have been, and are still being taught in our colleges and schools. A careful writer like ELPHINSTONE, by the translations above referred to, has been betrayed into terrible errors, and others have repeated and re-echoed them down to the present day.

To those conversant with the Persian language and who can read for themselves, I say: do not fail to see for yourselves, for the lithographed text of FIRISHTAH is as easy as possible. It does not matter if, in translating, the literal words are not given; but FACTS must not be distorted, or made to appear what they are not.

Dow.

"He [Byram, which is the name he gives to Bahraml soon after publicly executed Mahommed Prince of Ghor, who was son-in-law to the rebel Balin. . . Seif ul dien, surnamed Souri, Prince of Ghor, brother to the deceased, raised a great army to revenge his death. . . . The Prince of Ghor, without further opposition, entered the capital, where he established himself, by the consent of the people, sending Alla, his brother, to rule his native principality of Ghor. . . . It was now winter, and most of the followers of the Prince of Ghor had returned, upon leave, to their families, when Byram, unexpectedly, appeared before Ghizni, with a great army. Seif ul dien being then in no condition to engage him with his own troops, and having little dependence upon those of Ghizni, was preparing to retreat to Ghor, when the Ghiznians entreated him to engage Byram, and that they would exert themselves to the utmost in his service. This was only a trick for an opportunity to put their design in execution. As the unfortunate prince was advancing to engage Byram he was surrounded by the troops of Ghizni, and taken prisoner, while Byram in person put the forces of Ghor to flight. The unhappy captive was inhumanly ordered to have his forehead made black, and then to be put astride a sorry bullock, with his face turned towards the tail. . . . When this news was carried to the

BRIGGS.

"He [Beiram] soon after publicly executed Kooth-ood-Dien Mahomed Ghoory AFFGHAN [this last word is not contained in Firishtah at all, and is the translator's own. MALCOLM too, Persia: Vol. i., note *, page 344, quotes PRICE-Vol. ii. page 309as an authority for "Syfudeen Souri" [Saif-ud-Din, Süri ?] being "an Affghan prince of Ghour," I felt convinced that Price would never have said so, and, on reference to the page, find he makes no such statement. It must be BRIGGS to whom Malcolm referred), to whom he had given his daughter in marriage. . . Seifood-Deen-Soory, Prince of Ghoor, brother of the deceased, raised a great army to revenge his death. . . . Seif-ood-Deen Ghoory, without further opposition, entered Ghizny, where, having established himself with the consent of the people, he sent his brother, Alla-ood-Deen Soor (sic) to rule his native principality of Ghoor. It was now winter, and most of the followers of the Prince of Ghoor had returned to their families, when Sooltan Beiram unexpectedly appeared before Ghizny with a considerable army. Seif-ood-Deen being in no condition to oppose him with his own troops, and placing little reliance on those of Ghizny, was preparing to retreat to Ghoor, when the Ghiznevides entreated him to engage Beiram, promising to exert themselves to the utmest. This was done only to enable them to put their design of

publicly exposed about the streets of Ghaznin, and, from the house-tops, dust, ashes, and excrement were launched

ears of his brother Alla, he burnt with rage, and, resolving upon revenge, with all his united powers, invaded Ghizny," — Vol. i. pages 124-5.

seizing him into execution. The Gheory Prince advanced, but was instantly surrounded by the troops of Ghizury, and taken prisoner, while Beiram in person put the forces of Ghor to flight. The unhappy captive had his forchead blackened, and was seated astride on a bullock, with his face towards the tail. When this news reached the ears of his brother Alla-ond-Deen, he burnt with fury, and, having determined to take revenge, invaded Ghizny."—Vol. i. pages 151-2.

But what says FIRISHTAH?-"In the latter part of his [Bahram's] sovereignty, Kuth-ud-Din, Muhammad, Ghūri, Sūri [this is incorrect: he was not named Sūrī, Saif-ud-Dīn was so named. I also beg to remark that this is the name of a man, not of a race or tribe], who was his son-in-law, was put to death at Ghaznîn by command of Bahram Shah. Saif-ud-Dîn, Suri, in order to avenge his brother's blood, set out towards Ghaznin. . . . Saif-ud-Din, having entered Ghaznin and become possessed of it, and, placing faith in the Ghaznawis, was there located. He sent back his brother, 'Ala-ud-Din, along with the whole of the old Amirs, to Ghur; and, notwithstanding that Saif-ud-Din, Suri, used to treat the people of Ghaznin with lenience, and that the Ghūrians did not dare to oppress them, the Ghaznawis wished for Bahram Shah; and, although they used, outwardly, to show amity towards Saif-ud-Din, Süri, secretly, they used to carry on a correspondence with Bahram Shah, until the winter set in, and the roads into Ghur were closed by snow, and people were unable to pass to and fro. At this time Bahram Shah unexpectedly reached Ghaznin with a large army of Afghans [he does not say they were Suris or Ghuris, Khalj, and other dwellers in the wilds. At this time when not more than ten leagues intervened between them, Saif-ud-Din, Sūri, having received information of it, held consultation with the Ghaznawis-who had been talking of their friendship and attachment-as to fighting, or retreating towards Ghur. They, making hypocrisy their garment, did not give him just counsel, and excited and stimulated him to fight. Saif-ud-Din, Suri, placing faith in the counsel given by them, issued from the city with a body of the men of Ghaznin, and a few of the men of Ghur, and marshalled his ranks opposite[those of] Bahrām Shāh. As yet the preparations for battle were not completed, when the Ghaznawis seized Saif-ud-Din, Süri, and, in high spirits, delivered him over to Bahrām Shāh. He commanded that the face of Saif-ud-Din, Sūri, should be blackened; and having placed him on an emaciated and weak bullock, which put one foot before the other with a hundred thousand shakings, they paraded him throughout the whole city. [There is not a word about with his face to the tailwhich is an Indian bazar term.] . . . When this terror-striking news came to the hearing of 'Ala-ud-Din, the fervour of his nature burst out, and, with the determination of avenging his brother, with a furious and relentless army, he set out towards Ghaznin." This is a literal translation of Firishtah's words.

Then follow, in the two translations, things respecting 'Alā-ud-Din and his

upon their sacred heads until they reached the head of the

doings, still more absurd and incorrect, which had better have been noticed in the account of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, but, at that time, I had not the least conception that Briggs and Dow were so much alike, and had not compared their statements with the original. Both translators leave out Firishtah's statement, that, "before the arrival of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Bāhā had died, and his son, Khustan Shāh, had succeeded to the throne, and was made captive by means of treachery," and they merely give what Firishtah says was the common tradition that Bahrām encountered 'Alā-ud-Dīn, as our author states. "Alla" is supposed by the translators to have replied to "a letter" written by Bahrām Shāh, in these terms:—

Dow.

"Alla replied, "That his threats were as impotent as his arms. That it was no new thing for kings to make war upon their neighbours; but that barbarity like his was unknown to the brave, and what he had never heard to have been exercised upon princes. That he might be assured that God had forsaken Fyram, and ordained Alla to be the instrument of that just vengeance which was denounced against him for putting to death the representative of the long-independent and very ancient family of Ghor." Page 126.

BRIGGS.

"Alla-ood-Deen replied, "That his threats were as impotent as his arms; that it was no new thing for kings to make war on their neighbours, but that barbarity like his was unknown to the brave, and such as he had never heard of being exercised towards princes; that he might be assured that God had forsaken him, and had ordained that he (Alla-ooi-Deen) should be the instrument of that just revenge denounced against him for putting to death the representative of the independent and very ancient family of Ghoor." —Page 152.

There is nothing of this kind in the original. FIRISHTAH says: "Bahrām Shāh despatched an emissary with a message. 'Alā-ud-Dīn replied: 'This act which Bahrām Shāh has perpetrated is a sign of the wane of the dominion of the Ghaznawis, because, although sovereigns are used to lead armies against the dominions of each other, and, having overcome each other, are in the habit of depriving each other of their precious lives, still not with this disgrace and ignominy; and it is certain that heaven will take vengeance upon thee as a retribution and exemplary punishment, and will give me triumph over thee!" There is nothing more than this in the original. Compare these passages in PRICE'S Mahommedan History, vol. ii. pages 309—311. He translates it from Firishtah correctly although he does not profess to do so literally.

One more specimen here and I have done with this reign:

Dow.

Brices

"At first the troops of Ghizni, by their superior numbers, bore down those of Ghor; till Ala, seeing his affairs almost desperate, called out to two gigantic brothers, whose name was Chirmil, the greater and the less, whom he saw in the front, like two rocks bearing against the torrent. .

Byrnan fled, with the scattered remains of his army, towards Hindotan; but he was overwhelmed with his mis-

"At first the troops of Ghisny, by their superior numbers, bore down those of Ghoor; till Alla-ood-Dem, seeing his affairs desperate, called out to two gigantic brothers, denominated the greater or lesser Khurmil [In a note, he says, he doubts whether this word should not be Firmil, and says, there is a tribe, so called !!! Elliot: INDEX, page 157, note, writes their name Sirful, and says Briggs [who

Pul-i-Yak Tāk ' [the One-arch Bridge] of the city. When they reached that place, Sulṭān Sūrī, and his Wazīr, Sayyid Majd-ud-Dīn, Mūsawī, were gibbeted, and they were both hung from the bridge. Such was the cruelty and ignominy with which they treated that handsome, just, intrepid, and laudable monarch. The Almighty bestowed victory upon Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, Jahān-soz, the brother of Sulṭān Sūrī, so that he took revenge for this barbarous deed and this dishonour, as has been previously recorded ?

fortunes, and sunk under the hand of death, in the year five hundred and forty-seven, after a reign of thirty-five years."—Page 127.

read it correctly, but spoilt it after] "is wrong"!! See pages 350 and 351], whom he saw in the front standing like two rocks, and bearing the brunt of the action, to support him.

Beiram fled with the scattered remains of his army towards Hindustan, but overwhelmed with his misfortunes, sunk under the hand of death in the year A.H. 547, after a reign of thirtyfive years."

The above is copied by MAURICE, and by ELPHINSTONE, although not quite in the same words; and is re-echoed by Maisman in his HISTORY OF INDIA, "written at the request of the University of Calcutta;" and Meadows Taylor, in the STUDENT'S MANUAL OF INDIAN HISTORY, who improves it, by inserting in the margin of page 89—"Ghuzny plundered by Alla ood Deen, Seljuk"!!!
FRISHTAP's account is a follows "—

"When the two armies came in contact, and the noise of the clashing of swords, and the whiz of arrows reached the vengeance-pursuing lieavens, Kharmil the greater [older], and Khar-mil the lesser [vounger], entered the field like unto two rampant elephants. Khar-mil the greater with a poniard ripped up the belly of a famous elephant," &c. [There is not a word about "rocks," "torrents," or anything approaching it.] "Bahrām Shāh, being without heart or strength in every way, fled towards the country of Hind, and, in a very short time, through grief and affliction at the loss of his son, and other matters, fell sick, and was removed from this hostel of mortality to the gardens of eternity. According to the authentic account, his death took place in 544 H., after thirty-five years' reign."

Firishtah himself is not an author on whom implicit reliance can be placed, even though he quotes from the works of others, for he often mis-quotes them. This is particularly apparent from his account of these events under the reign of Bahrām Shāh, and that of the same events in the chapter on the Ghūrīs, which is very different, and utterly contradictory, in many things, of his previous statements given above.

1 See page 355, and note 9.

² Everything is barbarous, crael, savage, and the like that others do to Ghūris; but inducing a sovereign to come out of and abandon his capital and surrender after pledging to him the most solemn oaths, and then imprisoning him, and afterwards murdering him, and the rest of his race; inducing a noble to turn his back before shooting him in a cowardly manner; inviting his brother to

SULŢĂN-UL-A'ZAM3, MU'IZZ-UD-DUNYÁ WA UD-DĪN, ABU L-MUZAFFAR, MUHAMMAD, SON OF BAHA-UD DIN, SĀM, ĶASĪM-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN.

Trustworthy narrators have related after this manner, that, when Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Husain, Jahan-soz, was removed from the habitation of the world, and Sulfan Saif-ud-Din, Muhammad, his son, ascended the throne of Ghūr, he commanded, that both the Sultans ', Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad, and Mu'izz-ud-Din', Muhammad, sons

an audience, and having him basely assassinated; flaying a minister alive; digging up the bones of the dead; massacring women and children, and burning a city in a drunken fit, and mixing the blood of Sayyids with earth to make mortar, all these, on the part of a Ghūrī, are mildness, amiability, beneficence, greatness, and the like. Fanākatī says no less than 70,000 persons were massacred, on this occasion, in Ghaznin alone.

Some copies of the text, the idiom of which differs considerably here, have Sultan-i-Ghāzi; and most copies leave out the Kasim, &c. His titles given

at the end of his reign [which see] are altogether different.

Between the putting to death of Saif-ud-Din, Suri, and the establishment of Mu'izz-ud-Dîn at <u>Gh</u>aznîn as his elder brother and sovereign's lieutenant, a period of no less than twenty-six years elapsed, but, as our author gives no dates, the uninitiated reader would imagine that Mu'izz-ud-Din succeeded close upon Saif-ud-Din, Sūri. In reality, Mu'izz-ud-Din is the first of the Ghūriān dynasty of Ghaznin.

4 Sultans subsequently.

5 This personage is incorrectly styled by the impossible title of Shahdbu-ddin, Shahab-ood-Deen, and even Shabudin. Shihab-ud-Din, which is Arabic, was certainly his title before his brother succeeded to the sovereignty of Ghür, and his brother's was Shams-ud-Din; but soon after the accession of the latter both their titles were changed, as mentioned at page 370. authors, either not noticing this fact, or ignorant of it, continued to style the former by his first title of Shihāb-ud-Din, and some have reversed the order of things, and appear to have imagined that Mu'izz-ud-Din was his first title, which was changed to Shihāb ud Din; but no such title will be found on his coins. I have, myself, been led into the error of occasionally styling him Shihāb-ud-Din in my notes to the Khwarazmi dynasty, page 255-260, an oversight I now correct. Firishtah calls him sometimes Shihāb-ud-Din, Muhammad, the Chūri, and at others Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, the Chūri. Dow, in his translation of Firishtah, chose to style him Mahommed Ghori, as though the last word was part of his proper name, instead of that of his country, and overlooked the fact of the at the end of Ghuri [فورى], being the ya-inisbat, expressing relation or connexion, as Hind and Hindi, Kābul, Kābuli, &c., and so compilers of Histories of India have re-echoed the name of Mahommed Ghori down to the present day, although some follow Briggs, who sometimes styles him by the impossible titles of Shahab-ood-Deen, and Moyizood-Deen; but he too generally follows Dow, and calls him Mahomed Ghoory. See also Elliot, INDIA: vol 2, page 292.

of Sām, who were imprisoned within the fortress of Wajīr-istān, should be released, as has been stated previously in the account of Sultān Ghivās-ud-Dīn 6.

Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn abode at the court of Fîrūz-koh in the serviće of Sulṭān Saif-ud-Dîn [his cousin], and Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn proceeded to the court of Bāmiān to the presence of his uncle, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd-i-Ḥusain', Bāmiānī.

When Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn ascended [the throne of] the dominion of Ghūr, after the catastrophe of Sultān Saif-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and the news of it reached Bāmīān, Malik Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, turned his face towards Mu'izz-ud-Dīn and said: "Thy brother hath distinguished himself; when wilt thou do' the like, and bestir thyself?" Mu'izz-ud-Dīn hung his head in the presence of his uncle, and left the audience hall, and set out then and there for the Court of Fīrūz-koh. When he reached the presence of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn [his brother], he became Sar-i-Jāndar [Chief Armour-Bearer], and he continued to serve his brother, and served him with assiduity, as has been previously recorded.

He continued in his brother's service for the period of one year, when some cause of umbrage¹ arose in his august mind, and he proceeded towards Sijistān, to [the Court of] Malik Shams-ud-Dîn, Sijistāni², and there he remained one cold season. Sulţān Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn despatched a distin-

⁶ Guzidah, and some other works, mention that 'Alā-ud-Din, Ḥusain, made Harf his capital, and conferred the sovereignty of Ghaznia upon his nephew, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, as his deputy [The others say "his nephews, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud-Din"], and that he [others "they"] succeeded, by treachery, in securing the person of Khusrau Shāh, in 555 M.; but from this statement, and what those writers immediately after state, it is evident, beyond a doubt, that they have confused Ghiyāş with Mu'izz, and Khusrau Shāh with Khusrau Mikhus is son.

⁷ Eldest son of 'Izz-ud-Din, Al-Ḥusain, and first of the Chūriān rulers of Bāmfan.

⁸ He was mortally wounded and left for dead in the action with the Ghuz, by Abū-I-Abbās-i-Shīs, brother of the noble he had so treacherously shot with an arrow when his back was turned. See page 367.

⁹ The words غوامي أدد in Persia, and in the Persian of the East, signify "wilt thou do:" not "thou art doing."

¹ Because his brother Ghiyas ud-Din had not conferred a separate appanage on him.

² The Malik-us-Sa'is [the Sanguinary], Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, who succeeded his father Taj-ud-Din, Abū-l-Fath, in 559 H. See page 189.

guished person and brought him back again, and committed to his charge the territory of Kaṣr-i-Kajūrān and Istāah. After he had brought the whole of the district of Garmsir under his authority, Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dìn entrusted to him the city of Tigīn-ābād, which was one of the largest cities of Garmsir '. This Tigīn-ābād is the place about which, and the possession of it by the Sulṭāns of Ghūr, the downfall of the dynasty of Maḥmūd-i-Ghāzi, son of Sabuk-Tigīn, has been caused, and about which Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, had improvised and sent to Khusrau Shāh, son of Bahrām Shāh, the quatrain, which is as follows:—

"Thy father first laid the foundation of enmity,
Hence the world's people all under oppression fell.
Have a care, lest for one Tigin-ābād 4 thou dost not give,
From end to end, the kingdom of Maḥmūd's dynasty to the wind."

The Almighty's mercy be upon the Sultans of both dynasties!

When Sultān * Mu'izz-ud-Din acquired the territory of Tigin-ābād, the <u>Gh</u>uzz tribe, and the chieftains of that sept, who, retiring defeated from before the forces of <u>Khitā</u>, had moved towards <u>Gh</u>aznin, during a period of twelve

4 The citadel of this place is situated on the Kohi-Sher, and is sometimes called the fortress of Kohi-Sher, and is mentioned by Balhaki; but, in the MS. copies of Balhaki, is called Aytkin-ābād. This remark above would indicate that Khusrau Shāh, not Bahrām, was 'Alā-ud-Din's antagonist. See note 2, page 247.

5 Not Sultan then but Malik. The title was conferred after this.

⁶ The word used signifies an army [not "armies"], but, as all the able men of the tribe carried arms, I have not used the word in its literal sense.
⁷ Before the Kärlughish Turk-mäns. See note ⁸, para. 2, page 374.

Jow says, in his translation of Firishtah: "Mahommed Ghori was left by his brother [Yeas ul dien!] when he acceded (sic) to the throna of Chor, in command at Tunganabad, in the province of Chorassan." Brigos has: "On the accession of Gheias-cod-Deen to the throne of Chirary and Chor, he appointed his brother, Moyin-cod-Deen Mahomed [Inc alled "Mahomed Ghoor," here], governor of Tuheaubad"!! FIRISHTAH, who quotes our author, says: "Chiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām, on attaining the sovereignty of Gifth; left his full brother, Mu'iza-ud-Din, who is renowned as Shihāb-ud-Din, at Tigh-ābād, which belongs to the territory of Garmsir." He was only "renowned as Shihāb-ud-Din," by Firishtah, and a few other comparatively modern writers who, perhaps, knew not of the passage in our author where he mentions the change of title by both brothers. The Tāj-ul-Mažṣir written, or, at least, begun before the Suljān's death, does not mention the word Shihāb any more than our author.

years had taken the <u>Gh</u>aznîn territory out of the hands of <u>Kh</u>usrau <u>Sh</u>āh and of <u>Kh</u>usrau Malik, and had brought it under their own sway. Mu'izz-ud-Dîn was in the constant habit of making raids upon the <u>Gh</u>uzz from Tigîn-ābād, and assailing them, and continued to harass that territory until the year 569 H. s, when <u>Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dîn</u> subdued <u>Gh</u>aznîn, and placed Sultān <u>Mu'izz-ud-Dîn</u> upon the throne [of that territory] and returned to <u>Gh</u>ūr again, as has been previously recorded.

The second year after this, [namely] in 570 H., Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn brought the districts of Ghaznīn under his sway, and acquired Gardaiz⁹; and, in the third year [571 H.]¹, he marched an army towards Multān and delivered it from the hands of the Karāmitah², and, in this year, 571 H., the

8 There is some discrepancy among authors with respect to the date of the capture of Ghaznin. Jahan-Ārā, and Haft Iklim say, Ghiyas-ud-Din acquired possession of Ghaznin in 570 H., after which he conferred the government of it upon his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, as Wālī [Haft Iklim says, deputy or lieutenant]; Faşih-İ says Ghaznın was taken in 569; the Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh, which copies our author, also says 569; Tabakāt-i-Akbari agrees with Rauzat-us-Safa, and Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, that Ghiyas-ud-Din took Ghaznīn from the Ghuzz, in 569, and conferred it on his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, in 570; the Tazkirat-ul-Mulūk of Yahya Khan, Mir'at-i-Jahan Numa, and the Khulasat-ut-Tawarikh say 569; the Lubb-ut-Tawarikh-i-Hind says Ghaznin was given to Mu'izz-ud-Din in 567; and states that the Mahmudis had regained possession of it, and that Ghiyas-ud-Din took it from the Amirs of Khusrau Malik (sic /). Budā'uni states that some say Ghiyaş-ud-Din took it from the Ghuzz in 569 H., and others, that he took it from Khusrau Malik who had re-taken it from the Ghuzz. Alfi states that Khusrau Shah himself returned to Ghaznin after the withdrawal of 'Ala-ud-Din, but the Ghuzz, who had defeated Sultan Sanjar [his great uncle], were perpetually making raids upon the Ghaznin territory, and he, Khusrau Shah [not his son, Khusrau Malik], again returned to Lähor, and the Ghuzz, taking possession of Ghaznin, retained possession of it for ten years. Firishtah, who does not always copy his authorities correctly, says Ghaznin was taken by Ghiyāş-ud-Din in 567 H., and that the Ghuzz only held it two years!

⁹ Gardaiz is the name of a large derah of the Tajiks, or Tariks, for both are correct [The Ghürfs were themselves Tajiks], with lofty hills on either side, well watered, and once very populous and well cultivated. To the east and south-east are Afghins. In Akbar's reign there was a strong castle here named Gardaiz also. See note 7, page 493.

¹ Three of the works just quoted state that Multan was taken in 570 H.;

but Firishtah, who is evidently wrong, has 572 H.

² Who had regained possession of it some years previously. He does not mention the capture of <u>Uchchah</u>, which immediately followed that of Multan. An account of the capture of <u>Uchchah</u> and the conduct of Mulizz-ud-Din has been given by Firishtah, which has not been correctly rendered by his translators, and makes the conduct of Mulizz-ud-Din appear in a light contrary to

Sankurān tribe s broke out into rebellion, and committed great violence, until, in the year 572 H., he marched an

3 Faṣiḥ-î is the only work, among those previously quoted, which mentions this affair. Therein it is stated that the Sankurān were a tribe of the Ghuzz. They are referred to in the second paragraph of the note at the foot of page 290. This name, in some copies of the text, is written Sankurān and Sufrān; and, in one of the oldest copies, Shanflūzān. Shaltuzān appears to be the present name of the locale of this tribe, which is also mentioned in the history of Timūr. See note 7, page 498. Some call it Shantuzān.

facts; and these mis-statements, to which I draw attention, have been re-echoed by all the Indian History writers.

Dow, vol. i. page 136.

"The prince of that place [Adja, this is intended to represent Onchah] shut himself up in a strong fort. Mahommed began to besiege the place; but, finding it would be a difficult task to reduce it, he sent a private message to the Rajah's wife, promising to marry her if she would make away with her hushand.

"The base woman returned for answer that she was rather too old herself to think of matrimony, but that she had a beautiful young daughter, whom, if he would promise to espouse, and leave her in free possession of the country and its wealth, she would, in a few days, remove the Rajah. Mahommed basely accepted of the proposal, and the wicked woman accordingly, in a few days, found means to assassinate her husband, and to open the gates to the enemy. Mahommed confirmed his promise by marrying the daughter upon acknowledging the true faith, but made no scruple to deviate from what respected the mother; for, instead of trusting her with the country, he sent her off to Chizni, where she soon died of grief and resentment. Nor did her daughter relish her situation better; for, in the space of two years, she also fell a victim to grief."

BRIGGS, vol. i. page 169.

"The Raja was besieged in his fort (of Oocha); but Mahomed Ghoory, finding it would be difficult to reduce the place, sent a private message to the Raja's wife, promising to marry her if she would deliver up her husband.

"The base woman returned for answer that she was rather too old herself to think of matrimony, but that she had a beautful and young daughter, whom, if he would promise to espouse, and leave her in free passion of her wealth, she would, in a few days, remove the Raja. Mahomad Ghoory accepted the proposal; and this Princess, in a few days, found means to assassinate her husband, and open the gates to the enemy.

"Mahomed only partly performed his promise, by marrying the daughter, upon her embracing the true faith [he could not marry her legally unless she did so]; but he made no scrupte to depart from his engagements with the mother; for, instead of trusting her with the country, he sent her to Ghisny, where she afterwards died of sorrow and disappointment. Nor did the daughter long survive, for in the space of two years she also fell a victim to grief."

FIRISHTAH'S account is as follows :-

"The Rājah of that country took refuge therein [in Ūchchah], and Sulfān Shihāb-ud-Dīn pitched his tents and pavilion around the fort, and set about preparations for investing it. As he knew that to overcome that Rājah in battle and capture the fort would be arduous, he despatched a person to the

army against them, and fell upon that people, and put the greater number of them to the sword. They have related that most of the Sankurān tribe were manifestly confessors of the Kur'ān creed ', who, on this occasion, obtained martyrdom; but, as they had stirred up rebellion, they were put to death, as a matter of exigency, according to sovereign prerogative.

In the following year after this event, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dîn marched an army towards Nahrwālah by way of Ūchchah and Multān. The Rāe of Nahrwālah, Bhîm Dîw, was young in years, but he had numerous forces and many elephants; and, when a battle took place, the army of Islām was defeated and put to the rout, and the Sultān-

wife of the Rajah, who was despotic over her husband, and cajoled her, and promised, saving: 'If, by your endeavours, this city shall be taken, having contracted marriage with you, I will make you the Malikah-i-Jahan [Queen of the Universe, i.e. his consort; but there is not a word about "making away with," or "delivering up her husband;" the offer is her own]. The Rajah's wife, frightened of or at the power and grandeur of the Sultan, and knowing that he would be victorious [over her husband, and capture the place], sent a reply, saying: 'No worthiness remains to me, but I have a daughter possessed of beauty to perfection, and grace. If the Malik consents, he may take her into the bonds of marriage; but, after taking the city, if he will not evince any avarice towards my own peculiar property and effects [not a word about entrusting the country to her], I will remove the Rajah.' The Sultan agreed, and in a short time that woman caused her husband to be put to death, and delivered up the city. Sultan Shihab-ud-Din, having fulfilled his promise, made the Rajah's daughter a Musalman according to the rites of the sublime law of Muhammad, contracted marriage with her, and both of them, mother and daughter, were sent to Ghaznin, that they might learn the duties respecting fasting and prayer and to read the sacred pages [the Kur'an]. The mother, whom her daughter held in abhorrence on account of her abominable act, and placed no faith in, shortly after died; and the daughter herself, after two years, from not having obtained the enjoyment of the Sultan's society [the marriage was never consummated], through grief and mortification, followed her mother."

The Rājah above referred to, according to the Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā, was chief of the Bhāṭṭ tribe, which previously held a large part of Sind. The same work states that Üghchah was taken by assault. The name is differently written by different authors—\$\tilde{\pi}_{\overline{\pi}}\ti

⁴ If so, it is somewhat strange that such an orthodox champion of the faith should have massacred them.

5 "The following" year after 572 H. is 573 H.; but, just under, our author says 574 H., which is the year which most authors mention, but Faşil. has 575 H.

6 This is the correct name, confirmed by several other writers; but some copies of the text differ. One has 25 396—another 363 -μα—and three 363 3661. The Raugat-ut-Tāhirin styles him Bhoj [-, 9μ]-Dīw.

i-Ghāzī returned again without having accomplished his designs. This event took place in the year 574 H.

In the year 575 H., Mu'izz-ud Din led an army to Furshor s, and subdued it; and, in another two years subsequent to that, he marched an army towards Lohor. As the affairs of the Maḥmūdī empire had now approached their termination, and the administration of that government had grown weak, Khusrau Malik, by way of compromise, despatched one of his sons, and one elephants, to the presence of the Sultān-i-Ghāzī. This circumstance happened in the year 577 H.

The following year, 578 H., the Sultan led an army towards Diwal 2 [or Dibal] and possessed himself of the

7 Our author slurs over this affair because it was a reverse, but it was not dishonour. Mu'izz-ud-Dîn's forces were completely worn out with their long march, the latter portion of it through the sandy desert, and suffering from thirst and want of forage for their cattle. The forces of Bhim-Diw were numerous, fresh, and well supplied. Numbers of the Musalman forces perished in the obstinate battle which took place, and the retreat was effected with great difficulty,

s Previously spelt Purshor and Burshor, and in some copies of the text here Burshor likewise—the letters β and f, and δ and w are interchangeable. In the passage at page 76, where mention is made of the idol temple which fell on the night of Mahmūd's birth, the place supposed to be Peshāwar is written in every copy of the text with an extra letter. Nearly every author I have quoted mentions that, in ancient books, this place was known as Bagrām. See my account of it in Journal of Bombay Geographical Society, vol. x.

⁹ Our author should have added, "a renowned elephant, and the finest that Khusrau Malik posssessed." His son is called Malik Shāh by some writers, including Firightah; but one of his translators turns it into Mullik.

As to this date there is considerable discrepancy. Of the different works previously quoted, the majority state that the first expedition against Lähor took place in 577 H., as our author has it; but two others mention 576 as the year, and three others that it took place in 575. Budā'unī says 580 H.; but he has omitted the first expedition, and mistaken the second for it. I do not quote Baizāwī or Guzīdah, for they are both at sea with respect to the two last Mahmūdī sovereigns, and make one of them.

² In the same manner, there is much discrepancy with regard to the invasion of Diwal. Five authors give 577 H. as the year, one 578, one 576, one 575, and Budā'uni 581! Of these, some say the expedition against Purghor and Diwal took place in the same year; others that it took place the year after Purghor was annexed, and the year \$\textit{efforman}\$ the two place the year after Purghor was annexed, and the year \$\text{efforman}\$ the expedition against Lähor; whilst others state that Diwal was taken the year \$\text{efforman}\$ and some omit all mention of it. A hmad, son of Muhammad, Kazwini, the author of the Jahän-Ärä, which I have often quoted, on his way to visit Hindūstān, died at this place in 975 H.—1567 A.D. It is not the sume place as Thathah, but in the Thathah not prince between Thathah and Karāghi. See note 5, p. 295.

whole of that territory [lying] on the sea-coast, and acquired much wealth, and returned.

In the year 581 H., he [again] led an army towards Lohor a, and ravaged and pillaged the whole of the districts of that territory; and, on his return homewards, directed that the Hiṣār [fortress] of Siāl-koṭ should be restored de Husain son of Khar-mīl was installed therein, and

3 The name of this city—which is a very ancient one—is also written Lāhnor [منعة], as well as Lohā-war [منعة].

The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, Mii'āt-i-Jahāu-Numā, and Firishtah say that this second expedition took place in 580 H., and the Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh says it was in 579; but the others agree with our author as above. The astonishing thing, however, is, that our author himself, in his account of Khusran Malik's reign, at page 115, which see, only mentions two expeditions to Lāhor—one in

577 H., and the other, when it was taken, in 583!

4 Most authors, including Firishtah, make a great error in asserting that Mu'izz-ud-Din founded the fortress of Siāl-koi. Such is not the case, and some of the authors I have been quoting very correctly state that it is a very ancient place, founded by one of the early Hindi rulers. Mu'izz-ud-Din found it in a dilapidated condition on the occasion of his retirement from the Panjāh, and unsuccessful attempt to take Lāhor; and, considering its situation a good one for his purposes, he put it in a state of efficiency, and garrisoned it at the suggestion of the Rājah of Jamūn. I extract this statement from a History of the Rājahs of Jamūn [the n is nasal], which the author states to be composed from Hindū annals; and in no other writer have I seen the same details, although another confirms a portion of it, which I shall subsequently refer to.

"In the year 1151 of Bikrāmaditya, Rājah Jakr [or Chakr] Diw succeeded his father as ruler of Jamūn; and, in the middle of his reign, in 555 H., Khusrau Malik, the descendant of Malmūd, Ghaznawi, abandoned Ghaznin, aïd assumed the throne of Lāh-nor. The Jamūn Rājahs continued to entertain their natural hatred towards his dynasty, but without effect; aïd Khusrau Malik, by degrees, brought under his rule the northern parts of the Panjāb, as far as the foot of the mountains [the Alpine Panjāb]. The tribe of Khokhar, who dwelt round about Manglain [Makhālah?], at the foot of the hills, who were subject to the Jamūn-wāl [the Jamūn dynasty], having received encouragement from the Lāh-nor ruler, and sure of his support, refused any longer to pay tax and

tribute to Jamun, and threw off its yoke.

"At this time, the year 579 H., Sulţān Mu'izz-wd.Dīn, the Ghūrt, who had taken possession of Ghaznīn, raised the standard of conquest; and Rājah Jakr [Chakr] Dīw despatched his full brother, Rām Dīw, with presents to the Sulţān's presence, representing to him the state of affairs, and inciting him to invade Khusrau's terrifory, assuring him that, on his appearance, the territory of Lāh-nor would pass from his grasp. The Sulţān, who received the emissary with favour, replied in writing to the Rājah, that 'his Māān-jī [agent] had made known the Rājah's object, and that the time was at hand for the appearance of his standards in that part; and in that same year the Sulţān made a raid on, and possessed himself of, the Purghor territory and Multān, and invested Lāk-nor, whick Khusrau Mallis-defended.

"The Sultan, finding he could not gain possession of it easily, devastated and ravaged the country about Lah-nor, and retired by the northern part of the the Sultan again retired. After his departure, Khusrau

Panjāb; and, at the suggestion and representation of the Rājah of Jamūn, repaired anexiv the fort of Sīāl-kot [Sīāl is the name of a tribe of Jaṭs, since displaced, and dwelling much farther south, at and around Jang-i-Sīāl], which was then in a ruinous and dilapidated state, and left there Ḥusain-i-Khar-mīl tumed into Hussein Charmilt by Dow, and Houstin Firmultilly by Bracos is as governor, with a garrison. The Mīān-jī, of Jamūn, was then diamissed, with a request to inform the Rājah that next year his wishes would be fulfilled.

"Khusrau Malik, after the Sultan's departure, aided by the tribe of Khokhar, invested Starkot; but, as Rajah Jakr [Chakr] Diw, assisted and supported the defenders, Khusrau Malik was unable to take it. At this period the Rājah, who had attained to nearly his eightieth year, died, and was succeeded by his son, Rajah Bij, who is also called Bijayi [fanth] Diw, in 1221 of Bikrāmaditya; and in that year, which corresponds with 582 H., the Sultan [Mu'izz-ud-Din] crossed the Sind at the Nilab ferry, where the Rajah's Mian-if went to receive him; and on the banks of the Bihat [the Jhilam] the Rājah's son, Nar-singh Diw, joined him with a considerable force. He was presented to the Sultan through Husain-i-Khar-mil, and received with honour. He accompanied the Sultan to Lah-nor, which was taken, and made over to the charge of Kar-makh ['Ali-i-Kar-makh, who is turned into Ally Kirmany by BRIGGS 1], governor of Multan. The Rajah's son and his agent were dismissed with honorary robes, and the town of Sial-kot, together with the fort, was entrusted to the care of the Rajah. Khusrau was taken to Ghaznin, and was subsequently put to death. From the circumstance of the Sulfan, in his communications, styling the Rajah's agents by the term Mian-ji, according to the custom of Iran, instead of Wakil, the whole family of the Jamun-wal [not the present dynasty], considering this title great honour, adopted it; and from it the abridged term Mian, used by their descendants, is derived."

Dow, in his translation of Firishtah, states, under the reign of Khusrau Malik [page 129], that "the Emperor Chusero [Khusrau would not have known his own name thus written], in alliance with the Ghickers, besieged the fort of Salcot, but, their endeavours proving unsuccessful, they were obliged to desist." BRIGGS, in his version, repeats this in the same words, with the exception of styling Khusrau, Khoosrow Mullik; and the Khokhars, Gukkurs; and that Khusrau had to abandon the investment; but under the reign of Mu'izz-ud-Din, Dow [page 137] states: "This fort [Salcot], as we have before related, was effectually besieged by Chusero, in the absence of Mahommed;" and BRIGGS also [page 176] says: "This fort, as we have before related, being successfully besieged and taken by Khoosrow Mullik," &c.; and thus both translators totally contradict their own previous statements. FIRISHTAH, whom they translate, of course, states, as other writers do, that Khusrau Malik was unable to take it. Led away, I imagine, by this statement, and placing reliance on its correctness, ELPHINSTONE has repeated [page 311] this absurdity. He says "Khusru Malik, taking courage from despair, made an alliance with the Gakkars [Dow, Gickers; Briggs, Gukkurs; Elphinstone, Gakhars! /], captured one of Shahab u-din's strongest forts, and obliged him to call in the aid of stratagem," &c. Thus a totally incorrect translation of a native historian's words, and a statement respecting which the translators themselves contradict their own previous translation, is handed down from one writer to the other. This is writing history with a vengeance.

The stratagem referred to above is related in Firishtah, which see but it

Malik assembled the forces of Hindustan , and a levy of the [different] Khokhar tribes, and appeared before the gates of Sial-kot, and sat down before it for a considerable time, and again retired without being able to effect his object. After that, in the year 582 H., the Sultan-i-Ghāzī [Mu'izz-ud-Din] appeared [again] before the gates of Lohor. As the Mahmūdi sovereignty had reached its termination, and the sun of the empire of Sabuk-Tigin had reached its setting, and the Recorder of Destiny had inscribed the decree of Khusrau Malik's dethronement, that monarch was not possessed of the power to resist, and he entered into negotiations for peace; and, for the purpose of having an interview with the Sultan [Mu'izz-ud-Din], Khusrau Malik came out [of Lohor]6. He was seized, and imprisoned. and Lohor passed into the possession of the Sultan-i-Ghazi, and the kingdom of Hindustan 7 came under his sway.

is not related by any of the authors I have quoted, from some of whom he derived his own information.

The account contained in the Hindū history of Jamūn previously quoted, of Khusrau Malik's attempt to take Sfāl-kot, which was a standing menace to his rule, agrees with the account given by our author and some others, with the exception that other tribes of unbelievers besides the Khokhars were engaged in it; and, although Khusrau Malik had got together a large following, he was unable to keep the field against the superior and more efficient forces of the Ghūrīs.

The Khokhars [عوم a totally distinct race from the Gakhars The name of the former is sometimes written [Khukhar, but the first mode is the most correct. Abu-l-Fazl, in the A'-in-i-Akbari, constantly mentions them, and he writes the two names very differently. There are still numbers of Khokhars in the Panjab, some 20,000 families, and I have met with them constantly in the Multan district, and districts further to the north-west, towards the Indus, in the Sind-Sagar Do-abah. Their chief locale is about Barih, Ahmad-abad, and Khush-ab. They still style their chief SULTAN as well as RAE, and will not give their daughters in marriage to other tribes, or, at least, used not to. The Ghakars are still further northwards. Our author does not mention a word about these transactions with the Khokhars in his account of Khusrau Malik's reign, and only mentions two expeditions against Lahor, and therein states that Khusrau Malik delivered it up to Mu'izz-ud-Din in 583 H.; but here he says in 582 H. Some of the works I have been quoting say Mu'izz-ud-Din obtained possession of Lahor in 582 H., while others say it happened in 583 H.

⁵ This is the same person who subsequently gave his adherence to Sultan Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and then acted treacherously, and was ousted from Hirāt, and put to death. See note ², page 257. His correct name is ²Izzud-Din, Husain. His father's name was Khar-mil.

6 See page 115, where our author states that Khusrau Malik, under the faith of a treaty, was induced to come out.

7 That portion only over which Khusrau Malik ruled; but subsequently he conquered more.

The Sipah-Sālār, 'Alī-i-Kar-mākh, who was the Wālī [Governor] of Multān, was located at Lohor, and the father of the author of this work, Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dīn-i-Minhāj, the Wonder of his Age, and Most Eloquent of 'Ajam, became the Ķāzī of the forces of Hindūstān, and, dressed in an honorary robe, conferred upon him by Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, in the audience hall [or tent] of the camp she established his Court of Judicature. Twelve camels were assigned to convey his tribunal so [on the march]. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him, and upon the orthodox Sultāns of the past, and the Musalmān Maliks of the present!

After these events the Sultān-i-Ghāzi set out on his return to Ghaznīn, taking along with him Khusrau Malik; and from the court of Ghaznīn sent him to the court of Fīrūz-koh, to the presence of the Sultān-ul-A'zam, Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn. From thence Khusrau Malik was sent into Gharjistān and imprisoned within the castle of Balarwān, and it was commanded that his son, Bahrām Shāh' [by name], should be detained within the walls of the fortress of Saif-rūd of Ghūr; and, when the outbreak and sedition of Sultān Shāh', Khwārazm-Shāhi, arose in the year

8 Where public business was usually transacted.

⁹ For himself and the Mustis. He did not continue at Bāmiān long then.

See pages 431 and 433.

¹ This, probably, is the son who had been given up as a hostage to Mu'izz-ud-Dîn. Firishtah, but on whose authority he does not mention, styles him Malik Shāh. There is not the slightest doubt as to who put them to death, and the text very plainly indicates who did, both here and at page 115.

Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii., note 2, page 295.

2 Not " Khwārazm Shāh" but his brother. He was not a Sultān; this is part of his title merely. See page 245. The error of calling him Sultan or King of Khwarazm is of common occurrence. Elphinstone, misled by translators or translations, calls him "King of Kharizm." His name was Mahmud, and his title, Sultan Shah-i-Jalal-ud-Din. At page 115, our author says Khusrau Malik and his son, Bahram Shah, were put to death when the affair of Sultan Shah occurred in 598 H., and here says, 587 H., while twice, in his account of Ghiyas-ud-Din's reign [see pages 378 and 379], he distinctly states that the engagement with Sultan Shah, in which Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, then only Lord of the Stables, was taken prisoner, took place in 588 H. [Jahān-Ārā, 588 H.]. The year 587 H. is that in which the first battle took place with Rae Pithora, according to the whole of the authors I have been quoting, as well as several others, including our author himself, and the second battle, in which Rae Pithora was defeated and [according to Musalman accounts] slain, took place beyond a doubt [see page 468], in 588 H There is no doubt whatever as to the dates our author gives, for they are as plainly written as it

587 H., they martyred <u>Kh</u>usrau Malik and his son [Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh]. The mercy of the Almighty be upon them all!

Subsequent to these events, the Sultān-i-Ghāzī caused the forces of Islām to be organized, and advanced against the fortress of Tabarhindah³, and took that stronghold, and

is possible to write, and all the copies of the text collated agree; but neither of these three dates can be correct. The campaign against Sultan Shāh, Khwārazmī, which lasted over six months, took place in 586 H., or early in 587 H., and in 589 H. he died. What tends to prove this to be correct, even from our author's own statements, is the fact, that, between the acquirement of Lahor, and the first battle of Tara'in, no operations were undertaken east of the Indus by Mu'izz-ud-Din, because occupied elsewhere. See also next page where it is said that the Kazi of Tulak was to hold Tabarhindah for the period of eight months, thus showing that the Sultan intended to, come again the next cold season and relieve it. The Kazi however held out for five months longer, and, the Sultan not having arrived, was obliged to capitulate. Here is further proof. Alfi and Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh say Sulţān Shāh sent a message to Ghiyās-ud-Din [after Sultan Shāh revolted against his brother's authority. See also page 246 and note 8], after he had gained possession of several places in Khurasan with the aid of the Kara-Khita'is, that he. Ghiyas-ud-Din, should give up to him the places belonging to his [Sultan Shah's] father, otherwise to prepare for hostilities. Ghivas-ud-Din summoned his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Dfn, from Hind to join him. Some writers affirm that up to this time the latter was styled Malik only, and that after that campaign the title of Sultan was conferred upon him, as well as on his cousin, Shams-ud-Din of Bamian, from which period, and not before, the name and title will be found on his coins. In the neighbourhood of the Murgh-ab, in the valley of Marw-ar-Rud, the two brothers, Ghiyas-ud-Din, and Mu'izz-ud Din, Shams-ud-Din of Bamian, and Taj-ud-Din, ruler of Sijistan, being also present, after several months, encountered Sultan Shah, who was defeated, and reached Marw with only forty followers. This is said to have taken place in 586 н. Sultan Takish, Khwarazm Shah, hearing of this reverse his rebellious brother had sustained, advanced from Khwarazm against him by forced marches; and Sultan Shah again sought protection from the Ghuris, who, some time after, aided him with a numerous force, and despatched him towards Khwarazm. This was in 588 H., for, his brother Takish having marched into 'Irak at the request of Kutlagh Inanaj [see page 167, note 8] in that vear. Sultan Shah made a dash against Khwarazm, the capital of his brother.

Allf further states, but it is somewhat contrary to other accounts, that, on the way, Sultan Shah was taken ill, and died at the end of Ramaşān, 589 nt. When the news of this event reached Chiyāş-ud-Din, he despatched orders

for his troops to march back again.

Another reason why I consider 586 H. correct is, that all authors of any authority, as well as our author himself, say that the second battle of Tara'in took place in 588 H., after which Kuṭb-uḍ-Dīn, I-bak, was left to 'carry on operations in Hindūstān, and, if the campaign against Sultān Shāh took place in that year, and the two armies were six months in sight of each other, Kuṭb-uḍ-Dīn, I-bak, could not have been present there to be taken prisoner, and be at Kuḥrām in Hindūstān at the same time. See page 515.

² All the copies of the text collated, both here, and elsewhere in the work, as well as many other authors, say Tabarhindah [or Tabarhindh]. The

made it over [to the charge of] Malik Ziyā-ud-Dîn, the Ķāzī Muḥammad-i-'Abd-us-Sallām, Nisāwī, Tūlakī'. This Ķāzī, Ziyā-ud-Dīn, was the son of the uncle of the maternal grandfather of the writer of this History, [namely] Ķāzī Majd-ud-Dīn, Tūlakī. At his [Ķāzī Ziyā-ud-Dīn's] orequest, they selected twelve hundred horse from the forces of Hindūstān and of Ghaznīn, all men of Tūlak, and the whole of them were ordered to join his Khayl [band or division], and were located within that fortress, under the stipulation that they should hold it for the period of eight months, until the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī should return again from Ghaznīn; but the Rāe Kolah or Pithorā, however, had arrived

printed text has Sirhind, and many authors of comparatively modern date, including the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā, and Khulāṣat-ut-Ta-wārlikh, also have Sirhind. The Tārlikh-i-Alīī, and Zubdat-ut-Tāwārlikh sy Tarhindah, Budā'ūnī also has the same in one copy, and Tarhindah [the Persian b might have been left out by the copyist] in another; and, in another place, says it was Jai-pāl's capital. The Lubb-ut-Tawārlikh-i-Hind says Tabarhindah now known by the name of Bikhandah. Firishah has Pathindah [-Ju-q-] in the latest lithographed copy of the Persian text which was so carefully collated, it is said, with several copies of the original, by Brigos himself, and Bathindah [-Ju-q-] in other MS. copies I have examined, but, in his translation, Brigos has Bituhnda, and Dow calls it "The capital of Tiberhind." I may mention that Bathindah, which is the place Briggs probably means, is some hundred miles west of Thān's ar. See also note ? page 76, next to last para.

⁴ That is to say, he or his family came originally from Nisā, and he was Karā of Tūlak, which was a considerable place mentioned by our author in several places. We might as well say Chief Justice Supreme Court, as "Kāzī Tolak." Instead of Nisāwī, some copies of the text have Būghārī, and Būghārī, but the majority of the best copies have Nisāwī. BriGos turns him into "Multib Zear-ou-Deem Toosuhy," and Dow into "Multib Zear-ou".

6 Compare Elliot : India, vol. ii. page 295.

• The right word may be Golah, as both would be written 4,5 In Sarskrit man-golak signifies the offspring by illegitimate connexion with a widow; but we hear nothing of such a connexion on the part of Prithi Rai's father. Top, in his usual highly imaginative way, however, considers Gola [Golah] to mean a slave :- "In Persian Gholam, literally 'a slave,' evidently a word of the same origin as the Hindu gola." In another place, he asserts that Golah refers to the natural brother of Prithi Raj. Vol i. page 179. Had Prithi Rai been a golak, I do not think he would have been eligible to succeed his grandfather. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir, referring to the second battle between the Hindus and Muhammadans, calls Kolah [or the Kolah] the son of the Rae of Ajmir; and all authors with whom I am acquainted state, that Kolah or Golah, the son of Pithora or Prithi Raj, after his father was put to death, was made tributary ruler of Ajmir by Mu'izz-ud-Din, as do all the authors I have been quoting: and no other writer that I know of pretends that Pithora was a natural son of his father or adds Kolah or Golah to his name. Our author has apparently confused the two names, and this seems the more likely, because he

near at hand, and the Sultan marched to Tara'in 7 to meet him. The whole of the Rānās 8 of Hind were along with the Rāe Kolah.

When the ranks were duly marshalled, the Sultan seized a lance and attacked the elephant on which Gobind Rae,

has not said a single word about Pithora's son having been set up by the Musalmans, although they had to support him subsequently by force of arms.

7 This name is plainly and correctly written, in the different copies of our author's text, and all the authors I have quoted previously, as well as many others, call this place by the same name. Compilers of Histories of India, led astray by the translations of Firishtah [not by Firishtah himself] which supplied them with their materials, have turned this name into Narain. Dow has " Sirauri upon the banks of the Sirsutty," and BRIGGS, "Narain, now called Tiroury, on the banks of the Soorsutty." ELPHINSTONE, following Briggs, no doubt, calls it "Tiroury, between Tanésar and Carnál," and Dowson [Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 295], in the translation of this passage of our author's text, evidently trusting to Briggs's translation rather than to the original text, is led to believe our author wrong; but acknowledges, in a foot note, that "the text [our author's] has Tarain," and adds "but Firishta gives the name as Narain, and says it was afterwards called Tirauri. He places it on the banks of the Sarsutí fourteen miles from Thánisar and eighty from Dehli." Now all this is incorrect as far as Firishtah is concerned, even to the lithographed text of Briggs's own revision, for the former has Tara'in [mls] like other authors, not Nara'-in [mls]. Mirza Mughal Beg, who, about eighty years since, made a personal survey of these parts, and the territories further west, says that "on the Shah-Rah [Royal Route] from Kaınāl to Thāni-sar is A'zim-ābād-i-Talāwari [نلاورتي], where there is a large and lofty Rabat of great strength and solidity which can be seen for miles round. Seven miles from this place, to the north, is Amin-ghar, a large village with a large and lofty Rabat likewise. About two miles from the village of Chatang is a small river, filled in the rainy season only, running from right to left, which joins the river Sursuti. Six miles from Amin-ghar, still going northerly, is the city of Thani-sar."

This is within a mile or two of the distance given by many other writers as well as Firishtah. There are several places called Talwandi, and one, on the road from Dihli to Bhaţnir, called Talwapa [1]-jb], but no other Taläwapi. For an account of the engagement, as given in the Jamün History, see next page.

8 In some copies Raes: other writers say, a number of Rajput princes.

9 Thus styled [μω] and also Gobindah [μω] in the oldest copies of the text. Some have με and λιμ both of which modes of writing the name confirm the correctness of the above, which is a common Hindů name; but some more modern copies of the text have Kand [μι], Khānd [μι], and Khāndī [μι], in other authors, including Firishtah, have this latter name also; but the Hindů bard, Chand, calls him Rãe Gobind, like our author in the oldest copies. He led the van of the Hindůs on an elephant. Translators of Firishtah make him commander of the whole; but Rãe Pithorā was himself an experienced leader: the other led the van. ToD (vol. i. p. 119), says Chaond Ræ, which the historians of "Sahadulir" style "Khandirai, was not brother of Pirt'hwirájá"! He states that he was of the Dahima race of Rāipūtis, one of three brothers, the eldest of whom, Kaimas, was lord of Biana [Blānah], and minister of Pirt'hwirájá 'the second was

Rae [Raiah] of Dihli, was mounted, and on which elephant he moved about in front of the battle. The Sultan-i-Ghāzi, who was the Haidar of the time, and a second Rustam, charged and struck Gobind Rae on the mouth with his lance with such effect that two of that accursed one's teeth fell into his mouth. He launched a javelin at the Sultan of Islam and struck him in the upper part of the arm and inflicted a very severe wound. The Sultan turned his charger's head round and receded, and from the agony of the wound he was unable to continue on horseback any longer. Defeat befell the army of Islam so that it was irretrievably routed, and the Sultan was very nearly falling from his horse. Seeing which, a lion [hearted] warrior, a Khalj 2 stripling, recognized the Sultan, and sprang up behind him, and, supporting him in his arms, urged the horse with his voice, and brought him out of the field of battle 3:

"Poondir, who commanded the frontier at Lahore" [the utter absurdity of this assertion I have already shown, I think, in note', page 466]; and the third brother, Chaond Rae, was the principal leader in the last battle in which Pirt'hwirájá fell." All the Muḥammadan historians and three Hindu chroniclers agree in the statement that this person, styled Gobind by some, and Khāndī by others, was Pithorā's brother, and that he was present in both battles, and was killed in the last.

¹ These are the author's exact words: there is nothing in the text about "on the other hand, returned the blow, &c." The jie or ji. signifies not a down bree, but a small spear or javelin, an Indian weapon, the point of which is sometimes barbed, and sometimes made with three barbs. From five to ten were taken in the hand [the left] at once, and launched at an enemy singly with the right.

2 Not a Ghalzi Afghan, I beg leave to notice, but a Turk.

³ Various are the different accounts given by authors respecting the incidents of this battle, and very erroneous and incorrect are the versions translated from Firtshtah which, as authoritic statements are to be desired in all matters of history, ought to be corrected, and more particularly respecting this important period of Indian history.

The History of the Rājahs of Jamūn states that "Sulfān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, in 587 H., determined to undertake an expedition against the fortress of Tabarhind, which was the strongest place belonging to the great Rājahs of Hind. Rāe Pithorā, the Chohān, sovereign [Farmān-rawā] of Hindistān, and eighth in descent from Bal-Dīve, Chohān, advanced to give battle to the Sulfān. They met at Tarā'ān-phar, fourteen miles from Thānā-sar. During the engagement, Rāe Khānī [sie in MS.] Rāe, ruler of Dihlī on the part of his brother, from the back of an elephant on which he was mounted, with a long spear wounded the Sulfān in the upper part of the arm. He would have fallen from his horse from the agony of the wound, had not some of his slaves come to him at the moment, and borne him out of the fight. The Sulfān, having sustained this defeat, retired towards Chamhi, and, near the banks of the Kāwī, a deputation from the Rājah of Jamūn presented themselves."

On the Musalman forces not seeing the Sultan, lamentation broke from them, until they reached a place where

Another history, written by a Hindū, says Kfdī [كَرَّتِي) Rāe commanded his brother's army, and that, after the Sulṭān had wounded him in the mouth, he wounded the Sulṭān in the head with his spear, and the Sulṭān received another wound in the side [by whom inflicted is not said], and he fdl from his horse, when a Khalj youth took him on his own harse, and, placing him before him, carried him safely out of the fight. Budā'unī also says the Sulṭān fell from his horse, and agrees with the above in the last clause of the sentence.

Other authors, including the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, and Tagkarat-ul-Mulūk, state that Khānī Rāe commanded the van, and was leading on the enemy when the Sultān attacked him. They state that the Khāli youth was on foot at the time, and, seeing the state of the Sultān, he sprang up behind him, and carried him out of the melée to his own camp, whither his own troops had retired; and that the panic and anxiety which had arisen on its being found that the Sultān had not come out of the fight with the rest of his army subsided.

One of the oldest copies of our author's text here differs from the others collated to a considerable degree. It says that "the Khalj youth recognized the Sulgān [in the mêlée and confusion], joined him, and replaced him on the horse's back [thus implying that he had fallen or had to dismount], cried out with his voice to urge the horse, and brought the Sulgān out of the battle." This is the literal translation of the passage in that copy; and, in it, there is no mention of the youth having mounted the horse also.

The Sultan remained at Lahor until his wound was healed before he returned to Ghaznin.

But what say FIRISHTAH and his translators on this subject?

Dow, vol. i. page 138-9.

"In the year 587, he [Mahommed] marched again towards Hindostan, and, proceeding to Ajmere, took the capital of Tiberhind, where he left Malleek Zia, with above a thousand chosen horse, and some foot, to garrison the place. He himself was upon his way back, when he heard that Pittu Ra, the prince of Ajmire, with his brother Candi Ra, king of Delhi, in alliance with some other Indian princes, were marching towards Tiberhind, with two hundred thousand horse, and three thousand elephants. Mahommed determined to return to the relief of the garrison. He met the enemy at the village of Sirauri, upon the banks of the Sirsutti, fourteen miles from Tannassar, and eighty from Delhi, and gave them battle. Upon the first onset his right and left wings retired, being outflanked by the enemy, till, joining in the rear, his BRIGGS, vol. i. p. 171-173.

"In the year 587, he [Mahomed Ghoory] marched again to Hindustan. and, proceeding towards Ajmere, he took the town of Bituhnda, where he left Mullik Zeea-ood-Deen Toozuky with above a thousand chosen horse, and some foot to form its garrison. While on his return, he heard that Pithow Rae, Raja of Ajmeer, with his brother Chawand Rae, the Raja of Dehly, in alliance with other Indian princes, were marching towards Bituhnda with 200,000 horse, and 3000 elephants. Mahomed Ghoory marched to the relief of his garrison; but, passing beyond Bituhnda, he encountered the enemy at the village of Narain, now called Tirowry, on the banks of the Soorsutty, fourteen miles from Thanisar, and seventy from Delhy. At the first onset his right and left wings, being outflanked, fell back, till, joining in the rear, his army formed a

the defeated army was safe from pursuit by the infidels.

army was formed into a circle. Mahommed, who was in person in the center (sic) of the line when first formed, was told that his right and left wings were defeated, and advised to provide for his own safety. Enraged at this counsel, he smote the imprudent adviser, and rushed on towards the enemy, among whom he commenced, with a few followers, a great slaughter. The eyes of Candi Ra, king of Delhi, fell upon him. He drove the elephant, upon which he was mounted, directly against him. Mahommed, rising from his horse, threw his lance with such force at the elephant, that he drove out three of his back teeth [the elephant's ! !]. In the meantime the King of Delhi, from above, pierced the Sultan through the right arm, and had almost thrown him to the ground; when some of his chiefs advanced to his rescue. This gave an opportunity, to one of his faithful servants, to leap behind him as he was sinking from his horse. and, supporting him in his arms, he carried him from the field, which, by this time, was deserted almost by his whole army. The enemy pursued them near forty miles."

circle. Mahomed Ghoory was in person in the centre of his line, and, being informed that both wings were defeated, was advised to provide for his own safety. Enraged at this counsel. HE CUT DOWN THE MESSENGER. and, rushing on towards the enemy, with a few followers, committed terrible slaughter. The eyes of Chawand Rae falling on him, he drove his elephant directly against Mahomed Ghoory, who, perceiving his intention, charged and delivered his lance full into the Raja's mouth, by which many of his teeth were knocked out. In the meantime, the Raja of Dehly pierced the king through the right arm, with an ARROW [! !]. He had almost fallen, when some of his chiefs advanced to his rescue. This effort to save him gave an opportunity to one of his faithful servants to leap up behind Mahomed Ghoory, who, faint from loss of blood, had nearly fallen from his horse, but was carried triumphantly off the field, although almost wholly deserted by his army, which was pursued by the enemy nearly forty miles," &c.

MAURICE, MURRAY, ELPHINSTONE, MARSHMAN, and MEADOWS TAYLOR, and probably others, such as MILL and THORNTON, take their accounts from the above versions of Dow and BRIGGS. Marshman adds, "If was pursued for forty miles by the victorious Hindoos, and was happy to escape across the Indus," perhaps unaware that he remained at Lähor till his wound was healed fas Dow states] and that there was no pursuit at all.

FIRISHTAH, from the revised text of BRIGGS has as follows:-

"In 587 R., he [Shihāb-ud-Din] determined to enter Hindustān, and he took the fort of Pathināb-ud-Din] determined to enter Hindustān, and he took the fort of Pathināb [Lucq but the MSS. I have examined have Baphindah xuc-I], which, in that day, had become the capital of Rājahs of great dignity, out of the hands of the men of the Rājah of Ajmir. He left Malik Ziyā-ud-Dîn, Tülakî, in that fortress, with 1200 horsemen, each and werry one of whom was selected and a picked man; and was desirous of returning. Suddenly, information reached him, that Pitho Rāg, Wālī [a ruler, a prince, the governor of a province] of Ajmīr, in concert with his brother, Khāndī Rāg, Wālī of Dihlī, and bringing along with them several Rājpūt Rājahs, were advancing, by regular marches, with an army of 200,000 horse, and 3000 elephants, with the determination of retaking the fort of Pathindah [Bathindah 12]. Suljān Shihāb-ud-Dīn, abandoning his intention of returning [10 Ghaznīn], advanced to meet them, and at the mouya [place,

Suddenly the Sultan arrived. A number of Amirs 1,

district, village] of Tara'in, on the banks of the Sursuti, seven kuroh [a distance of rather less than fourteen miles] from Thani-sar, now known as تلاوتي Tarāwarī [but in several MSS. of Firishtah, which I have seen, it is تلاوتي not تراوري], and forty kuroh from Dihli, an encounter and conflict took place. The right and left wings of Sultan Shihab-ud-Din having broke and faced about fit does not say that they were actually broken by the Hindus, and it appears to mean that they declined the onset, or recoiled], and not a great number remained in the centre either. [There is not a word about his army forming "a circle."] At this juncture one of the Sultan's confidential attendants represented [saying] "the Amirs of the right and left [wings] who were nourished by the beneficence and favours of your Court [or dynasty] not keeping their ground resolutely, have taken to flight, and the Afghan [Firishtah does not appear to have had authority for introducing Afghans here, from the statements of the contemporary writers of these times | and Khali Amirs. who were the commanders of the advance, who continually boasted of their valour and prowess, are not to be found [seen], and, should you promptly II give the exact words, except adopting the second person plural for the thirdl turn the reins of retrocession towards Lahor, it seems expedient [so to do]." This speech not agreeing with the Sultan's temperament, he drew his sword from its sheath, and, with the troops [remaining] of the centre, charged the enemy's forces and commenced the conflict. [Firishtah then quotes some lines to the effect that both friend and foe lauded his prowess.] Suddenly the eye of Khandi Rae, the Sipah-Salar [commander of the army] of Dihli, falling on the Sultan, he urged the mountain-like elephant on which he was mounted towards the Sultan, who at once seized his spear and made towards him, and smote him in the mouth with such effect, that many of his teeth fell out []. Khāndī Rāe likewise [i.e. :-- which Briggs has read for :- arrow] showed the greatest audacity and agility, and, from the top of his elephant, inflicted such a wound [with what weapon not said] on the upper part of the arm [5]6] of the Sultan that he was nearly falling from his horse. A Khalj youth on foot [there is not a word about his chiefs coming to his rescue] discovered it, jumped up behind him on the horse, and, taking the Sultan in his arms, bore him out of the battle-field, and conveyed him to the forces of the runaway nobles which were twenty kuroh off; and the tumult and disquiet which had arisen, consequent on the defeat of the army of Islam, and not finding the Sultan, subsided." . . . There is not a word about pursuit.

According to the Zain-ul-Ma'āṣir, quoted by Firishtah immediately after the above, "Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, having become faint from the effects of the wound, fell from his horse. This not being noticed [in the mêléc], no one came to his aid. Night intervened, and, when one watch of the night had passed, a party of his Turkish slaves came to seek him, and went into the battle-field and began searching among the slain. The Sulṭān [who appears to have revived], recognizing the voices of his faithful slaves, acquainted them with his situation. His slaves gave thanks for his safety, and, taking him on their shoulders, in turns, proceeded along throughout the night, and by day-dawn reached their own people."

This battle is said to have taken place in the filtenth year of the reign of Rāe Pithorā, and the Hindū writers state that this was the securith time the Sultān had invaded Hind, in all of which he had been defeated !

4 The Malik-ul-Hājī, Ziyā-ud-Dīn [subsequently 'Alā-ud-Dīn], Muḥammad, the Sultān's niece's husband, was present in this battle. See page 393.

Ghūri youths, and other distinguished men, had noticed the Sultān, along with that lion-like Khalji, had recognized him, and had gathered round him, and broke spears and made a litter and a stretcher, and had borne him to that halting-place. The people [now] became composed, and once more, through [the safety of] his life, the true faith acquired vigour, and the dispersed army, on the strength of the safety of the life of that Sultān-i-Ghazī, again came together s, and retired, and turned their faces towards the Musalmān dominions.

The Kāzī of Tūlak was left [in charge of] the fortress of Tabarhindah, and Rāe Pithorā appeared before the walls of that stronghold, and fighting commenced. For a period of thirteen months and a little over the place was defended. The following year the Sultān-i-Ghāzī assembled the troops of Islām, and commenced his march towards Hindūstān, to avenge the [disaster of the] previous year 7.

6 The same as mentioned at page 458.

Dow, vol. i. page 139.

"Mahommed remained a few months with his brother at Ghor, who still kept the imperial title, and then, returning to Ghizni, spent the ensuing year in indolence and fetivity. But, ambition again fermenting in his mind, he recruited a noble army," &c.

BRIGGS, vol. i. page 173.

"Mahomed remained a few months with his brother at Ghoor, who still retained the title of King [the newer lost the title of Sulfan], and then, returning to Ghieny, spent the ensuing year in pleasure and festivity. At length, having recruited an army," &c.

Firishtah says: "Sultān Shihāb-id-Dīn, having taken leave of his brother [at Fīrūz-koh], proceeded to Ghaznīn; and, with the determination of taking revenge [on Pithorā], having made sleep and rest unlawful to himself [I give the words literally], in a short time assembled troops, brave and ruthless," &c. This is a specimen of "pleasure and festivity," certainly!

Here is another specimen of the same kind, and it is repeated by one writer after another as undoubtedly true and correct.

Dow, page 140.

"When his [Mahommed's] victorious pears had advanced as far as Pesh-"usir, an old sage of Ghor, prostrating BRIGGS, page 174.

"When he had advanced as far as Pishawur, an old sage of Ghoor, prostrating himself before him, said,

⁵ The idiom varies considerably here in nearly every copy. Some have—"On the strength of the safety of that Bādshāh-i-Ghāzī, the army came together again [or rdllied]," &c.

⁷ I have here also to notice, and enter my protest against, a statement respecting the character of Sulfan Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, which Frightah's translators have incorrectly given, and which neither Fringhtah nor any onsher author asserts. In this instance the character of this Prince has been unjustly assailed, held up in a wrong light, and things are asserted which never happened at all.

The author heard from a trustworthy person, a distinguished man of the highland district of Tūlak, whom they used to style by the title of Mu'in-ud-Dîn, Ūshî, who said: "I was in that army along with the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, and the number of cavalry composing the army of Islām that year was one hundred and twenty thousand arrayed

himself before him, said, 'O King, we trust to thy conduct and wisdom; but as yet thy design has been a subject of much dispute and speculation among us.' Mahonmed replied, 'Know, old man, that since the time of my defeat in Hindustan, notwithstanding external appearances, I have never slumbered in ease, or waked but in sorrow and anxiety. I have therefore determined, with this army, to recover my lost honour from those idolaters, or die in the noble attempt,'"

the Musalman faith.

O King, we trust in thy conduct and wisdom; but as yet thy design has been subject of much speculation among us.' Mahomed Ghoory replied, 'Know, old man, that sixee the time of my defeat in Hinhukatan, notwithstanding external appearances, I have never slumbered in ease, or waked but in sorrow and anxiety. I have therefore determined, with this army, to recover my lost honour from those idolaters, or die in the attempt," &c.

Here, again, ELPHINSTONE has been deceived, and, quoting BRIGGS, further disseminates a wrong translation. MARSHMAN says [vol. i. p. 44] that "he [Shahab] stated" this " in one of his letters;" but, unfortunately, Firishtah himself says nothing of the kind! His words are :- "When his [the Sultan's] standards, the emblems of victory, reached the Peshawar territory, one of the Pirs [a holy man, a saint] of Ghür, who was [sufficiently] bold, bowing his forehead to the ground [only Pirs are not wont to do so], represented [saying], 'It is not understood at all whither the Sultan goeth, nor what his object is.' Sultan Shihab-ud-Din replied: 'O such an one [illi]! know for certain that, from the time I have been defeated by the Rajahs of Hind, I have abstained from my wife's bed [I do not give the literal words to this part of the sentence, but it tends to show that he had but one wife, and his having but one child appears to prove it], and have not changed the clothes on my body; and, having passed this year in grief, sorrow, and sadness, I have not permitted the Amirs of Ghur, of the Khalj, and of Khurasan, who, notwithstanding their ancient servitude, ahandoned me in the battle and fled, to present themselves in my presence, nor have I seen their faces during this period. Now, placing dependence on the goodness of God, I am proceeding towards the country of Hind; and I have no expectation of the services of those old [ancient] Amirs, who, from their cradles to this time, have been nourished by the favours of this [my] family.' The Pir, hearing this statement, kissed the ground of service, and said, 'Victory and success attend the followers at the sovereign's stirrup," &c. This is rather different to the statements above.

The name of a town of Farghanah, and also of a place near Baghdad. The person here referred to is no other than the celebrated Muña-ud-Din, Chieti, whose tomb is at Ajmir, and so much frequented. The Emperor Akbar paid several visits to it. Some writers say that he only came into India towards the close of Sulţan Muïaz-ud-Din's career, and stayed to propagate

in defensive armour *." When the Sultān-i-Ghāzi with suchlike organization and such a force arrived near unto Rāe Kolah Pithorā, he had gained possession of the fortress of Tabarhindah by capitulation, and had pitched his camp in the neighbourhood of Tarā'in¹. The Sultān [now] made

9 It does not appear to have been steel armour. The meaning of the word used is, "a covering, a garment, vestment worn in battle, and also put on horses;"—defensive armour of some sort, some of steel, perhaps, and some of leather. This is what Firishtah appears to have turned into "helmets inlaid

with jewels, and armour inlaid with silver and gold."

1 See note 1, page 459. Hasan Nigami, in the Taj-ul-Ma'asir, a contemporary writer, who began his work the year before Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's assassination, and who begins with this expedition, does not mention where this battle took place, but mentions that Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, on reaching Lahor, despatched the Sadr-i-Kabir, Kiwam-ul-Mulk [these are his titles, not his namel, Rukn [Rúhu is a mistakel-ud-Dîn, Hamzah, to Ajmîr to offer his ultimatum to Pithora Rae; but his inflated style greatly obscures the details. Some writers state that two emissaries were sent. The Sultan called upon Pithora Rae to embrace the Musalman faith and acknowledge his supremacy. The Chohan prince sent an indignant reply; and, having received aid from most of the Rajahs of Hind, with 300,000 horse-Rajputs, and some Afghans, one author says-advanced to meet him, and they again met on the former battle-field. Pithorā Rāe sent a message to the Sultān, saying, "It is advisable thou shouldst retire to thine own territory, and we will not follow thee." The Sultan, in order to deceive him, and throw him off his guard, replied : "It is by command of my brother, my sovereign, that I come here and endure trouble and pain; give me sufficient time that I may despatch an intelligent person to my brother, to represent to him an account of thy power, and that I may obtain his permission to conclude a peace with thee under the terms that Tarhind [Tabarhindah], the Panjab, and Multan shall be ours, and the rest of the country of Hind thine." The leaders of the infidel forces, from this reply, accounted the army of Islam as of little consequence, and, without any care or concern, fell into the slumber of remissness. That same night the Sultan made his preparations for battle, and, after the dawn of the morning, when the Rajputs had left their camp for the purpose of obeying the calls of nature, and for the purpose of performing their ablutions, he entered the plain with his ranks marshalled. Although the unbelievers were amazed and confounded, still, in the best manner they could, they stood to fight, and sustained a complete overthrow. Khandi Rae [the Gobind Rae of our author], and a great number besides of the Raes of Hind, were killed, and Pithora Rae was taken prisoner within the limits of Sursuti, and put to death,"

There are, however, other versions of these events which, although partly triaditionary, bear some measure of truth, and it will be well to notice them. The History of Jamün, which agrees in some measure with the Rājpūt traditions, states that Pithorā Rāe, having been apprised by certain informers of the part the Rājah Bij, or Bijayā Div, had taken in aiding the Musalmāns, proposed to march against him, and chastise him. At this j. acture, hostility arose between Pithorā Rāe and Rājah Jai Chandra, ruler of Kinnauj [the details of which are too long for insertion here], respecting his daughter. In 588 H. Suljān Shihāb-ud-Dīn, having learned the state of Pithorā Rāe's fafāris, prepared to avenge his previous defeat; and Bijayā Dīw, Rājah of

disposition of his forces. The centre division of the army, the baggage, the standards and banners, his canopy of

Jamun, despatched his son, Nar-singh Diw, with a body of his forces to join him, and Rājah Jai Chandra of Ķinnauj, who had been in communication with the Sultan [ToD also says "the Princes of Kanouj and Putun invited Shabudin [Shihāb-ud-Din?] to aid their designs of humiliating the Chohan [Rāe Pithorā]. . . . The envoy was Chand Poondir, the vassal chief of Lahore, and guardian of that frontier, speedily joined his camp with his available forces"! vol. i. page 256.] Perhaps the writer was unaware that Lahor had been in the possession of the Ghaznawids for mare than a century, and that Shabudin, so called, had only taken it from the last of that dynasty five or six years before, and since that time his own governor had held it. The Sultan came in contact with Rae Pithora on that same field of Talawari, and formed his forces into two divisions. The troops of Jamun and Kinnauj were to oppose Khandi Rãe of Dihlī, while the Sultān, with his own forces, encountered Rãe Pithorã. The battle was obstinately maintained, and it is related that Khāndī Rāe fell by the sword of Nar-singh Diw of Jamun, and the Sultan himself slew several of the enemy. Rae Pithora was captured alive and taken to Ghaznin, where he was deprived of his sight. For further details on this subject, see page 485, note 3.

Alfi gives another version of this battle, which is certainly curious. It states that the Sulţān, having taken the route by Purshor, arrived within the limits of Dihlî [the territory of?]. Pitho Rāe and Kandî [sic] Rāe prepared to oppose him, on which Mu'izz-ud-Dîn made a precipitate retreat. Rāe Pitho was following in pursuit of him until they had passed beyond Lāhor, and had reached the mouga' [village or district] called Shihāb-ud-Dîn [Shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dîn [shihāb-ud-Dīn

Another writer states that "Pithorā Rāe was killed in the battle, and Khāndī Rāe, the leader, escaped in safety;" whilst another says that "both were captured and slain."

The statements of both Dow and BRIGGS are equally imaginary with respect to the battle, where they say:—

Dow, vol. i. page 142.

"The Mussulman troops, as if now only serious in fight, made such dreadful slaughter, that this prodigious army, once shaken, like a great building was lost in its own ruins."

BRIGGS, vol. i. page 177.

"The Moslems, as if they now had only began to be in earnest, committed such havoe, that this prodigious army, once shaken, like a great building tottered to its full, and was lost in its own ruins."

This last sentence is quoted by several writers, including MAURICE, ELPHINSTONE and MARSHMAN; and MEADOWS TAYLOR SAYS ["The Student's Manual of Indian History," page 92], "'Like a great building," write Ferichtan, "it tottered to its fall," &c.; but, unfortunately, Firightan never wrote anything of the kind. His language here is particularly simple. Referring to the final charge by the Sultān, he says: "'The dust of the battle-field was drenched with the blood of the brave; and, in the twinkling of an eye, he threw the ranks of

state, and the elephants, were left several miles in the rear. He marshalled his ranks, and was advancing leisurely. The light-armed and unincumbered horsemen he had directed should be divided into four divisions, and had appointed them to act against the infidels on four sides; and the Sultān had commanded, saying: "It is necesssary that, on the right and left, and front and rear, 10,000 mounted archers should keep the infidel host in play; and, when their elephants, horsemen, and foot advance to the attack, you are to face about and keep the distance of a horse's course in front of them?" The Musalmān troops acted according to these instructions, and, having exhausted and wearied the unbelievers, Almighty God gave the victory to Islām, and the infidel host was overthrown.

Rāe Pithorā, who was riding an elephant, dismounted and got upon a horse and fled [from the field], until, in the neighbourhood of [the] Sursuti , he was taken prisoner, and they despatched him to hell; and Gobind Rāe of Dihlî was slain in the engagement. The Sultān recognized his head through those two teeth which had been broken. The seat of government, Ajmīr, with the whole of the Siwālikh [territory], such as Hānsī, Sursutī, and other

the enemy into commotion. At this crisis Khar-mîl ['Izz-ud-Dîn, Ḥusain, sen of Khar-mîl] and other Amîrs, from different directions, charged, and over-threw the Hindū troops." This is all: he then mentions the fall of Khāndī Rāe and other chiefs.

² The object was to harass, and to induce them to break their order. The Sultān's tactics, from our author's description, as well as that of others, are not very clear. One writer, however, throws a little more light upon the matter; and from that it appears that the Sultān, leaving the central portion of his army—about half his entire force—some miles in the rear, with the baggage and other matérial, divided the remainder into five divisions, four of which, each of 10,000 light-armed horse—mounted archers—were to attack the enemy right and left, and front and rear, and retire, pretending flight. This mode of fighting having been carried on from about 9 A.M. to the time of afternoon prayer, the Sultān, considering that the enemy had been sufficiently wearied, with the remainder—his fifth division, the flower of his troops, consisting of some 12,000 horse—made a final charge, and put the Hindū army to a complete rout.

The ancient Saraswarf. Probably our author means in the tract near the Sursuti: the word is السراحية الماء

4 Like some other historians, our author calls that tract of country, lying south of the Himālayah, between the Sutlai and the Ganges, and extending as far south as Hänst, by the name of Siwallikh; but some other native writers, including the author of the History of Jamūn, include the whole of the Alpine

tracts, were subjugated. These events took place, and this victory was achieved, in the year 588 H.⁵; and the Sultān placed Malik Ķutb-ud-Dîn, Ĭ-bak o, in the fort of Kuhrām', and returned [home again] s.

Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn advanced from Kuhrām to Mîrath, and took that city and fortress, and, in the following year, he possessed himself of the capital city, Dihlî. In this same

tracts below the higher range, from the Ganges to Kashmir, that is to say, the extreme northern boundary of India—under the name of Kohi-Siwälikh. Another writer says Siwälikh is the ancient name of the territory of Näg-awr. See page 200 also. The Sultan returned to Ghaznin along the skirts of the hills of the northern Panjab.

⁵ Authors generally agree respecting this date; but, as already noticed, our author, in another place, states this was the year in which the campaign against Sulfan Split took place. See note 2, page 456.

6 For the meaning of I-bak, see under his reign, next Section.

7 As written with the vowel points-not Kahram.

a Our author leaves out entirely all mention of the son of Rãe Pithorā having been set up at Ajmīr as a subject and tributary ruler, as mentioned in the Tāj-ul-Māāgir and subsequent histories; and hence his name, together with the Sulfān's also, was impressed on the coins issued by him during the short period he ruled at Ajmīr.

9 Mr. E. Thomas [Coins of the Pathán Kings of Dehlí], page 22, note 1, says "The historical evidence as to the capture of Dehlí by the Moslems, in 587 H., is complete and consistent with the best authorities," &c. He is mistaken, however, even on his own authorities. Hasan Nigāmi, in the Tājul-Ma'āşir [Elliot, vol. ii. page 216], gives no date at all; but, in the following page, says, "in the month of Ramazán [which is the ninth month], 588 H.," Kuth-ud-Din "marched against Jatwan" to relieve Hansi. After this he marched against Mirath and took it; and, after that again, marched towards Dihli, and invested and took it [page 219] I have compared the text of the Tāi-ul-Ma'āsir, and find the above date quite correct. Our author, Minhāi-i-Sarāj [the version given at page 300 of ELLIOT, which is evidently translated from the printed text, is incorrect and imperfect], who often contradicts his own statements and dates, after saying here that the overthrow of Rae Pithora took place in 588 H., in his account of Kutb-ud-Din, farther on, says that Kutb-ud-Din took possession of Mirath in 587 H.; but immediately endeavours to correct himself, and says: "From Mirath he issued forth, in the year 588 H., and captured Dihli; and, in the year 590 H.," accompanied the Sultan against Jai-Chand, &c. The fact is that the Hindus, having been overthrown in 588 H., in the battle of Tara'in, Kuth-ud-Din was left at Kuhram, from which, towards the close of the same year, he moved against Jatwan, and relieved Hansi, and then proceeded against Mirath. These movements must have occupied some three months, and, in the last days of 588 H., or early in 589 H., he invested Dihli, and gained possession of it. Some works, however, such as the Tabakāt-i-Akbari, Haft-Iklim, Khulāşat-ut-Tawārikh, and Firishtah, say Dihli was taken in 588 H. The Lubb-ut-Tawarikh-i-Hind says, "Mu'izzud-Din advanced against Dihli, after taking Ajmir, and, on the kinsman of Rae Pithora and Khandi [Gobind?] Rae, who then held possession of it, tendering tribute and submission, he was allowed to retain it; and the next

year likewise—589-H.—he [Kutb-ud-Din] took the fort of Kol. In the year 590 H., the Sultān [again] marched from Ghaznīn and advanced towards Kinnauj and Banāras, and, in the vicinity of Chandwār', he overthrew Rāe Jai-Chand', and by that victory three hundred and odd elephants fell into his hands.

Under the shadow of the ascendancy and auspices of that victorious and just monarch, victory was conferred upon his slave, the Malik-i-Karim [the Beneficent Malik], Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, so that he continued to subdue the territory of Hindūstān and parts adjacent, namely, the state of Nahrwālah, and Thankir³, the fort of Gwāliyūr,

year, 589 H., Kuṭb-ud-Dfn, who had been left at Kuhṛām, took it, and made it the seat of government; and, in this, the works quoted above agree. The statement of our author, backed by the statement of Faṣiþ-f, and the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, and some others, is to be depended upon; but 587 H. is out of the question altogether, although that year is given in the Khuliāṣat-ul-Akḥbār, and one or two others. If 587 H. is correct, in what year was Rāe Pithorā defeated the first time? See also note a, page 456. The year 589 H. is a somewhat remarkable one:—Dihlī was made the capital of Muḥammadan India; Richard Cœur de Lion fought in Palestine; Ṣalaḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf, Sulṭān of Miṣr, died; and Changiz Khān entered into friendly relations with Ung Khān.

¹ In some copies Chandwal and Jandwal, and in some other authors <u>Chandwar and Chandawar</u>. The only place bearing a similar name at this time, and in the direction indicated, is what is styled <u>Chandpur and Chandanpur</u>, in the district of Farrukhäbäd, on the route from Bareill to Fath-char, Lat, 27° 27′.

Long. 79° 42'.

2 That is, he turned his arms against Kinnauj and Banāras. The Rājah of Kinnauj and Banāras, his former ally, according to the Hindu accounts, against Rae Pithora, had assembled numerous forces, in consequence of Kutbud-Din, I-bak's, aggressive policy, and was about to march against him. It was to support Kutb-ud-Din that the Sultan again came into India, and an encounter [the Hindu writers say "several" encounters] took place between them on the Jun [Jamna], in which the Rajah [Jai Chandra] was slain. Some say as many as 600 and 640 elephants, one of which was a white one, were captured, besides a vast amount of other booty. The white elephant is probably the same as was presented subsequently by Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, the Sultan's nephew, to Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah. Firishtah says the white elephant, which was taken on this occasion, soon after died. Jai-Chandra was killed in this action, and his body could not be recognized. At leng h, after much search, a body was found, but was so disfigured with wounds that it could not be distinguished for certain by his people; but, on examining the mouth, it was found to be the body of the Rājah, from the fact of his teeth being fastened in with pegs of gold [see signifies a peg, pin, &c., not a plate], he being an old man. The probability is they were false teeth, or a set not his own, fastened by gold pins or wires. His stronghold, Asnī, was also taken.

³ Here our author seems confused. In his account of Kutb-ud-Din, he does not say that Kutb-ud-Din took Thankir, quite the contrary; and, in his

and Budā'ūn, the whole of which he took, the dates of every one of which will, please God, be subsequently recorded in the [account of the] Kutbi victories ¹.

When the august Sultān, <u>Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn</u>, Muḥammad, son of [Bahā-ud-Dīn] Sām, departed this life in the city of Hirāt, the victorious Sultān, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad, son of Sām, was on the frontiers of Tūs, and Sarakhs, of Khurāsān and with the purpose of performing the

account of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril [Section XX.], says that Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn himself took it, and afterwards male it over to Tughril, which is correct. There is great discrepancy here, too, anong authors. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, Alfī, and others, say the Sulţān marched against it, and then marched on Gwāliyūr, the Rājah of which agreed to pay tribute, and paid a large sum down. He was allowed to retain his territory, on these terms, for a time; and the Sulţān returned to Ghazmīn. Alfī says he took Thankfir, the present Bīanah, in 590 H.; Budā'ūnī says 591 H.; sand Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says in 592 H. See account of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, next Section.

4 That is to say, the victories gained by Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak.

5 We now come to "Proceedings West of the Indus" [See Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii. page 297], and very important proceedings they are; and most of the proceedings hitherto related by our author have occurred west of the Indus. Ghaznin, as well as Ghūr, is west of the Indus. Our author takes good care to trumpet the successes of the Ghuris, but conceals their reverses. He appears to have forgotten that, when Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din left Tus, and abandoned the expedition against Khurāsān, on receiving intimation of the death of his elder brother at Hirāt, he left, in command of a large force at Tus, and parts around. Muhammad-i-Khar-nak, the chief of the Amirs of Ghur, and of the Ghūriān champions, a second Rustam in valour. He began carrying his depredations as far as Abiward, made some of the Khwarazmi nobles captive, and slew a great number of men. Subsequently, he pushed on as far as Trak against Tai-ud-Din, Khali, a Khwarazmi officer. The latter sent his son to Muhammad-i-Khar-nak as a hostage for himself; and, on the return of the latter towards Tus again, the Amir of Maraghah sent his son to him also. Muhammad-i-Khar-nak, becoming arrogant at this success, turned his face towards Marw. News now reached him that a force from Khwarazm had arrived near Marw by way of the desert. He advanced to meet it by way of Rue. When the two armies came in contact, good fortune smiled upon the Khwarazmi forces : and, although Muhammad-i-Khar-nak's troops were twice as numerous, the Khwarazmis charged them, and overthrew them. Muhammad-i-Khar-nak, by a thousand contrivances, succeeded in throwing himself into Tüs. The Khwarazmi troops followed, made breaches in the walls, and took him captive; and, fearing his fury likewise, one of the Amirs-Amin Malik sstyled, by our author, Malik Khan, of Hirat, the Amin-i-Hajib, at page 415, and see page 287, note 9]-struck off his head, and despatched it to Khwārazm to the Sultān. He greatly disapproved of this act, but it filled Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din with amazement and anxiety, for Muhammad-i-Kharnak was the most valiant of his champions, and the pillar of his army. Such was his intrepidity, and the strength of his arm, that the Sulfans frequently pitted him in combat against the lion and the elephant, and he could overcome both, and could break the leg of a three-year old horse with his hands. This

mourning ceremonies for his brother, he came to Bādghais of Hirāt. Having performed the mourning rites, he nominated different Maliks to the several fiefs of the kingdom of Ghūr. He gave the city of Bust, and the districts of Farāh and Isfizār to his late brother's son, Sulṭān Ghiyāṣud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Ghiyāṣud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and to Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, † the Pearl of Ghūr, who was uncle's son of both the Sulṭāns, and the son-in-law of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, the territory of Ghūr and Garmsīr, namely, the throne of Fīrūz-koh, and the town and territory of Dāwar's, and also presented him with two elephants. To Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Alb-[Arsalān]-i-Ghāzī, son of Ķazil Arsalān, Saljūkī, who was the son of a sister's of the two Sulṭāns, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn gave the city of Hirat [and its dependencies], after which

is the person styled Mahomed Zeeruk, Prince of Murv, by Briggs; and Zireek, Prince of Murve, by Dow. In the revised text of Firishtäh, his name is

turned into delms [Khair Beg] !

It was after this defeat of Muhammad-i-Khar-nak that Sulţān Muhammad, Khar-nak hat was urged by his ministers and nobles to advance aginst Hirāt, as the sons [son and son-in-law] of the late Sulţān Ghiyāş-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Sām, were quarrelling about the inheritance, and their nobles were inclined to join his service. Consequently, in Jamādī-ul-Awad, 600 H., the Sulţān marched towards Hirāt for the second time, and Alb-i-Ghāzī, the sister's son of the two Sulţān brothers, surrendered that stronghold to him, as already related in note? page 257. Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak must be the same person as is referred to at page 344, the son of Malik Salī-ud-Dīn, Sūrī, son of Malik Shlṭāb-ud-Dīn, Khar-nak kon of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain], the uncle of the Sulṭāns Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn; and the former's full name would be Shlhāb-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad 'Alf-i-Khar-nak, and he was second cousin of Mu'zz-ud-Dīn and his brother.

My note 2, page 257, will show why and with what object the Sulfan was

between Tus and Sarakhs, where he heard of his brother's death.

6 He divided the ancestral dominions amongst the family of Sām. His brother had died in the fifth mouth of 599 H., and, from this date only, authors state, "the assumed the title of Sulfan;" but this must mean, that from that date he assumed the title of Sulfan. ul. A'gam—the greatest Sulfan—which had been his brother and sovereign's title; his own, previous to his brother's death, being only Sulfan.ul. Mu aggam—the great Sulfan—as shown by his coins.

7 This is the Malik-ul-Hājī, who, after he received the investiture of Ghūr and Fīrūz-koh, received the title of Sultān 'Ala-ud-Dīn. See pages 391, 397,

and 417.

8 Here, too, the idiom differs in the copies of the text in the same manner

as previously alluded to.

⁹ One sister, the elder, married Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, of Bämian; another married Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, son of Kazil Arsalān, Saljūki; and the third was the mother of Tāj-ud-Din, Zangi; but the father is not mentioned. See page 342, and note ³, page 425.

he returned again to <u>Gh</u>aznin, and brought along with him to that city some of the Amirs and Maliks of <u>Gh</u>ūr to serve under him, and commenced his preparations for an expedition against Khwārazm¹.

In the year 601 H., he marched his forces into the Khwārazm territory; and Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, fell back discomfited before the Ghaznin forces and

¹ This expedition was undertaken to recover what had been lost, and avenge the defeat and death of Muhammad-i-Khar-nak. See note ², page 257.

2 Sulţān Muḥammal's "falling back discomfitted" appears from the sequel. The Sulţān's object was to defend his capital. No action whatever took place between them until the Ghūris appeared in the neighbourhood of the city, and

took up a position east of the Shatt mentioned under.

Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, having become aware of Mu'izz-ud-Din's designs of carrying war into his enemy's country, and his vast preparations, hastened back from Khurāsān, by way of the desert, to Khwārazm; and his people prepared to give the Ghuris a warm reception. The Sultan asked for aid from Khurāsān, both in shape of horse and foot, and Gür Khan of Kara-Khita was also asked for assistance. Sultan Muhammad's camp was fixed on the western bank of the Shatt-i-Nudwar or Nudawar [إنودوار] -our author's Karā-Sū, no doubt, but another work says the bank of the Nür-and, in a short space of time, 70,000 men assembled. "The Ghürian forces were vast in numbers, and contained so many elephants," says Yafa-i, "that, had they desired, they might have drained the Jihun." But, setting aside all exaggeration, the number is said to have been 140,000 men, and about 300 or 400 great elephants. The Jami'-ut-Tawarikh, which constantly copies Yāfa-ī, says 70,000 warriors, and elephants [besides followers?]. Arrived on the banks of the Jihūn, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Ghūri, took up a position on the east side of the Shatt, and pitched his camp, and gave orders to search for a ferry in order to cross over next day, and attack the Khwārazmī forces.

Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din was engaged in arranging his elephants, and making his preparations for crossing next morning at dawn, when news, suddenly and unexpectedly, reached him that Sultan Muhammad had arrived, and along with him Sultan 'Usman of Samrkand [his son-in-law subsequently] and that the Khita-i forces were pushing on. Mu'izz-ud-Din, finding that he was much in the same position as the "Lords of the Elephant"-" Hast thou not beheld how the Lord of Lords dealt with the Lords of the Elephant? Did He not make their evil design the means of drawing them into error, and sent against them flocks of birds, which cast upon them lumps of burnt clay which rendered the perfidious like unto the corn that has been reaped ?" [Kur'an: Chap. c. 5]-and that destruction awaited him if he remained, resolved to retire. He directed that the whole of the heavy material should be burnt during the night, and his army began to retire along the banks of the Jihun, but they were pursued by the Khwarazmis next day at dawn, and, at Hazar-Asp [afterwards destroyed by the Mughals. Guzidah and Jāmi' ut-Tawārikh call it Hazar-Sat], the Ghuris faced about and came to a stand, and drew up to fight. Sultan Muhammad, with his forces, fell upon the right wing of the Ghūris, and overthrew it, and the rest gave way, pursued by the Khwārazmis. In this affair several of the Amirs of Ghur, and a great number of men were

retired to <u>Kh</u>wārazm. When the Sultān-i-<u>Gh</u>āzi appeared before the gates of <u>Kh</u>wārazm, and carried on hostilities for some days, the people of <u>Kh</u>wārazm commenced engaging the <u>Gh</u>ūris on the bank a of the aqueduct which had been drawn from the river Jihūn towards the east of the city, and the name of which place and water is <u>Karā-Sū</u> ⁴ [the Black Water], and of the Amirs of <u>Gh</u>ūr several persons were slain and taken prisoners in that engagement.

As the capture of [the city of] Khwārazm was not accomplished on account of the scarcity of the appliances of the Ghaznîn forces, the length of the campaign, and the lack of forage, the Sultān withdrew his troops from the gates of Khwārazm and towards Balkh. The forces of Khitā, and the Maliks and Amirs of Turkistān had arrived on the banks of the Jiḥūn, and thad possessed themselves of the route of the army of Islām. When the Sultān-i-Ghāzī reached Andkhūd on a Tuesday, at the time of evening prayer, the van of the infidels of Turkistān reached the Sultān sposition, and set to to fight. The commander of the van of the army of Islām was the Sālār [chief, leader, &c.], Husain-i-Khar-mīl, and he put the infidels to the rout. He was one of the Maliks of

taken prisoners. After a time the Khwārazmis gave up the pursuit, and Sultān Muhammad returned to Khwārazm, where he gave a great banquet, and made

great rejoicing.

In this action the Ghūris lost still more of their war material and elephants, and they continued their retreat towards Andkhūd [Guzīdah says, within the limits of [āl-kān] and, on reaching it, found that the troops of Gūr Khān of Karā-Khiṭā, under Bāniko of Tarāz, were there posted to bar their retreat, and appeared on all sides of them. The Ghūrīs fought with great bravery from dawn to the setting of the sun, and darkness put an end to the fray, in which, according to Yafa-i, the Ghūrīs lost 50,000 men. Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh says the Ghūrīs were broken on the first charge of the Khiṭā-is. See following page for a specimen of our author's exaggeration.

Some copies have "on the hither side or bank of the aqueduct"!

4 The Kara-Sū is some eight or nine miles from the city—or rather the city here referred to.

Almost as absurd a reason as our Central Asian eracles pronounced would render the success of the Russians against the same territory "utterly impossible," a few months ago. Mu'izz-ud-Din was only five days before the place. The preceding note 2 shows why the @hūris had to retire.

Not Andkhod. See note on this in the account of Kabā-jah farther on.
7 He is particular about the day of the week and time of day, but not the day of the month.

Juzarwān. He at once represented to the Sultān-i-Ghāzī the fact of the success of the Islāmī forces and the repulse [1] of the infidel troops. "It is advisable," he said, "that the sovereign of Islām should command that the army of Islām should mount at once and pursue the routed infidels, and fall upon them unexpectedly, whereby a great victory may be achieved?"

The Sultan-i-Ghazi replied: "For years past I have been seeking such an encounter as this. I shall not be found to hold back: to-morrow, at dawn, by the guidance of the Most High, we will do battle face to face, and see unto whom Almighty God will bestow the victory. I shall at least have acquired the merit of having fought for the faith as by creed enjoined." Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, son of Khar-mil', perceiving that the mind of the Sultan-i-Ghāzi was imbued with this intention, was convinced that the Sultan gave vent to these words by virtue of unbounded reliance in the true faith, and the ardour of piety; [for regard had to be given to the fact] on the other hand, that the host of the infidels which had come upon them was countless, and all fresh and calm, while the Musalman army was wearied by the march from Khwarazm, and the horses were emaciated, and would not be strong enough to withstand the enemy; and he withdrew from the service of the Sultan, and, with the whole of his retinue and followers, to the number of five thousand horse, set out, at night, towards Juzarwan', and almost all the troops [also] whose horses were weak and emaciated departed.

⁸ This place has been often mentioned as Guzarwān and as above: g and j are interchangeable.

⁹ In the next paragraph our author contradicts this absurd statement.

¹ The same who after this was Wālī of Hirāt. His conduct here was in keeping with his doings there. See note ², page 257.

² One copy only has "the *town* of Juzarwān," but it is a comparatively modern copy. There was a town, probably, as well as a district so called.

This desertion of the Sulţān by 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Husain, son of Khur-mîl, appears to have given rise to the improbable story related by Firişhtah and some others, and repeated by Briggs in his translation of Firişhtah, but Dow does not give the whole. This story is repeated and re-echoed by Briggs' copyists, and people are led to imagine that Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn's most trusted, most devoted, and loyal slave, whom he delighted to honour, and whom he intended as his successor, had refused to admit his master and sovereign into Chamin, of which he is styled governor, after the Sulṭān'd sefeat and accommodation with the allied forces of Khiṭā and Sulṭān'd Sulṭān'd We know that Tāj-ud-Dīn,

In the morning, notwithstanding that only a few horsemen of the centre division and his own slaves remained

I-val-duz, held the government of Karman, but where is it stated that he held Ghaznin at all at that time? It appears that he had not been removed from Karman up to the period of the Sultan's death, and the honour shown to him by Mu'izz-ud-Din, only a few months after his return from Khwarazm, when marching against the Khokhars, precludes the possibility of I-val-duz's having acted in the way asserted by Firishtah; and it was only when Ghivas-ud-Din, Mahmud, conferred on him the investiture of Ghazuin, with a deed of manumission, and the title of Sultan, that he proceeded thither from his government of Karman. See page 500, note 3. It is also stated that another of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's chiefs "went straight" from the field of battle at Andkhūd to "Mooltan," and seized it. Where Andkhūd? Where Multān? This story, absurd though it seems, appears to have emanated from the Tāj-vl-Ma'āsir, and something similar is related in Guzidah, the Jāmi'-ut-Tawarikh, and in Alfi, noticed farther on ; but no mention whatever is made in these works about closing the gates of Ghaznin by I-val-duz [Iladd-giz, in Guzidah] or any other person; and it appears to have received great amplification from Firishtah himself, for the Tabakat-i-Akbari, a work of authority, written a few years before, says not one word about anything of the kind. See also note 1, page 481. The Tai-ul-Ma'asir has the name of this rebel written in four different ways, in as many copies of the text, namely, I-bak'-i-or ملك الله but in a fourth الله على without points. [It is evidently the same name as occurs in Jami'-ut-Tawarikh-Lik-Tal [] U U. Guzidah styles him I-bak. Badshah of Multan ! !! "a Turki slave-one of the most trusted servants of the kingdom fled from the field of battle with the Khwarazmis, thinking that the Sultan had been killed, and some calamity had befallen the state, and made for Multan with all possible despatch. Arrived there, he stated to the Amir-i-Dad [chief justice], Hasan, that he had important matters to communicate to him in private within the Kasr, by the royal command, and which it was by no means advisable should become known to others." Having succeeded in getting a private audience, he gave a sign "to a mean Turk" who assassinated the Amir-i-Dad, who appears to have held the chief authority there under the governor of the province of Lahor and Multan. Amir Muhammad, son of Abi 'Ali. For some time this affair remained secret, and it was thought that Hasan had been imprisoned by the Sultan's commands; but, at length, it became noised abroad, far and near, through Hind and Sind. See note , page 481. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir then passes, at once, to the outbreak of the Kokars [Khokhars-natives of Khurāsān and Europeans generally leave out the h in pronunciation of the Hindi WI. while Firishtah gives a long account of the slave's reduction and punishment. He says, "the Sultan, unable to enter Ghaznin, proceeded towards Multan, encountered I-bak-i-Na-pak [otherwise Yal-bur, &c.], took him captive, and marched towards Ghaznin with the frontier troops of Hind." At Ghaznin, the Sultan, through the intercession of the great men of that city, overlooked the conduct of Hadd-giz [this is the name Guzidah and Firishtah use for this personage, and Yal-duz, for Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz], and, having disposed of that matter, entered into a treaty of peace with Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, and, after that, made preparations for his expedition against the Khokhars. Firishtah, like some other more modern writers

with him, the Sultān drew out his ranks and commenced the engagement. The army of the unbelievers, having formed a circle round about the troops of Islām, came on, and, in despite of the remonstrance his slaves were using that of the army of Islām only a small number of men remained, and that it was advisable to retreat, the Sultān-i-Ghāzī still continued to maintain his position, until, of cavalry and his own personal slaves³, only about one hundred horsemen remained, who, with a few elephants, the Turkish slaves, and the Ghūriān leaders, who were the Sultān's grandees, in front of his charger's head, were hurling back the infidels, devoting their lives, and obtaining martyrdom.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that the Sultān-i-Ghāzī stood his ground so persistently that his august state canopy, from the wounds of the arrows of the infidel Mughals '[and the arrows remaining sticking fast], became like unto a porcupine, and he would not turn his head round in any direction, until one of his Turkish slaves, whose name was Ayyah ', Jūkī, came up, seized the Sultān's bridle, and dragged him away towards the fortress of And-

styles them Ghakars-but he could scarcely have been expected to know the difference, and even Elliot, in his Index [page 160, note *], after writing the word properly, supposes Gakhar [عمور] and Khokhar [كهور] one and the same race, but there is as much difference between them as between an Afghan, and a Khar'l Jat, as those who have served in the Panjāb well know. The Tabakāt-i-Akbari, a work of greater authority than Firishtah [whom I do not consider an authority in these matters any more than respecting the presence of cannoniers [as y] at the battle of Tara'in], says nothing of the kind; and, had I-yal-duz, I-bak-i-Nā-pāk, Līk-Tāl, or any other person, been guilty of the acts mentioned, there is no doubt our author would, at least, have referred to them. He might smooth or slur over a defeat, but not circumstances of this kind. See Alfi's account of the expedition against the Khokhars in note 1, page 481, which I think tends to disprove much of the improbable story under discussion, more particularly when the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says not one word about either Īladd-giz or Yal-dūz, nor about the Sultan's coming to Multan against I-bak-i-Na-pak, whose name is not again mentioned in the entire volume. The account given by our author farther on in his account of 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, at page 492, and of Tāi-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, page 496, also tends to disprove this story. 3 This description of troops has already been mentioned in note 2, page

4 The Khitā-is he means.

168.

⁵ In two of the best copies, I-bah or Ai-bah, and in one good old copy Abfah or Abiyah, but in the oldest the name is plainly written as above. Juki in all probability is the name of his tribe. Some other authors style him a Khalj, but it is one and the same thing—Turk and Khalj.

khūd, and conducted him thither, and brought him within the walls of that fortress ⁶.

6 Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, with the few men remaining of the centre division of his army, as soon as the sun rose, succeeded, by stratagem, in throwing himself within the walls of the Hisar of Andkhud [Guzidah says, Talkān]; but the Khitā-i troops invested it, perforated the walls, and Mu'izz-ud-Din would have been captured, when Sultan 'Usman of Samrkand, who was now with the Khita-i forces, sent him a message saying: "For the honour of the true faith 1 do not desire that a Sultan of Islam should fall into the hands of those of another belief, and be put to death by them: therefore it is advisable that you should agree to sacrifice for your own safety what remains of your elephants and other animals, your valuables, treasures, arms and armour, and other war material, that I may make these things the means, with these people, of obtaining your escape in safety." This he agreed to do, and Sultan 'Usman, by a thousand efforts and contrivances, succeeded in securing the Sultan's escape, and he reached his own territory in safety. There can be no doubt whatever as to the Sultan's gallantry, but our author's statements are rather highly coloured. The Tabakāt-i-Akbari, contrary to others, states that the Sultan defended Andkhud for some time, and then surrendered on terms, but it is not correct.

The following is another specimen of the translations from which Indian history is written, referring to this campaign:—

Dow, vol. i. page 145.

"News was then brought to him [Mahommed] of the death of his brother Yeas ul dien, who retained nothing of the empire but the name Ithis is totally incorrect, and is the translator's own]. Mahommed, upon this, succeeded to the empire. He turned by the way of Budyeish, and subdued the country of Chorassan, recovering it out of the hand of the Siljoki, and he divided it among the family of Sam, giving the government of Ferose Koand Ghor to Malleck Zea, who was son-in-law to his brother, Yeas ul dien, the deceased Emperor, Bust, Ferra, and Isphorar he gave to Mamood, his brother's son; and the government of Herat and its districts to Nasir, his nephew by a sister.

"Mahammed, after these transactions, returned to Ghizni, where, according to the will of the deceased Emproor, he was crowned in form; and mounted the imperial throne. In the same year, he heard of the death of Zirak, prince of Murva; and, in the beginning of the next, marched to the conquest of that country, ad-

BRIGGS, vol. i. page 180-181.

"On hearing of the death of his brother, he [Mahamed Ghoory] now returned towards Ghisny, by the route of Budghees, and, subduing part of the country of Khwarusm, recovered it out of the hands of the Suljooks. He divided this new conquest [1 ! !] among several members of his own family [see our author, page 472], giving the government of Feroozkook and Ghoor Are these in Khwarusm recovered from the Suljooks?] to his nephew Zeea-ood-Deen, son-in-law of his late brother, Gheias-ood-Deen. He also gave Boost, Furrih, and Isfurar [All in Khwaruzm perhaps ?I to the Prince Mahomed, his brother's son, and the government of Hirat and its dependencies to Nasir-ood-Deen, his nephew by a sister.

"On his arrival at Ghizary, according to the will of his deceased brother, he was crowned in form [STUDENT'S MANUAL OF INDIAN HISTORY—"he was crowned Sulfan without opposition"]; and ascended the throne. In the same year he heard of the death of Mahomat Zeruh, Prince of

The following day, Sultan 'Uşman of Samrkand, who

vancing by way of Charizm [!!!]. and Tacash, the King of that country, not able to oppose him in the field. shut himself up in the city. The King pitched his camp on the banks of the great canal, which the Chilligies had formerly dug to the westward of that city. He forthwith attacked the place, and in a few days lost many brave nobles in the pursuit of glory. In the mean-time, news arrived, that Aibeck, the general of the King of Chitta, in Tartary, and Osman, King of Samarcand, were advancing with great armies, to the relief of Charism. Mahemmed was so unwilling to abandon his hopes of taking the city, that he delayed till the allied armies advanced so near, that he was under the necessity of burning all his baggage, and to retreat with the utmost expedition to Chorassan [! !]. But an army from the city pressed so close upon his heels, that he was obliged to give them battle. He was totally defeated, losing all his elephants and treasure.

"In the meantime the confederate Kings, who had taken a circuit, to cut off Mahonmed's retreat, met him full in the face, as he was flying from the King of Charism."

Mure, and in the beginning of the next year marched to complete the conquest of Khwaruzm [! ! !] [This is what is styled "his western campaign against the King of Kharlzm" in THE STUDENT'S MANUAL, but I think Khwarazm lies north of Ghaznin]. Mahomed Ghoory, having encamped on the banks of the great canal, which had formerly been dug to the westward of the city, forthwith attacked the place, but lost many brave officers and men in AN AT-TEMPT TO ESCALADE IT [! ! !]. Meanwhile news arrived that Kurra Bee. the general of Ghoorkhan, King of Khutta, and Othman Khan Samarkandy, were advancing with armies to the relief of Khwarusm Shah. Mahomed Ghoory, unwilling to abandon his hopes of taking the city, delayed his retreat till the allied armies advanced so near, that he was compelled to burn his baggage, and to retire with the utmost precipitation towards Khorassan. His army was pressed so closely by troops from that province, that he was compelled to give battle, and was wholly defeated, losing all his elephants and treasure, while the confederate Kings [see page 473, and note 21 who had taken a circuit to cut off his retreat towards Ghuzny, intercepted bim."

This may truly be called the Romance of History. Deceived, apparently, by this translation, ELPHINSTONE [page 316] has fallen into great error. He says: "The [Shidhab u din] gained a great victory over the king of that country [Kháriam], besiegad him in his capital, and soon reduced him to such straits as to constrain him to suc [1] for aid to the Khitan Tartara," &c. Never was a statement more erroneous. Marsiman too, possibly quoting from the same, says "Mahomed led his troops against Tahash," as he styles Suijān 'Alks-ud-Dh', Muhammad, the son of Sulfan Takish,"

The following is Firishtan's account:—"Sulfan Shibab-ud-Din was between Tiss and Sarakhs when the account of the decease of his brother, Ghiyās-ud-Din, reached him, and in whose name the kingdom was fi.e. in whom the soversignty rested. This is the passage misinterpreted by Dow—"who retained nothing of the empire but the name." The original is say; if the declared him to the control of the property of the property of the property of the mountain commonies there, and, in this year, he divided the whole of the states of Khurašan Firishauh here shows that he is himself no authority as to the geography of

was a second Yūsuf [in beauty], and the Afrāsiyābī Maliks of Turkistān, who were Musalmāns', interposed and

these parts, any more than he is an authority as to the history] among the family of Sām [i. e. the descendants of Sām, his father, only Ziyā-ud-Dīn mow to be mentioned was not of the family of Sām except as a son-in-law—the revised text of Brīcos has—Āl-i-Sāmām—ou-lu-J] in this manner. He gave the throne of Fīrūz-koh and Ghūr to his uncle's son, Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn, who was Sulţān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn's son-in-law; Bust, Farah, and Isfarā' II Isfārār'] to Sulţān Maḥmūd, son of Sulţān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn; and Hirāt and its dependencies to his sister's son, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn. He himself returned from Bādghais to Ghaznīn, and, in accordance with the will of his brother, having placed the crown of empire upon his head, he became established on the exalted throne of sovereignty. [This is the literal translation of the sentence which has been twisted into crowned in form, &c.] At this time intimation reached him of the slaying of Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak [in the revised text Khair Beg—why +], Qovernor of Marw; and, in the year 600 H, he set out, with numerous forces to subdue Khwārazm. Khwārazm Shāh, unable

to oppose him [in the field], entered the fortress of Khwarazm.

"When the Sultan reached Khwarazm, he took up a position on the water [canal, river, and the like] which they have (sic) dug and set flowing from the Jiḥūn to the east of the city [the word here used with reference to this water-cut has been mistaken by Dow for the Turkish tribe, Khalj, which he styles Chilligies]. For some days fighting went on, and several of the Ghūriān Amirs were killed. At this juncture news arrived that Karā Beg, the general of Gur Khan, Badshah of Khita Ithis is enough to show of what value Firishtah's authority is for these matters. See page 261, for the name of the general of the Khita-i forces on this occasion. Hitherto, Firishtah has copied our author, whom he quotes as one of his authorities, tolerably correctl, and Sultan 'Usman, sovereign of Samrkand, were marching to the aid of Khwarazm Shah. On receiving this information, such alarm was felt by the Sultan that he set fire to the surplus baggage and equipage, and set out towards Khurasan [he means Ghaznin]. Khwarazm Shah followed in pursuit, and Sultan Shihab-ud-Din faced about and gave battle, and was defeated, and lost his treasure, his horses, and elephants. Having proceeded on his way, unexpectedly, the army of Kara Beg, Khita-i, and Sultan 'Usman seized the route in advance," &c. The rest agrees with our author : and there is not a word, in the whole account, about escalade or anything approaching it, and, moreover, the canal, which he had not crossed, was some miles from the city. Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, in order to celebrate the flight of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, bestowed the nick-name "Ghuri Breaker" upon a son born to him the night before the enemy retired. See page 281.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, which pours out page after page of rhapsodical nonsense upon the most trivial matters, merely mentions, with respect to this disaster, that the Sulṭān satisande "a slight misfortune and reverse [العلم المواقعة والمواقعة الموا

unless corroborated by some other work by a contemporary writer.

7 Our author calls the whole of those opposed to Mu'izz-ud-Din, "infidels"

brought about an accommodation, and the infidel forces drew back again, and the Sultan returned to Ghaznin, and commanded that forces should be organized for a three years' campaign in Turkistan, and determined to march into Khita.

At that period, an assemblage of contumacious persons, [consisting] of Khokhars, and other rebels of the tribes of the hills of Lohor and Jūd hills had broken out into revolt.

several times before this; but the fact is all are infidels who are opposed to Ghūris. Mu'izz-ud-Din was saved from captivity or death through the good offices of Sutfair Ugmān, a Musalmān like himself.

8 When Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din, overcome with grief and chagrin, reached his own territory in safety, Sulţān Muhammad despatched one of his Chamberlains to him, saying: "You are aware that you yourself are the cause of this hostility and distrust. Perhaps you may now be inclined to give up your hostile intentions against my dominions and be desirous of peace." Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din was agreeable, and he bound himself by the most solemn promises to abide by the terms, and, further, to aid and assist Sulţān Muḥammad whenever requested. Perhaps the latter may, in doing this, have had a foreboding, that he might want support against Chingiz Khān, who had acquired vast power at that time, and whose doings caused anxiety to the Khwāramī Sulţān.

After this accommodation had been concluded, a body of insurgents assembled together at Tal-kan, and Taj-ud-Din, Zangi [brother of Shams-ud-Din, Muhammad, of Tukhāristān], who was Wāli of Balkh at that time, was the chief mover in this outbreak. He made a raid upon Marw-ar-Rūd, and slew the intendant stationed there, and sought to plunder the place. Sultan Muhammad, on becoming aware of this raid, nominated Badr-ud-Din-i-Khizr probably Khazr-بنا from Marw, and Taj-ud-Din, 'Ali, from Abiward, with their troops, to march against him. After coming up with them, Zangī, together with ten Amīrs, were taken in the encounter which ensued, and were sent off prisoners to Khwarazm, where they met with their deserts, and their heads were struck off. Notwithstanding this affair, the peace was faithfully observed between the two Sultans and their Amirs. Still, the remembrance of past events rankled in the heart of Mu'izz-ud-Din; and, in order to prepare for any eventuality that might offer to enable him to avenge his defeat, "under pretence of holy war, he was in the habit of organizing his troops, and manufactured arms in great quantities, until, in 602 H., he became bent on undertaking an expedition into Hindustan against the infidels, in order to improve the finances of himself and officers, and also of his men, all of whom, during the last few years, and, in the Khwarazm expedition, had sustained great losses."

9 "Of the hills of Lohor" is contained in two copies only. The hills to the north of Lähor, of course, are meant.

¹ The following is the description of this affair contained in the Tarikh-i-Alfi, which compare with Elliot's extract from the original in his INDEX, page r₁, and his translation, pages 158-160 r.

Transactions of the year 592 of the Rihlat.
"In trustworthy histories it is stated, that, at the time that Shihab-ud-Din

and, in the cold season of that year, the Sultan came into Hindustan, and sent that refractory race to hell, and

Isee remarks as to his correct title and name, as shown by his coins, note 5, page 446] was defeated by the Turks and Khita-is, as already noticed, it became noised abroad throughout his territories that the Sultan, Shihab-ud-Din, had disappeared in that battle, and it was unknown what had happened to him-whether he had been killed, or whether he was still living, and had gone into any foreign part. Consequently, the seditious in his territory-in all parts-raised their heads, and each stretched forth his hand towards some tract of the territory. Among the seditious was one, Rae Sal by name, who was [dwelling] in the hilly country, between the city of Luhawar [194] and Ghaznah; and, in concert with a body of Kokars, in the [same] tract [of country], and who always used to pay revenue to the treasury of Shihab-ud-Din, having revolted from authority and obedience, he commenced plundering and harrying that district, and completely closed the route between Luhawar and Ghaznah [Ghaznin], and in such wise that not a soul could pass along it," [He is called "Re-bal" [رببال] and "Ran-bal" [رنبال] in Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh; but both names are doubtful, and are, probably, meant for Rae-Sal, "the ruler of the Koh-i-Jud [the Salt Range], at which the frontier of Hind commences, who had turned Musalman, and subsequently relapsed; and the Khokhars, who also used to pay tribute to the Sultan, in consequence of these reports, also and the rumoured death of the Sultan, was the cause of great confusion and disturbance, says, "the Kokar tribe, rising in rebellion, entertained the idea of becoming independent, and obtaining dominion. The sons of Kokar, Bakan and Sarkah [Firishtah has but one, whom he calls 'the chief of the Khokhars, who bore the name of Sarkah'], also entertained the desire of acquiring sovereign power." Then there is an account of their taking Lohor, and of their defeating the feudatories of the Multan province, Baha-ud-Din and his brother, and others, and that the Sipah-Sälär, Suliman, had to fly before them.] Alfi continues:- "When Shihab-ud-Din reached Ghaznah in safety, in the manner previously described, and this matter came to his knowledge, he determined to proceed into Hindustan, and thoroughly chastise the rebels of that part. Therefore he first directed Amir Muhammad. son of Abi 'Ali [this must be his kinsman, the son-in-law of Ghiyas-ud-Din, the late Sultan], who was his lieutenant over Luhawar and Multan [the Amir-i-Dad, Hasan, was probably subordinate to him], to remit with all possible celerity the revenue of the year 601 H, fand yet the Taj-ul-Ma'asir gives the year 600 H. as that of his return from Khwarazm, and his expedition against the Khokhars], as it was required in the preparations making for the invasion of Khita. [Jami'-ut-Tawarikh says, "after the Sultan had taken his slave Lek-Tal [or Lik-Tal], who had taken possession of Multan, and had put him to death, and disposed of that affair, he despatched Muhammad, son of Abi 'Ali, to Lähor and Multan as governor, in order that he should send the tribute of those territories, which for the last two years were in arrears, to provide him with funds for his campaign against Khita.1 Amir Muhammad wrote, in reply, that the revenue of the years (sic) mentioned was ready, but that the Kokars [Khokhars], and Rae Sal, the chief of the Jibāl-i-Jūdī [the Jūd Hills] [Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir does not make the distinction between two different tribes, but says the sons of Kokar, Bakan and Sarkahin another MS. اكر وسوله, had so closed the lower route to Ghaznah [neither the carried on holy war as prescribed by the canons of Islām, and set a river of the blood of those people flowing. When

Bolan nor the Khaibar, the two by some supposed sole routes into Afghanistan,

are referred tol, that not a person could proceed by it.

"On hearing this, Shihāb-ud-Din wrote [he sent the Amir-i-Hājib, Sarāj-ud-Din-i-Abi Bikrl to his slave. Kuth-ud-Din, who was the commander of the forces of Hind, [to the effect] that 'having despatched a person to the Kokars to forbid them against committing these odious acts, he should call upon them to repent of their doings and return to obedience, on which he would pass over their misconduct.' Kuth-ud-Din despatched a person to them, in conformity with this command, and urged them to submit. The son of Kokar [not mentioned before] replied: 'This is not your affair: it was necessary for Sultan Shihab-ud-Din to send a person of his own, if he were alive : wherefore, then, did he not send to us, that we also might have sent the taxes for him?' That emissary, in reply, said: 'Consider this great regard towards you, that he hath sent me, who am his slave, to you.' Again, the son of Kokar said, in answer: 'All this is mere talk: Shihāb-ud-Din is not forthcoming.' The emissary replied: 'The verification of this matter is easy: send one of your own confidential people to Ghaznah, that he may, with his own eyes, see, and come and say whether Shihāb-ud-Din is living or not.' In short, the son of Kokar did not give ear to the emissary's words, and still continued firm, as before, in his sedition and rebellion; and, when the person sent by Kuth-ud-Din related to him the state of affairs, he represented it to the Court of Shihāb-ud-Din. The Sultan directed Kutb-ud-Din to assemble the [available] troops of Hindustan and march against the Kokars, and to annihilate and eradicate, beyond ought that could be conceived, that seditious and contumacious race.

"When the command reached Kuth-ud-Din, he assembled and made ready his forces, and was about to move against that tribe, when Sultan Shihab-ud-Din himself was on the point of marching his troops towards Khita, but, successive complaints of the violence and outrages committed by the Kokars reached him, and his people represented to that Sultan such numbers of things frespecting them], that it became incumbent on him to quell them and restrain their sedition first; and then to proceed in the other direction. Consequent upon this he gave up his determination of invading Khita, and pitched his [advanced] tent in the direction of Luhawar, and, on the 5th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, of this same year [602 H.], he set out from Ghaznah towards Hindustan. When Shihāb-ud-Din reached Purshāwar, he found that the Kokars, in large numbers, had taken up a position between the Jilam [Jhilam] and the Südarah [Sūdharā]. On hearing this news, Shihāb-ud-Din made a forced march from Purshawar on Thursday, the 25th of the same month, and fell upon them unawares [Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh says he attacked them on the 25th]; and from break of day till the time of afternoon prayers he kept up the flame of battle and conflict; and the Kokars fought in such wise that, with all that grandeur and power, the Sultan had nearly been forced back from his position, when, unexpectedly, at that juncture, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, with the forces of Hindustan, arrived [upon the scene], and commenced slaughtering the Kokars. As Kutb-ud-Din's troops were fresh and vigorous, the Kokars were unable to resist them, and they took to flight. The soldiers of Islam, pursuing them, inflicted such havor upon them as cannot be conceived. Those that escaped the sword fled to the dense depths of the jangal and the Musalmans set fire to he set out on his return towards Ghaznin, in the year 602 H., at the halting-place of Dam-yak, he attained mar-

it on all sides. [Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh states that the Hindūs [the Khokhars] filed to the highest ranges of the Kohi-Jūd, and, on being pursued, lighted a great fire, and threw themselves into it, and perished. Great plunder was taken and many captives, so that five Hindū [Khokhar] captives could be bought for a divair. The son of Re-bail, chief of the Kohi-Jūd, sought the protection of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, the son of Re-bail, chief of the Kohi-Jūd, sought the protection of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, the son of Re-bail, chief of the Kohi-Jūd, sought the protection of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, the son of Kokar's sons was among the slain [Sar-kah], and the other, Bakan, made for a fortress in the Jūd Hills, in which he was invested; and, after holding out some time, being hard pressed, made intercession through Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, and surrendered the place, and was forgiven.] At that time those infidels agreed together not to surrender to the Musalmāns, and they threw themselves into the jangah, and were consumed.

"The Sultān, having disposed of that affair to his satisfaction, advanced to Luhäwar [Jāmi'ut-Tawārikh says he arrived there on the 15th of Rajah], and gave his troops permission to return to their own homes [quatters 7], where, having restel some days [some time], they might set out on their invasion of Khitā."

The authors of the Tārīkh-i-Alfī availed themselves of the best authorities in the compilation of their great work, and there is scarcely any celebrated work, whether Arabic or Persian, that they did not use and quote from. They also appear to have often used such Hindū historical works as were available; and yet there is no mention of the story of the Yal-dūz or Iladd-giz rebellion, nor of Lek-Tāl, nor of Ī-bak-i-Nā-pāk, nor Ī-bak-i-Bāk. It seems rather rignificant that the author or authors of this story should have selected names similar to those of the two most trusted, loyal, and favourite slaves of the Sulfān, and who succeeded him in the sovereignty of Ghaznīn and Hindūstān respectively—I-yak-dūz and Ī-bak—for their story; but it is certain that the Tāj-ul-Ma-āgir is accountable for the latter part of it, in which Ī-bak-i-Nā-āk is mentioned.

The Khokhars were not annihilated in this affair by any means, and gave

great trouble in after years, and gained posaession of Lahor.

BRIGGS says, page 201, vol. i.: "In the latter end of the King's reign [Mu'izz-ud-Din's], their chieftain [of the Gukkurs] was converted to the true faith when a captive. After becoming a proselyte he procured his release from the King, who endeavoured to persuade him to convert his followers," &c. This is totally contrary to the original. A Musalman became captive to the Khokhars, and whilst among them he explained to them the tenets and usages of the Muhammadan faith. The chieftain asked the Musalman how the Sultan would treat him if he should embrace the Muhammadan faith, to which the Musalman replied that he would undertake to say that the Sultan would treat him with royal favour, and would confer on him the authority over those mountain tracts. This circumstance was duly represented to the Sultan in writing by the captive Musalman, and the Sultan at once despatched a rich dress of honour for the chief of the Khokhars; and he came and presented himself before the Sultan, was treated with great honour, was made a Musalman, returned home with a farman investing him with the government of those parts, and he made most of the Khokhars converts. Dow, in this instance, has translated the passage correctly; but, unfortunately for Firishtah's authority, this tale does not tally with the last events in the Sultan's life, and it, in a measure, contradicts his own statements respecting them.

tyrdom² at the hand of a disciple of the Mulāḥidah, and died³. One of the learned men of that period has com-

² The idiom differs here in one of the oldest copies, which has, "he was killed," &c.

3 Yāfa-i says that one successful expedition gained in Hindustan at this time was sufficient to repair the Sultan's finances, and to set right the affairs of his troops; and, on his return to his capital, after having crossed the Jili [La] خاط _ ferry-the ferry over the Jhilam probably-Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh has Hānli -[Ben. As. Soc. MS. حنلي and Jahān-Kushā-أ إحيل ford, and says he crossed over on the 1st of Sha'ban-his royal tent was pitched on the banks of the Jihun [of Hind?], i. e. the Sind or Indus, so that one-half of it reached near to the water, and hence it was not deemed necessary to guard that side; and that, at the time of taking his noon-day nap, two or three Fida-is [disciples] suddenly issued from the water and assassinated him, and in this most authors agree, Guzidah, however, says he was then on his way to Turkistan to wreak vengeance on Sultan 'Usman of Samrkand! The term Fida-i is particularly applied to the disciples of the chief of the Mulahidah heretics, and our author plainly states that it was from the daggers of the disciples of this sect that Mu'izz-ud-Din met his death, and not from the Khokhar tribe; and, when we consider that he had undertaken an expedition against them only two or three years before [see note 5, page 381], it is by no means improbable that they caused him to be assassinated. The Jami'-ut-Tawarikh says the assassins were Khokhars, but almost immediately contradicts the statement, and says that Imam Fakhr-ud-Din was suspected of having brought it about. "Some malignant Muhammadah 'Ulama, on account of the great friendship that existed between the Sultan of Khwarazm and the eminent Imam Fakhr-ud-Din, Razi [see page 429, and page 492], accused him of having conspired against the life of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, and asserted that Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, had sent some person, who, after consultation with the Imam, had assassinated the Sultan; but it is considered by some writers that these very people who had accused the Imam had themselves caused the deed to be done. The Imam, as the late Sultan's slaves were bent upon avenging him, threw himself on the protection of the Wazir, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, until such time as the Wazir contrived to secure him from their vengeance, and sent him to a place of safety. Imam Fakhr-ud-Din used to accompany Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din in his expeditions, and he states that Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din invaded India nine times : twice he was defeated, and seven times victorious." The statement above mentioned is confirmed, with but slight variation, by the author of the Tāi-ul-Ma'āsir, a contemporary writer, and corroborated by our author's very meagre account. Tāj-ul-Ma'ā sir says, that the Sultan's tents were pitched in a delightfully verdant mead on the bank of a clear stream [water]. At this time some heretics [Mulāḥidahs-الأحدة], who had been following him for some time, awaiting an opportunity to assassinate him, at the time of evening prayer, and whilst the Sultan was in the act of bowing his head to the ground in prayer, and was uttering the praises of his Creator, the impure and obscene seet chose for the execution of their design. They slew a Salāh-dār [armour-bearer] and two Farrashes [carpet-spreaders] in attendance, and then went round towards the Sultan's Khargah [pavilion or tent], and occupied it [to "surround" it would have required a large number. The words used are فرو كرفت seized, took possession. Compare Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii. page 236]; and one or two among those three or four assassins rushed upon the Sultan, and inflicted five or six

posed a verse on this occurrence. It is here recorded that it may come under the observation of the sovereign of the Musalmāns, and that verse is as follows:—

"The martyrdom of the sovereign of sea and land, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, From the beginning of the world the like of whom no monarch arose, On the third 'of the month Sha'bān in the year six hundred and two, Happened on the road to Ghaznin at the halting-place of Dam-yak 's."

deep wounds, of which he immediately died." I have merely given an abstract of the author's rhapsodical narration.

Alfi says they were Khokhars who had lost relatives killed in the late operations:—"One man among them came upon a door-keeper, and wounded him, on which the wounded man began to cry out. On this, the rest of the people about rushed up to the wounded man to see what was the matter, and were collected around him. The Khokhars seized this opportunity, and succeeded in reaching the Sulfān, whom they despatched with many severe wounds."

Some other authors say it was one Khokhar only who murdered the Sultan, and that he had attached himself to him, and followed him for the purpose.

The Hindus give a different account, which is also related by Abu-l-Fazl and in the Jamun History with a slight difference :- " Although the Persian Chroniclers state that Rae Pithora fell on the field of Talawari [Tara'in], and that Mu'izz-ud-Din fell at Dam-yak by the hand of a Khokhar who had devoted himself to the deed, and that such statement has been followed by the author of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and by Firishtah, nevertheless, from the mouth of the Hindi bards, the depositaries of the traditions of every celebrated event, and which is handed down orally from generation to generation, it is stated that, after Rae Pithora was made captive and taken to Ghaznin, one Chanda, some write Chanda, the confidential follower and eulogist of Rae Pithora, styled by some authors his Court poet, proceeded to Ghaznin to endeavour to gain information respecting his unfortunate master. By his good contrivances he managed to get entertained in Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's service, and succeeded in holding communication with Rae Pithora in his prison. They agreed together on a mode of procedure, and one day Chanda succeeded by his cunning in awakening the Sultan's curiosity about Rae Pithora's skill in archery, which Chanda extolled to such a degree that the Sultan could not restrain his desire to witness it, and the captive Rajah was brought out and requested to show his skill. A bow and arrows were put into his hands, and, as agreed upon, instead of discharging his arrow at the mark, he transfixed the Sultan, and he died on the spot, and Rae Pithora and Chanda were cut to pieces then and there by the Sultan's attendants.

The Jamun History states that Rae Pithora had been blinded [see note 1, page 466], and that, when brought forth, and his own bow and arrows given him, notwithstanding his blindness, having fitted an arrow, and tried the temper of the bow, guided by the sound of the Sultan's voice, and the indications of Chanda, he discharged the arrow in the right direction, and transfixed him. The rest agrees.

4 Jahan-Ārā and some others say the 1st of Sha'ban, 602 H.

⁵ As the second line of this quatrain ends in yat, it is wholly impossible that the last work can be Dannik. Dam-yak is the correct name of the place. Authors differ considerably about its situation: some say it was a little west of the Juliam, some on the Nil-āb, and others that it was a village beyond the Indus, on the route to Ghazarin; but the first seems most probable. To prove

May the Most High King encompass that Sultan-i-Ghāzi with his mercy and forgiveness, and preserve the sovereign of the age!

With respect to the equity and justice of this monarch in the world, the mention of them could not be contained in the capacity of writing; and the observance of the law of the Chosen One, and the preservation of the system of holy warfare likewise, according to the tenets of the Muhammadan faith, was accomplished in that sovereign 6. According to the traditions which they have related concerning the Prophet-on whom be peace!-they say, that he, having been asked respecting the general resurrection, affirmed that it would take place six hundred and odd years after him; and the martyrdom of this sovereign occurred in the year 602 H., and, in this same year, likewise, indications of the last judgment appeared, and they were the irruption of Chingiz Khan, the Mughal, and the outbreak of the Turk. Therefore it is evident that that monarch was the strong barrier of Islām in the world, and, when he attained martyrdom, the gate of the final judgment opened?

The amount of wealth acquired in holy wars, accumulated in the treasury at <u>Ghaznin</u>, was so great that the indication of the like has not been noticed with regard to the treasury of any sovereign, and <u>Kh</u>wājah Ismā'il, the Treasurer, stated at the Court of Firūz-koh, at the time of bringing an honorary robe to the Malikah-i-Jalāli, the daughter of the august Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām

Other authors, too, fully appreciate the character of Sulfan Mu'izz-ud-Dân, and say that "the was a God-feating and just sovereign, compassionate towards his people, liberal to his servants, honoured and reverenced learned and good men, and treated them with distinction." His deeds prove that he was faithful to his brother; but if his "exploits" are not more substantial than the mythical relationship to his "great ancestor Scottan Mahmood I." [who has been lately declared illegitimate in the "STUDENT'S MANUAL OF INDIAN HISTORY"], they need not have been ever recorded.

7 Notwithstanding which, our author, who appears to have had as keen an appreciation of the mammon of unrighteousness as others who croak about the end of the world, took care to accept villages and money presents, and even slaves to send to his "dear sister" to sell in Khurāsān, not long after.

[Mu'izz-ud-Dîn's niece and Ziyā-ud-Dîn's betrothed wife], that of jewels contained in the Ghaznîn treasury, of diamonds alone, which are the most precious of gems, there were actually fifteen hundred mans*. The amount of other jewels and money may be judged of accordingly.

Titles and names of the Sultan.

SULŢĀN-UL-MU'AZZAM®,

MU'IZZ-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN,

ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF

SĀM.

NĀŞIR-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN¹.

I fear the Khwājah was as great an exaggerator as our author himself.

Other authors however mention the quantity as 500 mans. Even the latter number is too incredible almost for belief.

9 After his brother's death, on becoming supreme ruler, he took the title of Sulfan-ul-A'zam.

The Sulfan is styled "Us-Sulfan Nāşir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abū-l Mugastar," &c., on a coin said to have been struck at Dihli, 589 H., in the

year 4 [of his rule in Hind?]

³ It depends upon what man is meant. Our author must refer to the man of Tabriz, which is much smaller than that of Hindūstān, the former being somewhat less than 2 lbs, whilst the latter varies from 40 to 80 lbs. The Tabriz man is thus described:—6 habbah [habbah signifies, a seed, a grain, &c., and is equal to a barley-corn] = 1 dāng, 6 dāngs = 1 mighāl 15 mighāls = 1 atār, 40 atārs = 1 man.

¹ How he obtained the title of Nāṣir-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminīn, and when, the chronicler does not say. It may have been conferred upon him by the Khalifah of Baghdād for being with his brother, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Jūn, a tool in the Khalifah's hands against the Sulṭān of Khwārazm. I imagine it is this title on his coins which Mr. E. Thomas reads as the name of the Khalifah. Un-Nāṣir-ud-Dīn 'Ullah was certainly Khalifah at this period. See Chronicles of Pathán Khros of Dehtli, page 12.

Length of his reign: Thirty-two years and eight months2. Seat of government in the summer season: - Ghaznin and Khurāsān.

Seat of government in the winter season:-Lohor and

Hind.

Kāzīs of his Court.

Ķāzī of the kingdom, the Şadr-i-Shahid, Kutb-ud-Din, Abū Bikr, subsequently, the Sadr-i-Sa'id, Sharaf-ud-Din. Abū Bikr, son of the Şadr-i-Shahid, Nizām [ud-Din?] at Ghaznin.

Kazi of the army and other territory-Shams-ud-Din,

Balkhi, and his son.

Wazīrs.

Ziyā-ul-Mulk, Durmashāni ; Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muhammad-i-'Abd-ullah, Sanjari; Shams-ul-Mulk, 'Abd-ul-Jabbār, Kidāni.

Standards.

On the right, Black, with the Turk Maliks and Amirs. On the left, Red, with the Maliks and Amirs of Ghur.

> The Sultan's august motto. "Victory through God 5."

The Sultan's Dependents who attained unto Sovereignty.

Sultan Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, at Ghaznin.

Sultan Nasir-ud-Din, Kaba-jah in Multan and Üchchah.

Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, at Lohor .

Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, over the territory of Lakhanawati7.

² Three years and three months exactly as an independent sovereign, from the 27th of Jamadi-ul-Awwal, 599 H., to 3rd of Sha'ban, 602 H. He was subordinate to his elder brother as shown by his coins; but as a dependent ruler he of course ruled over Ghaznin from the time that sovereignty was bestowed upon him.

3 Our author's father does not figure here among the Kāzis. See page 456, nor is mention made of the Sadr-i-Kabir, Kiwam-ul-Mulk, Rukn-ud-Din,

Hamzah, who was sent to offer terms to Rae Pithora.

In one copy Durmashi, in a second Durmanshi, and in a third Durshi or Dursi. See page 392, note 6.

5 One good copy of the text has, simply عدل Justice, or Rectitude. 6 Not Dihli ! See the reign of Kutb-ud-Din, next Section.

7 Fourth Khalj ruler of Lakhanawati. It is strange that neither Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, nor his two immediate successors in the government of Lakhanawati, are mentioned here. It was Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, the Khali, who reduced Bihar and Lakhanawati during Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's own lifetime, and their reduction is mentioned among the victories and successes of

The Sultan's Kinsmen and his Maliks.

Malik Ziyā-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad s , Durr-i- \underline{Gh} ur [The Pearl of \underline{Gh} ur], in \underline{Gh} ur.

Sultan Baha-ud-Din, Sam, in Bamian.

Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, in Firūz-koh.

Malik Badr-ud-Din, of Kidan9.

Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Timrāni.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Alb-i-Ghāzī, son of Kazil Arsalān Saljūkī.

Malik Tāj-ud-Din-i-Ḥarab, of Sijistān.

Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Zangi 1, of Bāmiān.

Malik Mubāriz-ud-Din, Muḥammad 'Ali-i-Utsuz.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, [Ḥusain], Mādīnī.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, of Timrān.

Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Din, Mas'ūd.

Malik Shihāb²-ud-Din, Mādini² Malik Shams-ud-Din, Kidāni.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, [of] Mukrān.

Malik Shah, of Wakhsh.

Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Utsuz-i-Husain.

Malik Husām-ud-Din, 'Ali-i-Kar-mākh.

Malik Zahir-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Kar-mākh.

Malik Zahir-ud-Din, Fath-i-Kar-mākh.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, son of Khar-mil.

Malik Ḥusām-ud-Din, son of Khar-mil.

Malik Naşîr'-ud-Dîn, Husain, Amîr-i-<u>Sh</u>ikār [Chief Huntsman].

the Sultān at page 491. Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, does not appear to have ever been in the immediate service of Mu'izz ud-Dīn, and did not acquire sovereignty until nearly ten years after Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's death, whilst Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, was assassinated towards the end of the same year in which the Sultān was himself assassinated. See the account of the Khali rulers farther on.

Strange to say, some of the copies have Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish in this list also; but such is not correct. He was the slave of the Sultān's slave, Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, and did not acquire sovereignty until after I-bak's death,

and long after the Sulfān's decease.

² Here again the author puzzles his readers. After Ziyā-ud-Dīn became ruler of <u>G</u>hūn, as our author himself says at page 393, his name was changed to 'Alā-ud-Dīn.

9 Maternal grandfather of the two Sultans.

This is the person referred to in note 3, page 425, and note 3, page 481.

2 See pages 344 and 497.

³ He is the father of Malik Näşir-ud-Din, Mädini, and was surnamed Khar-nak.

4 In some copies Nasr.

Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Khar -war.

Malik Asad-ud-Din, Sher Malik, Wajiris [of Wajiristan?].

Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Sür, of Kidan7.

Amir Sulimān-i-Shis, Amir-i-Dād [Chief Justice?].

Amīr-i-Hājib, Muḥammad 'Alī, Ghāzī.

Amīr-i-Ḥājib, Khān Malik [?].

Amīr-i-Ḥājib, Ḥusain-i-Muhammad Ḥasan[?]8.

Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Din, Mas'ūd.

Amīr-i-Ḥājib, Ḥusain-i-Surkh9.

Victories, Successes, and Holy-wars.

Gardaiz, Sankūran [now Shalūzān], holy-war against the Karāmiṭah of Multān and Ūchchah, holy-war of Nahrwālah, Burshor [or Purshor], Siāl-kot, Lohor, Tabarhindah¹, Pithorā [at] Tarāʾin, Ajmīr, Hānsī, Sursutī, Kuhrām, Mirath, Kol, Dihlī, Thankīr, holy-war of Budāʾūn, Gwāliyūr, Bhīrah², Jai Chand of Banāras, Banāras, Kinnauj, Kālinjar, territory of Awadh, Mālwah, A-dwand³ Bihār, Lakhanawatī, Marw⁴-ar-Rūd, Nishāpūr, Tūs, Marw, Bāward, Nisā, Shāristānah, Sabzwār, Janābād, Khwārazm, Andkhūd, holy-war of Khiṭā, and Koh-i-Jūd [and] the Khokhars⁵.

6 In two copies, Ahmadi, and in one copy Ahmari.

7 Very doubtful. The best and oldest copy has مهور سهدان which is unintelligible,

8 In some Habashi, and in others Husaini.

9 In one Surkhi or Sarkhi, and in another Sarji or Surji, but these are doubtful. Only five copies of the text contain these names at all, and three of these are very defective. The Amir-i-Hājib, Sarāj-ud-Din, Abi Bikr, and Bahā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, are likewise mentioned in Alfi.

1 One copy has Bathindah.

Very doubtful. It is written عدا — عدا — and even مراسي in the best Paris copy.
 Probably अद्भेद quiet, tranquil, &c. See reign of Kutb-ud-Din, next Section.

4 Mashrik-ar-Rūd in one copy.

It will be remarked that there is no reference made here to the expedition against Diwal or Dibal, and the sea-coast of Sind. I have endeavoured to put these "victories, conquests, and holy-wars" in chronological order as near as possible; but many are mentioned with which Mu'izz-ud-Din, personally, had nothing to do, three in which he was defeated, one a complete overthrow, the loss of everything, and a narrow escape from captivity, and the "holy-war" of Khitā was never undertaken. The successes in Awadh were gained by others, and A-dward Bihar and Lakhanawati were acquired by Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Muhammad, the Khalj.

This name is doubtful. It might be Ḥaz-war, but the above is most probable, and may be a nick-name. In modern copies of the text it is written حوال and موالي — مردال – مرال

III. SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SĀM, OF BĀMĪĀN.

When the Sultān-i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sām, was martyred at Dam-yak, and Sultān Bahā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Sām, son of Shams-ud-Din, Muḥammad, died on his way to Ghaznin as has been previously recorded, the competitors for the dominion of Ghūr, Ghaznin, Bāmiān, and Hind, of the race of the Shansabānis, consisted of two lines—one, the [descendants of the] Sultāns of Ghūr, and the other, of the Sultāns of Bāmiān.

When they despatched the bier of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn from the halting-place of Dam-yak towards Ghaznîn, the Turk Maliks and Amîrs, who were the slaves of that Sultān-i-Ghāzî, deprived the Amîrs and Maliks of Ghūr, by force, of the bier of the late Sultān, together with precious treasures, and took possession of them. When

Within two days' journey of the capital. See page 432.

7 One author says, that "the Maliks and Chiefs, on finding the Sulfan lifeless, rallied round the Wazir, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, and pledged themselves to defend the treasure and dominions until such time as a successor should be nominated to succeed him. The Sulfan's wounds were sewn up [after his death], and the body was placed in a sort of covered litter, and, pretending that he was ill, they escorted it to Ghaznah, and the fact of his death was kept a profound secret. The treasures, amounting to 2000 khar-wärs [lit. ass-loads, one kharwär = about 100 mans of Tabriz] were conveyed to the capital at the same time."

The bier of the late Sultan having been taken up, and being conveyed towards Ghaznin, on the way quarrels ensued between Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, the Wazir, and the Ghurian Amirs. The Wazir wished to proceed by way of Karman, in order that, through the assistance of Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, who held the government of that district, the tale Sultan's treasures might be conveyed to Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, his nephew, who held the government of Bust and Zamin-i-Dāwar, to whose succession he was inclined, while the Amirs of Ghur desired to proceed by the route of Gum-rahan [which was nearer to Bamian, in order that the sister's son of the late monarch, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, Sultān of Bāmīan [who was advancing towards Ghaznīn when death overtook him] should obtain possession of these treasures. As the Wazir was supported by the Slaves of the late Sultan, he was more powerful, and he separated from the Ghurian Amirs, and, taking along with him the bier of the late Sultan and his treasures, proceeded by way of Shaluzan [In those days called Sankuran, and, subsequently, Shanuzan, See note 7, p. 498] towards Ghaznin. When they reached Karman, Faj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, came forth to receive them, and, when he beheld the bier, he dismounted from his horse, and received it with the utmost veneration, and he wept to such degree, that the others were quite overcome and wept also. The bier was

they reached Karmān, the Wazir, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad-i-'Abd-ullah, the Sanjarī, with several other persons distinguished among the Turk Amīrs, were appointed to escort the late Sultān's bier to Ghaznīn, in company with other Turk Maliks; and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, who was the Mihtar [or chief] of the Turk Maliks, and the greatest and most distinguished of the Sultān's Slaves, held post in Karmān.

When the Sultān's bier reached <u>Gh</u>aznin, two days after, the Sultāns of Bāmiān, 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, and Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Alī, sons of Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, of Bāmiān, in conformity with the solicitations of the <u>Gh</u>ūrī Amīrs, such as the Sipah-sālār the [Commander of Troops], Sulimān-i-<u>Sh</u>īṣs, and the Sipah-sālār, Kharoshi, and other

then conveyed to Ghaznin, and the corpse of the Sultan was interred in the Madrasah [college] which he had founded in the name of his daughter, and his only child. Firightah's account of this affair has not been correctly rendered by his translators.

After the funeral, Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām, set out from Bāmiān for Ghaznīn, and on the road was seized with a violent headache which was the messenger of his death. There being no hopes of his recovery, he made his last request to his two sons, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, that they should proceed to Ghaznīn, and endeavour, by conciliation, to gain over the Wažr, Mu-ayvid-ul-Mulk, the Slaves, and the Amīrs of Ghūt, and take possession of Ghaznīn, after which, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, who was the eldest son, was to be sovereign of Ghaznīn, and Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the younger, sovereign of Bāmīan.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh confirms this generally, but states that Bahā-ud-Dīn requested them to come to an accommodation with Ghiyā-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, if he would agree to content himself with Ghūr and Khurāsān, and leave Ghaznah and Hind to 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the eldest son.

They came to Ghazafn accordingly, and, although the Ghlürfan nobles were inclined to offer opposition to this, the Wazfr. persuaded them that as Ghlyās-ud-Drh, Mahmūd, was then wholly occupied in Khurāsān, and had proceeded, at the head of an army, towards Hirāt against 'Izz-ud-Drh, Kusain, son of Khar-mīl, to oppose 'Ala-ud-Drh's intentions would be useless and uncalled for, since they required a ruler over them, and, that, whenever Maḥmūd should have gained possession of Hirāt and subdued Khurāsān, it would be easy to get rid of 'Alā-ud-Drh. So he was allowed to assume the throne.

When Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, became aware of this in Kaṛmān, in compliance with the request of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, conveyed to him from Zamīn-i-Dāwar, he marched from Kaṛmān with a large army upon Ghaznīn, wrested it by force of arms from 'Alā-ud-Dīn and his brother, Jalā-ud-Dīn, Alī, who retired to Bāmiān. Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yul-dūz, however proceeded to read the Khuṭbah for himself and to coin money in his own name; and, after some time, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, and his brother, Jalā-ud-Dīn, rivaded Kaṛmān and Shalūzān, and devastated the whole of those districts. See page 398.

Styled Amir-i-Dad in the list of Maliks.

distinguished personages of the capital city of Ghaznin, arrived there from Bāmiān, and entered the city. 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Bāmiāni, who was the eldest of the sons of [Sulṭān] Bahā-ūd-Din, Sām, ascended the throne, and brought the Amirs present there, both Ghūri and Turk, under fealty to him; and the Ghaznin treasury, which, from the immensity of its wealth and precious treasures, would have [so to speak] considered the hoard of Kārūn but a tithe, was all divided into two equal portions. Trustworthy persons have related that the portion of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Din, 'Alī, Bāmiāni, who was the youngest of the two brothers, amounted to two hundred and fifty camel loads of pure red gold, jewel-studded articles, and vessels of gold and silver, which was removed to Bāmiān.

After a period of some days had elapsed, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, the Wazir, and the Turk Amirs, who were at the capital, Ghaznin, wrote letters to Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Yalduz, soliciting him to come thither, and despatched them to Karmān. He determined to proceed from Karmān to Ghaznin; and, when he arrived in the vicinity of the city, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad, made ready to fight, and marched out to encounter him; and Jalal-ud-Din [his brother], who also came out of the city, retired in the direction of Bāmiān.

When the ranks of 'Alā-ud-Dīn were marshalled against Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, the Turk Amīrs on either side united together, and Malik' 'Alā-ud-Dīn was vanquished, and he, along with all the <u>Sh</u>ansabānī Maliks who sided with him, was taken prisoner. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, entered <u>Ghaznīn</u>, and gave permission to the <u>Sh</u>ansabānī-Maliks, so that they returned to Bāmiān again.

A second 'time Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, in order to aid his brother, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, assembled the forces of the territory of Bāmīān', and bodies of the troops of [the] Beghū' from Wakhsh and Badakhshān, and brought them,

Dne copy of the text, and also the printed text, have - instead of

⁹ Styled Malik and Sultan indiscriminately.

¹ Two copies of the text have "the forces of the kingdom of Ghūr and of Bamiān," but I do not think such can possibly have been meant. The whole of the Shansabānī Maliks were not subjects of the Bamīān state. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, the direct heir to the empire of his father and uncle, was still ruling over Ghūr, and he appears to have favoured Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dīa, and not to have been particularly friendly towards his kinsmen of Bāmīān.

and again appeared before Ghaznīn, and possessed himself of the Ghaznīn territory, and re-placed 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Mu-hammad, upon the throne, after which, Jalāl-ud-Din returned again towards Bāmīān.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, a second time, advanced with his troops from Karmān towards <u>Gh</u>aznīn; and 'Alā-ud-Dīn deputed the <u>Gh</u>ūrī Maliks and Amīrs from <u>Gh</u>aznīn to repel them. On the part of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, Aetkin, the Tatār, was nominated to proceed in advance to meet them. He came upon them at the Ribāṭ¹ of Sankurān, and seized the whole of them drunk and out of their senses, and the <u>Gh</u>ūrī Maliks and the great Amīrs were there put to death. From thence Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, appeared before the walls of <u>Gh</u>aznīn, and 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, was invested within the citadel. For a period of four months Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, continued to invest it, until Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, arrived from the territory of Bāmīān to the assistance of his brother, Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and to drive away the Turk forces.

When he reached the neighbourhood of Ghaznin, the Turk Amīrs moved out to encounter him, and Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, was overthrown, and was taken prisoner. He was brought to the foot of the walls of the fortress of Ghaznīn', and that fort was taken. When the two brothers fell into his hands, after a short time, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, entered into a stipulation' with them, and caused them to return to Bāmīān. After a little while, difference of interests arose between the two brothers'. Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, was a lion-hearted monarch, an ascetic, and a firm ruler; and 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, did not agree with him, and he left Bāmīān, and proceeded to the presence of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. The assistance it was his object there to obtain was not advanced, and his good fortune did not again favour him, and luck did not aid

أمثور in eleven other copies. The latter is evidently the name of one of the Ghuzz tribes.

⁸ A Kārwān Sarāe, also a station on an enemy's frontier.

^{*} This was done to induce 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad, to give up Ghaznin.

⁵ This evidently refers to the occasion when I-yal-duz gave one of his daughters in marriage to Jalai-ud-Din, 'Ali. See para. second, note', page 432.

⁶ Our author says nothing of these disagreements in his account of Jalal-ud-Din, 'Ali, at page 432.

him; and, after Sultan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, took possession of the territory of Bāmiān, 'Alā-ud-Din,

Muhammad, died7.

He had the daughter of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, son of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain [Jahān-soz], to wife^{\$}, and by that Princess he had a son. When the writer of these words, Minhāji-Sarāj, in the year 621 H., had to undertake a journey into the Kuhistān from the territory of Ghūr, on an embassy, it was intimated to him that that Princess and her son were then in the district of Khūsh-āb, on the borders of Ṭabas, into which part they had come during the misfortunes attending the irruption of the accursed ones of Chīn.

IV. SULŢĀN TĀJ-UD-DĪN, YAL-DUZ, AL-MU'IZZĪ US-SULŢĀNĪ?.

Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, was a mighty monarch, just, a champion of the Faith, lionhearted, and in valour a second 'Alfi-i-Abū-Ṭālib—may God reward him!—but he was wanting in children', and one daughter was all he had by [his wife] the daughter of

7 See page 266-267.

8 See page 414.

9 So called from having been one of the Slaves of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, and who, if the latter had been so "renowned in history" as "Shahab-ood-Deen Mahomed Ghoory," we might have expected to have been styled Shihābī instead. Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, and others are called Mu'izzi for the same reason. It would be difficult to decide what is the real meaning here of the word Yal-duz. In the different copies of the text it is written as above, and in the three oldest copies the vowel points are also given; but in other works, including Yafa-i and Fasih-i, the word is written more correctly I-val-duz, the firs word of which is the same as occurs in I-yal-Arsalan, I-yal-timish, &c. In one lexicographical work يلدز without any vowels being mentioned, is said to be Turki [of which there is no doubt], and to be the name of a man and a star. not a star only. I-yal [ابل], among other meanings, signifies a mounta bull; I-l [Jel], which is not the word here meant, means friendly, obedient. tame, familiar; and Yal [16], brave, valiant, intrenid. Duz [16] means flat. level, smooth, even; and [32] dijz and diz [32] mean a fort, a hill, and also rough, austere; anger, fury, rage, and the like. Among the Turks, as wi other Oriental people, the name of a child is often derived from some object of incident, trifling or otherwise, which may have struck the mother's fancy, or that of any of the women present at the child's birth; and the name I-val-duz. Yal-duz, or Yal-duz is doubtless something of the same kind.

¹ From the accounts given by some other authors, it would appear tha Sulţan Mu'izz-ud-JJn had had several children born to him, but only one daughter survived him. The others may have died in childhood. At page 344, which see, he is said to have married the daughter of Mallk Saif-ud-JJn, Surf son of his paternal uncle, Shihāb-ud-Jln, Mukammad, Khar-nak, whose othe

son was named Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [Ḥusain].

his uncle, Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Mādīnī; and he had a great fancy for purchasing Turkish slaves, and he bought a great number of slaves of that race. Every one of them acquired renown throughout the whole of the countries of the East for activity, warlike accomplishments, and expertness; and the names of his slaves became published in the four quarters of the world, and during the Sultān's lifetime every one of them became famous.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that one of the confidential favourites of the Sultan's Court made bold to represent to him, saving: "To a monarch like unto thee, the like of whom in height of dignity and grandeur the whole expanse of the empire of Islam does not contain, sons were necessary to thy empire, in order that every one of them might be the inheritor of a kingdom of the empire of the universe, so that, after the expiration of the period of this [present] reign, the sovereignty might continue permanent in this family." That victorious Sultan [in reply] uttered these august words:-"Other monarchs may have one son, or two sons: I have so many thousand sons, namely, my Turk slaves?, who will be the heirs of my dominions, and who, after me, will take care to preserve my name in the Khutbah throughout those territories2." And so it happened as declared in the

Kutb-ud-Din probably did the same, although we have no proof; but, whatever may have been done in our author's time, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, the Kutbi slave and son-in-law, does not appear to have followed the same example, from the evidence on the coins given by Thomas at pages 52 and 78. See however our author's statement at page 398, where he says the Khutbah

² And yet the very first TURK slave who acquired the sovereignty after the Sulfan's death is turned into a Pathán, i. e. an Afghan, and even the Sulfan himself, and without any authority for such a statement.

³ This may explain [for our author's statements, in different places, make the above one very doubtful] why Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-dūz, is supposed to have issued coins in the sole name of his deceased master and sovereign, and why he styles himself "the servant and slave" of the "martyred Sulţān, Muḥammadi-Isām." See the notice of his coins in Thomas, "PATHÁN KINGS OF DEHLI," pages 25—31. It is quite a mistake to suppose that I-yal-dūz ever styled himself "Sulţān-Imu'agam"—he is styled, at the head of this Chapter, Mu'izaī—and it is probable the titles on the different coins, especially those bearing "Sulţān-ul-Maghrik," from our author's statement here, apply to the late Sulţān, or, more probably, to his successor, Maḥmūd, who is styled b authors Sulṭān-i-Maghrikain wa Shahanghāh-i-Maghrabain:—

hallowed words of that victorious Sultān—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—which, throughout the whole dominion of Hindūstān', up to the period when this book was written, namely, the year 657° H., they observed, and are still observing; and it is to be sincerely implored that, by the grace of Almighty God, these dominions may continue, in this same manner, under their sway to the uttermost end of the existence of the race of Adam.

I now reach my own discourse, which is the account of

Sultān Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz.

He was a great monarch, of excellent faith, mild, beneficent, of good disposition, and very handsome. The Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, purchased him when he was young in years, and, from the outset of his career, appointed him to an office, and subsequently, step by step, advanced him to a high position, and made him head and chief over the other Turkish slaves. When he grew up he attained authority and power, and the Sultān conferred upon him the government of the district of Sankurān and Karmān in feudal fief; and every year that the Sultān

was read for Sultan Mahmud, and that the coin was stamped with his name throughout the whole of the territories of Ghür, Ghaznin, and Hindustan.

4 That portion of Hindustan which our author's patron ruled over probably.

In three copies 568 II.

6 Jahān-Ārā, Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh, and others, state that the Sulţān used to treat these Turkish Mamlūks like sons, and bestowed the government of provinces and countries upon them. He esteemed the most, and placed the greatest confidence in, Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-dūz, and showed him the greatest honour; and the Sulţān's followers used to pay him great homage, and attention, and go in his train. During the lifetime of the Sulţān, Tāj-ud-Din became Wālt of Kaṛmān; and, from the great honour and respect in which he was held, he subsequently acquired dominion over the kingdom of Ghaznin. Compare this with Firitatran's idle tales, both in his text and in Dow and Bricos.

7 The province which Tāj.ud.Dīn, I.-yal-dūz, held, included the tract of country, containing several darvas.—long valleys with hills on two sides, and rivers running through them—extending from the southern slopes of Spīn-ghar, the White Mountain, in Pushto, and the south-westerly slopes of the Salt Range, on the north; towards the Gunal on the south; from the range of hills separating the district of Gardaiz on the west; and to the Sind-Sāgar or Sind or Indus on the east;—a large tract of country watered by the Kurmah [vulg. Kurram] river and its tributaries, which province, in ancient times, must have been exceedingly populous and flourishing, to judge from the remains of several cities still to be seen in it, and which is still very fruitful. The upper portion of this tract is called the darch of Kurmah, and, lower down, towards the Sind, are Banū and Marwat.

The KURMAH darah is about 40 kuroh in length [each kuroh, in this part,

would make a halt in Karmān, on his expeditions into Hindūstān⁸, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, used to feast the whole

being 2000 paces], and having little level ground. On either side of this great darah are smaller ones, running in nearly transverse directions; but those I would more particularly refer to here, as forming an important portion of I-yal-dūz's fief, and giving name to the province, are those springing, so to

speak, from Spin-ghar.

One of these is the darah of SHALUZAN [also written in the account of Amir Timūr, Shanīrāni], and which our author refers to [see page 450] as SANĶURĀN, which name appears to have been derived from a tribe of the Ghuzz, so named, who held it before, and in the time of Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, and his brother, Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din. It is seven kurok in length from north to south, and through it flows a stream which issues from Spinghar, and joins the river from the Paiwar valley. Its inhabitants are Torfs, who are reckoned among the Afghāns, but they CLAIM other descent, and some Awān-kārs, a tribe of Jats, which appears to have been, for the most part, displaced by the easterly migrations of the Afghān tribes, and are now chiefly located on the other side of the Sind-Sāgar or Indus.

KARMAN is another darah somewhat smaller, with a stream running through it which also joins the <u>Shalizān</u> and other streams which fall into the Kurmah. I find no mention, in any author, of any ancient town of Karmān, but the governor of the province was located in the darah, and there may have been a considerable town so called, or, at least, a permanent encampment.

East of Shallīzān is the Zeṇān durah, running in a south-westerly direction from Spīn-ghar, and eight kuroh in length. A stream issuing from Spīn-ghar flows through it, which, having joined the Shallūzān river, enters the Kurmah west of the town or large village of Üjī Khel. The people are Dzāzīs [turned into Jajees by travellers], who also are reckoned among the Afghāns but CLAIM other descent, and some Awān-kārs.

Another large darah, and the most westerly one, is Înl-ān [vulg. Harriab], twenty huroh in length, running south-west from Spin-ghar, very mountainous, but very fruitful. Out of this darah likewise a stream issues, which, flowing east of Baghzan, the chief town of the Dzāzis, enters the Kurmah district, and

receives the name of Kurmah.

Another darah is PAIWAR [not Piwar], which also has its river, which joins

the others before mentioned, flowing from the northwards.

The chief towns and large villages of this tract, at present, are Astiyā [this is not the place referred to at page 339], Paiwar, Balūt, Zūmiāht, Saidā, Djī Khel, Buland Khel, Balīmfn [vulg. Balameen], Irī-āh, Baghzan, and the cluster of villages called by the name of the darah, Shalūžān, with many of smaller size. Kurmah, called by travellers Kurram, where is a fort, and the residence of the local governor, is not situated in the Kaṛmān darah, so is not to be confounded with any place of that name. This name, Kaṛmān, which is spelt as the natives spell it, has caused some absurd blunders among writers and translators, who have supposed it referred to the Persian province of Kirmān.

The darahs south of the Kurmah darah include those of Khost, Dawar, Maidān, and Bak Khel, each with its stream which falls into the Kurmah; but the whole of those mentioned, in the summer, decrease very much in volume.

It was through this province of Karmān—the government of which was a most important post—that the lower route from Ghaznin to Lähor lay, which is referred to in note 1, page 481. The route by Karmān was the "lower route" referred to in Alfi in the same note.

of the Amirs, the Maliks, and the suite, and was in the habit of presenting a thousand honorary head-dresses and quilted tunics, and would command liberal largess to be

given to the whole retinue.

By command of the Sultan-i-Ghazi, a daughter of Taiud-Din, Yal-duz, was given in marriage to Sultan Kutb-ud-Din. I-bak; and another daughter was married to Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah1. Sultān1 Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, had likewise two sons, one of whom he had placed with a preceptor. One day that preceptor, by way of chastisement and discipline, struck the boy over the head with an earthen water-flask². The decree of destiny had come, and the water-flask struck him in a mortal place, and the boy died. Information was conveyed to Sultan Tāi-ud-Din, Yal-duz, who forthwith, out of his excessive elemency and exemplary piety, sent funds to the preceptor for his expenses, with directions that "he should get out of the way, and undertake a journey, before the boy's mother became aware of her son's fate, lest she might cause any injury to be done him, in anguish for the loss of her son." This anecdote is a proof of the goodness of disposition and the purity of faith of that amiable Sultan.

In the last year of the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, when that monarch [on his last expedition into Hind] came into Karmān and halted there, Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, presented those yearly stipulated thousand tunics and head-dresses. The Sultān, out of the whole of them, selected one tunic and one head-dress, and honoured his slave by presenting him with his own princely robe; and the Sultān conferred upon him a black banner, and it was the desire of his august mind that Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, after himself, should succeed to the throne of Ghaznīn. When the

1 Our author styles him Malik and Sultan indiscriminately.

8 Here again is a specimen of the manner in which Firightah has been translated, and whose translated work hitherto has furnished the sole materials for writers of Indian Histories for our Colleges and Schools—

Dow says that "Mahommed, in his last expedition, favoured Eldoze so

⁹ One daughter was given in marriage to Jaläl-ud-Din, 'Alf, of Bämfan, hence there must have been three, or more daughters. See note 7, page 433.

² Firishtah has [رَحْزًا] كَرْزًا كَرْزًا كَرْزًا كَرْزًا لَّهُ اللهِ whip; but all the copies of our author's text have المن The Tabakāti-Akhari too says: "he took up a gugglet and struck him over the head with it," &c. A whipping was not likely to cause death, but the other mode of chastisement was.

Sultān-i-Ghāzī attained martyrdom, it was the desire and disposition of the Turk Maliks and Amīrs that Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of [Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn] Muḥam-mad, son of Sām, should come from the confines of Garmsīr to Ghaznīn, and ascend his uncle's throne, and that they all should gird up their loins in his service. To this effect they wrote to the Court of Fīrūz-koh, and represented, saying: "The Sultāns' of Bāmīān are acting oppressively, and are ambitious of obtaining possession of Ghaznīn. Thou art the heir to the dominion, and we are thy slaves."

much that he bestowed upon him the black standard of the kingdom of Ghizni, by this intimating his will, that he should succeed to the throne," &c. BRIGOS has "Mahomed Ghoory, in his last expedition to India, conferred on Taj-ood-Deen the privilege of carrying the black standard of Ghizny, an honour which was usually confined to the heir-apparent." Any one reading this last version could only conclude that Tāj-ud-Dīn arried this "black standard" in the last expedition, but such was not the case. Firightah copies almost the very words of our author: these are his words— "Sulfān Mu'izz ud-Dīn (his reign, when he came into Karmān, dignified him by presenting him with one of his own dresses, and specially conferred upon him a black banner [for his own use that is], and it was the Sülfān's desire that, after his own decease, the Ghaznīn territory should be his."

4 He refers to Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām's, sons here.

5 Our author contradicts himself twice, and makes three different statements on this subject. At page 431 he says the general desire, both of the Turk and Ghūrl Amīrs, was that Bahā-ud-Din, Sām, of Bāmāūn, should succeed to the sovereignty; and at page 432 he contradicts himself, and states that they were all inclined to his sons obtaining it. Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-dūz, was the chief of them, and the principal mover in this matter. From this statement of our author, and his accounts given elsewhere, as well as from the statements of other authors, it is clear that Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, up to this time, had not been removed from the government of this province, and therefore did not shut his sovereign and master out of Ghaznīn after his defeat at Andkhūd; and, further, that it was not until he and the other Mamīlūks of the late Sulfān had called upon his nephew, Ghūyāg-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, to assume the sovereignty over Ghaznīn and Hind that he, I-yal-dūz, left Karmān, on being nominated to the sovereignty of the kingdom of Ghazrīn, and receiving his freedom from Maḥmūd himself.

Alfi says, however, that, "when Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, gained a firm hold of the authority at Ghaznīn, Ghiyāg-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, sent him a message from Frūz-koh, requesting him to coin the money in his name, and read the Khutbah for him. Tāj-ud-Dīn sent a reply, saying, that, when Maḥmūd should send him a deed of manumission, he would do so; otherwise he would give his allegiance to whomsoever he chose. As Maḥmūd was not safe from being assailed by Khwārarm Shāh, and fearing lest Tāj-ud-Dīn should go over to him [as 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of Khar-mīl, had done], he sent the required deed of manumission to Tāj-ud-Dīn, and another to Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, together with deeds of investiture for the governments of Ghaznīn and Hindistān respectively. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, at this time was at Pursūgor.

Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Maḥmūd, replied, saying: "To me the throne of my father, which is the capital, Firūz-koh, and the kingdom of Ghūr, is the most desirable. I confer the territory [of Ghaznīn] on you;" and he despatched a robe of honour to Sultān Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, and presented him with a letter of manumission, and assigned the throne of Ghaznīn unto him.

By virtue of this mandate Sultan Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, came to <u>Ghaznīn</u>, and seized the Maliks of Bāniān⁶, and ascended the throne of <u>Ghaznīn</u>, and brought that territory under his jurisdiction. After a time he was excluded from <u>Ghaznīn</u>, and again returned to it, and again brought it

whither he had come to guard one of the routes into Hind, and was well pleased with what was conferred upon him."

Other writers state that I-yal-dūz sent an agent to Maḥmūd and tendered his aliquince, and confirm what our author states; but they probably copied their account from his.

6 Called "Sultans" in the preceding paragraph, and in his previous account of them. Alfi says I-val-duz, subsequent to sending Jalal-ud-Din, 'Ali, back to Bamian, as stated in note 7, page 433, assembled his forces, and carried his inroads as far as Bust; and that, when Abi-Dakur [Zakur?] reached Kābul, after his desertion of Jalal-ud-Din, 'Ali, an emissary reached him on the part of Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, which emissary he had first despatched to Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-düz, reproaching him for his conduct towards his benefactor, Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud, and exhorting him to discontinue it. This emissary was directed to ask Abi-Dakur to co-operate with him [I-bak]; and, in case I-val-duz did not hold his hand and repent of his acts, that Abi-Dakur should assemble his troops and assail Ghaznin, and wrest it from I-yal-duz, who appears to have been then absent in Bust; and, in case he [Abi-Dakur] did not find himself powerful enough for the purpose of taking it, not to be deterred, as he was following to support him. Abi-Dakur complied with the request, and invested Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, the Wazir, whom I-yal-duz had left there as his lieutenant, and a portion of the suburbs of Ghaznin was taken and occupied by his men. On becoming aware of this movement, I-yal-duz returned from Bust by forced marches, and reached Ghaznin, on which Abi-Dakur precipitately withdrew, and joined Sultan Ghivas-ud-Din, Mahmud, who gave him his manumission, and conferred upon him the title of Malik-ul-Umrā [Chief of Nobles].

At this time Sulţān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, advanced from Hirāt [on his way to Hirāt?], and took the town and fortress of Tāl-kān from the Ghūrls, and then marched to Kāl-yūgh [Kāl-yūn ʔ] and Filwār, and encountered several times Arnār Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, the governor of those parts, for Maḥmūd i but he did not succeed in his design, as they were very strong places, and Sulṭān Muḥammad retired to Hirāt again. Arrived there, he acquainted the ruler of Sijistān of it, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab acknowledged his succrainty, and read the Khuṭbāh and coined money in Khwāram Shāh's name. These are the events of the year 594 from the Prophet's death [564 H.]. The difference between the two eras H. and RIHLAT is ten years less twenty or twenty-one days.

under his sway. A second time the same thing happened, until, after some time, a battle took place between him and Sultān Ķutb-ud-Dîn, Ī-bak, on the confines of the Panj-āb'; and Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, was defeated, and Sultān Ķutb-ud-Dîn advanced to Ghaznîn', and remained there for a period of forty days, during which time he gave himself up to pleasure and revelry. A third time Sultān Tāj-ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, marched from Karmān towards Ghaznīn, and Sultān Ķutb-ud-Dîn, Ĭ-bak, retired again towards Hindūstān by the route of Sang-i-Surākh, and once more Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, brought Ghaznīn under his rule'.

He sent armies upon several occasions towards <u>Ghūr, Kh</u>urāsān, and Sijistān, and nominated Maliks [to command them]. On one occasion he despatched a force to aid Sulṭān <u>Gh</u>iyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, as far as the gates of Hirāt, on account of the treason of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of <u>Kh</u>ar-mīl, who was the Malik of Hirāt, and who had conspired with Sulṭān Muḥammad, <u>Kh</u>wārazm <u>Sh</u>āh, and had gone over to him, and who fled before the forces of Ghūr and Ghaznīn¹.

On another occasion Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, led an army towards Sijistān, and remained away on that expedition for a considerable time, and advanced as far as

⁷ Some copies have "on the confines of the Panj-āb-i-Sind"—the five rivers of Sind.

[&]quot;I-yal-duz having sent the Wazir of Ghaznin against Kaba-jah and ousted him from Lahor [see reign of Kaba-jah, next Section], Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, advanced into the Panj-āb against I-yal-dūz in 603 H., and, I-yal-dūz having encountered him, was defeated, and retreated to Karman and Shaluzan, which districts had been his charge in Mu'izz-ud-Din's reign. Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, pushed on to Ghaznin [by another route], and drove out the governor, on the part of Jalal-ud-Din, Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah's son, and then gave himself up to wine and debauchery. The people of Ghaznin sent to I-yalduz and solicited him to return; and, when he arrived in the neighbourhood, at the head of a numerous force, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, was quite unprepared to resist him, and he made the best of his way towards Hind by the route of Sang-i-Sūrākh, and reached Lohor." On this occasion 'Izz-ud-Din, 'Alf-i-Mardan, the Khalj, who assassinated Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, ruler of Lakhanawati, and afterwards obtained from Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, the government of that territory, was taken prisoner. See his reign, next Section. "As Kutbud-Din did not consider himself safe from the designs of I-yal-duz, he continued at Lohor until 607 H., when he met with the accident which caused his death."

⁹ On the death of Kutju-ud-Din, and dethronement of Ārām Shāh, his adopted son, Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-dūr, sent a canopy of state and other insignia of royalty to Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish. See his reign, Section XXI.

¹ See note 2, page 257; and note 3, page 400.

the gates of the city of Sistān². At length peace was concluded between him and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥarab, who was the king of Sijistān. When Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, set out on his return [to Ghaznīn], on his way thither, Malik Naṣīr²-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, the Amīr-i-Shikār [Chief Huntsman] showed disaffection towards him, and engagements took place between them. Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn was overthrown, and retired towards Khwārazm [the Khwārazm territory?], and after a time returned, until, on the expedition [of Tāj-ud-Dīn] into Hindūstān¹, the Turkish Maliks and Amīrs of

² Other authors do not mention any cause why I-yal-dūz should have marched against Sistān, and do not give any details respecting this affair. It may have been caused through the ruler of Sijistān proposing to acknowledge the suzerainty of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh; but our author does not say a word about any expedition of this kind in his account of the rulers of Sijistān.

Here, again, is a specimen of history-writing. Dow says: "Eldoce, in conjunction with the Emperor Mannood of Ghor, sent an army to Hirat, which they conquered, as also a great part of Seistan; but, making a peace with the prince of that country, they returned." Then Briggs says: "At length, in conjunction with the King, Mahmood of Ghoor, he (Veddoce) sent an army to Herat, which he reduced, as also great part of Seestan," &c. Frishtah, however, says: "Once, to support Sulfan Maḥmūd, 'he despatched an army against Hirāt, and ourceame the Malik of Hirāt, 'ltz-ud-Din, flusain-i-Khar-mīl. On another occasion he marched an army against Sistān, and invested it, and [then] made a peace with the Malik of Sistān, and returned." Frishtah, however, is no authority whatever for Western affirirs; and as to overcoming 'Izz-ud-Din, son of Husain-i-Khar-mīl, see last para. to note 2, page 258. For further details respecting the reign of L-yal-dūz not mentioned here, see pages 417 and 420.

3 Nāṣir-ud-Dīn in two copies, and Naṣr in another. He held the office of

Chief Huntsman under the late Sultan.

4 Among the events of the year Riblat 603, according to Alfi [Hijnh 613]. Sulţān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, acquired possession of Ghaznin. After that monarch had possessed himself of the territory of lämiān and Khurāšai from the Ghūrān nobles, he despatched an agent to Tājud-Din, Ival dūz, intimating that if he, Tājud-Din, would acknowledge his suzerainty, and stamp the coin with his name, and pay him a yearly tribute, he should be left in quiet possession of Ghaznin; otherwise he must be prepared to see his troops speedily appear before it. Tājud-Din, Ival-dūz, called a council of his Amīrs; and Kutlagh Tigin, his Amīr-ul-Umrā [Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says his Nāyab or Lieutenant at Ghaznin], who was another of the late Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din's slaves, advised that the Sulţān's demands should be acceded to, as it was impossible for them to resist Khwārazm Shāh. Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-dūz, complied, and despatched befitting offerings and presents, and accepted the Sulţān's etrms.

Not long after these events, Tāj ud-Dīn went out on a hunting excursion, and Kutlagh Tigīn sent information to the Sulṭān [who was then on the northern frontier of I-yal-dūz's territory], saying, that Ghaznīn was now freed from Tāj-ud-Dīn's presence, and urged him to come thither that he might deliver up the place to him. Khwārum Shāh acceded to the request, and

<u>Gh</u>aznin conspired together and put to death the <u>Kh</u>wājah, Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad-i-'Abd-ullah, Sanjari, who held the office of Wazir, and likewise Malik Naṣir-ud-Din, Husain, the Amir-i-Shikār.

After a period of forty days Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, marched an army from the side of Tukhāristān, and advanced towards Ghaznīn; and his troops suddenly and unexpectedly seized the frontier route leading into Hindūstān, towards Gardaiz and the Karāhah³ Darah [Pass]. Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, took the route towards Hindūstān, by way of Sang-i-Surākh³, and reached Lohor. An engagement took place between him [Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz] and the august Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-tīmiṣĥ³, in the vicinity of Tarā¹īn³, and Sultān

obtained possession of Ghaznīn; and Tāj-ud-Dīn, finding what had happened [Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says in 612 H.], retired towards Hind. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīṣh states that this took place in 611 H., and that all the dominions of the Ghūrīs fell under his sway.

Sultān Muḥammad, Khwāram Shāh, having obtained possession of Gharnin, as above related, Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, continued his retreat towards Hind. On reaching the neighbourhood of Lāhor, he fought a battle with Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, who was governor of that province on the part of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, L̄bak, defeated him, took possession of Lāhor for himself, and soon appropriated the whole of the Panjāb. [See the account of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, page 532.]

Khwārazm Shāh, according to the statement of Alfi, on taking possession of Ghaznin, put to death all the Ghūriān nobles and chiefs (which is very improbable), made over the city and territory to his son, Jalāl-ud-Dīn [he nominated him to the rulership of those parts, but left an officer there as his son's deputy], and returned to Khwārazm.

4 In some copies Karāsah [اراسة], but the best have المارة as above. It is one of the Passes on the route from @hazin towards Lāhor, the name of which has been changed with the change in the inhabitants of those parts.

6 There are three or four places so called, signifying the "Perforated Stone." The route here seems to refer to a more southerly route than that by the Pass above mentioned. It is a totally different route to that mentioned at page 441.

7 Four good copies, two of which are old ones, write this name here, and in some other places, with two ts—I-yal-titmish, and some other writers do the same.

The engagement between Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, L-yal-dīz, and this "august Sultān "—the slave of the slave, Kutb-ud-Dīn, L-bak, his own son-in-law—took place, by some accounts, on Saturday, the zoth of Shawwal, 611 H., and, according to others, on Monday, the 3rd of Shawwal, 612 H., at Tarā'īn, now Talāwarf, near Fānjaqt, in the neighbourhood of which the fate of Judia has so often been decided. Tāj-ud-Dīn was put to death soon after, in the citadel of Budā'ūn, by his rival, L-yal-tīmiṣh, on whom he had himself conferred the insignia of toyalty after L-yal-tīmiṣh's usurpation of the sovereignty.

Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, was [defeated and] taken prisoner, and sent to the district of Budā'ūn; and there he was martyred, and there his mausoleum is situated, and has become a place of pilgrimage, and is visited by suppliants.

His reign extended over a period of nine years. The Almighty's mercy be upon him! God alone is immortal and eternal!

V. SULŢĀN-UL-KARĪM [THE BENEFICENT], ĶUŢB-UD-DĪN, Ī-BAK, AL-MU'IZZĪ US-SULŢĀNĪ.

The beneficent and just Sultan, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, who was a second Hatim, seized the throne of Ghaznin. and took it out of the hands of Tai-ud-Din, Yal-duz, who was his father-in-law. He occupied the throne for a period of forty days, and, during this space of time, he was wholly engaged in revelry, and in bestowing largess; and the affairs of the country through this constant festivity were neglected. The Turks of Ghaznin, and the Maliks of the Mu'izzi [dynasty], wrote letters secretly to Sultan Taj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, and entreated him to return. Sultan Tāiud-Din determined to march thither from Karman, and, as the distance was short, he reached Ghaznin unexpectedly. Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, when he became aware of this, retired from Ghaznin towards Hindustan again, by the way of Sang-i-Surākh9; and, as both of them, in the position of father-in-law and son-in-law, were in the relation of father and son, they did not cause any injury to be done to each other. Subsequently to that, the territory of Ghaznin came into the possession of Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, and under the authority of the Khwarazmi Maliks, as has been previously recorded.

This Section, on the Shansabanis and their Slaves, is

of Dihlī, and dethronement of Kuth-ud-Dīn's son [according to our author, but his adopted son, according to others], and putting him to death.

A very stable government, certainly—forty days! Our author has made Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, one of the Sulfans of Ghaznin, as though he wanted to make up the number as much as possible, and he is introduced here without any cause whatever. Tāj-ud-Din, I-yal-dūz, took Lāhor, and ousted its governor, and held it a much longer time, and he, under the same system, should have been entered among the Sulfans of Hindustān.

concluded; and, after this, I come to the Section on the Sultāns of Hindūstān, the first of whom to be mentioned is Sultān Ķutb-ud-Din, I-bak, and his illustrious actions', which, please God, will be recorded as fully as the limits of this book will permit.

¹ The more modern copies of the text differ here somewhat.

SECTION XX.

ACCOUNT OF THE MU'IZZĪAH SULTĀNS OF HIND.

Thus saith the feeble servant of the Almighty, Abū 'Umr-i-'Usmān, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī—the Almighty God preserve him from indiscretion!—that this TABAĶĀT is devoted to the mention of those Sulţāns, who were the Slaves of the Court, and servants of the Sulţān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'ızz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām¹—on whom be peace!—and

¹ English writers on Indian History, with scarcely an exception, begin, from this point, their—I say their, because no native historian does so for obvious reasons—"Afcilan or Paran Dynasty of Dehki," with the first Therkich slave king, Kutb-ud-Dîn, of the Powerless Finger,—although one or two of them commence with his Tājik master, Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, Ghūrī,—as its founder.

This monstrous error, which has been handed down from one writer to another for more than a century, no doubt, originated with Dow, who, in 1768, published a version of Firsi-Hrarl's Hisrorev, the commonest Persian historical work that is to be met with in India, and the one which is generally known to most educated Musalmäns. The work, in itself, which is a compilation from other works, and largely copies the histories composed in the reign of Akbar, is not very often incorrect; but, consequently, Firishtah is not a very great authority, and, as regards non-Indian history, no authority at all

Dow professes, in his Preface [which teems with monstrous errors, but which I must pass over here, as I have referred to it in another place. See JOURNAL OF THE BENGAL ASHATIC SOCIETY for the present year, 1875], to have entered into "more atenti"—to have "clipted the usings of Firishtats turgid expressions, and rendered his metaphors into common language?" and further states [p. ix] that he has "given as few as possible of the faults [1] of the author; but has been cautious enough, not wittingly at least, to substitute any of his own in their place" [1].

Notwithstanding all this, the work was so translated, that Gibbon suspected "that, through some odd fatality, the style of Firishtah had been improved by that of Ossian," and, as it caused the late Sir H. Elliot, in his Biographical INDEX [p. 317], to say "his [Dow's] own remarks are so interwoven as to convey an entirely different maning from that which Trichtah intended," and "some of the commonest sentences are misunderstood, and the florid diction was occasionally used to gloss and embellish an imperfect comprehension of the original."

This is, by no means, an exaggerated picture of the translation, but, on the

who, in the empire of Hindustan, sat upon the throne of sovereignty; to whom the throne of the kingdom of that

contrary, a very sober one, as I shall show in as brief a manner as possible, with regard to those passages only which have led some conscientious writers to turn Turkish slaves, Khalj Turks, the descendants of Jats, low caste Hindius, and Sayvids, into Afghāns or Patāns.

Passing over the numerous errors in the Preface of Dow's translation to save space, I begin with his Introduction, which is taken from Firishtali's, but a vast deal of the original is left out, for obvious reasons, and what has been retained is full of ridiculous mistakes. In the account of a Hindū king styled Kid Raj [page 8], he has: "The mountaineers of Cabul and Candahar, who are called Afgans [sic] or Pattans, advanced against Keda-raja." The words in italies are Nor in Firishtah.

At page 50, vol. i. Dow has: "In the following year, Mamood [Maḥmūd of Ghazafin is meant, but the translator ignores the letter _—h—in his name] led his army towards Ghor. One native prince of that country, Mahommed of the Seer tribe of Afgens [sic], a principality in the mountains finnous for giving birth to the Ghorian dynasty," &c. Birtost, too, follows Dow closely, and often verbatim, in his version of Firishtah. This identical passage in his translation (vol. i. page 49) runs thus:—"In the following year Mahomood led an army into Ghoor. The native prince of that country, Mahomed of the Afghan tribe of Seor (the same race which gave birth to the dynasty that eventually nacceeded in subscring the funity of Subochagen)," &c.

There is NOT A WORD in Firishtah about "the Afghen tribe of Soor." the whole of the passages in italics, in both translations, are NOT in Firishtah. From this particular passage it is, I suspect, that the monstrous error of making Patāns or Afghāns of all the rulers of Dihli, Turk, Khalj, Jat, or Sayyid, has arisen. Compilers of Indian History, no doubt, felt assured that this statement, from its being repeated by both translators, must be in Firishtah, and, being in Firishtah, that it must be true; but it is NOT in Firishtah, neither is such a statement correct, nor is such to be found in any Muhammadan history.

A few lines under the passage in question, thus incorrectly translated, added to, and altered from the original, Firightah refers to the Kitäb-i-Yamini, and quotes our author's work as his authority with reference to the conversion of the Ghhrifans to Islām, and says: "but the author of the Tabakāt-i-Nāṣini, and Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubārak Shāh, Murve-ar-Rūdi-i-. c. of the town of Marw-ar-Rūd-who composed a history," &c. [which Firightah never saw, but learnt of it from our author. See page 300]. Dow leaves this passage out entirely: but Briggs, who appears to have been equally smitten with "Afgan or Patan" monomania, translates [page 50], the last part of the sentence, "Fakhr-ood Deen Mubartick Ludy who wrote a history," &c. He read [add-who who wrote a history," &c. He read [add-who who wrote a history," &c. He read [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history," &c. Ithe history [add-who who wrote a history, add who wrote a history, and who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history, add-who who wrote a history, and who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history, and who wrote a history] [add-who who wrote a history, and who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history, and who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history, and who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history] [add-who who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history] [add-who who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history]] [add-who who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history]] [add-who who wrote a history [add-who who wrote a history]] [add-who who wrot

At page 132, Dow has: "The generality of the kings of Ghor, according to the most authentic historians, could be traced up, by the names, for three-and-twenty, and DOWNWARDS nine generations, from ALI to MAMOOD, the son of Subuctagi," &c.

There is NOT one word of this in Firishtah. He gives the names of their ancestors as our author [from whose work he copied them] and a few others give them, name by name, down to Zuhāk the Tāzi; but not understanding apparently, what followed in the original. Dow one acted—tree on his own

monarch passed-in the same manner as his own august

fertile imagination—the "nine generations DOWN TO MAMOOD" of Ghaznin, to whom the Ghuris were no more related than they were to Dow himself.

I have not a copy of Briggs's version by me now, that I might compare it with Dow's, but I should not be surprised if, in this instance also, he had drawn his inspiration from Dow. It was from this identical passage, probably, that the author of a "Student's Manual of Indian History" was led to imagine that Mahmud of Ghaznin was "the great ancestor of Shahab-ood-Down."

As Sam was the name of Rustam's family, the Tāzik Ghūrīs might have been, with equal plausibility, made descendants of Rustam, son of Zal, the Sigizī, and moreover Sigistān or Sijistān is close to Ghūr, and several of the Ghūrī chiefs were called Sām.

I now pass from the "Ghuzni Patans" and the Turkish slave "Patans"

to the Tughlak dynasty or "Tuglick Patans."

Dow has, at page 295, vol. i. "We have no true account of the pedigree of Tinglick. It is generally believed that his father, whose name was Tuglick, had been, in his youth, brought up as an imperial slave, by Balin. His mother was one of the tribe of Jits. But indeed the padigrees of the Kings of the Patan empire make such a wortched figure in history," &c.

NOT ONE of the words in italics is in Firishtah: the whole sentence is his

own concoction. Compare Briggs also.

Under the reign of the Afghan ruler whom Dow styles "Shere" [vol. i. page 159], being more correct in his translation, he consequently contradicts some of his former assertions. He then describes Roh from Firishtah [" The Student's Manual of Indian History" however assures us that it is only "a town, in the province of Peshawur" !!!], but makes several mistakes in doing so; but Firishtah himself blundered greatly when he said that the son of the Ghūri chief who took up his abode among the Afghans was called Muḥammad-i-Sūrī, and that his posterity are known as the Sūr Afghāns. The Afghan tradition is very different. According to it, the chief's son was named Shah Husain, he was said to have been descended from the younger branch of the Ghurian race, while Muhammad-i-Suri, said to be the great-great grandfather of the two Sultans, Ghiyas-ud-Din and Mu'izz-ud-Din, was descended from the elder branch with whom the sovereignty lay. This Shah Husain, by one of his Afghan wives, had three sons, Ghalzi, Ibrahim, surnamed Lodi and Ludi-but properly, Loe-daey-and Sarwani. Ludi had two sons, one of whom was named Siani, who had two sons, Pranki and Isma'il. Pranki is the ancestor in the eighth degree of the FIRST Afghan or Patan that attained the sovereignty of Dihli, namely, Sultan Bah-lil, of the Shahu Khel tribe of Ludi, and founder of the Ludiah dynasty. He is the thirtieth ruler of Dibli counting from Kutb-ud-Din, the Turkish slave of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sam, Ghuri ; but; according to Mr. E. Thomas ; " Chronicles of the Pathan Kings of Dehli, ' he, under the name of "Buhlol Lodi," is the thirty-second PATAN ruler,

The other sons, of whom Shah Husain is said to have been the father, formed separate tribes, one of which, the Ghalzis, I shall have to make a few

remarks about, shortly.

Ismā'fi, brother of Prānki, and son of Siāni, son of Lūdi, had two sons, one of whom was named Sūr, who is the founder,—not Mulpammad, son of Sūri, the Qhūriān—of the Afghān tribe, not of Sūri, which here is a proper name, but of Sūr. Sūr, great grandson of Lūdi, had four sons, from one of whom,

words had pronounced, and which have been previously

in the ninth degree, sprung Farid, afterwards Sher Shāb, and therefore, according to the Afghān mode of describing their peoples' descent, he would be styled, Sher' Khān, of the Sherā Khel, of the Sūr subdivision of the Lūdī tribe of the Batani Afghāns or Paṭāns. The name of Shīr occurring among the Afurī Tāzīks, and Sūr among the Afghāns, immediately struck Firishtah probably, and he, at once, jumped at the conclusion that they were one and the same, and that the Ghūrī's were Afghāns, and Afghāns Ghūrī's. But, although Firishtah made this mistake—for he is the first who made it—he never turns Turkish slaves, Khalj Turks, Sayyids, and others into Paṭāns, for, according to Firishtah's statements also, Bah-lūl, Lūdī, is the first Paṭān severeign of Dihāt, as stated by other authors who preceded him.

Under the reign of Salim [Islām] Shāh, Sūr, Dow has [at page 191, vol. ii.], when mentioning his death, "In this same year, Mahmood, the Patan King of Guzerat, and the Nigām of the Decan, who was of the sathe nation, died."

Here we have the descendant of a converted Rājjāta of the Tāk sept, on the one hand, and the descendant of a Brahman of Bija-nagar [Bi-jayānagar], on the other, turned into Afrejiāns; but I need scarcely add that the words in italics Are not contained in Firishtah. Compare Briggs also here.

One example more and I have done with these monstrous blunders; but there are scores unnoticed still. At page 197, vol. ii. Dow, under the reign of Ibrāhīm, Sūr, has: "In the meantime, Mahommed of the Afgions family of Ghor, governour of Bengal, rebelled against Mahommed." The words in italies ARE NOT contained in Firightah's text; and what that author does state is perfectly correct. What Briggs has I am not aware.

The last of the eight Afghān or Pajān sovereigns of Dihlt, as Bah-līl was the first, was Aḥmad Khān, who, on ascending the throne, adopted the title of Sultān Sikandar.

The renowned Afghān chief, the warrior and poet, Khush-hūl Khān of the Khaṭak tribe, who was well versed in the history of his people, mentions the only two Paṭān ilynasties—Lūdiāh and Sūr, in one of his poems [See my 'Poetry of the Afghāns,' page 197] in these words:—

"The whole of the deeds of the Patäns are better than those of the Mughals; But they have no unity among them, and a great pity it is. The fame of BAH-LUI, and SHER SHAH too, resoundeth in my ears—Afghän emperors of India who swayed the sceptre effectually and well. For is: or seen generations did they govern so wisely. That all their people were filled with admiration of them."

He does not claim the Tark Churis, Turks, Paranchahs, and Sayyids however. I must mention before finishing this, I fear, tiresome note, that Elphinstone does not perpetrate the monstrous blunder I have been dilating on. He very properly calls the Turkish slaves, the "Slave Dynasty?" and the others under their proper designations. I do not say slaves in a contemptous sense, far from it, for they were most able rulers, and many of them were of as good descent as their master; but they were Nor Papäns Nor did they belong to a Papän dynasy. It was however left for the President of the Archaeological Section, at the late Oriental Congress [on the authority of Major-Gen. A. Cunningham probably] to crown this edifice of crrors with "Ghorl Pathans," "Khilij Pathans," "Tughlak Pathans," and "Aghans"

recorded —who became the heirs of his dominion, and the august brows of whom became encircled with the imperial diadem of that sovereign; and through whose sway the signs of the lights of the Muḥammadan faith remained on the records of the different parts and tracts of the territories of Hindūstān: and may such evermore continue! The Almighty's mercy be on those passed away, and may He prolong the empire of the remainder!

I. SULŢĀN ĶUŢB-UD-DĪN, Ī-BAK, AL-MU'IZZĪ US-SULŢĀNĪ 3.

The beneficent Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, the second Hatim, was a high-spirited and open-handed monarch. The Almighty God had endowed him with intrepidity and beneficence, the like of which, in his day, no sovereign of the world, either in the east or west, possessed; and, when the Most High God desireth to make manifest a servant of His in magnificence and glory in the hearts of mankind, He endows him with these attributes of intrepidity and beneficence, and makes him especially distinguished, both by friend and foe, for bounteousness of generosity and the display of martial prowess, like as this beneficent and victorious monarch was, so that, by the liberality and the enterprise of him, the region of Hindustan became full of friends and empty of enemies. His gifts were bestowed by hundreds of thousands , and his slaughters likewise were by hundreds of thousands, like as that master of eloquence, the Imam, Baha-ud-Din, Ushi , observes in praise of this beneficent sovereign :-

"Truly, the bestowal of laks thou in the world didst bring: Thy hand brought the mine's affairs to a desperate state. The blood-filled mine's heart, through envy of thy hand, Therefore produced the ruby as a pretext fwithin it [6."

[Afghans are not "Pathans" here I], "Bengali Pathans," and "Juanpuri Pathans," After this we may shortly expect Hindū Pathans and Pārsi Pathans, or even English, Irish, and Scotch Pathans.

2 See page 497.

3 That is the slave of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din.

4 Hence he is also called "Lak Bakhsh"—the giver of laks. See page 555, where Rae Lakhmanfah, his contemporary, is also said to have been a Lak Bakhsh.

⁵ He passed the greater part of his life in Hindustan, and was one of the most distinguished men of Kuth-ud-Din's assembly.

6 The liberality of Kuth-ud-Din became a proverb in Hindustan, and still

At the outset of his career, when they brought him from Turkistan, Kutb-ud-Din reached the city of Nishapur. The Kāzī-ul-Kuzāt [Chief Kāzī], Fakhr-ud-Dīn, 'Abd-ul-'Aziz-i-Kūfi. who was a descendant of the Imām-i-A'zam, Abū Hanīfah of Kūfā, the governor of the province of Nishāpūr and its dependencies, purchased him; and, in attendance on, and along with his sons, he read the Word of God, and acquired instruction in horsemanship, and shooting with the bow and arrow, so that, in a short time, he became commended and favourably spoken of for his manly bearing. When he attained unto the period of adolescence 8, certain merchants brought him to the Court of Ghaznīn; and the Sultan-i-Ghazī, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Sam, purchased him from those traders. He was endowed with all laudable qualities and admirable impressions, but he possessed no outward comeliness; and the little finger [of one hand?] had a fracture, and on that account he used to be styled I-bak-i-Shil [The powerlessfingered] 1.

continues to be so. "The people of Hind, when they praise any one for liberality and generosity, say he is the "Kutb-ud-Dīn-i-kal," that is, the Kutb-ud-Dīn of the age, kal signifying the age, the time, &c." Blood is a play on the ruby's colour.

7 See page 384, and note 5.

8 Some say the Kāgā sold Kutb-ud-Din to a merchant, but others, that, after the Kāgā's death, a merchant purchased Kutb-ud-Din from his sons, and took him, as something choice, to Ωhaznin, hearing of Mu'izz-ud-Din's [liker styled Shitab-ud-Din] predilection for the purchase of slaves, and that he purchased Kutb-ud-Din of the merchant at a very high price. Another work states, that the merchant presented him to Mu'izz-ud-Din as an offering, but received a large sum of money in return.

Firishtah quotes from our author here correctly, but his translators manage to distort his statements, and Kutb-ud-Din is made out a proficient in Arabic and Persian, indeed, a ripe scholar. "He made a wonderful progress in the Persian and Arabic languages, and all the polite arts and sciences" says Dow; and Briggs repeats it; but Firishtah's statement was respecting his talent for government, and his accomplishments in the art of war. Elphinstone and others, led astray by the translators, copy their incorrect statements.

The printed text here has the words | which are not correct,

and spoil the sense.

1 Î-bak—sl₂!—alone is clearly not the real name of Kuṭb-ud-din, for, if it were, then the word that—3—added to it would make it Î-bak of the withered or paralyzed hand or limb; and, even if the word the slide, it would make no material difference. Now we know that Kuṭb-ud-din was a very active and energetic man, and not at all paralyzed in his limbs; but, in every work in which he is mentioned, it is distinctly stated that he was called Î-bak because one of his little lingers was broken or

At that period, Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, now and then was wont to give himself up to pleasure and jollity. One night he had given directions for an entertainment and conviviality, and, during the entertainment, he commanded a gift to be bestowed upon each of the slaves present, consisting of sums of ready money, and gold and silver, both wrought and unwrought. As to the portion of these gifts which came to Kutb-ub-Dîn's share, he came forth [with] from the jovial party, and bestowed the whole of the wealth upon the Turks 3, and janitors, and other attendants, so that nothing whatever, little or much, remained to him.

Next day, this story was conveyed to the royal hearing, and the Sultān distinguished Kutb-ud-Dīn by his favour and intimacy, and assigned to him an honourable post among the important offices before the throne and the royal audience hall and he became the leader of a body of men, and a great official. Every day his affairs attained a high degree of importance, and, under the shadow of the patronage of the Sultān, used to go on increasing, until he became Amīr-i-Ākhūr [Lord of the Stables]. In that office, when the Sultāns of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, and Bāmiān, advanced towards Khurāsān to repel and contend against Sultān Shāh, the Khwārazmī, Kutb-ud-Dīn was at the head of the escort of the foragers of the stable [department], and used, every day, to move out in quest of forage 4.

injured, and one author distinctly states that on this account the nick-name of Ī-bak-i-Shil was given to him. Some even state that Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din gave him the name of Kuth-ud-din, while another author states that it was the Sulţān who gave him the by-name of Ā-bak-i-Shil. It may also be remarked that there are a great many others mentioned in this work who are also styled Ā-bak. Fanākati, and the author of the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, both style him Ā-bak-i-Lang—and lang means maimed, injured, defective, &c., as well as lanz.

Ī-bak, in the Turkish language, means finger only, and 14 according to the vowel points, may be 'Arabic or Persian; but the 'Arabic <u>zhal</u>, which means having the hand (or part) wilhered, is not meant here, but Persian <u>zhl</u>, signifying, "soft, limp, weak, powerless, impotent, paralyzed," thus I-bak-i-Shil—the weak fingered. See Thomas: PATHÁN KINGS of DENLI, pare 22.

2 Turkish guards, the slaves of the household.

3 The text is defective here in nearly every copy, but comparison makes the passage correct. The idiom also varies considerably for several lines, as in numerous other places, already referred to.

4 Others say Kutb-ud-Din, with the patrol under his command, had pushed up the river bank of the Murgh-alb, towards Marw, when he unexpectedly fell in with the army of Sulfan Shāh. All his endeavours to effect his retreat.

Unexpectedly [upon one occasion], the horsemen of Sultān Shāh came upon them and attacked them . Kuth-ud-Din displayed great energy; but, as the horsemen [with him] were few in numbers, he was taken prisoner; and, by Sultān Shāh's commands, was put under restraint.

When a battle took place between Sultan Shāh and the Sultans of Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and the former was put to the rout, the Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's men brought Kutb-ud-Dīn, placed on a camel, in gyves of iron, as they found him, into the victorious Sultan's presence. The Sultan commended and encouraged him 's; and, after he returned to the seat of government, Ghaznīn, the fief of Kuhrām was committed to Kutb-ud-Dīn's charge? From thence he advanced towards Mīrath, and took possession of that place in the year 587 H s. From Mīrath likewise he issued forth in the year 588 H and captured Dīnli; and, in the

and all the intrepidity he displayed, were futile, as his party was small. He was taken prisoner, and conducted to Sultān Shāh's presence, and, by that prince's orders, was put in durance. Firishtah, copying from our author, and from others who also agree, states, that, when Mu'izz-ud-Dîn's men found Kutb-ud-Dîn, in his place of confinement in Sultān Shāh's camp, they placed him on a camel, with his feet still in fetters [as they had no means then of unfastening them], just as he was, and conducted him to the presence of his master, the Sultān. Dow and BRIGOS however improve upon it, and assert that "Eibub vas discovered stiting on a camel on the field," and carried to his "old master," &c. Such is not contained in Firishtah. Both translators fall into the same error of calling Sultān Shāh—this is his name, not his title: [see page 245]—"king of Charizm and Khwaruzm," and into this error ELPHINISTORD likewise falls. See page 245, and note?, page 456.

As a specimen of difference of idiom in the different copies of the text collated I may mention that one set—the oldest—has المارية العالى بديسان بديسان بديسان بديسان المارية العاد العا

whilst the more modern set has المان زد سان لتال قايم هد This important expedition, in which three sovereigns were engaged, is what ELPHINSTONE [page 319, third edition] refers to as "some border warfare with the Khaizmians," in which "he was taken prisoner."

6 He was treated with great honour and much favour, and gifts were conferred upon him.

7 As the Sultan's deputy or lieutenant: but this, by his own account, could not have been immediately on returning from that campaign, for as yet the battle of Taraifn was not gained. See page 469. Both Dow and Briggs state that, at this time, the title of Kuth-ud-Din-which the former correctly translates "the pole-star of religion," and the latter incorrectly, "pole-star of the faithful," was conferred upon him; but Firishtah doer not say so, nor any other writer that I am aware of. He had been so named long before this period.

* This is the year in which Kuth-ud-Din, as Lord of the Stables only, was taken prisoner in Khurāsān, and is impossible. Our author constantly contradicts his own dates. See pages 379 and 469.

year 590 H., Kutb-ud-Din proceeded, at the august stirrup of the victorious Sultān, along with the Sipah-Sālār, 'Izz-ud-Din, Ḥusain, son of Khar-mil, both of them being the leaders of the van of the army, and fell upon the Rāe of Banāras, Jai-Chand, on the confines of Chand-wāl' and overthrew him.

Subsequently, in the year 591 II., Thankir was taken; and, in 593 H., Kuṭb-ud-Din marched towards Nahnwālah, and attacked Rāe Bhim Diw 1 , and took vengeance upon that tribe [of people] for the Sulṭān-i- \underline{Gh} āzi['s previous defeat]. He likewise subdued other territories of Hindūstān a , as far [south?] east as the frontier of the territory of

9 See following note 2, last para., page 518.

1 The best St. Petersburgh MS. has Thinur Diw [بهنوردیو] here; but the majority, including the two other oldest copies of the text, are as above.

2 Our author omits mentioning many important events which are not touched upon in Mu'izz-ud-Dîn's reign, although, at page 507, he says he intends giving a detailed account of the Kutbi victories under Kuth-ud-Din's reign. As this is one of the most important periods of Indian history, I am obliged, in order to give some connexion to the events of the Muhammadan conquest, to burden this translation with an abstract of them, more particularly as they are not given, in any detail, except in two histories, and, even in them, the chronological order of events has not been strictly observed. The Tāi-ul-Ma'asir states that, after taking Ajmir, subsequent to the overthrow and death of Rae Pithora and the installation of his son as tributary ruler of that state, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din proceeded towards Dihli, which was then held by a kinsman of Khandi [Gobind of our author] Rae, the brother of Rae Pithora: but, on his tendering submission, and payment of a large sum as tribute, he was left unmolested, under the same terms as Ajmir had been left in possession of Rae Pithora's son, but some say his brother. Kuhram and Samanah were left in Kutb-ud-Din's charge, and he was left at the former place as the Sultan's deputy or lieutenant, and Mu'izz-ud-Din himself returned to Ghaznin. ELPHINSTONE says, page 314, on the authority of Firishtah's translators, I suppose, that, when "Shahab u din" returned to Ghaznin, he left " his former slave, Kuth u din Eibak," as his representative in India; and yet " his former slave" did not get his manumission until upwards of twelve years afterwards, as all native authors, including Firishtah himself, state : and such is history !

Another account is, that, after being installed at Kuhrām, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn marched from thence against Mīrati, and gained possession of it, after which he moved against Dilhīl and invested it. The kinsman of Khānd Rās appealed to his Rājpūt countrymen for aid, and an army of Rājpūts, in concert with the garrison, endeavoured to raise the investment by attacking Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn and his forces in the plain before the city. The Hindis, however, were overthrown, and the defenders, being reduced to straits, called for quarter, and surrendered the place.

In Ramagān, 588 H., according to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir [Firishtah, who often quotes it, says Ramagān, 589 H.], news reached Kuṭb-ud-Dīn that an army of Jats [Firishtah says "under a leader named Jatwān, a dependent of the Rāe of

Ujjain'; and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din', Muhammad, son of Bakht-

⁸ Ujjain is as plainly written as it is possible to write, and the tashdid mark over it in the two oldest and best copies of the text. Other copies have one but it is evidently owing, in the first place, to a copyist or copyists dropping the | that the error arose—thus when and out for well Ujjain is the more probable, and certainly the more correct, if the map of India be consulted, and the account of his campaigns, in the abstract I have given, read. It is confirmed also by some other authors; but the generality of histories, which are comparatively modern, with the exception of Mir'āt-i-jahān-Numā, which has Ujjain, have Chin. The only reason that will account for such an idea having arisen respecting Chin must have been the raid of Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, the Khalj, into Tibbat, mentioned at page 564, which ended so disastrously.

4 Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Muhammad, is his correct name, as our author himself

states in his account of him. See page 548.

Nahrwälah"] had appeared before Hänsf. The governor of that tract, Nuşrat-ud-Din, Sälärf, had been obliged to shut himself up within the walls, and to send to Kuth-ud-Din for aid. He flew to his assistance, marching the same night the news reached him twelve leagues. The enemy, hearing of his approach, decamped; but, being closely pursued, faced about, and were over-thrown. Their leader was slain [Firightah says he retired to Nahrwälah of Gujañtl, and Kuth-ud-Din, having again placed Hänsf in an efficient state, returned to Kuhräm, and soon after made Dihli his head-quarters and the seat of government; but some authors state that he did not make it the capital until

the following year, after taking Kol.

Kuth-ud-Din had soon to take the field again to support the son of Rae Pithorā, who had been installed tributary ruler of Aimīr. The Sadr-i-'Alā. Kiwam-ul-Mulk, Rukn-ud-Din, Hamzah, who held the fief of Rantabhur, sent information that Bhiraj [+], also written Bhuraj [+], who is called Hirai [- la] in some imperfect copies of the Taj-ul-Ma'asir, Hemrai by Firishtah, and Hamir by some others, brother of the late Rae Pithora, had broken out into rebellion: that the son of Rae Pithora, who is sometimes called [the?] Golah, but generally styled merely "the son," was in great danger; and that the rebel was advancing against Rantabhür itself. Kutb-ud-Din marched from Dihli against him; but Bhirai for Hamirl, on hearing of his coming. made off and took to the hills. Rae Pithora's son [see ToD, who says his only son, Rainsi, did not survive him! He further states that Dow, mistaking the appellation of Pirt'hwiraja's natural brother for a proper name, calls him Golah. The error is Firishtah's, however, not Dow's, in this instance], ruler of Aimir, was, upon this occasion, invested with an honorary robe; in return he presented valuable offerings, among which were three golden melons [kettledrums, in the shape of melons], and, in all probability, the very same as mentioned at page 404.

About this time, also, while Kutb-ud-Din was still absent from Dibli, its former Räe raised an army to make an effort against the Musalmans. He was musued and defeated by Kutb-ud-Din, taken prisoner, and his head struck off

and sent to Dihli.

According to the Tāj-tul-Ma'āṣir, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, at this time, sent an account of his proceedings to his master, and was summoned to Ghaznīn. As it was then the hot season, he waited until the beginning of the rains to set out for the capital. Having reached Ghaznīn, and having been received with great honour

yar, the Khalj, in his [Malik Kutb-ud-Din's] time, and

and favour by the Sultan, he fell dangerously sick; but subsequently recovered, and "was permitted to return to Hindustan again, and the government was again confered when him"

Our author, under the reign of Lyal-limish [see next Section], also refers to this journey, but he says it took place after the expedition against Nahrwälah. It must have occupied some months; but, in the meantime, who acted as the Sulfän's licutenant at Dilili? It would almost seem as though Kutb-ud-Din had been suspected of being too powerful, and that this summons to Ghaznin was to test his obedience and loyalty. One thing, however, is certain, from the account of Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril [page 544], and the mention of Malik Husām-ud-Din, Āghāl-Bak, and others [page 549], that there were powerful chiefs left by the Sulfān in Hindūstān who held fiefs independent of Kutb-ud-Din. It was on this occasion, on his return to Dilhi by way of Gardaiz and Karmān [which Dow, translating Firightah, who is perfectly correct, renders "Persion Kirnan," and adds, in a note, that it is "the ancient Carmania"], that Kuṭb-ud-Din espoused the daughter of Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz. This journey Firightah, who constantly quotes the Tāj-ul-Mā'aṣir, mentions as taking place in 1924 H.

After remaining a short time at Dihli, Kutb-ud-Din marched from it in 590 tt., crossed the Jün, and took the strong fortress of Kol after an obstinate resistance, and acquired great booty. It was after this, according to some histories, including the Tabakāti-Akbari,—a work compiled from the best authorities,—that Kutb-ud-Din made Dihli the seat of his government; but the Tāj-ul-Ma'āgir seems to imply, but not exactly expressing it, that Dihli was made the seat of government in 588 tt., although, by its own account, the Hindia ruler "was allowed fin that year] to hold it upon the same terms as

Aimir was held," already mentioned.

Kufb-ud-Din's following, upon this occasion, amounted to 50,000 horse [the Muhammadan forces of Hinduisiān]; and, having joined the Sullian's army, his concert with 'Izz-ud-Din, Rusain, son of Khar-mil [the same who afterwards turned traitor, and played such a false part towards Sulfān Muhammad, Khwāraxm Shāh, mentioned in note 2, page 257], led the vanguard [the principal division unencumbered with heavy baggage, not "a small detachment of 1000 horse"] of the Sulfān's army. The Müsalmäns came in contact with Jai Chand's forces in the environs of Chand-wär and Itäwah [another author says Chand's war. It is probably Chand-wäl of Itäwah, a place a few miles 5, E.

during his government, subdued the cities of Bihār and

of the latter town. See page 470], and compelled them to give way. Jai Chand, in person, then led on his forces to renew the action, in the heat of which an arrow struck him in one of his eyes, and he fell dead from his elephant. See also note ², page 470, and compare the absurd statement of the Kämil-at-Tawärfkh in Elliot: 1NDIA, vol. ii., page 250-251.

It is truly amusing to compare Firishtah's account of this affair with the versions of his translators. He, quoting the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, says—I give his own words—"At last Jai Chand, in person, appeared in the field against Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, and, during the very heat of the fight, a life-taking arrow [_p\$i_p_n²] entered the pupil of the Rājah's eye, and he fell from his elephant into the dust of contempt." Dow renders this: "But Cutud, wine excelled in archery, sunk on arrow in the ball of his eye," and Baiocs has: "Kootb ood Deen, who excelled in archery, came in contact with Raja Jive Chund, and with his vom hand shot the arrow which, piercing his eye, cost the

Rajah his life "!!!

The Musalman troops, having overthrown Jai Chand's army, and taken possession of the fortress of Asi, where his treasures were kept, pushed on to Banaras, "one of the most central and considerable cities of Hind;" and scores of idol temples were destroyed, and a vast amount of booty acquired, including a large number of elephants, among which was a white one. [Firishtah says this white elephant, a most rare animal, was presented by the Sultan to Kuth-ud-Din, who used to ride it up to the time of his death, and that it died of grief the day after. This, however, is mere supposition, for it appears that this same white elephant was taken to Ghaznin, and from thence to Ghur, to Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mu'izz-ud-Din's elder brother and sovereign; and it was afterwards presented by Mahmud, the former's son, to Sultan Muhammad, Khwarazm Shah, when he became subject to that monarch. See note 3, para. 9, page 402]. Elphinstone says this victory over Jai-Chand "extended the Mussulman dominion unto Behar!" but this is not correct. Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, it was who, shortly after these events, took the city of that name by surprise.

After these successes Sulfan Mu'izz-ud Din returned to Ghaznin, and Malik Husām-ud-Din, Aghāl-Bak [the same who took Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, the Khalj, into his service, see page 549], was installed at Kol. [Firishtah, in his work, gives his account of the expedition against Bhīraj

-para. 4 of this note-in this place.]

Kujb-nd-Dîn soon had to take the field again against Bhirāj [or Hamīr], who had issued from the hills of Alwur, whither he had fled, first fought an engagement with his nephew of Ajmīr, defeated him, compelled him to fly for shelter to Rantabhūr, and took possession of Ajmīr, and despatched a force under a leader named Jhat Rāe towards Dihlīt; but Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, having speedily selected a force of 20,000 horse, marched to encounter him. Jhat Rāe faced about, and was pursued by the Musalmāns to Ajmīr. Bhirāj [or Hamīr] then drew out his forces to give battle, but he was defeated, and retired within the walls; and then, finding resistance fruitless, ascended a funeral pyre and perished. After this a Muhammadan governor was left in charge of Ajmīr, but what became of Rāe Pithorā's son has not transpired.

After this, on disposing of the affairs of Ajmir, Kutb-ud-Din is said to have led his forces, in 501 H., towards Nahrwālah of Gujarāt, and encountered the general of Bhim Diw [according to ToD, Komar-pāl was his name], Rāe of Nahrwālah, who is styled by the name of Jatwān, and who was encamped with

Nūdiah, and that country [Bihār], as will be hereafter recorded.

his army under the walls of the place. On the appearance of Kutb-ud-Din he retired, but was pursued, and, being hard pressed, faced about, made a stand, was defeated and slain. Bhim Diw fled from his capital to the farthest quarter of his dominions; and, Kuth-ud-Din, having acquired enormous booty in that

territory, returned by way of Hansi to Dihli.

In the year 592 H., the Jami' Masjid [now known as the Kuthi Masjid] at Dihli, which Kuth-ud-Din is said to have founded in 589 H., and on which the most skilful Musalmān artizans had been employed [not Hindus solely, Mr. Grant Duff and General Cunningham notwithstanding], and no expense spared, is. said to have been completed. [See note on the Minar, styled the Minar of Kuth Sahib, under the reign of I-yal-timish.] The date of its foundation, as given by Thomas, "PATHÁN KINGS OF DEHLÍ," page 22, C, note 1, is erroneous, as Dehli was not acquired, as I have shown [note 9, page 469], until subsequent to that date, in 589 H. It is evident that we weren has been read instead of nine, the two words, without the points, on which all depends, being exactly alike; and, in writing such as the inscription is in, may be easily mistaken.

In this same year, 592 H., according to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir, but 591 H.. according to our author, and 590 H., according to Alfi, Kutb-ud-Din was preparing an expedition against Thankir or Thangir-also written Thankir or Thangir-the modern Bhianah [a further notice of which will be found at page 545], when intimation reached him of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's moving from Ghaznin for the same purpose. He went as far as Hansi to meet his sovereign, and they marched in concert thither; and Kutb-ud-Din brought about the surrender of that stronghold, which was made over to Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril. After this the royal forces advanced to Gwaliyur, the Rajah of which agreed to pay tribute, and he was left unmolested. For further particulars, see page 546, and note 7. After this event, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din returned

again to Ghaznin. While Kuth-ud-Din was at Ajmir, according to the Taj-ul-Ma'asir [Firightah has, at Dihli, in 592 H. The former work has 591 H., which cannot be correct, from the date it subsequently gives], information was brought to him that a body of rebel Mers or Mairs [not Mhers, for there is no h in the word. Firishtah says—رجهاى نتران probably تران "the Tunur Rājahs"—and adds, "that is to say, Rajpūts." Dow translates the passage, "many Indian independent princes," which is pretty near Firishtah's meaning; but BRIGGS has: "The Raja of Nagoor and many other Hindoo Rajas"], having gathered together, sent emissaries to the Rae of Nahrwalah, asking him to aid them in attacking the Musalmans, who were but few in number. On becoming aware of this intention, Kutb-ud-Din resolved to be beforehand with them; and, although it was the height of the hot season, early one morning fell upon the rebels, and kept up a conflict with them the whole of that day. Next morning the army of Nahrwalah appeared upon the scene, and handled the Musalmans very roughly. Kutb-ud-Din's horse received a wound which brought it to the ground, and his troops, greatly disheartened, with much difficulty managed to mount him upon another horse, and carried him off to Ajmir.

Top, referring to this affair, in his Rajasthan, vol. i., page 259, remarks. that "Samarsi [Prince of Cheetore] had several sons; but Kurna was his heir, and, during his minority, his mother, Korumdevi, a princess of Putun, nobly

When the Sultan-i-Ghazi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-

maintained what his father left. She headed her Raippots, and gave battle to Kootub-o-din, near Amber, where the viceroy was wounded." In a note he adds: "This must be [of course !] the battle referred to by Ferishta. See Dow, p. 169, vol. ii." 'The "wound or wounds" must also have come from Dow or BRIGGS, for it is not in Firishum. This statement of the translators. not Firishtah's, must have led ELPHINSTONE astray, when he says [page 315 of third ed]: "Kutb u Din was overpowered on this occasion, and had difficulty in making his way, covered with wounds, to Ajmir," &c. The statement of Firishtah's is this :- "But his horse, having received a wound, came to the ground. The army of Islam became heart-broken, and they, having by main force-[اعير نقيل]-placed him on another horse, took him to Ajmir." This is all; but his translators certainly display much fertility of imagination in their rendering of Firishtah's words. Dow has: "But he was defeated, received six wounds, and was often dismounted; yet he fought like a man who had made death his companion. Forced, at last, by his own friends, to al andon the field, he was carried in a litter to Ajmere." BRIGGS has: "But he was defeated. After being frequently dismounted in the action, and having received six wounds, he still fought with his wonted courage, till, being forced at length by his attendants off the field, he was carried in a litter to Aimeer." !!!

Emboldened by this success, the rebel Hindûs [the e] of Firishtah], with the troops of Nahrwālah, followed Kuṭb-ud-Dīn and his force, pursued them to Ajmīr, and took up a position a short distance from it; and for several months they shut up Kuṭb-ud-Dīn within the walls, and carried on hostilities against the place. On intimation of the state of affairs having reached Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, he despatched a large force from Ghaznīn, under several of the great Amīrs, to succour Kuṭb-ud-Dīn; but the infidels thought fit to retire before it arrived.

From 591 H. the Taj-ul-Ma'asir jumps at once to 593 H., although immediately before giving an account of the expedition against Thankir or Thangir and Gwaliyur in 592 H., thus showing that 591 H. cannot be correct. The correct date of this reverse must be the ninth or tenth month of 592 H., as Firishtah states. To return, however, to the narrative. Kutb-ud-Din, finding himself thus supported, resolved upon taking vengeance on the Rae of Gujarat, and. in the middle of Safar-the second month of the year-593 Ht., which year is confirmed by our author and several others, he began his march towards Nahrwalah. When he reached the bounds of Pali and Nadul Ithese names are not certain, but such they appear in the Taj-ul-Ma'asir. In proceeding from Ajmir to Nahrwalah, Kuth-ud-Din had the choice of two routes, that on the eastern slopes of the Arawali mountains, by Udipur and Idur, or that on the western or Marwar side, clear of the mountains; and this last he would in all probability have chosen by the direct route of Pali and Sirhor, keeping Abū on his left. Nadul, where, as at Pali, are the remains of ancient forts, lies about twenty-five miles or more south of Pali, but off the direct line of route by Sirhoi; but it must also be mentioned that there are places named Palri and Birgoni close to the hills nearer to Sirhoi, and a Ruira still nearer Aba. Firishtah does not appear to have taken his account from the Taj-ul-Ma'asir in this instance, as the two names he gives may be either Hutali or Dhutali and Bazul or Barul, or Rahi and Bartuki and Nuzul or Nadul, as above] he found those places abandoned—thus tending to show that they were in the lower and less tenable parts-and the enemy under two leaders, one of whom is styled Rae Karan [Kurnah, probably] in the Taj-ul-Ma'aşir, and Ursi [,...,] Sam, attained martyrdom , Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mah-

§ Fanākatī makes a nice hash of this event. He says "after Shihāb-ud-Din, his slave, Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, became the great Sulṭān [_oli__blr], and paid homage to Shihāb-ud-Din's som, Mahmūd by name, who was Wāli of Ghaznin," and that writer makes out that Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din was the younger [_p4] brother, and Shihāb-ud-Din the elder. He has substituted Shihāb for Ghiyāṣ ; and the same is stated in several copies of his work.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āgir states, "when the mournful news reached Kuṭb ud-Dīn, and the period of mourning had expired, he sent out notifications to all parts of Hind and Sind, intimating his assumption of the swereignty, which notifications were attended to by the chief rulers [feudatories?] in those territories; and, after the defeat of L-yal-dūx, the whole tract, from Ghaznīn the should have added, as far as concerns Ghaznīn and its territory, for forty days and nights only] to the extremity of Hindustān, came under his jurisdiction," and a great deal of such like exageration.

With respect to this matter, and the date, there is very great discrepancy

in Firishtah; and the other, Rārābars or Dārābars in the former, and Wālan [.Ji-] in the latter, were posted at the base of the hills of Abu-gadh [this word is written without points [الوكلة], and may be either Alū-gadh [الوكلة] or Abu-gadh [. ELPHINSTONE has : "Two great feudatories of Guzerat strongly posted on the mountain of A'bu." If he had ever seen Abu, he would have understood that they might as well have been posted on the Himālavah as there, since the Musalmans would not pass over or through it. Firishtah says: "At the foot of the fort of Abū or Alū-gadh"], at the entrance to a pass where the Musalmans did not dare to attack them, as it was the very spot where Sultan Muhammad-i-Sam, Ghūri, had been previously wounded, and it was deemed unpropitious to bring on an action there lest the same might happen. [Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din is here referred to, and this statement does not tend to increase our confidence in what the Taj-ul-Ma'aşir says, and it is quite certain that Mu'izz-ud-Din was never wounded but once, and then not near Aimir. Top asserts [vol. i., page 696], upon Rāipūt authority, no doubt, and therefore we must make every allowance, that it was at this very place [Nadole] that "Mahmoud's [Mahmud's?] arms were disgraced, the invader wounded, and forced to relinquish his enterprise." But in another place [page 249] he says "Nadole is mentioned in Ferishtah as falling a prey to one of Mahmood's invasions, who destroyed its ancient temples." Both the statements are much of a piece.] "Seeing their hesitation," says the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir, "the Hindūs advanced to encounter them Firishtah, on the other hand, says "Kutb-ud-Din entered those defiles, and broken ground, and defeated them"]; and, after facing them for some time, on Sunday, 13th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 593 H. [about the 5th of January, 1197 A.D., the year 593 H. having commenced on the 23rd of November, 1196], a battle took place, which was obstinately contested from dawn to mid-day, and ended in the complete overthrow of the infidels, who are said to have lost nearly 50,000 [1] killed. [Firishtah says "nearly 15,000 killed and 20,000 captives, thus avenging his former defeat."] Rae Karan escaped, leaving twenty elephants, and 20,000 captives, besides booty to a great amount. Nahrwalah was taken possession of, and a Musalman Amir was located there [?], after which Kuth ud-Din returned to Dihli by way of Ajmir; and offerings of jewels, and handsome male and female captives, were despatched to Ghur [to Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din] and to Ghaznin. [Gujarat could not have been retained for any time, as it was not

mud, son of [Ghiyāş-ud-Din] Muhammad, son of Sām,

among historians. In the first place, however, I must mention, that our author himself states, at page 398, that, "when Kutb-ud-Din came to Ghaznin [for the forty days after which he ran away. See note \$, page 503], he despatched Nizām-ud-Din, Muḥammad, to Fīrūz-koh to the presence of Sulṭān Maḥmūd;" and in 605 H. [much the most probable date, for reasons to be mentioned subsequently] he, Maḥmūd, sent him a canopy of state, &c., thus contradicting his own statement here. See also page 398, and note \$, page 500, para. 2.

Several histories and authors, including Tärifgh-i-Ibrāhīmi, Tahakāt-i-Akharī, Lubb-ut-Tawārīgh-i-Hind, Tagkirat-ul-Mulūk, Budā'ūnī, &c., state that Kuṭb-ud-Din assumed sovereignity, at Lāhor, on Tuesday [one has Sunday, the I'kh, another Wednesday], the I8th of Zi-Ka'dāh, 602 II., which is much the same as our author says here, and just two months and a half from the date of the Sulṭān's decease. One of these works states that "Kuṭb-ud-Din had gone to Lāhor in ordre to receive the canopy of state, a standard, the deed of manumission, the title of Sulṭām—as he was styled Malik mostly up to this time and

permanently acquired by the Musalmäns until long after.] Promotions and favours were conferred upon the Muhammadan chiefs, and even the poor and needy [Musalmäns] of Dihlf shared in Kufb-ud-Dîn's bounty and munificence.

No other operation is mentioned from this time to the year 599 H., a period of nearly six years; and it is somewhat surprising to find the Musalmäns in India so quiet for such a length of time. It may be partly accounted for, especially the last three years, through the Sultāns—Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dhn and Mu'izz-ud-Dh—being occupied with the affairs of Khurāsān since the accession of their powerful rival, Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, the events of whose reien will throw some light upon this period.

In the year 599 H., the same in which Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din died, and his brother, Mu'izz-ud-Din, became supreme sovereign, Kutb-ud-Din undertook an expedition against Kālinjar. The Rāe of Kālinjar of the Pramārah race made a desperate resistance in the field, according to the Taj-ul-Ma'aşir, before retiring within the walls; but Firishtah asserts that, in "the twinkling of an eye, he faced about and fled for shelter to the fortress." He was invested therein, and shortly after he made terms, and agreed to submit to Kutb-ud-Din on terms the same as those upon which his ancestors had paid obedience to Sultan Mahmud, Ghaznawid; and stipulated for the presentation of a large amount in jewels and other precious things, and a number of horses and elephants. It so happened that, next day, while engaged in collecting together this tribute, he was cut off by the hand of death. His Wakil or minister, Ajah Diw [in Firishtah, Jadah Diw], bethinking himself of a never-failing spring of water in the upper part of the place, determined to resist the Musalmans instead of agreeing to the terms; but, as fortune had turned its face from him, and adversity had come, the spring within a few days dried up, and the people within the walls, being helpless, were compelled to call for quarter; and they came out, and gave up the place. Vast booty in jewels, arms, elephants, and other property fell into the hands of the Musalmans, who became rich from the spoils; and 50,000 captives, male and female, were taken, and were, according to Firishtah, "exalted to the excellence of Islain," and the idol temples were converted into masiids.

It is amusing here also to find how Firishtah, whose account is substantially the same as the preceding, has been translated. Dow says: "In the year 599 he mustered his forces, and marched to the sige of Calinger, where he was who was Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Dîn's brother's son, despatched

was still a slave—and the government of Hindustan, which Maḥmūd had conferred upon him, or rather, confirmed him in, and was greatly exalted and honoured thereby." Our author, and some who copy him, state, that Kuṭb-ud-Din returned to Dihli after the expedition against the Khokhars; but it must be remembered that Kuṭb-ud-Din accompanied his master, Mu'izz-ud-Din, to Lihor after that affair, and, as only two months and sixteen days elapsed between the assassination of the Sultān and Kuṭb-ud-Din's assumption of the sovereignty at Lāhor, it is therefore probable that, on hearing of the assassination of the Sulṭān, which took place only fiften days after the latter left Lāhor, he returned to it at once, and fossibly had not even left it when the news reached him. After a time, he returned to Dihli again. The Tāj-ul-Maʾāṣir says he made Luhāwar his capital, "the place where the throne of Sulṭāns had been established," but the reason, why he eventually returned to Lāhor, and continued there to the day of his death, has been stated already in another place. See note *, page 593.

It is stated in another work, the Khulāṣatu-Tawārikh, that Kuṭb-nd-Din met by Gola, the tributary prince of that country, whom he defeated; and, dimounting his cavalry [I], began to besiege him in the fort." All this is pure invention: there is nothing of the kind in Firishtah. Baroos has: "In the year 599 he mustered his forces, and marched against Kalunjur, where he was opposed by the Kūja of that country, whom he defeated; then, dimounting his cavalry, he laid siege to the fort." A siege and an investment are far different things. All about "the Hindoo flag king again hoisted on the fort" is also

purely imaginary, and is not contained in Firishtah's text.

Here is another choice specimen of how Indian history is written. Its source, of course, is Dow and Bricos, not Firishiah. In Marshman's "History of course, is Dow and Bricos, not Firishiah. In Marshman's "History of India," vol. 1, page 197, is the following: "In the year 599 he mustered his forces, and marched against Kulunjur, where he was opposed by the Rāja of that country, whom he defeated; then, dismounting his cavadry, he laid siege to the fort. The Rāja, seeing himself hard pressed, offered Kootb-ood-Deen Elbuk the same tribute and presents which his ancestors had formerly paid to Sooltam Mahmood. The proposal was accepted; but the Rāja's minister, who resolved to hold out without coming to terms, caused his master to be assossimated, while the presents were preparing. The Hindoo flag was again hoisted on the fort, the siege recommenced, but the place was eventually reduced, owing to the drying up of a spring upon the hill which supplied the garrison with water."

From Kälinjar Kutb-ud-Dîn marched to the city of Mahobah, the capital of the territory of Kälbī, which he took possession of, and returned to Dihlî by way of Buda'ün, one of the chief cities of Hind, which he also occupied. It is not Firishtah who places "Bada'ün hetween the Ganges and the Jamna" (see Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii., page 232, note 1), but Dow and Bargos, who misinterpret him.] It was whilst in this part that Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, the Khali, is said to have presented himself in Kuṭb-ud-Din's presence,—not from Awadh and Bhār, but from A-dwand-Bhār, noticed in the account of that chief farther on—bearing rich presents in jewels and coin of various descriptions; but this certainly took place ten years before 599 ft. He was received with great distinction, as his fame had extended over Hind and Sind. When he was admitted to an audience to take leave, he received a robe of honour, a standard, and other insignia, as will be found mentioned in the account of him at page 548.

a canopy of state to Malik Kutb-ud-Din, and conferred on him the title of Sultān ; and, in the year 602 H., he determined to proceed from Dihli to the royal presence in Lohor ; and, on Tuesday, the 17th of the month, Zi-

ascended the throne, at Lähor, on the 11th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 603 H., and that he read the Khuthah for hinself, and coined money in his vow name, and yet, although the coins of others are, comparatively, so plentiful, it is stated that not one bearing the name of Kuth-ud-Din has ever been found. A work in my possession, however, which contains specimens of the different coins of the Sultāns of Hind, with the inscriptions they are said to have borne, gives the following as a specimen of Kuth ud-Din's coins:—

which may be thus rendered:—"Coin of the inheritor of the kingdom and signet of Sulfān, Kuṭb-uḍ-Dīn, Ī-bak, in the year 603 H." and on the reverse:—"Struck at the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, Dihlī, in the first [year] of [his] accession."

I rather doubt the possibility of Malik [which was his only title up to his ascending the throne at Lahor! Kuth-ud-Din's having received the title of Sultan and the investiture of the sovereignty of Hindustan as early as Zi-Ka'dah. 602-H., because Ghivas-ud-Din, Mahmud, did not at once obtain the supreme [nominal only] authority after the assassination of his uncle. His kinsman, 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, previously called by the name of Ziva-ud-Din [See page 304] was, at that time, ruler of Ghur and Firuz-koh, and Mahmud was at Bust, and it must have taken him some few months, at the very least, to dispossess 'Ala-ud-Din, Muhammad, and acquire possession of the sovereignty; and this would bring us to 603 H., as on the coin given above. One author, in fact, states, and it is not improbable, that 'ALA-UD-Din, MUHAMMAD, who then held Ghur, after the Sultan's assassination-in which case, 602 H, would be correct-sent Kutb-ud-Din a canopy of state, and conferred on him the sovereignty of Hind, and that MAHMUD, subsequently, did the same; and one of the authors previously referred to says Kutb-ud-Din was at Pürshor, when Mahmud's communication, conferring this dignity, reached him, and further states that he had gone there to guard the route into India.

Another thing to be remembered is, that, by our author's account, the statements of the Tāj-ul-Māāṣir, and the greater number of other histories, Kuṭb-ud-Dīħ died in 607—although some say in 609, and fot M.—in what month is not stated, after a reign of little over four years; but, if we consider a little, four years from Zī-Ka'dah, 602 H., only brings us to the same month of 606 H. Strange to say, Faṣih-f, although mentioning the assassination of Sulṭāħ Mu'lz-ud-Dīħ in 602 H., does not mention Kuṭb-ud-Dīħ's acquirement of power as Sulṭān until 608 H.—" when the title of Sulṭān was conferred and he was manumitted "—one year before Maḥmūd's assassination, which he says occurred in 609 H., and states that Kuṭb-ud-Dīħ was killed by a fall from his horse in 610 H. See note 2, page 528.

See note 3, page 500.

7 The text in most copies, including the printed text, is slightly defective here, causing a meaning contrary to what our author would convey. It is evident, from various events, that Kutly-d-Drin did not "determine to go to the

Ka'dah, of that same year, he ascended the throne in the

royal Kasr of Lohor.

After some time, hostility arose between him and Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, respecting Lohor, so much so, that that hostility led to an engagement; and, in that affair, the victory was with Sultān Kutb-ud-Dīn. Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, was defeated, and retreated before him; * and

capital, Lohor," as the words יינישי שלים ליפון לפני Alone mean; and, farther, Lahor was not the capital. The correct reading is as above, namely— ישני ליפון איני אולי ביים אולי מיים שליי וליפון לי

⁸ I have, in a previous place [see page 502, note %], referred to the proceedings of Tāj-nd-Din, I-yal-dūz, towards <u>Ohiyās-ud-Din</u>, Maḥmūd, and Kuṭb-ud-Din's jealousy of I-yal-dūz, and his offer of aid to Abf-Dakur against him.

In the year 603 H., shortly after Kutb-ud-Din is said, by some, to have received his freedom, and the title of Sulfan from Sulfan Maḥmūd, I.yal-lūz, who considered the Panjāb part of the dominion of Ghaanīn to which he had succeeded, and which had neither been assigned, by Maḥmūd, to Kutb-ud-Din, nor to the other slave, Kahā-jah, Kutb-ud-Din's son-in-law, despatched the Khwājah, the Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Sanjari, the Wazīr of Ghaanīn, against Lāhor [but a few authors say he went himself], and ousted Kahā-jah, who held it, nominally, for Kutb-ud-Din. Kutb-ud-Din, soon after, marched against I-yal-dūz with all the available troops of Hindūstān, and a battle took place between them, in the Panjāb, and I-yal-dūz was worsted, and retreated into the strong country of Kaṛmān and Shalūzān. Kuṭb-ud-Din now pushed on to Ghaznīn, which having obtained possession of, he gave himself up to wine and riot; and this, according to our author, at page 398, happened in 605 H., which is a more probable date than 603 H.

There are great discrepancies, however, in several works of authority, which are difficult to reconcile with the above in many respects, in Alfi, Yāfa-ī, and

the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, which must be briefly alluded to.

It is said in the first-mentioned work that, soon after the death of Mu'izud-Dfn, I-yal-dūz had to abandon the Ghaznfn territory, because, through the treachery of Kutlagh-Tigfn, a former slave of the late Sulfan [can this be the slave who shut the gates upon his master mentioned in note?, page 475 TJ, and who, since his death, had been in Sulfan Mahmūd's service, but was now one of I-yal-dūz's principal Amfirs and held Ghaznfn for him, during a short absence, seized this opportunity of instigating Sulfan Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, to seize it. I-yal-dūz, previous to this, had agreed to acknowledge the succentarity of that monarch, and had despatched befitting presents; but the Sulfan at once acted on the suggestion of Kutlagh-Tigfn, and seized Ghaznfn.

This event, according to Alfi, took place in 603 of the Rihlat, and Vaia-i, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, and some others say in 611 H., and, according to those

Sultān Kutb-ud-Dîn proceeded towards the seat of government, the city of <u>Ghaznīn</u>, and possessed himself of that kingdom likewise; and, during a period of forty days that he sat upon the throne of <u>Ghaznīn</u>, he bestowed upon God's

works, Sulţūn Maḥmūd did not die until 609 H. [see also last para. of note 3, page 400], and Faṣiḥ-i states that Kutb-ud-Din obtained sovereignty over Hindistām in 608 H., and places his death as late as for H. These dates do not agree with those given by the Muḥammadan Historians of India, but they are not the most reliable authorities for events which happened out of that country.

In the state of affairs in which L-yal-dūz found himself, for Sulţān Maḥmūd was now but a mere vassal of the Khwārazmīs [See note *, page 400), he was under the necessity of retiring towards Hind [the Panjāb], which he considered a portion of his own dominions. He reached Lāhor, encountered Kabā-jah, and took possession of that capital and the whole Panjāb. See our author's account of Kabā-jah, page 531, and early part of the reign of 1-yal-timish.

On Sulţān Muḥammad, Khwāmzan Shāh, getting possession of Ghaznin, he put to death several of the Ghūrīān Amīrs, and made over his new acquisition to his son, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī; and a Khwānzanī noble was installed at Ghaznīn as his deputy [This accounts, no doubt, for the reference made by Jalāl-ud-Dīn, when soliciting a temporary asylum from I-yal-timish zone years subsequently, to their having been "good neighbours previously." See note 4, para, 7, page 290], and the Sulfān returned to Khwārazm. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn now marched into the Panjāb against I-yal-dīz [603 Kilda, 612 H.], who was defeated by him, and retired into Kaṛmān and Shalūzān. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn marched to Ghaznīn, drove out the governor on Jalāl-ud-Dīn's part, and gave himself up to wine and pleasure.

Now we come to that part of the subject in which all agree; but it is amusing to notice how our author slurs over these doings. Kntb-ud-Din now giving himself up to amusement and debauchery, the people of Qhanrin, disgusted with his remissness and laxity, and the disordered state of affairs, sent a person, secretly, to I-yal-dūz, to whom they seem to have been much attached, and solicited him to return to the capital. He did so with promptness; and, as his appearance on the scene was quite unexpected by Kuth-ud-Din, he was unable to resist him, and he abandoned Qhaznin precipitately, and fled by way of Sang-i-Surākh [one of the routes between Ghaznin and the Panjāb, for he did not dare to take that through Kaṛmān], to Lāhor. This was the occasion of his "filling the throne of Ghaznin for forty days," for which our author considered it to be necessary to mention him [page 506] not only among the Sultins of Hindūstān, but, separately, of Ghaznin likewise.

I cannot refrain from inserting here a specimen of history-writing, which will only be found in the writer's imagination. Mr. Marshman, in his "History of India," written for the University of Calcutta, states at page 47, vol. 1., that "Kootub followed up the victory [over "Eldore"] and RECOYERED Churzhi [which he never before possessed], where he assumed the crown fout at Libor then ?], but was soon after expelled by his rival, and driven back to India. . . . The establishment of the Mahomedan empire in India is, therefore, considered to date from this event, "&c. This is rich indeed.

Kuth-ud-Dîn does not appear to have returned to Dihli any more; and, through fear of I-yal-dūz, continued at Lāhor until he met with the accident which ended his days.

people abundant benefactions, and innumerable favours, and returned again to Hindūstān, the account of which has been previously related. As the decree of fate supervened, in the year 607 H., he fell from his horse whilst engaged in playing ball* on the course, and the horse came down upon him, in such wise that the prominent part 1 of the front of the saddle came upon his blessed breast, and he died 2.

The period of his rule, from the first taking of Dihli up to this time, was twenty years; and the stretch of his sovereignty, with a canopy of state, the <u>Khut</u>bah, and coin [in his own name and titles], was four years and a little

over 3.

II. SULŢĀN ARĀM <u>SH</u>ĀH, SON OF SULŢĀN ĶUŢB-UD-DĪN, Ī-BAK.

When Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, died, the Amirs and Maliks of Hindustan at once considered it advisable for

⁹ Chaugān, something similar to modern Polo.

¹ The eastern saddle is vastly different from ours, and those who have seen it in use in the Fast will easily conceive the effect of the high-pointed front coming in contact with the breast.

2 The generality of authors place his death in the year 607 H., but the month and date is not mentioned, and some place his death much later. One work, the Tärikh i-Ibrāhimi, however, gives a little more detail than others, and enables us to fix the month, at least, tolerably correctly. It is stated in that work that, having ascended the throne at Lahor, in Zi-Ka'dah, 602 H., he died in 607 H., having ruled nineteen years, fourteen as the Sultan's [Mu'izzud-Din's] lieutenant, and five and a half years as absolute sovereign. From 588 H., the year in which he was first made the Sultan's lieutenant, to the 2nd of Sha'ban, 602 H., the date of the Sultan's death, is fourteen years and a month, calculating from about the middle of the former year, if Mu'izz-ud-Din returned to Ghaznin before the rainy season of 588 H., which, in all probability, he did; and five years and six months from the middle of Zi-Ka'dah, 602 H., would bring us to the middle of Jamadi-ul-Awwal, the fifth month of 607 H., which will therefore be about the period at which Kutb-ud-Din is said to have died. and a little more than three months, by this calculation, after the death of Sultan Mahmud, if 607 H. be the correct year of the latter's assassination. Fasih-i says Kutb-ud-Din died in 610 H., and the Mir'at-i-Jahan-Numa and Lubb-ut-Tawarikh say in 600 H. He was buried at Lahor, and, for centuries after, his tomb continued to be a place of pilgrimage. It may now possibly be turned into a reading-room, a residence, or even a place of Christian worship, purposes for which many buildings of this kind are now used at Lahor, without its being known whose dust they were built to cover.

⁵ It seems strange that our author should give detailed lists of the offspring, kinsmen, Kätis, nobles, and victories of his former slave and son-in-law, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timigh, and not of Sulfän Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, himself,

the pseudo-founder of the " Patán or Afghán" dynasty.

the sake of restraining tumult, for the tranquillity of the commonalty, and the content of the hearts of the soldiery, to place Ārām Shāh upon the throne 4.

Sultan Kutb-ud-Din had three daughters, of whom two,

4 Although a number of authors agree in the statement that Ārām Shāh was Kuṭb-ud-Din's son, it nevertheless appears, from the statements of others, that Kuṭb-ud-Din had no son; and it is stated, more than once, by our author likewise, that three daughters were his only offspring. Some of these authors, moreover, who call Ārām Shāh his son, afterwards add, "than whom he had no other heir;" but, if he was really his son, what better heir could be desired? Abū-l-Faqi makes the astonishing statement that Ārām Shāh was Kuṭb-ud-Din's brother!

On the sudden removal of Kutb-ud-Dîn from the scene, at Lâhor, the nobles and chief men, who were with him there, in order to preserve tranquillity, set up, at Lâhor, Ârām Bakhgh, the adopted son of Kutb-ud-Dîn, and hailed him by the title of Sultān Ārām Shāh. What his real pedigree was is not mentioned, and he may have been a Turk. Mandates and decrees were now issued in his name, and the good news of justice and glad tidings of impartiality towards the people reached them. This was, it is said, in 607 H.

At this juncture, Amîr'Alī-i-Ismā¹īl, the Sipah-Sīlār, and governor of the city and province of Dihlī, the Amīr-i-Dād [called Āmīr Dā'īd, by somel, and other chief men in that part, conspired together, and sent off to Budā'ūn and invited Mallī. I-yal-timish, the feoffee of that part, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn's former slave and son-in-law, and invited bim to come thither and assume the sovereignty. He came with all his followers, and possessed himself of the city and fort and country round. At the same time, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, who had married two daughters of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn [in succession], appropriated Sind and Multān, Bhakar and Sīwastān, and, subsequently, the territory to the N.E., as far as Sursutī and Kuḥrām; the Khalj chiefs in Bangālah assumed independency there, and the Rājahs and Rāes on the frontiers [of the Mussāmān dominions] began to show a rebellious and contumacious spirit.

Ārām Shāh, on first becoming aware of these acts of I-yal-timish, at the advice of his supporters, summoned to his aid the old Amirs and soldiers of his adopted father, and they, having rallied round him in considerable numbers from Amrohah, and other parts, and he having inspirited them, advanced with a strong force towards Dihli. Malik I-yal-timish, having gained possession of the capital, issued from it with his forces; and, in the plain of Jud before Dihli, the rival forces encountered each other. After a feeble effort on the part of Ārām Shāh's troops, he was defeated and disappeared, and what became of him is not quite certain; but our author is probably correct in saving that he was put to death by his rival. After this, Malik I-val-timish became independent ruler of Dihli, and the other great chiefs were left, for a while, in the possession of the territories they before held or had since appropriated. The reign of Aram Shah, if such can be properly so called, is said by some to have terminated within the year; but others contend that it continued for three years. The work I have before alluded to gives the following inscriptions on a coin of Aram Shah, and the date on another, given as I-yal-timish's, corroborates the statement of those who say Aram Shah's reign extended over three years.

one after the [death of the] other, were wedded to Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, and the third was married be sultān Shains-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish. At this time that Sultān Kutb-ud-Dīn died, and Ārām Shāh was raised to the throne, Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah proceeded to Uchchah and Multān. Kutb-ud-Dīn had contemplated Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn's acquiring dominion, and he had called him son, and had conferred upon him the fief of Budā'ūn. The Maliks, in concert, brought him from Budā'ūn, and raised him to the throne of Dihlī; and the daughter of Sultān Kutb-ud-Dīn was espoused by him; and they martyred Ārām Shāh'.

Hindūstān became subdivided into four portions: the territory of Sind Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Din, Ķabā-jah took possession of, the dominion of Dihli pertained to Sultān Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, the territory of Lakh-anawati was appropriated by the Khalj Maliks and Sultāns, and the state of Lohor, according to alteration of circumstances, used to be seized upon, sometimes by Malik [Sultān] Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, sometimes by Mālik [Sultān]

The following are the inscriptions on this coin :-

which may be thus rendered:—"This diram [is] stamped with the name of the Mailk, the shadow of the Almighty, Ārām Shāh, in the year 607," and on the reverse:—"Gtruck in the Dār-us-Salṭanat, the city of Lāhot." The date given on the coin of Lyal-timish, which see farther on, Section XXI.,

is "612, the first of his reign."

Those authors, who say Ārām Shāh was Kuṭb-ud-Dīn's son, for the most part make a great blunder in stating that he was raised to the throne at Diblīt, and that those, who had set him up, repenting of having done so, through his incapacity—his incapacity seems to have been his incapacity to enforce obdetience—invited I-yal-timish to assume authority, and that Ārām Shāh, becoming aware of their sedition, came out of Diblīt, and called on his father's old followers to aid him, after which I-yal-timish secured it, and subsequently defeated Ārām Shāh.

5 From what our author states, a few lines under, it would appear that I-val-timish only espoused Kutb-ud-Din's daughter when he assumed the

throne, at Dihli.

6 In other words, he appropriated those places and their dependencies in the confusion consequent on I-yal-timish's usurpation, and assumed the title of

7 The idiom varies here. All the modern copies of the text, and one of the oldest also, have, instead of this sentence the words—"and the decree of destiny reached Årām Shāh," and the sentence ends. Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 301.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, and sometimes by Sulṭān <u>Sh</u>ams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timi<u>sh</u>, as will, subsequently, be recorded, please God! in the account of each of those personages.

III. MALIK [SULŢĀN] NĀŞIR-UD-DĪN, ĶABĀ-JAH, AL-MU'IZZĪ-US-SULŢĀNĪ 8.

Malik [Sulţān] Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, Ķabā-jah, was a great monarch, and the slave of the Sulţān-i-<u>Gh</u>āzi, Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad-i-Sām.

He was endowed with very great intellect, sagacity, discretion, skill, wisdom, and experience, and had served Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din many years in various departments of every sort of political employment, both important and subordinate, about the Court, in military affairs, and the administration of civil duties, and had acquired great influence.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-i-Aetamur, the feudatory of Uch-

⁸ Sultān, on his coins, the title he assumed, and to which he was equally as much entitled as the "august" Sultān I-yal-timish.

Some authors—but they are mostly those either natives of or resident in India, and of comparatively modern days—write this name Kulā-phah, with ch. The Raugat-uş-Şafā writes it Kabāj merely. Our author, however, invariably writes it Kabā-jah, and I have therefore followed him. The letter ge in writing, is constantly used for ge sometimes from ignorance, sometimes by mistake, and the two letters are very often interchangable, and j j and are substituted for them; but, in this particular case, the name of this ruler occurs time after time in the same line with Üshchah, but the j of Kabā-jah and the ch of Üchchah are distinctly marked in the oldest copies of the text, and, in one, the vowel points are also given. Üshchah will be found constantly written with j which is intended for ch, in several copies of the text as well as in many other works, but we never find Kabā-jah written with ch in the text.

The idea appears to have prevailed that this probable nickname is derived from \(\frac{1}{2}\)—\(\lambda_{k}\) an 'Mrabic word signifying a quilted jacket with short sleeves, or a tunic open in front, and that \(\frac{1}{2}\)—\(\chi_{k}\) had is the \(Persian\) affixed particle of diminution '= \(\lambda_{k}\) kab-\(\chi_{k}\) had, a short jacket or tunic, and thus his name would be \(\text{N\tilde{a}}\); in this case, \(\tilde{K}\) had, the wind is impossible, because there is no \(\ell \) in the 'Arabic word \(\lambda_{k}\) had.

The letter $\mathfrak s$ never occurs in a purely Posian word, nor does it ever occur in $Hindi'_1$ and ξ is often substituted for it, and vice versa. There are other meanings attached to a precisely similar word used in Persian, which is probably Thekith, like the nick-names, $\tilde{\mathbf{I}}$ -back, \mathbf{I} -yal-düz, \mathbf{I} -yal-timigh, and the like. This kabā means, rending, tearing, cutting, paring, scraping, shaving, &c., while, in another form of it, the b is doubled = kabbā signifying slender about the middle. To this last the Persian diminutive particle, ghah, is of course applicable; but, besides this, ghah signifes, much, great, abundance, and the like, and also fifteen, or, literally, three fives. Under these circumstances this nickname might mean "very slender waisted." See also Elliot: India, vol i, page 131.

chah, in the engagement at Andkhūd "—which took place between the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, and the forces of Khitā, and the Maliks of Turkistān—displayed great valour before the stirrup of the Sultān, and fought against the infidels as by orthodox law enjoined, and despatched great numbers of them to hell. The Maliks of the army of Khitā became dejected through the amount of slaughter inflicted [upon them] by Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-i-Aetamur, and they simultaneously came upon him, and he attained martyrdom. The Sultān-i-Ghāzī reached his capital and the throne of Ghaznīn in safety,from that disaster; and the government of Ūchchah 'was entrusted to Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah.

He was son-in-law to Sultān Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, through two daughters ; and, by the elder daughter, he had a son—Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh. He [Bahrām Shāh] was of handsome exterior and of good disposition, but addicted to pleasure; and, according to the way of youth, he had an excessive predilection for vice.

In short, when Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, after the catastrophe of Sultān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, proceeded to Uchchah, he possessed himself of the city of Multān, and Sindūstān³, and Dīval, as far as the sea-coast. The whole he brought under his sway, and subjected the fortresses, cities, and towns of the territory of Sind, assumed two canopies of state, and annexed [the country to the eastward] as far as the limits of Tabarhindah, Kuḥrām, and Sursutī¹. He also took Lohor several times: and

¹ The printed text and two MS. copies of the text have <u>Uchchah</u> and Multān, but the ten best copies omit Multān.

One having previously died. Kabā-jah was likewise son-in-law of Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, and, consequently, by the alliance with Kutb-ud-Dīn's daughters, he married the daughters of his wife's sister's husband.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir calls him 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, but I look upon our author as a better authority than the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir for the events of this reign. What became of Kabā-jah's son our author and others do not state.

This word is written, in one of the oldest copies of the text, with the vowel points. Inda-khūd من عبال عباد المنطقة عباد المنطقة الم

That is, Siwastān, also called Shiw-astān, by some Hindū writers. The remarks which follow seem to indicate that all these were separate provinces or territories. Siwastān is turned into Hindūstān in Elliot's India, page 302.
Vafa-i says each of the slaves seized upon the territory he held the govern-

fought an engagement with the troops of Ghaznin which used to come [into the Panjāb] on the part of Sultān Tāj-

ment of at the time of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn's assassination, and that Kabājah appropriated Üchchah, Muliān, Luhāwar, and Purghāwar, which territories, for the most part, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dîn afterwards subjected.

Immediately after the decease of Kufb-ud-Dîn, the so-called establisher of "the Pathán or Afghán dynasty," Nāṣṇ-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, foresceing a struggle for power, or, at least, a weak government, appropriated all the forts and towns in the territories of Lāhor, Tabarhindah [some authors say Bathindah, some Sirhind], and Kuhrām as far as Sursuti, he holding, at the time of Kutb-ud-Dīn's death, the fiefs of Uchchah and Multān, having previously held Lāhor for him. He was subsequently ousted from Lāhor, Multān, and Uchchah by the forces of Sulṭān Tāj-ud-Dīn, ryal-diz, as our author mentions; but, after the defeat of 1-yal-dūz, and he had been put to death in captivity by I-yal-timish, Kabā-jah got possession of these territories again, and apparently as a tributary of 1-yal-timish, or in some way subject.

Our author leaves out here, but mentions in two lines, and under a wrong date, the first hostilities which arose between Kadā-jah and I-yal-timish under the latter's reign. These hostilities arose in 613 II., many years before the defeat of Sulfān Jaiāl-ud-Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh, by the Mughals. According to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, Kabā-jah was tributary to I-yal-timish, and the tribute was in arrears. At the advice of his Wazīr, I-yal timish marched from Dihlī towards Lāhor to enforce payment; others say, and more probably, that it was for the possession of the province of Lāhor—in Jamād-ul-Awwal, 613 H. [The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, Buda'ūnī, and some others, make a great blunder here. They state correctly enough that war arose between these two rulers about Lāhor, and that Shans-ul-Jīn, I-yal-timish, was always victorious; but add that, on the last occasion, in 614 H., Shans-ul-Jīn moved against him in person, and invested Ūchchah, and then proceed to mention Kabā-jah's death, which happened ten years or more offer, thus confounding or mixing up the two

events. Firishtah is completely at sea about these events in Kaba-jah's life.] Kabā-jah with his forces was encamped on the Biah [the Bias of Europeans] to defend its passage. Arrived on its banks, I-yal-timish, on the 14th of Shawwal, began to cross with his army, without the aid of boats [this in ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 571, is called crossing the Indus !], at the ford near a village named Chambah [?]; but we must remember that the present course of the Biah is not what it was then. In those days it separated into two branches at a village named Lowah-wal, one branch flowing by Kuşür, Kabülah, Khā-e, and Hujrah-i-Shāh Mukim, passed about a mile and a half N.W. of the fort of Dibāl-pūr, and fell into the river Ghārā. This branch was called Biāh and Nālah-i-Biāh; whilst the other branch, flowing southwards, fell into the Sutlaj, as the Ghārā, above its present confluence with the Bīāh, is called. One author, copied by Firishtah, states that this affair between Kaba-jah and I-yaltimish took place between Mansuriah and the banks of the Chinab, which seems very unlikely, being too far west. Kaba-jah, on witnessing this daring deed, according to the Taj-ul-Ma'asir, abandoned his position and fled towards "Luhāwar," whither he was pursued. His standard, kettle-drums, war material, and other booty to a vast amount, fell into the hands of his rival. After this disaster, Kaba-jah fled towards Uchchah, whither I-yal-timish appears not to have been then prepared to follow him.

I-yal-timish remained some time at Lähor to arrange its affairs; and, having published the news of his success in all parts, conferred the government of that

ud-Dîn, Yal-duz, and was overthrown by the <u>Kh</u>wājah, the Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad-i-'Abd-ullah, the Sanjari, who was the Wazir of the kingdom of <u>Gh</u>aznīn'.

When [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Din, Ķabā-jah, became quietly established in the territory of Sind of during the calamities [attending the inroads] of the infidels of Chin, a great number of the chief men of Khurāsān, Ghūr, and Ghaznīnpresented themselves before him, and he bestowed upon the whole of them ample presents, and provided liberally for them?. There used to be constant contention between him and the august of Sultān, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, up to the time of the battle on the banks of the Sind, which was fought between Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din, son of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and Chingiz Khān, after which, Jalāl-ud-Din, Khwārazm Shāh, came into the land of Sind, and proceeded towards Diwal and Mukrān.

After the taking of Nandanah' by the forces of the infidel

territory upon his eldest son, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, and then returned to Dihlī. It was after these events that Kabā-jah's territory was invaded by Sulfān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Khwānzam Shāh, as already mentioned in note*, page 293. The extent of the province of Lāhor may be judged of from what is mentioned in that note, and note ', below.

⁸ This happened in 612 H., according to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, but it cannot be correct. That is the year in which I-yal-duz in person overthrew him: the Wazfr of Ghaznin defeated Kabā-jah soon after the death of Kutb-ud-Din. The Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā states that engagements were fought between I-yal-duz and Kabā-jah several times in the neighbourhood of Lāhor for the possession of that province. See under the reign of I-yal-duz, pages 496—506.

6 Having been deprived of the province of L\(\text{L\(\text{h}\)}\)or, Kab\(\text{a}\)-jah retired into Sind, and, devoting his energies to the consolidation of his rule therein, acquired great power.

7 See page 200.

⁸ Truly; and at page 294 he says that Kabā-jah was defeated by I-yal-timish in person in 614 H., which refers to the same events as related in the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir in note 4, page 532.

9 Sa'id here means august, and not that his name was "Sa'id," which it was

not, nor was it "Sultán Sa'íd Shams."

^{1.} Sülţān Jalāl-ud-Din's defeat happened in the seventh month of the year 618 H. Compare Elliot's INDIA here, and throughout this Section, as the Calcutta printed text happens to be pretty correct in this identical portion of it. In the translation in Elliot, vol. ii., page 302, this passage is thus rendered:— "When the battle between Jalālu din Khwārizm Shāh and Changiz Khān was fought on the banks of the Indus, Jalālu din came into Sind, and went towards Dewal and Makrān. After the victory of NARDUA-TRAI the Moghal prince came with a large army, &c." Here it will be perceived that NANDANAH, the name of the fort which was taken and the district in which it lay, and Tukrī, the name of the Mughal who led the troops engaged in it, have been very

Mughals, Turti, the Mughal Nū-in, with a large army, appeared at the foot [of the walls] of the city of Multān,

cleverly made into one name, and Chingiz Khan is brought to Multan, who was never east of the Indus in his life!

This passage cannot fail to be unintelligible to the reader without giving some explanation, and some details respecting the events to which it refers. Our author, no doubt, could have given more particulars, but here, as elsewhere, he has, for reasons of his own, concealed a great deal.

There are many discrepancies likewise in the generality of Muḥammadan authors about the investment of Multān. Some works, including Jahān-Kughā, and Jām'-ut-Tawārikh, agree with our author, and some others state that Multān was taken by the Mughal, while Faṣiḥ-i, and others, which give such detailed accounts of the Mughal invasions and Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's career, say nothing about NANDANAH, and do not refer to this expedition against Multān; and Faṣiḥ-i farther states, what is rather improbable, that Qhingiz Khān himseff gave Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn to understand, that, "as long as he did not re-cross the Sind, he would not interfere with him." The A'fn-i-Akbarī says the Mughals suddied Multān, and that Kabā-jah again repulsed them, but the first statement is not correct.

European writers also differ considerably—I need not quote the absurd nonsense contained in D'Ohsson [iii. p. 4] and in Rampoldi, in his "Annali
Musalmani"—in their accounts, extracted from the Muhammadan writers,
respecting the advance of the Maghals upon Multān. In the "History of the
Tartars," translated from the work of Abū-I-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, it is
stated that Chingiz "despatched Dubay, Noyan, and Bala, Noyan, in pursuit
of the Sulfān, but they, having followed him in vain as far as the frontiers of
India, were obliged to return without being able to give any tidings respecting
him." Petit de la Croix, on the other hand, quoting Fagl-ullah, says, "Bela,
Noyan, with 20,000 men," was sent "to resist" the Sulfān, "tif he appeared
in the country of Multān," and again, quoting Abū-I-Fidā, says "Multān fell
into the hands of the Mughals." Jahān-Kughā, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh and Alfi
are, however, greater authorities than those quoted by Petit de la Croix for

After his defeat of Sulfān Jalāl-ud-Dīn on the west bank of the Sind or Indus, Changis Khān, with the main body of his forces, halted in the country near the Kābul river and the Sind—in the plain of Peshāwar, or the Hashiragar Do-ābah, probably—pending negotiations with Sulfān I-yal-timish—as stated by our author also farther on, only the negotiations of Chingiz were usually conducted upon quite a different plan: with the sword, not the penfor permission to pass through upper Hindistān and enter Chīn by way of Lakhanawaṭṭ and Kāmrūd. Whilst there encamped, Chingiz, hearing of the progress of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and the strength he was acquiring, detached the Nū-īn, Turtī or Turtāe—both names are correct, and he is by some writers called Tūrmāt [not "Tūli", as stated in Thomas, "PATHAN KINGS of DIMLI".
—Tūlī was the som of Changiz, and was elsewhere employed at this time. Firiṣhtah, on the other hand, says it was Changhatie, another of the sons, which is equally incorrect]—with two timans—20,000 men—in pursuit of him.

Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, then in the western part of the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah, being much too weak in point of numbers to face this Mughal army sent after him, retired farther into the Panjāb, after he had, with 150 men, attacked and routed some 2000 or 3000 of the troops of I linding in stationed in that part, beyond the river Bihat, Wihat, or Joliam, into the Chinhatah Do-ābah The

and, for a period of forty-two days, closely invested that strong fortress.

name of this Do-ābah is derived by combining the two first letters of the word ψ —Chināb—with the three last letters of $\omega_{\rm c}$ —Bihatah or $\omega_{\rm f}$ —Wihatah, b and w being interchangable—the Do-ābah of Chinhatah lying between those two rivers], where there were numbers of Khokhars at that period; and one writer states that the Sulfān did actually invest Lāhor itself.

Turti, having crossed the Sind, "pushed on until he reached the boundary of the district or tract of country belonging to Hindustan which Kamr-ud-Din. Karmāni, had held, but had been dispossessed of it by one of the Sultan's [Jalal-ud-Din's] Amirs. This evidently refers to the tract of country which will be subsequently referred to in several places-Banban or Banian. In it was the strong fort of NANDANAH [aixii-in two copies of Alfi it is written and sai, clerical errors probably, but the locality cannot be mistaken. and NANDANAH is evidently meant] which he took, and inflicted great slaughter upon its inhabitants." From whom this fort was taken is not mentioned, but it could scarcely have been then in the possession of Jalal-ud-Din's vassals. After this feat. Turti set out towards Multan, keeping along the western bank of the Ihilam, "On arriving opposite Multan he found the river unfordable, and directed his followers to construct a bridge, which they did by means of rafts of wood-a floating bridge." He then crossed, and invested the place; but, after he had placed his catapults, and had discharged them a great number of times with much effect, and the fortress was about to fall, he had to abandon the siege on account of the excessive heat [It was the height of the hot season, and the heat of Multan is truly excessive]. He plundered the provinces of Multan and Lohawar, re-crossed the Sind, and proceeded towards Ghaznin." the country of Fur or الله في Lami'-ut-Tawarikh and Alfi say he plundered the الله في الله - the country of Fur or Porus-which is the same probably as the Malik-pur and Malka-pur of other writers, the meaning of the former not having been recognized, perhaps, from the two words being written as one _____ and ___ See also Elliot, INDIA: vol. ii., page 559.

Our author, however, makes the matter of the investment of Multān by Turtî very confused, for, in a previous page [297], he states that "Turtî, the Mughal, who had invested Multān, left Chingle Khān, and came and joined Sultān [alāl-ud-Dīn, and became converted to the Muhammadan faith."

To return, however, to NANDANAH. This fame is first mentioned in the reign of Mahmüd of Ghamin by 'Utba' in the Kitäb-i-Yamin', and then by Abū-Sā'd, son of Ḥaiyah, a native of Gardaiz in the Ghaznin territory [probably an earlier writer even than Abū-l-Fazi-i-Baihaki, though not much], in his Zain-ul-Akhlbār, who says that Mahmūd, towards the end of 404 H., determined to attack that fort, and that Naro Jai-pāl, on becoming aware of it, placed a strong garison therein and retired himself towards the valley of Kashmīr. Mines were sprung, and the Turks kept up such a fire of arrows against those who showed themselves upon the walls that the place surrendered in 405 H. This very rare and important work I have commenced translating.

The next mention of NANDANAH occurs in Abil-Fazl-i-Baihaki's work, wherein it is said it was "impossible to leave that saghar—i—a narrow pass between hills bordering upon a hostile country—where was the fort of NANDANAH, without being properly taken care of." Our author also mentions it in several places, and it is mentioned in some other works, including the Tabakat'-Akbarf [It appears to have been copied from Zain-ul Akhbar].

During that contest Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, opened the door of his treasury, and conferred nume-

Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārikh, and Firishtah, both under Maḥmūd's reigu, and in many other places, as well as by 'Abbās, Sarwārnī, the Afghān historian, and other writers; yet, by some means or other, it has been turned into "Whirdla" by a few Muḥammadan writers—or rather copyists—and by almost all European translators, after the same fashion as Tarā'īn—the present Talāwarī—has been turned into "Whirdla" "No such places as "Nārdin" and "Nāriain" ever existed. See also Elliot, INDIA: vol. ii., pages 448 to 450. Firishtah's mode of spelling it is Nandūnah, and, in this instance, Dow spells it tolerably correct, and is followed by Briggs.

Although it is declared [Elliot, INDIA: vol. ii. page 451] that "the name of Ninduna cannot be restored," I shall make an effort to restore that of NAN-

DANAH, and, I think, not unsuccessfully.

NANDANAH, as late as the latter part of the last century at least, was the name of a district, and formerly of a considerable tract of country, and a fortress, in the Sind-Sagar Do-abah of the Panjab-but the name, to judge from the Panjab Survey Maps, appears to have been dropped in recent timeslying on the west bank of the Bihat, Wihat, or Jhilam. It contained within it part of the hill country, including the tallah or hill of the Jogi, Bala-nath, a sacred place of the Hindus, which hill country was known to the Muhammadan writers as the Koh-i-Iud. Koh-i-Bala-nath, and to the people dwelling therein as the Makhialah, Janjhui, or Jud Mountains, which we style the Salt Range, from the number of mines of rock salt contained within them, and lay between Pind-i-Dādan Khān Iso called after a former Khokhar chief named Dādan Khān] and Khush-āb, and now composes part of the Shāh-pūr [Pūr or Fūr. i. e. Porus District of the present Rawal Pindi Division under the Paniab Government. There was also another separate and smaller district named Nandanpur, a little farther north, and there is a small river named Nandanah in the present district of Fath-i-Jang, in the Rawal Pindi District, also to the north, There is also, in this district, a Malik-pur, in ancient days, the residence of the provincial governors, which lies in the direct line of route from the NAN-DANAH district on the Ihilam to the locality in which Chingiz Khan had pitched his camp, previously alluded to.

It is not impossible that the name of Nandanah was, previous to the reign of Akbar, applied to the eastern half of the hill tract between Khush-āb, Rāwal-Pindi, and the Jhilam, including the northern part of the Chūl-i-Jalāli—so called after Jalāl-ud-Drn—in the midst of the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah, which formed, during the rule of the Chūri-sand the Turkish Slave Kings of Dhili, the north-western province of Hind and Sind. The authority of the last-named rulers does not seem to have extended to the eastern bank of the Sind, except on the advance of an army to enforce it, nor northwards over the mountain tracts; and the Khokhars, along with the Awān-kārs, Kathars, Chakars, and other less numerous tribes, and, like them, still inhabiting that strong country—the ancient Gāndhārah of the Hindigs—were not reduced to the subjection of

the rulers of Hindustan till the time of Akbar.

In the reign of Sulṭān Mu'izz ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, his rule, which extended from Ghaznīn to Lānor and Dihlī, did not extend, save very nominally, over this hilly country; and it was because the Khokhars, and others, in alliance with them, closed the route between Ghaznīn and Lāhor, as referred to in note ', page 481, that he had to march into this very frontier district of NANDANAH to coerce them. The fottress of that name seems to have been

rous benefits upon the people, and showed such proofs of boldness, ability, expertness, and courage that the men-

for the same object as that for which <u>Sher Shāh</u>, Afghān, founded the fort of Ruhtās in after years. Whether it was founded on the site of the fort of NAN-AIR it is difficult to say, but is more than probable, for Abū-l-Fazl does not mention it in the list of forts in that surkār, which may account for the name being less used in later times, but, at a place on the route between <u>Khush-āh</u> and Makhaḍ on the Sind, named at present Pakkā-kot, there are the remains of a very strong fortress of ancient times, which may be those of NANDANAH.

In the tract south of the Makhialah Mountains or Koh-i-Iud, as far as the Sind, and to the north among the hills likewise, and beyond the Sind towards Karman and Ghaznin, are the remains of several large towns or cities. and substantial buildings, including the ruins of a considerable city, on the east side of the river, named Kahlūr [كهاور], which were noticed in the latter part of the last century, built in the strongest and most substantial manner, and still to be seen, and which would be delightfully interesting to explore. The country between the Jhilam and the Sind, in the direction I have been referring to, teems with ruins of this kind, and the remains of numerous great wells, with stone steps to descend into them, named wan-the present termination of many village names-in the Panjabi dialect, baoli in Hindi, and sard-abah in Persian. There are also the extensive ruins of the ancient city of Akarrah, and some others, in the Banu district, the whole of which give undoubted evidence of this tract south of the Makhialah or Jud Mountains having been the chief route between Hind and Ghaznin by Karman and Gardaiz. The more northern route by Jhilam, Rawal Pindi, Atak, and Peshawar was seldom, if ever used, for the Khaibar route was not under the control of the Dihli kings, nor was it so good and practicable as the other. [I notice that the periodical ravings about the "only two routes" from Afghanistan into India have not vet ceased.] This may be gathered from the account of Sultan Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud's reign farther on, where he marches his forces as far as the Sudharah and then sends Ulugh Khan with his best troops to endeavour to expel the Mughals from this very tract, and also from the account of Ulugh Khan in the following Section. The country on the west of the Sind and on the Käbul river nearest to it, on the decline of the Ghurian, Khwarazmi, and Mughal powers, was occupied by confederacies of powerful tribes, among whom were Afghans, and on the east side, in the hills, by the tribes before alluded to, some of whom, the Awan-kars and a few others, also held lands on the west side near the river Sind, and some even farther west.

It was from this frontier province of NANDAMH that Sulfān Jalāl-ud-Dīn sent an envoy to I-yal-timiṣḥ—who was made away with by him—with whom Chingiz is said by our author to have been at the same time negotiating [1]. I-yal-timiṣḥ lad, at this time, ousted his rival Kabā-jah from this portion of the Lāhor territory, and had compelled him to content himself with Multān, Dohohah, and Sind, although, from what subsequently occurred, the hold of either of the rivals upon the frontier district of NANDAMH could not have been very firm or very secure. At page 293, our author says, that I-yal-timiṣḥ, on hearing of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's overthrow by the Mughals on the Sind and retreat towards the frontiers of the Dinli kingdom, "despatchat" in his account of I-yal-timisḥ farther on, he says he "marched"—"the troops of Dinlī towards Lāhor [into the province of Lāhor ?] against the Sulṭān, who thereupon "turned aside, and proceeded towards Sind and Sīwastān." They were in greet terror of the Khwārgamis' at Dihlī: but Sulfān Ialāl-ud-Dīn.

tion thereof will endure upon the pages of time until the

judgment day.

This affair of the fortress [of Multān] happened in the year 621 H.; and, one year and a half subsequently, the Maliks of Ghūr³, through the ravages of the Mughal infidels, joined Malik [Sulṭān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah; and, in the latter part of the year 623 H., a body of [the tribe of] Khalj, a part³ of the Khwārazmi forces, acquired supremacy over the district of Manṣūrah⁴, which is [one] of the cities of Siwastān, and their head was Malik Khān, the Khali⁵.

who had no more than about 10,000 men with him, was unable to face the immense forces of the Dihli kingdom, and therefore he contented himself, for the time, with the Sind-Sägar Do-ābah and part of Sind. Had he appeared on the scene a few years earlier, before the Turk chiefs of the Mu'izzi and Kuthi dynasties had been overpowered and slaughtered by I-yal-timish, he might easily have maintained a permanent footing in India.

From the fact of Nandanan being contained in the List of I-yal-timish's victories, although no mention even of such an expedition is given under his reign, he may have endeavoured to gain possession of it; and he certainly was advancing towards that part when attacked by the illness which compelled him to return, and which shortly after caused his death. This frontier tract must have been held by the Mughals after taking the fort of Nandanan, for the very first act of his son Nāṣīr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, when he came to the throne, eleven years after, was to march into the Panjāb and despatch Ulugh Khān from the banks of the Sūḍharah with his forces "to ravage the Koh.i-Jūd and the parts about Nandanan," and to check the inroads of the Mughals, who, in the preceding reign of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, had taken Lāhor and attacked Chchah.

² Who the "Maliks" of <u>Gh</u>ūr were at this period will be found in the account of the Mughal invasion in the last Section. The ravages of the Mughal here referred to have nothing whatever to do with "this invasion" or irruption of Turti the Mughal. See <u>ELLIOT</u>, vol. ii. page 303.

Not even the printed text will admit of this sentence being rendered: "The army of Khalj, consisting of ALL the forces of Khwarism," &c. ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 303.

4 The word used is ارض Manṣūrah, and signifies literally depressed or low land; also a portion of land, country, region, tract, &c. With Siwasian the word على is used, which is the plural of المباهب a district, province, country, as well as town, city, inhabited place.

as were as town, refy, inhance pace.
§ It is possible that this may be our author's version of Sulfan Jalal-ud-Dîn's operations against Kabā-jah; but it is evident, from the fact that neither here nor in his account of Jalal-ud-Dîn, Mang-barnî, does our author, any more than Ḥasan, Nigāmî, the author of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir, give a correct account of Sulfan Jalāl-ud-Dîn's subjugation of the Khokhars, and the defeat and reduction of Kabā-jah, and occupation of Siwastān, that both writers studiously conceal as much as possible what must have been perfectly well known to both of them. Other Indian writers who came after them, probably considering that contemporary writers might be depended upon, have been led into the

Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, moved on to repel them, and a battle took place between the two

error of not mentioning those matters, if they were aware of them. The Khwārazmī Sulṭāns were very olnoxious to the Ghūrīs and their parasites, and, as the Khwārazmī sovereigns were not on good terms with the Khalīfahs of that day, our author's bigotry doubtless led him, as well as Ḥasan, Nizāmī; to conceal all that might tend to the honour and glory of those whom our author and his sect considered no better than heretics, as well as to pander to

the vanity of his patrons. See page 600.

Eighteen months after the appearance of the Mughals on the Sind or Indus. and the investment of Multan by Turti or Turtae some time in 623 H., a chief, named Malik Khan by several writers, and styled "of Hirat," with his followers and the Khalj tribe, or rather the remnant of the Khalj tribe [a portion of this great tribe was settled in Garmsir, and some held lands in Nangrahar, north of the Karman district, centuries before the Afghans came into it. It is included by some in Shanuzan or Sankuran, or rather the latter is included in Nangrahar], the remnant of the Khwarazmi forces in these parts, pressed by the Mughal invaders, arrived on the N.W. frontier of Sind. This person, however, cannot be the great chief referred to at pages 287, 409, &c .- nor does our author say he is, but styles him "the Khalj;" but some other writers endeavour to make out that he is-for, according to Yafa-i, Jahan-Kusha, and other works, he was slain when endeavouring to reach Parshor or Barshawar, when the right wing of Sultan Jalal-ud-Din's small force which he commanded was defeated on the banks of the Indus. He was the son of Jalal-ud-Din's maternal uncle, and is styled by different names and titles in different histories. In Alfî he is called, Yamîn Malik, in Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, Amîn Malik, and in Rauzat-uş-Şafa, and Habib-us-Siyar, Yamin-ul-Mulk. It is apparent, however, that his correct name and titles were Malik Khan, Yamin-ul-Mulk. See page

Abū.l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, in his history styles the person last referred to Khān Malik, Saif-ud-Dīn, 'Ighrāk, Malik of the hills of Karmān—the Sankurān or Shanūzān hills. This however is not correct, for that chief, together with others, 'Agam Malik and Nūḥ, the Jān-dār, after their desertion of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, began to fall out and fight among themselves, so that within three months of their desertion all three were killed, and their followers dispersed; and, what with those killed by each other and those slain by Changiz Khān's forces, after a short time no traces of them were left.

A Malik Khān commanded the *left* wing of Jalāl-ud-Dīn's force in the battle on the Indus, and his fate is not recorded. He probably is the person meant by our author, and the remains of the deserters from Jalāl-ud-Dīn's

army after the victory at Barwan may have been his followers.

Our author does not appear to have known much more about the situation of Manştirah and the district of which it was the chief place than Abū-l-Fapl did. It was on the aut side of the Indus, and nearly fifty miles from the present main stream, and was situated between forty-five and fifty miles N.E. of Haidar-ābād. The Khalj fugitives appeared on the N.W. frontier of Sind, of which Sfwastān (which gave name to the province] or Sadisān, the present Sihwān, was the chief city, and included that district and what we at present call Upper Sind. Kabā-jah moved against them and defeated them, and Malik Khān is said to have been killed in the engagement. The remaining Khalj and others of his followers sought the protection of Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, Kabā-

armies, and the <u>Kh</u>alj force was overthrown, and the <u>Kh</u>ān [Chief] of the <u>Kh</u>alj was slain; and Malik [Sulṭān] Nāṣir ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, returned again to Uchchah and Multān.

In this same year likewise, the writer of this work, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, reached the city of Üchchah from Khurāsān by way of Ghaznīn and Banīān, by boat, on Tuesday, the 27th of the month Jamādi-ul-Awwal, in the year 624 H. In the month of Zi-Hijjah of the same year, the Fīrūc College of Üchchah was committed to the charge of the author, together with the office of Kāzī of the forces of the

jah's rival and enemy, who took them under his protection, and subsequently marched against Kabā-jah, supported by these fugitives.

Firishtah, copying some other modern author, places this event in 615 H., but it is totally incorrect. He says they came from the outskirts of

Ghaznín. The Țabaţāt-i-Akbarī copies from our author.

6 Üchchah, also cailed Üchchah-i-Jalātī, the Europeanized Uch, Ooch, and
Ouche, on the Ghārā, consisted — I refer to it as it was a century ago — of seven
villages of large size. That in which is the tomb of Sayyid Jamāl, Bukhārī, is
called Üchchah-i-Sharīf, or the Holy; and that in which another Muḥammadan saint—Makhdum-i-Jahānān-i-Jahān—is buried is styled Üchchah-iMakhdum. The part in which the Mughal governors used to dwell is named
Üchchah-i-Mughal, and so on, all seven villages having separate names; but
they may be considered as portions, although somewhat apart from each other,
of one large town. Six or seven kuroh [each kuroh 1000 paces] to the northward of Üchchah, the rivers Ghārā, Chināh, and their tributaries fall into the

Sind, Ab-i-Sind, or Sind-Sagar. 7 The Calcutta text has Mathan or Mithan---here, but there is no such word in any copy of the text collated. The editor or editors, knowing probably that there was a place somewhere on the Indus called Mithan-kotnot Mithan with long a-jumped at the conclusion that that must be the place referred to. The name contained in every copy of the text is written generally Banian, but occasionally Hanban. See note 1, page 536, and note 8, page 623. The same name occurs in the reign of I-yal-timish, and in many other places; and, in the printed text, the name is, generally, correctly written. In a note, however, it is turned into , but in two of the most respectively! In Elliot's India the printed text is implicitly followed. There is no doubt whatever that Multan is not meant, and that it refers to some place between Ghaznin, Karman, and the tract north or west of the Salt Range, perhaps Banu or near it; and further mention of it in the following pages of this work tends to confirm this supposition, but its precise position is difficult to fix. Mithan-kot is a long distance below Uchchah, and would have taken our author much out of his way in coming from Ghaznin to that city.

Compare Elliot, India, vol. ii. page 304, where the Kāzī-ship, or office of Kāzī, is turned into "provocation"! The passage is thus rendered:—"In the month of Zi-l hijja of the same year the Firozi college at Uch was consigned to the care of the author. On the provocation of the army of 'Alau-d din Bahrám Shâh, in the month of Rabiu-l awwal, A.H. 624, Sultán Said.

Shamsu-d din encamped in sight of Uch"!

'Alā-ud-Din, Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh [the son of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din, Kabā-jah]; and, in the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal of the same year, 624 H., the august Sultān, <u>Sh</u>ams-ud-

9 There are numerous discrepancies among authors with respect to these events; and our author himself, who was present at Uchchah, makes a different statement here from that given by him under the reign of I-yal-timigh, page

611; and there says these events happened in 625 H.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, after stating that the fortress of "Ūchchah-i-Multān" was "taken,"—i. e. Ūchchah of Multān, or belonging to Multān, not "Ūch Multān,"—and without mentioning that I-yal-timish was at Uchchah in person, says that I-yal-timish, hearing of Kabā-jah's pride and arrogance, and that he had strongly fortified himself within the fort of Bhakar, despatched his Watfr against him with a large army. See also Elliot, INDIA, vol. it. page 242.

Other writers again state that, on the flight of Kabā-jah from Ochchah, L-yal-timish "left his Wazīr to carry on the investment of Cehchah, and returned himself to Dihlî;" and that "the Wazīr took that place after two

months, and then marched against Bhakar."

Another work has that "I-yal-timish's Wazir marched an army against Kabā-jah, and invested him within the walls of Ochehah in 642 H." that "it was taken after two months, on the 2and of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir," and that, "after it was taken, Kabā-jah got on board a boat—not what we call boats in this country, but vessels of considerable size, with flat bottoms—in order to get to Bhakar, and was drowned."

The favourite author of Indian History writers [because translated probably], frightah [not his translators], places this event "between 618 II. and 623 II.;" but, as he gives no authority for so doing, and no dates between, there is no knowing what year he means. He places it before the expedition against Rantabhūr, whereas it took place ofter; and in the litlographed text "revised" by Brigos, and also in the Calcutta text of our author, Bhakar is turned into Thankfr, which is Bhīānah. The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī also places these events in 614 H. some ten years too soon: that was Kabā; āhī first defeat by I-vaļ-

timish. See page 294.

The real events appear to be as follow. Soon after the Khātij and Khwārazmī fugitives threw themselves on the protection of I-yal-timish, he, jealous of the power of Kabā-jah, and his overthrow of that remnant of the Khwārazmī forces, moved with an army from Dihlī, by way of Tabarhindah towards Üchehān, whilst the governor of the Lähor province, with another force, to create a diversion, marched against Multān. I-yal-timish reached Uchehān on the 1st of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 625 H. [February, 1227 A.D.], having sent on the principal part of his army, under the Wazīr, the Nigām-ūl-Mulk, the Khwājah, Muḥammad, son of Abū-Sa'td, Junaidī, a few days in advance. He, I-yal-timish, sat down before the place and invested it, and detached his Wazīr, with a large force, against the fortress of Bhakar, whither Kabā-jah, on becoming aware of I-yal-timish's coming against him, had withdrawn with most of his forces and his treasures. These events happened during the hot season of 625 H., and part of the Wazīr's force dropped down to Bhakar by water, and part went by land, and had fo march through dense jangul.

It is remarkable that neither Lhuri [now often pronounced Rohri] nor Sakar are mentioned here where we might naturally have expected to have heard something about them, especially of Luhri, for on the plain immediately north of it the troops of 1-yal-timish probably encamped. I say probably,

Dunyā wa ud-Din [I-yal-timish] pitched his camp in sight

because there can be no doubt but that the course of the Indus, at this part, has greatly altered during the lapse of upward of six centuries, and with respect to the fortress of Bhakar in particular, and its connexion with Sakar.

To return to Uchchah however: some say it held out vigorously for a period of two months and twenty days; but, as it capitulated-some say it was taken-on Tuesday, the 29th-one author says the 22nd-of Jamadi-ul-Akhir-this must be incorrect, as, between the two dates given for the arrival of I-yal-timish and the fall of Uchchah, is a period of exactly four months. Our author, although present, can scarcely be depended upon, for here he says it occurred in 624 H., and under I-yal-timish's reign says 625 H.

The author of the Tarikh-i-Sind, Mir Ma'sum, says that I-val-timish marched an army against Kaba jah in 624 H., but that the Wazir was left to carry out the investment, and I-val-timish returned to Dihli ; and that the

place capitulated 28th of Jamadi-ul-Awwal, 625 H.

On becoming aware of the fall of Uchchah, Kaba-jah despatched his son, 'Alā-ud-Din, Muḥammad, Balirām Shāh, to treat for an accommodation; but, although he was received with all outward marks of kindness, and matters had been discussed, he was not permitted to depart. As the Wazir was close at hand to invest Bhakar, Kaba-jah was alarmed; and, with the fate of Taj-ud-Din, I-val-duz, before his eyes, threw himself on board a boat in order to escape, and was drowned by the sinking of the vessel on the 22nd of Jamadiul-Akhir, 625 H.

According to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, Kabā-jah, having been invested in Bhakar by the Wazir, and the place reduced to extremity, then despatched his son to I-yal-timish, with an offering of 100 laks of Dihli-wals [a coin so called], and 1000 dresses of different kinds; but, being alarmed at the detention of his son, shortly after, died of grief! He left treasures to the amount of 500 laks of Dihli-wals, 1000 large river boats, jewels and valuable pearls, inlaid vessels of silver and gold, costly garments and other valuable property, the whole of which was appropriated by I-yal-timish. What became of

Muhammad, Bahrām Shāh, Kabā-jah's son, is not known.

The Jāmi'-ul-Hikāyat, a book of anecdotes, written about this period, and dedicated to the Wazir of I-val-timish, states -but the statements contained in such works must be received with due caution-that "I-yal-timish sent an army to repress the encroachments of Kaba-iah," but does not mention Uchchah expressly, and adds, that "he, being unable to cope with this army, sent his forces to Bhakar in boats. The troops of Dihli reached Bhakar on the 10th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 625 H., and preparations for attack were made. It was, however, not made until near seven weeks after, on 1st of Jamadi-ul-Awwal; but Kaba-jah, driven from the outer walls, lost the town and had to retire to the fort." This description, however, is not applicable to the island of Bhakar in its present extent. Kaba-jah is then said to have offered to capitulate, if he were allowed to send away his sons and his This was refused; and he, placing no faith in his conqueror [rival?], preferring death to surrender and captivity, cast himself from the walls into the water, n e night of Thursday, the 19th of Jamadi-ul-Akhirone month and nineteen days after the first investment of the place.

As a specimen of the random manner in which history is often written, Budā'uni says that the Mughals invested Multan in 611 It., and that, in 624 H., Kaba-jah was made captive by Sultan Shams-ud-Din, "and took

the road of the other world,"

of Uchchah. Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, discomfited, embarked on boats [with his troops and followers?] and retired towards Bhakar; and [a body of?] the Sultān's forces, along with the Wazīr of the State, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, set out in pursuit of him, and invested him within the fortress of Bhakar.

Sultān \underline{Sh} ams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, remained encamped before the gate of the fortress of \overline{Uchch} ah for a period of two months and twenty-seven days. On Saturday; the 27th of the month, Jamādi ul-Awwal', the citadel of \overline{Uchch} ah was given up. When the news of the capture of the place reached Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Din, Ķabā-jah, he sent his son, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahrām \underline{Sh} āh, to the presence of the Sultān. Subsequent to his reaching the camp of the Sultān, on the 22nd of the month, Jamādi-ul- \overline{Akh} ir, information arrived of the taking of Bhakar; and that Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, had drowned himself in the river Sind, and the term of his existence was severed 3 .

The period of his rule in the land of Sind, and <u>Uchchah</u>, and Multan, was twenty-two years.

IV. MALIK BAHĀ-UD-DĪN, ŢU<u>GH</u>RIL 4, UL-MU'IZZĪ-US-SULŢĀNĪ.

Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, was a Malik of excellent disposition, scrupulously impartial, just, kind to the poor and strangers, and adorned with humility. He was one of the slaves of the early part of the reign of the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sām, and the latter had raised him likewise to a high degree of rank; and,

¹ The printed text [and Firishtah in his work] turns this name into Thankir, which is Bhianah, although Bhakar is mentioned correctly immediately after!

3 Compare Elliot here, vol. ii. page 304.

² Impossible, considering that Zi-Ḥijjah is the last month of the year, and Rabi*-ul-Awwal the third. He must either mean that he reached Ūchchah in 623 H., or that it was surrendered in 625 H. See page 296, where he contradicts both the date of his own arrival at Ūchchah and also the year in which it was taken.

⁴ Tughrul, with short u before the final i, is the name of a bird; but the name of this chief, like that of several of the Saljūk rulers, is spelt Tughril. All writers agree that Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, was one of the greatest, most amuable, and most accomplished of Sulfan Mu'izz-ud-Din's manifus.

when the fortress of Thangir's, [or Thankir], which is [in?] the territory of Bhiānah, with the Rāe of which warfare was being carried on, was taken, it was made over to Bahā-ud-Dìn, Tughril's charge, and that part became flourishing and prosperous through his means. From different parts of Hindūstān and Khurāsān merchants and men of repute had joined him, and to the whole of them he was in the habit of presenting houses and goods which used to become their property, so that, on this account, they would dwell near him.

As the fortress of Thankir was not suitable as a place of residence for him and his following, Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, founded, in the territory of Bhiānah, the city of Sultān-kot, and therein took up his abode, and used continually to despatch [bodies of] cavalry towards Gwāliyūr. When the Sultān-i-Ghāzī [Mu'izz-ud-Dīn] retired from the foot [of the walls] of the fort of Gwāliyūr, he said to Bahā-

5 The discrepancies of authors with regard to the taking of this fortress, and the operations against Gwallyur are great.

Our author himself, under the reign of Sulfan Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, states that Kuṭb-ud-Dîn subdued Nahrwālah, Thangīr, Gwāliyūr, and Budā'un, and here contradicts himself.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says Thangīr was taken in 592 H., and that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, having joined the Sulṭān's forces, the royal army moved against Gwāliyūr, and invested it in that same year. Rāe Solānkh Pāl sued for peace, became tributary, and was allowed to retain his possessions.

The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī says Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn made the expedition to Kunauj and Banāras in 589 H., and, leaving Kuth-ud-Dīn as his representative in Hind, returned to Ghaznīn. Immediately after, that work states, "Kuth-ud-Dīn subdated Thangīr, Gwāliyūr, and Budā'ūn, and then invaded Nahrwālah," but gives no dates; and then adds, without mentioning any other event between, that, "when between Tūs and Sarakhs, Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn heard of the death of his brother," which happened in 599 H., according to our author.

The Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā also says that Sulfān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, after the conquest of Kinnauj and Banāras, left Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, as his deputy in India, and that the latter took Gwaliyūr, Budā'ūn, and other places, but Thangir is not mentioned, and, in this statement, Haft Iklīm and Budā'ūnī agree.

Alfi, which is the most correct apparently, has, "Sulfān Mu izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥarmad-i-Sām, again entered Hind in 590 H., and took Thangfr [or Thankir], which was an exceedingly strong place, and then marched against Gwāliyūr," about which more will be mentioned in the following note.

It is amusing to compare Firishtah here—the text I mean—his account of these events, first, under the reign of Sulfan Mu'izz-ud-Din, and, subsequently, in his account of Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, and Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril. They are related in three different ways, and neither in details nor in dates do they agree!

-ud-Din, Tughril: "I must leave this stronghold to thee [to take]." In concurrence with this hint, Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, stationed a body of forces from his own troops at the foot of the fort of Gwäliyūr, and near by, at the distance of one league, he erected a fortification, in order that the Musalmān horsemen might remain within it at night, and, when the day should break, push on to the foot of the fort's [walls].

They were occupied in this manner for the period of a year; and, when the defenders of Gwaliyūr became reduced to straits, they sent emissaries to the Sultān-[Malik at that period] i-Karim, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, and gave up the fort to him; and [consequently] between Malik Bahā-ud-Din,

⁶ The more recent copies of the text differ somewhat from this; but the oldest and best copies are as above.

7 Neither here, nor under the reign of Sulfan Mu'izz-ad-Din, does our author give us the details in consecutive order, his constant failing. The Sulfan, having gained possession of Thangir, moved against Gwallyūr. Arrived there, he found it would be impossible to take it by a cong de main, and that the only way to reduce it would be by a regular investment, and reduction of the defenders to straits, which would occupy a considerable time. The Rāe of Gwallyūr, becoming aware of the Sulfan's deliberations on the matter, hastened to present himself before him, with rich presents and offerings, and conciliated him, and, for a time, he was enabled to preserve his territory.

ELPHINSTONE, led away by the translations of Firightah—Briggs's version of which he constantly quotes—and other histories probably, anily, but incorrectly, disposes of these affairs. He says, page 315, "next year, Shaháb u din came back to India, took Biána, west of Agra, and laid siege [i] to the strong fort of Gwáliór, in Bundélkand. It is probable [i] that he was recalled by some attack or alarm in Khorásán, for he left the conduct of the siege of Gwáliór to his generals, and returned, without having performed anything of

consequence [1], to Ghazni."

At the time of withdrawing from before the fort, the Sultan remarked to Tughril, that, if the fort should be taken [hereafter by his means], it should be made over to him. On this account, after the Sulfan's departure, Tughril founded the strong fortress of Sultan-kot in the Bhianah territory and there took up his residence, and from thence made constant raids into the Gwallyur territory : but, finding this of no avail, he founded a strong fortification within two leagues [some say much nearer] of it, and made it his headquarters. and virtually blockaded Gwaliyur. By making incessant raids upon the country round, he sought to reduce the place to extremity. After about a year, the defenders, being reduced to great straits, sent agents, with presents and rarities, not to Tughril, but to his rival, Malik Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak. and delivered up the fortress of Gwaliyur to him. Kutb-ud-Din's having accepted this offer was the cause of enmity between the two Turk mamluks, and, had not Tughril been suddenly removed from the scene by the hand of death, hostilities would have arisen between them. The Tazkirat-ul-Mulūk says Tughril died whilst the operations were being carried on.

Tughril, and [Malik] Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, there used to exist a little of the leaven of vexation.

Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, was a man of exemplary faith, and, in the district of Bhiānah, numerous proofs of his goodness remained; and he died, and was received into the Almighty's mercy.

After this, an account will likewise be given in this TABAKĀT of the Khalj Maliks who were [among] those of the reign of the beneficent Sulṭān® Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, and accounted among the servants of the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī, Muʾizz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, in order that, when the readers [of this work] acquire knowledge respecting all the Maliks and Amīrs of Hindūstān, they may utter a benediction upon the author, and pray unto the Omnipotent for the eternal dominion and perpetual sovereignty of Sulṭān NĀṢIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DIN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAḤMŪD, the son of the Sulṭān, the Kasīm [co-sharer] of the Lord of the Faithful®: and may Almighty God perpetuate the dynasty, Amīn !

There is no date given of the surrender of Gwāliyūr to Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, but, from what our author states about the "leaven of vexation" between Kuṭb-ud-Dīn and Tuṭphil, and what other writers say respecting Tuṭphil's determination of appealing to arms on account of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn's interference with respect to this fortress, we may conclude that its surrender must have taken place just before or immediately after the death of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, who would probably, had he lived longer, have interfered in this matter out of his great regard for Tuṭphril, his ancient slave. Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, after the Sulṭān's death, would scarcely have kept himself entirely at Lāhor out of fear of Tāj-ud-Dīn, J-yal-dūz, with another rival like Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tuṭphil, his is zear, lest they might act in concert.

Firishtah mentions these events in his account of Tughril as though they had happened in 607 H.! See also note 2, page 516.

Gwäliyür did not long remain in Musalmän possession however, and it was recovered shortly after by the Hindiüs, during the confusion which arose on the death of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and the accession of his adopted son; and, it was not until many years after—in 630 II.—that I-yal-timish could gain possession of it. See under his reign farther on.

8 Not so: Malik Kutb-ud-Din was a slave at this time, and continued a slave till after Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's assassination; and the first of the Khalj rulers of Lakhanawati died before Kutb-ud-Din received his manumision.

⁹ See note ⁴, pages 310, 315, and 388, and note ⁷. On his later coins the title is N\u00e4sir-i-Am\u00edr-ul-M\u00e4minin, and as our author himself states in his account of N\u00e4sir-ud-D\u00ean Ma\u00e4mu\u00fad's reign farther on.

V. MALIK-UL-GHĀZĪ, IKHTIYĀR-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF BAKHT-YAR¹, KHALJĪ, IN THE TERRITORY OF LAKHAŅAWAŢĨ².

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that this Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, belonged to the Khalj [tribe] of Ghūr, and the territory of Garmsir³; and that he was a man impetuous, enterprising, intrepid, bold, sagacious, and expert. He came from his tribes to the court of Ghaznīn, and [to] the Audience Hall of dominion of the Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām. In the Dīwān-i-ʾĀriz̄

¹ In the more recent copies of the text, the word w—"son of" has been left out, but the işāfat—the karrah or i, governing the genitive, even in them is understood, if not written; and thus, with European and some local Indian Muḥammadan writers, the father has had the credit for what the son performed. The same error, of omitting the karrah or not understanding the grammatical structure, has caused the ancestor of the Ghūtān Sulfāns, Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, noticed at page 320, to be made Muḥammad Sūrī—one person—instead of two. The father's name it appears was Bakhtyār [i. e. the Fortunate or Lucky], the son of Maḥmūd.

At page 517, in every copy of the text, our author styles him 'Izz-ud-Dîn,

instead of Ikhtiyar-ud-Din.

² My oldest copy of the text gives the vowel points as above. There is no doubt but that the correct name is LAKHMANA-WAŢĪ, or LAKSHMAŅA-WAŢĪ for LAKSHMAŅA for LAKSHMAŅĀ for LAKSHMAŅA for LAKSHMA for LAKS

home-the country of Lakhmana.

3 The most absurd statements have been made with respect to the people named Khali, the plural of which, according to the 'Arab mode of writing, is Akhlāj. It is also written, but rarely, Khalaj; but some few Muhammadan Indian authors write it Khili and Khilii, and most European writers have followed them [Dow, however, makes "Chilligies" of them, although Firishtah writes the word ike other Muhammadan authors]; but, according to the fertile imaginations of Europeans, the Khalj-tribe and Ghalzi tribe are one people-in fact, some roundly assert that the Khali are one and the same race as the Afghan tribe of Ghalzi, without there being a shadow of authority for such an assertion in any Muhammadan writer whatever. Because the Khali happened, in the days of the Ghurian Sultans [and long prior], to have been located in that part of Khurasan now included in what in the present day is styled by the general name of Afghanistan-a comparatively modern designation-such writers, in their innocency, jumped at the conclusion that they were Afghans, and, more than that, that the Khali and Ghalzi must be one and the same people.

The Khalj are a Turkes tribe, an account of whom will be found in all the histories of that race—the Shajinah-ul-Atrāk, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārlkh, Introduction to the Zafar Nāmah, &c.; and a portion of them had settled in Garmsir long prior to the period under discussion, from whence they came into Hindūstān and entered the service of Sulfām Mui'zz-du-Din. See also note § nage 550. [department of the Muster-Master], because, in the sight of the head of that office, his outward appearance was humble and unprepossessing, but a small stipend was assigned him. This he rejected, and he left Ghaznín and came into Hindūstān. Arrived at the capital, Dihli [there likewise], by reason of his humble condition, not finding favour in the sight of the [head of the] Muster-Master's department, he was also rejected.

Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār then left Dihli and proceeded to Budā'un, to the presence of the holder of that fief, the Sipah-Sālār [Commander or Leader of troops], Hizabr-ud-Din, Hasan-i-Adib, and he fixed a certain salary for him.

The paternal uncle of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār—Muḥammad, son of Maḥmūd—was in [the army of] Ghaznīn [and his nephew joined him]; and, when the battle was fought at Tārā'in in which the Golah [Rāe Pithorā] was defeated, 'Alī, [styled] Nāg-awrī, entertained Muḥammad-i-Maḥmūd [the uncle] in his own service. When he ['Alī] became feudatory of Nāg-awr, he stood up among his brethren [sie], and conferred a kettle-drum and banner upon Muḥammad-i-Maḥmūd, and made over to him the fief of Kashmandī [or Kāshtmandī]; and, after his [Muḥammad-i-Maḥmūd's] death, Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār became feudatory in his place '.

After some time he proceeded into Awadh to the presence of Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Āghūl-Bak. As he had acquired a horse and efficient arms, and in several places had shown activity and gallantry, Bhagwat or Bhugwat

⁴ This passage is defective more or less in every copy of the text collated, and most of them are—the most modern copies—hopelessly so. To make sense of it I have been obliged to add a few words, but they are those only which are in *italics within brackets*. The greater part of what is stated there, however, is corroborated by others; and the only parts which are doubtful are those respecting the nephew joining the uncle, and 'Alī, Nāg-awrī's "standing up among his brethren." The latter was probably a Khaij.

The three chiefs here mentioned appear to have been quite independent, or very nearly so, of Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn, I-bak's authority; and this, seemingly, was why Muthammad, son of Bakht-yār, entered their service. The very fact of these Khalj rulers being put in the same Section with Kutb-ud-Dîn, I-bak, Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, Kahā-jah, and Bahā-ud-Dîn, Tughrij, and numbered consecutively, shows that Muthammad, son of Bakht-yār, was not an officer of Kutb-ud-Dîn, but only partially dependent on him as the Sulfān's representative at Dihli; and, in the same manner, his successors were to all intents independent until the last was overcome by I-yal-tīmiṣh.

and Bhruli or Bhrwali [بهكوت] were conferred upon him in fief; and, being a man of valour and intrepidity, he was in the habit of making incursions into the territory of Muner and Bihar, and used to obtain booty

5 These names are thus written in the oldest copies and are confirmed by the best of the modern copies of the text, and, as they are important, I give the original Persian. These fiels were situated between the Ganges and the Karmah-nasah, to the eastward of and adjoining Chunar-garh, and two parganahs still bear the same names. The town of Bhiuli [anglicized Bhoelee] is still the chief town of the latter, but there is a difficulty with respect to the name of the principal place of the Bhagwat or Bhugwat parganah in those days, and it is most probable that the hill and fortress of Chunar-garh was included in it. See Indian Atlas, sheet 88. That the places mentioned in the text were in the part named is singularly corroborated by what others say were the names of Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar's fiefs, mentioned in the following note; for the places referred to are evidently the modern anglicized Pateetah and Kuntil [Kuntilah?], the former being only two miles north and nine west, and the latter one mile north; and twenty-eight miles west of Bhūili. All these three places moreover are immediately west of the Karmahnasah, which river was the boundary of the Bihar territory. In the printed text these places are turned into Sahlat [سهات] or Sahlaşt [سهات] and Sahili [[] or Sihwali [] in fact, anything but what is correct. See Elliot : INDIA, vol. ii., page 305.

⁶ There is considerable difference between our author and some other writers here, and also in other places; and, as I proceed I will give a short

abstract of what they say.

Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar-as I shall in future style him-that is son of Bakht-yar, the Khali, who was never a slave [the "History of India" written for the Calcutta University notwithstanding]. was one of the headmen of the Khalj tribe dwelling in and on the south-west border of Ghur. He was endowed with great valour, wisdom, and liberality, was of robust and powerful form, with immensely long arms-as described by our author. During the reign of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din he came to Ghaznin in search of service during those stirring times, and, subsequently, not obtaining employment such as he desired, he came into Hind, and proceeded to Lahor. There he did not get on with Kuth-ud-Din, it is said, so he proceeded farther eastward, and ioined the Malik-ul-Mu'azzam [the great Malik], Husam-ud-Din, Ughul-Bak [see note 2, page 516, para. 11], who held in fief a considerable tract of country in the Do-ab, and on the east side of the river Gang, independent of Kutb-ud-Din's authority. According to another author, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din conferred on Ughul-Bak the fortress of Kol and its dependencies, which is in the Do-ab. Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar was taken into that Malik's service. and, soon after, was despatched with some forces into Awadh [Compare Thomas, "PATHÁN KINGS OF DEHLÍ," page 110, who makes him "Sipahsálár of Oude" and note 7, page 558, farther on]; and, on several occasions. he gave proofs of his valour and prowess against his Hindu opponents.

After this, Husam-ud-Din, Ughui-Bak, conferred upon him the fiefs of PATITAH—427 [Lat. 25°, Long. 82° 54'], and KUNTILAH—427 [Lat. 25° 7',

Long. 82° 35'], the Kuntil of the Indian Atlas.

[From a similarity in the names, some comparatively modern Muḥammadan

from it, until he acquired ample resources in the shape of horses, arms, and men; and the fame of his alertness and bravery, and the booty [he had acquired], became noised abroad. Bodies of Akhlaj⁷, from different parts of Hindustān, turned their faces towards him; and his reputation reached Sulṭān [Malik] Kuṭb-ud-Din, who despatched a robe of distinction to him, and showed him honour. Having been honoured with such notice and favour, he led a force towards Bihār, and ravaged that territory.

He used to carry his depredations into those parts and that country until he organized an attack upon the fortified city of Bihār. Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that he advanced to the gateway of the fortress of Bihār

authors of Akbar's time, and some European translators and writers, have been led to suppose that these places referred to Patiali—Jex [Lat. 27° 41', Long. 79°, 40'], and Kanpilah [145], Lat. 27° 37!, Long. 79° 21', lying on the southern bank of the Ganges a few miles N.N.W. of Buda'tin, but no less than three degrees west, and about the same distance north, of the places referred to by our author above; whilst PATTAH and KUNTILAH are within a few miles of BHUGWAT and BHIŪLĪ, and situated in the same tract of country immediately west of the Karmah-nasah. They are equally convenient for Muner—a very old place at the confluence of the Soane [Son] with the Ganges, on the right bank of the former—and Bihār, as well as Awadh. The town of Patitah lies about five miles south of the fort of Chūnār-garh, and had a funpart and a fort when Chait Singh, the rebel Zamīndār of Banāras, garrisoned it in 1781; but it is not entered in the Indian Atlas, and may have since gone to comparative decay, I

Muḥanmad-i-Bakht-yar now began to carry his depredations into Bihār and Muner as well as into Awadh, on his own account, and acquired great booty. Hearing of his valour and prowess, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, sent him [from Lahor according to Buda'ūnf] a dress of honour of great value, for, at this period, Husām-ud-Din, Ughul-Bak, is no more mentioned.

It will be seen from tilese statements, as well as from the statement of our author, that Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār was never Sipah-Sālār in Awadh. The mistake appears to have arisen from his having entered the service of Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Ūghūl-Bak, who was a Sipah-Sālār and held the fief of Awadh, or by confounding Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār's name with that of the Sipah-Sālār, Hizabar-ud-Dīn, mentioned above by our author. See Thomas: "PATHÁN KINGS OF DEHIL!" Page 110.

7 This favour, on the part of Kutb-ud-Dîn, as well as Muhammadi-Bakht-yār's valour and generosity becoming noised abroad, bodies of Akhlāj from the Sulfār's forces in Hindūstān from all parts began to flock around him, and he became very powerful. He subdued the territory of Bihār, after making great slaughter among the infidels of that part, and booty to a vast amount fell into his hands. After these successes he presented himself before Kutb-ud-Dîn, who had, at that time, taken up his residence at Dihlîf, but he was not "Sulfān" Kutb-ud-Dîn, for his master was still alive and he himself was still a live.

with two hundred horsemen in defensive armour, and suddenly attacked the place. There were two brothers of Farghanah, men of learning, one Nizam-ud-Din, the other Samsām-ud-Din [by name], in the service of Muhammadi-Bakht-var: and the author of this book met with Samsām-ud Din at Lakhanawati in the year 641 H., and this account is from him. These two wise brothers were soldiers9 among that band of holy warriors when they reached the gateway of the fortress and began the attack, at which time Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar, by the force of his intrepidity, threw himself into the postern of the gateway of the place, and they captured the fortress, and acquired great booty. The greater number of the inhabitants of that place were Brahmans, and the whole of those Brahmans had their heads shaven; and they were all slain. There were a great number of books1 there; and, when all these books came under the observation of the Musalmans, they summoned a number of Hindus that they might give them information respecting the import of those books; but the whole of the Hindus had been killed2. On becoming acquainted [with the contents of those books], it was found that the whole of that fortress and city was a college, and in the Hindui tongue, they call a college [مدرسه] Bihār'.

When that victory was effected, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār returned with great booty, and came to the presence of the beneficent Sultān', Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, and received great honour and distinction. A party of Amīrs at the capital [Dihlī], through the noising abroad of Muham-

⁹ Jān-bāz, which does not mean "active." ¹ Books on the religion of the Hindūs,

3 In Persian words derived or borrowed from the Sanskrit the letter b is often substituted for Nagari 3-vv-thus, Bihar or Wihar, but there is no

e in the word : hence Behar is impossible.

 $^{^8}$ A few modern copies say, "he, Şamṣām-ud-Din, discovered the author," &c.

² The Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh, which quotes our author verbatim on most occasions, says they sent for a number of Hindlis, who made them acquainted with the contents of the books, and in them it was varitien that that fortress and city was called a college, but, correctly, a Budhist monastery.

⁴ He was not then Sultan, and his master, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, was still alive, and was assassinated thirteen years afterwords, and, some time even after that event, Malik Kulb-ud-Din received his mammission and the title of Sultan from the nephew of Mu'izz-ud-Din.

Our author does not mean that Kulb-ud-Din was Sultan at that very time.

He was not Sultan, in fact, during the lifetime of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar.

mad-i-Bakht-yar's praises, and, at beholding the honour

5 After having gained possession of Bihar, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar, taking along with him valuable presents, part of the spoils, proceeded to wait upon Malik Kuth-ud-Din, at this time the representative of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din in Hindustan. By the generality of authors he is said, more probably, to have gone to Dihli for the purpose; but, as previously stated in next to last para, of note 2, page 516, it was whilst Kutb-ud-Din was at Mahobah, in the Kälbi territory, in 500 H. - which should be 580 H. - after taking Kälmiar. that Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar presented himself, for it was in 589 H. that he moved from Bihar to invade Lakhanawati. See note 7, page 558. He was received with such distinction, and so many marks of favour were shown him, that the chiefs and ministers of Kutb-ud-Din's vice-regal court became filled with envy and hatred of Muhammad-i-Bakht-var, and they began to calumniate him to Kutb-ud-Din, and to report expressions of a scornful nature towards himself on the part of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar which he had never used. It happened, upon the occasion of Kuth-ud-Din's holding a public audience in the Kaşr-i-Safed [White Castle], that a rampant elephant was brought forward for inspection, and these envious persons began saving, in a disdainful and contemptuous manner, that there was no one who would venture to stand before that elephant, the like of which was not to be found in Hind. Kutb-ud-Din, in whose mind they had succeeded in creating an unfriendly feeling towards Muhammad-i-Bakht-var, proposed to him an encounter with the elephant. He agreed at once, and, with the mace he held in his hand, dealt it one blow, but that blow was so effectual that the elephant made off.

This anecdote is somewhat differently related by another writer, who says that these malignants stated to Kutb-ud-Dîn that Muḥammad i-Bakht-yār was desirous of encountering an elephant, and that Kutb-ud-Dîn had a white one, which was rampant, and so violent that the drivers were afraid of it, and which he directed should be brought on the course for Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār to encounter. He approached it near enough to deal it such a blow on the trunk

with his mace as at once put it to flight.

After his performing this feat, Kuth-ud-Din distinguished him with still greater favour. He conferred upon him a special dress of honour of great value and a large sum of money; and Mulhammad-i-Bakht-yār, having donned the robe, added money of his own to Kuth-ud-Din's gift, and distributed the whole among those present, and left the assembly with increased renown and honour. Kuth-ud-Din further distinguished him by giving him a standard and other insignia, and confirmed him, on the part of his master, the Sulfan, in the government of the tracts he had subdued, and such further conquests as he might make in the Lakhanpawaft territory; and Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār returned to Bilār.

Here is a rich specimen of the history taught at present, at least, in the University of Calcutta, as it is from the "History of India" by Mr. Marshman:—
"Kootub lost no time in despatching one of his states, Bukhttiyak Ghillift, who had risen to command, by his native genius, to conquer Behar. The capital was sacked, and the country subdued, and the army returned within two years to Delhi, bending beneath the weight of plunder. An attempt was soon after made to supplant Bukhtiyar in his master's favour, but it was defeated by the prowess he exhibited in a single combat with a LION, which his enemies at court had forced on him. This event established him still more firmly in the confidence of Kootub, who sent him, in 1203, to reduce Bengal."

Now, in the whole of this statement, there is not one atom of truth, and in no author. Muhammadan or Hindū, will such a statement be found.

he received, and the gifts bestowed upon him by Sulṭān Ķuṭb-ud-Dīn, became envious of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, and, at a convivial banquet, they treated him in a reproachful and supercilious manner, and were deriding him and uttering inuendoes; and matters reached such a pitch that he was directed to combat with an elephant at the Ķaṣr-i-Saſed [White Castle]. With one blow, which he dealt the elephant on the trunk with his mace 6, the elephant fled discomfited.

When Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār gained that distinction, Sultān Kutb-ud-Dīn ordered him a rich robe of honour from his own special wardrobe, and conferred considerable presents upon him. The Sultān [likewise] commanded the Amīrs to make him presents, and he received such a number of gifts as could not be contained within the limits of writing. Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār moreover, in that same assembly, dispersed the whole of those presents and bestowed them upon the people; and, with the special imperial ⁷ honorary robe, he departed, and set out towards Bihār.

Fear of him ⁸ operated exceedingly in the hearts of the unbelievers of the different parts of the territories of Lakhanawaṭi and Bihār, and the countries of Bang and Kāmrūd. Trustworthy persons have related after this manner, that the fame of the intrepidity, gallantry, and victories of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār had [also] reached Rāe Lakhmaṇāh ⁸, whose seat of government was the city of Nūdiah, and who was a very great Rāe, and had been on the throne for a period of eighty years.

At this place, an ANECDOTE respecting the circumstances of that Rae, which had been heard [by the writer], is here recorded; and it is this, that, when his father was

7 One of the robes probably which Kutb-ud-Din had himself received from his master, hence it is called a "Sultani" robe.

8 His intrepidity and valour.

⁶ See Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 306. Gwrz signifies a mace, not a "battle-axe." In some modern copies of the text the words "fled discomfited" are left out, and we have instead "Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar pursued the elephant:" no more.

⁹ Another writer styles him Rāe Lakhmiah [مراحية], intended, no doubt, for the Sanskrit लक्ष्मण son of Rāe Lakhman منافق المنافق

removed from this world, Rāe Lakhmanīah was in his mother's womb. The crown was placed on the belly of his mother, and all girded up their loins in her service. The Rāes of Hind used to hold their family in great importance, and were wont to consider them in the position of Khalifah' by descent.

When the birth of Lakhmaniah drew near, and the signs of giving birth became manifest to his mother, she assembled the astrologers together2, and they made observation whether the horoscope was auspicious. With one accord they represented: "If this child should be born at this hour, it will be unfortunate exceedingly, and will never attain unto sovereignty; but, if it should be born two hours subsequent to this time, it will reign for eighty years." When his mother heard this conclusion from the astrologers, she commanded that she should be suspended with her head downwards, with her two legs bound together; and the astrologers were placed in order that they might continue to observe the horoscope. When the time came. they agreed that the [auspicious] hour of birth was now arrived. She directed that she should be taken down, and forthwith Lakhmaniah was born 3. On reaching the ground, his mother, unable any longer to endure the agony of labour, died, and Lakhmaniah was placed upon the throne 4.

He reigned for a period of eighty years, and trustworthy persons have related to this effect, that, little or much, never did any tyranny proceed from his hand; and whose-ever preferred a request to him for anything, other than one lak [one hundred thousand] he did not bestow, after the manner of the beneficent Sultān, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, the Ḥātim of his time. It has been narrated on this wise, that,

¹ The words "Khalifah by descent" [عراف المراقب], here used by our author, and Peghwā, by others, plainly indicate that his family was looked upon in the light of heads or supreme leaders in spiritual, not temporal matters, and Rāe Lakhmanah, not as a "powerful monarch" and "lord paramount," for power of that kind he evidently did not possess. Compare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii: nage 307.

² There is not a word about "Brāhmans" in the best copies of the text.

⁴ His nobles, or rather the chief men of his kingdom—his late father's ministers probably—carried on the government until such time as Rāe Lakhmanfah was able to assume the direction of affairs.

as in that country, the kaurī [shell] is current in place of silver s, the least gift he used to bestow was a lak of kaurīs.

The Almighty mitigate his punishment [in hell]!

I now return to the history of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār. When he returned from the presence of Sultān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, and subdued Bihār^{*}, his fame had reached the hearing of Rāe Lakhmaṇāh, and the different parts of his dominions likewise. A number of astrologers, wise men, and counsellors of his kingdom presented themselves before the Rāe, and represented, saying: "In our books of the ancient Brāhmans they have foretold that this country will fall into the hands of the Turks⁷, and the time of its fulfilment has drawn near. The Turks have subjugated Bihār⁸, and next year they will surely come into this country. It is expedient for us that the Rāe should consent⁹ so that he, along with the whole people, should be removed from the country in order that we may be safe from the molestation of the Turks."

The Rāe replied, saying: "Is there any token given in your books with respect to this man who is to subdue our country?" They replied: "The indication of him is this, that, when he stands upright on his two feet, and lets down his two hands, his hands will reach beyond the point of his knees in such wise that the fingers will touch the calves of his legs!" The Rāe answered: "It is advisable that

Our author must mean when Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār returned from the presence of Malik Kuth-ud-Din, whither he had gone after he subdued Bihār, because he did not go to Kutb-ud-Din before, even by his own account. All the copies of the text, however, are as above.

⁷ But their predictions did not go so far as to foretell that the Calcutta

University "History of India" would turn the Turks into Ghalzī Afghāns.

"Have this year subjugated Bihār, and next year will come into this country," according to the Zubdat-ut-Tawārīgh.

Ompare Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 308, where this sentence is translated: "It was therefore advisable that the Ráé should make peace with them"! ماه المقال ا

1 Lit. "legs," i.e. the leg in its true sense, the part below the knee. In

"have been translated "shins."

In every copy of the text collated, with the exception of two, which have jilal, the word silver is used. In 1845 the rüpi was equivalent to 6500 kaufts, and a lak would be equal to a fraction over fifteen rüpis. In ancient times they may have been estimated at a higher rate, but a lak of kaufts could not have been a very desirable present to obtain, or a very convenient one. See note 2, page 583.

trustworthy persons should be despatched in order that they may, in a proper manner, investigate those peculiar characteristics." In accordance with the Rāe's command, they sent trustworthy persons, and they made investigation respecting this matter, and, in the external form and figure of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, those characteristics they found.

When they became assured of these peculiarities, most of the Brahmans and inhabitants of that place left, and retired into the province of Sankanāt 3, the cities and towns of Bang, and towards Kāmrūd; but to begin to abandon his country was not agreeable to Rae Lakhmaniah. The following year after that, Muhammad-i-Bakht-var caused a force to be prepared, pressed on from Bihar, and suddenly appeared before the city of Nūdiah', in such wise that no more than eighteen horsemen could keep up with him, and the other troops followed after him. On reaching the gate of the city, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar did not molest any one, and proceeded onwards steadily and sedately, in such manner that the people of the place imagined that mayhap his party were merchants and had brought horses for sale 5, and did not imagine that it was Muhammad-i-Bakht-var. until he reached the entrance to the palace of Rae Lakhmaniah, when he drew his sword, and commenced an onslaught on the unbelievers.

At this time Rāe Lakhmaniah was seated at the head of his table ', and dishes of gold and silver, full of victuals, were placed according to his accustomed routine, when a cry arose from the gateway of the Rāe's palace and the interior of the city. By the time he became certain what

² All but the two oldest copies have Sāhān [from साधु], which signifies merchants, shopkeepers, and the like—inoffensive people, not "chiefs."

³ In the best and oldest copies of the text, Sanknāt—widenis plainly written, with the exception of two, which have Saknāt—widenis Zubdat-ut-Tawātikh also has Saknāt; but other works, including the Tabakāti-Akbarī and the Tagkarat-ul-Mulik, say Jagnāth. The part meant by our author more probably refers to a province of eastern Bang.

⁻ The more modern copies of the text have - نودها one even has - نودها instead of نوديه and نوديه

⁵ The text varies in different copies here. It appears from the above remark, that traders were in the habit of bringing horses from Bihār into the Rāe's territory, and such is stated by some other more modern writers.

Not "at dinner" necessarily: it might have been the morning meal.

was the state of affairs, Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār had dashed forwards through the gateway into the palace, and had put several persons to the sword. The Rāe fled barefooted by the back part of his palace; and the whole of his treasures, his wives, and [other] females, his domestics and servants, his particular attendants, were taken, and the Musalmāns captured a number of elephants, and such a vast amount of booty fell to their lot, as cannot be recorded. When the whole of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār's army arrived, and the city and round about had been taken possession of, he there took up his quarters; and Rāe Lakhmaṇīah got away towards Sankanāt' and Bang, and there the period of his reign shortly afterwards came to a termination. His descendants, up to this time, are rulers in the country of Bang'.

⁷ The Räe, on hearing of the arrival of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, was dumbfounded. He fled alone and unattended, and succeeded in reaching a boat, and escaped. His boundless treasures, the accumulations of eighty years, fell into the possession of the Musalmāns; and a large portion of them, the greatest rarities, were transmitted to Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, for the Sulṭān.

According to Munshî Shîām Parshād, who wrote an account of Gaur [Gauqāh.—35] for Major William Franklin [In referring to this work I shall call it the Gaur MS.]. Rāc Lakhmanīah ruled from 510 to 590 H., which is correct. It was in the early part of the last-mentioned year that Muḥammadi-Bakht-yār took Nūdīah.

His rule extended over a period of twelve years, and he was assassinated in

the middle of the year 602 H.

Mr. Thomas, however, in his "Pathán Kings of Dehli," page 110, says Muḥammadi-lakkht-yār, whom he erroneously makes "Sipah sdidr" of Awadh, "in A.H. 599, pushed his forces southward, and expelled, with but little effort, the ancient Hindu dynasty of Nuddauh." Here is an error of ten yeurs: Muḥammadi-lakkht-yār moved from Bihār in 589 H., and in the following year took Nūdiah by surprise. Were 599 H. correct, his sway over Lakhaṇawaṭi would have been less than three years, as he was assassinated about the middle of 602 H. See note 2, page 516, para. next to last, and note 2, page 572.

8 Here, as previously, some copies have Saknāt, and the other authors, previously referred to, Jagnāth and Kāmrūd.

⁹ In some copies, the period of his *life*, &c.

The Rājah, it is said, escaped in a boat to Bikrām-pūr or Wikrām-pūr. We shall also find that Sunārgāmw, near Bikrām-pūr, continued to be a place of refuge for those who were discontented at Gaur, and was not finally reduced for a long time after the overthrow of Rāe Lakhmaṇiah, who had a son, Madhob Sen, who had a son, Sū Sen, who by Hindūis is considered the last ruler. Bikrām-pūr is about eight miles south-east, from Dhākah, and is said to have been the principal residence of Balāl Sen, the predecessor of Adisur, who preceded Lakhman Sen, the predecessor of our author's Lakhmaṇiah, but he sometimes resided at Gaur, which did not become the

After Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār possessed himself of that territory [Rāe Lakhmaniah's], he left the city of Nūdiah in desolation, and the place which is [now] Lakhaṇawaṭi he made the seat of government. He brought the different parts of that territory under his sway, and instituted therein, in every part, the reading of the khutbah, and the coining of money had, through his praiseworthy endea-

capital of Bangālah until immediately before the Muḥammadan conquest. Nūdīah was called Nobo-dwip. See "Account of Zila Dinajpur," Calcutta: 1823.

Wilford says the conquest of Bengal took place in 1207 a.D., which is equivalent to 603-604 H., the latter year having commenced 27th July, 1207 A.D.; and according to:this theory Bengal was conquered a year or more often its conqueror's death! Sulfan Me'ize.ud-Dîn was assassinated in Shabān 602 H. = March 1206 A.D., in which same year Muhammadi-Balth-yār died or was assassinated, and which, from 590 H. = 1194 A.D., is inst twelve years.

² The name of Rāe Lakhmanfah's capital was spelt Nūdīah until the time of Aurangzeb, when words ending in :—hā-i-mukhtafi—were ordered to be written with l—as Nudīa.

Muhammad-i-Bakht-vär destroyed Nüdiah, and, leaving it in desolation, passed onwards [Raugat-uş-Şafā says "he passed beyond the territory of the Rae"l, and, in place of that capital, founded another city for town at the place, according to the Tabakāt-i-Akbari, where Lakhanawati has been and which, at this time [reign of Akbar], they call Gaur. The Gaur MS. says he made the mouse' [place, village, district] of Lakhanawati, his capital, now twelve miles from the Gang. The Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā says "he founded a city as his capital in the territory of Lakhanawati." which signifies Gaur of Bangalah, "at the place where Lakhanawati was." Buda'uni says Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar "destroyed the idol temples of the infidels and erected masjids and other buildings, and built a capital in his own name [!] which is now called Gaur." Gaur or Gaudah was the name of a division of the present country or tract styled Bangalah as well as of its ancient capital, and its inhabitants were Gauriya or Gaudhiya. According to Abū-l-Fazl, the fort of Gaur was founded by Balal Sen, the second of the Sen dynasty, one of eight [in some copies, seven] kings who reigned 106 years, out of which Balal Sen reigned fifty years. According to the same author, the last of this dynasty was Rajah 'وجه [or وجه]. It would seem, from this, that the most ancient name of the city was Gaur, afterwards changed to Lakhanawati, and subsequently styled Gaur again. The emperor Humāyūn named it Bakht-ābād. Bangālah itself is sometimes styled Jannatul-Bilad. See note 6, page 584.

a There is not a word in the text about causing "his name to be read in the Khuthah and struck on the coins." See note ", page 572. According to the Zubdat-ut-Tawärikh he established "the Khuthah and money of Isläm," and its author copies our author almost verbatim. Other writers, on the contrary, state that, having brought all the surrounding territory under his sway after the capture of Nüdiah, he assumed a canopy of state, read the Khuthah for himself, and issued coin in his own name, which is not correct. He would naturally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän, Mu'zzu-d-Din, Mubarn attrally have issued coin in the name of the Sultän.

vours, and those of his Amīrs, *masjids*, colleges, and monasteries [for Darweshes], were founded in those parts. Of the booty and wealth [taken] he despatched a large portion to the presence of Sultān Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak.

After some years had passed away', and he had ascertained the state of the different mountain tracts of Turkistān and Tibbat to the eastward of Lakhanawati', the ambition of seizing the country of Turkistān and Tibbat began to torment his brain; and he had an army got ready, and about 10,000 horse were organized. In the different parts of those mountains which lie between Tibbat and the country of Lakhanawati are three races of people, one called the Kūnch', the second the Mej [Meg], and the third the Tihārū; and all have Turk countenances. They have a different idiom too, between the language of Hind and Turk'. One of the chiefs of the tribes of Kūnch and Mej, whom they were wont to call 'Alī, the Mej, fell into the hands of Muhammadi-Bakht-yār, the Khali, and, at his hand also, the former adopted the Muhammadan faith.

mad.i-Sām, to whom he appears to have been most loyal [see page 571]. He had no occasion whatever to issue money in the name of Malik Kutb-ud-Din, who was still a slave; and Muḥammad.i-Baḥht-yār only died the same year in which Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Din was himself assassinated. See Thomas: "PATHÁN KINGS OF DEHLI," page 110, and note 1, and Elliot: INDIA, vol. il, page 200.

⁴ This expedition must have been undertaken towards the close of the year for H. After Muḥammadi-lakht-yār had acquired great power and grandeur, he turned his thoughts to the acquirement of further territory in Tibbat and Turkistān without probably being aware of the distance to be traversed, and the difficulties to be surmounted. He set out with a force of about 12,000 horse according to the generality of accounts, but the Raupat-uş-Safā has "10,000 horse, and 90,000 foot!" which is certainly incorrect.

Tibbat was a well-known name in our author's time even, and yet HAMILTON in his "Description of Hindostan," vol. ii. page 566, makes the rash statement that it does not appear that the name *Tibet* is anywhere in general use to designate the province according to the European acceptation of the word! This may be true as to *Tibet*, for the country here referred to is written and called Tibbat.

The "Tharoo" [Tibārū] caste ,according to Buchanan, composes the greatest portion of the population that are dwellers in the plain of "Saptart," in Makwänpür adjoining the Mürang on the north-west; and the inhabitants of the Mürang to the east of Bijatpür [Wijayāpūr] are chiefiy Konch, and on the lower hills are many of the Megh, Mej, or Megh tribe.

Our author's ideas of east and west are rather obscure, as may be noticed at page 431. In this instance he means to the north and north-east.

In some copies the nasal n is left out-Kuch.

7 In some of the more modern copies of the text, "Hind and Tibbat,"

He agreed to conduct Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār into those hills, and act as guide; and he brought the latter to a place where there is a city, the name of which is Burdhan [kot]. They relate, after this manner, that, in ancient times, Shāh Gūshtāsib° returned from the country of Chīn, and came towards Kāmrūd, and, by that route, got into Hindūstān, and founded that city [Burdhan-kot]. A river flows in front of that place, of vast magnitude, the name of which is Beg-matī¹; and, when it enters the country of Hindūstān, they style it, in the Hindūi dialect, Samund² [ocean]; and, in magnitude, breadth, and depth, it is three times more than the river Gang.

To the banks of this river Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār came; and 'Alī, the Mej, joined the army of Islām; and, for a period of ten days, he took the army up the river among the mountains, until he brought it to a place where, from remote times, they had built a bridge of hewn stone, and consisting of upwards of twenty arches. After the army

³ The oldest and best copies generally have as above, but two add kot, and one copy gives the vowel points. The Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh also has Burdhan twice. The other copies collated have Murdhan and Murdhan-kot, and the printed text, in a note, has Durdhan [Wurdhan?] as well as Burdhan.

⁹ Some copies have Güshtäsib and some Garshäsib, and one has Güdarz. In the Îranian records Garshasib, son of Zau, is not mentioned as having had aught to do with Hind or Chin. The wars of Gushtasib with Arjasib, son of Afrasiyab, King of Turan, are narrated, but there is no mention of Güshtāsib's going into Tūrān or Chīn; but his son, Isfandiyār, according to the tradition, reduced the sovereign of Hind to submission, and also invaded Chin. In the account of the reign of Kai-Khusrau, Güdarz, with Rustam and Giw, invaded Turkistan to revenge a previous defeat sustained from Afrasivab who was aided on this occasion by the troops of Suklab and Chin, and Shankal, sovereign of Hind, was slain by the hand of Rustam. Our author, in another place, states that Gushtasib, who had gone into Chin by that route, returned into Hind by way of the city of Kamrud, and that up to the period of the invasion of Kamrud by Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Yuz-Bak-i-Tughril Khān, governor of Lakhanawati-some years after Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār's expedition-twelve hundred "hoards" of treasure, all still sealed as when left there by Güshtäsib, fell into the hands of the Musalmans!

¹ The name of this river in the best and oldest copies is as above, but some others, the next best copies, have Beg-hatf, Bak-matt, or Bag-matf, and others have Bang-matf, Mag-madf, and Nang-matf, or Nag-matf. Bag-matf is not an uncommon name for a river, and is applied to more than one. The river of Nfpall, which lower down is called the Grandhak, is called Bag-matf.

ع Samud or Samudr or Samudra, the ocean. One of the best copies of the text has "when it enters the ocean or sea [وريا] of Hindūstān," &c.

³ The reader cannot fail to notice that considerable discrepancy exists here in our author's statements respecting this river and bridge. From what he

of Islām passed over that bridge, he [Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār] installed there, at the head of the bridge, two of his

says about the size we are led to conclude that this river, Beg-mati or Bek-mati, must be the Brahmā-putt; but what part of it is the question to be solved. When he adds that it is more than three times broader and deeper than the Gang—and, of course, equally liable to inundation—the idea of its being spanned by a stone bridge of above twenty fi. e. between twenty and twenty-fivel arches, shows that the narrator, or his informant, must have grossly exaggerated. We may suppose our author's idea of the size of the Gang was derived from what he had seen of that river on his journey from Dihli to Lakhaṇawaft; but, if we only take its average breadth at Banāras during the height of the hot season, viz. 1500 feet, our author's river will be a mile or more in breadth; and, if we believe that this bridge consisted of even twenty-five arches, each of them would be above seventy yards in the span. Is this at all probable?

At page 561, our author says 'Ali, the Mej, brought them to a place where stood the town of Burdhan or Aburdhan-kot, in front of which flows the mighty river Beg-mati, which, on entering Hindustan, they call the Samund, but the great bridge is not mentioned in connexion with it. He then says that 'Ali, the Mei, joined the Musalman forces on the banks of this river, and then conducted them "up the river for a period of ten days' journey" [some 200 miles or more, even at the low computation of twenty miles a day for cavalry without incumbrance, would have brought them near to the Sanpü or upper part of the Brahma-putr in Tibbatl, and then, not before, they reached this great bridge, but no river is mentioned. At page 565, it is said that after passing this great river the forces pushed on for a further period of fifteen days 1200 or 250 miles, even allowing for the extra difficulty of the countryl when the open country of Tibbat was reached. Here it would appear that 'Ali, the Mej, joined them, beyond the territory of the Rajah of Kamrud, and the latter's message to Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, confirms it; but, farther on [page 569], this great bridge is said to be in [but probably adjoining] the Kämrüd territory, or words to that effect.

The boundaries of Kāmrūd are very loosely described by Musalmān authors, and they apply the name to all the country between the northern frontiers of Muhammadan Bangālah and the hills of Bhūtān, its southern boundary being

where the Lakhiyah river separates from the Brahmã-putr.

From the distinct mention of Többat and Turkinān, by others as well as by our author, together with other observations made by him, it is evident that Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār—and his forces—marched from Dīw-kot, or Dīb-kot, in Dīnjā-pūr district, the most important post on the northern frontier of his territory, keeping the country of the Rājah of Kāmrūd on his sight hand, and proceeding along the bank of the river Tīstah, through Sikhim, the tracts inhabited by the Kūnch, Mej, and Tīhārū, to Burdhan-kot. They were not in the territory of the Rājah of Kāmrūd, as his message shows; yet, when the retreat is mentioned, the Mūsalmāns were, invested in the idoletmple by his people, but no reference it made to this temple's being naw the bridge in the account of their advance. Pushing onwards from Burdhan-kot, which may have been situated on a viver, on the tenth day the Musalmāns reached the bank of the great river where was the bridge of stone "of above twenty arches." If the town of Burdhan or Aburdhan-kot wás situated on the farther side of the great bridge, it is strange Muḥammad, son of Rāḥth-yār.

own Amirs, one a Turk slave, and the other a Khalj, with troops, in order to guard it until his return. Then Muham-

did not occupy it, when he left a detachment behind to guard the bridge, and still more strange that, when he, on his retreat, reached the bridge and found two arches broken, he did not occupy that town, and compel its inhabitants to repair it or furnish him with all he required, and the means of crossing. If its gates had been closed against him, we can easily imagine why he would have had to take shelter in the great idol-temple, or that even with the town open to him, why he would prefer a strong post such as this was; but the town is never again mentioned by our author, although we might suppose this the place for obtaining boats or wood and other materials for rafts, and people to construct them. If the distance between this river and Diw-kot was only ten days' journey, it was not impossible to have obtained aid from thence. All the Muhammadan histories with which I am acquainted state that the Musalmans entered Tibbat. In my humble opinion, therefore, this great river here referred to is no other than the Tistah, which contains a vast body of water, and, in Sikhim, has a bed of some 800 yards in breadth, containing, at all seasons, a good deal of water, with a swift stream broken by stones and rapids. The territory of the Raes of Kamrud, in ancient times, extended as far east as this; and the fact of the Rae of Kamrud having promised Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar to precede the Musalman forces the following year, shows that the country indicated was to the north. The route taken by the Musalmans, therefore, was, I am inclined to think, much the same as that followed by Turner and Pemberton for part the way, and that the Musalman army then turned more to the east, in the direction taken by Pemberton, for it is plainly indicated by our author, at page 568, that the tract entered lay between Kamrud and Tirhut. The Sanpū, as the crow flies, is not more than 160 or 170 miles from Dinja-pūr, and it may have been reached; but it is rather doubtful perhaps, whether cavalry could reach that river from the frontier of Bengal in ten days.

In the Twentieth Volume of the Bengal Asiatic Journal, page 201, is a drawing by Dalton of the bridge of SIL HARO, described by Hannay. "It is situated," he says "on the high alley [one of Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz's causeways probably] which, no doubt, formed at one time the principal line of land communication with ancient Gowahatty (Pragjyotisha) in Western Kamrup [Kāmrūd]." He also considers that "it is not improbable that this is the stone bridge over which Bactyar Khilji [Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar] and his Tartar cavalry passed previous to entering the outworks of the ancient city of Gowahatty, the bridge being but a short distance from the line of hills bounding Gowahatty on the N.N.W. and W., on which are still visible its line of defences extending for many miles on each side from the N.W. gate of entrance or pass through the hills. The Mohammedan general is said to have been obliged to retreat from an advanced position (perhaps Chárdoár), hearing [?] that the Raja of Kamrup had dismantled the stone bridge in his rear : now it is quite evident from the marks on the stones of the platform, that they had been taken off and replaced somewhat irregularly."

The fact of the existence of this stone bridge is certainly curious, but I think it ulterly impossible that it can be the bridge our author refers to. In all probability it is one of the bridges connecting "the high alley" or causeway above referred to, and there must have been very many of a similar description at one time. It is but 140 feet long and 8 feet broad, and has no regular arches—this last fact, however, is not material, as the partitions or divisions might be so

mad-i-Bakht-yār, with the whole of the rest of his forces, passed over that bridge; and, when the Rāe of Kāmrūd became aware of the passage [over the bridge] by the conquering troops, he despatched trustworthy persons [saying]:—"It is not proper, at this time, to march into the country of Tibbat, and it is necessary to return, and to make ample preparations, when, in the coming year, I, who am the Rāe of Kāmrūd, agree that I will embody my own forces, and will precede the Muḥammadan troops, and will cause that territory to be acquired." Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār did not, in any way, accept this counsel, and he turned his face towards the mountains of Tibbat.

described by a person who had never seen the bridge—and consists of slabs of stone only 6 feet o inches long, and built, not over a mighty river three times broader and deeper than the Ganges, but across "what may have been a former bed of the Bar Nadi, or at one particular season a branch of the Brahnapautra, now indicating a well defined water-course through which, judging from the marks at the bridge, a considerable body of water must pass in the rains, and, at that season, from native accounts, the waters of the Brahnaputra still find access to it."

The chief reasons why the bridge of SIL HAKO could not have been that over which Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, crossed with his army may be

summed up as follow :--

I. Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār marched through the tract between Kāmrūd and Tirhut into Tibbat in a totally different direction to Gowāhatī, through defiles and passes over lofty mountains, while between Gaur, Dīw-kot, and Gowāhatī not a single pass or hill of any consequence is to be found.

II. In no place is it stated in this history, which is, I believe, the sole authority for the account of this expedition, that the Musalmans entered "the

outworks" of any city, much less those of Gowahati.

III. If the great river in question was the Brahmā-putr, and the small branch of it which the Sil Hāko bridge spanned were too deep to be crossed by the Musalmān cavalry, how could they have crossed the mighty Brahmā-putr itself? They would not have been able to do so even had this bridge been intact.

IV. Our author states, that, after passing the great river and bridge, they pushed on for fifteen days—some 200 or 300 miles at least—and that, from the farthest point they reached, the great city, garrisoned by Turks, was five leagues distant. This description will not suit the situation of Gowāhatī, which is

quite close to the Brahmā-putr.

V. The table-land of Tibbat is distinctly stated as the point reached, and it is subsequently mentioned that Changiz Khān wished to proceed from the vicinity of the Kābul river, through northern India, and get into China by the same route through Tibbat as Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, took, but Gowähatf would have led him much away from the part of China he wished to reach.

VI. The disaster which beful the Musalmans was owing, not only to two arches of the great bridge being destroyed, but to some of the horsemen of the force riding into the river and succeeding in fording it for the distance of a bow-shot,

One night, in the year 642 H.*, the author was sojourning, as a guest, at the dwelling of the Mu'tamad-ud-Daulah, a trusted vassal of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, at a place, in the territory of Lakhanawaṭi, between Diw-kot and Bekānwah¹, at which place his host was residing, and heard from him the whole of this account. He related on this wise, that, after passing that river, for a period of fifteen days, the troops wended their way, stages and journeys, through defiles and passes, ascending and descending among lofty mountains. On the sixteenth day the open country of Tibbat was reached. The whole of that tract was under cultivation, garnished with tribes of people and populous villages. They reached a place where there was a fort of

which alone would be at least as many yards as the bridge is fed broad, and even then they had gone but a small part of the distance; and rafts and floats were being constructed to enable the army to cross.

VII. We are not told that this disaster took place in the rainy season, and few would attempt an expedition into Agham at that period of the year. At all other times the water-course in question would have been fordable to cavalry.

VIII. And lastly, can any one imagine that two gaps of 6 feet 9 inches each—equal to 13 feet and 6 inches in all, would have deterred the Musalmän cavalry from crossing? The very bāmbūs, or brushwood, growing near would have enabled them to have, at once, repaired two such gaps, even if a tree or two could not have been found. A door from the idol temple would have been sufficient to have spanned the gap, of 13 feet 6 inches, or rather two gaps of 6 feet 9 inches, even if the materials which they had obtained to make rafts and floats had not been available for that putroses.

One reason why it might seem that Gowahatf is referred to is, the fact of there being a famous idol temple near it, or close to the Brahmā-putr; but there is no mention whatever that such was the case with regard to the great idol temple near the bridge and scene of Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār's disaster. Moreover, the city of Gowahati is close by the river, while the Musalmäns after reaching Burdhanfkof] marched upwards 10 days until the great bridge was reached, and their pushed on from this bridge for 15 days more before they reached the fort, which even then, was 5 leagues distant from the city of Karbattam—the march from Burdhanfkof] to the fort 5 leagues from Kar-battam occupying in all 26 days. Can any argument be more conclusive than this?

4 In a few copies 641 H. Mu'tamad-ud-Daulah is but a title. In ELLIOT, mstead of our author, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar, who had been dead forty years, is made to half at the place in question.

* The oldest copies have Bekänwah or Begänwah and one Bekäwän or Begäwän—as plainly written as it is possible to write, while two more modern copies have Satgäwn [Satgäwn]. The remainder have Bangāwn and Sagāwn. See Blochmann's "Contributions to the Geography and History of Bengal," note †, to page 9. It is somewhat remarkable that this place also should be confounded with Sätgäwn; but in the copies of the A'in-I-Arnari I have examined I find Baklännh—abC—instead of Baklä—bC—but this can scarcely be the place referred to by our author.

great strength, and the Musalmān army commenced plundering the country around. The people of that fort and town and the parts adjacent advanced to repel the Muhammadan army, and they came to a battle. From daybreak to the time of evening prayer a fierce encounter was carried on, and a great number of the Musalmān army were killed and wounded. The whole of the defensive arms of that host were of pieces of the spear bāmbū, namely, their cuirasses and body armour, shields and helmets, which were all slips of it, crudely fastened and stitched, overlapping [each other]; and all the people were Turks, archers, and [furnished with] long bows?

When night came, and the Musalman force encamped, a number [of the enemy], who had been made prisoners, were brought forward, and they [the Musalmans] made inquiry of them. They stated on this wise, that, five leagues' distance from that place, there was a city which they called

6 The text varies considerably here.

7 Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh says the Musalmans began to attack the fort.

The bambu referred to in the text is the male bambu-the young shoots, probably, used for spear shafts-for which the hollow bambu is not adapted. Had the spear bambu not been so plainly indicated in the text, we might suppose the armour to have been something after the manner of that worn by the Dufflahs. and to have been formed of sections of the kollow bambu laid overlapping each other as the rings of a coat of mail, but the male bambu could not be used in this manner, and, therefore, their armour, shields, &c., must have been of pieces of the male bambu overlapping each other, as in the literal translation above. An officer with the Dufflah expedition, writing on December 8, 1874. says: " Each man has over his forehead a top-knot of his own hair, and now and then a bit of bear's fur in addition. Through this he runs a skewer of metalsilver if he can afford it-and by means of the top-knot and skewer he fastens on his cane-work helmet, a sort of close-fitting skull-can worn on the back of the head. This helmet is usually ornamented with the upper portion of the hornbill's beak to save the head from sword cuts. Round his loins over the hips he wears a number of thin bambu or cane rings, unattached to one another." See also Dalton: ETHNOLOGY OF BENGAL, page 32.

Budā'unī says the people of this place were of the lineage [1] of Gushtäsib [Gurshäsib 1], and that the fortress had been founded by him. That author does not give his authority for this statement. Our author says, at page 561, that Güshtäsib founded Burdhan[kot]. The Khalj were a Turkish tribe certainly, but they had emigrated from northern Turkistän ages before this period.

Kar-battan [or Kar-pattan], or Karar-pattan], and [that] in that place would be about 50,000 valiant Turk horsemen, archers2; and that, immediately upon the arrival of the Musalman cavalry before the fort, messengers with a complaint had gone off to the city to give information, and that, at dawn next morning, those horsemen would arrive.

The author, when he was in the territory of Lakhanawati, made inquiry respecting that [before] mentioned city. It is a city of great size, and the whole of its walls are of hewn stone, and [its inhabitants] are an assemblage of Brahmans and Nūnis3, and that city is under the authority of their Mihtar [chief or lord], and they hold the pagan faith4; and every day, at daybreak, in the cattle-market5 of that city, about one thousand five hundred horses are sold: and all the tangahan6 horses which reach the Lakh-

1 The text varies considerably here, and great discrepancy exists with respect to the name of this important place. The oldest copy has was -Kar-battan, or pattan, but what seems the second , in this word may be ,-thus Karanpattan. All the other copies have حرم بتن Karam-battan or Karam-pattan. Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh has كرئس which might be read Karshin, or Karan-tan; and some other histories have - Karam-sin.

Bhati-ghun, the Banaras of the Gurkah dominions, and once a large place, in Makwanpur, in which part the inhabitants are chiefly Tiharus, was anciently called معرم يتر Dharam-pattan, and another place, once the principal city in the Nipal valley, and, like the former, in ancient times, the seat of an independent ruler, is named Lalitah-pattan, and lies near the Bag-madi river; but both these places are too far south and west for either to be the city here indicated, for Muhammad, son of Bakht-var, must have penetrated much farther to the north, as already noticed.

2 The best Paris copy-fondly imagined to be an "autograph" of our author's. but containing as many errors as the most modern copies generally, has 350,000! 3 In the oldest copies Nünfan, and in the more modern ones Tünfan.

One copy of the text however has "but-parastan" idol-worshippers.

4 The original is "din-i-tarsa-i." The word tarsa is very widely applied, to signify a Christian, also a worshipper of fire or gabr, a pagan, an infidel, and an unbeliever, and not to "any established religion" other than that of Islam. Here our author, I think, refers to Christians-Manichæans-the whole of Tartary and other northern parts of Asia contained a vast number of Christians. See Travels of Father Avril and others in Tartary. Christians are constantly referred to in the annals of the Mughals.

5 The word used is "nakhkhās," which signifies a seller of captives, cattle, or booty of any kind, and is used to signify a place where cattle and slaves are

bought and sold.

asp-i-tang bastah. Where اسب تنك بسته The printed text, and that only, has اسب تنك بسته the editor or editors got this from it would be difficult to conceive, but they could scarcely have intended to convey the meaning of horses brought down with saddles on their backs ready to be mounted. The words in the copies of anawaṭī country they bring from that place. The route by which they come is the Mahamhā-ī [or Mahamhā-ī] Darah' [Pass], and this road in that country is well known; for example, from the territory of Kāmrūd to that of Tirhut are thirty-five mountain passes, by which they bring the tangahan horses into the territory of Lakhanawatī.

In short, when Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār found out the nature of that tract—the Musalmān troops being fatigued and knocked up by the march, and a large number having been martyred and disabled on the first day—he held consultation with his Amirs. They came to the conclusion that it was necessary to retreat, in order that, next year, after making ample arrangements, they might return again into that country. When they retreated, throughout the whole route, not a blade of grass nor a stick of firewood remained, as they [the inhabitants] had set fire to the whole of it, and burnt it; and all the inhabitants of those defiles and passes had moved off from the line of route. During these fifteen days not a pound of food nor a blade of grass did the cattle and horses obtain ; and all

our author's text are -M.S.I $C_{ml} - asp-i$ langanah—they are still well known. Stewart, who had no printed text to go by, read the name pretty correctly—"Tanghan." Hamilton says these horses are called Tanyan or Tangun "from Tangusthan the general appellation of that assemblage of mountains which constitutes the territory of Bootan," &c. He must mean Tangistān, the region of tangs or defiles. Abū-l-Faṣl also mentions these horses in his Ā'in-l-Akṣaṣī—"In the lower parts [ubiq] of Bangālah near unto Kūṣ̄ [Kūch], a [species] of horse between the gut [gūnth] and the Turk [breed] is produced, called Tangahān," which is also written Tānganan, and gives the spelling of the word, but they are not born "ready saddled," Compare Elliott: India, vol. ii. page 311, and note 4, and see Dr. Blochmann's translation of the Ā'in.

7 Some copies—the more moderi—and the best Paris copy, leave out the

a Although the Musalmān troops were, at length, victorious, their victory cost them so many lives, and so many men were disabled, that, on hearing of a force of 50,000 valiant Turks being stationed so near at hand, Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, held counsel with his chiefs, and it was determined to retreat next day. Our author appears totally unable to tell the truth respecting a Musalmān reverse, even though such reverse may be far from dishonour, and may have been sustained under great difficulties or through their being greatly outnumbered.

The fifteen days which the retreat occupied he seems to mean, as the same route in going took that number of days. Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh says that the inhabitants also destroyed the roads—obstructed them, cut them up in some way.

¹ They must have brought some provisions and forage along with them, or

[the men] were killing their horses and eating them, until they issued from the mountains into the country of Kāmrūd, and reached the head of that bridge. They found two arches of the bridge destroyed², on this account, that enmity had arisen between both those Amīrs [left to guard it], and, in their discord, they had neglected to secure the bridge and protect the road, and had gone off³, and the Hindūs of the Kāmrūd country had come⁴ and destroyed the bridge.

On the arrival at that place of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār with his forces he found no way of crossing, and boats were not procurable. He was lost in surprise and bewilderment. They agreed that it was necessary to halt in some place, and contrive [about constructing] boats and floats, in order that they might be enabled to pass over the river. They pointed out an idol temple in the vicinity of that place [where they then were] of exceeding height, strength, and sublimity, and very handsome, and in it numerous idols both of gold and silver were deposited, and one great idol so [large] that its weight was by conjecture upwards of two or three thousand mans? of beaten gold. Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār and the remainder of his followers sought shelter within that idol-temple, and began to devise means for obtained some food, or must have eaten each other. Perhaps our author means

that many perished for want of sufficient food.

Two arches of any possible span—but not over seventy yards—would not have been such a difficult matter to repair, so near primeval forests, and with a town or city, as previously stated, close to the bridge. The town, however,

is not once mentioned on their return.

The Zubdat-L'Tawārīkh states that the two Amīrs, to spite each other, abandoned guarding the bridge, and each went his own way. Budā'ūnī says

they first fought, and afterwards abandoned the bridge.

⁴ This remark, and what follows at page 571 again, tends to show that the bridge in question was beyond the Kāmrūd territory, although, a line or two before, it is stated that they came into Kāmrūd and reached the head of the bridge. See also page 561 and note³.

5 Where was 'Alf, the Mej, all this time? He is not again mentioned; but his kinsmen are; and the country people are not even referred to, although

the Hindus of Kamrud are, see page 571.

O Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh says "necessary to occupy some place until boats and floats could be constructed."

7 The more modern copies have miskals.

⁸ According to other authors, when the Musalmäns reached the bridge, they were filled with amazement and horror at finding two of its arches broken. The two Amirs, who had been left to guard it, had not been on good terms for some time prior to being stationed there; and, as soon as their

obtaining wood and rope for the construction of rafts and crossing the river, in such wise that the Rae of Kamrūd became aware of the reverses and helplessness of the Musalman army. He issued commands to the whole of the Hindus of the country, so that they came pouring in in crowds, and round about the idol-temple were planting spiked bambus in the ground, and were weaving them together, so that it [their work] was appearing like unto walls9.

When the Musalman troops beheld that state of affairs, they represented to Muhammad-i-Bakht-var. [saving]:-"If we remain like this, we shall all have fallen into the trap of these infidels: it behoveth to adopt some means chief had left, their hostility broke out afresh, and such was their enmity that, rather than not prosecute their own designs against each other, they abandoned After they had departed, the Rae of Kamrud, on becoming aware of it, sent his men, and destroyed the two arches. It is strange the names of these two Amirs are not given by our author, as his informant, previously mentioned,

must have known who they were.

Finding the bridge thus impassable, Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar determined to occupy some strong place until such time as materials could be obtained to enable them to effect the passage of the river. Here also we might expect to hear something of the town and its people, but, as I have mentioned in note 3, page 561, it is doubtful whether our author meant it to be understood that Burdhan-kot was on the banks of the Bag-madi river, where this bridge was.

Spies brought information that there was an immense and exceedingly strong idol-temple near by, and that was occupied by the Musalmans accordingly. Another writer states that they were ignorant, when they advanced,

of the existence of this temple.

Buda'uni states that the Musalmans only passed the night in the idoltemple, but this statement is absurd. Where were materials to be obtained

from, during the night, to make rafts?

9 Tishū Lāmbū or Digārchah, the seat of a Lāma in Lat. 29° 7' N., Long. 80° 2' E., a great monastery only 180 miles from Rang-pür of Bengal [said to have been founded by Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar], answers nearly to the description of the idol-temple referred to, but it is on the southern not the northern bank of the Sanpu river, and a few miles distant, and our author says it was a Hindū temple. Perhaps, in his ideas, Hindūs and Buddhists were much the same. From this point are roads leading into Bhūtān and Bengal.

As soon as the Rae of Kamrud became aware of the helpless state of the Musalmans, and that they had sought shelter in the great idol temple. he gave orders for his people to assemble. They came in hosts, and began to form a stockade all round it, by planting, at a certain distance, not their "bamboo spears" as in Elliot [INDIA, vol ii. page 317], but bāmbūs spiked at both ends [the mode of making stockades in that country], and afterwards woven strongly together, which forms a strong defence. Ralph Fitch says, respecting Kuch "all the country is set with bamboos or canes made sharp at both ends and stuck into the earth," &c.

whereby to effect extrication." With one accord they made a rush, and all at once issued from the idol-temple, attacked one point [in the stockade], and made a way for themselves, and reached the open plain, and the Hindus after them1. When they reached the river bank the Musalmans halted2, and each one, to the best of his ability, sought means of crossing over. Suddenly some few of the soldiers urged their horses into the river, and, for the distance of about an arrow flight, the water was fordable. A cry arose in the force that they had found a ford, and the whole threw themselves into the water, and the Hindus following them occupied the river's bank. When the Musalmans reached mid-stream. [where] was deep water, they all perished, [with the exception of] Muhammad-i-Bakhtyar, who, with a few horsemen, a hundred more or less, succeeded, by great artifice, in effecting the passage of the river: and all the rest were drowned.

After Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār emerged from the water, information reached a body of the Kūnch and Mej. The guide, 'Alī, the Mej, had kinsmen at the passage, and they

¹ Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, seeing through the object of the Hindix, issued from the idol-temple at the head of his troops, and, with considerable difficulty, made a road for himself and followers. Having done this, he took up a position and halted on the bank of the river Bag-madf. Here he appears to have remained some days, while efforts were then made to construct rafts, the Hindix not venturing to attack them in the open.

² This is related differently by others. The Musalmans were occupied in crossing, it is said, or, perhaps, more correctly, about to make the attempt with such means as they had procured, when a trooper [some say, a few troopers] rode his horse into the river to try the depth probably, and he succeeded in fording it for the distance of a bow-shot. Seeing this, the troops imagined that the river, after all, was fordable, and, anxious to escape the privations they had endured, and the danger they were in, as with the means at hand great time would have been occupied in crossing, without more ado, rushed in; but, as the greater part of the river was unfordable, they were carried out of their depth, and were drowned.

After his troops had been overwhelmed in the Bag-madl or Bak-matl, Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, with the few followers remaining with him, by means of what they had prepared [a raft or two probably], succeeded, with considerable difficulty, in reaching the opposite bank in safety, and, ultimately reached Div-Mot again. Apparently, this river was close to the Mej frontier.

Budā'unf states that those who remained behind [on the river bank] fell martyrs to the infidels; and, that of the whole of that army but 300 or 400 reached D'w.lot. He does not give his authority however, and generally copies verbatim from the work of his patron—the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī—but such is not stated therein.

³ In some copies of the text, "one of the soldiers."

came forward to receive him [Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar], and rendered him great succour until he reached Diw-kot.

Through excessive grief sickness now overcame him, and mostly out of shame at the women and children of those of the Khali who had perished; and whenever he rode forth all the people, from the house-tops and the streets, [consisting] of women and children, would wail and utter imprecations against him and revile him, so that from henceforth he did not ride forth again 4. During that adversity he would be constantly saying: "Can any calamity have befallen the Sultan-i-Ghazi that my good fortune hath deserted me "!" and such was the case, for at that time the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, had aftained martyrdom. In that state of anguish Muhammadi-Bakht-yar became ill, and took to his bed, and died.

Some have related that there was an Amir of his. 'Ali i-Mardan, a Khali of great intrepidity and temerity, to whose charge the fief of Nāran-go-e [or Nāran-ko-e7] was made over. When he obtained information of this disaster he came to Diw-kot, and Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar was confined to his bed through sickness, and three days had passed since any person was able to see him 8. 'Ali-i-Mardan in some way went in unto him, drew the sheet

sense of the disaster he had brought about resulted in hopeless melancholy. 5 This was certainly just about the time of that Sultan's assassination. 6 Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh has "one of the great Amirs," &c. The izafut, in 'Ali-i-Mardan, signifies 'Ali, son of Mardan. See page 576.

8 Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh says "no one used to go near him "-the way of the

world to desert one in misfortune.

⁴ Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh says "by the time he reached Diw-kot, through excessive grief and vexation, illness overcame him; and, whenever he rode forth, the women of those Khali who had perished stood on the house-tops and reviled him as he passed. This dishonour and reproach added to his illness," &c. Rauzat-us-Safā says his mind gave way under his misfortunes, and the

⁷ The name of this fief or district is mentioned twice or three times, and the three oldest copies, and one of the best copies next in age, and the most perfect of all the MSS., have ناريكوني as above in all cases; and one - the best Petersburg copy-has a jazm over the last letter in addition, but all four have the hamzah. The Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh also has ارتكوى Naran-goe or Narankoe. The next best copies of the text have ناركوتي—in which, in all probability, the has been mistaken for The I. O. L. MS. 1952, the R. A. S. MS., and the printed text, have دياركوني whilst the best Paris copy has this latter word, in one place, and ناركوتي in other places; and another copy has In Ellior, vol. ii. page 314, it is turned into "Kunf" in one place, and, sixteen lines under, into "Narkotí."

from his face, and with a dagger assassinated him. These events and calamities happened in the year 602 H.9

VI. MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DIN, MUḤAMMAD, SON OF <u>SH</u>ERĀN', <u>KH</u>ALJĪ, IN LAKHAŅAWAŢĪ.

Trustworthy persons have related after this manner, that Muḥammad-i-Sherān and Aḥmad-i-Sherān were two brothers, two among the Khalj Amīrs in the service of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār; and, when the latter led his troops towards the mountains of Kāmrūd and Tibbat, he [Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār] had despatched Muḥammad-i-Sherān, and his brother, with a portion of his forces, towards Lakhaṇ-or and Jāj-nagar² When the news of these events [related above] reached Muḥammad-i-Sherān, he came

⁹ This date shows that the territory of Lakhanawati was taken possession of in 590 H., the year in which Malik Kutb-ud-Din, I-buk, took up his quarters at Dihli. The conquest of Lakhanawati is accounted among the victories of Suljān Mu'izz-ud-Din, because it took place in his reign. Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, was at this time still a slave, and neither attained his manumission nor the title of Suljān until some time after the death of Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār. See note 7, page 558.

Some authors consider him an independent sovereign, and say that he "reigned" for twelve years. He certainly ruled in pussi independence for that period; but, from the expressions made use of by him in his last sickness, he evidently was loyal to Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, ī-bak, as the Sultān's Deputy at Dihli. It is not to be wondered at that Muḥammad, son of Bakhi-yār, neither issued coin in his own name, nor in the name of his sovereign's slave: whilst that sovereign was alive—the latter would have been an impossible act. See Thomas, Pathan Kinos, note', page 111; and note \$\frac{3}{2}\$ page 525.

i Also styled, by some other authors, Sher-wan. Sher-an, the plural of sher, lion, tiger, like Mard-an, the plural of mard, man, is intended to express the superlative degree. The izāfat here—Muḥammad-i-Sherān—signifies son of Sherān, as proved beyond a doubt by what follows, as two brothers would not be so entitled.

² Compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 314. The Paris copy of the text, the I. O. L. MS., the R. A. S. MS., and the printed text, have "to Lakhanawati and Jāj-nagar," but the rest have Lakhan-or or Lakh-or, and Jāj-nagar. No doubt Lakhan-or is meant in the copies first mentioned, and probably "substituted for, by ignorant copyists.

Some writers state that Muḥammad-i-Sherān was "Hākim of Jāj-nagar" on the part of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, but such cannot be. Jāj-nagar was an independent Hindū territory [see note 4, page 587]; but most authors agree with ours that Muḥammad-i-Sherān was despatched against—or probably to hold in check—Jāj-nagar during Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār's absence on the expedition into Tibbat; and he was, doubtless, feudatory of Lakhan or [see note 5, page 584], which hay in the direction of the Jāj-nagar territory.

back from that quarter, and returned again to Diw-kot, performed the mourning ceremonies [for Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār], and from thence [Diw-kot] proceeded towards Nāran-go-e³, which was 'Alī-i-Mardān's fief, seized 'Alī-i-Mardān, and, in retaliation for the act he had committed, imprisoned him, and made him over to the charge of the Kot-wāl [Seneschal] of that place, whose name was Bābā¹, Kot-wāl, the Ṣaſahāni [Iṣſahāni]. He then returned to Diw-kot again, and assembled the Amīrs together.

This Muhammad-i-Sherān was a man of great intrepidity and energy, and of exemplary conduct and qualities6; and, at the time when Muhammad-i-Bakht-var sacked the city of Nūdiah, and Rāe Lakhmaniah took to flight, and his followers, servants, and elephants became scattered, and the Musalman forces proceeded in pursuit of spoil, this Muhammad-i-Sherān, for the space of three days, was absent from the army, so that all the Amirs became anxious on his account. After three days they brought information that Muhammad-i-Sherān had taken eighteen elephants along with their drivers in a certain jangal [forest], and was retaining them there, and that he was alone. Horsemen were told off, and the whole of these elephants were brought before Muhammad-i-Bakht-yar. In fact, Muhammad-i-Sherān was a man of energy [combined] with sagacity7.

4 Familiarly so styled perhaps.

The Jahn-Ara, which does not mention 'Ala, son of Mardan, at all, calls Muhammad-i-Sheran bloodthirsty, and greatly wanting in understanding, thus

confounding him with 'Ali-i-Mardan,

7 Muhammad, son of Sherān, was an intrepid, high-minded, and energetic man, and, being the chief of the Khalj Amirs, on their return to Diw-kol, the

³ Other writers state that Muḥammad-i-Sherān, on hearing of the fate of their chief, Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, returned at once from Jāj-nagar [from Jāj-nagar varavīs Lakhap-or] with his force, proceeded to Dīw-kot, and performed the funeral ceremonies; and then marched from Dīw-kot to Bār-sāl—كار-كان-and secured the assassin, 'Alī-i-Mardān, and threw him into prison. After performing this act, he returned to Dīw-kot gain. See note?, next page. In Ellior this is turned into "they returned from their stations, and came dutifully to Deokot;" but 'p ½ as in the printed text, does not mean "dutifully," but "mourning ceremonies."

⁸ He had managed to take these elephants and their drivers on the day of the surprise of Nūdiāh, but, being quite alone, he was unable to secure them, and had to remain to guard them until such time as aid should reach him. Information of his whereabouts having reached Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, he sent out a detachment of horse to bring him in with his spoil.

When he imprisoned 'Alī-i-Mardān, and again departed [from Dīw-kot], being the head of the Khalj Amīrs, they all paid him homage*, and each Amīr continued in his own fef. 'Alī-i-Mardān, however, adopted some means and entered into a compact with the Koṭ-wāl [before mentioned], got out of prison, and went off to the Court of Dihli*. He preferred a petition to Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, that Kāe-māz, the Rūmī¹ [native of Rūmīliā], should be commanded to proceed from Awadh towards the territory of Lakhaṇawatɨ, and, in conformity with that command, [suitably] locate the Khalj Amīrs.

Malik Ḥusām-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, at the hand of Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, was the feudatory of Gangūrī [or Kankūrī?]', and he went forth to receive Kāe-māz the

principal Amīrs were assembled in council together, and they chose Muhammadi-Sherān as their ruler and sovereign; and they continued to pay homage to him. It seems strange that the city of Lakhanwaṭi is seldom mentioned, while Dīw-koṭ is constantly referred to by various authors; and, from what our author himself says at page 578, it would appear to have been the capital at this period.

8 Some copies have "they all paid him homage," &c., and, after the word fief, insert "until."

9 'Alf.i-Mardān managed to gain over the Kot-wāl, and was allowed to escape. He succeeded in reaching Dihf, and presented himself before [the then] Sultān Kuṭb-uḍ-Dīn, I-bak, who received the ingrate and assassin with favour. Both our author and other writers, in mentioning his escape in their account of Muḥammad-i-Sherān's reigo, make it appear that 'Alf, son of Mardin, at once succeeded in inciting Kuṭb-uḍ-Din, I-bak, against Muḥammad-i-Sherān, and inducing him to despatch Kāc-māz to Lakhaṇawafi; but this is not correct. 'Alf, son of Mardān, accompanied Kuṭb-uḍ-Din to Qhaznin [where he reigned—in riot—forty days], and was taken captive by the troops of I-yal-dūz, and released or escaped again before these events happened, as will be mentioned father on.

¹ The text differs here. Some copies have: "So that Kāe-māz, the Rūmi, received orders, on which he proceeded from Awadh to Lakhanawati," but the majority are as above. The Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh, however, clears up the meaning of the last clause of the sentence:—"That he, Kāe-māz, should proceed into Lakhanawati, in order that each of the Khaji Amīrs, who were in that part, might be located in a suitable place, and to make certain districts their fiels." That work, however, immediately after, states that the Khaji Amīrs, having shown hostility towards him [Kāe-māz], opposed him in battle, and were defeated, and that, in that engagement, Muḥammad, son of Sherān, was slam. Comoare Ellior, too, here.

2 of the four best and oldest copies of the text, two have Gangirf or Kan-kirf — مريد المدين المدي

Rūmi, and, along with him, proceeded to Diw-kot; and, at the suggestion of Ķāe-māz, the Rūmi, he became the feoffee of Diw-kot. Ķāe-māz, the Rūmi, set out on his return [into Awadh], and Muḥammad-i-Sherān, and other Khalj Amirs, assembled together, and determined upon marching to Diw-kot. Kāe-māz, whilst on his way back [hearing of this], returned again, and an encounter took place between the Khalj Amirs and him, and Muḥammad-i-Sherān and the Khalj Amirs were defeated. Subsequently, disagreement arose among themselves, in the direction of Maksadah and Santūs', and Muḥammad-i-Sherān was slain's; and there his tomb is.

VII. MALIK 'ALÂ-UD-DÏN, 'ALĪ, SON OF MARDĀN, KHALJĪ.

'Alf-i-Mardan', the <u>Kh</u>alj, was a man of vast energy, vehement, intrepid, and daring. Having obtained release

of Kalwā-ī or Galwā-ī ما كاواني—or Kalwā-īn or Galwā-īn—خاواني—the n of the latter word is probably nasal.

3 No sooner had Kāe-māz turned his back upon the scene than Muḥammad, son of Sherān, and the rest of the Khalj Amirs, determined to recover Diwkot out of the hands of Husăm-ud-Dh, 'Iwag.

only. حدوس The Tabakāt-i-Akbari has مكده

5 The Gam MS. says he was killed in action after a reign of eight months, and, in this latter statement, the Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh and some other works agree; but the period seems much too short from the assassination of Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, to his death for reasons mentioned in the following note, or the country must have remained some time without a ruler before Alti-Mardia succeeded. Raugat-ug-Safā makes a grand mistake here. It says that Muhammad-i-Sherān, after having ruled for a short period, became involved in hostilities with a Hindū ruler in that part, and was killed in one of the conflicts which took place between them.

6 'Alf.i-Mardān, that is to say, 'Alf., the son of Mardān, was energetic and impetuous; but he was not endowed with sense or judgment, and was noturious for boldness and audacity, for self-importance, haughtiness, excessive vanity and gaseomade, and was cruel and sanguinary. After he escaped from confinement for assassinating his benefactor, Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, when lying helpless on his death-bed, he proceeded to Dihlî and presented himself before Kufb-ud-Din, İ-bak, who, at that time, had acquired the sovereignty of Dihlî, and was well received. He accompanied Kuṭb ud-Din to Qihaznin at the time that he filled the throne of Qhaznin, as our author says, "for a period of forty days," in carousal and debauchery. There 'Alf'

from imprisonment at Nāran-go-e [or Nāran-ko-e], he came to the presence of Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and accompanied him towards Ghaznīn; and he became a captive in the hands of the Turks of Ghaznīn. A chronicler has related in this manner, that one day, when he was out hunting along with Sulṭān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, he began saying to one of the Khalj Amīrs, whom they used to style Sālār [a leader, chief] Zaffir*: "What sayest thou if, with one arrow, I should slay Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, within this shikār-gāh [chase] and make thee a sovereign?" The Sālār, Zaffir, the Khalj, was a very sagacious person, and he was shocked at this speech, and prohibited him from

fell a captive into the hands of the Turks of Ghaznin, the partizans of Sultan Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, at the time of Kuth-ud-Dīn's precipitate retreat probably. Some authors, however, state, and among them the authors of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, and Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh, that in one of the conflicts of that time he was taken prisoner by the Turks-Tabakat-i-Akbari says, the Turk-mans-and was carried off into Kashghar, where he remained for some time. He, at length, managed to reach Hindustan again, and proceeded to Dihli, and presented himself at the Court of Kuth-ud-Din, who received him with great favour and distinction. The fact of his having been a captive in the hands of his rival's-I-val-duz's-partizans was enough to insure him a favourable reception. Kuth-ud-Din conferred upon him the territory of Lakhanawati in fief, and he proceeded thither and assumed the government. It must have been just prior to this, and not immediately after the escape of 'Ali-i-Mardan, that Kae-maz was sent from Awadh to Lakhanawati, or, otherwise, between the defeat of Muhammad, son of Sheran, by the latter, and Sherān's death, and the nomination of 'Ali-i-Mardan by Kutb-ud-Din, Lakhanawati would have been without a ruler during the time that Kuth-ud-Din took to proceed from Dihli to Ghaznin, where he remained forty days, and back to Dihli again, and cight months, which is said to have been the extent of Muhammad-i-Sherān's reign, seems much too short a space of time for this expedition, and 'Ali-i-Mardan's captivity in Kashghar and his escape and return. The accounts of this period are not satisfactorily given in any work. [See page 526, and para. two of note 8 for the year in which Kutb-ud-Din had to make such a precipitous retreat from Ghaznin]; and, moreover, it appears that Kuth-ud-Din did not return to Dihli again, but continued at Lahor up to the time of his death.

⁷ Here is another specimen of difference of idiom, though not so great as in some places, occurring in different copies of the text. This sentence is thus expressed in one set of copies: مراوی جنس روایت اس another ارای خود اس درایت کرد. است ام another ارایت کرد. است کرد ا

of the Salār, Zafār Inot Zafār, which signifies victory), why not translate the name of Husām-ud-Dīn, l'awa, in fact, all the 'Arabic names in the book? It does not follow that this person was a "victorious general," but he was a chief whose name was ZaPrīs, signifying, in 'Arabic, overcoming all difficulties, successful, triumphant, victorious, &c.

[the committal of] such a deed. When 'Ali-i-Mardan returned from thence, the Sālār, Zaffir, presented him with two horses and sent him away".

When 'Ali-i-Mardan came back again into Hindustan, he presented himself before Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, and received an honorary robe, and was treated with great favour, and the territory of Lakhanawati was assigned to him. He proceeded towards Lakhanawati, and, when he passed the river Kons', Husam-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, [feudatory] of Diw-kot, went forth to receive him, and 'Ali-i-Mardan proceeded to Diw-kot' and assumed the government, and brought the whole of the country of Lakhanawati under his swav.

When Sultan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, passed to the Almighty's mercy, 'Ali-i-Mardan assumed a canopy of state, and read the Khutbah in his own names; and they styled him by the title of Sultan Ala-ud-Din. He was a bloodthirsty and sanguinary man. He sent armies in different directions, and put the greater number of the Khali Amirs to death. The Raes of the adjacent parts became awed of him, and sent him wealth and tribute. He began granting investitures of different parts of the realm of Hindustan, and the [most] futile bombast began to escape his lips, Both in the assembly, and in the audience-hall, he would declaim about the country of Khurāsān, of 'Irāk, of Ghaznin, and of Ghūr, and idle nonsense he began to give tongue to, to such degree, that they used [in jest] to solicit from him grants of investiture of Ghaznin and of Khurāsān.

⁹ Another writer relates this somewhat differently. He says that 'Alf-i-Mardan, one day, accompanied the suite of Sultan, Taj-ud-Din, I-yal-duz, when he went to the chase-but this is scarcely compatible with his being a captive-on which occasion he said to the Salar Zaffir: "What sayest thou to my finishing the career of the Sultan with one thrust of a spear, and making thee a sovereign?" Zaffir, however, was a man of prudence and integrity, and had no ambition of gaining a throne by assassinating his benefactor. He therefore gave him a couple of horses and dismissed him, and he returned to Hindűstän.

¹ In some copies Kons as above, and in others Kos. without the nasal n. Some other writers call this river the Konsi and Kosi. In some copies "from Diw-kot." Husam-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, appears to

have been a kind of Vicar of Bray, from what is stated previously, and here. 3 He also coined in his own name, according to the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and Budā'ūnt.

and he would issue commands accordingly [as though they were his own]4.

Trustworthy persons have narrated after this manner, that there was, in that territory [Lakhaṇawati], a merchant who had become indigent, and his estate was dissipated. He solicited from 'Alt-i-Mardān some favour. 'Alt-i-Mardān inquired [from those around]: "From whence is that man?" They replied: "From Ṣafahān [Iṣfahān]." He commanded, saying "Write out the investiture" of Ṣafahān as his fief," and no one could dare, on account of his great ferocity and unscrupulousness, to say: "Ṣafahān is not in our possession." Whatever investitures he conferred in this way, if they would represent: "It is not under our control," he would reply: "I will reduce it."

So that investiture was ordered to be given to the merchant of Safahān—that indigent wretch, who lacked even a morsel and a garment of rags. The chief personages and intelligent men, there present, in behalf of that destitute man, represented, saying: "The feudatory of Safahān is in want of resources for the expenses of the road, and for the preparation of equipage, to enable him to take possession of that city and territory;" and he ['Alī-i-Mardān] commanded a large sum of money to be given to that person for his necessary expenses. The nature of 'Alī-i-Mardān's presumption, cruelty, and hypocrisy

⁴ Our author's mode of relation is not over plain. "His vanity and bombast," says another writer, "was such that he fancied Iria and Turān belonged to him, and he began to assign their different kingdoms and provinces amongst his Amirs." The fact is that he was mad; and it is somewhat remarkable that a subsequent Sulfain of Dihli, who was mad after the same fashion, should also have been of the Khalj tribe. Compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 316. The author of the Gaur MS. in his innocency, says that after his [Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak's] death, for two years and some months, the sway of this same 'Alā-ud-din was achumoleged as far as Khurāsān and Iṣfahān, &c.!!! Where Lakhanawaṭi' where Khurāsān and Iṣfahān,

^{*} The word used in the text is migal [] : such a term as "jágir" is not used once in the whole work, because it is a comparatively modern term.

⁶ Our author relates this anecdote differently from others. The destitute merchant, who wanted something that would furnish him with food and raiment, refused to accept the investiture of Işfahān; and the Wazīrs, who out of terror of 'Alfi were afraid to tell him so, represented that the Hākim of Işfahān was in want of funds for the expenses of his journey thither, and to enable him to assemble troops in order to secure possession of his fief. This had the desired effect.

amounted to this degree; and, together with such conduct, he was [moreover] a tyrant and a homicide. The weak and indigent [people] and his own followers were reduced to a [perfect] state of misery through his oppression, tyranny, and bloodthirstiness; and they found no other means of escape save in rising against him. A party of the Khalj Amirs conspired together, and slew 'Alī-i-Mardān, and placed Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, upon the throne.

The reign of 'Ali-i-Mardān was two years, or more or less than that'.

VIII.—MALIK [SULŢĀN] ḤUSĀM-UD-DĪN, 'IWAZ®, SON OF ḤUSAIN, <u>KH</u>ALJÏ.

Malik [Sultān] Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, was a man of exemplary disposition, and came of the Khalj of Garmsīr of Ghūr.

They have narrated on this wise, that, upon a certain occasion, he was conducting a laden ass towards the eminence which they call Pushtah Afroz[®] [the Burning Mound],

7 Two years and some months was the extent of his reign, but most authors say two years. I do not know whether all the copies of Budā'un's work are alike, but in two copies now before me he says plainly, that 'Ali-i-Mardain reigned two and thirty years. Perhaps he meant two or three years, but it is not usual to write three before two in such cases. The Gaur MS. states that he reigned from the beginning of the year 604 H. to 605 H., and yet says that Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, died in his reign 1

s Compare Thomas, "PATHAN KINGS OF DERLL," pages 8 and 112, and Elliot, INDIA, vol. ii., page 317. The Arabic word 'Iwaş [2-y²] Ameaning, but "'Auz" and "'Auz" none whatever. One or two other authors state that he was the son of 'Iwaş ; but this is doubtful: there is no doubt, however, of his father's name being Ḥusain. His correct title is Shighiyā; ul-Dfn. Malik Ḥusām-ul-Dfn was his name before he was raised to

the sovereignty.

⁹ Two of the oldest copies of the text, and some of the more modern ones, are as above, and some other works confirm this reading; but one of the oldest and best copies, and the Zubdat-ut-Tawāritkh, have Pušh for Pušhtah. Both words are much the same in signification, however, as explained in the text itself, namely, "an ascent, a bluff, steep, eminence, hill, hummock, mound," &c.; but Pašhah [See Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 317] signifying a fiza, a graat, &c., is impossible. Pušht is the name of a dependency of Bādghais, and is very probably the tract here meant. Afræ is the active participle, used as an adjective, of will be inflame, to set on fire, to burn, to light up, to enkindle, &c., the literal translation of which is "the burning hill, or mound," and may refer to a volcano even at that time extinguisher.

to a place within the limits of Walishtan on the borders of the mountain tracts of Ghūr. Two Darweshes', clothed in ragged cloaks, joined him; and said to him: "Hast thou any victuals with thee?" 'Iwaz, the Khali, replied: "I have." He had, along with him on the ass, a few cakes of bread, with some [little] dainty2, by way of provision for the journey, after the manner of travellers. He removed the load from the ass, spread his garments [on the ground]. and set those provisions before the Darweshes. After they had eaten, he took water, which he had among his baggage, in his hand, and stood up in attendance on them. After those Darweshes had made use of the victuals and the drink, thus hastily produced, they remarked to each other, saying: "This excellent man has ministered unto us: it behoveth his act should not be thrown away." They then turned their faces towards 'Iwaz, the Khali, and said: "Husam-ud-Din! go thou to Hindustan, for that place, which is the extreme [point] of Muhammadanism, we have given unto thee3." In accord with the intimation of those two Darweshes, he returned again from that place [where he then was, and, placing his family on the ass, came towards Hindustan. He joined Muhammad-i-Bakht-var. and his affairs reached such a point that the coin of the territory of Lakhanawati was stamped, and the Khutbah thereof read, in his name, and they styled him by the title of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din's. He made the city of Lakhana-

Wālishtān is evidently the same tract as is referred to at page 319, which see. The oldest and best copies of the text, and some modern copies, are as above, but some of the latter have والسيان and دايشان and three others, including the best Paris copy, have زاولستان

1 They are thus styled in the original: there is not a word about "fakirs" in any copy of the text.

2 Meat, fish, vegetables, or the like, eaten with bread to give it a savour : in Elliot : INDIA, vol. ii., page 317, it is styled "traveller's bread," and the ass is turned into a mule !

In some copies, and in some other works, Khwajah, equivalent here to "Master," in others Sālār-head-man, leader or chief. Another author says the Darweshes said: "Go thou, O Khwajah, into Hind, for they have assigned unto thee one of the kingdoms of the region of Hind."

4 The text varies a little here. The oldest copy has "his family" as above. whilst, of the other copies, some have "his children," some "his wife," and

some "his wife and children."

5 After the chief men had put the tyrant, 'Ali, son of Mardan, to death, they, with one accord, set up Husam-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, son of Husain, who originally, was one of the petty chiefs of the Khalj country on the borders of wati the seat of government, and founded the fortress of Basan-kot, and people from all directions turned their faces towards him 4.

Ghür, a man of virtuous mind and high principles, and endowed with many excellent qualities, both of mind and body. He is said, by several authors, to have been very handsome, and they confirm all our author says about him in this respect.

6 In Elliot, vol. ii. page 317, "He made the city of Lakhnauti the seat of his government, and built a fort for his residence!" The printed text has

-fortress of Bas-kot. حصار بسكوت

From our author's remark here, it would appear as though Sulṭān Ghiyāṣud-Dīn, 'Iwāṭ, had been the first to make the city of Gaur or Lakhaṇawaṭi his capital. Akdālah can scarcely have been built at this period or it would

no doubt have been mentioned from its importance.

Abū-l-Fagl states, in the Ā'īn-t-Ākrānā, that Lakhaṇawati, which some style Gaur, is named Jannat-ābād, but this is an error from what is stated below by others, and was the name applied to the Sarkār or district, not to the city. He continues: "To the east of it is a great kol-āb [lake] in which is an island. To the north, at the distance of a kuroh, is a building and a reservoir, the monument of ancient times, which is called Sārahāe-mārī [المرافق على المرافق على المرافق على المرافق على المرافق على المرافق الم

The Haft-Iklim, says Gaur, in the olden time, was the capital of Bangālah, and that the fortress of Gaur was amongst the most reliable strongholds of Hindistän. "The river Gang lies to the west of it; and, on the N.E. W. and S. sides, it has seven [sic in MS.] ditches, and a citadel on the side of the Gang. The distance between [each] two ditches is half a kawah, each ditch being about three tanāb [= 120 gas or ells] broad, and so deep that an elephant would be unable to cross it. JANNAT-ĀBĀD is the name of the tamās (löttrict) la which Gaur is situated."

The Khulisat-ut-Tawarikh states that Lakhapawati or Gaur is a very ancient city and the first capital of the country. To the east of it is a kol-āb [lake] of great size, and, should the dyke [confining it?] burst, the city would be overwhelmed. The emperor Humāyūn, when in that part, took a great liking to Lakhapawati, and gave it the name of BARHT-ĀBAD.

Many fine buildings were erected in and around the city by Sulţān Ffrizā Shāh-i-Abū-l-Mugaffar, Shāh-i-Jahān, the Ḥabashi [Abyssinian, yet he is included among the so-called "Patháns"], one of which was the Chānd gateway of the citadel near the palace, a haug [reservoir], and the famous dato or manārah. Musalmāns do not erect "Jaya Shambas." The Chānd gateway was still standing some fifty years since, but hidden by the dense jangal, and is probably standing still. There were several masjids, one of which was founded by Sulţān Yūsuf Ṣāhā.

According to the Portuguese writers who "aided Mohammed [Mahmūd] against Sher Khan a Mogol general [1] then in rebellion," the capital city Gouro extended three leagues in length along the Ganges and contained one million, two hundred thousand families [one million of people or two hundred thousand families, probably]. "VOYAGES AND TRANSACTIONS OF THE PORTUGUESE: Castanneda, de Barros, de Faryia y Souza, Antonio da Silva Menzes, &c."

The Tārīkh-i-Firūz Shāhī says "Lakhaṇawaṭī acquired the by-name of Bulghāk-pūr—place of great sedition—from J's' signifying much noise, tumult,

He was a man of pleasing mien, of exceeding handsome appearance, and both his exterior and interior were [adorned] by the perfection of mercy; and he was magnanimous, just, and munificent. During his reign the troops and inhabitants of that country enjoyed comfort and tranquillity; and, through his liberality and favour, all 7 acquired great benefits and reaped numerous blessings. In that country many marks of his goodness remained. He founded jāmi' [general] and other masjids, and conferred salaries and stipends upon good men among theologians, the priesthood, and descendants of the Prophet; and other people acquired, from his bounty and munificence, much For example, there was an Imam-zadah of the capital city, Firūz-koh, whom they used to style Jalal-ud-Din, the son of Jamal-ud-Din, the Ghaznawi, who, to better his means, left his native country and came into the territory of Hindustan in the year 608 H. After some years, he returned again to the capital city, Firuz-koh, and brought back with him abundant wealth and riches. Inquiry was made of him respecting the means of his acquisition of wealth. He related that, after he had come into Hindustan, and determined to proceed from Dihli to Lakhanawati, when he reached that capital, Almighty God predisposed things so that he [the Imam, and Imam's son] was called upon to deliver a discourse in the audiencehall of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the Khali'.

sedition, &c.—because, from ancient times, from the period that Sulţān Mu'izz ud-Dîn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, of Dihlī, conquered it [Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Baranī, is rather incorrect here however], almost every Walī to whom the sovereigns of Dihlī gave the government of Lakhaṇawaṭī, because of its distance from Dihlī, its extent, and the number of passes intervening, if he had not rebelled himself, others have rebelled against him, and killed or dethroned him."

⁷ There is not a word about "his nobles."

⁸ An not "the" Imām-zādah: there were scores of Imām-zādahs probably at Firūz-koh. Imām signifies a leader in religion, a prelate, a priest.

⁹ Some copies have \(\frac{\epsilon}{\epsilon}\) = collection, amount, &c., and the more modern copies and the printed text \(\frac{\epsilon}{\epsilon}\) = signifying family, followers, dependents, &c., instead of \(\frac{\epsilon}{\epsilon}\) = seeking benefit, and the like. In ELIJOT, vol. it, page 318, it is rendered \(\alpha\) body of men—"He came with a body of men from his native country," &c.!! He was merely a priest, and did not travel attended by "a body of men."

¹ Compare Ellion, vol. ii. page 318; where this passage is translated: "the Almighty so favoured him that his name was mentioned in the Court of Chivásu-d-din"!!

sovereign, of benevolent disposition, brought forth from his treasury a large chalice full of gold and silver tangahs, and bestowed upon him a present of about two thousand tangahs²; and gave commands to his own Maliks and Amīrs, Grandees and Ministers of State, so that each one presented, on his behalf, liberal presents. About three thousand gold and silver tangahs more were obtained. At the period of his return home [from Lakhaṇawaṭi] an additional five thousand tangahs were acquired in gifts, so that the sum of ten thousand tangahs was amassed by that Imām, and Imām's son, through the exemplary piety of that renowned monarch of benevolent disposition. When the writer of these words, in the year 641 H.³, reached the territory of Lakhaṇawaṭi, the good works of that sovereign, in different parts of that territory, were beheld [by him].

The territory of Lakhanawati has two wings on either

² The Haft-Iklim states that the money of Bangālah was confined to the filat [always written with j—إجبال according to the following table:—

4 Jitals 1 Gandah, 20 Gandahs 1 Anah, 16 Anahs 1 Rūpi.

"Whatever the ripi might be, whether 10 tangahs or 100 tangahs, it was reckoned as 16 ānahs, and there was no change whatever in the jital and the gandah." From what our author has stated in several places in this work, however, it is evident that the jital was current in the kingdom of Dihli, and

Muḥammadan India, as well as in Bangālah. See page 603.

Firishtal [copying the Tārikh.i-Ffrūx-Shāhi] states with respect to the tangah that "it is the name given to a tolah of gold stamped, and that a tangah of silver was 50 pils, each pill [i. e. a piece of anything orbicular] of copper [bronze ?] was called a jital, the weight of which is not known exactly, but I have heard that it was one tolah and three-quarters of copper [bronze ?]." Another writer states that there were 25 jitals to 1 dâm.

The word tangah—with g not with k—signifies a thin plate, leaf, or slice [5,1] of gold or silver, and appears to be an old Persian word. See Thomas:

PATHÁN KINGS OF DEHLI, pages 37, 49, 115, 219, and 230.

According to some other writers, however, the following table is [also] used :--

4 Jitals 1 Gandah, 20 Gandah 1 Pan, 16 Pan 1 Kahawan, 16 Kahawan [some call 20 a Ruddha Kahawan] 1 Rūpi.

According to the same account, 20 kandis made a fital.

Price, in his "RETROSPECT OF MAHOMMEDAN HISTORY," in reference to the revenue of Hindüstân, says the "Tungah," as far as he recollects, was considerably higher than the "Daum," and "conceives it was the fifth of a rupee"?

³ Two copies have 644 H., which can scarcely be correct, and the remainder 641 H. Farther on he says he was in that part in 642 H. Our author appears to have set out from Dihlf for Lakhanawaff in 640 H., reached it in 641 H., and returned to Dihlf again in the second month of 643 H.

Of course Bang is not included, and our author mentions it separately.

side of the river Gang. The western side they call Rāl [Rārh⁵], and the city of Lakhan-or⁶ lies on that side; and the eastern side they call Barind⁷ [Barindah], and the city

⁸ I can easily fancy a foreigner writing Rāl—J',—or Rād—a',—from hearing a Hindū pronounce the Sanskrit (Tāc—a',—Rārh, containing, as it does, the letter which few but natives of the country can properly utter.

6 The printed text followed in ELLIOT has "Lakhmauti," but that is totally impossible, since it lay east, not west of the Ganges; its right pronunciation is,

no doubt, Lakhan-or.

Most of the best copies of the text have Lakhan-or, both here and in other places where the same town or city is referred to; but two of the oldest and best copies have both Lakhan-or and Lakh-or both here as well as elsewhere. It appears evident to me that the n in the first word is nasal, and that its derivation is similar to that of Lakhanawati, from the name of Dasarata's son, Lakhmana, with the Hindi word wat-or, affixed, signifying limit, boundary, side, &c. = Lakhmana's limit or frontier. In this case it is not surprising that some copyists left out the nasal n, and wrote Lakh-or, having probably the name read out to them. From the description of the dykes farther on in Section XXII., in the account of the different Maliks of the dynasty where the invasion of Jajnagar by the Musalmans is mentioned, and the invasion of the Musalman territory by the Rae of Jaj-nagar, Lakhan-or lay in the direct route between Lakhanawati and Katāsin, the nearest frontier town or post of the Jāj-nagar territory; and therefore I think Stewart was tolerably correct in his supposition, that what he called and considered "Nagor," instead of Lakhan-or, was situated in, or farther south even than Bîrbhūm. It is by no means impossible that Dr. Blochmann's supposition may be correct, that Lakarkundhah [the Lacaracoonda of Rennelll is the place in question. It is in the right direction, but seems not far enough south; and, if any indication of the great dyke or causeway can be traced in that direction, it will tend to clear up the point. Lakarkündhah lies about eighty-five miles as the crow flies from Gaur or Lakhanawati, "right away from the river," but this Mr. Dowson, in ELLIOT, appears to think a proof of its being the wrong way, and he probably fancies that it should follow the Ganges. "Right away from the river," too, in the opposite direction, distant about eighty miles, lay Diw-kot-Diw and Dib are the same in Sanskrit and Hindu-1-the total length from place to place, allowing for devia tions, being a very moderate "ten days' journey." There is no doubt whatever as to the correct direction of Jaj-nagar and its situation with regard to Lakhan-or and Lakhanawati, as mentioned in note 4, page 587.

7 In some copies Barbind, but Barind or Barinda is correct. In one copy of the text the vowel points are given. I do not know the derivation of the Sanskrit word—ττε Rath, but dq—Brind or Wrind, signifies a heap [high 1], and it is possible that the former may signify low, depressed, being subject to inundation; and Brinda [the Barinda and Barind of the Musalman writers], high, elevated, not being subject to inundation. Hamilton says the part liable to inundation is called Bang, and the other Barendira. See also the account of Malik Tamur Khān-tṣrin in Section XXII., where Lakhaŋ-or is styled

Lakhanawati Lakhan-or.

Barind, under the name of "the Burin," is well known to sportsmen, I am told, in the present day, who apply it to the high tract of country N.W. of Rām-pūr, in the Rāj-Shahī district.

Terry says, alluding to the "two wings," "Bengala, a most spacious and

of Diw-kot is on that side. From Lakhanawati to the gate of the city of Lakhan-or, on the one side, and, as far as Diw-kot, on the other side, he, Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, [caused] an embankment [to be] constructed, extending about ten days' journey, for this reason, that, in the rainy season, the whole of that tract becomes inundated. and that route is filled with mud-swamps and morass'; and. if it were not for these dykes, it would be impossible [for peoplel to carry out their intentions, or reach various structures and inhabited places except by means of boats. From his time, through the construction of those embankments, the route was opened up to the people at large's.

It was heard [by the author] on this wise, that, when the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Din [I-yal-timish], after the decease of Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Mahmūd Shāh [his eldest son], came into the territory of Lakhanawati to suppress the sedition of Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din-i-Balka, the Khalj', and beheld the good works of Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, the

fruitful Province, but more properly to be called a Kingdom, which hath two very large Provinces within it, Purb [Purab] and Patan [Pachcham]; the one lying on the East, the other on the West side of the River Ganges. * * * The chief Cities are Rangamahat and Dekaka."

8 Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 319.

⁹ These embankments, according to other writers likewise, were constructed through the perseverance and forethought of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz. Another author states that the "former ancient rulers of Bang, the present capital of which is Dhākah, on account of the vast quantity of water which accumulates throughout the province in the rainy season, caused causeways to be constructed twenty cubits wide and ten high, termed al [J], and, from the proximity of these als, the people styled the province BANG-AL. Rain falls without ceasing during one-half of the year in the rainy season, and, at this period, these als appear above the flooded country."

A European writer, writing on the province "as at present constituted," says: "There are several remarkable military causeways which intersect the whole country, and must have been constructed with great labour; but it is not known at what period. One of these extends from Cooch Bahar [Kūch Bihār] through Rangamatty [Rangamati] to the extreme limits of Assam [Ashām], and was found when the Mahommedans first penetrated into that remote quarter." He,

of course, must mean the Muhammadans of Aurangzeb's reign.

Hamilton states that one of these causeways extended from the Diwah to the

Brahmā-putr.

1 In the list of Maliks at the end of Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timigh's reign, farther on, he is styled Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā, and, by some, is said to be the son of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, and, by others, a kinsman. Another author distinctly states that the son of Sultan Ghiyaş-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, was named Nāṣir-ud-Din-i-'Iwaz, and that he reigned for a short time. See also page 617.

Khalj, whenever mention of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn, 'Iwaẓ's name chanced to arise, he would style him by the title of "Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn, Khaljī," and from his sacred lips he would pronounce that there could be no reluctance in styling a man Sultān who had done so much good². The Almighty's mercy be upon them! In short, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dîn, 'Iwaẓ, the Khalj, was a monarch worthy, just, and benevolent. The parts around about the state of Lakhaṇawaṭi², such as Jāj-nagar¹, the countries of Bang, Kāmrūd, and

² What extreme magnanimity! Reluctance or not, Sulţān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dnn, 'Iwaṣ, had as good a title to be called Sulţān as Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timiṣh, or any other who preceded or followed him; and, moreover, he had never been a slave, nor the slave of a slave. I-yal-timiṣh was not his suzerain until he gained the upper hand. It was only 'Alī-i-Mardān who was subject to Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak.

⁸ Compare Dowson's ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 319, where Jāj-nagar is made to appear as being part of the Lakhanawat territory: there is nothing even in the printed text to warrant such a statement.

4 Dr. Blochmann's surmises [CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF BENGAL, page 29] are quite correct with respect to Jāj-nagar. It appears to have been named after a town or city of that name, subsequently changed in more recent times to Jāj-pūr, the meaning of nagar and pūr being the same; and in the days when our author wrote, and for many years subsequently, it continued to be a kingdom of considerable power.

Before attempting to describe the boundaries of Jāj-nagar, and generally to elucidate the subject, it will be well to describe the territory of Kaḍhah-Katan-kah, or Gaḍhah-Katankah—for it is written both ways—which lay between it and the Muḥammadan provinces to the north.

The best account of it I find in the Ma'dan-i-Akhbar-i-Ahmadi, of which the following is an abstract :- "The country of Kadhah-Katankah they call Gondwanah, because the Gonds, a countless race, dwell in the jangals of it. On the E., by Ratan-pur, it reaches the territory of Chhar Kund; on the W. it adjoins the fort of Rasin of Malwah. It is 150 kuroh in length, and 80 in breadth. On the N. it is close to the Bhatah territory Ithe Bhata of the A'in-I-AKBARTI, and S. is close to the Dakhan; and this tract of country they call Kadha -Katankah. It is very mountainous, and has many difficult passes and defiles, but is exceedingly fruitful, and yields a large revenue. It has forts and kasbahs [towns], so much so that trustworthy narrators say that it has 70,000 [the MS. has 7000 in figures and seventy thousand in words] inhabited karyaks [43-lit, a concourse of people, a village. It does not mean a city]. Kadhah or Gadhah is a great city, and Katankah is the name of a mouza' [district, place, villagel, and by these two names this territory is known. [Katankah, however, must have been remarkable for something or other for the country to be called after it.] The seat of government of this region is Churā-garh, and there are several Rājahs and Rāes in it."

Faizī, Sarhindī, in his History, calls the country Jhār-Kundah instead of Chhār Kund; and both he and the Khulāşat-ut-Tawārīkh say that it had 70,000 or 80,000 inhabited karyaks, and they both agree generally with the above as far as they go; but they state that Amūdah [Amūdah ī] is the name of

Tirhut, all sent tribute to him; and the whole of that territory named Gaur passed under his control. He acquired

5 In Elliot, vol, ii. page 319, this passage is translated from the printed text:—"The district of Lakhnaur submitted to him;" but the text is as above.

one of the principal towns of Kaḍhah Katankah, and the first of importance reached by Áṣif Khān when he invaded it in Akbar's reign. The Rāni, Durgāwati, issued from her capital, Chūrā-garh, to meet the Musalmāns, who had never before ventured into those parts. They halted at Damūh [ipo], Lat. 23°

50' N., Long. 79° 30' E., between the capital and Amudah.

From the above statements, as given in the works just quoted, the tract of country adjoining Bihār on the S. and Bangālah on the W. is Bhāṭah or Bhāṭā, which probably included Palamāo, Chhoṭai Nāg-pūr, and Gang-pūr, on the W.; and the tract adjoining Bhāṭah on the W., and immediately joining the district of Rultiās-garh on the N., was Chhār-Kund or Jrār-Kundah, lying on the right bank and upper part of the Son, and stretching towards Ratan-pūr. Still farther W., between Ratan-pūr and the Narbadah, but running in a S.W. direction, and stretching from the left bank of the Son, on the one side, to Rāshn of Mālwah, on the other, and S. to the hills, the northern boundary of Birār, was Kadhah-Katankah.

Terry, in his Voyage, says that the chief city of Kanduana [Gondwānah] is called Karhakatenka [Azz 13], and that the river Scroily parts it [Kanduana] from Pilan. More respecting the capital of Jāj-nagar will be found farther on.

Jāj-nagar appears, therefore, to have been bounded on the E. by the range of hills forming the present W. boundary of Udisah-Jag-nāth, Katāsin, on the Mahā-nadī, being the nearest frontier town or post towards the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Lakhaṇ-or portion of the Barminy by some English writers, and Soank by Rennell [I always adopt the native mode of spelling if I can find it, the fanciful transliteration of Gazetteer writers ignorant of the vernacular spelling notwith-standing], running to the W. of Gang-pūr. Its northern boundary is not very clearly indicated [but see Sulfān Fīrūz Shāh's excursion farther on], but it evidently included Ratan-pūr and Sanbhal-pūr. On the W. it does not seem to have extended beyond the Wana-Gangā, and its feeder the Kahan; but its southern boundary was the Gūdāwūrī, and S. W. lay Talingānah.

I am surprised to find that there is any difficulty with repard to the identification of Katāsin, also called, and more correctly, Katāsinghah. Our author, farther on, says he himself went thither along with the Musalman forces, and distinctly states that, "at KATASIN, the frontier of the JAJ-NAGAR territory commences." This place is situated on the northern or left bank of the Mahānadi, which river may have altered its course in some degree during the lapse of nearly seven centuries, some thirty miles E. of Boada, in about Lat. 20° 32', Long. 84° 50'; and some extensive ruins are to be found in its neighbourhood. The capital of the Jaj-nagar state, our author distinctly states, was named according to the oldest and best copies of -according to the oldest and best copies of the text; and Urmurdan or Armardan - رمردن-and Uzmurdan or Azmurdan -in the more modern copies; and, in one, Uzmurdan or Azmardan-The wilayat-country or district-of Umurdan or Umardan is mentioned, as well as the capital, town, or city of that name. There is a place named Amar-kantak, or Amar-kantaka - اركادا —in Lat. 22° 40', Long. 81° 56', where are the remains of a famous temple of Bhawani or Parwati, which may be the site of our author's !!

possession of elephants, wealth, and treasures, to a great amount.

It seems most strange that those who have run away with the idea that Jäinagar lay east of the Ganges and the Megnah, in south-eastern Bengal—in
Tiparah of all places—never considered how it was possible for Ulugh Khān,
son of Sulţān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Tughlak—not that monarch himsef—to invade
Taling [Talingānah] and Tiparah, if the latter were Jāj-nagar, in one and the
same short campaign, or that Hoshang, Sulţān of Mālwah, during a short expedition or raid rather, could have reached south-eastern Bengal in search of
elephants. To have done so, he would have had to pass right through, and
return again through, the extensive territory of an independent sovereign equally
powerful with himself [he had only 1000 horse with him on the occasion in question], and to have crossed and recrossed two or three mighty rivers, besides
many others of considerable size, or he forded the Bay of Bengal perhaps to
reach the supposed Jāi-nagar.

ELPHINSTONE, too, on the authority of Hamilton [Hindostan, vol. i. page 178], who says that "Tiperah," by Mahammadan historians, is called "Jaganagur," has fallen into the same error; and, not content with this, even the map accompanying his History has "Jájnagur" in large letters in a part of India where no such territory ever existed! Hamilton would have had some difficulty, I think, in naming the "Mahommedan Historians" who made such assertions. The name of one would much surprise me.

The way in which Jāj-nagar is mentioned in different places, by different writers, and under different reigns, clearly indicates its situation. Ulugh Khān, son of Sulfān Qhiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Tughlaḥ, on his second campaign into the Dakhan, having reached Dīw-gīr [Dharāgarh], advanced into Taling [Talingānah], took Bidr, and invested Arangul [Jūō)], now Warangul. Having captured it, and given it the name of Sulfān-pūr, before returning to Dihlī, he went for amusement or diversion [_n-] into Jāj-NAGAR. He merely crossed the frontier of Talingānah.

Hoshang, Sultān of Mālwah, taking with him 1000 picked horsemen disguised as horse-dealers, set out from Māndhū or Māndhūn, and enterat the Jāj-NAGAR territory in guast of elephants. He managed to seize the Rāe of Jāj-nagar by stratagem, obtained a number of elephants, and brought him along with him, partly for his own security, on his way back to Mālwah; and, on reaching the frontier of the Jāj-NAGAR state [on the side of Mālwah], he set the Rāe at liberty.

The Lubb-ut-Tawārīkh-i-Hind states that Jāj-nagar is a month's journey from Mālwah, but from what part of Mālwah is not said.

The first ruler of the <u>Sharki</u> dynasty of Jünpür—the *eunuch* who is turned into a "Pathán" by the archæologists—extended his sway as far as the territory of Kol to the south; and, on the east, as far as Bihār; and compelled the rulers of LAKHAŅAWAŢī and JĀJ-NAGAR to pay him tribute.

In 680 rl. Sulfan Chiyag-ud-Din, Balban, set out towards Lakhanawalf to reduce Tughril, his rebellious governor of Bangalah, who had defeated two armies sent against him. On the approach of the Sulfan and his army, Tughril, who had been making preparations for retreat, retired towards the territory of JAPANGAR. On the Sulfan's arrival at Lakhanawati, no trace of the rebel could be found; but, discovering subsequently whither he had gone, he set out in pursuit in the direction of JAPANGAR, until the arrived at a place some seventy kee from that territory, when a patrol from the advanced guard of his

The august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din wa ud-Dunya [I-yal-timish], on several occasions, sent forces from the capital,

army, having gained information of his whereabouts, surprised Tughril encamped with his forces on the banks of a river, at and around a large stone reservoir, and slew him. The next march would have brought him to the

JAJ-NAGAR territory. The river, no doubt, was the boundary.

The Tārīkh-i-Fīrūz-Shāhī of Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Baranī, differs from this account, and says-according to the Calcutta printed text-that Tughril fled to Haifnagar-ماجيكر-and, in some places, Jaji-nagar-ماجيكر but there is no s in TAT-NAGAR, and, if Ziyā-ud-Din's text is correct, it is a different place altogether. "The Sultan, following in pursuit by successive marches, in a certain number of days, arrived on the frontier of Sunar-ganw for kingdom of Bang], the Rae of which-Dinwai by name [sic]-paid homage to the Sultan, and stipulated that, in case Tughril evinced a desire to fly towards the sea [4,3 also means river], he should prevent his doing so. Proceeding by successive marches, the Sultan had reached within 60 or 70 kes of Jaj-NAGAR, when information of Tughril's whereabouts was obtained," &c. From this statement it would seem that the place in question, whether Haji-nagar or Jaji-nagar, was beyond Sunār-gānw; but it is not said whether any great river was crossed, neither is it stated that the Sultan marched eastwards, and he might-and, in case JAJ-NAGAR is correct, as stated in the extract above, he must-have turned to the south-west on reaching the frontier of Sunar-ganw. I am inclined, however. to think that Sangarah, mentioned in the fourth para. below, is correct, and not Sunar-ganw. Where the Sunar-ganw frontier commenced we know not; but it must have been a territory of some extent, as it was ruled, subsequently. by a "Sultan." A district of this name is also mentioned by Ziya-ud-Din as lving near Talinganah.

Be this as it may, however, the following extract, taken from the Tārīkh-i-Firiz-Shāhi of Shams-i-Sarāj, Alfī, Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, and others, will, I think, tend to settle the question respecting the situation of the JĀy-Nagar.

[याज नगर] territory :-

In 754 H. [Alfi, 755 H.] Sultan Firuz Shah set out for Bangalah to reduce its ruler, Ilvās, Hāji [Sultān Shams-ud-Din], to subjection. On Sultān Firuz Shāh's reaching the vicinity of Panduah, Ilyas evacuated it, and threw himself into Akdālah [also written Akdalah], "a mouza" near Pandūah, on one side of which is the water [a river?], and on the other an impenetrable jangal, and considered one of the strongest fortifications of Bangalah [Westmacott, in the Calcutta Review for July, 1874, places Ekdala [Akdālah] some forty-two miles on the Maldah side of the river Tangan, and north of Gaur or Lakhanawati-"the later city of Gour," as he styles it], and so situated that, in the rainy season, the whole country would become flooded, and not a piece of elevated ground would be left for the Sultan even to pitch his tent on. Another writer calls it an island or insular fortress. He came and encamped, according to one of these works, on the bank on the other side of the water facing it; but the others state that he encamped his forces near the place on the same side. As he had to change the position of his encampment after a short time, this movement led Ilyas to imagine that the Sultan was about to retire; and he sallied forth with his troops and attacked the forces of Firuz Shah, but sustained a complete overthrow, and had to retire into his stronghold again. The rains having commenced. Firuz Shah had to abandon the investment, came to terms with Ilyas, and retired towards his own dominions by the Manik pur ferry.

Dihli, towards Lakhanawaţi, and acquired possession of Bihār, and installed his own Amirs therein. In the year

On several occasions Ilyās sent presents to the Sulṭān, and others were forwarded to him in return, until, in the year 759 H., when, Ilyās having despatched his offerings, Sulṭān Frītūs Shāh sent him presents in return; but, information having reached him from Bihār of Ilyās's death, and of his son, Sikandar's succession, Frītūs Shāh ordered his presents to be stopped; and, in 760 H., he set out for Bangālah with an army of 80,000 horse and 470 elephants. The rains coming on, he passed the rainy season at Zafar-ābād, and founded the city of Jūn-pūr. Sikandar, on his approach, retired to the fortress of Akdālah, before which Sulṭān Frītūs Shāh sat down; but, after a few days, an accommodation was come to, and the territory of Sunār-gāmw was given up to Sikandar, and Frītūs Shāh retired towards Jūn-pūr. On the Sulṭān's reaching Panḍūah [this shows that Akdālah was northward or eastward of it, and beyond it], seven elephants and other valuable property, sent by Sikandar as part of his tribute, reached his camp.

I notice in the Indian Atlas, sheet No. 119, in the parganah of "Debekote," as it is styled—of course Dīw-koṭ or Dīb-koṭ is meant—between Lakhaṇawaṭī and Dīnjā-pūr a place named DamDuma, and near it an old fort, and, to the east of it, three large tanks. The name is evidently a corruption of damdamah—a cavalier, a mound, &c.; and it strikes me, since the name of Akdālah is not mentioned in history for some time after the Khaij dynasty passed away, that the name of Dīw-koṭ was changed to Akdālah in after years. Dr. Blochmann, I believe, identifies Dīw-koṭ—probably on good grounds—with Gungārām-pūr, which I do not find in the Atlas sheet referred to; but, I should think, from the description given of the great causeway, at the northernmost extremity of which Dīw-koṭ is said, at page 586, to have been situated, that Dīw-kot must have lain north instead of south of Dīnjā-pūr.

[Since this note was written, I find the last number of the Bengal Asiatic Journal, No. III. 1874, contains an account of the site of Akdālah and a map showing its situation, as promised by Westmacott, in a previous number; and, I believe, the situation to be very nearly identical with the "Damduma" I have

referred to, but have not examined the map in question.]

On his reaching Jun-pur the rains again set in [760 H.], and he stayed there during the rainy season, and, in Zi-Hijjah of that year, set out by way of Bihar towards IAI-NAGAR, which was at the extremity of the territory of Gadhah--opposite Manik [كَدُّم كَنْكُم] When the Sultan reached Karah [كَدُّم كَنْكُم] pur ?], Malik Kuth-ud-Din, brother of Zaffir Khan, was left behind with the troops and the heavy equipage, and he advanced with celerity through BIHAR towards JAJ-NAGAR. On his reaching Sangarah or Sankrah- [Budā'uni, who copies wholesale from the Tabakat-i-Akbari, has, in my copy of the text, but Firishtah, who also copies from the تبيكرة meant probably for تبيكرة former, has See Blochmann, page 30. Can it be the present Sirgoojah, so called ?], Rae Saras [سدهن Firishtah إسدهن], Rajah of Sankarah, fled, and his daughter fell into the Sultan's hands, and he called her daughter [adopted her?], and protected her. Firishtah styles her Shakar Khātūn, an impossible name for a Hindu, unless she became a convert to Islam, and was afterwards' so named. [I do not know what BRIGGS's version may contain, but Dow has left out a great deal here.] Ahmad Khan, who had fled from Lakhanawati, and had reached the fort of Rantabhur-رتبهور [Ratan-pur in Jhar-kundah?-Lat.º 22 14', Long. 82° 8'-is probably meant, not the celebrated stronghold of Rantabhūr] on the way, presented himself before Sultan

622 H. he [I-yal-timish] resolved upon marching into Lakhanawati; and Sultan Ghiyās-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, moved his

Fîrüz Shāh. Having passed the river Mahā-nadrī, Mahān-darī, or Mahānthe river مهندري sic in MSS, -Buda'ini -مندري Firishtah -مهاندري the river which falls into the Son doubtless is meant], he reached the city or town of -and Buda' - بنارس - Shams-i-Sarāj and Alfi have Banāras بنارس - and Budā'. uni Barani- , il, la, which is the capital and abode of the Rae of Jaj-NAGAR [Shams-i-Sarāj has Rāe of Jāj-nagar-Ūdīsah]. The Rāe fled towards Taling [Talinganah], and, the Sultan not pursuing him [Firishtah says pursuing], proceeded to hunt elephants in the vicinity [Shams-i-Sarāj says the Sultan remained some time at Banāras, and the Rāe took shelter in one of the islands of the, or on a, river]. [See the Asiatic Journal, vol. xiv., July to December 1822, page 438, in which is a good account of this tract of country, entitled "Notes on Birar"l, during which time the Rae despatched emissaries and sought for peace, sending at the same time three elephants, besides rarities and precious things [Shams-i-Sarāj says after his return from Padmāwati]. Hunting as he went along, the Sultan reached the territory of Rae Bhanu Diw -يسرماهي ديو-Alfi, Pir-māhi Diw-يرجان ديو-Alfi, Pir-māhi Diwperhaps Bir-Māhil, who sent him some elephants. He then returned from thence with the object of hunting, came to Padmäwati-South Bihar probably-which is a part abounding with elephants, captured thirty-three, and killed two which could not be secured.

The Tabakāti-Akbarī, Firishtah, and Budā'uān, quote a verse composed on coasion by Malik Ziyā-ud-Din, thus showing to what extent the two latter—particularly Firishtah—copied from the former; but Firishtah appears somewhat confused in the latter part of his account, or has made considerable verbal alterations for some purpose; whilst Budā'uān [MS.] says the Sulfān left Bārānī [ab]—Bārānī [ab]—Bārānī [ab]—Bārānī [ab]—Sanārā

[Padmawati] and Bram-Tala [No or] to hunt elephants.

From Padmawati Sultan Firuz Shah returned to Karah in Rajab, 762 H.

JĀJ-NAGAR is mentioned on several other occasions in the history of the Dakhan, and its whereabouts distinctly indicated. Sulfan Ffritz, Bahmanf, entered it in 815 Hz, and carcied off a number of elephants. In the account of Nigām Shāh, of the same dynasty, JĀJ-NAGAR and Ūpīsah are mentioned as totally separate territories. In the reign of Muḥammad Shāh, son of Humā-yīn, a famine having arisen in his dominions, jeople migrated in order to obtain food into MĀLWAH, JĀJ-NAGAR, and GUJARĀT; and, shortly after, the Rāe of Ūḍisah, aided by the Rāë-andri district.

Now, if any one will look at the map, and take what has been mentioned into consideration, where else can Jāj-nagar possibly lie than in the tract I have

indicated? Certainly not on the east side of the Bay of Bengal,

It may not be amiss here to say a few words respecting the ancient boundaries of Bangālah as described by different authors, although little remains to be said after Dr. Blochmann's elaborate paper on the subject before referred to.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh of Fakir Muḥammad says that the territory which in after times was styled Bangālah, according to such writers as have written about it, consisted of Bihār, Gauḍha or Gaur or Lakhaṇawaṭi, Bang, and Jā-NAGAR. During the campaign in Bangālah, in Aurangzeb's time, against his brother Shāh Shuja', the Afgāna Zamindār of Birbhūm and Jāk-nagar is said to have joined him. According to the Ā'ān-i-Akbarī, the Sūbah of Bangālah from Gaḍhī to the port of Chāigāna (Chittagong) is 400 Aurok in breadth; and, from the mountains bounding it on the north to the uncultivated trate [4].

vessels [war-boats?] up the river. A treaty of peace was concluded between them, and the Sultān [I-yal-timish] extorted thirty-eight elephants and eighty laks of treasure, and the Khuthah was read for him, and the coin stamped in his name? When the Sultān [I-yal-timish] withdrew,

6 Another writer says he had all the boats on the river removed and secured, in order to prevent Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timigh, from crossing with his forces

to the Lakhanawati side of the Gang.

7 Some histories, including the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, say the two Sulţāns did encounter each other in battle in 622 H.; but, as no details are given, it could have been but a skirmish. A peace was entered into, and Sulţān Chiyāṣ-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, gave, as an acknowledgment of suzerainty, for the sake of peace which he himself soon after broke, 38 elephants and 80 laks of silver tanguhs. Another writer says Chiyāṣ-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, despatched forces upon several occasions to carry on war against Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish [the latter's officers or his governors of Awadh probably]; but at length peace was concluded on the terms above stated.

The Tagkarat-ul-Mulük states that this sum was in silver tangahs; and

of sarkār Madāran [also written Madārān—[[-داران]], 200 in breadth; but, as the country of Ūdīsah was annexed to it on the settlement of the province in Akbar's reign, and its formation into a Ṣūbah, its length became increased 43 kuroh, and its breadth 20. The tract of country to the W. of Bangālah is named Bhātah or Bhāṭī, which is accounted as belonging to this country [Bangālah], and Mānik is the surname of its rulers. To the north is a territory called Kūj [Kūḍh ʔ] and Kāmrūḍ, also called Kāmwū. At the side of this is the territory of the Rājah of Āṣḥām, and adjoining it is Tibbat, and to the left of it Khtṭā. To the E. and S. of Bangālah is an extensive country named Arkhnāk [turned into Arracan by Europeans], and the port of Chātṣānw belongs to it. In the sarkār of Mangīn, from the river Gang to the Koh-Sangīn (the Stony Mountains], they have drawn [كبود] a wall, and account it the boundary of Bangālah.

The Haft-Işlim says Bangālah is 300 kuroh in length and 270 in breadth, each kuroh being one mil [1]. On the E. it is bounded by the sea, on the W. it has the pargunah of Suraj-guth, which adjoins the Sūbah of Bihār, on the N. it is bounded by Kūch, and on the S. by the pargunah of Jasūḍah [turned into Jessore by Europeans], which lies between Üḍisah and Bangālah.

The Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārtikh agrees generally with the other two works, but states that Bangālah is 400 kuroh from E. to W.—from Chātgānw to Gadhā—and 200 from N. to S.; that it has the Şübah of Bihār on the W., on the S. the high hills of sarkār Māndhū—نائده (In two other MSS. المنافرة and the sea on the E.

The A'în says it was divided [in Akbar's reign] into 24 sarkārs, and yielded

a revenue of 52 kurors, 4 laks, and 59,319 dams.

The Haft-Ikilm states that it was divided [in Jahängir's reign] into 22 timans [or carkirs], and its revenue amounted to 5 lats, 97, 570 riip is, which, at 40 dims the riip, are equivalent to 23 kurars, 9 lats, and 2800 dims. There must be a mistake somewhere, as this amount of Jahängir's revenue is not half that of Aurangzib's time, while Akbar's revenue greatly exceeds Aurangzib's.

According to the Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārīkh, it was divided [in Aurangzīb's reign] into 27 surkārs, and yielded 46 kurors and 29 loks of dāms.

he conferred Bihār upon Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Jānī; and Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, marched into Bihār from Lakhaṇawaṭī, and [again] took possession of it, and treated iwith severity, until, in the year 624 H., the august Malik, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shah, son of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn [I-yal-timiṣh], at the instigation of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Jānī', assembled the forces of Hindūstān, and marched from Awadh and proceeded into Lakhaṇawaṭī. At this time Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz-i-Ḥusain, the Khalj, had led an army from Lakhaṇawaṭī towards the territory of Kāmrūd and Bang, and had left the city of Lakhaṇawaṭī

further—in which the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and some others agree—that Lyaltimish conferred a canopy of state and a dūr-bāsh [see note s, page 607] upon his eldest son, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, declared him heir-apparent, bestowed Lakhaṇawaṭī upon him, and left him in Awadh with jurisdiction over those parts. Maḥmūd Shāh may have been left in Awadh with charge of that part, but not of Lakhaṇawaṭī certainly; for Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ, ruled over his own territory up to the time of his death. The son of L-yal-timish was probably left in Awadh to watch for a favourable time for invading or seizing the Khali dominions, which he soon found an opportunity of doing.

8 He is styled ω₄ in several copies, but it cannot be correct, considering, he died a natural death, according to our author's own account, as given at page 630. The word ω₄ ho doubt, is an error for ω₄ — august, &c.

9 Compare Elliot, India, vol. ii. page 219.

1 In the account of Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah, page 629, and here also, in some copies of the text, and in some other works, he is styled 'Ala-ud-Din, Jani. He is, no doubt, the personage referred to in the list of relatives and chiefs at the end of Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish's reign, under the title of Shāh-zādah, or Prince of Turkistān; but he only served I-val-timish: he was no relative. Soon after Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-val-timish, returned to Dihli, Sultan Ghiyag-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, marched into Bihar, and regained possession of it, compelling Malik Jani to fly into Awadh. The Khalj ruler held possession of it for some time, until the year 624 H., when Malik Nāşir-ud-Din, Mahmūd Shah, I-val-timish's eldest son, who held the government of Awadh, incited by Malik läni and some other chiefs, and taking advantage of Sultan Ghivasud-Din, 'Iwaz's absence on an expedition against the infidels on his eastern frontier in Bang and Kamrud, with the greater part of his forces, suddenly and without any previous intimation, invaded his dominions with a great army, including forces sent by his father for the same purpose. As soon as Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, received information of it, he made all haste back to defend his kingdom; but whether part of or all his army returned with him is doubtful, and no aid from without could reach him, except through Hindustan. The enemy had already taken the capital, and, in a great battle subsequently fought between him and the invaders, Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, with most of his chiefs. were taken captive and afterwards put to death. Some state that he was slain in the battle. A son of his [by some accounts a kinsman]-Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā-subsequently regained and held sway over the territory for a time, and Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, had to proceed in person against him with a great army.

unprotected. Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, took possession of it; and Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz-i-Ḥusain, the Khali, on account of that disaster, returned from that force [which he had led into Kāmrūd and Bang?], and fought an engagement with Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz-i-Ḥusain, and the whole of the Khali Amīrs, were taken prisoners, and Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, was martyred. His reign extended over a period of twelve years'.

² According to our author, Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, the Khali, was the last of the Mu'izaī Sultāns of Hind; and he is the person respecting whom ELPHINSTONE has been betrayed into such mistakes noticed in note 7, page 610. According to the Gaur MS. he reigned twelve years, from 666 ft. to 617 H., and was succeeded by his son, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, who reigned for a short time, and whose name has been already mentioned in note', page 586. See also pages 617 and 626. The events which happened after the decease of Sultān Chiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, are involved in great obscurity; but the above dates are not correct.

ESF In concluding this portion of the Section on the Khalj dynasty of Lakhanawati, I would mention that I am not personally acquainted with Bengal; but I venture to hope that these notes, imperfect as they are, will aid in further research. The district officers will be able to follow up the inquiry with facility.

SECTION XXI.

ACCOUNT OF THE SHAMSIAH SULTANS IN HIND.

THE frailest of the servants of the Divine threshold, Minhāji-i-Sarāj, Jūrjāni—God grant him the attainment of his wishes! states that, when the eternal will of God, the Most High and Holy, has willed to imprint on the forehead of a servant the signs of dominion and the light of power, and the mother of time becomes pregnant with an embryo of such a character, the gleam [characteristic] of such a burden will shine upon her brow.

When the time of her delivery arrives, and that lord of felicity becomes enveloped in the swaddling of his birthplace², joy, at the sight of that birth, becomes manifest in all things; and, from the period of his nativity to the time of his removal from this abode of service to the mansion of bliss, whether in activity or in repose, all his actions will be a source of gladness unto mankind, and of honour to both high and low. If his neck should be placed in the collar of servitude, his master becomes the possessor of affluence; and, if his footsteps venture upon journeys and in travelling stages, he will cause his companions to become the masters of prosperity, as in the case of the Patriarch Yūsuf. When Yūsuf was sold to Malik the son of Du'ar, at his

In other words, when the child is born.

I Our author here follows the life of men destined for sovereignty from the conception, and applies to them, somewhat blasphemously, the theory of the mir [light, &c.] of Muḥammad. The theologians assert that the first thing created was the light of Muḥammad. It shone forth from Adam's forehead until Eve became pregnant by him of a son, when it was transferred to her. When she gave birth to the son [which' Cain or Abel' Ji, it, of course, dwelt in him, and thus it was transferred, as the theologians aver, from the foreheads of the fathers to the wombs of the mothers, until it assumed fiesh in Muḥammad. Our author has altered the theory in applying it to kings, in as far as the ray of light, which emanates from the child [Jy-w-], shines forth from the brow of "the mother of time."

invocation, twenty [sons like] pearls a befitting a king were strung upon the thread of his line; and, notwithstanding he came [as a slave] into the dwelling of 'Azīz, he made, in the end, his ['Azīz's] spouse Queen of Miṣr; and, forasmuch as the infant in the cradle bore testimony to the purity of his garment's skirt—"a witness of the family bore testimony"—at length, in his ['Azīz's] service, Yūsuf became the Wazīr of that kingdom.

I. SULŢĀN-UL-MU'AZZAM, <u>SH</u>AMS-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR, I-YAL-TIMI<u>SH</u> 4, THE SULŢĀN.

Since the Most High and Holy God, from all eternity, had predestined that the states of Hindūstān should come under the shadow of the guardianship of the great Sultān, the supreme monarch, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, the shadow of God in the worlds, Abū-l-Mugaffar, I-yal-timish, the Sultān, the right arm of the Vicegerent of God, the aider of the Lord of the Faithful —God illumine his convictions and weight the balance with the effects of his equity and beneficence, and preserve the dynasty of his descendants, on whom, of those who have passed away, be peace! and may the Nāsirlah Maḥmūdīah sovereignty perpetually continue in security and safety from the troubles of the end of time, and from the accidents and vicissitudes of the world!—that just and munificent Sultān, upright, benefi-

³ I do not know what account of Yūsuf our author may have read, but this is different to what is contained in Tabari and other writers of authority, and very different to the account given in the Kur'ān [Chap. xii.], and to his own account of Yūsuf in the first Section of this work. Yūsuf was sold for twenty pieces of sliver.

اللبية. "Written in some few copies of the text and by some other historians باللبية." — المراقبة المناقبة الم

⁶ Yamin-i-Khalifah U'llah, Näsir-i-Amir-ul-Muminin. See pages 617 and

⁶ The sovereignty of his son, our author's patron—Nāşir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shāh.

cent, a zealous and steadfast warrior against infidels, the patronizer of the learned, the dispenser of justice, in pomp like Faridun, in disposition like Kubād, in fame like Kā-us, in empire like Sikandar, and in majesty like Bahrām, was, Yūsuf like, from out of the Ilbari [or Albari] tribes of Turkistan, delivered over to merchants, until, from one degree to another, he was raised to the throne of empire and seat of dominion, so that the back of the Muhammadan religion, through his sovereignty, waxed strong, and the development of the Ahmadi faith, through his valour, acquired pre-eminence. In intrepidity he turned out another impetuous 'Ali, and, in liberality, a second Hatimi-Tā-i. Although the beneficent Sultan, Kutb-ud-Din-on whom be peace! displayed to the world the bestowal of hundreds of thousands, the august and beneficent Sultan, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din-may he rest in peace!-in place of every hundred thousand of his, used to bestow a hundred [times a] hundred thousand, both in capacity and in computation, as, both in this world and in the next, may be accounted [in his favour].

Towards men of various sorts and degrees, Kāzīs, Imāms, Muftīs, and the like, and to darweshes and monks, land-owners and farmers, traders, strangers and travellers from great cities, his benefactions were universal. From the very outset of his reign, and the dawn of the morning of his sovereignty, in the congregating of eminent doctors of religion and law, venerable Sayyids, Maliks, Amīrs, Şadrs, and [other] great men, the Sultān used, yearly, to expend about ten millions⁷; and people from various parts of the world he gathered together at the capital city of Dihli⁸, which is

⁷ What coin, whether tangah or jītal, is not stated—there is a vast difference between them.

a An author, describing Dibli, states that, in the year 440 of Bikrāmajīk, Rājah Anang-pāl Tīn or Tūṇār—the n is nasal [This is the word which, written ωμ in some works, instead of ωj and μωμ μα μα είναι είναι μα είναι είναι μα είναι εί

the seat of government of Hindustan, and the centre of the circle of Islam, the sanctuary of the mandates and inhibitions of the law, the kernel of the Muhammadi religion, the marrow of the Ahmadi belief, and the tabernacle of the eastern parts of the universe-Guard it. O God. from calamities, and molestation! This city, through the number of the grants, and unbounded munificence of that pious monarch, became the retreat and resting-place for the learned, the virtuous, and the excellent of the various parts of the world; and those who, by the mercy of God, the most High, escaped from the toils of the calamities sustained by the provinces and cities of 'Ajam, and the misfortunes caused by the [irruption of the] infidel Mughals. made the capital-the asylum of the universe-of that sovereign their asylum, refuge, resting-place, and point of safety; and, up to the present day, those same rules are observed and remain unchanged, and such may they ever continue!

From a number of credible persons it has been heard narrated after this manner, that, when the beneficent Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, was young in years, and was called, by command of the Most High, from the territory of Turkistan and the families of the Ilbari [tribe] to the empire of Islam and dominion of Hindustan, it so happened that his father, who was named I-lam Khān¹o, had numerous kindred, relations, dependents, and followers; and [that] this [future] sovereign, from his earliest years, was endowed with comeliness, intelligence, and goodness of disposition to a great degree, so much so that his brothers began to grow envious of these endowments. They therefore brought him away from his mother and father under the pretence that he should get sight of a herd of horses¹. Like as in the case of Yūsuf, they said,

but it must have been begun or have been a suburb long before, as it is mentioned certainly over fifty years before by our author. Tughlak-ābād, the Kughk-i-La'l, and Ffiruz-ābād, now called the Kotilah of Ffruz Shāh, were founded subsequently, besides many other additions of minor extent made. I have not space to say more.

⁹ Often referred to, but their names never mentioned.

¹⁰ Others say his father was the head or chief of a small community among the divisions or clans of the Ilbari tribe in Turkistān. His name is written Yilam—<u>J.</u>—<u>Khān</u> by some writers, and I.yal—<u>J.</u>!—<u>Khān</u> by others.

¹ Some say he was taken by his brothers to some garden, under pretence of going thither for recreation and diversion.

'Why, O father, dost thou not intrust Yūsuf to us, seeing that we are true friends of his? Send him along with us to-morrow into the pastures that he may divert himself, and we will be his protectors';' and, when they brought him where the herds of horses were, they sold him to certain merchants; and some say that his uncle's sons were among the party that sold him". The merchants brought him towards Bukhārā, and sold him to one of the kinsmen of the Ṣadr-i-Jahān' [the chief ecclesiastic] of Bukhārā, and, for some time, in that family of eminence and sanctity, he remained. The most beneficent of that family used to nourish him in the hall of his kindness, like his own children in infancy.

One of the trustworthy has related, saving: "'I heard from the blessed lips of that monarch himself, who said. "On a certain occasion, one of the [above-mentioned] family gave me a small piece of money, saying: 'Go into the market and buy some grapes and bring them.' When I set out for the market, I lost by the way that bit of money; and through my youthful age, out of fear at what had happened, I fell a crying. . Whilst thus lamenting, I was joined by a good Darwesh who took me by the hand, and purchased for me some grapes which he gave me; and he made me promise [saying]: 'When thou attainest unto power and dominion thou wilt ever regard devotees and ascetics with reverence, and watch over their weal.' I gave him my promise; and all the prosperity and blessings. which I acquired, I acquired through the compassionate regard of that Darwesh." The probability is that never

3 Others say that his brothers and brothers' sons were concerned in this affair, and that the merchants were of Bukhārā.

Sadr also does not mean judge only: it has other meanings.

² Kur'an, Chap, xii.

⁴ See Dowson, in Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 320-1, who says—"When they brought him to the drove of horses they sold him to the dealer. . . . The horse-dealers took him to Bukhárá, and sold him to one of the relations of the chief judge of that city" &c. The printed text here is perfectly correct and as rendered above, with the exception of merchant for merchants in the first sentence. The word bāzargān does not mean "horse-dealer" any more than ass-dealer, for it signifies a merchant or trader.

⁵ Being himself in this Sultān's service, our author might have made himself acquainted with the events of his early days, instead of trusting to "one of the trustworthy," and particularly as he stood so high in the monarch's favour.

was a sovereign of such exemplary faith, and of such kindheartedness⁶ and reverence towards recluses, devotees, divines, and doctors of religion and law, from the mother of creation ever enwrapped in the swaddling bands of dominion?

From that priestly and saintly family a merchant, whom they used to call the Bukhārā Ḥājī, purchased Shams-ud-Dīn*. Subsequently, another merchant, whom they were wont to style Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, of the Tight Tunic, purchased him of the Bukhārā Ḥājī, and brought him to the city of Ghaznīn. At that period, no Turk superior to him in comeliness, commendable qualities, agreeable manners, and of such indications of intelligence and sagacity, had they brought to that capital. He was mentioned in terms of commendation to the Sulṭān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, and command was given [by the Sulṭān] that they should name his price. He, along with another Turk, was in one team, and the latter Turk they were in the habit of calling I-bak. The sum of a thou-sand dīnārs of pure Ruknī gold was specified for the two-

⁶ The following curious anecdote is related of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, by some authors. Sultan I-yal-timish was greatly enamoured of a Turkish slave-girl in his haram, whom he had purchased, and sought her caresses, but was always unable, from some latent cause, to effect his object. This happened upon several occasions. One day he was seated, having his head anointed with some perfumed oil by the hands of that same slave-girl, when he felt some tears fall on his head from above. On looking up, he found that she was weeping. He inquired of her the cause. She replied "Once I had a brother who had just such a bald place on his head as you have, and it reminds me of him." On making further inquiries it was found that the slave-girl was his own sister. They had both been sold as slaves, in their early childhood, by their inhuman half-brothers; and thus had Almighty God saved him from committing a great crime. Budā'ūni states in his work, "I heard this story myself, from the Emperor Akbar's own lips, and the monarch stated that this anecdote had been orally traced to Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Balban himself."

⁷ Compare ELIOTT, vol. ii. page 321. Our author must certainly have had a recent birth in his family about the time he penned this account, or have been expecting one, since he uses so many "swaddling bands."

⁸ The Muntakhab-ut-Tawärikh states that, by some accounts, the kinsman of the Şadr-i-Jahān of Bukhārā sold Shams-ud-Din to Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din, and that some say Kutb-ud-Din purchased him, and took him to Hind.

⁹ A few copies have two thousand, but one seems to be correct. Another author says the sum was 1000 Kabki dinars, a second that it was 1000 for each, and Buda'ūni says 1 lak of tanguks. It is not to be supposed that the Suljan fixed the price. There were brokers whose business it was to value

The <u>Kh</u>wäjah [merchant or master], Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, of the Tight Tunic, declined selling him [<u>Shams-ud-Dīn</u>] for that amount; and the Sultan commanded that no one should purchase him, and that the sale should be prohibited.

The Khwaiah, Jamal-ud-Din, Muhammad, after that he had staved at Ghaznin a year, determined to proceed to Bukhārā, and he took Shams-ud-Din along with him thither, and, for another three years, he remained in Bukhārā. After that he was brought to Ghaznin a second time, and continued there for the period of another year. because it was not permitted that any one should purchase him, until Sultan 1 Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, after the holy war of Nahrwalah and the conquest of Guiarat, along with Malik Nasir-ud-Din, Husain-i-Khar-Mil 3, proceeded to Ghaznin, and heard his story. Kutb-ud-Din solicited permission from Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, to purchase him. The Sultan replied: "Since a command has been issued that he should not be purchased at Ghaznin. let them take him to the city of Dihli and there he can be purchased 4."

Kutb-ud-Dîn gave directions to Nizām-ud-Dîn, Muhammad', to remain behind at Ghaznîn, for the purpose of transacting some affairs of his, and, after his own determination of returning to Hindūstān, requested him, on his return, to bring along with him to Dihli, Jamāl-ud-Dîn of the Tight Tunic, in order that the purchase of Shams-ud-Dîn might be there effected. According to Kutb-ud-Dîn's command, Nizām-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, on his return, brought them [the two slaves] along with him to the capital, Dihlî; and Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn purchased both

slaves, and another writer says "the brokers fixed the price of the two as our author states."

"1 Malik Kutb-ud-Din then, and still a mamluk or slave.

8 'Izz-ud-Din, Husain, son of Khar-mil probably, although he may have

had a brother named Nāşir-ud-Din. See page 516.

² For the events of this so called conquest, see the notes to the account of Kyndud-Din, I-hab. The word used signifies victory, taking a city, &c., swell as conquest. The Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā more correctly says, after taking Nahrwālah and chastisement [24-21] of Bhīm Diw. See notes ¹ and ², p. 516.

⁴ The idiom varies considerably here in the different sets of copies of the text. Another writer says "buying or selling him in Ghaznīn is not proper, after commands to the contrary: let them take him into the Dihlî territory and there sell him."

⁶ See note ², page 516, paragraphs 6 and 7.

the Turks for the sum of a hundred thousand <code>jitals*. The</code> other Turk, named I-bak, received the name of Tam-ghāj, and was made Amīr of Tabarhindah; and subsequently, in the engagement which took place between Sulṭān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, and that beneficent of his time—Sulṭān Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, he was killed. Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, was made Sar-i-Jān-dār [chief of the Jān-dārs or Guards*] to Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, who styled him son, and retained him near himself, and he continued to rise in office and in dignity daily; and Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, discerning within him proofs of rectitude and integrity, both in movement and at rest, outwardly as well as inwardly, by the light thereof, advanced him from one position to another until he raised him to the office of Amīr-i-Shikār [Chief-

6 This sum is mentioned by several authors, but they probably copy our author's words. Respecting the jital see note?, page 584. If this is correct it is evident that the jital must have been of a far higher value than there mentioned, and much more than that assigned to it by Thomas in his "PATHÁN KINGS OF DELHI," page 160 = ½ of a silver tangah—about 2s, or a ripā, or 100,000 jitals = 1562½ füpls. As his Khwājah had refused the sum of 1000 ruknī dinārs for the two slaves, it is natural to suppose that he would not have sold them for less than that to Kuṭb-ud-Dfn, yet, at the value assigned to the jital by the Haft-Iklim—1280 to the rūpi—Kuṭb-ud-Dfn would have purchased them for little over 78 rūpīs and 8 ānahs, an impossible sum. Another work, the Tagkarat-ul-Multūk, says 50 laks of jitals, but even this would be but little over 3900 rūpīs. The sum mentioned by Budā'ūnī is far more probable, namely a luk of tangahs. I have given elsewhere the meaning of ruknī. See Blochmanni's translation of the Ā-ix, page 31.

The name of the other Mamlük, I-bak, is turned into Taghākh, instead of Tamphāj, in the revised text of Firishtah, and instead of Tabarhindah it has Pathindah—saige Firishtah also asserts that Malik Kuṭb-uḍ-Dīn, I-bak, gave the other slave, who bore another name, that of I-yal-timish, but the opposite is the fact. The same writer also states that I-yal-timish accompanied his master in the expedition against Kālinjar in 599 H. Tamghāj must have been superior in every way, at that time, to have been, at once, made Amfr of Tabarhindah.

7 The signification assigned by lexicographers to this word is armourbearer, but Jān-dār also signifies a guardian, custodian, conservator, and the like. Under the Sulfāns of Egypt it was the title of a class of officers, whose duty was to guard the door of the Sulfān, to convey and enforce his orders with respect to Amirs, and guard the prison styled the Zardah-khānah [Zard or Zardd J], in which persons of rank were confined. The Amīri-Jān-dār-equivalent to Sar-i-Jān-dār here—was the chief of these officers. This is the title, which, in ELLIOT, is turned into Sirjāndār Turkī referred to in note *, page 608. See also Lane's Arabian Nights, note *) to Chap z. Firishtah says the Jāndārs were the Jz-which means slaves; but such cannot be correct, for Sulfān Mu'izz-ud-Din himself was Sar-i-Jān-dār to his brother Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din. The Jān-dār sueva, sa most trustworthy, no doubt.

Huntsman]. Subsequently, when Gwāliyūr was taken she became Amīr of Gwāliyūr; and, after that, he acquired the fief of the town of Baran and its dependencies. Some time after this, as proofs of tact, energy, valour, and highmindedness were unmistakeably displayed by him, and the beneficent Sulṭān, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, noticed and marked all these [accomplishments] in him, he conferred upon Shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'ūn shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un shams-ud-Dīn the fief of the territory of Budā'un sham

When the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, returned from his campaign against Khwārazm, and when, in the engagement at And-khūd, a reverse befell the troops of Khiṭā¹, and the Khokhar² tribes had begun to rebel and manifest contumacy, he moved from Ghaznīn for the purpose of making war on that unbelieving people¹. Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, in conformity with the Sultān's orders, led the [available] forces of Hindūstān to the scene of action⁴; and Shams-ud-Dīn, with the contingent troops of Budā'ūn, accompanied him².

During the engagement [which ensued], in the height of the conflict, Shams-ud-Dîn, in all his panoply, rode right into the water of the river Jilam [Jhilam] in which those active rascals had made their place of shelter, and displayed great valour, and by the wounds inflicted by [his men's?] arrows discomfited them; and his warlike feats,

8 After it was surrendered rather. See page 546. Another writer states that Baran and its dependencies were added to his fief of Gwāliyūr.

⁹ At this time, and for some time after, the fief of the territory of Budā'ūn

was the highest in the Dihli kingdom.

¹ Our author in all the copies of the text, and the printed text likewise, both here, as well as under the reign of Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn, makes the false statement, which his own words prove untrue, that the forces of Khiṭā were defeated, when Mu'izz-ud-Dîn was so utterly overthrown with the loss of his whole army before Andkhūd [Inddakhūd], and would have been taken captive but for the intervention of Sulţān 'Usmān of Samrkand. Compare Ellior, vol. ii. page 322.

² See note ¹, page 481.

3 These people were converted to Muhammadanism, according to Firishtah, who perhaps had no authority for so stating, previous to this. See same note, last para., page 484.

4 See note 1, page 481, para. 4.

5 Shams-ud-Din, according to another writer, having assembled together a considerable force from Budā'un and the Koh-pāyah, joined his master, Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din.

6 In some copies "rabble rout" or "set of vagabonds," &c. They appear to have taken shelter in one of the islands of the Ihilam.

7 The original merely mentions that "by arrow wounds he caused those

whilst in that water, reached such a pitch, that he was despatching those infidels from the height of the waters to the lowest depths of Hell:—"They were drowned, and cast into the fire [of hell]."

During that feat of agility and gallant exploit, the eye of the Sulţān-i-Ghāzi, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhanımad, son of Sām, fell on these proofs of boldness and valour, and he directed inquiry to be made respecting his quality. When the royal mind became enlightened on the subject of who he was, he sent for Shams-ud-Din, and distinguished him by conferring a special dress of honour upon him; and commanded Malik Kuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, saying: "Treat I-yal-timish well, for he will distinguish himself." The Sulṭān further directed that they should draw up the deed of his freedom, and regarded him with his royal countenance, and conferred upon him the felicity of the free.

When Sultān Ķuṭb-ud-Din, I-bak, died at Lohor, the Sipah-Sālār ' [Commander of Troops] 'Alī-i-Ismā'il, who was the Amīr-i-Dād [Lord Justice] of the capital city, Dihlī, in concert with other Amīrs and high officials, wrote letters

infidels discomfiture," but it can scarcely refer to the arrows he alone may have discharged. Firishtah asserts that "he defeated the Khokhars, and killed [his followers did?] 10,000 or 12,000 of them, and was subsequently made Amir-ul-Umrā;" but, unfortunately for this statement of the Dakhani historian, no such office or title existed in those days.

8 Two different words of the same signification are here used in the two sets of copies which agree with each other, some have مشيش The different copyists could scarcely have been the cause of these differences in the idiom which are very numerous throughout our author's work.

9 Kur'an, chap. lxxi. verse 25.

1 There was no such Europeanized term in those days as "commander-inchief," and, if there were, there would have been a great number of commanders, for the term Sipah-Sälär is applied to several persons often at one and the same time. One of the oldest copies of the text calls 'Ali-i-Isma'il [i. e. 'Ali, son of Isma'il] "Amir-Zadah," an Amir's son. The best Paris copy leaves out the word Sipah-Sālār altogether, and that reading would remove all difficulty, but it is a solitary instance, for all the others have Amir-i-Dad. Dad certainly means justice, equity, &c., and perhaps the person in question may have heard complaints and disposed of them with the aid of Muftis and Kāzīs; but the command of troops seems incompatible with the office of judge. Some other authors say the Sipah-Sālār 'Alī-i-Ismā'īl, and the Amīri-Dad, and other grandees and officials, invited him to come to Dihli and assume the sovereignty, and some say 'Alî-i-Ismā'il was governor of Dihli, and they style the other Amir Da'ud. Another writer says "Amir of Dihli," which is more probable. Firishtah, according to the revised text, has "Amir Dā'ūd, the Dîlāmi." The latter word is absurd here. See note , page 529.

to Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, at Buda'un, and besought him [to come thither and assume authority]. Having come, he ascended the throne of the kingdom of Dihli in the year 607 H., and took possession of it. As the Turks and Kuthi Amirs from different parts had gathered together before Dihli, and some of the Turks and Mu'izzi Amirs had also united with them, and were intent upon resistance 2 [to this usurpation of authority on the part of I-val-timish], they left Dihli, and came out, and they [all] combined in the immediate neighbourhood, and broke out into sedition and rebellions. The august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, with the cavalry of the centre [contingents forming the centre division of the Dihli troops] and his own immediate followers, issued from the city of Dihli, and, in front of the plain of Jud, overthrew them, and put most of the leaders [of the party] to the sword 4.

² Compare Elliot, vol. ii., page 323.

3 The Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir says, în its usual inflated style, that "the Sar-i-Jān-dār, who was a Turk [he was not named "Sirjinular Turkh," as in ELLLOT, vol. ii., page 237—for Sar-i-Jān-dār is the office this Turk held, see note 7, page 603], who was the head of all sedition, and who put forth his arm to shed Musalmān blood, with a body of san guinary Turks [the Turks hes service of the Ghūriān Sulfians were Musalmāns], broke out into rebellion. Although the Sulfān had been often urged to repress their outbreak, he refrained, for some time, from doing so. At length he resolved to reduce them, and with a considerable army," &c.

This is no other than the affair mentioned under the account of Sulfain Arām Shāh, which see. What our author here means to say is, that those Turks and Mu'izaī and Kuṭbī Amīrs, and men of note, then in Dihlī, did not join the Shamsī party, and they left the city and joined the partizans of the late Sulfaïn's son, or, rather, adopted son, Ārām Shāh. The Amīrs and Turks, however, were not finally reduced till some time after.

See next page.

Another writer states that most of the Kuthī Amīrs submitted, but that some of them, in concert with several Mu'izzī Amīrs who were in Diblī and parts around, rose, collected together, and came to an engagement with Shams-ud-Dīn and his party; but their efforts were without avail, and they

were defeated and put to the sword.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir states that the battle was fought close to the Bāgh:-i-Jūn [Jūd?] near the capital, but other authors I have been quoting from time to time agree with the more modern copies of the text, and say it occurred in the Jūn plain [1,=* waste plain, &c.]; but all the oldest copies have as above. The Bāgh:-jūd, not Jūn, is often mentioned by our author.

The Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh says the defeated Amirs were put to death at

different times. See page 529, and note 4.

4 Some few modern copies and the printed text have "and directed that their heads should be brought under the sword," but there is not a word about their "horsemen." Firishlah says two of the principal Amfrs, Ak-Sunkar

Subsequently to this, Sultān Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-duz, from Lohor and <u>Gh</u>aznīn entered into a compact with him, and sent him a canopy of state and a Dūr-bash ^s. Between Sultān <u>Shā</u>ms-ud-Dīn and Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, contention used continually to arise for the possession of Lohor, Tabarhindah, and Kuhrām; and, in the year 614 H, the former inflicted a defeat upon Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah.

Upon several other occasions, in different parts of the territories of Hindūstān , hostilities arose between him [Shāms-ud-Din] and the Amirs and Turks; but, as the favour of the Most High was his aider and defender, He used to award victory to him, and all those who used to revolt against him, or rebel against his authority, used to be reduced. The Divine assistance and protection having, for a considerable time, been extended towards him, Sultān

and Farrukh Shāh, were killed, and that the Sari-Jān-dār fled with some others. The same author also states, contrary to his predecessors, that in 68 H. I-yal-timish marched against the ruler of the Kathah [1] of Jālor—بالرم—سالرم—سالر bore the name of Ūdīsah [Ūdī Sah?], reduced him and extorted tribute! His authority for this is not given. At this period I-yal-timish was scarcely master of the Dihlī kingdom.

⁸ This passage is thus rendered in ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 323. "Sulfan Táju-d dín made a treaty with him from Lahore and Ghazni and sent him some intigrino of rovalty."

The Dīn-bāṣħ here referred to, which literally signifies "stand aside!" and does not mean "baton," was a kind of spear with two horns or branches, the wood of the staff of which used to be studded with jewels and ornamented with gold and silver. This used to be carried before the sovereign when he issued forth, in order that people, perceiving it from a distance, might know that the king was coming, and that they might make way for him by standing on one side. In battle also it was carried, so that, in case any one should cast a lasso—which was made of leather, and continued in use down to nearly recent times—in the direction of the king, it might, by the Dūr-bāṣħ, be turned aside. Some others say, a canopy of state and other emblems of royalty were sent to 1-yal-timisħ.

Firishtah states that I-yal-timish accepted a canopy of state and a standard from the Häkim of Ghazafin for the latter's honour's sake! The Dakhani historian truly is a very great authority!

Tāj-µd-Dīn, 1-yal-dūz, was strong and powerful at this time, and the probability is that Shams-ud-Dīn, 1-yal-timigh, sought to be recognized by him as ruler of Ghaznin in succession to Sultān Mu'izzud-Dīn, thinking that such recognition would tend to make the Mu'izzi chiefs and Turks more compliant to his rule. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's nephew, at this time was either dead—for there is great discrepancy as to dates—or he was powerless. See note 8, page 526, para. 5.

6 Hindustan refers here to the country immediately east of Dihli, the Do-ab of Antarbed, &c. Shams-ud-Din brought under his jurisdiction all the different parts of the kingdom, and the dependencies of the capital, Dihli, together with Buda'un, Awadh, Banaras, and

the Siwalikh.

Sultan Tai-ud-Din, Yal-duz, being obliged to evacuate This territory before the Khwarazmi army, retired towards Lohor 7: and between him and Sultan Shams-ud-Din. hostilities arose about the boundaries [of their dominions], and an engagement took place between their respective armies at Tarā'in s, in the year 612 H., and Sultan Shams-ud-Din was victorious, Sultān Tāj-ud-Din, Yal-duz, was taken prisoner, and, in accordance with his [Shams-ud-Din's] command, they brought Yal-duz to Dihli, and sent him [from thence] to Buda'un, and there he was buried 9.

,7 Tai-ud-Din, I-val-duz, came into the Lähor province and took possession of it and its capital, and ousted the followers of Kaba-jah. See page 505.

This engagement took place in the neighbourhood of Tara'in, the scene of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's defeat and subsequent victory over Rae Pithora. The Taj-ul-Ma'asir says, at this time, Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, was about to undertake an expedition against some part of the Hindu territories as yet unsubdued, or some Hindū chief, who, during the late disturbances consequent on the death of Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, and the dethronement of his son fadopted sonl, by Shams-ud-Din, had freed himself from the Musalman yoke. See ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 239, note 1, where these Turks-Turkish slaves or Turkish chiefs, such as are referred to under Aram Shah's reign-are turned into unconverted [for which there is not a shadow of authority] TURKS, and are made out to have caused a revival of HINDU power, because, in the flatulent words of the Taj-ul-Ma'asir, one, who is styled [not in the original however | Sirjandar Turki, "opened his hand to shed the blood of Musalmans," In the meantime, Sultan Taj-ud-Din, I-val-duz, in 611 H., made some demands upon Shams-ud-Din, who, from the fact of his accepting the dur-bash and canopy of state, had acknowledged his superiority. Shams-ud-Din, being unwilling to accept these demands, whatever they were-for they are not specified in any author-I-yal-duz, who had possessed himself of the Panjab. advanced as far as Thanisar, resolved to enforce them, and was moving upon Dihli, when Shams-ud-Din, now sufficiently powerful to resist them, resolved to oppose him, and advanced to Samand [Samanah?], and the troops of the two kingdoms encountered near Tara'in on the 3rd of Shawwal, 612 H. I-yal-duz's troops fell suddenly upon the left wing of the Dihli troops during the engagement [they did so probably at the outset], but I-yal-duz was wounded by an arrow aimed at him by the Mu-ayyid-ul-Mulk Ithis is his title only-the name is wanting. I-yal-duz's own Wazir bore that title, which is one given to Wazīrs], and I-yal-dūz's forces were defeated, and he was himself taken prisoner.

9 Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūz, was taken to Dihli to be paraded, and was sent away to the fortress of Buda'un. Why he was sent there-the fief of Buda'un had been so long Shams-ud-Din's-is obvious enough. Our author too

Subsequently, in the year 614 H., Shams-ud-Dîn fought an engagement with Malik [Sulṭān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah¹, and the latter was overthrown; and, when the calamities, consequent upon the appearance of Chingiz Khān, the Mughal, fell upon Khurāsāi, in the year 618 H.², Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dîn, Khwārazm Shāh, defeated by the army of infidels, retired in the direction of Hindūstān. The sedition of the Khwārazm Shāhāhs reached the limits of [the province of] Lohor³; and Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn marched from Dihlī towards Lohor¹ with the forces of Hindūstān, and Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh, having turned aside⁵

buries him silently without mentioning his death. The Tabaţāt-i-Akbarī and a few others say that he was &\psi of a Budātīu nutil he died, but others state that he was put to death there in the same year. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir which was written at that period, at Diblīt, of course, is silent on this part of the subject. See page 505, note \$, and page 506.

¹ Budā'ūni makesa a great blunder about this affair; he says this was the third time Shans-ud-Din had marched against Kabā-jah, in 614 H., and that the latter was drowned in the Panj-äb (the five rivers) in 615 H.! The Tagkarat-ıl-Mulūk says the first notice Kabā-jah had of Shams-ud-Din's hostility was his appearance on the frontier of his province of Uchchah in 614 H. See note ⁸, page 534.

² Fasih-i says in 617 H., but that some say 618 H. The best St. Petersburg copy of the text has 620 H.

³ At this period, and for sometime after, the frontier of the Dihli kingdom only extended to the Makhiālah Hills or Salt Range. See note ³, page 534.

The words used here in all the copies, and in the printed text also, are على كرف which mean "turned aside," and "feet hefore" is incorrect, and the text says nothing whatever about "some fighting followed on the frontiers of Lahore": the words are ماله الله كالله الله كالله

Sulţān Jalāl-ud-Dīn had only about 10,000 men with him: otherwise, from the easy way in which he overthrew Kabā-jah, there is great probability that, being of Turkish lineage himself, on his mother's side, the Turks in Hindūstān might have gone over to him, and he would have overturned the kingdom of Dihlīf. All that the "august" Sulfain appears to have done was to have Jalāl-ud-Dīn's envoy put to death—some say he had him poisoned—under pretence that he was plotting against him, then, in order to gain time, sending an emissary with rich presents to mollify the Sulţān, and, in order to try and get him into his power, offering him an asylum near Dihlī—an asylum possibly like Iyal-dīu met with at Budā'ūm—at omb. No doubt Shans-ud-Dīn got troops ready, and no doubt despatched some towards the Panjāb, but he did not go himself to face Jalāl-ud-Dīn. See note *, page 293. The Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārligh states that Jalāl-ud-Dīn did actually invest Lāhor for a time.

The Tazkarat of Daulat Shāh, quoted by Elliot, says Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn was joined whilst in the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah by the Lakhiā Hazārahs,

from the host of Hindustan, marched away towards Sind and Siwastan ⁶.

After these events, in the year 622 H., Sultan Shams-ud-Din marched an army towards the territory of Lakhaṇa-wati, and [Sultan] Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, Khalji', placed the neck of service within the yoke of subjection, and presented thirty elephants and eighty laks of treasure, and read the Khutbah, and stamped the coin, in the sacred name of the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din.

In the year 623 H., the Sultan determined to take the fort of Rantabhūr, which, for its exceeding strength, solidity, and impregnability, is famous and notorious throughout all

numbering 700 men, from the neighbourhood of Balkh, and that the ruler of Mulţān [Kabā-ah] made peace with Jalāl-ud-Dīn; and, what is more astonishing, that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kubād, the son of the king of Hind, gave Jalāl-ud-Dīn his daughter in marriage, and the latter maintained power in Hind for three years and seven months. Here is a perfect jumble of events, and the Khokhar chief has been mistaken for the "King of Hind."

A European writer however [D'Ahsson] makes still greater blumders. Ife says that, when Jalāl-ud-Din heard that Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, was moving "to the assistance of Kubacha," he went to meet him, but, instead of fighting, I-yal-timish proposed peace and the hand of his daughter, which were both accepted by the Sulţān! See note 's, para. 2, page 293. Here Buršk, the Hājib, governor of Kirmān, is mistaken for I-yal-timish!

One would scarcely conceive, from this, that Sulfan Jalal-ud-Din annexed great part of the Panjib and Sind, and that he remained nearly three years in those parts, and only left them, on the despatch of a great army of Mughals against him, and the fact of his presence being much required in

'Irāķ. See the reign of Jalāl-ud-Din, pages 285-299.

7 Elphinstone, led astray by some translation probably, for no History makes such a statement, makes several terrible errors here. He has: "In the same year with this expedition to Sind [it took place two years after the Lakhanawati affair, in 624-5 H.], Altamsh marched against BAKHTIÁR KHILII [Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, who is here referred to, had been then dead troenty years], who looked upon Behar and Bengal as his own conquest; and, though he professed obedience to Kuth u din (to whose daughter he was married), openly disclaimed all dependence on his successor. [It was I-yal-timish-his Altamsh -not Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, who married Kuth-ud-Din's daughter. 1 Altamsh was successful in this undertaking; he deprived BAKHTIÁR of Behár. (the government of which he conferred on his own son,) and obliged him to hold Bengal under the crown of Dehli. BAKHTIÁR made a subsequent attempt to retrieve his losses, was defeated by the prince who governed Behar, and lost his life in the conflict." Thus Muhammad, son of Bakht-yar, Muḥammad, son of Sherān, 'Alī, son of Mardan, and Ghiyas-ud-Din. 'Iwazfour different rulers are made ONE. This truly is pretty history "to teach the young idea"! See pages 574 and 594, and note 2.

* There is not a word about "current coin" in the text, but the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and some authors who copy from it say, 80,000 silver tungahs. See

note 2, page 584.

Hindūstān. They have narrated in the Chronicles of the people of Hind after this manner, that seventy kings and more had appeared [at various times] at the foot of its walls, and not one of them had been able to reduce it a After some time, however, in the year 623 H., it was taken by the hands of the Sultān's servants, through the favour of the Creator. A year subsequent to this, in 624 H., he marched against the fort of Mandawar within the limits of the Siwālikh [territory], and its capture, likewise, the Almighty God facilitated for him, and he came back, and much booty fell into the hands of the servants of his dynasty.

Subsequently, in 625 H., the august Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-tīmish, came with an army from the capital city, Dīhlī, into the territories of <u>Uchch</u>ah and Multān; and the writer of these words, the Maulānā Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the

⁹ According to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, Rantabhūr was in the possession of the Musalmāns in the time of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Din. See ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 219, and note 3, page 516, para. 4.

¹ Months in some copies of the text.

² This remark shows that he was not himself present there.

[&]quot;The oldest copies are as above—بناور but some others have سندور Mandud, and سندور Mandud, and سندور Mandud. The Tabakāt-i-Akharī has Mandawar; while bludī'uīi, who copies from it, has Mandū in some copies, and Mandawar in others; and ādds that I-yal-timish annexed, with that stronghold, the Koh-i-Siwalikh. Mirāt-i-Jahān-Numā says, "Mandawar with all the forts and **atpah*s of the Siwālikh." Zubdal-at-Tawārīkh has "Mandāwar—بالله "كالله has "Mandū—باله لله "إلى which is totally incorrect—and all Siwālikh."

Our author, at page 468, mentions "the seat of government, Ajmir, with the whole of the Siwalikh [territory], such as Hansi, Sursuti," &c.; and includes the whole tract of country south of the Himalayah, between the Ganges and the Sutlai, and extending as far south as Hansi in the Siwalikh or Koh-i-Siwālikh: and at page 200 he states that Nag-awr is in the Siwalikh also. Some writers state that the Siwalikh extends as far west as the borders of Kashmir. See note 4, page 468; and ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 325, note 1. Tod says "Mundore [Mandawar] was the capital of the Purihars," and capital of Marwar, "five miles N. of Jodpur." There is no doubt but that this is the place, the ruins of which indicate what its immense strength must have been at the time in question. . It is described in Tod, vol. i. page 721; and in another place he says it was taken from "Mokul," the Purihar prince, by "Rahup," who "obtained Cheetore in s. 1257 (A.D. 1201), and shortly after sustained the attack of Shemsudin [Sultan Shams-ud-Din is referred to], whom he [Rahup] met and overcame in battle at Nagore." Of course I who could defeat Rajputs? Shams-ud-Din did not come to the throne for nine years after the above date. There is a Mandawar-, even now, a large kasbah, with extensive buildings of burnt brick, and several great masjids, the remains of former days, on the route between Dara-nagar and Saharan-pur, included in the Siwalikh as above mentioned, but not the place here referred to.

month of Rajab, in the year 624 H.4, had reached the territories of Sind, Üchchah, and Multān, from the side of Ghūr and Khurāsān. On the 1st of Rabī-ul-Awwal, 625 H.6, the august Sulṭān, Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, reached the foot of the walls of the fort of Üchchah. Malik [Sulṭān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, had his camp pitched before the gate of the kaṣbah [town] of Ahrāwat, and the whole of his fleet and boats, on board of which the baggage and followers of his army were embarked, were moored in the river in front of the camp, when, on a Friday, after [noon-day] prayers, swift messengers arrived from the direction of Multān and gave information that Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ai-yitim, the feudatory of Lohor, had appeared before the walls of Multān.

The august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dīn, having set out by way of Tabarhindah towards <u>Uchchaha</u>, the capital of Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, he fled to his fleet, and, taking along with him all his forces, retired towards

4 See note ², page 544, where he contradicts this statement, and mentions other dates. <u>Chingix Khān</u> died in 624 H. Several authors, including that of the Tabakāti-i-Akbarā and his *prolégé, Budā'uñī, leave out this expedition of 1-yal-timigh against Kabā-jah; but drown the latter in 614 H., having confounded the first hostilities between them with the last. See note ⁴, page 532.

5 At page 541 he says he came "from Khurāsān by way of Ghaznīn and Banīān."

6 In his notice of Malik Naşîr-ud-Dîn, At-VITIM, in Section XXII., our author also says 623 II., but at page 541 he says 624 H. Under the account of Malik Tāj-ud-Dîn, Sanjar-i-GAZLAK Khān, in the same Section, our author contradicts his statement here made, and says that this Malik was the first of the wolks of the Dihlî dynasty with whom he came into contact, and that he arrived before Uchchah with troops fifters days before Sulţān Shams-ud-Dîn's arrival, and that he—the author—came out of Uchchah and went to his camp to obtain an interview with Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn on the 16th of Şafar, 625 H. At the bottom of the same page, however, he makes another statement, and gives 628 H. as the date, and, over leaf, a different statement.

7 This place is not now known, and the correct pronunciation may be Ihrāwat. In some copies it is written Ahrawat, in others Ahūrat, and in one Harāwat; but it is evidently the same word, with the first letter left out by the copyist. The courses of the rivers in this tract have greatly altered since these days.

8 This is the meaning of the word per used, but facing or opposite would be more appropriate; as, wherever the camp might have been pitched, it would have its front, not its rear, to the land.

9 In the account given of this chief, in the next Section, the vowel points are given with the word | Is | Some few copies have what appears like | Some few copies have what appears like | Is but what is supposed to be | is but the end of the letter | carelessly written.

¹ He succeeded in getting possession of that stronghold by capitulation, and the dependencies at once followed.

Bhakar, with orders to his Wazīr, the 'Ain-ul-Mulk, Husaini-Asha'ri , to convey the treasure contained within the fort of Uchchah towards the fort of Bhakar. Sultan Shamsud-Din pushed forward the van of his forces to the foot of the walls of Uchchah, under the [two] great Maliks at the head of those troops, one [of whom] was Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sālāri, who was the Amir-i-Hāiib [Lord Chamberlain] of the Court, and the other, Malik Taj-ud-Din. Sanjar-i-Gazlak Khān 3, Sultāni Shamsi 4, who was the Malik of Tabarhindah. Four days after this, the Sultan himself, with the rest of the army, the elephants, baggage, and followers, arrived before the walls of Uchchah, and the camp was pitched . The Wazīr of his kingdom, the Nizāmul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaidi, and other Maliks, were then despatched towards the fort of Bhakar in pursuit of Malik [Sultan] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah.

For a period of three months, hostilities went on at the foot of the fortress of Üchchah; and, on Tuesday, the 28th of the sacred month, Jamādī-ul-Awwal, in the year 625 H.7, that fort surrendered on terms of capitulation. Mailk [Sultān] Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Kabā-jah, in that same month,

² The Tärikh-i-Ma'şümi of Mir Ma'şüm-i-Bhakharî [of Bhakar or Bhakhar : it is written both ways] incorrectly styles him the Nigām-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad, son of As'ad. 'Ain-ul-Mulk, signifiying the Eye of the State—like Nigām-ul-Mulk—is not a name, but a title given to Wazirs. Aṣḥa'r is the name of an 'Anab tribe of the tribes of Sabā, of which came the celebrated Musalmain doctors Abū Mūsā and Abū Ḥissan. Their followers are styled Aṣḥa'rifun. The Wazir came doubtless of that family. "'Ashgḥati'' is not correct. Compare Exllorf here, vol. ii, page 325.

³ Or Gajzlak : it is written both ways.

^{4 &}quot;Sulţānî Shamsî" signifies that he was the Mamlük of Sulţān Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, and rose to rank in his service. A notice of him and others will be found in Section XXII.

⁵ The arrival of the Sultan upon the scene has been already mentioned above.

Some copies of the text have "one month," but it is, no doubt, incorrect; and in some the date is the 27th of the month; but in no copy is it the 29th, although some modern copies have Jamaãd'-ul-Akhir.

⁷ The Tabakāt-i-Akbari, Budā'uni, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, and some others, all mention these events as taking place in 614 H.; and they are all wrong. In this case it is hardly probable that the copyists of all these works could have written 614 for 624, although one might have done so.

The Tazkarat-ul-Mulük states that Kabā-jah's son, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahma Shāh, had concluded a peace on behalf of his father with L-yal-timish, and, after some days, Kabā-jah himself left Bhakhar to return to Uchchah, when he was [accidentally] drowned.

of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, in the same year, threw himself from the walls of the fortress of Bhakar into the Panj-āb, and drowned himself. Some time previous to this, he had despatched his son, Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, to the presence of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish; and, subsequently to that, the treasures and the remainder of the followers of Malik [Sulṭān] Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah, reached the presence of the Court, the Asylum of the World.

That country [Sind], as far as the shore of the ocean, was acquired, and Malik Sinān-ud-Din, Chatī-sar [or Jatī-sar], 8

المائية المنافقة الله والمائية المنافقة الله والمائية المنافقة الله والمائية المنافقة المناف

Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh without points.

The historians of Sind state that that territory, up to the year 583 H., acknowledged the sway of the Ghaznawids, and that, on the downfall of the last of that dynasty, his dominions fell to Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad, Ghūrī [Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's elder brother], and Sind was then included in the Multan province; but all Sind cannot be meant here-not what we understand by Sind. Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, brother of Ghiyas-ud-Din, as early as 578 H. [see note2, page 452], had reduced the territory of Diwal or Dibal. Mir Ma'sum says that, after Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's assassination, Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, possessed himself of Hind and Sind, and held sway over them, and the Khutbah was read for him, fourteen years [four, no doubt, is meant], after which his son, Aram Shah, succeeded him, but he was dethroned from incapacity, and Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, raised to the sovereignty. "At this period," he continues, "the territory of Hindustan was divided into four states [that portion of Hindustan under Musalman sway rather]-Dihli, which pertained to Shams-ud-Din; Multan, Uchchah, and Sind, to Kaba-jah; Lähor, to the officers of I-yal-duz, Sultan of Ghaznin; and Lakhanawati, to the Khali." He then passes on to the Khali in Siwastan, and Shams-ud-Dīn's invasion of Kabā-jah's dominions. See note 9, page 542, para. 6.

Previous to this time, however, Dibal, or Lower Sind [Thathah was not even founded at this period], had fallen into the hands of the Sümrah tribe, which paid, nominally at least, allegiance to the Ghaznawids. Before the downfall of that dynasty, Mu'izz-ud-Din, Ghūrī, subdued that territory; but still the

Ghūrian hold upon it was nominal almost.

 who was Wāli [ruler] of Diwal, presented himself at the Shamsi Court; and, when the blessed mind of that monarch became disengaged through the successes [gained] in that territory, he turned his face towards the sublime seat of government, the city of Dihli.

The author of this book, and writer of these pages, gained the presence of the sublime Court of that monarch of the orthodox, on the first day that the royal camp was pitched before the walls of the fort of <u>Uchchaha</u>; and, having found favour in his sacred sight, when the royal camp moved back again from before the walls of <u>Uchchaha</u>, the author was directed to deliver discourses within the enclosure of the sublime tents; and, in association with the victorious retinue of that beneficent sovereign, he arrived at the city of Dihli in the month of Ramazān, 625 H.

therefore, perfectly clear, that the name given by our author refers to the eleventh of the Sümrah rulers, but the fourteenth according to the Tulpfat-ul-Kirām. Habash, of course, is totally out of the question. See also ELLIOT, vol. i. page 485; and vol. ii. note 2, page 389; and Thomas: PATHÁN KINGS, page 99, note 4.

To pay court to the winning side, and, afterwards, as far as our pious author was concerned, the son of Kabā-jah, and the Firūzi College too, might follow Kabā-jah to the bottom of the Indus.

¹ It has already been mentioned [note, 9, para, 6, page 542] that one reason—or, at least, the plea—why I-yal-timigh attacked Kabā-jah again, and marched against Oehchah, was, that the Khali fugitives, after their defeat by Kabā-jah, and their chief had fallen in the battle, threw themselves upon his protection. This happened towards the end of 623 H., and, early in 625 H., I-yal-timigh appeared before Kabā-jah's capital.

If our author is correct as to the Sulfān's leaving Uchchah for Dihlf, the Tājul-Ma'āṣir [and Rauṣat-uṣ-Ṣafā, which copies it probably] is very much out; for that work states that I-yal-timiṣħ left the Wazīr to carry on the operations, and reached Dihlf again on the 14th of Rabī'-ul-Awwal [the third month] of 624 H.; whilst our author says he reached the capital in Ramaṣān [the ninth month] of 625 H., a difference of eighteen months. One of the oldest copies of the text, however, has 626 H., while the other two oldest leave out the rest of the sentence after the word "Dihlf," thus giving no date.

Mîr Ma'şüm, in his History, says:—"1-yal-timish left his Wazîr to carry on operations against Üchchah, and returned to his capital, thus agreeing with Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir, and that it capitulated, and was taken possession of on the 28th of Jamādī-ul-Awwal [fith month] of 625 H." It was the Wazīr who advanced against Bhakar and penetrated into Lower Sind, and, therefore, it is impossible that Sinān ud-Din, Chatisar or Jatisar, the Sumrah chief of Dibal, could have presented himself at the Shamst Court, when the Sulṭān did not go farther south than Üchehah. He did so to the Wazīr probably, or to the subsequent governor of the new conquest.

The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣīr further states that, at this time [of the Wazīr's invasion of Lower Sind], twelve celebrated forts, which had never before been acquired,

At this time, emissaries from the Khalifah's Court, bearing honours rich and ample, had reached the limits of Nāg-awr; and, on Monday, the 22nd of the month of Rabi-ul-Awwal, 626 H., they reached the Capital. The city was decorated [for the occasion] and this sovereign, and the Maliks, his sons—may they rest in peace!—and other Maliks, his suite, and Slaves likewise, were honoured through this act of policy [on the part] of the Khalifah's Court.

After so much festivity and rejoicing, in the month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, of the before-mentioned year [626 H.] 4,

were taken possession of with Sīwastān and Lūk, as far as the shores of the ocean; and that the Khutbah was read for the Sulfān, and the coin was stamped with his titles and name through all the countries of Hindistant [1], and in the territories of Kuṣdār and Mukrān! The Wazīr, according to Mīr Ma'ṣūm, was left in charge of the government of Sind, and remained in that country up to the year 630 H., when he returned to Court, leaving Nūr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, in charge of Sind.

Our author, however, in his notice of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gazlak Khān, who accompanied the Wazīr in his advance upon Bhakar, states that he, not the Wazīr, was left in charge of the newly-acquired territory; and he is, doubtless, correct. The Wazīr had other duties to perform, and Mīr

Ma'sum has evidently mistaken the one for the other.

No doubt the new governor extended the Shamsi authority in those parts, but it was very temporary, and ceased almost with the reign of I-yal-timigh. Lik is the place referred to at page 200, and has no connexion either with the town, district, or mountains of Lakkt in Sind. There is, I think, some connexion between the Lak tribe of Kurds, at that time, and subsequently, located in the southern part of Sijistān, and Kirmān, mentioned at page 317, note 5.

² Budā'uni, who differs from all other writers, here, and contrary to the work of his patron, says these were 'Arab envoys from Miṣr, bearing with them a dress of honour and honorary titles [a diploma conveying them], but the 'Abbāsī Khalifah of Baghidd, not of Miṣr, was the sender—the Khalifah, Abl Ia'far-Yahnsur, entitled Al-Mustaris B'illah, he 36th 'Abbāsī—the

Ubaidi Ismā'ili Khilāfat of Misr terminated in 567 H.

⁸ When the inhabitants of eastern cities are ordered to decorate their houses on the occasion of rejoicings such as above indicated, the tradespeople, in particular, deck out their shops by hanging out rich shawls, brocades, fine dresses, all kinds of costly articles of merchandize, and even the ornaments and trinkets of their women. Lamps and flags, attached to cords, are drawn across the streets, and the doors and lower parts of private dwellings painted in the gayest colours procumble. The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, followed by Firightah and others, says Kubbaā:—arches, domes, &c.—were erected on this joyful occasion.

According to the translation of this passage in our author in ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 226, the city was only "adorned with their presence;" but the printed text, in this instance, is quite correct, and, like the other copies of the text, has

which means "to prepare," "to adorn," and the like.

Several copies of the text, including the printed text, with but two exceptions, have خدمت dress of honour—for خدمت – service, also action, pro-

information arrived of the decease of the august Malik. Nāsir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, sthe eldest son of Sultan Shams-ud-Din]: and Balkā Malik-i-Husām-ud-Din. 'Iwaz'. cadure, policy, &c. It is ridiculous to imagine that honorary dresses would have been sent by the Khalifah for all the Princes, Maliks, the Sultan's suite, and his Slaves. Conferring such honours broadcast would have lessened the honour. Dresses might have been sent for the Sultan's sons, but even this was unusual. The Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir's statement about this event is the most reliable. It says that the Imam, Mustansir B'illah, sent I-val-timish a dress of honour, and a diploma confirming him in the sovereignty of Hindustan, with the title of "Great Sultan, which was received with much veneration. Next day, 23rd of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 626 H., was fixed for a general reception, at which the Khalifah's diploma was read in the presence of the Sulfan, his sons, and great nobles. In this diploma it was declared that I-val-timish was thereby confirmed in the possession of all the territory which he had subdued. Great joy was manifested on this auspicious occasion, and the Sultan conferred robes of honour upon the Khalifah's envoys, and his own chiefs and nobles."

What led to the arrival of these agents is not stated by historians, but it is probable that I-yal-timigh sought this investiture from the Khalifah, and a title, considering his dynasty sufficiently established to warrant it, when he, some years before, despatched an agent to the Court of Baghdād, or that the Khalifah had some policy of his own to serve in sending it. We may presume that the title bestowed was that mentioned by our author at page 624; but that is the same ats bestowed by Mustanşir's predecessor, Un-Nāṣir, upon Sulţān Mu'zz-ud-Din, Muḥammadi-18-xām. Towards the end of the reign of I-yal-timish, the Wazir-ship is said to have been conferred upon the Fakhr-ul-Mulk, 'Iṣāmī, who for thirty years had been Wazir of Baghdād. He became irritated through some cause or other, left the Khalifah's court, and came to Dihlī, which was not quite such an Olltima Thule as one modern writer supposes, the Khultah being read weekly for the Khalifah's

b That is to say, Balkā Malik, son of Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz [Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz], the Khalj. In some copies of the text the date is 627 H., but, is the address and is the projective to 668.

in the oldest, and, in the majority, it is 628 H.

The hold, acquired over the territory of Lakhanawati by I-yal-timigh, appears to have been of a very partial and temporary character; and the events, which happened subsequently to his accommodation with Sulţān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaa, after he extorted tribute, as mentioned on a previous page, are involved in much obscurity for many years subsequently. In the first place, there is some discrepancy with respect to the year of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iway's, death, which, according to some accounts, including that of the Gaup M.S., took place as early as 617 H., after a reign of twelve years, namely, from 606 H. to 617 H.

I had better first mention, very briefly, what our author states, in his account of Ghiyās ud-Din, I waz, by Malik Nāşir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, I-yal-timiṣh's son, and Ghiyās-ud-Din's being put to death by that prince, and then give the accounts of others, as our author has either suppressed some things, or his ideas of them were confused; and he does not [like other writers] even mention where Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, died, and we must suppose it was in Awadh, not in Lakhaṇawaṭī.

Our author says, in his account of Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Üchchah, but without giving any dates, that, when Sultan I-yal-timish led his forces into the territory of Lakhanawati, and they had overthrown Balkā the Khalj—who, in

the Khalj, rebelled in the territory of Lakhanawaṭī. Sulṭān Shams-ud-Din led the contingents of Hindūstān into that country; and, in the year 628 H., that rebel was secured. The Sulṭān conferred the throne of Lakhanawaṭī upon Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jāni,—on whom be peace!—and, in the month

the list at the end of this reign, is styled Malik Ikhtivar-ud-Din, Daulat Shahi-Balka. Matik of Lakhanawati-he set out on his return to the capital, Dihli, and, on the way, received intimation that, through the decease of Malik Tājud-Din, Sanjar-i-GAZ-LAK Khan, at Uchchah, that province and its dependencies had been conferred upon him. Then he says, that, after the decease of the son of I-val-timish, and that sovereign's proceeding himself into Lakhanawati to suppress the outbreak of Balka, the Khali, he conferred the throne of Lakhanawati upon Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jāni [the same who is styled, in the list at the end of this reign, "Shāh-zādah of Turkistān"], and that, on his removal from or loss of that dignity-but no date is given-Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Yughan-Tat, got it. He greatly distinguished himself in those parts, and, on one occasion, captured a number of elephants in the territory of Bang, which he despatched to Dihli. For this affair he received the title of Yughan-Tat. He held the government until 631 H., when he died in Lakhanawati. On his death, Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughril-i-Tughan Khan, was made governor of Lakhanawati, and there he was at the time of I-yal-timish's death, after which events arose which I shall have to refer to subsequently; but, I may mention that, up to this time, the territory on both sides the Gang was not under his authority, and that he only held the Barindah side.

I will now state what other writers say on this subject. After Sulfän Chiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Twaz, was put to death by Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, son of I-yal-timish, the former's son, styled Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-1'waz, by some, and Ḥuṣām-ud-Dīn-i-Twaz, by thers, but these latter no doubt mean Balkā Malik, the son of Ḥuṣām-ud-Dīn, Twaz, which was the father's name before he took the title of Sulfān Chiyāṣ-ud-Dīn [see page 580], assumed the sovereignty over his father's dominions, and held it some time; and, after the death of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, who held mere nominal authority over Lakhaṇawaṭi for one year, and, according to the Gaur MS., and Jāmī'ut-Twavātkh [not Raṣhi'd-d-Dīn's], from 618 H. to 619 H., alflongh both those works state that he died in 626 H., affairs assumed such an aspect that I-yal-timish had to march into that country with the forces of Hindūstān "to quell the sedition." No particulars are given respecting these operations, nor is the fate of Balkā Malik mentioned; but, as most writers state that he fell into the power of I-yal-timish, his fate may well be supposed.

Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh, in one place, says I-yal-timish entered the Lakhaṇawati territory in 627 H., and, in another place, that, in 628 H., he succeeded in taking the son of Ḥusām-ud-Din, 'Iwaş, after which he gave the throne to 'Izz-

ul-Mulūk, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jāni ; and, in this, other writers agree.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, as well as Zubdat, says that 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, regele for three years and some months, but the former and the Gaur MS. have "from 620 H. to 623 H." Saii-ud-Dīn, Jānā, at succeeded, on the removal of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānā, and ruled up to the time of his death, which happened in 631 H. but the Gaur MS. says he ruled nine years—from 624 H. to 632-H.—till he died. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Tugḥril-i-Tughān Khān, succeeded, and held the government for nearly fourteen years. Further mention of the feudatories of this province will be found in the next Section.

of Rajab of the same year, he returned again to the illustrious capital, Dihli.

In the year 629 H., the Sultan came to the determination of undertaking the reduction of the fort of Gwaliyur"; and, when the pavilion of his dominion was set up at the foot of that stronghold, Mangal Diw 7, the accursed, the son of the accursed Māl Diw, commenced hostilities. The Sultan continued before that fortress for a period of eleven months: and the writer of these words, in the month of Sha'ban of the same year, set out from Dihli, and turned his face towards the threshold of sovereignty, and attained that felicity. The author, at certain stated periods, was commanded to deliver discourses at the private pavilion, Three times in each week discourses were fixed; and, when the month of Ramazan came round, a discourse used to be delivered daily. During the whole ten days of Zi-Hijjah, and ten days of Muharram, discourses were delivered daily; but, during the other months, those same three stated periods were observed weekly, so that ninetyfive times congregations were convened at the entrance of the sublime pavilions. On both days of the respective festivals. Fitr and Uzhā9, in three different places, the

6 After the decease of Kutb-td-Din, I-bak, during the convulsion that thenensued, the Hindus recovered this fortress, which had been surrendered to Kutb-td-Din, after Bahā-ud-Din, Tughril, had reduced it to extremity, as mentioned at page 546. Up to this time the Musalmāns had no opportunity of recovering it.

⁷ The name of this Rāe is very plainly written in several copies of the text, including two of the three oldest and best copies, but the third—the best St. Petersburg copy—has—يكل هود وير—Māgal [evidently intended for ميكل مهود [... Amagal] Bhawa Dīw—being thus different to all the other copies of the text. The other copies have ell—and ½—Māng or Mīlak, and Mīgal or Mīkal.

There is equal, if not more, discrepancy with respect to the father's name also; but, while the St. Petersburg MS. has Mal Diw plainly written, the other two oldest copies have ביל היים אול הא which may be Bast Diw. The remaining copies of the text collated have what appear to be ביל היים ול think this may be meant for Mahā-pālā कहोचाल ألم and the like, which are unintelligible.

9 In his notice of Malik Hindu Khān, in Section XXII., our author relates these matters in quite a different manner, contradicting a good deal of what he

9 The festival, on breaking fast after the Muhammadan fast month, is called

prayers, prescribed for the festivals, were said, in which number of places, on the greater festival of Uzhā, this servant of the state, who is Minhāj-i-Sarāj, was commanded to read the Khutbah for the Uzhā festival, and the appointed prayers, at a spot opposite the northern face of the fortress of Gwāliyūr¹, on which side the town is; and he was honoured with the presentation of a valuable dress of honour.

The fortress was kept under investment, until Tuesday, the 26th of the month Safar, 630 II., when the stronghold of Gwaliyur was acquired. During the night, the accursed Manbal Diw evacuated the fort and fled; and about seven hundred Gabrs' were directed to be brought to public execution before the entrance of the sublime pavilion. After that, Amirs and eminent men were appointed [to different offices]. To the Maid-ul-Umrā, Zivā-ud-Din, Junaidi, the Sultan gave the office of Amir-i-Dad, the Sipah-Salar [Commander of Troops], Rashid-ud-Din, 'Ali, was directed to assume the office of Seneschal, and the Maulana, the writer of this book, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, was nominated to the offices of Kāzi, Khatib, and Imām, and appointed to preside over all matters of the law, and a rich dress of honour, and an ample present, were conferred upon him3. May the Most High God become the sustainer of the purified soul and fragrant body of that victorious, beneficent, and just sovereign, and patron of the enlightened! On the 2nd of the month, Rabi'-ul-Akhir, of this same year 4, the Sultan withdrew from before the fortress of Gwaliyur, and placed the camp at about the distance of a league from the foot of the walls in the direction of Dihli, the capital; and, at that

'Îd-i-Fiţr; and the Uzḥā is on the tenth day of the last month of the Muḥammadan year, in commemoration of Ibralin's offering up his son Isma'il, who, according to their creed, was offered and not Ispa's.

Ompare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 327. Our author, as there stated, could scarcely have repeated prayers "at the fort of Gradition on the northern side" before the fort was taken. The town is situated to the N.W. of the fortress.

3 Compare Ellion.

² The word used is Gabrs, not "persons;" and does not necessarily refer to Pärsis, but is here applied to infidels or pagans, and, therefore, an essay on "Fire-Worship" in these parts is wholly unnecessary. Some writers say 300 Gabrs, but the printed text has 800.

⁴ In this year, 630 H., I-yal-timish purchased Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Balban, who, subsequently, in the year 664 H., succeeded this Sulfan's son on the throne of Dihli.

halting ground, the imper al naubat⁵ five times daily was assumed.

After he returned to the capital, in the year 632 6 H., the

⁵ The imperial naubat, which has been already explained at page 383, note³,

is turned into "a halt of five days" in ELLIOT, which see.

6 In some copies the date is left out altogether, and, in others, the year 631 H. is given, and, in this, several other writers agree, but Alfi has 630 H. Bhilsān, also, is not mentioned at all in some works; and, moreover, our author has confused matters here. There were not two great idol temples destroyed, and it was the great temple dedicated to Mahā-kāl at Ujjan which was three hundred years in building, not at Bhilsān—the town and fortress of that name was destroyed. It is amusing to hear a Hindii relate that "the idol was carried off to Dihli, and cast down before the gateway of the jāmē manjid [not the present one, which was built by Shāh-i-Jahān] for people to kick and trample upon."

It may interest the archæologist to know that the idol is stated, by several writers, to have been buried just beneath the surface "close to the minarah of red sandstone, which is of great height and solidity, one of the many buildings founded by Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, as is mentioned in two inscriptions in the second and third stories," but the numerous titles given to that Sultan are the mere fancy of the artist. Another writer who wrote in Jahangir's time states that "in old Dihli is the great Masjid, outside of which is a minarah of immmense height, to ascend to the top of which is impossible. Those who have measured it say it is 80 paces round at the base, and its height 130 [?] cubits [درع]." A third author, who wrote an account of Dihli from a personal survey nearly a century since, confirms the above statements generally, and gives some further particulars. He says :- "In the mahall of Rae Pithorā are two minārahs, one of red sandstone, which consisted of seven; feight? I stories or divisions, and about 200 yards [cubits] in height, and 15 in thickness [sic in MSS.]. Two of the stories have fallen from the effects of lightning, and, from the building, thousands of mans of lead have been taken. The erection of this minarah is, among many other buildings, attributed to Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-val-timish, as inscribed thereon in two or three places, and close to it, on the west side, is the sepulchre of that great man. This minarah is known by the name of the LATH OF KUTB SAHIB"-neither the minar nor the lath of Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, sovereign of Dihli, the authority for assigning it to whom it would be curious to trace. "On the north side is an obelisk of brass [] about 10 cubits in height and 2 thick, of very great antiquity; and upon it is a vast deal of writing, both in the Hindū-i and Persian character. In the Kotilah of Firuz Shah is another minarah of considerable height. It is said to have been constructed of corundum stone [kurand], ground, and mixed with lac," &c. The other work previously quoted says with respect to this second minarah: "Within a structure called the Shikar-gah of Sultan Firuz Shah is a column in height about 30 cubits [e.s], and about 3 in thickness, which is supposed to be of one piece of stone, and that an equal length lies buried among the bricks and rubbish around it. This would make it, in all, a single stone of 60 cubits in total length, which it would have been impossible to have set upright," &c.

The Kuth minārah is supposed by European writers and archæologists misled, probably, by some incorrect translation of Persian works—to have been not only named after Sulţān Kuṭb-utl-Dīn, I-bak, the first Turk Sulţān Sultan led the hosts of Islam towards Malwah, and took the fortress and town [or city] of Bhilsan, and demolished the idol-temple which took three hundred years in building, and which, in altitude, was about one hundred ells. From thence he advanced to Ujjain-Nagari, and destroyed the idol-temple of Mahā-kāl Diw. The effigy of Bikramajit who was sovereign of Ujjain-Nagari, and from whose reign to the present time one thousand, three hundred7, and sixteen years have elapsed, and from whose reign they date the Hindu-i era, together with other effigies besides his, of Dihli, but to have been founded by him also. The word Kuth was quite sufficient proof in their imaginations; but it is totally incorrect. The minarah is styled the LATH OF KUTH SAHIB, after a celebrated Muhammadan saint, Khwājah Kuth ud Din, Bakht yār, Kāki, the Ūshi [native of Ūsh near Baghdād], whom the Afghans claim as their peculiar saint by the title of "the Afghan Kuth or Pole," the reason for which does not appear, but he probably resided for a time in the Afghan country. He came into Hind, and, first, proceeded to Multan during the reign of Sultan Naşir ud-Dîn, Kaba-jah. Subsequently, he went to Dihli. Such was his sanctity and the veneration in which he was held, that Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish, himself, came forth from the city to receive him and do him reverence, and accompanied him into Dihli. The Khwajah, however, took up his residence at Gilū-khari on account of the scarcity of water in the city. When Shaikh Jalal-ud-Din, the Bustami, who was the Shaikh-ul-Islām, died, I-yal-timish wished him to take that office, but the Kuth-i-Afghan declined it. He died on the 24th of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 633 H. See the Mir'at-ul-Afaghinab, Makhzan Afghani and Tarikh-i-Murassa' [Pushto] of Afzal Khau, Khatak. Dorn, in his translation of Ni'mat Ullah's work [Part II., pages 2-57], gives 603 H. as the date of his death, but, in a note, says he thinks the number ten has been left out, but it was thirty, not ten. The correct date is 633 H.

It may be asked, How is it that the name of Kutb-ud-Din, 1-bak, is inscribed on the minarah, and certain dates recorded? to which the very natural reply may be given, that gratitude led I-yal-timish to record, on the monument of his erection, the name of his own master, benefactor, and father-in-law. The first date, 589 H. refers to the occupation of Dihli as the Muhammadan capital, the second, 592 H., to the foundation, probably, of the Kuthi masjid, the third date, 594 H., to its completion, and the fourth, 629 H., evidently refers to the year in which I-yal-timish founded the MINARAH OF KUTB SAHIB.

The insertion of the name of Sultan Ghiyas-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sam, as the Sultan-us-Salatin or Lord Paramount at the time of the conquest, is also natural, but it is passing strange-if the copy of the inscription as given by Thomas [PATHAN KINGS, pages 21-22] is correct—that the name of his brother-Mu'izz-ud-Din-the conqueror of Rae Pithora, and establisher of the Muhammadan rule at Dihli, should be left out. I cannot but think that the inscription is not correctly given. See also APPENDIX A., pages iv. and v.

A writer in the BENGAL ASIATIC JOURNAL, vol. xx., page 353, many years back, endeavoured to correct the great error I have referred to. He says:-"The Qotb Minár has not its name from Qotb(aldyn) Aybak as Ritter supposes, but from the Saint-Qotb aldyn Baktyar Káky who is buried not far from it." See also note 2, page 658.

7 1- some conies two hundred.

which were formed of molten brass, together with the stone [idol] of Mahā-kāl, were carried away to Dihlī, the capital.

In the year 633 H., the Sultān led the forces of Hindūstān towards Banīan [or Banyān⁸], and, during that march, weakness subdued his blessed person; and, when, through bodily affliction, he came back from thence, on Wednesday, the first of the month, Sha'bān, early in the forenoon, the time chosen by the Astrologers, seated in a covered litter⁹, he entered the capital of his kingdom, the illustrious city of Dihlī. After nineteen days, his illness having increased, on Monday, the 20th of Sha'bān¹, in the year 633 H., he was removed from the abode of mortality to the everlasting mansion². His reign extended to a period of twenty-six years. God enlighten his understanding!

8 This is precisely the same tract that is mentioned at page 541, and which has been turned into "Mithan" in Elliot, vol. ii. page 303, and is referred to in several places in connexion with coming from Chamin, Kapmān and Nandanah into Sind and Multān. In all the best copies it is written object—Baniān—generally, but sometimes object—Baniān. Further research may tend to throw some light upon its exact situation, but it evidently lies in the hill tracts of the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah, or the opposite side of the Sind adjoining that part of the Do-ābah in question—the country immediately west of the Salt Range. It will be referred to again farther on. Nigām-ud-Dîn, Aḥmad, and Budā'anī, and Firightah—the two latter copy the former—all have Multān, and are totally incorrect in this instance.

⁹ Turned into "a howda on the back of an elephant" in ELLIOT, but there is not a word about an elephant in the original or in the printed text either.

ELPHINSTONE [page 323] makes very short work of the events of the last eight years of this reign. After incorrectly stating that Kabā-jah was drowned in 622 H. and. Bakkar laken, he says "Altamsh" was occupied for upwards of six years in "reducing the part of Hindostan which had remained independent. He began by taking Rintambór. . He next took Mándu [see page 611] in Málwa; Gwáliór, which had revolted, was recovered; Bilsa was likewise taken; and the occupation of the ancient capital Ujón, with the destruction of its celebrated temple, completed the conquest of Málwa." All this is supposed to have taken place between 623 H., and 630 H., and yet Ujján-Nagari was not taken till two years after this!

i There is some discrepancy respecting the date of I-yal-timish's death. The oldest copy of the text says the 26th, and, in this, two other copies agree, but some have Saturday, the 20th. Zabdat-ut-Tawārikh has Monday, the 26th of Sha'bān, Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, the 20th, Tagkant-ul-Mulūk, the 8th of Sha'bān, and so has the Muntakhāb-ut-Tawārikh. Mīr Ma'sūm in one MS. says the 23td, and, in two others, the 26th; and Fasib-i says the 21st of Shalbān, 634 H., and that he was buried in the old jāmār magiād. Firishtah follows the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī; but neither Budā'unā, the Hafī Iklim, Khulāşat-ut-Tawārīkh. Raugat-uş-Şāfā, nor Lubb-ut-Tawārīkhi-i-Hind, give the day of the month, and some merely mention the year 633 H.

2 Our author having given an account of the attack by the Mulahidah

Titles and names of the Sultan.

US-SULŢĀN-UL-MU'AZZAM,

SHAMS-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN,

ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR, I-YAL-TIMISH,

NĀŞIR-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN 8.

heretics on the congregation in the great masjid in the year 634 H. under the reign of Raziyyat, it is strange that he is silent about the attack by the same heretics on Sultan I-yal-timish, which is related by other writers. I-yaltimish, who was considered a pattern of orthodoxy, and a most pious and God-fearing ruler, was in the habit of going, without any ostentation, to the great masiid on the Musalman sabbath to say his prayers along with the congregation, and to listen to the Imam's discourse. The Mulhids of Dihli, aware of his custom, plotted to take his life; and a body of them armed, whilst the people of the congregation were occupied in their own devotions. flocked into the masiid, drew their swords, and attempted to reach the place where the Sultan was, and martyred several persons in so doing. The Sultan, however, succeeded in getting safely away, although the Mulhids endeavoured to follow him. The people now crowded the roofs and walls and gate-ways of the masjid, and with arrows, bricks, and stones, annihilated the heretics, I-val-timish is said to have afterwards put a number of this sect to the sword in revenge for this attempt upon his life.

³ In the work I have before referred to the following is said to have been the inscription on one of I-yal-timish's early coins,

> ضرب هذا الدينار بحضرت دهلي سند اثنا عشر و سقاية-Reverse قمع الشخفر و الصلابد سلطان سمش الدين جلوس احد-Obverse

according to which 612 H. was the first of his reign. The inscriptions may be thus rendered:—Reverse:—"This Dfina" [was] struck in the capital [city] Dhill, in the year 612." Obverse:—"The Destroyer of paganism and error, Sultān Shams-ud-Dfn, in the first [year] of his reign." Budā uni says his title was Yamin-i-Amir-ul-Müminin, but this is only one of the many titles given him by our author. See note 4 page 597, and note § page 614.

Offspring.

Sulţān Raziyyat.

Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah.

[Malik] Kutb-ud-Din, Muḥammad.

Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh.

Malik Shihāb-ud-Din, Muḥammad.

Sultān Nāşir-ud-Din, Mahmūd Shāh of Lakhņawați.

Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shah.

Sultān Nāşir-ud-Din, Mahmūd Shāh.

Malik [Sultān] Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Muḥammad Shāh.

Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, son of Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh.

Length of his reign: — Twenty-six years.

Kāzīs of his Court.

Kāzī Sa'd-ud-Dîn, Gardaizī.

Kāzi Jalāl-ud-Din, Ghaznawi.

Kāzi Nasir-ud-Din, Kāsili.

Ķāzī Kabīr-ud-Dīn, Ķāzī of the Army.

Wasir of the Kingdom.

The Nigām-ul-Mulk, Kamāl-ud-Din, [Muḥammad?] -i-Abū-Sā'id, Junaidi.

Standards.

On the right, Black:

On the left, Red.

Motto on his august signet.

"Greatness appertaineth unto God alone 4."

Capital of his Kingdom.
The city of Dihli.

His Maliks 5.

Malik Fřrūz, I-yal-timish, the Sālār, Shāh-zādah [Prince] of Khwārazm ⁶.

4 Or "Greatness belongs to God" [is exclusively His attribute]. Kur'ān: chap. 45, verse 36.

⁵ These names are only contained in a few copies of the text, and do not agree in all points. The above are contained in the two oldest copies, and the others agree except where otherwise mentioned.

⁶ This is the person mentioned at page 199, but he should be more correctly styled Malik-zādah as he was not a Prince, but merely connected, on the mother's side, with the Khwärzam's Sultān, Muhammad, father of Jalāl-ud-

Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jāni, Shāh-zādah [Frince] of Turkistān.

Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, son of 'Ali, son of Abi 'Ali, Malik of Ghūr?.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabir Khān-i-Avāz 8.

Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Husain.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā, son of Husam-ud-Din, 'Iwaz, Khalji, Malik of Lakhnawati'.

Malik-ul-Umrā, Iftikhār-ud-Dīn, Amīr of Karah. Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Hamzah-i-'Abd-ul-Malik.

Malik Bahā-ud-Din, Būlād [Pūlād]-i-Nāṣiri.

The Malik of Ghūr, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Mādīnī, Shansabānī. Malik Naşîr-ud-Dîn, Mardan Shah, Muhammad-i-Cha-

ush [the Pursuivant 1].

Malik Nasîr-ud-Din of Bindar [or Pindar], the Cha-ush. Malik Naşîr-ud-Dîn-i-Tughān, Feoffee of Budā'un2. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughril, Kutbi [Bahā-i].

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Bakht-yar, the Khali 8.

Din. After the Ghūris took Nishāpūr in 596 H. [see page 380], he came into Hindustan with his cousin, Taj-ud-Din, Binal-Tigin, afterwards ruler of Nimroz of Sijistān. See pages 199-202.

7 The same who commanded the right wing of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Utsuz's, army when that ruler of Ghür lost his life. See page 416. He is called Hasan in some copies of the text in this place. He was not Malik of Ghur but one of the Churian Maliks. He is mentioned many times in this work.

The best Paris copy and the I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, which generally agree, have, after the above, Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, Sālār-i-Ḥarabi Mihdi, which name is again mentioned in the List preceding the reign of Nasir-ud-

Din, Mahmud Shah, farther on.

8 Instead of this name, in the Paris copy, comes Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn-i-'Abdul-Jalil, brother's son of Malik Ikhtiyar ud-Din, Amir-i-Koh [Karah ?], while the I. O. L. MS. has Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Muhammad, brother's son of the Malik-ul-Umrā, Iftikhār-ud-Dīn, Amīr-i-Koh.

In two copies styled Î-ran Shāh-i-Balka, the Khali.

1 In one copy, Naşîr-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, Harīs-i-Mardan Shah, and Mīrān Shāh, and, in another, as two different persons. Chā-ush has probably been read by the copyist as Haris, but, in another, Nasir-ud-Din, Miran Shah, son of Muhammad-i-Cha-ush, Khalit.

² This must be meant for Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughril-i-Tughan Khan, who

held the fief of Budā'ūn in 630 H.

3 This is a specimen of the dependence we can place on our author's names and statements. If he refers here to the conqueror of Bihar and Lakhanawati, he was dead five years before I-yal-timish was raised to the throne, in fact, before I-val-timish's former master received his manumission. The word Khalj occurs in every copy containing these names, with the exception of one, which Malik Karā Sunkar-i-Nāṣirī. Malik Nasīr-ud-Dīn, Ai-yitīm-i-Bahā-i *. Malik Asad-ud-Dīn, Tez <u>Kh</u>ān-i-Kuṭbī. Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Āghūl-Bak, Malik of Awadh ⁵ Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, 'Alī. Nāṣawrī. Siwālikhī.

Victories and Conquests.

Budā'ūn, Banāras and defeat of Rāe Mān's, fortress of Rantahbūr [or Ranthabhūr], Jālor, victory over Tāj-ud-Dīn, Yal-dūz and taking him prisoner, occupation of Lohor, victory over the hostile Amīrs in front of the Bāgh-i-Jūd [the Jūd Garden], Tabarhindah, Sursutī, Kuhṛām, victory over Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ķabā-jah', subjugation of Lakhaṇawatī and its territory, taking of Ķinnauj-i-Sher-gaṛh, Lalehr or Alehr's[?], Tirhut, Gwāliyūr, Nandanah, Gūjah [or Kūjah], and's Siāl-kot, Janjer[?], and Mūndūdah or Mūdah'[?], Ajmīr, Bihār, occupation of the fortress of Lakhaṇawaṭī a second time, fortress of Manḍawar,

has Ghūrī. If this last name be correct, of course, the conqueror of Lakhanawatī is not referred to.

The I. O. L. MS. has Malik Sherān, the Khalj, after this; but he was no more one of I-yal-timish's Maliks than Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, was.

4 So styled from having been, at first, the slave of Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn,

Tughril, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad-i-Sam's slave.

⁶ These two last-named personages were Maliks of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn's reign, and were but nominally dependent on Kutb-ud-Dīn, İ-bak, whilst he was the Sultān's Deputy in Hind. They are the same as those referred to at page 548, and were the entertainers and patrons of Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār, the Khalj, after he had been refused service at Ghaznin, and also at Dihlī.

Of the twenty-five Maliks, most of whom were the slaves of I-yal-timisfs, separate accounts of whom are given in the next Section, but three can be recognized among the twenty-one here recorded; but several are mentioned here, as well as in the account of his reign, who are not mentioned in that Section; while some others, mentioned under his reign, are not mentioned here.

onother الآل بربرهر another المانية and in another المانية المانية المانية المانية المانية المانية المانية الم

7 Two of the oldest copies have—"and taking him prisoner," but he was

8 This is wholly unintelligible. It is written البم and البم and البم and البم المعادة المعاد

bably mell or make Kathehr or Kather-is meant.

⁹ This place or tract is constantly mentioned in comexion with Nandanah, and lies in that direction, without the shadow of doubt. In two copies of the text, however—one the best Paris copy—it is المنافق من المنافق ال

and مودده and مودوء

fort of Bhakar, Üchchah and Multān, Siwastān, Dibal, fort of Thankir, fort of Bhilsān, Mālwah and the expedition against the unbelievers and extortion of tribute, fort of Ujjain-Nagari and bringing away of the idol of Mahā-kāl, which they have planted before the gateway of the "Fāmi" Masjid at the capital city of Dihli in order that all true believers might tread upon it 2.

II. MALIK-US-SA'ĪD, NĀṢIR-UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD <u>SH</u>ĀH, SON OF SULŢĀN <u>SH</u>AMS-UD-DĪN, I-YAL-TIMI<u>SH</u>.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, was the eldest son of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn; and he was a beneficent, intelligent, sensible, and sagacious Prince³, and was endowed with great energy and gallantry, and was munificent, and benevolent.

The first fief which the Sultān conferred upon him was the district of Hānsī '; and, after a considerable time, in the year 623 H., the territory of Awadh was entrusted to his charge. In that country that Prince performed numerous commendable actions, and carried on holy war, as by the tenets of the faith enjoined, so that his praise for manliness and boldness became diffused throughout the area of Hindustān.

The accursed Bartū [or Britū], beneath whose sword above a hundred and twenty thousand Musalmāns had

² One copy of the text, not one of the oldest three, but a good copy, has Jāi-nagar here entered as one of the victories or conquests!

The greater number of the above so-called victories and conquests are not even mentioned in the reign of I-yal-timigh, and several of those that are were effected by his Maliks; but neither these nor the remainder are all mentioned in the account given of their lives. What our author often calls a victory may be judged of from the mention of Kuhṛām, Buda'ūn [which I-yal-timigh held the fief of], Kinnauj, and several other places, which were taken in Sulṭān Mu izz-ud-Dīn's reign either by himself, or Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, İ-bak.

⁸ Our author styles him "Bädshäh," which signifies a prince, as well as a king. If he had any claims to be accounted a "sovereign," beyond the assignment to him of a canopy of state by his father, he should have been included amonig the kings of Lakhanawati, or styled sovereign of Awadh; for he never reigned at the capital, Dihli. His "reigning" over Lakhanawati may be judged of from note ⁵, page 617. He never coined money in his own name.

4 The Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir says Lahor was his first fief. See also note 4, page 532.

attained martyrdom, he overthrew and sent to Hell; and the refractory infidels, who were in different parts of the country of Awadh, he reduced and overcame, and brought a considerable number under obedience.

From Awadh he resolved to march into Lakhaṇawaṭi, and the forces of Hindūstān by command of the Sulṭān, his father, were nominated to serve under him, and Maliks of renown, such as Pūlān and Malik Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, all of them proceeded towards Lakhaṇawaṭi in attendance on him. Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, had marched forces from Lakhaṇawaṭi with the intention of [entering] the territory of Bang, and had left his head-quarters empty [of defenders]. When the august Malik, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, reached that territory with his forces, the fortress of Basan-koṭ and the city of Lakhaṇawaṭi fell into his hands.

When the news reached Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, the Khalj, he set out for Lakhaṇawati from the place where he then was. Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, with his forces, proceeded against him and defeated him, and captured Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, with all his kinsmen and the Khalj Amīrs, his treasures, and elephants'. He had Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, put to death, and appropriated his treasures. From Lakhaṇawaṭi Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, sent sums of money in the shape of presents to all the 'Ulamā, the Sayyids, devotees, recluses, and pious men of the capital, Dihli, and other cities and towns. When the dresses of distinction from Baghdād, the capital of the Khitāfat, reached the presence

⁵ Who this Hindii chief was we have no means of discovering, I fear, as other subsequent writers do not notice these events at all. He is styled in some of the best copies as above, which is probably meant for Prithm—US—but, in others, the word is written 1911—which may be Bartüh, Birtüh, or Bartüh, &c., but ~ is often written for ~ by copyists.

⁶ By the "forces of Hindustān" are meant the contingents of the feudatories east of the Jūn and Gang. The word Hindustān is used by our author with reference to the Antarbed Do-ābah generally, but, sometimes, to the tracts east of the Gang as well.

The best copies are as above, but no such person is mentiohed anywhere in the whole work, and I think it may be the nick-name of some thief, who might be recognized under his right name, unless it refers to the teath in the List, page 626.

⁸ These events, and those which followed, have been detailed at length in note 5, page 617.

of Sultān Shams-ud-Dîn, from among them he selected one dress of great value and despatched it to Lakhanawaṭī along with a red canopy of state; and Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, became exalted by [the bestowal of] that canopy of state, the dress of honour, and great distinction.

All the Maliks and grandees of the kingdom of Hind had their eyes upon him, that he would be the heir to the Shamsi dominions, but the decree of destiny, according to [the saying]—"Man proposes, but God disposes"—harmonizes not with human conceptions! A year and a half afterwards, his sacred person became afflicted with disease and weakness, and he died. When the news of his decease reached the capital [city of] Dihli, all the people manifested great grief thereat. May Almighty God make the Sultān of Islām, Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, as he is the heir to his name and title, the heir, during his lifetime, of the whole of the Maliks and Sultāns of that dynasty, for the sake of His prophet and the whole of his posterity!

III. SULŢĀN RUKN-UD-DĪN, FĪRŪZ <u>SH</u>ĀH², SON OF THE SULŢĀN [I-YAL-TIMI<u>SH</u>].

Sultān Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh, was a beneficent sovereign, of handsome exterior, was endowed with gentleness and humanity to perfection, and in bountifulness and liberality he was a second Ḥātim.

His mother, Shāh Turkān³, was a Turkish hand-maid, and the head [woman] of all the Sultān's haram, and

9 "L'homme propose, mais Dieu dispose."

2 In the work I have previously referred to, the following is given as the

inscription on the first coins of this monarch :-

Reverse— قنت را جون كلاشت شمس الدين يامي بروى شفرو كري الدين.

Obverse— على معالى جانوس مهمنت مانوس احد مطابق ٢٠٠٠ هجري به بطوري به بدائل به بطوري مهمنت مانوس احد مطابق ٢٠٠٠ هجري به which may be thus rendered —Reverse — "The throne when left by Shams-ud-Din, his foot thereon placed Rukn-ud-Din." Obverse:—"Coined at Dihlf in the first year of his reign with prosperity associated, 633 H."

3 In some coples styled "Khudawandah-i-fahfu, Shāh Turkin."

great was the bounty, benevolence, and charity, of that Malikah 4, towards 'Ulamā, Sayyids, priests, and recluses.

In the year 625 H. 6, Sulţān Rukn-ud-Dîn, Firūz Shāh, obtained the fief of Budā'ūn, and a green canopy of state, and the 'Ain-ul-Mulk, Ḥusain-i-Ash'arī, who was [had been?] Wazīr of Malik [Sultān] Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, Ḥabā-jah, at this time, became the Wazīr of Sultān Rukn-ud-Dîn, Firūz Shāh.

When Sultān Shams-ud-Din returned to the capital, Dihli, from Gwāliyūr, after the capture of that fortress and country, the territory of Lohor, which had been the seat of government of the Khusrau Maliki [dynasty], was conferred upon Sultān Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh; and, on Sultān Shams-ud-Din's return from his last expedition, from the river Sind and Bantān's, he brought along with him, to the capital, his son Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh, for the people had their eyes upon him, since, after [the late] Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, he was the eldest of Sultān Shams-ud-Din's sons's.

When that august Sultān passed from the kingdom of this world to the throne of the world to come, the Maliks and grandees of the kingdom, by agreement, seated Rukn-

⁴ At page 638, our author himself states that the mother of Raziyyat was the chief of all the ladies—head wife—of the late Sulţān's ḥaram.

The word here used signifies that she was the first concubine the late Sulfan possessed, not the chief wife of his haram, nor is she entitled to be styled Malikah, for the married women are the first in rank, and, of these, one was Sulfan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak's, daughter.

^{*} Tabakāt.i-Akbarī, and several others, have, like our author, who was their chief authority for these events, 625 H., but Firightah has 626 H. His authority, however, is of no importance whatever for the events of this early period—even less than I was inclined to give him credit for—for I find, on examination of his history for this and the five following reigns, that he has bodily appropriated the text, in many places verbatim, of the Tabakāt.i-Akbarī, even to the poetical quotations. The only difference is occasional verbal alterations, and that, in most instances in which the former disposes of an event in a few words, Firightah, by exaggeration and hyperbole, manages to lenothen out his own account.

⁶ Or, in other words, his governor or tutor. Our author, however, does not mean to say that he was styled Sulfan at this period. See page 613.

⁷ The last of the Ghaznin dynasty—Sulfan Khusrau Malik.

⁸ The Tabakät-i-Akbari [and Firishtah, of course] has Siwastan, which is a mistake for Banian, which is never mentioned in the former.

⁹ The people may have had their eyes upon him, but I-yal-timish had already named his talented daughter, Raziyyat Khātūn, as his successor. See pages 638, 639.

ud-Dîn upon the throne, on Tuesday, the 21st of the month Sha'bān, 633 H.¹, and the diadem and throne acquired beauty and splendour from his dignity ², and excellence, and elegance; and all rejoiced at his accession, and donned

honorary dresses [to testify their joy].

When the different Maliks returned a from the capital [to their various posts], Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firuz Shah, opened the door of his treasuries, and gave himself up to pleasure, and began to expend, in the most profuse fashion, the funds of the Bait-ul-Mal in an improper manner. Such was his excessive appetite for pleasure and sensual enjoyments, that the business of the country, the concerns of the state, and the regulation of the affairs of the kingdom fell into a state of disorder and confusion; and his mother, Shāh Turkān, began to assume the decision and disposal of state affairs, and used to issue [her] commands. Perhaps it was by reason of this, that, during the lifetime of the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, she had experienced envy and jealousy on the part of [some of the] other ladies of the haram's, that she [now] brought misfortune upon that party among the inmates of the haram, and, by tyranny and cruelty, destroyed several of them. The minds of men in authority became troubled at their [the mother's

There is no authority whatever beyond what our author says here for styling this concubine "Queen Mother," and, at page 638, he himself says, Raziyyat's mother was the chief wife of I-yal-timigh. See Thomas: PATHÁN KINGS, page 105, and Elliot: INDIA, vol. ii. page 330.

¹ Two copies of the text, one an old one, have Tuesday, the 29th of Sha'ban. Tabakati-i-Akbari has Saturday, 633 H., without date or month, and, of course, Firishtah has the same.

² Their joy was soon turned into grief. His dignified behaviour, and the "adornment and splendour" the crown and throne derived from him is related farther on.

³ When they "returned home," ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 330. The original is مراجعت نعردند—there is not a word of home—a word unknown in the East.

⁴ See note 5, page 62.

⁵ She, on the contrary, envied and was jealous of the others through their having taken her place. No sooner did she obtain an opportunity than she had the noble women—free-born women—who had been married to the late Sultān, put to death with much degmdation, and the other Turkish concubines—women held in esteem by I-yal-timish—she treated with great ignominy, and wreaked upon them retribution for many years of envy and jealousy which she had nourished towards them. Our author's own words respecting her, farther on, contradict this statement as to her benevolence, unless charity towards recluses and the like—in his opinion—covered the multitude of her sins.

and son's] conduct; and, in the face of all these acts, they caused a son of the [late] Sultān, who was styled Kutb-ud-Dīn's, and a youth of great worth and promise, by their directions, to be deprived of the sight of both eyes, and afterwards had him put to death. From these causes, the hostility of the Maliks, in different parts, becan to be manifested.

Malik Ghiyāş-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad Shāh², son of Sultān Shams-ud-Dîn, who was younger in years than Rukn-ud-Dîn, Firūz Shāh, displayed his hostility in Awadh, and took possession of the whole of the treasure of Lakhanawaṭi which was being conveyed to the capital, and, after that, sacked and plundered several of the towns of Hindūstān. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Muḥammad, Sālārī, who was the feudatory of Budā'ūn, broke out into rebellion; and, in another direction, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Kabîr Khān-i-Ayāz', feoffee of Multān, Malik Saif-ud-Dîn, Küji, who was feu-

6 The youngest of Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish's sons, quite a child, by another concubine. Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Üchchah, was feudatory of Üchchah when Sulfän I-yal-timish died, and, soon after, whils Sulfån Ruka-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh, and his Maliks were squabbling together, Malik Saif-ud-Din, Hasan, the Karlugh, from the direction of Baniān, advanced into the Panjäb, and appeared before Multān. Saif-ud-Din, I-bak, marched out of Üchchah with his forces, and gave him battle, and overthrew him. This was a great success, as, since the death of I-yal-timish, enemies had sprung up on all sides. Our author does not give the date of this success; but it must have been about the end of 633 H., or early in 634 H. In the former year Malik Hasan, the Karlugh, coined money: he then held Ghaznin, Karmān, and Baniān.

7 What became of him is not known. He was probably put to death. Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Din, Tā-yasa'ī, was put in charge of the fief of Awadh by Sultān Ragiyyat.

At this period likewise, the feudatories of Lakhanawati and Lakhan-or were contending together, and the latter was defeated and slain by the former, and his fiel seized. See next Section.

8 In the account of him, in next Section, our author says he was removed from Multān by Sultān Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh, and the fief of Sunām was conferred upon him instead of Multān.

Firishtah, according to the "revised text" by Briggs, and "Munshi Mir Khelrat Ali Khan," makes a terrible mess of the names of persons here [Dow, of course, is sufficiently ridiculous in this matter, and makes them totally unintelligible], although he had the Tabakāti-Akbarī, in which they are pretty correct, to copy from. He could not have taken them from our author's work. For example; Salarī is turned into Salār, 'Alā.ud-Dīn, Jānī, is turned into Sher Khānī, and Kabīr Khān into Kabīr Khānī-with _-the yā-i-nikbat, signifying "of, or retating to a Khān", Khān-ship &c, as if they were merely officers or slaves of a Sher Khān and a Kabīr Khān, instead of the words being their own tiltes; and, in the same work, the word p as in 'Izz-ud-Dīn, is invariably turned into y! !!

datory of Hansi, and Malik 'Ala-ud-Din, Jani, who held the fief of Lohor, united together, and began to act with hostility and contumacy . Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh, with the determination of coercing them, moved an army from the capital. The Wazīr of the kingdom, the Nizāmul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaidi 1, became frightened, and fled from Gilū-khari2, and retired towards Kol, and from thence joined Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, Sālāri : and both of them joined Malik Jani and Malik Kūji.

Sultān Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh, led his army towards Kuhrām. The Turk Amirs and the slaves of the household, who were serving with the centre [the contingents forming the centre]3, followed the example; and, in the

Another writer says, that 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabir Khan-i-Ayaz, feudatory of Multan, was incited to usurp the sovereignty of Dihli, and was advancing for the purpose, but, before he could reach Kuhrām, the other nobles seized Rukn-ud-Din, and set up his sister. Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Yuz-Bak-i-Tughril Khan, who then held the office of Amir-i-Mailis, was also concerned in this outbreak, but the ringleader appears to have been Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlu Khān, whose contumacy was continual.

1 Styled Kāmal-ud-Dīn, [Muḥammad]-i-Abū-Sā'īd, Junaidī, in the list at

the end of Sultan Shams-ud-Din's reign, page 625.

2 Firishtah's text makes him "advance" to Gilü-khari, as if it were a place many miles away, instead of being a suburb of the capital, Dihli.

One of the many new "cities," so called, adjoining and included in the name of Dihli, but more correctly a new suburb. It has been generally stated by Muhammadan writers, that it was founded by Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din Kai-Kubād, in 686 H., but that cannot be correct from what our author says in his account of Ulugh Khan farther on, where he styles it "the Shahr-i-Nau of Gîlū-kharî." When it was founded "the river Jūn or Jaman flowed close under its walls; but now the river is some two kuroh to the east of it. The tomb of the venerated Musalman saint, Shah Nizam-ud-Din, the Budā'ūnī, is situated in Gīlū-kharī."

⁸ Compare Elliot: vol. ii. page 331. We have so little information respecting the organization of the Dihli armies before the time of the Mughal emperors that it is difficult to understand what is really meant here, as well as in several other places, by the mere word "kalb." All the Musalman armies appear to have been arranged in the field, after one and the same fashion-a centre, which was the king's post, a right and left wing, an advance guard or van, supports, &c. The 'Arabic word kalb signifies "heart, soul, kernel, marrow, middle," &c., and, with respect to an army, the "centre," which, according to the arrangement above-mentioned, would be perfectly intelligible with regard to an army in the field, but here might be understood, by the reader, as if the centre division of a corps d'armée, under a regular military organization, was stationed at Dihli, which is not the case; but, from what I gather from the Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi, and other works, it evidently refers to the contingents which formed the kalb or centre of the Dihli forces when in the field. These contingents were furnished by numerous feudatories, vicinity of Manşūr-pūr and Tarā'in', they martyred the Tāj-ul Mulk, Maḥmūd, the Dabīr [Secretary]', the son of the Mushrif-i-Mamālik', and Bahā-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan [Ḥusain']-i-Ash'arī, Karim-ud-Dīn-i-Zāhid [the Recluse], Ziyā-ul-Mulk [ud-Dīn:], the son of the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad, Junaidī, Nizām-ud-Dīn, Shafūrkānī', the Khwājah Rashid-ud-Dīn, Māīkānī', Amir Fakhr-ud-Dīn, the Dabīr [Secretary], and a number of other Tājzik officials'; and, in the month of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, in the year 634 H., Sulṭān Raziyyat, who was the eldest daughter' of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, entered upon open hostility with the mother of Sulṭān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Fīrūz Shāh, at Dihlī, and he, as a matter of necessity, returned again towards the capital. His mother had conspired against Sultān Raziyyat to put

great and small, whose fiefs lay in the immediate vicinity of the capital, and whose contingents could be summoned to the king's standard at a very short notice. The Turk ghulāms also formed part of the kalb, and they served wherever the Suljān happened to be.

4 Tară'în, the place of Rāe Pithorā's overthrow, so often mentioned, the modern Talāwari. There would be some difficulty in finding "Náráín" I expect.

⁵ This is the person who wrote a congratulatory poem on the debauchee's accession.

8 A number of titles and names of offices occur in the following pages, many of which, being pure old Turkigh, it is impossible to fix exactly without a knowledge of the Turkish language; and, although, as far as similar names go, some few of the offices in question existed in Akbar's time, still there is much doubt whether such offices under the Mughal dynasty were equivalent to those of a similar designation during the reigns of the Turkish Slave dynasty, and would require some years of study fully to elucidate. See the note on this subject under the eighth year of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmdd Shāh's reign farther on.

7 Shafürkäni or Shabürghäni—a native of Shafürkän or Shabürghän. In some copies, Sharkäni and Sarkäni. See note 1, page 127.

8 In the best copies of the text this word is written as above, but in some others it is Mālkāni, Bāikāni, and Mānkāni or Māngāni.

⁹ The Ţabakāti-Akbarī makes a terrible blunder here, and Firishtah, as a matter of course, follows, as well as Budā'unī. The former work states that all these persons, who were put to death, "separated from the Sulţār's army, went off to Dihlī, and pledged their allegiance to Raziyyat Khātūn, eldest daughter of the late Sulţān, and raised her to the throne"!! Several other authors who copy from the former work all fall into the same error without mentioning the names. Compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 331, where this very plain and easy passage, which is perfectly correct in the printed text, is construed so as to make all these Tājik officials, who were killed, the killess of "the Tāzik," and Firishtah [Briggs?] is quoted to prove that they deserted Rukn-ud-Din, Firits Shāl.

1 L-yal-timish had, himself, declared her his heir and successor, as stated farther on. She was not his only daughter it is said.

her to death. The people of the city, upon this, rose, and attacked the royal Kasr [Castle], and seized the mother of

Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh.

When Rukn-ud-Din, Firuz Shah, reached the city?, insurrection had [already] broken out therein, and his mother had been made prisoner. The centre contingents [of the Dihli forces] and the Turk Amirs all entered Dihli and joined Sultan Razivyat, pledged their allegiance to her, and placed her on the throne. Having ascended the throne, she despatched a force consisting of the Turkish slaves and Amirs to Gilū-khari, so that they made prisoner of Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firuz Shah, and brought him into the city3. He was imprisoned and confined, and, in that prison, he was received into the Almighty's mercy. This circumstance of his seizure, imprisonment, and death occurred on Sunday, the 18th of the month Rabi'-ul-Awwal, in the year 634 H.; and his reign was six months and twenty-six days 5.

Sultan Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shah, in munificence and liberality, was a second Hatim, and what he did, in expending wealth, in conferring so many honorary dresses, and the superfluity of presents, no king, at any time, or in any reign, had done the like of; but his misfortune was this, that his inclinations were wholly towards buffoonery, sensuality, and diversion, and that he was entirely enslaved by dissipation and debauchery; and most of his honorary dresses and his presents were made to such people as musicians and singers, buffoons and Ganymedes. His excessive waste of money was to such degree, that, while

² Two modern copies of the text have Gilū-khari.

4 If all this happened in one day, it is very certain that he must have been put to death. Some copies have jus instead of all

5 Some copies have "twenty-eight days:" from the 20th of Sha'ban, 633 H., the date of I-yal-timish's decease, to the 18th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 634 H., is exactly six months and twenty-seven days.

³ Whilst all this was going on at Dihli, the feudatories of Lakhanawati and Lakhan-or were having a private war of their own. See account of Malik No. VII., in the next Section.

This is the person from whose dignity and elegance "the crown and throne acquired adornment and splendour"! One author states, that, during the short time he reigned, he and his mother managed to empty the treasury, and to spend all the wealth accumulated during the reign of Kuth-ud-Din, I-bak, and Shams-ud-Din, I-val-timish.

in a state of intoxication, seated on the back of an elephant, he would drive through the bāzār of the city, scattering tangals of red gold which the people in the street used to pick up, and gain advantage by. He had a passion for frolic, and for riding elephants?, and the whole class of elephant drivers derived immense benefit from his riches and good-nature. It was not in his nature and disposition to injure a human being, and this fact was the cause of the wane of his dominion.

It is essential above all things, that sovereigns should have justice in order that their subjects should dwell in tranquillity and repose, and that they possess beneficence so that their followers may be satisfied and contented; and revelry and merriment, and companionship with the base and ignoble, becomes the means of an empire's ruin. The Almighty pardon him!

IV. SULŢĀN ® RAZIYYAT-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, DAUGHTER OF SULTĀN 1-YAL-TIMI<u>SH</u>.

Sultān Raziyyat—may she rest in peace!—was a great sovereign, and sagacious, just, beneficent, the patron of the learned, a dispenser of justice, the cherisher of her subjects, and of warlike talent, and was endowed with all the admirable attributes and qualifications necessary for kines;

⁷ ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 332-"He was very fond of playing with and riding upon elephants," Rather rough play.

⁸ Rajvyat has a meaning, but "Rasiya" and "Risiah" mean nothing. Sulfain, from M., signifies to have or possess power, to rule, &c.—a sovereign—and is therefore as equally applicable to a female as a male, and does not appear to have had anything to do with "affectation of the superior sex," nor her assumption, subsequently, of male attire when she rade forth. Her name or title, like that of most other Muḥammadans in these pages, is pure 'Arabic, the feminine form of the by no means uncommon name of Razi-UD-DIN. See Thomass: PATHÁN KINGS, page 108.

The following is said to have been the inscription on the first coins of this queen regnant, in which she is styled 'Umdat-un-Nisuan-the great, or illustrious among women:—

عهدة النسوان ملكد ً زمان سلطان رضية بنت شمس الدين ايلقس-Reverse مرب بلده ً دهلي سند ١٢٠٠ جاوس احد-Reverse

which may be translated:—Reverse:—"The illustrious among women, the Queen of the Age, Sulfan Raziyyat, daughter of Shams-ud-Din, I-yal-timish." Obverse:—"Coined at the city of Dihli, 643 H., the first of the reign."

⁹ Compare Elliot : vol. ii. page 332.

but, as she did not attain the destiny, in her creation, of being computed among men, of what advantage were all these excellent qualifications unto her?

During the lifetime of the august Sultān, her father, she exercised authority, and possessed great grandeur, on this account, that her mother, Turkān Khātūn, was the greatest [of the ladies] of the sublime haram¹, and her place of residence was the royal palace, the Kushk-i-Firūxi [Firūxi Castle]². As the august Sultān Shams-ud-Dîn used to notice in her indications of sovereignty and high spirit, although she was a daughter, and [consequently] veiled from public gaze, when he returned after acquiring possession of Gwāliyūr, he commanded the Tāj-ul-Mulk, Maḥmūd, the secretary—on whom be peace!—who was the Musḥrif-i-Mamālik² [Secretary of the State], to write out a decree, naming his daughter as his heir-apparent, and she was made his heir [accordingly].

Whilst this decree was being written out, those servants of the state, who had access to the presence of the Sultān, made representation, saying: "Inasmuch as he has grown-up sons who are eligible for the sovereignty, what scheme and what object has the Sultān of Islām in view in making a daughter sovereign and heir-apparent? Be pleased to

1 This proves what our author meant by the word , with respect to Rukn-ud-Din, Firus Shāh's mother, namely, that, in point of time or age, she was the oldest of I-yal-timish's concubines. Raziyyat Khātim was his eldest child and, in all probability, her mother was Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak's daughter.

Our author is about the only authority available for the events of this period —all other works, since written, merely copy from him and add from their own fertile imaginations—and there is no authority for stating [Thomas: PATHAN KINGS, page 104] that Raziyyat was "brought up under a greater degree of freedom from the seclusion enjoined for fenales by the more severe custom of ordering Muslim households," for our author here states she was "weiled from public graze;" and it was only just before the end of her reign that she assumed the dress of a male, which, really, is not very different from that of a female—the addition of a head dress and tunic—as our author states, Dow, as usual, misinterpreting Firightah, who copies from the Tabakāti-Akbarī, which copies our author, inco:rectly states that "on her accession, changing her apparel, she assumed the imperial robes." The "imperial robes" equally with the rest are all his own.

² In ELLIOT, it is made "the chief royal palace in the Kushk-firozi!"

² Tāj-ul-Mulk signifies the crown of the state: "Tāju-l-Malik" nothing. The word ——muchrif—signifies an examiner or authenticator of records and other writings, but not a water certainly. ———dabir—— retary, a clerk, a scribe. ———mudabir—an administrator, director, counsellor, &c. Compare ELMOT: vol. ii. page 333-

remove this difficulty from our minds, as this deed does not seem advisable to your humble servants." The Sultān replied: "My sons are engrossed in the pleasures of youth, and none of them possesses the capability of managing the affairs of the country, and by them the government of the kingdom will not be carried out. After my death it will be seen that not one of them will be found to be more worthy of the heir-apparentship than she, my daughter." The case turned out as that august monarch had predicted.

When Sultān Raziyyat ascended the throne of the kingdom, all things returned to their usual rules and customs; but the Wazīr of the kingdom, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaidī did not acknowledge her; and Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Kūjī, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, Sālārī, and the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad, Junaidī sasembled from different parts before the gate of the city of Dihlī, and commenced hostilities against Sultān Raziyyat, and this opposition continued for a considerable time. At this period Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasa'ī', the Mu'izzī, who was feoffee of Awadh, marched with his forces from that province, for the purpose of rendering aid to Sultān Raziyyat, in conformity with [her] commands, towards Dihlī, the capital descriptions.

⁴ The Tagkarat-ul-Mulük says "one reason why I-yal-timish named her as his successor was, that his son, Näşin-ul-Din, Mahmüd Shäh—the second son of that name—was so young in years; and the Sulţān remarked to his minister, at the time, that, although in the form of a woman, she was in reality a man."

⁵ He is styled, by some more modern writers, Chandiri, as if he were a native of Chandiri or that that was a by-name of his, but it is incorrect. He had been I-yal-timigh's wazir for a considerable time.

⁶ These are the same who, as stated in Elliot, killed "the Tazik."

⁷ He had been made feudatory of Awadh by Raziyyat after Ghiyāş-ud-Din, Muḥammad Shāh's rebellion. See page 633.

⁸ Previous to these events, the feudatory of Kinnauj, Malik Tamur Khāni-Khrān, was despatched by Sulfan Raziyyat into the Gwāliyūr territory and Mālwah in command of a force, and the expedition was successful, but no particulars are given. The same Malik, when feudatory of Awadh, penetrated as far as the Tirhut territory, and compelled the Rāes and Rānahs, and independent Hindū tribes in that part to pay tribute. He plundered the territory of Bhati-ghūn [anglicised Bhatgong] in Nipāl on several occasions, but neither particulars nor dates are given, but they all happened before this period.

the hostile Maliks who were before the city of Dihli unexpectedly advanced to meet him, and took him prisoner, and affliction overcame him. and he died1. The stay of the hostile Maliks before the gate of Dihli was prolonged for a considerable time; but, as the good fortune of Sultan Razivyat was at the point of ascendancy. the Sultan issued from the city, and directed her sublime tent to be pitched at a place on the bank of the river lun: and, between the Turk Amirs who served at the stirrup of sovereignty, and the hostile Maliks, conflicts took place upon s veral occasions. At last, an accommodation was arranged, but in a deceptive manner, and by the subtile contrivance of Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, Sālāri', and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabir, Khān-i-Avāz, who, secretly, went over to the Sultan's side, and, one night, met before the entrance to the royal tent, with this stipulation, that Malik Jani, Malik Saif-ud-Din, Kūji, and the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, Junaidi, should be summoned, and be taken into custody and imprisoned, in order that the sedition might be quelled.

When these Maliks became aware that the state of affairs was on this wise, they left their camp and fled. The Sulṭān's horsemen followed in pursuit, and Malik Saif-ud-Din, Kūjī, and his brother, Fakhr-ud-Din, fell into their hands, and, subsequently to that, they were put to death in prison. Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Jānī, was killed within the limits of Pāyal', at a village named Nakawān', and his

⁹ There is nothing about "hostile generals" in the whole passage.

1 He appears to have been suffering from illness when Sultan Raziyyat summoned him to her aid.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balban-i-Kaghlü Khān, who was so ambitious, and, afterwards, gave so much trouble, was taken prisoner by the hostile Maliks upon this occasion, but was subsequently released by them. He was treated with great honour by Sulfan Rapiyyat. Compare ELLIOT here also.

² The Tabakäti-i-Akbari, which copies so much from our author, asserts, however, that it was Sultān Raziyyat, who, by her able contrivance, succeeded in upsetting and confounding the disaffected Amirs. Firightah, of course, agrees.

⁸ Elliot, Bábul; Briggs, from Firishtah, Babool, Firishtah, text, Bābal — hļ—and Dow, omitted altogether. Pāyal, or Pāyil, is the name of a very old place, giving name to the district, with a very lofty brick fort visible from a great distance—I mention it as it appeared about a century since—on one of the routes from Dihli to Lūdiānah. The Тавақат-какалаға gives the name of the district correctly, but leaves out the name of the place. It is in Long. 76° 5′, Lat. 30° 40′.

In some copies Nakāwān or Nagāwān [نكاوان], but the majority of the best

head was brought to the capital; and the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad, Junaidi, retired to the hills of Sir-mūr Bardār', and there, after some time, he died.

Now that the affairs of Sultān Raziyyat's government became arranged, she gave the office of Wazīr to the Khwājah, Muhazzab's, who was the deputy of the Nizām-ul-Mulk, and he likewise received the title of Nizām-ul-Mulk. The charge of the army, as her lieutenant, was conferred upon Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Bihak', who received the title of Kutlugh Khān; and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, received the fief of Lohor, and the kingdom became pacified, and the power of the state widely extended. From the territory of Lakhaṇawatī to Dīwal and Damrīlah, all the Maliks and Amīrs manifested their obedience and submission's. Suddenly, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Bihak, died, and the charge of the army was

copies of the text are as above. The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952 and that of the R. A. S. MS. have both

See farther on, under the reign of Nāṣir-ud-Din, respecting this tract of country.

⁶ He is turned into Muhazzab, <u>Chaenawi</u>, by Firishtah, and by his translators, Dow and Briggs, respectively, "Chaja Ghiznavi" and "Mihdy Ghiznivy."

Muhazzab, but not Mahzab—which is meaningless—certainly does mean "good, sincere," &c., but in Ellior, vol. ii. page 334, this passage is rendered "he he conferred the office of waste on an upright officer who had been the deputy of Nizāmu-l-Mulk, and he likewise received the title of Nizāmu-l-Mulk, with Majzab—ie. Muhazzab—ie. Muhazzab—ud.Din—is a proper name. Why not translate it always, and also translate Nizām-ul-Mulk, which means regulator of the state, &c., and all other proper names in the book after the same fashion? They all have meanings, the same as Muhazzab has. The amusing part of it is that four pages farther on, page 338, he is styled "the wazir Muhzabu-d din Muhammad 'Auz Mustauff, and so on until that "upright officer," than whom no greater rascal is mentioned in this work, met his reward in the "plain Hauz-ráni." See pages 651—653, 688, and 662, for the doings of that "upright officer."

7 This word is written of and of and is doubtful.

8 The Tabakät-i-Akbari here copies our author nearly word for word, and Firishtah copies the former in the same way. The Tagkarat-ul-Multi says, "through God's assistance she reduced the disaffected Maliks to submission and even the Malik of Lakhanawati became obedient to her authority."

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Tughrili-Tughān Khān, on her accession, despatched emissaries to the capital, and, to testify his homage, was continually sending offerings of great value from Lakhanawaṭi. On this account Sulṭān Raziyyat conferred upon him a canopy of state, and standards, and great honour. At this pertod Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Dīn, Hindū Khān, held the fief of Uchchah, which was conferred upon him by Sulṭān Raziyyat.

bestowed upon Malik Kutb-ud-Din. Husain, son of 'Ali. Ghūri , and he was appointed to [march and relieve] the fortress of Rantabhūr, because the Hindūs. after the decease of the august Sultan, Shams-ud-Din, I-val-timish, had, for a considerable time, invested that preserved town and stronghold 1. Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, conducted the forces to that part, withdrew the Musalman Amirs Fand their troops?] out of that fortification, destroyed the works, and retired, and returned to the capital again.

At this time, the Malik-i-Kabir [Great Malik] Ikhtivārud-Din, Aet-kin2, became Amir-i-Hajib, and Malik Jamalud-Din, Yā-kūt, the Habashi [Abyssinian or Ethiopian], who was Lord of the Stables, acquired favour 3 in attendance upon the Sultan, so that the Turk Amirs and

9 This great noble, whose name will be found in the list at the end of I-val-timish's reign, is styled Husain as well as Hasan in several copies indiscriminately, but the first appears correct. Much more about him will be found in the last Section. He was forced to leave Ghur through the power of the Mughals.

1 After he had raised the investment and relieved the place, the garrison was withdrawn, and no effort made to hold the place. The reason does not appear, and their giving up a strong place like this which had defied the efforts of the Hindus so long seems strange. It was soon restored, however, by the Hindus. What a flourish might have been made of this affair in the Raiput annals! It is mentioned in several places farther on.

Firishtah has not copied the Tabakat-i-Akbari correctly here, and turns him into Alb-Tigin in the "revised text," and Jamal-ud-Din, Ya-kut, is turned into a Amir-ul-Umra, which, although such a title did exist from Akbar's

time downwards, was entirely unknown in these days.

8 I think the character of this Princess has been assailed without just cause. Thomas says [PATHÁN KINGS, page 106]:-"It was not that a virgin Oueen was forbidden to love-she might have indulged herself in a submissive Prince Consort, or revelled almost unchecked in the dark recesses of the Palace Harem-but wayward fancy pointed in a wrong direction, and led her to prefer a person employed about her Court [he was Amir-i-Akhur, or Lord of the Stables-Master of the Horse-a high office only conferred upon distinguished persons], an Abyssinian moreover, the favours extended to whom the Túrkí nobles resented with one accord."

Elphinstone, who draws his inspiration from Briggs, is more correct in his estimation of her character [and both Dow and Briggs are more correct than usual in their rendering of Firishtah's words here] and says [page 324, Third ed.]:- "But her talents and virtues were insufficient to protect her from a single weakness. It was shown in the extraordinary [?] marks of favour which she showered [?] on her Master of the Horse; who, to make her partiality more degrading, was an Abyssinian slave [Who says' he was a slave? If he was, he was only a slave like most of her other Maliks and Amirs]. It does not appear that her fondness [?] was criminal, since the Maliks began to be envious thereat; and it so chanced to happen that Sultan Raziyyat laid aside the female dress and issued from [her] seclusion, and donned the tunic, and assumed the head-dress [of a man], and appeared among the people; and, when she rode out on an elephant, at the time of mounting it, all people used, openly, to see her.

At this period she issued commands for her troops to proceed to Gwāliyūr, and bestowed rich and valuable presents. As disobedience was out of the question this servant

greatest breach of decorum alleged against her is her allowing the Abyssinian to lift her on her horse [a horse she never rode—always an elephant]."

Here is a proof of what a deal may be made out of a little. Our author is the sole authority for these statements in the Tabakat-i-Akbari, Firishtah, and Buda'uni, each of whom, in rotation, enlarge upon, and exaggerate our author's words-the last reverses them by saving that when she mounted an elephant or horse she leant upon him. Jamal-ud-Din. Ya-kut, the Abvssinian. He was Amir-i-Akhur before she came to the throne apparently, for she does not seem to have raised him to that office; and it was only in the last year of her reign that she assumed male attire, when she appeared in public. Our author does not say so, but all the Tabakat-i-Akbari mentions is, that Jamalud-Din. Yā-kūt, was treated with favour, a mere transliteration of our author's words-انجي انطاد-the same term as he uses with respect to Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din's favour towards his slave, Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak-and that the Turk Maliks and Amirs were envious in consequence. All that that work states, in addition to our author's words-for he does not say so-is, that when she mounted to ride forth, the Master of the Horse, who had become Amir-ul-Umra Isuch an office did not exist in those days, and our author never mentions such an office lused to aid her to mount by taking her under the arm-pit [14]but leaning on his arm or shoulder, in mounting, would seem to be nearer the intended meaning. Now it is very possible that it was part of the duty of the Lord of the Stables, or his privilege, to assist his sovereign to mount when he or she rode forth, and that such an act might not have been occasioned through any undue familiarity; only what was applicable to a male sovereign. according to Musalman ideas, was not so to a female. However, the Lord of the Stables being an Abyssinian, this was, with her assumption of male attire, plea sufficient to the rebellious Turk Maliks-the remainder of the "Chihilgānī Mamlūks," of whom more hereafter-to rebel against a sovereign too energetic for them in their ambitious designs. The Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh makes no reference to the Abyssinian whatever.

4 I cannot conceive why our author should be styled a rided—"a forgiven rebel"—because of this sentence in the text. Gwäliyür had a governor or seneschal placed therein by Sulfain Raziyyat's father in 630 H., and our author was Kāyī there. When Raziyyat came to the throne, she sent a force under Malik Tājud-Din, Sanjar [No. XIV. in the next Section], and relieved the garrison, and, as the governor—Rashīd-ud-Din, 'Alf-from our author's invocation respecting him, appears to have died there, a new fendatory was despatched, at the same time probably, although he is not mentioned, as, after the death of Rashid-ud-Din, 'Alf, the next official in authority was the Amīr-i-Dad, Zyjā-ud-Din, Junaidi, who, being a kinsman of

of the victorious kingdom, Minhāi-i-Sarāi, in conjunction with the Malik 5-ul-Umrā [the chief of Amirs] Ziyā-ud-Din, Junaidi, who was the Amir-i-Dad [chief magistrate] of Gwaliyur, and with other persons of note, came out of the preserved fortress of Gwaliyur on the 1st of the month Sha'ban, 635 H., and returned to Dihli, the capital; to the charge of this servant [the author] the Nāṣiriah and, in this same month, Sultan Razivvat committed College at the capital, to which was added the Kāzi-ship of Gwaliyur 6.

In the year 637 H. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabir Khān-i-Ayaz, who was the feudatory of Lohor, began to show a rebellious spirit7. Sultan Razivyat led an army towards

the rebel Wazir, who refused to acknowledge Sultan Raziyyat, may have been suspected of disaffection. No cause for rebellion appears, neither is any rebellion mentioned; and, on our author's arrival at Dihli, another office was bestowed upon him, in addition to his Kazi-ship of Gwaliyur, which he still

held. See Thomas: PATHÁN KINGS, page 105.

"In 631 H. some emissaries from Balkā Khān, son of Tūshī [Jūjī], son of Chingiz Khan, arrived at the Court of Sultan I-val-timish from Kifchak, bringing presents for him, but, as that Sultan had refrained from holding any intercourse whatever with the Mughal Khans, and was wont to send their agents out of his territory when they came, he would not put these emissaries to death, and desired to dismiss them kindly. They were sent to Gwaliyur, however, fthis was one way of dismissing them kindlyl, and the party, being all Musalmans, used to present themselves in the Masjid there every Friday, and said their prayers behind the author of this book [he acting as Imam], until the reign of Sultan Raziyyat, when the author, after six years' absence, returned to Dihli from Gwalivur, and was promoted, by the favour of that sovereign. At this time directions were given for these emissaries of Balka Khan to be removed to Kinnauj, and there detained; and there they were kept until they died."

5 In some copies, Majd-ul-Umra, but the above seems the correct title, Majd signifies glory, grandeur-the glory or grandeur of Amirs does not sound very correct. It was an honorary title merely.

6 In this case he-"the pardoned" rebel-must have performed one of these

two offices by deputy.

7 In the account of this Malik our author states that Kabir Khān-i-Avāz began to act contumaciously in 636 H., in which year Sultan Razivyat advanced at the head of her troops into the Panjab against him. He retired before her towards the Indus, until he reached the neighbourhood of the Südharah [he could not go much farther, for immediately to the west he would have fallen into hostile hands). When the royal troops crossed the Rawi, Kabir Khan-i-Ayaz made his submission, but he was removed from the fief of Lahor, and Multan was placed in his charge, and the feudatory of the latter-Malik Karā-Kush Khān-sent to Lāhor.

In this year, 636 H., Malik Saif-ud-Din, Hasan, the Karlugh, hard pressed by the Mughals, had to abandon his territories, and he retired towards the territory of Multan and Sind, in hope, probably, of being more successsful on

that part from Dihli, and followed in pursuit of him. At last an accommodation took place, and he presented himself; and the province of Multān, which Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Karā-Kush Khān-i-Aet-kin, held, was made over to the charge of Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabir Khān-i-Ayāz. Sultān Raziyyat returned again to the capital on Thursday, the 10th of the month of Sha'bān's, 637 H.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dîn, Altūniah, who held the fief of Tabarhindah', broke out into rebellion, and, secretly, some of the Amirs of the Court abetted him in this treason. Sultān Raziyyat, on Wednesday, the 9th of the sacred month Ramazān of this same year [637 H.], set out from the capital, with numerous forces', for the purpose of putting down Malik Altūniah's rebellion. When she reached that place [Tabarhindah] ², through circumstances which supervened, the Turk Amirs rose against her, and put to death â Amir Jamāl-ud-Dîn, Yā-kūt, the Ḥabashī, seized Sultān Raziyyat and put her in durance, and sent her to the fortress of Tabarhindah ².

this than on the former occasion. Hasan's eldest zon, whose name has not transpired, taking advantage of Raziyyat's presence in the Panjäh, presented himself before her, was well received, and the fief of Baran, east of Dihlf, was conferred upon him. Soon after, however, he left, without leave and without the cause being known, and rejoined his father, who still was able to hold Banfan, and, soon after, the Karlughs gained possession of Multān. At this period Malik Mu-ayyid-ud-Din, Hindū Khān, held the fief of Üchchalh.

8 Ramazān, in some copies of the text.

⁹ Altitiniah was only lately made feudatory of Tabarhindah, for, when Raziyyat came to the throne, she gave him his first fief, that of Baran. Briggs styles him "of the Toorky tribe of Chelgany"—a nice blunder, but Dow leaves this part of the sentence out. See last para. of note ³, page 643, and the meaning of Chihil-gani in next Section.

1 In some copies of the text, "with the forces composing the kalb" or centre, the signification of which has been given in note 3, page 634.

² But not "on the way" thither as in Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and Firishtah.
³ Our author says "martyred," here equivalent to his being put to death unjustly. Rauzat-uş-Şafā says, Yā-kūt commanded her troops, a very unlikely thing, when the Turk Maliks and Amīrs hated him so greatly. He may have commanded Rapiyyat's own personal followers. Rauzat-uş-Şafā, indeed, says so. For the detail of these events see the account of Malik Altūnīah in the next Section.

4 Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and Budā'unī have Tarhindah المتعاربة all cases, and Firishtah ("revised text"), wherever this place is mentioned, under whatever reign it may be, has Pathindah المتعاربة Pathadah عبادة عليه المتعاربة المتع

Among the events which happened in the beginning of Sultan Razivvat's reign, the greatest was that the Kirāmitah and Mulāḥidah heretics of Hindūstān, incited by a person, a sort of learned man, named Nūr-ud-Din, a Turk 5, whom they used to style Nur, the Turk, collected together at Dihli, from different parts of the territory of Hind, such as Gujarāt, and the country of Sind, and the parts round about the capital, Dihli, and the banks of the rivers Iun and Gang. In secret they pledged themselves to be faithful to each other, and, at the instigation of Nūr, the Turk, they conspired against Islām. This Nūr, the Turk, used to harangue, and the mob would collect around him. He used to call the 'Ulama of the orthodox people 6 Nāsibī [setters-up], and to style them Murit | procrastinators], and used to incite the common people to animosity against the orders of 'Ulama of the sects of Abu-Hanifah and Shaf'i until a day was fixed upon. The whole of the fraternities of the Mulahidah and Kiramitah entered the Jāmi' Masjid of the city of Dihli, on Friday, the 6th of the month of Rajab, in the year 634 H., to the number of about one thousand persons, armed with swords and shields. Having divided into two bodies, one body, from the side of the Hisār-i-Nau [the new Citadel], entered the gateway of the Fami' Masjid on the northern side, and the second body, passing through the Bāzār-i-Bazāzān [the Bāzār of the Cloth-Merchantsl, entered the gateway of the Mu'izzi College under the supposition that it was the Jami' Masjid, and, on both sides, fell upon the Musalmans with [their] swords. A great number of people, some by the swords of those heretics, and some [trodden] under people's feet, attained martyrdom.

On an outcry having arisen from the city on account of

⁵ He was not called "Núr Turk," but he was a Turk, and his name was Nūr-ud-Din.

⁶ That is the Sunnis, in contradistinction to the Shi'as and other schismatics. Neither Tabakāti-kakbari, Budā'ūni, nor Firishtah, refer to this "outbreak," but other writers do. The fact of Firishtah's being a Shi'a may account for his eschewing the matter.

⁷ The name of one of the heretical sects among the Muḥammadans, who procrastinate, and consider good works unnecessary, and faith sufficient, and that all Musalmāns will be saved, as hell is only reserved for infidels. See Sale: KUR'AN, Preliminary Discourse, for an account of these different sects of schismatics, pages 122, 193, and 131.

this outbreak, the warriors of the city, such as Nasīr-ud-Din, Ai-yitim, the Balarami, and Amir, Imam-i-Nasiri, the Poet, and other armed men, from different directions, rode fully equipped [as they were] with cuirass, and other defensive armour, steel cap, spear, and shield, into the Jāmi' Masjid, by the minārah entrance's, and plied their swords upon the Mulāhidah and Kirāmitah heretics; and the Musalmans, who were on the roof of the Fami' Masjid. poured down stones and bricks upon them, and sent the whole of the Mulahidahs and Kiramitahs to hell, and quelled that outbreak. Thanks be to God for the blessing of safety and the honour of religion!

When they imprisoned Sultan Raziyyat within the stronghold of Tabarhindah, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Altūniah, entered into a matrimonial contract with her, and espoused her, and marched an army towards Dihli in order to take possession of the kingdom a second time. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, Sālāri, and Malik Karā-Kush rebelled and quitted the capital, Dihli, and went and joined them.

Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh [Razivvat's brother 1], was [at this time] seated on the throne; and Ikhti-

8 Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 336.

9 The Tazkarat-ul-Mulük and some other works state that Malik Ikhtivarud-Din, Altūniah, contracted marriage with Sultan Raziyyat, nolens volens. He then took up her cause. He was no longer a rebel, because he imagined he would get the upper hand of his brother rebels; and Raziyyat now managed to raise a considerable force consisting of Khokhars [this large tribe appear to have extended, at that period, a considerable distance east of the Biah, and the good horses to be obtained in the Talwandhis of the Khokhars are often mentioned], Jats, and others of the tribes about Tabarhindah, and some Amirs likewise, from the adjoining fiefs, went over to her. The Tabakat-i-Akbari, and Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh, also mention Khokhars, but Firishtah, here, as well as elsewhere, not knowing the difference between كبكر and كبوكم at turns the former into Ghakars, a people, in his time, in some repute, and when a chief or two of the tribe were serving the Mughal emperors.

ELPHINSTONE, states that "Rezia"-he refers to Raziyyat-"when force failed her had recourse to art, and she so far gained over Altúnia by the influence of love or ambition, that he agreed to marry her," &c. I wonder what "authentic history" that is recorded in, or how proved? The reason of the change in Malik Altuniah's policy is apparent, as shown by a Muhammadan writer in a following note. Others had obtained power at Dilhi and he had been left out in the cold after being made a tool of, and now, therefore, he who formerly rebelled against Sultan Raziyyat became, out of revenge, her

champion.

¹ Half-brother apparently.

yār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kīn, the Amīr-i-Ḥājib, having been assassinated, Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunkar, the Rūmī, had become Amīr-i-Ḥājib. In the month of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, in the year 638 II., Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, led a narmy out of Dihlī for the purpose of resisting Sultān Razīyyat and Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūnīah, and they were routed, and, having reached Kaithal, the troops along with them all abandoned them³, and Sultān Razīyyat and Malik Altūnīah fell captive into the hands of Hindūs, and attained martyrdom.

Their defeat took place on the 24th of the month, Rabi'-ul-Awwal; and the martyrdom of Sultan Raziyyat took place on Tuesday, the 25th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, in the year 638 II. Her reign extended over a period of three

years, six months, and six days 5.

2 The author of the Tabaţät-i-Akbari, who seems to know—without naming any authority—better than those persons who were eye-witnesses of what they relate, and other authors who preceded him, asserts that Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, sent an army against Raziyyat under Malik Pizz-ud-Din, Bahram Shaiha, sent an army against Raziyyat under Malik Pizz-ud-Din, Balhan fin some copies Tigin], who afterwards attained the title of Ulugh Khān, and Pirishtah, of course, follows. The amusing part of it is that our author's patron was neither styled 'Izz-ud-Din, at this time, nor at any other; and he had not attained such a high position at that period as to be put in the command of an army, as may be gathered from the account of him in the next Section. He was, at first, Khāsāh-dār to Sulţān Raziyyat, and, afterwards, during her reign, became Amfn-i-Shikār. The abovementioned work also places this defeat and death of Raziyyat in 637 H.—a vear too soon.

The Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh, as well as the Tabakāt-i-Akbari, makes two affairs of this, and says that it was after the first defeat, but gives no date for it, that Raziyyat raised a force of Khokhars and other tribes, and that the second defeat took place near Kaithal, on the 4th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 638 H., after which the Khokhars and others abandoned her, and she and her husband fell into the hands of the Hindūs, who put them to death on the 25th of the same month. See further details of these transactions in the account of

Malik Altūniah in the next Section.

4 In come copies, Saturday, the 29th of Rabī'-ul-Ākhir, but the date cannot be correct. See also the account of Malik Altūnīah in the next Section, where

the 25th of Rabi'-ul-Akhir is given as the date.

§ IBN-BAŢŪŢAH, who is sometimes quoted as an authority on Indian hisrory, says [Lee's translation] that Raziyyat's brother, having "polluted his reign by killing his brother; awas, therefore, killed himself. Upon this, the army agreed to place his sister, El Malika Razia, upon the throne, who reigned four years. This woman usually rode about among the army, just a sure most She, however, gave up the government, on account of some circumstances that presented themselves. After this, her younger brother, Näsir Oddin, became possessed of the government, which he held for twenty years"! So much for Ibn-Baṭṭṭah's authority on Indian history.

V. SULŢĀN MU'IZZ-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, BAHRAM SHĀH 4, SON OF THE SULTAN [I-YAL-TIMISH].

Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah-on whom be peace!-was a conquering monarch, fearless and full of courage, and sanguinary: but he was endowed with some laudable attributes and excellent qualities. He was in nature unassuming and frank, and never had about his person jewelry and finery after the custom of the kines of this world, nor did he ever evince any desire for girdles. silken garments, decoration, banners, or display.

When they imprisoned Sultan Razivyat in the preserved city of Tabarhindah, the Maliks and Amirs, in accord, despatched letters to the capital city of Dihli, and Mu'izzud-Din, Bahram Shah, on Monday, the 28th of the month Ramazān, in the year 637 H., they raised to the throne of sovereignty. When, on Sunday, the 11th of the month of Shawwal of that same year, the Maliks and Amirs and the rest of the forces returned to the city again, they publicly pledged their allegiance to his sovereignty within the Daulat Khānah [Royal residence] on the stipulation of the Deputyship being conferred upon Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Aet-kin'; and, on that day, after [pledging] allegiance, the writer of these words, by way of benediction, in order to congratulate him [on his accession], recited this strophe:-

"Well done, on thy account, the uprearing of the emblems of sovereignty ! Brave to thy good fortune, heaped up, the ensigns of dominion!

Mu'izz-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Mughis-ul-Khalk bi'l hakk,

Of dignity like Suliman: under thy command are both jinn [genii] and

Though the sovereignty of Hind be the heritage of the Shamsi family, Praise be to God, a second I-val-timish, of its sons art thou.

When the whole world saw thee, that, by right, thou art the kingdom's

They made thy diadem their kiblah-gāh, for thou art all-powerful and wise.

⁶ The inscription given as that of his first coining is as follows:-

فيحر الدرهم و الدينار باسم سلطان معزالدين بهرام شاء في مند بسبع و ثلثين و ستماية -- Obverse ضرب دار الحلافة م دهلي جلوس ا-Reverse

which may be thus translated :- Obverse-"The name of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, conferreth glory on dinar and diram. Year 637." Reverse-"Struck at the seat of empire, Dihli, in the first year [of the reign]."

⁷ He was to act as Deputy or Regent for one year. See the account of this Malik in the next Section. Firishtah turns this name into "Alp-Tigin," but Dow leaves out the titles altogether, and makes Tiggi of him.

Like as Minhāj-i-Sarāj's, for thee the creation's prayer is this:—
'O God! mayest thou on the kingdom's throne to eternity continue:
Straight like the spear may the universe during thy reign become,
So that, save in the hair-tuft of thy standard, no one may disorder
behold!'

When Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kīn, became Deputy, by virtue of his deputy-ship, he took the affairs of the kingdom into his own hands, and, in conjunction with the Wazīr, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Iwaz, the Mustaufī, assumed control over the disposal of state affairs?

After a month or two had passed away, this fact began to press heavily upon the noble mind of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dîn; and a sister of the Sultān, who had been married to the son of the Kāzī, Naṣīr-ud-Dîn³, and had, at her own request, been repudiated by him, the Deputy [Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kīn], having taken to wife, assumed the triple naubat, and stationed an elephant at the entrance of his own residence [out of parade], and the grandeur of his

8 I have translated and inserted this strophe here, not for any particular merit it possesses, but to show the style of our author's unctuous and flatulent poetical effusions. Although his work was completed twenty-one years after this event, and the true character of the Prince he composed those lines upon was then known to him, whatever good opinion he may have had of him at the time of his accession, he did not think it necessary to omit this piece of fulsome adulation to this "Suliman in dignity," this "second I-yal-timigh." This translation will not be again burdened with any more of our author's own poetry.

⁹ On account of Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh's youth, as was determined when the Maliks agreed to raise him to the throne. He was to act as Deputy

one yea

¹ Mustauff is not a proper name. It signifies the head clerk of a department, an auditor, &c., and to the office previously held by "the upright officer," as Muhagzab has been translated, or by his father or ancestors. See Blochmann's translation of the A'n for the meanings of such words, and compare Elliot: 1 InDIA, vol. ii. page 336.

² That is, he, in concert with the Wazīr, ruled the country, whilst the "Sulīmān," whose commands swayed "the jinn and mankind," was king in

name merely.

⁸ Turned into Ikhtiyār-ud-Din by Firishtah—in the "revised text"—who turns the Malik of that name into Alb-Tigin!

4 She had been repudiated by her own desire from aversion to her husband. In such cases the wife resigns the dowry and all presents made to her, &c.

In the account of this Malik in the next Section, our author states that he applied for permission to use the naubat—already described in note 3, page 383—on becoming Deputy. At this period kings only were allowed to have elephants in this way, unless specially granted, as in Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlii Khān's case, mentioned in the account of him in the next Section.

affairs and the execution of his mandates lasted until the month of Muharram of the year 638 H., when, unexpectedly, on Monday, the 8th of that month, by command of the Sulţān, a discourse was delivered within the Kaṣr named Safed* [the White Castle]. After the termination of the discourse, Sulţān Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, from the upper part of the palace, despatched two reckless Turks, after the manner of Fidā-īs, so that, in front of the dais, in the royal Audience Hall of the Kaṣr-i-Safed, they martyred Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Aet-kin, by the wound of a knife'. They inflicted on the Wazìr, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Din, two wounds in the side; but, as his appointed time was not come, he got away from them and escaped outside. Malik Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, the Rūmī, became Amīr-i-Ḥājib, and assumed the direction of

⁶ The printed text has قدر سفيد نام instead of قدر سفيد نام as above, and so the former is rendered in ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 338, "the Palace of the White-reof." I hope the Archæologists will not search for it under the latter name. The 'Arabic word kaşr, and its Persian equivalent kūšhk, does not mean a palace exactly, but, more strictly speaking, a castle—a fortified residence. Windsor Castle, for example, in the feudal times, was a kaşr. See also note 3, page 331.

⁷ Our author makes a totally different statement in his account of this Malik in the next Section. There he says that the Salār, the late Aḥmad-i-Sa'd, came secrelty to the Sulţān and instigated him to this act.

The Tabakāt-i-Akbari cuts this matter very short, and Buda'uni perpetrates the blunder of killing Aet-kin and the Wazir both at one time. Firishtah here makes an altogether different statement to our author's, but does not quote his authority, and, as our author is about the only one for the reigns of the Shamsi dynasty, the Dakhani historian's statement may be valued accordingly. He says Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, instigated two Turks among his confidents to feign drunkenness, and to assassinate Alb-Tigin [Aet-kin] and the Wazir. They entered the royal Audience Hall of the Kasr-i-Safed for this purpose, and Alb-Tigin [Aet-kin], who was standing-up in the row of Amirs before the Sultan-who is made out to have been present by Firishtah -moved to stop them and prohibit their approach [seeing the condition they pretended to be in, as if the guards were not enough for the purposel, when, having the opportunity they wanted, they slew him with their "life-taking daggers," and then attacked the Wazir, Muhazzab-ud-Din, and inflicted two wounds on him. The other nobles present now making a rush, Muhazzab-ud-Din managed to escape. The Sultan, that day, ordered the two Turks to be imprisoned for their act, but very soon released them. The Lubb-i-Tawarikh i-Hind gives a similar account, but the names are correctly given.

Fidā-1 is the name applied to the agents of the Chief of the Assassins, or Shaikh-ul-Jibāl, who carried out his decrees against people's lives. Fidā means a sacrifice, one who is devoted to carry out any deed.

It was Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Act-kin, who incited Malik Altuniah to revolt against Sultan Raziyyat, and so he met his deserts.

state affairs; and, when Sultān Raziyyat, along with Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dîn, Altūniah, from Tabarhindah, determined to move towards Dihlī, and revoked that intention, and withdrew, and Sultān Raziyyat and Altūniah attained martyrdom at the hands of the Hindūs, as has previously been recorded, the affairs of Malik Badr-ud-Dîn, Sunkar s, took a new turn. Moreover, because, in the execution of his own mandates, and the administration of the affairs of the kingdom, he did not possess the authority of the Sultān of Islām, and used to seek to acquire superiority over the Wazīr, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Dîn, and used to issue his own orders, the Wazīr, secretly, was in the habit of influencing the Sultān's disposition against Malik Badr-ud-Dîn, Sunkar, to such degree, that the Sultān's temper became quite changed towards him.

When Malik Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, discovered this fact, he grew apprehensive of the Sultan. He was desirous by some suitable means of removing the Sultan and placing one of the latter's brothers upon the throne. On Monday, the 17th of the month of Safar, 639 H., at the residence of the Sadr-ul-Mulk ', the Sayyid, Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Mūsāwī, who was the Mushrif-i-Mamālik [Secretary of the Kingdom], Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, convened a party of the Sadrs and chief men of the capital, such as the Kāzi-i-Mamālik [Kāzī of the Kingdom], Jalāl-ud-Din, the Kāsānī 2, Kāzī Kabir-ud-Din, Shaikh Muhammad-i-Shāmi [the Syrian], and other Amirs and important personages. When they had assembled, and deliberated respecting the change of government, they despatched the Sadr-ul-Mulk [Sadr of the State-Chief Sadr] to the presence of the Wazir, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Din, in order that he

⁸ This Malik was the patron of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban, subsequently, Ulugh Khān-i-A'gam; and, when the former became Amir-i-Hājib, through his patronage, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban, who, up to this time, had not attained a higher office than that of Chief Huntsman, was promoted to the dignity of Amir i-Akhur [Lord of the Stables].

⁹ In other places, the date of this event, in some copies, is the 14th, and in others the 10th.

¹ Şadı-ul-Mulk signifies Judge or Administrator of the State, but here it is only his title or degree, as his office is Mushrifi-i-Mamalik.
² A native of Käsin. —Kazan of modern maps.

² The word Amir here, it will be seen, is applied to Kazis and ecclesiastics.

might be present [with them], and that, in accord with him, they might carry out their object effectively.

One of the Sultan's favourites and confidants was at the Wazir's side when the Sadr-ul-Mulk reached his residence; and when the Wazir, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Din, heard the announcement of the Sadr-ul-Mulk's coming, he concealed that confidential person of the Sultan in a place where he might hear their conver-The Sadr-ul-Mulk entered, and stated to him all about the [proposed] change in the state of the highest personages of the sublime Court, and craved the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Wazir's attendance. The Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dîn, replied: "It behoveth that you should return again, so that I may perform afresh the ablution of purification, and follow [you] to the presence of the grandees." When the Sadr-ul-Mulk retired, Muhazzab-ud-Din brought forth the Sultan's confidant, and said to him: "Didst thou hear what the Sadrul-Mulk said '? Proceed quickly to the royal presence and represent that it is advisable that the Sultan should mount and come upon that seditious party so that they may not have dispersed "6.

⁴ The difference of idioms in the text, so often mentioned, is considerable here also.

⁵ The Dakhani historian-who has made "such conscientious and excellent use of his predecesssors," and whose works he has "so entirely exhausted of all prominent facts mentioned by them," as to have rendered their works "almost useless"-FIRISHTAH, by his wholesale appropriations of the text of the Tabakāt-i-Akbari-in many places verbatim, although he pretends, now and then, to differ from it, whilst copying the identical statement at the same time -has, in this instance, "exhausted" that work so faithfully and conscientiously that he betrays himself, and endorses the same great blunder that the author of the Tabakat-i-Akbari perpetrates here, even to the incorrect name given to one of the parties, which is totally contrary to our author's account, and which the other's own words subsequently contradict, and then his statement agrees with our author, from whose work he took it, for there is no other contemporary writer to recur to. The Tabakat-i-Akbari says, after Act-kin had been assassinated and Muhazzab wounded, that "Malik Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, the Rumi, became Amir-i-Hajib, and he administered the affairs according to the old laws and usages. It so happened, that, at the instigation of a clique of the seditious, he took counsel with the Sadrs and conspicuous persons respecting a change of sovereignty. On Monday, the 18th of Safar, all the chief men assembled at the abode of the Şadr-ul-Mulk, Tāj-ud-Din, who was the Mushrif-i-Mamalik, and there held counsel respecting the proposed change in the government. They despatched the Sadr-ul-Mulk [Tāj-ud-Din] to the presence of the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Wazir, in order that

When they stated this matter to the Sultān, he, at once, mounted, and that disaffected party became struck with amazement, and Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunkar, joined the Sultān, who returned, and held a council in his own royal residence, and forthwith a mandate was issued that Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunkar, should proceed to Budā'ūn, and that district was made his fief. Kāzī Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Kāsānī, was removed from the chief Ķāzī-ship, and Ķāzī Kabīr-ud-Dīn, and Shaikh Muḥammad-i-Shāmī, together with him, became apprehensive, and left the city.

After a period of four months, Malik Badr-ud-Dîn, Sunkar, returned to the capital and, as the Sulţān was incensed against him, he ordered him to be imprisoned; and the Sayyid, Tāj-ud-Dîn, 'Alī, Mūsāwī, was also ordered to be imprisoned, and, at last, both of them were martyred. This occurrence totally changed the disposition of the Amīrs, and all of them became frightened and apprehensive of the Sulţān, and not one among them

he also might attend the meeting and take part in the consultation. At once, the Sadr-ul-Mulk gave intimation to Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, and, having placed a confidential follower of the Sultan's in a place of concealment, [where? in another man's house to betray himself!] went to the Nizām-ud-Mulk's [Muhazzab, the Wazīr's] abode and informed him of the presence [at his own house !] of Kazi-Jalal-ud-Din, the Kasani, Kazi Kabirud-Din, Shaikh Muhammad, and other personages there assembled [and asked him to come along with him], but Muhazzab-ud-Din put off his coming to the time of afternoon prayers. The Sadr-ul-Mulk represented what was doing by means of the Sultan's servant, whom he had concealed, and apprised that monarch of the state of affairs, who, that very hour, set out, and came upon them," &c. &c. The Sadr-ul-Mulk, Taj-ud-Din, as mentioned in the next page, was imprisoned and put to death for his share in this affair. Some others of the smaller fry of historians copy this blunder from the Tabakat-i-Akbari as well as Firishtah, and, from the fact of the latter making the very same blunder as the former-he, indeed, uses his very words-I am much inclined to doubt whether Firishtah ever saw our author's work, and I think that nothing will be found in Firishtah, taken from our author's history, but such as is contained in the Tabakat-i-Akbari. Compare ELLIOT here also,

6 He took up his residence in the dwelling of Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn. This is the illustrious <u>Gh</u>uri chief, Malik Kutb-ud-Dîn, Husain, son of 'Ali, whose execution is recorded at page 702. He is again mentioned in the last Section.

7 See note 5, preceding page.

⁸ Whether in prison or out is not said. Compare ELLIOT here. In the next Section it is said to have taken place on Wednesday, the 14th of Jamädi-ul-Awwal, 639 H., but in some copies Rabī-ul-Awwal is stated to have been the month, but this is impossible as Rabī-ul-Awwal follows next to the month Safar, and Jamādī-ul-Awwal is only the third month after Safar, and from what is stated just before Jamādī-ul-Ākhir would be most correct.

placed any further confidence in him. The Wazîr, too, in order to avenge the wounds he had received, desired that all the Amīrs, the Maliks, and the Turks should rebel against the Sultān's. He continued to raise the Sultān's apprehensions against the Amīrs and Turks, and was exciting the fears of the Amīrs against the Sultān, until, at last, this fact spread abroad like a pestilence, and was the cause of the dethronement of the Sultān, and rebellion among the people.

Among the calamities which happened during the reign of Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, was the matter of the city of Lohor, when an army of the infidel Mughals from the direction of Khurāsān and Ghaznin appeared before that city, and, for a considerable time, carried on hostilities. The feudatory of Lohor was Malik Ikhtivarud-Din, Karā-Kash¹, and he, by nature, was very warlike, energetic, intrepid, and fearless, but the inhabitants of Lohor did not act as the conditions of union demanded. and in fighting, and in keeping guard at night, showed much neglect. When that disposition became evident to Malik Karā-Kash, he put his retainers in motion, and, at night, evacuated the city, and set out towards the capital, Dihli. The infidel Mughals pursued him, but the Most High God preserved him under His own guardianship, and he escaped in safety from them. As no ruler remained within the city of Lohor, on Monday, the 16th of the month of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir, 639 H., the infidel Mughals obtained possession of that city2, martyred the Musalmans, and made captive their dependents.

9 Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 339.

Dow turns him into "Malleek," as if that was his name, and Briggs always

into "Mullik Kurragooz"!!

2 As usual with our author, instead of giving the details of this affair here, he postpones it, gives a few additional particulars in his account of Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Kanā-Kash Khān, in the next Section in his account of the various Maliks, but leaves the details for the last Section. Alfi says it was in 638 t.

The Mughals, at first, intended to attack Multān—which was still held by Malik Kabir Khani-Ayāz—but, finding they were likely to meet with a warm reception, turned their faces towards Lahor, at that time, totally unprepared to offer an efficient defence, being without stores of provisions or munitions of war. Many of the principal inhabitants of Lāhor at this period were merchants, who had travelled into Upper Khurāsān and Turkistān with

When the dreadful intelligence of this calamity reached the capital, Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh, assembled the people of the city of Dihlî in the Kaşr-i-Safed [White Castle], and to the author, the writer of these lines, he gave command to deliver a discourse, and the people pledged their fealty [anew] to the Sultān.

their merchandize, and had provided themselves with letters of protection from the Mughal rulers, and they seemed not to care what happened, and the remainder of the chief inhabitants were also remiss. Seeing this, Malik Kara-Kash determined to leave them, more particularly as there was but little chance of being succoured from Dihli. The Turk and Ghūrī Maliks, being disaffected towards Sulfan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, were not very active in obeying his summons to assemble their followers, and the "upright officer"-the arch rebel [referred to in note 6, page 641], Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Wazir-even after the army had reached the Biah, instead of pushing on to Lahor, was occupied in plotting the destruction of his master. Finding resistance hopeless, Malik Kara-Kash, under pretence of making a night attack upon the Mughal camp, assembled his family and followers, cut his way out, and made towards Dihli. After he had left, when too late, the inhabitants made some effort to defend the place, under the guidance of the Kot-wal [Seneschal], Ak-Sunkar, and a few others. During the fighting that went on in the streets of the city, after the Mughals effected a lodgment, the BAHADUR, TA-IR, the Mughal commander, according to our author, was encountered, lance to lance, by Ak-Sunkar, and each wounded the other so severely that both died of their wounds.

There is considerable discrepancy here between our author and Fasih. I and others which will be noticed in the last Section, and as to the Bahādur, Tā-līr, being killed, according to Faṣiḥ-l and others, he was alive in 644 H., and, moreover, the Nū-yin, Mangūtah, was the commander of the Mughals, and the Bahādur, Tā-līr, was under him. After the departure of the Mughals, the Khokhars, and other Hindū Gabrs, seized upon Lāhor; and, after this, we no more hear of a feudatory of Lāhor in the whole work.

Briggs, in his version of Firishtah's history, but not on his authority, assures us that the Mughal in question was "a famous Toorby leader named Toormonthren [sic] Khan"!! Dow, however, turns Malik Karā-Kash into "Mallech, the viceroy," but leaves out this "famous Toorby leader."

Lähor was sacked, numbers of its people were massacred and carried away into captivity.

At the time of this invasion, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, whom Sultān Raziyyat had removed from the fiel of Lāhor to that of Multān, assumed a canopy of state and independence, and took possession of Uchchah and its dependencies. He however died shortly after this act of disloyalty, in 639 H. His son, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Blikr, brought Sind under his authority, and several times attacked the Karlughs before the gate of Multān. More respecting these events will be found in the next two Sections.

3 Compare Elliot, ii. 340.

ELLIOT—"He had lived for some time quietly in the Sultan's water palace." The Karr or castle here mentioned had been erected on the edge, or, more probably, in the midst of the Haus which Iyal-timish made, which was named the Haus-i-Sultan, and Haus-i-Shamsi. It is often mentioned; and, There was a Darwesh, a Turk-mān, who was named Aiyūb, a hermit clothed in garb of hair-cloth, who, for some time, dwelt, engaged in his devotions, at the Ḥauz [reservoir] of the Ḳaṣṛ-i-Sulṭān [the Sulṭān's Castle], and there he acquired intimacy with Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, and the Sulṭān manifested a partiality for him. This Darwesh began to interfere in state affairs. Before this the Darwesh in question had dwelt at the town of Mihir, and had been persecuted by Ķāzi Shams-ud-Dīn of Mihir. At this time, that the Darwesh's words were revered by, and he had acquired ascendancy over, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, he used his endeavours until the Sulṭān had Ķāzī Shams-ud-Dīn of Mihir thrown before the feet of an elephant'.

As soon as this catastrophe became known, the people again became wholly afraid of the Sultān. In order to repel the infidel Mughals who were then before the gates of the city of Lohor, the Sultān nominated Malik Kutbud-Dîn, Ḥusain, son of 'Ali', the Ghūri, along with the Wazir' [the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dîn], and several Amīrs and Maliks, with the forces of Ḥindūstān, to advance towards Lohor, for the purpose of guarding the frontiers'. At this period, Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, on

in after times, Sultan Fīrūz Shāh repaired it, as well as many other buildings, masiids, tombs, &c.

Darweshes of this kind, however, do not live in palaces, they would not be Darweshes if they did: this one took up his residence near the building, in some small mastid or other religious building.

4 Here likewise, because the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī makes a mistake in including Kāzī Shams-ud-Dīn among those connected with the plot mentioned in note 8, page 653, and throws him at the elephant's feet then, Firishtah, of course, does precisely the same; but this Darwesh is not mentioned in either work. The Kāzī's death does not appear to have been connected, in any way, with the plot in question.

⁵ The "STUDENT'S MANUAL OF INDIAN HISTORY," however, assures us, contrary to the Muhammadan historians, that his name was "Yekhtar ood Deen, the vicier," whilst Dow, on the other hand, is more correct, according to Firishtah, and calls him "Hassen Ghori," but puts an additional piece upon it, and says he was "chief seretary of the empire"!

⁶ Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, commanded this force, the Warir merely accompanied him in a civil capacity. Compare Thomas: "PATHÁR KINOS," page 118.

⁷ Above, our author states it was to repel the Mughals, but here, from what he says, the relief of Lähor was not the object, but merely the guarding of the frontiers. The Mughals took the city on the 16th of Jamādi-ul-Akhir.

639 н.

Saturday, the roth of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, in the year 639 H, entrusted this author with the Kāzī-ship of the empire, together with the Kāzī-ship of the capital, and conferred upon him a robe of honour and liberal presents. After

this, the troops received orders [to move].

When the forces assembled on the bank of the Biāh*, the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Wazît, in order to take vengeance upon the Sulṭān, so that, by some means or other, he might oust him from the throne, indited a representation secretly to the Sulṭān from the camp, saying: "These Amīrs* and Turks will never become obedient. It is advisable that an edict should be issued by His Majesty¹, that I, and Kuṭb-ud-Din, Husain, should destroy all the Amīrs and Turks, by such means as may be attainable, in order that the country may be clear [of them]." When that representation reached the Sulṭān, he, according to the way of precipitancy and youthfulness, did not take this order into consideration nor deliberate upon it, and commanded so that an edict of the desired form was written out and despatched to the camp.

As soon as the edict reached the camp, Muhazzab-ud-Dîn showed the very edict itself to the Amîrs and Turks, saying: "The Sulţān writes and commands respecting you on this subject." All of them became excessively incensed against the Sulţān, and, at the suggestion of the Kliwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dîn, the Wazîr, they pledged themselves to effect the expulsion and dethronement of the Sulţān. When the news of this disaffection on the part of those Amīrs and troops reached the capital, the Shaikh-ul-Islām?

9 Compare Ellior. "Amirs" does not mean "generals."

⁸ Tabakāti-Akbarī says "when the army reached the banks of the river Bīnh, near which, at this period, the town of Suliān-pūr has been founded." Firishtah has precisely the same words.

Tabakāti-iAkbarī says that Muhagab—the "aprichi."

Tabakāti-iAkbarī says that Muhagab—the "aprichi officer" of ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 334]—requested the Sultān to come himself, or permit him," &c. Firishtah follows. "The Raugat-us-Şalā says, contrary to others, that Muhagab-ud-Din included Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Ḥasan [Ḥusain], among the number he asked leave to put to death, but this is not correct.

² The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī says the Sultān despatched Shaikh Kutb-ud-Dīn, Bakht-yār, Uāhī [i.e. of Uāh near Baghdād] to the insurgents, and Firishtah adds a little and makes him the Shaikh-ul-Islām besides. Dow, translating Firishtah, calls him [vol. i, page 177] "Islaam, a venerable and learned Omrah". I wonder what "Omrah" can mean. I have heard of Umrā, but that is the futural of Amīr. This first statement, however, is an error, and he is

Ithe Muhammadan Patriarchl of the capital was Savvid Kuth-ud-Din, and him the Sultan despatched to the army for the purpose of allaving that sedition. He proceeded to the camp, and used his endeavours in stirring up and augmenting that sedition, and came back again, and the army followed after him, and arrived before the gates of Dihli, and fighting was commenced.

This servant of the state, Minhāi-i-Sarāi, and [several] priests of eminence of the city, used the utmost endeavours to make peace and allay the disaffection, but in no manner could an agreement be effected. The arrival of the forces before the gate of the city of Dihli happened on Saturday. the 19th of the month of Sha'ban, 639 H., and, until the month of Zi-Ka'dah, hostilities were carried on against the fortress, and, on both sides, a great number of people perished and others were disabled. All the environs of the city were destroyed; and the cause of the prolongation of this sedition was this. There was a head Farrash in the Sultan's service whom they used to style Fakhr-ud-Din. Mubārak Shāh, Farrukhi, who, in the employ of the Sultan, had found favour, and had acquired complete ascendancy over his mind, and whatever he said to the Sultan that the Sultan would do, and this Farrash would, in no way, assent to an accommodation 6.

On Friday, the 7th7 of the month Zi-Ka'dah, the depen-

a different person from the Sayvid Kutb-ud-Din here referred to by our author. The former, whose full names are, Khwajah-not Sayyid-Kutb-ud-Din, Bakht-yar, Kaki, Ushi, after whom the Kuth minarah at Dihli is named. He died six years previous to this time. See note 6, page 621, para. 3.

In some copies, Monday.

⁴ Among those of the great Maliks who supported Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, was Malik Kara-Kash, feudatory of Bhianah, and Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Yuz-Bak-i-Tughril Khan. They were both imprisoned however, on the 9th of Ramazān, at the instigation of the Farrash, Fakhr-ud-Din, Mubarak Shah, and only obtained their release when Dials was taken by the confederate Maliks.

⁵ Farrashis are servants of the houses of great men who spread the carpets. make the beds, and pitch the tents on journeys. This head Farrash is styled Mihtar Mubārak in the next Section.

⁶ Nothing of this affair of the head farrash is mentioned in Raugat-us-Safa, or in the Tabakat-i-Akbari, and, consequently, not in Firishtah either; but the Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh and some others refer to it. See the account of Malik Yūz-Bak-i-Tuʻghril Khān in the next Section. Our author was so intent upon his own tale here that he has left out most of the particulars.

⁷ In some copies the 17th of Zi-Ka'dah.

dents of the Khwajah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, gave 3000 jītals to a body of stupid fellows, and stirred up some of the same cloth as the author, who were persons of position at the capital, and, after the conclusion of the Friday prayers, they rose in the Jami' Masjid, and drew swords upon the author. By the favour of the Most High God, he had with him a staff containing a knife, and drew it, and was accompanied by a few armed slaves, and succeeded in getting out of the tumult. On the following night the Amirs and the Turks took the fortress, and, next day, Saturday8, the 8th of Zī-Ka'dah, 639 H., they gained possession of the whole city, and imprisoned the Sultan. Mubarak Shah, the Farrash, who used to endeavour to stimulate the rebellion. they made a public example of and executed; and, on the night of Tuesday, the 13th of the month before-mentioned, Sultan Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahram Shah, attained martyrdom -may he rest in peace!-and the period of his reign was two years, one month, and a half.

VI. SULŢĀN 'ALĀ-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, MAS'ŪD <u>SH</u>ĀH.º, SON OF SULŢĀN RUKN-UD-DĪN, FĪRŪZ <u>SH</u>ĀH.

Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd <u>Sh</u>āh, was the son of Sulţān Rukn-ud-Dîn, Fîrūz <u>Sh</u>āh, and was a beneficent Prince and of good disposition, and was endowed with all noble qualities.

On Saturday, the 8th of Zi-Ka'dah, 639 H., when the city of Dihli passed out of the possession of Sultān Mu'izzud-Din, Bahrām Shāh, the Maliks and Amirs, with one consent, brought forth, from confinement, all three Princes

In another place, in the next Section, it is said, Tuerday, the 8th, but neither of these days can be correct, if the 13th was Tuesday. In this case, the 8th would be Thursday; and, if Saturday was the 8th, the 13th would be Friday. A few lines farther down Saturday is again said to be the 8th.

The following is given, in the work previously quoted, as the inscription on the coins first struck in 'Alā-ud-Dīn's reign:

Obverse—العقق بنظام المالات من عندائم سطان علاءالدين مسهود نداء المحالات المسالات المسالات المسالات المسالات المسالات المسالات المسالات المسالات المسالات المسالات ما which may be thus rendered:—Obverse—"The prosperity of the government of the state through God. Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ud Shāh." Reverse—
"Struck at the city of Dihlî [in the] year six hundred and forty, the first of the

reign."

1 Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balhan-i-Kashlü Khān, was also one of the ring-leaders in this outbreak against Mu'izz-ud-Dîn. Early in the day on which

- Must

[the sons and grandsons of Sultan Shams-ud-Din, I-valtimish], namely, Sultan [subsequently] Nāşir ud-Din, Malik Jālal-ud-Dīn, and Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, and conducted them from the Kasr-i-Safed [White Castle] to the Kaşr-i-Firūzi-i-Daulat-Khānah [the Firūzi Castle, the royal residence], and agreed to the sovereignty of 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Mas'ud Shāh, after that Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, had assumed the throne within the royal residence, and after he had been proclaimed outside the Kaşr, and a proclamation, in his name, respecting his [assumption] of the sovereignty, had been once published about the city. In that matter the other Maliks, not having agreed, placed Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah, upon the throne, and administered a public pledge of fealty to the people. Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, son of 'Ali, the Ghūri, became Deputy of the kingdom, the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, was [again] made Wazir, and Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Din, Karā-Kash, became Amir-i-Hājib [Lord Chamberlain]. The provinces of Nag-awr, Mandaur, and Aimir2, were made over to Malik 'Izz-ud-

the Turk Amirs took the city-our author says in another place-Malik Balban entered it, and proceeded to the royal Kaşr, and issued a proclamation intimating his assumption of the sovereignty; but, immediately on this becoming known, Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Aet-kin, and Malik Taj-ud Din, Sanjar-i-Kik-luk, and others, assembled at the mausoleum of Sultan I-yal-timish, and repudiated that proclamation, and, in concert, went, and brought forth from their confinement in the Kasr-i-Safed, which appears to have been used as a state prison, the princes in durance there, the sons and grandson of I-valtimish, and set up 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah. When Malik Balban became aware of this, he joined them, and acted in concert with them. This can scarcely be called "the elevation of two kings in one day" [Thomas: PATHÁN KINGS, page 120]. The new Sultan conferred the fiel of Nag-awr upon Malik Balban-i-Kashlu Khan, together with permission to have an elephant, which was equivalent to his being considered as belonging to the royal family, and the first Malik of the kingdom; and it is he who must have been I-yal-timish's son-in-law-if either of the two Balbans were-or the husband of his sister - for داداد means both-and not Ghiyas-ud-Din, Balban, afterwards Ulugh Khan, which latter, the Tabakat-i-Akbari- and Firishtah likewise, as a matter of course-invariably confuse with 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlu Khān. In neither of these works is he called by his correct name. The first calls him 'Izz-ud-Din, Tigin-i-Buzarg, and gives the same title of 'Izz-ud-Din to Balban-i-Khurd [i. e. Ulugh Khan] whose title was Ghiyas-ud-Din, and never 'Izz-ud-Din. The Tabakat-i-Akbari confuses one with the other. Firishtah [revised text however], as previously mentioned, uses the word sel for is in both their titles. ² Tabakāt-i-Akbarī says Nāg-awr, Sind, and Ajmīr, and Firishtah copies

Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, and the territory of Budā'un was given to Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Kik-luk. The writer of these words, on the fourth day from the capture of Dihli, requested permission to resign the Kāzi-ship, and, for a period of twenty-six days, the office was in abeyance until the 4th of the month of Zi-Hijjah, when the office of Kāzī was entrusted to Kāzī 'Imād-ud-Din, Muhammad, the Shafürkania.

The Khwajah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, the Nizam-ul-Mulk, acquired complete power over the kingdom, and appropriated [the district of] Kol as his own fief. Previous to this he had established the naubat', and stationed an elephant at the gate of his own residence. He took all functions out of the hands of the Turk Amirs, so that their hearts became greatly irritated [against him], and those Amirs, in concert together, put him to death, within the camp before the city [of Dihli], in the plain of the Rani's Reservoir, on Wednesday, the 2nd of the month of

Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 640 H.6

At this period, the author determined to undertake a proposed journey to Lakhanawati, and, on Friday, the oth of the month of Rajab, 640 H., he quitted Dihli. the territory of Budā ūn, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Kik-luk, and, in Awadh, Malik Kamr-ud-Din, Kir-an-i-Tamur Khān, showed him abundant kindness-Almighty God immerse the both of them in forgiveness! At this time. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughril-i-Tughan Khan, the feudatory

its text verbatim here, as in most other places, with but very slight verbal alterations.

3 See note at foot of page 128.

Described in note 3, page 383. See Elliot also: INDIA, vol. ii. page 343-" Previous to this he had caused music to play," &c. The translator I trow never heard such music himself-music not capable of "charming the savage breast," but of making any breast, however charming, savage.

I wonder what "Hauz-rani" may be, but Hauz-i-Rani signifies the Reservoir of the Rani or Queen-Rani being the feminine form of Rana and Rājah. See Elliot, ibid. A little before, the Kaşr-i Hauz-i-Sultān is

rendered "the Sultan's water palace."

See the account of Malik Taj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Kik-luk, and Malik

Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, the Rumi, in the next Section.

7 The month previous to this, in Jamadi-ul-Akhir, 640 H., the Khalifah Abū-Ja'far-i-Manşūr, styled Al-Mustanşir B'illah, died, and was succeeded by his son, the last of the 'Abbasis of Baghdad-Abu-Ahmad-i-'Abdullah, entitled Al-Musta'sim B'illah.

of Lakhanawati, advanced to the frontiers of Karah with troops and vessels, and the author joined him from Awadh*. Malik 'Izz-ud-Din returned again to Lakhanawati, and the writer went along with him thither, and, on Sunday, the 17th of the month of Zi-Hijjah, reached the Lakhanawati territory. The writer left all his children, family, and dependents, in Awadh, and, subsequently, confidential persons were sent, and his family [and children] were removed to Lakhanawati. From Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khan the author experienced the utmost generosity, and received innumerable gifts-the Almighty reward him !- and he remained in the territory of Lakhanawati for a period of two years.

During those two years Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah, effected, in different parts of the kingdom, many victories9; and, after the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, was put to death', the office of Wazir passed to the Sadr-ul-

s It was at this time that Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khan, the feudatory of Lakhanawati, instigated by his adviser, Baha-ud-Din, Hilal, attempted to take possession of the territories of Awadh, Karah, and Manikpür, and Upper

An-des. See next Section.

2 It is strange that these "many victories" are not named by our author. They must refer to some minor affairs which he refers to in the next Section, and which may be summed up in a few words. In 640 H. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kik-luk, the feudatory of Buda'un, overthrew the infidels of Kathehr, and a namesake of his, Malik Taj-ud-Din, Sanjar-i-Gurait Khan, gained some successes over the Hindus in Awadh, and, subsequently, is said to have "entered Bihar and plundered that territory, and was killed before the fortified city of Bihar." In this case it is evident that the Hindus had regained possession of it from the Musalmans immediately after the death of Kutbud-Din, I-bak, or, possibly, only after the decease of I-yal-timish. See note 6, page 633.

About the same period, the son of Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Kabir Khan-i-Ayaz, feudatory of Mukan, who had thrown off his allegiance on the invasion of the Paniab by the Mughals in 639 H. - Malik Taj-ud-Din, Abu-Bikr-who remained in possession of his father's fief after his decease, several times attacked and defeated the Karlughs who had advanced to the very gates of Multan. In 642 H. the infidels of Jaj-nagar were defeated, and the author was present. This is the affair which the I. O. L. copy of the text, No. 1952, and the R. A. S. MS., through the carelessness or ignorance of their copyists, turn into "Mughals of

Changiz Khan," referred to farther on.

In the account of Ulugh Khan, in the next Section, some successes are said to have been gained over the independent tribes in the Do-āb in 642 H.

These are the only successes which appear to have been gained during this period, as a set off to so many disasters and disturbances.

1 One of the best and oldest copies of the text, as well as the more modern ones, have "two years after the Khwajah, Muhazzab-ud-Din, was put to death," but this can scarcely be correct, as, in such case, the Wazir-ship must have been in abevance.

Mulk, Najm-ud-Din, Abū-Bikr, and the office of Amir-i-Hājib of the capital was entrusted to Ulugh Khān'-i-Mu'azzam :- may his good fortune continue3!-and the fief of Hansi was assigned to him; and, at this time, many holy expeditions, as by creed enjoined, were undertaken, and

much wealth came in from all parts.

When Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughril-i-Tughan Khan, returned from Karah towards Lakhanawati, he despatched the Sharf-ul-Mulk, the Asha'ri', to the capital to the presence of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah; and, from the capital, Ķāzī Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Kāsānī, who was the Ķāzī 6 of Awadh at this period, was nominated to proceed to Lakhanawati with a red canopy of state, and an honorary robe. On Sunday, the 11th of the month of Rabi'-ul-Akhir, 641 H.6, the envoy's party reached Lakhanawati, and Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khan was honoured by being invested with that honorary robe.

At this time, among the praiseworthy incidents which

2 In Elliot, vol. ii. page 343, he is turned into Dáru-l Mulk Báligh Khán! Där-ul-Mulk significs "the seat of government," "capital," &c. Ulugh in Turki signifies "great," "the greater," &c., what "Baligh" may

be intended for who knows?

3 In some of the more modern copies of the text, the invocation, here used for Ulugh Khān's prosperity or good fortune, varies, through carelessness or ignorance on the part of copyists, and in place of step have ale and occasionally and, in consequence of this last blunder, some modern writers on Oriental subjects jump at the conclusion that the whole work "must have been written" after Ulugh Khan ascended the throne; but, had those writers gone a little farther on, they would have found, in several places, both at the end of this Section, and in the next, that our author distinctly states that Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah, was reigning when he finished his work; and he continued to reign for nearly six years more. See Elliot: INDIA: vol. ii. note 2, page 362.

4 The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī gives this name, as it does most names, correctly-Asha'ri-but Firishtah turns it into Sankuri, Dow leaves it out and a great deal more of the reign, and Briggs turns it into Shunkry, thus making a Hindu of him, and he invariably turns 'Izz-ud-Din into Eiz-ood-Deen.

5 The Tabakat-i-Akbari quotes our author very correctly here, with the exception of turning the Kazi into a Hakim, but the Tabakat-i-Akbari's shadow-Firishtah-although using nearly the same words, makes a terrible

hash of the names.

6 See the account of Tughril-i-Tughan Khan in the next Section. There it is stated that he despatched his agent, the Sharf-ul-Mulk, to the Court for aid, after having been repulsed before Katāsin, the frontier post of Jāj-nagar, and that happened on the 6th of Zi-Ka'dah-the eleventh month-of 641 H., whilst Rabi'-ul-Awwal is the third month. 642 H. must be meant.

happily occurred during Sulţān 'Alā-ud-Dîn, Mas'ūd Shāh's reign was this, that, in concurrence with the Maliks and Amirs of the Court, he commanded both his uncles to be released, and they were brought forth accordingly. Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn was given the province of Kinnauj, and the preserved city of Bharā'ij with its dependencies was conferred upon Sulṭān' Nāṣir-ud-Dîn, Maḥmūd; after which, both of them, in their respective districts, in carrying on holy war, as by creed enjoined, and in [attending to] the prosperity of the peasants, exhibited commendable examples.

In the year 642 H. the infidels of Jāj-nagar appeared before the gate of Lakhaṇawaṭis; and, on the 1st of the

⁷ Subsequently, when he succeeded to the throne. This nucle had then attained the *mature* age of fifteen, the other was younger still.

⁸ Most authors, with the exception of the one who was living at the time, and even staying in the Lakhanawafi territory, and along with the Musalman army—our author—and a few others, such as the authors of Tarikhi-Muharak. Shāhi, Raugat-us-Ṣafā, and Zubdat-ut-Tawārīkh, who could discriminate, and did so, before they entered events in their writings, and did not jump at conclusions—have perpetrated a ridiculous blunder here, which has been handed down by those Musalman writers who copied the events in their histories from the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, like Budā'unī, and Firishtah in particular. From the version of this last-named writer the blunder, like the "Tathan Dynasty," has been made over to English writers by its translators, and, in all the Histories of India, and Manuals of Indian History, up to this hour, the blunder is duly recorded.

There was no invasion of Bangālah nor of Lakhaṇawa i by the Mughals of Chingiz Khān—zoho died eighteen years before—in fact, no invasion of the kind ever occurred.

It is hardly correct to say that Nigām-ud-Dīn, Ahmad "reproducer it," for it will not be found in any prior history; still, if the author of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, Abū-l-Fazl, and the rest of those who copy the blunder, and if the editors of the Calcutta printed text likewise, had used a little discrimination, they might have seen that, in the two separate accounts of Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, and Malik Kī-rān-i-Tamur Khān, the correct reading is given, as both the I. O. L. MS., the R. A. S. MS., and the Calcutta printed text also have it in the accounts of those Maliks. The

month of Zi-Ḥijjah, Malik Kamar-ud-Din, Ki-rān-i-Tamur Khān⁹, with troops and Amirs, in conformity with the commands of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, arrived at

Muḥammadan writers who lighted upon this incorrect passage also speculate upon the route by which <u>Chingiz</u> [his ghost?] came; and they—one following the other: the blind leading the blind—come to the conclusion that it must have been by the same route as that by which Muḥammad, son of <u>Bakht-yār</u>, the <u>Khadi</u>, penetrated into Tibbat!! Firishtah also enters upon—or rather copies—the same speculations; and this fact tends to confirm me in my suspicions that he never sam our author's work, but merely "exhausts" him from

his predecessors, including the Tabakat-i-Akbari.

STEWART, in his History of Bengal, noticed [page 97] that Firishtah was wrong, but did not know that the Tabakat-i-Akbari was his source of information, and Thomas [Parthán Kinos, page 121], very properly, totally discredits the statement as rendered from the printed text, in Elliot [INDIA, vol. ii. pages 264 and 344]. This invasion, I expect, took place much about the same time that Changiz struck that very rare coin given in Thomas [page 91], styling himself by an Arabic title, and acknowledging the Khalifah of Baghdād—"Nātār-ud-Din Ullah, Amīr-ul-Mūminin"! More on this head in last Section.

ELPHINSTONE, however, boldly asserts on the faith of the translations of Firishtah—for there is no doubt expressed about it—that the Mughals pene-

trated "through Tibet into Bengal."

The facts are that the Rae of Jaj-nagar, in 641 H., began to molest the Lakhanawati territory, and, in Shawwal of that year, Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khan marched towards Jaj-nagar to avenge this hostility, and our author accompanied him. An engagement took place on the frontier of the Jaj-nagar state, in the following month. After the infidels were routed they rallied on finding the Musalmans off their guard, and victory was turned into a reverse. Malik Tughril sent to Dihli for aid, and Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah, sent it, but, with the object of ousting Malik Tughril, who, it appears, was too strong to be ousted except by treachery: so, immediately after defeating the infidels of Jaj-nagar [the Mughals of Chingiz Khan of the Calcutta text, and I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and R. A. S. MS., and ELLIOT, who had advanced opposite to the city of Lakhanawati itself, and fled on the approach of the forces under Tamur Khān-i-Ki-rān from Awadh, he possessed himself of Lakhanawati, by treachery, and Malik Tughril had to relinquish the city and territory and return to the capital. This last event happened in the last month of 642 H. See next Section. Malik Tughril, shortly after, was appointed to the fief of Awadh and proceeded into that territory, but died in Shawwal, 644 H. His rival, Tamur Khan, died the very same night in Lakhanawati. See Maliks VII. and VIII. in next Section.

⁹ The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī turns him into 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Tughān Timūr Khān Karā-Beg, and makes him quarrel with himself under the name of Malik Ki-rān, by confusing and incorrectly copying his names and titles; but Flrishtah, copying from that work, adds from his imagination, and states that the Sulfān despatched Malik Karā-Beg, Timūr Khān, who was one of the Khwājah-Tāgh slaves [see note ⁹, page 665], and that between him and psi [z² 1] ud-Dīn, Tughān, and Malik Karā-Beg hostilities arose: he does not mention the name Kir-ān at all!! The correct details will be found in the account of Malik Tughīn't Tughān Khān in the next Section.

Lakhanawati. Between him and Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khān distrust showed itself, and, on Wednesday, the 6th of the month of Zi-Ka'dah of the same year, an accommodation took place, and he [Malik Tughril-i-Tughan Khan] relinguished Lakhanawati to Malik Ki-ran-i-Tamur Khan, and determined to proceed to Dihli. The writer of this book, in his company, reached the capital on Monday, the 14th of the month of Safar, 643 H., and permission to pay homage at the sublime Court was obtained. On Thursday, the 17th of the month of Safar, through the patronage of Ulugh Khān-i-Mu'azzam'—the Almighty perpetuate his superintendence of its endowments, the Kazi-ship of Gwalliyūr, and the lecture-ship of the Fāmi Masiid. all grant, and that Malik [Ulugh Khān-i-Mu'azzam] conferred upon the author a special honorary robe, and a caparisoned horse, such as no other among his brethren of the same profession2 had ever obtained. God reward him for it!

In the month of Rajab³ of this same year, news was received, from the upper provinces, of an army of infidel Mughals which had advanced towards <u>Ochchah</u>, and of which force the accursed Mangütah was the leader. Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd <u>Shā</u>h, for the purpose of repelling the Mughal forces, assembled the troops of Islām from various parts. On their arrival on the banks of the Biāh, the

¹ In the year 642 H., Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban, who, up to that time, was Amir-i-Ākhur, became Amir-i-Ḥājib. The Ṭabakāt-i-Akbari, however, assures us that Malik Balban [in some MSS. Tigfn]-i-Khurd, who then hēdē the title of Ulugh Khān, became Amir-i-Ḥājib. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban, did not obtain that title until free years after this, in 647 H. Our author does not mean that he was styled Ulugh Khān at this time, although he calls him so: he was Ulugh Khān when our author vorde his book.

² The word here used does not mean. "family." ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 344.
³ Previous to this the royal forces went on an expedition in the Do. ab of the Jün and Gang, the particulars of which, or rather some meagre particulars, will be found in the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.

⁴ The particulars of these events which happened in 64,3 H.—not 642 R.—will be found in the last Section of this work, and referred to in the next. Mangitah, the Nü-yin—whom the translator of this passage of our author's work, in ELLIOT [page 344], has been pleased to turn into Mangú Khán here, but leaves him under the name of Mankiti farther on [page 364], not being aware, seemingly, that they were one and the same person—was one of Chingiz Khān's own immediate followers and confidants, now grown old. He was very thin, tall, and blind of an eve. Mangū Khān, the grandson of

infidels withdrew from before <u>Uchchah</u>, and that success was gained. The writer of this work was in attendance on the sublime Court on that expedition, and persons of understanding and men of judgment agreed, that no one could point out to view anything of an army like that host and gathering in years gone by. When information of the number and efficiency of the victorious forces of Islām reached the infidels, they decamped and retired towards Khurāsān again.

A number of very worthless persons in that army had clandestinely gained access to the presence of Sulfan 'Alā-ud-Dm, Mas'ūd Shāh, and used to influence him in the committal of unworthy acts and habits, so much so that

Chingiz, did not succeed to his father's sovereignty until some time after this event, and was never axt of the Judus in his life. It is strange how people will jump at impossible conclusions; and, because one of the Mughal sovereigns was called & immediately they see & Ley at once assume that the former must be meant, just in the same way as the Khalj Turks have been turned into Ghalź Afchain.

Üchchah was invested for some time, and therefore the Mughals did not retire without fighting as in Thomas [Partián Kinus, page 121], and they made several unsuccessful attempts to storm it after they had reached the walls, in the last of which, at night, the greatest champion of the Mughal army, in attempting to descend from the breach into the interior of the place, fell into a ditch filled with mud, which the defenders had made in rear of the breach, and was smothered. Soon after this unsuccessful attempt, hearing of the flank m vement of the Dihli army, and its advance along the banks of the Bidh arh. In the account of Ghiyās-ud-Din, Balban, afterwards Ulugh Khān-i-A'gam, and in the last Section, the prompt advance of the Dihli army is ascribed entirely to the energy of that Malik; but, under this reign, in which these events happened, our author does not mention even his name! See the notice of him in next Section, under this date.

Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abb-Bikr, the son of Malik Kahīr-Khān-i-Ayāz, was now dead, and Üchchah was in the hands of a slave of his father's, an enunch named Mukhliy-ud-Dīn, and gallantly he defended it. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kaghīu Khān, at this time, held the fief of Nāg-awr, and he joined the Sultān's army, with his contingent, upon this occasion.

At this period, Lähor was in ruins, and Malik Saif-ud-Din, Hasan, the Karlugh, who, on account of the pressure of the Mughals, had been obliged to leave his own territories, was in possession of Multin; and, on the Mughal invaders approaching the Indus, by our author's account, he embarked, with his family, dependents, and effects, on board of boats and dropped down the river towards Siwastān and Diwal. See also next Section, Malik, No. XX., and the last Section, where a different statement is made.

5 The Tabakāt-i-Akbari copies our author verbatim here, and Firishtah, of course, agrees.

enthod

Ithe custom of killing and seizing his Maliks was gaining a place in his nature, and he was steadfast in resolve lin that habit]. All his good qualities turned away from the laudable path and inclined towards sensuality, pleasure. drinking, and the chase, to such a degree of excess, that disaffection began to spread through the country, and the affairs of the kingdom to be neglected. The Maliks and Amirs agreed together, and despatched letters secretly to Sultan Nasir-ud-Din-the Almighty perpetuate his kingdom and sovereignty !-- and prayed for the appearance of his auspicious retinue, as will, subsequently, be recorded, please God! On Sunday, the 23rd of the month of Muharram 6, 644 H., Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, was imprisoned, and during that confinement he was received into the Almighty's mercy.

His reign extended to a period of four years, one month, and one day.

VII. US-SULTĀN-UL-A'ZAM UL-MU'AZZAM, NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DÎN, ABÛ-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAHMÛD SHÂH, SON OF THE SULTAN, KASÎM-I-AMÎR-UL-MÛMINÎN7.

The birth of the Sultan-i-Mu'azzam, Nasir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah', took place at the Kaşr-Bagh [the Garden land. Castle of Oihli, in the year 626 II., and, as his birth took

⁶ Zubdat-ut-Tawarikh states that he died on the 23rd of the month of Muharram, and, if this be correct, he must have been put to death on the same day as he was imprisoned, but no other writer gives the precise date of his death. A single copy of our author's text, not a very old one, has-"after a month he was received." &c.

⁷ In the following pages, a totally different title is given to him. This is a title given to his father at page 624. According to the Khulaşat-ul-Akhbar, Sultan Barkfaruk, the Saljuk [see note 2, page 143] also held the title of Kasim-i-Amir-ul-Müminin previous to the Shansabani Sultans. See page 316, and page 368, note 2.

⁸ ELPHINSTONE turns him into "a grandson of Altamsh;" and MARSH-MAN, following him in that also, turns his name into Nazir-ood-Deen. These are some of "the facts" in his "History" probably, of which he is "prepared to vouch for the accuracy."

Ibn Batūtah, who is quoted by some as an authority on the history of India, and makes I-yal-timish Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak's son, says Nāşir-ud-Din succeeded his sister Raziyyat. He is the ninth of Thomas's PATHÁN KINGS.

⁹ The garden with the Kasr or Castle in it.

place after the decease of the august Malik, Nāsir-ud-Din. Mahmiid Shāh 1-on whom be peace!-at the seat of government of the august Sultan Shams-ud-Dunva wa ud-Din. I-val-timish-The Almighty illumine his tomb!this sovereign [Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh]-May his sovereignty long continue!-was distinguished by the title and name of the [late] eldest son [of the Sultan]. His mother [with her infant] was sent to the Kasr [Castle] at the town of Luni's, so that there he was brought up in the hall of dominion and the lap of sovereignty, and, thank God! the foster-mother of the Most High Creator's grace nourished him in such wise that he became endowed with all laudable qualities, and from the breasts of humanity he imbibed the milk of benevolence to such degree that all his affairs and all his deeds became the means of the stability of his kingdom, and the glory of his sovereignty 3.

In every matter which becomes unfolded to illustrious monarchs in their old age, after the experiences and incidents of time, all such matters—indeed, twice as much—became realized and conceived in the auspicious constitution and august soul of this monarch of blooming prospects, of Saturn[-like] throne ', in excellence a Jupiter, in sternness a Mars, in mien a Sun, in beauty a Venus, in intelligence a Mercury, in majesty a Moon in the outset of its youth and the morning of its existence, in firmness, steadfastness, and sedateness, like Bū-Kais and Ḥirā ', and in liberality and beneficence [he] became the envied of 'Ummān's [pearl-giving] sea; and the most excellent service is that of that sublime Court—May it never experience

wane, and may its grandeur ever increase!

Every one of the learned [personages] of the realm, and eminent men of the kingdom, have composed benedictions and panegyrics [in his praise], and particles of those odours they have threaded on the string of recital and writing; and

² A well-known place a few miles north of Dihli. It is sometimes called

¹ Firishtah asserts that "Näşir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh," was the youngest son of Lyal-timish: he was the youngest of that name and title, but Kuṭb-ud-Din, the child put to death by Shāh Turkān, mother of Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz Shāh, was the youngest of all the sons.

Poli

Compare Elliot: vol. ii. page 345.
 That is, in the seventh heaven.

this frail one, who is the servant of this court of glory and altar of felicity, by way of felicitation, has composed some poetry and prose. Of these poetical [compositions], one, after the manner of a Kaṣīdah*, and the other, in the manner of a mulamma' strophe, have been inscribed in these pages, in order that, when the notice of observers may glance over them, they may utter a prayer for the sovereign of Islām, and invoke a blessing on the author of them*.

[These fulsome poems may be judged of from what is foregoing, and still more so from what follows, and need scarcely be inserted here ⁹].

Titles and Names of the Sultan.

US-SULŢĀN-UL-A'ZAMUL-MU'AZZAM,

NĀṢIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN,

ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAḤMŪD SḤAH

SON OF THE SULŢĀN, I-YAL-TIMISH,

YAMĪN-I-KḤALĪFAH ULLAII,

NĀṢIR-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN 1-

⁶ A poem, a eulogium, a long ode.

⁷ Mulamma' means "of different colours," but, in poetry, it is applied to verses alternately 'Arabic and Persian, but our author's strophe is not exactly in accord with that description.

⁸ The text varies here, and, in some copies, there is a longer prayer for the

If anything were wanting to convince me that Firishtah's knowledge of our author's work was derived solely from what he copied out of the Tabakāti-iAkbarī, it would be found with respect to these poems. The Tabakāti-iAkbarī copies the first four lines of the kaṣidah, and Firishtah has precisely, the same and no more; and this plainly shows whence he obtained them.

¹ The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, instead of this last title, has Kasim-i-Amīrul-Māminīn. See note 4, page 310.

Offspring:

Malik Rukn-ud-Din, Firūz <u>Sh</u>āh, the late ². Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Ibrāhim <u>Sh</u>āh, the late. Malik Mu'izz-ud-Din, Bahrām <u>Sh</u>āh, the late. Malik <u>Sh</u>ihāb-ud-Din, Muḥammad ³ <u>Sh</u>āh, the late.

> Length of his reign: Twenty-two years.

Motto on the Royal Signet:
"Greatness belongeth unto God alone*."

Standards:

On the right, Black. On the left, Red.

The following is given as the inscription on two of his first coins, a dirham and dinar:—

هذا الدرهم مسكوك با اسم صلطان العادل الباذل ناصرالدين محمود شاء «Reverse خرب بلده» دهلي سنه ۱۳۳ جلوس احد-Reverse

which may be thus translated:—Obverse—"This diram [is] stamped with the name of the just and Beneficent Sulfan, Nāṣin-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh." Reverse—"Struck at the city of Dihlī, in the year 644 H., the first of the reign."

The other runs thus :-

الناصر لاحكام الشريعة بحق المبين سلطان ناصرالدين جلوس ا-Reverse ضرب هذا الدينار بحضرت دهلي سند أربع و أراعدن و سقاية-

which may be rendered thus:—Obverse—"The defender of the ordinances of the Law for the sake of the true [faith], Sulfan Nāṣin-ud-Dīn. The first year of the reign." Reverse—"This coin, a dinār, [was struck] at the capital, Dihlī, in the year six hundred and forty-four."

² The oldest copies have ³/₃!—offspring—and not _a/_b/₃!—kinsmen, kindred, relations—as in some modern copies of the text, and the printed text. After each name the invocation—"on whom be mercy or compassion"—equivalent to "the late"—occurs, thus showing that they were dead when our author wrote, but this is left out in the best Paris MS. In the account of the Sulfar's reign, the birth of a son is recorded in the fourteenth year, but no more. Two of the above names are certainly similar to those of two of his brothers—the first and third—but the other two are not the names of any of his other brothers, who, in all, were six. Had six been mentioned here, and all the names agreed, we might suppose that the brothers were referred to, but, such not being the case, we can only suppose that these are the names of sons born to Sulfan Näşir-ad-Din, and that they died young, but it is remarkable that our author is silent as to their births after mentioning their names.

3 In one copy of the text, Mahmud.

⁴ Just the same as his father's.

His Maliks 5.

On the right:-

Malik-al-Kabîr, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Ķuli<u>ch</u> ⁶ <u>Kh</u>ān, son of [the lat.] Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī-i-<u>Gh</u>āzī, Malik of Lakhaṇa-waṭī and Kaṛah.

Malik-al-Kabir, Nuṣrat-ud-Din, <u>Sh</u>er <u>Kh</u>ān, Sunkari-Saghalsus, Malik of Sind and of Hind ⁷.

-Sagnaisus, mank of Sind and of Frind .

Malik Saif-ud-Dîn, Bat 8 <u>Kh</u>ān -i- I-bak, the <u>Kh</u>iṭā-i,

Malik of Kuhrām.

Malik I<u>kh</u>tiyār-ud-Dīn, Buktam-i-Aor <u>Kh</u>ān.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn [Tāj-ud-Dīn?], Arsalān <u>Kh</u>ān, Sanjar-i-<u>Ch</u>ast?, Malik of Awadh.

Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Balkā Khān, Sanā'i1.

Malik Tamur Khān-i-Sunkar, the 'Ajami, Malik of Kuhrām.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dîn, Yūz-Bak-i-Tughril Khān, the late, Malik of Lakhanawaṭi.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd ', Tughril-i-Alb Khān.

On the left :-

Malik-al-Kabīr-ul-Mu'azzam, Ķutb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Muḥammad-i-Sālāri, Mahdi.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Tughril-i-Tughan Khan, Malik of Lakhanawati.

Malik-al-Karīm, Ķamar-ud-Dīn, Tamur <u>Kh</u>ān-i-Ķī-rān, Malik of Awadh and Lakhaṇawatī.

5 This list is evidently defective. No Wazīrs or Ķāzīs are given, and several eminent Mailiks, mentioned in the following account of the reign, such as No. XXI. in the next Section—Malik Nursut Khān, Badru-d-Dīn, Sunkar-i-Şūrf, the Rūmī; No. XXII.—Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, the Shamsi, the chief Dād-Bak; the son of Kashlī Khān, Ulugh Khān's-nephew; and several others, and no list of victories is given in any copy of the text. All this shows, I think, that our author intended to continue his work as he afterwards states.

6 In some copies, Tughril and Khalj, but these can scarcely be correct, and Tughril is most likely the name of the third Malik below, which, from the names being sometimes copied in a circle, or one after the other, have got

mixed up one with the other.

7 In nearly every copy of the text containing this List.
8 This word is doubtful. See Malik No. XVI. in the next Section.

• This word is doubtful also. See Malik No. XIX.

انانی Sanā'ī—doubtful : in one copy سانی and in another سانی In one or two copies, Naṣr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, &c.

Malik-al-Kabir, 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Ka<u>sh</u>lū <u>Kh</u>ān, Malik of Sind and of Hind ³.

Malik Karā-Kush Khān-i-Aet-kin, Malik of Lohor.

Malik-al-Kabīr-ul-Mu'azzam, Bahā-ul-Ḥakk wa ud-Dūn, Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Ulugh Khān , Malik of the Siwālikh and Hānsī.

Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Kashli Khan, Mubarak-i-Bar-

Bak, the late.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kuret Khān, Malik of Awadh.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān, Malik of Awadh.

Such attributes of the saints, and endowments of the prophets, which the Most High God hath implanted in the great soul of this monarch and son of a monarch, and instilled into his august nature-piety, faith, probity, abstinence, compassion, clemency, mercy, beneficence, impartiality, bounty, generosity, humility, purity, constancy, steadfastness, fasting and prayer, the perusal of the Holy Word, forbearance, gentleness, benevolence, harmlessness, justness, the love of the learned and of learning, regard for ecclesiastics, along with other admirable principles and inestimable qualities which are the requirements of sovereignty and principles of government, such as vigour, dignity, manliness, ardour, spirit, impartiality, kindness, liberality, and the conferring of obligations, with the concurrence of the people of the time-will not be found united in the person of any of the monarchs among the Sultans of by-gone days, or of the Maliks of past ages-The Almighty sanctify their tombs !- and the purity of the garment, and [other] admirable qualities, both external and internal, of this Sultan, and son of the Sultan-The Almighty exalt his dignity and enlighten his understanding!-are so abundant that they cannot be comprised

4 The best Paris MS.—the "autograph" probably—and two or three others which are also comparatively modern, invariably make the great blunder of

إ الو غارب" Ulū Khān "الفرخان " Ulū Khān " إله غارب"

^{*} Nuṣrat-ud-Din, Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, as well as Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, is called Malik of Sind and Hind. This may be in some way connected with the terms applied to the country east of the Sind or Indus, in the map of Sind in the Masāluk wa Mamāluk, in which the country S.E. of Manṣūrah is called Bilād-us-Sind, and that immediately north of it, Bilād-ul-Hind.

within record or recital. The Almighty God preserve him on the throne of his dominion continual and perpetual *!

Inasmuch as the accession of this Sultān, the son of the Sultān, to the throne of dominion took place in the beginning of the year 644 H,—the Almighty perpetuate his sovereignty!—and that up to the period of this Chronicle will be fifteen years, each year thereof has been separated, in order that the events may be more accessible to the understanding.

FIRST YEAR: 644 H.

The Sultān-i-Mu'azzam, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, under a happy conjunction of the olanets, with auspicious fortune, at a propitious time, and, with daily-increasing prosperity, ascended the throne of sovereignty within the Kaṣr-i-Sabz [Green Castle] in the capital city of Dihli, on Sunday, the 23rd of the month of Muḥarram , in the year 644 H.; and the Maliks and Amīrs, the Ṣadrs and Grandees, and the Sayyids and 'Ulamā, hastened to present themselves the sublime Court—may its sublimity never decrease!—and performed the ceremony of kissing the blessed hands of this king of kings

Several of the words used by our author to express all these perfections, the like of which no other son of Adam ever possessed, are of the same signification; and, therefore, I have not repeated their meanings again; but the context shows, that, however amiable and harmless he may have been, he was by no means fitted for his position, and was a mere tool or puppet. Our author's flattering account of him must have been intended for Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh's own perusal. Compare ELLIOT here.

The Tabaķāt-i-Akbarī states that he copied Kurāns, and completed two in each year—not excessive work—which were sold, and the proceeds he subsisted on. The author then goes on to say that he had but one wife, and no servant or slave girl, and that she used to cook his victuals and do all the work. This story, however, is very tatle indeed—as stale as the days of one of the early Khalīfahs. It is not likely that Ulugh Khān would have allowed his daughter to be treated after that fashion; but the account of the brilliancy of the Court of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, which may be gathered from the account given by our author at the end of the next Section, belies such a statement. The Sulfia was God-fearing and pious—in the Musalmān sense of the word—and no doubt copied Kurāns, but that he lived on the price they fetched, and that he could not afford to purchase a slave woman to do the household duties is absurd, when he could present forty head of slaves to our author to send to his "dear sister" in Khurāsān. See page 686, and the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.

⁶ The first month of the Muhammadan year.

⁷ Compare Elliot : vol. ii. page 346.

of august footstep; and all of them, each in a manner befitting his own position, tendered the homage of congratulation on his accession to the throne. On Tuesday, the 25th of this same month, the Sulṭān held a public reception in the audience-hall of the Kūshk-i-Firūzī [the Fīrūzî Castle]—the royal residence; and all the people made public pledge of allegiance to the sovereignty and of excellent disposition and kingly countenance. All were rejoiced at the reconstitution of this dynasty, and all parts of the territory of Hindūstān were pleased at this prosperous reign; and may it be prolonged to the utmost limits of possibility!

When the Sultan of Islam, Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, set out from Dihli towards Bharā'ij on that fief being assigned to him [by his nephew, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh'], his mother, the Malikah-i-Jahān, Jalāl-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Din—may her prosperity endure '!—accompanied him. He undertook many expeditions against the infidels' in that territory and the mountains [adjacent]; and the province of Bharā'ij, through his auspicious arrival

there, assumed a most flourishing condition.

When, on account of those holy expeditions, and the flourishing condition [of the province], the fame of his government became diffused through the different parts of Hindūstān, the Maliks and Amirs of the kingdom, having become apprehensive of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din, Mas'ūd <u>Shā</u>n, secretly despatched, to his presence, a written petition [to the effect] that, if the sacred footstep should turn towards the capital, Dihli, it would be a source of congratulation.

1 See page 665.

* This maker of holy war upon the infidels was then fifteen years old—a very experienced warrior doubtless.

A few copies have "and solicited his auspicious departure towards the

capital."

⁸ The "approval" of "the people" was neither asked nor required; in those days there was not so much fuss made about "the people" as at present.

⁸ This prosperous reign may be judged of from the following pages—constant outbreaks, and continual inroads on the part of the Mughals, and Sind, Multin, and Lähor lost, or very nearly so, and not recovered for a long period.

² Who his mother was is not known, but it does not follow that she was a "princess" as in ELLIOT: in all probability she was a concubine. She caused trouble enough afterwards.

The Malikah-i-Jahān, his mother, adopting a good expedient, represented to the people to the effect that her son was going to the city of Dihlî for the purpose of obtaining medicine and remedy for sickness; and she placed the Sultān in a litter; and the Malikah, his mother, taking him along with her, and, attended by a great number of domestics on foot and on horseback, set out from Bharā'ij towards the capital, Dihlī. When night came on, they covered the blessed face of the Sultān with a woman's veil and placed him on horseback, and, proceeding with the utmost expedition, in a short space of time they reached Dihlī on such wise that not a living being had information of the arrival of the august cavalcade of this monarch of felicitous reign until the day that he ascended the throne.

After the seat of dominion became beautified and ornamented by the grace and splendour of his person, in the month of Rajah, in the year 644 H., he raised his imperial standards and brought out his forces for the purpose of marching to the banks of the river Sind, and Baniān, and the destruction of the infidels of Chin [the Mughals], and moved by successive marches. On Sunday, the 1st of

The Tārikh-i-Firūz-Shāhi, copied in the Tabakāt-i-Akhari, and its followers, would make us believe, contrary to our author, that, at the very outset of his reign, Sultian Naṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, assigned a canopy of state, a dir-bāth, and the dignity of Khān to Ulugh Khān, but this is incorrect. Had the two former been allowed him, our author was not one to conceal such honour towards his great patron.

In this part of Nasir-ud-Din's reign, the Dakhani historian, in his

⁵ The I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and R. A. S. MS. have Multan!

⁶ This passage plainly indicates that Banian must be the hilly tract west of the upper part of the Sind-Sagar Do-abah. It is not known by that name now. For the events of the Shamst dynasty, after I-yal-timish himself, as I have before stated, the only contemporary authority then living in the kingdom of Dihli was our author; but, for reasons we are not cognizant of, scarcely from want of information, he has not given many details respecting the different Mughal invasions and other events which took place in these reigns. and above we have a specimen of his concealment of facts. He gives some details, however, in the last Section in his account of the Mughals, for which place I shall reserve my remarks, merely mentioning here that, in the beginning of this year, 644 H., the Mughals extorted 100,000 dirams from Multan, then moved on to Lahor, and extorted 30,000 dirams, 30 kharwars of soft goods [cloths], and 100 head of captives. Our author must have passed all this over, as well as much more, to feed the vanity of his patrons. See also his account of Ulugh Khan for a few more details. In Elliot's INDIA, all the important events in our author's work concerning the Mughal raids on the frontiers of India have been ignored.

the month of Zī-Ka'dah, 644 H., he crossed the river of Lohor [Rāwī], and issued commands to the forces of Islām to ravage the Jūd Hills and around Nandanah 7. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam 8—may his good fortune 9 continue!—who held the office of Amīr-i Ḥājib, was nominated to the head of that army, and the Sulṭān with the camp, the followers, heavy material, and the elephants, encamped on the bank of the Sūḍharah '.

Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam took that army, and, by the favour and aid of the Creator, he ravaged the Jūd Hills and Jīlam [Jhilam], and the Khokhars, and other con-

endeavours to spin out his tale, inserts the nonsense about the removal of the feudatories of the Panjāb, and with it quotes the stale story about Alexander's message to Aristotle for advice, which is related in Guzidah and others long before Firishtah wrote, respecting a king of Khwārazm.

r See Elliot here also [Indla: vol. ii. page 346], where the editor, in a mote, says "the text [printed text?] has Δω mandna, but it is evidently a mistake for τω... "Sindh," or the river Indus, which agrees with what follows, and with Firithda's statement." When NANDANAH, in some places, is turned into "Ndrdln," and in one place is made "a fortified village near Kanauj," we can scarcely expect to find it in its right place. The Tabakāti-lakbarī copies our author quite correctly and has Nandanah likewise, and Firishtah-me MSS. copies of the work—follows the former likewise, with some additions of his own concection; but in the "revised text" of BRIGGS Nandanah is turned into Multān, and that text has neither "Nandna" nor "Sindh," and both Dow and Briggs, in their versions of Firishtah, have "territories near the Indus," and "provinces on the Indus," respectively. The words in our author's text are 319 the Lake Lake Could to Ulugh Khān in the next Section for further particulary.

Asim, and signifies greateth, and Ulugh is Turkish, and signifies greateth, and Ulugh is Turkish, and signifies greateth, and Ulugh is Turkish, and signifies great, being equivalent to the Persian beauerg. Dow, referring to his appointment as Wasir—as Firishtah styles him Balban-i-Khūrd, copying the Tabakāt-i-Akbari, to distinguish him from Balban-i-Buzurg, as 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlü Khān is styled in the Tarikh-i-Früz-Shāhi-calls him 'young Balin''! Ulugh Khān, or Balban the Lesser or Minor, as the term signifies, was then only past farty! This however is not so absurd as Lee, who, in his translation of lin Batúra [Ilin Batitiah], plage Italj quoting the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, to prove Dow wrong in calling him Balin, says that he was called Balaban the Duarf, and actually gives the words duarf in his vocabulary!!

s The printed text has المائي here for دولت and constantly makes the same

¹ Or Südharā—ja, — "is a town two and a half kuroh to the north-west of Waxfiribād. In former times, the river Chināb—which, at this place, is also called the Südharā—flowed close to the place, on the northern side, but now it is a kuroh to the north of it. There is no river "Sodra." See the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.

tumacious infidels² in great numbers he sent to hell. He pushed on as far as the bank of the river Sind and ravaged and plundered those parts, and returned again from thence on account of the difficulty of obtaining subsistence and necessaries for his troops. When he presented himself at the sublime Court after such success, and such a great renown, on Thursday, the 25th of Zi-Ka'dah of this same year, the auspicious standards moved from the bank of the river Sūḍharah, and the force set out on its return towards the illustrious capital, the city of Dihlī. The prayers for the 'Id-i-Azhā were said in the karah³ [the hall of a Kārwān Sarāe or of a College] of Jalandar [Jalhandar], and from thence, stage by stage, the capital was reached.

On this day, likewise, this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, who is the writer of this [work], was presented [by order of the Sultān] with a cloak 4, a turban, and a horse, with ornamented stirrups and bridle befitting a king 5.

SECOND YEAR: 645 H.

The capital city Dihli was reached on the 2nd of Muharram, 645 m, and the Sultān remained at Dihli on account of the abundance of rain and severity of the rainy season. In the month of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir of this same year, the camp and the royal pavilion were pitched in the direction of Pāni-pat, and, in Sha'bān, [the Sultān] returned again [to Dihli]; and the sublime standards moved towards the part of Hindūstān situated in the Do-āb. Within the limits of [the district] of Kinnauj there was a fortified place and strong fort, the name of which was Talsandah*,

² And yet the Dakhani historian, Firishtah, in his account of Mu'izz-ud-Din, Ghūri's reign, says the Khokhars were converted to Islām at that time.

a The printed text has s5—mountain, range of hills or mountains, instead of s\(\times \) as above, and, consequently, in ELLIOT, the Sulfan "offered up his prayers on the hills of Jálandar," which lies in a perfectly level tract of country, with no hill whatever within some forty miles of it. Karah and Aufrah are of very nearly the same signification.

⁴ Such as Şūfis and Darweshes wear.

⁵ In this year Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dîn, Karā-Kush Khān-i-Aet-kin, the feudatory of Karah, was killed in that territory, but how, or by whom, is not said.

⁶ This place which is plainly written (1925)—Talsandah in all the copies of the text—with two exceptions, where it is said — Talsandah—and said — Talbandah—is turned into Nandana in the printed text and in ELLIOT, and THOMAS follows the incorrect reading [PATHAK KINOS, page 125], and although Nandanah, which is not only impossible, but does not occur in any copy of

which was reported to be as stout as the wall of Sikandar⁷. In that fort a body of infidel Hindūs sought a place of security, and washed their hands of their lives. For a period of ten days, the troops of Islām in attendance at the august stirrup carried on the conflict against that place with the Hindūs until they despatched the whole of those rebels to hell, and the place was taken.

[An account of] this holy war, as by the faith prescribed, this servant of the realm has composed in poetry on five or six sheets of paper; and all that happened on this expedition—the ravages by the way, the onslaughts and the slaughtering of the contumacious infidels, and taking of that stronghold, the successes which attended Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam in the slaying [of infidels] and taking Dalki and Malki*, are, in those sections [of paper], fully

the text, Gen. Cunningham [see THOMAS: ibid.] identifies it "as Dev-kali or No-Po-Ti-Po-KIN-LO of Huen Thsang, i. e. Nava deva kala, close to Rájgir, the fort of Alha and Udal, about four miles S.E. of Kanauj." I, however, fail to find the latter places even in the Indian Atlas.

The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī does not mention the name of this place, but Firishtah [Britoss "revised lext"] has any which may be anything almost but Dow, in this instance, is much more correct here, and has Tiliniada, thus showing that the MSS. of Firishtah used by him, although not "revised," were correct; whilst Briggs, in his version of Firishtah, styles it "Bitunda" and identifies it with Bulandshahr [Anglicized into Booloondshuhur], the former name of which was Baran. The latter place is some forty miles S.E. of Dihlif, while Bithandah is about 200 miles to the N.W. of it!

There is TILSURRA—what the vernacular form of it is I do not know—
about twelve miles S.S.W. of Kinnanj, but off the present high road, and
Thuttas, about eight miles S., and Troos about ten miles S.W. of Kinnanj.
The first mentioned place if written in the vernacular with $\frac{3}{2} = \frac{3}{4}$ —which, in
all probability, it is, might, by a foreigner, be written in the vernacular with $\frac{3}{2} = \frac{3}{4}$ —which, is See
also the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.

7 The Sadd-i-Sikandar, Sadd-i-Yājūj Mājūj [wall of Gog and Magog], or Bāb-ul-Abwāb, the bulwark built to restrain the incursions of the northern barbarians into the Persian empire, and attributed to an ancient king, Alexander, not Alexander of Macedon.

8 A sheet of paper folded to make a just or eight pages.

⁹ Every copy of the text here has 3 between the words _=la and _Clawhich seems meant for the copulative conjunction; but, farther on, under this reign, and also in the account of Ulugh Khān, there is no 3 If 3 is correct, and is intended for and, "Dalkî and Malkî" cannot possibly be the name of one person, and we are plainly told that a Rānāh is referred to. Without the 3 the passage could be read Dalki of Malkî, the latter would then refer to his stronghold or territory, the former being the most probable, or Dalkî the Malkî, and the last word would then refer to some office or title of the Rānah in question. The best St. Petersburg

and completely described in verse, and, after the name of the Sulṭān, it was entitled the NĀṢRĪ NĀMAH. In satisfaction thereof the author received from his Majesty the Sulṭān-i-Mu'azzam—may his sovereignty continue !—a permanent grant which should be received yearly; and, from the Khāṭān-i-Mu'azzam '', Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—the Almighty prolong his power !—he obtained the grant of a village within the Hānsi province—may the Most High God preserve and continue the both of them on the seat of sovereignty and cushion of vicegerency! I now return to my Chronicle again.

On Thursday, the 24th of the month of Shawwāl, 645 H., that fort, after much fighting and great slaughter, was captured¹, and, after that, on Tuesday², the 12th of the month of Zi-Ka'dah of the same year, the territory of Karah was reached. Thirty² days previous to that, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the whole of the Maliks and Amirs and forces appointed to serve under him, had been despatched on an expedition; and that lion-hearted Khān, of Rustam-like nature, like Suhrāb in battle, and of elephant-like person⁴, during that movement, showed such proofs of spirit and skill, as cannot be sufficiently praised, in important battles, the capture of strongholds and forts,

MS., however, has only the following words here: "the slaughtering of the contumacious, and the taking of Dalki and Malki," respecting which passage see note 4, page 682.

18 Because our author, in his usual fulsome manner, styles him Khākāni-Mu'agzam, signifying great king or emperor, it does not follow, nor does it mean, that he was king when this was written. Our author generally uses the word who with respect to Ulugh Khān, which has many significations; and, as he ruled Nāṣir-ud-Dīn as well as the country, it would not be a matter of surprise to find "rule" or "power" used here, without its being turned into a proof that he must have been on the throne when the identical passage was written.

¹ In the account of Ulugh Khān it is stated that he rejoined the Sultān, with his force, on his return from this expedition, on the last day—the 29th—of the month Shawwāl, and that, after the festival of the Apiā—roth of Zif-Hijjah, the last month of the year—the forces set out towards the capital, which was reached on the 24th of the first month of the following year—646 H. See page 683.

² Some copies of the text have Monday. Tabakāt-i-Akbarī says the Sultān moved towards Karah on the 10th of that month.

3 In some copies of the text three days, but that is evidently too short a time, as the context proves.

4 Strong like an elephant he probably means. See Ibn Baţūţah's account of Ulugh Khān in a note to the account of that Malik in the next Section. making way through forests and wilds, the slaughter of obdurate infidels, the acquirement of booty and captives, together with making prisoners of the dependents of great Rāes and Rānahs such as cannot be fully contained in the writing of the scribe nor the narrative of the detailer: a little has been rendered into verse in the book [entitled] the NĀSIRĪ NĀMAH.

There was a Ranah in those mountains and that tract [of country] which they were wont to call Dalki and Malki's,

5 Here, contrary to the preceding passage just noticed, no , is used in the majority of the copies of the text, including the oldest and best ones; and in the account of Ulugh Khan also, in the next Section, no , is used. There our author says that " دلكى ملك was a Ranah in the vicinity of the river Jun which is between Kālinjar and Karah," and evidently referring to the country, not the Rānah. He then says that: "this stronghold was taken, together with the whole of the Ranah's family, kinsmen, and children, &c." Ropes and ladders had to be used in gaining access "to the place." It is scarcely probable that our author would write two or three different versions of this affair-he wrote one in verse, as mentioned above-without referring to the name of the country or the place taken, and this tends to prove that one of these names at least, if not both, refers to the Ranah's country or fortress. They cannot possibly both refer to the name of one man: that is simply impossible, as "a Ranah" is plainly indicated both here and farther on. Without the . the words would form a very improbable Hindii proper name, but they might then be read Dalki of Malki, the last word being the name of his stronghold or country, which is possible, or Dalki the Malki, when the last word would refer to some title or office, which seems improbable. As no vowel points are given, and as w may stand for g as well as for k, the words may be Dulki, Dalaki. Mulki, and Malki, or Dulgi and Mulgi or Dalagi and Malagi, and the like. Mhalki or Mahalki, as foreigners are very apt to leave out the -h-in Hindi words, and to write 3-d-for 3-d. There is a place similarly named win the Antarbed Do-abah, thus showing that it is not uncommon. See the note to this passage in the account of Ulugh Khan in the following Section.

In the best St. Petersburg copy of the text, which I have found particularly correct in most instances where others have been most defective, and also in the best British Museum copy, this passage is different from that in all the other copies of the text collated, and throws quite a different light upon the matter by the mere difference of the pronoun, they having $_0^{\parallel}$ —tAat instead of $_1^{\parallel}$ —tAa, &c., and I have, consequently, taking the reasons above stated with this rendering of the passage in those two first-named copies, no hesitation in adopting this solution of this very tedious passage, which is as follows:—

و رائه 'بود در أن جال و نواچی که آن را داختی ملحی [o داختی و ملحی] کشتندی and as I have rendered it above. The only doubt remaining is, whether the word خاص may refer to the Rānah or not, as with, or without the و both words might refer to the country.

The Tabakāt-i-Akbari copies from our author here, but merely says that 'the Rānah's ووضع [district, place, town, &c.] of وضع vas taken."

with numerous dependents, and fighting men beyond compute, and possessing dominions and wealth unlimited, and strong places, and defiles and passes of excessive strength. the whole of which he [Ulugh Khān] devastated, and captured all the dependents, together with the women and children of that accursed one, and obtained great booty. Of one description of horses alone, fifteen hundred head fell into the hands of the Musalman forces, and, from this, one may infer the extent of other booty. After he [Ulugh Khān] thus felicitously had rejoined the sublime Court, all expressed exultation at these successes; and the imperial standards, on Thursday, the 12th of the month of Zi-Hijjah, 645 H., returned from that territory [Karah].

On this march, Malik Jalal-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah, who was the feudatory of Kinnauj, and the Sultan's brother, presented himself at the Court. He accomplished [the ceremony of] kissing the sublime hand, and returned; and the army of Islam and the imperial standards, by regular marches, continued moving towards the illustrious capital,

Dihli, until the

THIRD YEAR: 646 H.,

When, on Wednesday, the 24th of the month of Muharram, 646 H., the Sultan [with his forces] reached the seat of empire again on his return from this expedition. The city was decorated for the occasion, and with felicity and majesty he took his place in the seat of sovereignty? At this period, Malik Jalal-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shah [the

Firishtah copies from it in the same manner nearly, with some additions of his own: but he does not mention anything whatever of two rajahs, as rendered by BRIGGS, "the Rajahs Dulky and Mulky," but, on the other hand, "a

rājah."

The situation of this Ranah's country is plainly indicated in the passage in the account of Ulugh Khan, and refers to the tract immediately west of the S.W. Tons river. I think "Garwa near Sheorajpur [Shiw-raj-pur?] in Parganah Bárah of Allahabad," referred to by Mr. T. E. Atkinson in the proceedings of the ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL for June, 1874, pages 123-4, is too far east to have been one of the places destroyed by Ulugh Khan.

6 Compare Elliot here.

⁷ In ELLIOT this sentence is rendered, "On Wednesday, &c., the Sulfan reached Dehli, and took his seat upon the throne with great state." I have already mentioned how oriental cities are decorated, note 3, page 616.

Sulţān's brother], who, when he presented himself to the Sulţān [on his march back from Karahl], had been nominated to the fiefs of Sanbhal and Budā'ūn, became suddenly filled with fear and terror, and from Sanbhal and Budā'ūn proceeded towards Lohor', by way of the hills of Sihnūr.

The Sultān-i-Mu'azzam continued at the capital for a period of seven months, until the month of Sha'bān, 646 H., when the sublime standards moved out of Dihli, and [the Sultān] gave directions for undertaking expeditions against the infidels in different parts of the hills and plains, and, having nominated Amirs to proceed to different parts, he returned to the capital; and, on this expedition, the Sultān did not happen to proceed a greater distance. On Wednesday, the 9th of the sacred month of Zi-Ḥijjah, in felicity and power, he reached the capital s.

The forces of Islām pushed on towards the Koh-pāyah [skirts of the hills—of Mewāt] and Rantabhūr. On this

a Rendered in ELLIOT, "When Mallk Jalali-d-din waited upon the king as he was returning he was appointed governor of Sambal and Badáún, but he all at once took alarm about these two districts and came to the capital." The I.O.L. MS., the R. A. S. MS., the best Paris MS., and the Calcutta printed text, are minus one line or more here. There was no cause of alarm about those districts, and the capital was the place, above all others, that he would avoid. Our author makes a mystery of this affair. In his account of Ulugh Khān, he says, the Dihli troops marched to the banks of the Bāha nad back again in 646 H., but no reason is given; and this movement was evidently connected, in some way, with the Prince's flight. In the account of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kaṣḥlū Khān, and Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunḥar, in the next Section, and in the last Section, some farther references will be found to this matter. It is said he field to the Mughals.

9 Compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 349. This passage is certainly imperfect, for, on turning to the corresponding month and year, in the account of Ulugh Ehlan, it is in a manner explained. It was in Sha'ñan, 646 H., that Năṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, moved towards the upper provinces, referred to in the preceding note, which evidently was connected with the flight of his brother Lahor. The paragraph mentioning this circumstance might almost be inserted above, and it would make the matter clear. It is as follows:—"In the month of Sha'bān, 646 H., the royal standards moved towards the upper provinces, as far as the extreme frontiers, and the bank of the river Biāh, and from thence returned to the capital." It was after this that Amīrs were sent on the expeditions against the infidels, it not being considered advisable, seemingly, to pass beyond the Bīāh, and therefore Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, returned to the capital again, after appointing some of his Amīrs to move against some of his contumacious Hindië subjects.

It is remarkable that, since the year 639 H., after the sack of Lähor by the Mughals, we do not find it again mentioned as a province of the Dehlî kingdom, and this passage confirms it.

expedition, and during the stay of the Sultān at the capital, two events occurred. The one was this, that Kārī Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Shafūrkānī [i.e. Shabūrghānī] was accused, and, from Friday, the 9th of the month of Zī-Hijjah, in the Kaṣr-i-Safed [the White Castle], was removed from his Kārī-ship, and, by command, left the city and departed towards Budā'ūn; and, on the 12th of Zī-Hijjah, by the endeavour, of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān, he was put to death': the other was that Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Khwājah, in the vicinity of the fortress of Rantabhūr', attained martydom at the hands of the infidel Hindūs, on Sunday, the 11th of the month of Zī-Hijjah—may he receive grace and forgiveness!

FOURTH YEAR: 647 H.

On Monday, the 3rd of the month of Safar, 647 H., Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the forces of Islām, and the sublime standards, returned in triumph to the capital again. As Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam was the asylum of the Sultān's dynasty, the prop of the army, and the strength of the kingdom, with the concurrence of all the Grandees and Maliks of the realm, it was his daughter's good fortune to become the Malikah-i-Jahān. [Queen of the Universe—the Royal consort], and this marriage took place on

¹ Compare Elliot, vol. ii. page 349. 'Imād-ud-Dīn did not kill him.

² For further particulars of this expedition, meagre as they are, see the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.

 $^{^3}$ This is the first occasion that the "sublime standards" are said to have accompanied Ulugh Khān.

Our author has forgotten to state here, although he has remembered it in his account of him, that it was shortly after this event that Malik Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Balban, was dignified with the title of Ulugh Khān, the Deputy-ship of the kingdom, and leadership of the troops, and that his brother, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak-i-Kaṣhli Khān, was made Amīr-i-Ḥājib, and, on Nāg-awr being taken from Malik Balban-i-Kaṣhlū Khān, that fief was made over to the new Amīr-i-Ḥājib. See the account of him in next Section.

Monday, the 20th of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir', 647 H. May the Most High God preserve all three, the protection and prop of the Muḥammadan faith, in sovereignty, honour, and

prosperity!

In this year likewise, on the 10th of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir, Ķāzī Jalāl-ud-Din, Kāsānī, arrived from Awadh, and became Ķāzī of the realm. On Monday, the 22nd of the month of Sha'bān', the imperial standards moved out of the capital, Dihlī, and, on Sunday, the 4th of the month of Shawwāl of this same year, crossed the Jūn, for the purpose of undertaking a holy expedition against the Hindūs; and forces were told off to operate in that tract.

Letters from the sister of this frail individual [the author] arrived from Khurāsān, and they were represented to the subline consideration, and the Sultān—Long may his Khilāfat continue! through the recommendation of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—may Almighty God long preserve and prolong both their lives!—conferred an honorary robe, a misāl [royal grant] for forty head of captives, and a hundred kharwars weight of gifts.

Some copies have the 6th of Jamadi-nl-Akhir, but the date and month above is confirmed in the account of Ulugh Khan.

6 Farther on, in the next Section, our author says that Ulugh Khān moved from the capital on Monday, the 9th of Sha'bān, and the camp was pitched at the ford over the Jūn, and hostilities at once commenced against the infidels.

7 The translator of this passage in ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 350] turns do captives into 100 beasts of burden! The words in the text, the Calcutta printed text included, are perfectly plain, and to make it unmistakeably so, the word \(\frac{\mu}{n}\)—mafer, applied solely to human beings, is used. The passage is thus rendered in Elliot —"the [the Sulfan] was pleased to give HER one hundred BEASTS OF BURDEN, and one hundred ass-loads of presents." In a foot note, the Editor states "the word used is \(\frac{\mu}{n}\) for which the dictionaries give the meaning [it is an every-day word almost in the Perstan of the East] of 'captive, slave, servant.' It can hardly bear this meaning here, and in other places it is connected with [?] asy (horse) so I have translated it 'beast of burden,' from the verb burden to carry "I'.

If bardah cannot bear this meaning here, how is it that, at page 371 of the same work, the Editor does not translate the same word, printed in italies, beast of burden? Why cannot it bear this meaning? Was it too shocking to think that captives should thus be sent away to be sold? It was a common practice nevertheless, and the meaning is captives who had been made slaves of. Our author, in the next Section, gives the particulars of his proceeding to Multān with his slaves, to despatch them to his "dear sister" in Khurašan, and there he uses the word \(\omega \)_\(\omeg

On Wednesday, the 24th of the month of Z^{\dagger} -Hijjah, the august standards returned to the capital; and, on Monday, the 29th of the same month, the author set out from Dihli for the purpose of proceeding to Multān, in order to despatch the captives to Khurāsān. When he reached the Hānsi district, by the sublime command of the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the author took possession of the village conferred on him by Ulugh Khān *, and opportunity offered of proceeding to Multān by way of Abūhar *; and, in the

FIFTH YEAR: 648 II.,

On Sunday, the 11th of the month of Şafar, 648 H., an interview was obtained with Malik <u>Sher Kh</u>ān-i-Sunķar, on the bank of the Biāh¹, and from thence, proceeding

"mattres personal of the author,"—but not more so than a vast deal more in this work, and as personal here as there—our author again mentions forty head of captires, &c. Khar-wär, although literally an ass-load, is here used to signify the weight of an ass-load, but it does not follow that the loads were carried by assess.

8 Further details respecting these matters will be found in the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section.

9 Ibn Batūtah, who proceeded "from Multān, the principal city of Sind," towards Dihli, says, "the first city [town?] we reached appertaining to Hindustān, and the first in this direction, was Abūhar. It is of small size and closely built, and has much water and cultivation."

This statement of our author respecting this interview proves beyond a doubt, that, at this period, the Bfāh flowed in its old bed, between the present Sutlaj and the Chināb, as it would have been impossible, in proceeding direct from Abthar to Multān, to have otherwise met Sher Khān on the Bfāh. See remarks on "The Lots River" in last Section.

The I. O. L. MS. No. 1952, and R. A. S. MS., and Calcutta printed text, here have יבי אין בינו אין בינון בי

In a note to the above passage in ELLIOT, the Editor says, with reference to the words—"mulkkā-i-Sher Khān hāṣil shud?—"our text has no nominative in this sentence," and, that "the words show that the person who had he interview was not subprior in rank to Sher Khān." As the subject.

onwards towards Multān, the author, on Wednesday, the 6th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal of that year, reached it. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balban-i-Kashlū ' Khān, arrived that same day from Üchchah for the purpose of taking Multān, and there was an opportunity of an interview with him. The author continued to remain there up to the 26th of the month of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir, and the capture of Multān, which was in the hands of a retainer of Malik Sher Khān, was not effected. The author set out to return to the capital, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, retired towards Üchchah. The author returned by the route of the fort of Marūṭ 'to Sursuti and Hānsī, and reached Dihlī again on the 22nd of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir.

In the month of <u>Shawwāl</u> of this same year, <u>Ikh</u>tiyārud-Din-i-Kurez, from Multān, made a great number of Mughals captive, and sent them to the capital; and the city of Dihli was decorated for this success of the Nāṣirā dynasty*. In this year likewise, on Friday, the 17th of

a mere continuation of the sentence above there can be no doubt as to who is referred to, and, as the nominative to a passive werb is never expressed in the Persian language, it is not astonishing that our author does not use it here. The words above are "the interview with Sher Khān [lit. of Sher Khān] Was attāined or acquired," not "had an interview;" but what proves—except the previous sentence, which is clear enough—the superiority or inferiority of the two persons, I am at a loss to discern.

It is the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, not Firightah—for he is a mere copyist of the former work, as I have often shown here already—who takes the Sulfān, who never left Dihlî that year, to the Bīāh, and says that Sher Khān joined him there, but does not mention anything about 20,000 horse. The same work takes the Sulfān to Multān and Üghchah, the former of which places he is therein stated to have reached on the 6th of Rabī'-ul-Awwāl, 648 H. In this case cur author has only been mistoken for the Sulfān! See the account of Malik 'Iaz-va'-Dīŋ, Balban-i-Kāghlū Khān, in the next Section.

² The printed text turns Kashlü Khān-i-Balban into Lashkar Khān, and in ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 350] it is so translated, and Thomas [Pathan Kings, page 125] turns Sher Khān into the brother of Ulugh Khān! He was his

uncle's son-his cousin merely.

³ Marüt is a well known place on the route from Dihlf to Üchchah. "Mirat" is utterly impossible. One is W. of Dihlf, and the other E. A person would go a little out of his way to go to Multan from Dihlf by way of "Mirat." See the account of Ulugh Khān, and ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 350. Our author went as far as the river Jhilam to see the captives off.

4 It is strange that no particulars are given respecting the capture of these Mughal prisoners by Ikhtiyār-ud-Din-i-Kurez from, not at, Multān, which caused Dihlf to be decorated. It is not even referred to in the account of Ulugh Khān. It was quite time to gain some success—although this is a very doubtful one—over the Mughals, for they were continually encroaching

the month of Zi-Ka'dah, Kāzī Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Kāsānī, resigned his existence to the most sublime dynasty—the immaculate Ruler of the Universe.

SIXTH YEAR: 649 H.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, having commenced to act in a refractory manner at Nāg-awr, in this year the august standards moved towards that place, upon which Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, presented himself and made his submission, and the sublime standards returned [to the capital ⁸].

Subsequently to this, Malik Sher Khān marched from Multān against Ūchchah, and Malik Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, pressed on from Nāg-awr towards Ūchchah, and went to Malik Sher Khān [in his camp] and was detained, and relinquished the fort of Ūchchah to him and, leaving it, turned his face towards the capital.

upon the Panjāb, and by and by we shall find them permanently located on the banks of the Biāh. This is the affair out of which Firisfiath, but not the Zabakāt-i-Akbarī, makes Sher Khān take Ghaznin from the Mughals referred in note 3, page 690, and in the account of Sher Khān in the next Section.

Some time previous to this, in 647 H., Mailk Saif-ud-Dîn, Ḥasan, the Karlugh, who was able to hold his territory of Bantān notwithstanding the Mughals, advanced from that tract to attack Multān, which fief Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān then held, together with Ochchah. He advanced from Ochchah to drive away the Karlugh army. An engagement ensued near Multān, Ḥasan, the Karlugh, was slain, but his people kept his death secret—although a party of horsemen, in Malik Balban's army, devoted themselves to kill the Karlugh chief—and Malik Balban was under the necessity of delivering up Multān, which he had entered after the engagement. We must suppose that Ḥasan's eldest son—the Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad—hereafter be mentioned, took the command of the Karlugh army, to whom Malik Balban had to surrender Multān, which Malik Sher Khān shortly after recovered from them, when he installed there his own retainer—Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Kurez, above alluded to. See the account of Sher Khān in the next Section.

I have already mentioned how eastern cities are decorated. Compare

⁵ Ulugh Khān's brother was put in charge of Nāg-awr.

6 In his account of Malik Balban, in the next Section, our author says Sher Khān advanced from Tabarhindah and Lähor upon Uchchah.

7 In ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 351, this is rendered "but he was captured in his encounter with Sher Khán and quietly surrendered the fort." No encounter whatever took place between them, and the event happened precisely as our author relates above. The details of it will be found in the account of Balban-i-Kashlū Khān and of Sher Khān in the next Section, which see.

On Sunday, the 17th of the month of Rabi'-ul-Akhir, 640 H., he presented himself at the sublime Court, and the fief of the district and city of Buda'un 8 was assigned to him.

In this year, likewise, on Sunday, the 10th of the month of Jamadi ul-Awwal, for the second time, the Kazi-ship of the realm, together with the jurisdiction of the capital', was entrusted to this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, by the sublime command; and, on Tuesday, the 25th of the month of Sha'ban, the sublime standards moved towards Gwaliyur, Chandiri, Nurwul 1 [Nurwur], and

The Tabakāt-i-Akbari places this event immediately after the taking of the stronghold of Nurwur, instead of before, although our author says that the Sultan set out for Chandiri and Malwah in Sha'ban, which is the eighth month of the year.

8 One of the two most important fiefs of the kingdom of Dihli in those

That exceedingly trustworthy historian, Firishtah, perpetrates a nice blunder here. He states immediately after the Nurwur affair, that "Sher Khan took Ghaznin from the Mughals, and, for some time, read the Khutbah and coined the money there in the name of Sultan Nasir-ud-Din"!! All this ridiculous nonsense is concocted from the affair of Ikhtiyar-ud-Din-i-Kurez and the Mughals mentioned previously by our author. ELPHINSTONE is also led away by this nonsense, through the translations of that writer's work, and MARSHMAN and some others of the compilers of Indian history follow suit of course. The last-named writer adds that it is the only irruption recorded from that quarter during the period of "authentic history." So much for the authentic history. See page 594, and account of Sher Khan in the next Section

A This refers to his duties as Kazi no doubt, but the word used in the text is jurisdiction, authority, sway, &c., and does not mean magistrate.

although it might, in a proper place, mean magistracy.

1 There is no doubt respecting the name of this place: Nurwul and Nurwur, or Nirwul and Nirwur, are one and the same thing, the letters, and J in Hindi being interchangeable. It is no doubtful place, and lies some 40 miles east of Bhūpāl, in Lat. 23° 18', Long. 78°. The other places mentioned with it indicate its whereabouts. The majority of the best copies of the text have but in MSS., and , are often confounded. It is probably the manner in which a Musalman, and a foreigner, would write slate [4183]-Chahadah-by putting, to represent the sound of Sanskrit The word here written ajar or achar, in one copy of the text, in the account of Nusrat-ud-Din, Ta-yasa'i, in the next Section, has ماريد - ajārnah, which may be meant for عاربه '-achāryah, j standing for ...

This Rājah is, probably, "Chāhaḍa Dīwa," as referred to by Thomas [PATHÁN KINGS: pages 69-70], but it seems very doubtful whether he was ever tributary to I-yal-timish. The second word is, probably, meant for WITC-Acharya-spiritual guide, or teacher, &c., only, in other places that farther on, he is styled رانه اجار Ranah of Ajar, and أن مندوك اجاري hat Hindū fellow, the Ajārī, or, of Ajārī, and رانه اجارى Rānah of Ajārī, and Mālwah, and, on this expedition, they reached near unto Mālwah. Chāhar, the Ajār, who was the greatest of all the Rāes of that tract of country, who had about 5000 horsemen well trained to arms, and 200,000 footmen, was routed; and the fortress which had been constructed by him, among defiles and passes, was taken and plundered, and booty and captives fell into the hands of the Musalmān army. During this expedition the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, displayed proofs of much energy and skill; and, in safety, and under the protection of God,

and چاهر اجاری and جاهر اجاری and Apair the Ajari, who was a Ranah, &c., all of which various designations make the identification difficult.

In Sanskrit, Achārī means strict in the observance of religious ceremonies, and Achāraj and Achāraj mean a spiritual guide or preceptor. Hodgson, in its "Skatch of Buddhim" contained in Part I., Vol. and, of the "Tansactions of The Ro. As. Soc. for 1829," pages 231 and 245, mentions the Vajra Achāryas. He says "The Bandyas are divided into two classes; those who follow the Vāhya-charya, and those who adopt the Abhyandra-charya—words equivalent to the Griĥastha dram and Vairāgi dram of the Brāhmanus. The first class is denominated Bhikhai; the second, VAJRA KORĀRVA." This last term is evidently similar in some way to the same name applied to this great "Rāe." See also the account of this affair, in the notice of Ulaph Khān in the next Section, and compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 351.

The Tārikh-i-Mubārak-Shāhī styles him موط ادبر —Harjā Dīw, and the Tagkanta-ul-Mulūk ماتر على — Ḥāhīr Dīw—but in all probability the e is merely e or with the points omitted, as no Hindū name would have the peculiar 'Arabic — and says he had 60,000 horse and 200,000 foot, but these latter would be mere rabble in any case, that he was one of the Rājahs- of Chandārī and Mālwah, and that, on the way back from this expedition, the fortress of Nurwur or-Nirwur was taken.

The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī states that the Sultān marched against إلى وحو Achār Dīw, with a large army, on the 6th of Sha'bān of this year, mentions the number of the hostile troops as given by our author, and that a great battle took place in which Achār Dīw was overthrown, after which his stronghold was taken by assault, and the Sultān returned to Dihlī.

Firightal copies the above, but styles him جنم و (the MS. used by Dow however appears to have had جنم الله — Sahir Dīw] and adds that he had very recently built this stronghold of Nurwur or Nirwur, which, in Briggs' revised text, is turned into - 17.—Tirūr, which, of course, is totally incorrect.

the sublime standards moved back again towards the capital.

SEVENTH YEAR: 650 H.

The sublime standards returned to Dihli on Monday, the 23rd of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 650 H., after which, for a period of seven months, attended by auspicious fortune and increasing felicity 2, the Sultān continued at the illustrious seat of government, and, during this period, was engaged in the diffusion of goodness and establishing usages of justice and equity.

On Monday, the 22nd of the month of Shawwāl of this year, the Sultān departed in the direction of Lohor with the intention of marching to <u>Uchchah</u> and Multān³, and at the time of bidding farewell, in the vicinity of Kaithal, the Sultān bestowed upon the author a special honorary robe, together with a horse with complete furniture and

trappings ornamented with gold and a saddle.

During this march all the <u>Kh</u>āns, Maliks, and Amīrs of the adjacent parts, assembled and attended the sublime stirrup; and Kutlugh <u>Kh</u>ān from the territory of Bhiānah⁴,

² Rendered in Elliot, "in great comfort and splendour." The original

با مخت فرخنده و دولت افزاینده -- is

a The LO. L. M.S., R. A. S. M.S., the best Paris M.S., and printed text here, have "the Sulfan departed towards Lohor and GHAZNIN by the way of Uchchals and Mulitan"!! The Editors of the printed text must have had peculiar ideas of their own on geographical matters not to have detected this blunder of the copyists. Where Ghaznin? where Lohor? The word table in the original text has been turned into where the copyists of the three former, but a very little discrimination would have convinced any one of the utter impossibility of its being correct. The Calcutta text, however, is faithfully followed in ELLIOT. See vol. ii. page 352.

What was the object of proceeding in the direction of Lähor with the intention of marching to Multān and Uchchah does not appear, unless it was
to deprive Sher Khān, Ulugh Khān's kinsman, of those places and their
dependencies, and restore them to Malik Balban-i-Kaghlū Khān (which was
done), and that this was the first move in the Rayhān's plot, which the latter
Malik supported against Ulugh Khān; for, as yet, Malik Sher Khān had not
left the country, and Malik Balban was feudatory of Budā'un. The Mughal
raids may possibly have been the cause; but, whatever it may have been, the
Bīāh was the farthest point reached upon this occasion. See the account of
Balban-i-Kaghlū Khān in next Section.

4 Turned into "Sihwān" and "Sihwān" respectively in the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and Firishtah, and the latter has the impossible عوالم اعزام العراقية المناقبة الم

title of 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlu Khan.

and 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Ka<u>sh</u>lū' <u>Kh</u>ān, from Budā'ūn, with their respective followings, accompanied the sublime standards to the boundary of the river Biāh. 'Imād-ud-Din-i-Rayhān [at this time] secretly subverted the mind of the Sulṭān and the Maliks towards Ulugh <u>Kh</u>ān-i-A'zam, and their minds were greatly changed.

EIGHTH YEAR: 651 H.

When the new year came round, on Tuesday, the 1st of the month of Muharram, 651 H., command was given to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, from the encampment at Hassrah', to proceed to his fiefs the territory of Siwälikh and Hānsi. When the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, in conformity with that command, reached Hānsi, the Sultān, with his forces, in the beginning of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal of this same year, returned to the capital, and changed the feelings of the grandees [as well as] the offices [they held ?].

In the month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, the *masnad* of the Wazīr-ship was transferred to the 'Ayn-ul-Mulk', the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, Jūnaidī 2, and to Malik

⁵ The Calcutta text turns him into *Lashkar* Khān, but such a name does not occur throughout the whole of our author's work.

⁶ In the next Section, the last day of Muharram.

⁷ This name is doubtful, and I fail to recognize the place. It is scarcety written twice exactly alike in any of the copies of the text collated, but it certainly is not it Rohtak." In the different copies of the text it is ميسرا سميراء ميسرات مي

⁸ Both here and in the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section, in ELLIOT [vol. ii. pages 352 and 370], this is translated "this estates in the Siwālik hills." but they were exceedingly extensive estates. Ulugh Khān held the province of Hānsī and the Siwālikh in fief, which then appears to have been the peculiar appanage of the Amīr-i-Hājih.

⁹ In ELLIOT, "directed his attention to the nobles and public affairs," but the context plainly shows what is meant, and it is to be presumed that the Sulfan, during Ulugh Khān's tenure of office, directed his attention to public affairs and to the great also.

¹ This title, signifying the eye of the state, like the following, signifying the regulator of the country, &c., is a mere title peculiar to Wazirs. Mulammad was the name of the person in question.

² Firishtah asserts that 'Imād-ud-Din-i-Raybān was a protegé of Ulugh Khān's, but, as this is not contained in the Tabakāt-ā-Akbarī, and is not referred to by our author, I am inclined to doubt its correctness. The Dakhanī historian also refers to the 'Ayn-ul-Mulk, as if he were a foreigner whom chance had brought to Dilhi.

Saif-ud-Din, Ī-bak-i-Kashlī Khān, the Amīr-i-Ḥājib and Ulugh Bār-Bak [the Lord Chamberlain and Chief Master of the Ceremonies³], who was the brother of the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the fief of Karah was given, and he was sent thither. In Jamādī-ul-Awwal likewise, 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān became Wakīl-i-Dar⁴ [Representative in Dar-bār], and the Sultān [and his forces], with the object of removing Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—may his power endure!—moved from the capital towards Hānsī¹. 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān brought Kāzī Shams-ud-Dīn, of Bharā'ij [to the capital], and on the 27th of the month of Rajab, 651 H., transferred to him the Kāzī-ship of the realm⁴. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam moved from Hānsī and

3 Compare ELLIOT here, where Malik Kishli Khān is divided into rwo, and one half of him is made "lord chamberlain," instead of his being deprived of the office because of his relationship to Ulugh Khān, and his other half, as "Ulugh Mubarāk Albak," is sent to Karral! Bār-Bak is an officer, senivalent to the Bār-Bed of the Persian Court.

* Britous is perfectly correct in reading Wakili-Dar, since "wakilidar" is meaningless; but he is wrong in translating it "officer of the door," one "who superintends the ceremonies of presentation," for the meaning assigned to the words by VÜLLERS is correct—programment plantif regii, i. e. vicarius. Wazir no doubt means Prime Minister from the time of the first Khalifank down to the present time, as in Turkey and Persia at this moment. Blochemann, in his translation of the A'lin-i-Akbari [vol. i. page 527], translates "Vahili" [Wakil] as "prime minister," and "Vazir" [Wazir] as "minister of finances." I refer to the pre-Mughal period; but even as regards the reign of Akbar, who, being half a Hindid, and not half a Musalmän, and who, hating the very name of Muhammada and Ahmad, delighted in making innovations contrary to the what I refer to in this place is WAKILI-IDAR, or WAKILI-IDAR, when the two are equivalent—to which the Musalmän writers assign the following significations: "\(\frac{1}{2} \text{ while } \frac{1}{2} \text{ wh

A Wakil is, essentially, a person entrusted to act in the absence of another—a substitute, alter ego, locum tenens; but, at the same time, it must be remembered, that the office of Wakili-loar is different from that of Nāyab-i-Mamilitat—Deputy or Lieutenant of the kingdom—as shown distinctly at page 702. Ulugh Khān was made Nāyab-i-Mamilitat in 647 H., and not Wakili-loar, which office 'Imad-ud-Din-i-Rayhān obtained after Ulugh Khān was sent to his fact; but 'Imād-ud-Din did not become Wazīr, for the first ling of this paragraph of the text above shows, that Muḥammad, Junaidī, was the Wazīr. The term, Rayhān, is applied to a slave or cunnch generally. See

also note 5, page 635.

This is related differently in the account of Ulugh Khān in the next

Section, which see.

6 Our author's own office. See also the account of Ulugh Khān farther on. It was in this year, 651 H., that he gained great successes over the Răpūtis.

retired to Nāg-awr, and the fief of Hānsī, together with the office of Amīr-i-Ḥājib, was entrusted to Prince Rukn-ud-Dīn [Firūz Shāh s], and in the month of Sha'bān [on the 17th] the Sultān [with his forces] returned to the capital.

In the beginning of <u>Shawwāl</u> of this year, the <u>Sultān</u> marched from Dihlī for the purpose of securing '<u>Uchchah</u> and Multān. On arriving in the vicinity of the river Bīāh, a force was despatched towards <u>Tabarhindah</u>.

Previous to this, Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkar had withdrawn from an engagement on the banks of the Sind 1 , and had retired towards Turkistān; and \overline{U} chchah, Multān, and Tabarhindah, had been left in the hands of his dependents. On Monday, the 26th of the month of Z^{\uparrow} -Ḥijjah of this year, they were gained possession of, and were made over to the charge of Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast², and the

⁷ The word here used-144-does not mean "interest."

⁸ Among the names of Nāṣir-ud-Din's offjæring in the list, at page 672, this name is given, together with the names of three others. These must have been mere children, as Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh, himself, was only born in 626 H., and now only in his twenty-sixth year. The fief as well as the office of Amīr-i-Hājib must have been held by Deputy in this case, by some creature of 'Imāḍ-ud-Din-i-Rayḥān's clique, but only for a very short time. The mention of Nāṣir-ud-Din, Maḥmūd Shāh's offispring fully disproves the statement of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, and some other works, as to his having had but one wife—he may have had only one at a time—for, as yet, Ulugh Khān's daughter had borne him no ofspring. See page 714.

⁹ The word is here used, which has different meanings. "Subduing" is rather too strong, as the object was merely to obtain possession of those places from Malik Sher Khān's dependents, and to place then under the charge of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, as will be detailed in the account of him farther on. Malik Kurez, Sher Khān's deputy at Multān, had, only two or three years before [in 648 H.], sent Mughal captives to Dihit, which caused such rejoicing.

The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī says "Sher Khān sustained a defeat at the hands of the Sindiān," and Firishtah copies with some blunders of his own; but, as the first mentioned work agrees in every other respect with our author's statements here, "the banks of the Sind" have, evidently, been mistaken for Sindiān.

¹ A few copies of the text, but of the more modern ones, including the best Paris MS., have "Sher Khān had retired from an engagement with the infidels of Sind"—علار مند but those words appear to be a mistake for كار مند in the translation above.

² Our author, in the next Section, says nothing about this movement towards Uchchah and Multan, merely that the faef of Tabarhindah was assigned to him, and that previously [subsequently?] he held the office of Wakii-i-Dar, He joined Ulugh Khān from Tabarhindah, when the latter marched from Nāg-awr to oust 'Imād-ul-Din-i-Raybān from power.

In the account of Malik Balban it is stated that he, having been ousted from

Sultān [with his forces] retired from the banks of the $Bi\bar{a}h^3$, and, in the same manner, returned to the capital.

NINTH YEAR: 652 H.

When the year 652 H. commenced, the river Jun was passed, and, in the vicinity of the Koh-pāyah [skirt of the mountains] of Bardār and Bijnor many successes were gained, and vast booty acquired.

Ūchchah by Sher Khān, who had previously obtained possession of Multān, went to Court and was made feudatory of Budā'in, and that, subsequent this, hostility having arisen between Sher Khān and the Maliks of the Court, Sher Khān left the country and retired into Turkistān, but no battle whatever is referred to. Subsequently—previous to the year 655 H., in 653 H. or 654 H.—Malik Balban had been again put in charge of Ūchchah and Multān, and had made overtures to Hulākū Khān, the Mughal, who ruled over Ī-rān on the part of his brother, the Great Kā'ān, Mangū, and had asked for a Mughal Shaḥnah, or Commissioner.

In the account of Malik Sher Khān on the other hand, our author states that the reason, why Sher Khān retired towards Upper Turkistān to proceed to the urdā of Mangū Kā'ān, was, that, when his cousin, Ulugh Khān, was banished from the Court through 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān's intrigues, and proceeded to Nāg-awr, strife went on between the cousins on the banks of the Sind.

In the account of Ulugh Khān, the march towards the upper provinces in 650 H. is mentioned when the Raybāni plot took place, but no reference whatever is made to Sher Khān's retirement, nor to any fighting. Under any circumstances Sher Khān could not have remained long absent from Hind, as te joined the Sulţān's brother, Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Mayā'd Shāh in 652 H., at Lāhor, which territory, a fact to which I have before drawn attention, appears to have been then severed from the sovereignty of Dihli. There is a great deal of mystery about Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ud Shāh's movements, but further mention of him, with reference to the Mughals, in the last Section, will throw some more light upon them.

a It must be borne in mind that all the references in these pages to the Biāh, and the banks of the Biāh, refer to that river when it flowed in its own hed which ran about midway through the Bārl Dō-ab, and Shamāli Kachhi Dō-ab, and joined the other rivers of the Panjāb tea miles north of Uchchah: otherwise, to advance to the Biāh as it now flows, to operate against Multān and Uchchah, would be of no more effect than advancing to the Gang or Jūn for the purpose. I shall have to refer to its change of bed farther on.

As in all the copies of the text—بهنور Bijnor and بهنور—Bijnor [the Bijnour of the Indian Atlas]. It is a place of considerable antiquity, with many ruins

still to be seen.

The very "caudid" writer, our author, makes no other mention of this affair in the account of Unigh Khām-mi fact, it is not even alluded to. The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, however, refers to it, but is evidently quite at sea as to the geography, as I shall clearly prove. That work states, that, in 652 H., the Sulfan "marched an army into the boundaries of the Koh-pāyah [skirt of the

On Thursday, the 13th of the month of Muharram of this year, the river Gang was crossed [by the Sultān and his troops] in front of Miā-pūr, and in the same manner, keeping along the skirt of the mountains, the force proceeded as far as the banks of the river Rahab. During these holy expeditions, on Sunday, the 15th of the month of Ṣafar, at Tiklah-Bānī , Malik Razī-ul-Mulk, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Durmashī [Durmashānī], attained martyrdom. On mountains] of Bijnor, and, having obtained great booty, crossed the river Gang

at the Mia-pur [another MS. Maha-pur] ferry, and, keeping along the skirt of the mountains, reached the river Bihat [which is the Jhilam];" and that, "at Talkah-mānī—نك ماني [another MS. إنكه ماني], on Sunday, the 15th of Şafar, of that year [652 H.], Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Razi-ul-Mulk, whilst in a state of intoxication [/] was martyred by the Zamindars of Kaithal and Kuhram. The Sultan, to avenge his blood, having gone to Kaithal and Kuhram, inflicted chastisement upon the contumacious of that part, and then proceeded towards Budā'un," &c. If any one will take the trouble to look at a map, it will be at once seen what utter absurdity this is, and what ignorance it displays. The author of that work evidently wrote without attending to the geography, and has mistaken Kätheher for Kaithal-had he not added Kuhram by way of riveting his blunder. I should have imagined Kaithal an error of the copyistand so made a precious hash of the two expeditions, and made one of them, as well as mistaking a place situated in Lat. 29° 49, Long. 76° 28', for another-a tract of country-more than three degrees farther east. Firishtah follows, implicitly, thus proving that, in this instance certainly, he did not see our author's work. He, however, leaves out the name of Tiklah-Bani altogether. The simple mention of Buda'un should have been sufficient to have guided the author of the first work to Matheher, or Matheher, or -Katheher, as it is also written.

In some copies Tiklah-Mani [الكلمان], Tilkah or Talkah-Bani [تكله باني], Tiklah-Bami [تكله باني], Tanklah-Bani [تنكله باني] Tanklah-Pānī [نكله بان], and also Sakah-Mānī [كم مان]. The first mentioned is contained in the majority of the best copies. The identification of places is very difficult in the Indian Atlas sheets, as well as in other less valuable maps, from the manner in which the names of places are written. For example, in Sheet No. 67, the word Tilak, in the name Tilak-pūr, is written Tillok-poor, Tilek-poor, Tillock-poor, and the like, just according to the fancy of the different surveyors or engravers. In my humble opinion, in the case of survey maps, at least, the local name, written in the vernacular, should be first obtained, and then, after transliteration, inserted in the map, the long and short vowels being properly marked, as well as guttural, nasal, aspirated, and other peculiar, letters, and then the public would not be at the mercy of Gazetteer writers and their crude theories. A recent article in the Bengal Asiatie Journal, No. iv. of 1874, by Mr. F. L. Growse, is very much to the point.

There is a place called Tigre; Barehnee in the sheet referred to in Lat. 29°, Long. 79° 40'; what the vernacular may be I cannot tell.

6 That most absurd blunder, whereby an innocent man is turned into a drumkard, occurs in the above passage. The author of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī read the word مربق —Dmmashi [which signifies that he was a native of مربق

the following day, the 16th of Ṣafar, the Sulṭān of Islām, in order to avenge that act, inflicted such a chastisement upon the infidels of Kāṭheher as [the people of] that territory will remember for the rest of their lifetime, and [afterwards] departed towards Budā'ūn; and, on Thursday, the 19th of the month of Ṣafar, the district of Budā'ūn became adorned with the magnificence and dignity of his auspicious canopy of state and sublime standards. The Sulṭān halted there for nine days, and, after that, decided upon a return to the capital.

On Sunday, the 6th of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, the Wazārat-i-Mamālik ' [Wazīr-ship of the realm] fell to the charge, for the second time, of the Ṣadr-ul-Mulk, Najm-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr; and, on Sunday, the 20th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, within the limits of Kol, the Sulṭān honoured this vassal of the dynasty [the author] with the title of Ṣadr-i-Jahān '—the Almighty long preserve him in the sovereignty!—and, on Saturday ', the 26th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal,

the capital, Dihli, was reached.

The Sultan continued at Dihli for a period of five

—Darmagh, or that his family, originally, came from a place so called. The same name has already occurred. See page 489, and note 4], and محرم نتى as مارت intaxication, whits Firightah, by way of clenching the absurdity, and showing plainly whence he obtained his information, puts an additional word نتاه المارة الم

I had some faith in the Tabakāt-i-Akbarî before I compared its statements with respect to this Shamsî dynasty. I found it a mere transcript, with verbal alterations, of our author's statements, plus the geographical and other blunders referred to. All this shows what errors may be made even by native Muhammadan compilers of Indian history: what then may we not expect from European compilers who are wholly dependent on translations for their materials?

7 At page 352 of ELLIOT, vol. ii., "unastr" is not translated at all, and, a few lines under, "unaktidar" is translated "prime minister," but here Wasfridamalik is rendered "minister." Now it is clear, from our author's statements, that Wakil-i-Dar and Wazir are totally distinct offices, and, therefore, the former office, as described by the Muḥammadan authors, is no doubt correct. 'Inadu-da-Din-i-Raybān was still Wakil-i-Dar at this period.

No mention of Abū-Bikr's ["Abū Bakr" must be "Turani"] obtaining the Wažīr-ship is made in the account of Ulugh Khān, although it enters into

much more detail of these events.

8 Compare ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 353. In Akbar's reign, the Şadr-i-Jahân was the Chief Justice and Administrator of the Empire. See Blochmann's translation of the A'IN-I-AKBARI.

⁹ Saturday, not Tuesday, is correct, for, if Sunday is the 20th, how is it possible for the 26th to be Tuesday?

months¹, when information arrived respecting the assemblage of the Maliks who had gathered about Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh [the Sulṭān's brother]². The sublime standards [accordingly], in the month of Sha'bān, moved towards Sunām and Tabarhindah, and the 'Id-i-Fiṭr [the festival at the end of the Fast Month—Ramazān] was celebrated at Sunām. The forces of the Maliks, namely, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast³, of Tabarhindah, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Bat Khān⁴, I-bak, the Khiṭā-i, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam from Nāg-awr, were along with Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, in the neighbourhood of Tabarhindah. The Sulṭān [with the forces of his party] left Sunām and retired to Hānsi, and those Maliks moved towards Kuhṛām and Kaithal⁴. The Sulṭān [on this] marched from Hānsī [8th of Shawwāl] in the same direct

¹ The inscription over the entrance of the mināruh at 'Alf-garh [Anglicized, Allygurh] is dated roth of Rajab of this same year, and in k is said to occur the name of Mailk-ul-Kabīr-ul-Mu'aggam, Kutlugh Khān, Balban-ugh-Shamsī, which has been ascribed, by Thomas [PATHĀN KINGS, pages 129-30], to Ulugh Khān, but "the amiable king" never bestowed upon Ulugh Khān the title of Kutlugh Khān according to the records in this work. Our author says this was the title by which Nāṣir-ud-Dīn's step-father was known, and by no other name is he mentioned in these pages, and he bore that title for a long time after. See under the events of the next year. The name probably refers to the person who held the field when the minārāch was erected.

² Further details of this outbreak will be found in the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section. It was the occasion upon which the Sulfān's brother, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, is said to have gone to the camp of Mangū Ka'ān, son of Tūlī, son of Chingiz, but our author makes a mystery of it. More about this will be mentioned farther on.

Firishtah, in his utter ignorance, turns the Sulţān's brother into Malik Jalālud-Din Khānī [I have already referred to this blunder of turning Khān into
Khānī, at page 633, note 8], and says he was one of the "TurkānKhwājah-Tāsh," referred to in note 5, para. 6, page 717. He seems totally
unaware that Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ād Shāh, was the Sulţān's own brother.
Sher Khān, after the same fashion, is turned into Sher Khān, Rayhānī, in the
"revised" text of Briggs !!.

3 See the Malik No. XIX. in the next Section.

4 The Malik No. XVI. in the following Section is referred to. This title or

by-name is often mentioned in the accounts of the Turks.

This affair probably led the author of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī astray, and to mistake Katihal, when Kāṭheher was meant. See ELLIOT: vol. ii. page 354. A slight skirmish did actually take place, and the greatest confusion arose in the Sulfan's camp. The particulars of this affair will be found in the account of Undp. Khān farther on, under its proper date. Firightah, but not the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, brings Malik Sher Khān upon the scene here. Sher Khān does not appear to have had anything to do with this matter. See the account of him in next Section.

tion. A party of Amírs now interposed between the two personages [the Sulţān and Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh], and spoke words of peace, and 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān was the cause of discord on both sides, until, on Saturday', the 22nd of Shawwāl of this same year, the Sulţān of Islām commanded that 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān should be sent to Budā'ūn, and that that territory should be his fief; and that accommodation was effected.

On Tuesday, the 17th of the month of Zi-Ka'dah, after vows, pledges, and stipulations, Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, and the whole of the Amīrs and Maliks presented themselves, and [the province of] Lohor became the fief of Malik Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh's; and, attended by security and felicity, the Sultān and his forces entered the capital city of Dihli, under a fortunate star, on Tuesday, the 9th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah—May Almighty God ever adorn the

6 The original - فريان هر فو تس as above. The persons referred to are the Sulfān and his brother, but Ulugh Khān was also concerned. Compare FLLIOT also here.

7 "Wednesday" is utterly impossible, if Tuesday is the 17th of Zī-Ka'dah. In the account of Ulugh Khān it is said the 22nd of Shawwāl was Saturday.

8 This is the first time Lāhor has been referred to as a fief since it was taken by the Mughals in 639 H. It was still in ruins, and was not rebuilt until some time after. Some authors state that Jalāl-ud-Din, Mas'ūd Shāh, held Lāhor independent of the Duhli kingdom, and that he was countenanced by the Mughals. More on this subject will be found in the last Section. Even above it is not said that Lāhor was conferred upon him; merely that it became his fef.

In the account of Sher Khan in the next Section, it is stated that, on his return with honour from the urdu of the Great Ka'an, Mangu Khan, in Turan [this shows the state of the Dihli kingdom, when even Ulugh Khan's own cousin went to the Mughal Court], he, Sher Khan, joined Malik Jalal-ud-Din; but there it is stated that contention arose between the latter and Sher Khan at last, that Jalal-ud-Din retired in disappointment, and that his dependents and followers fell into the hands of Sher Khan's followers. This however, it must be borne in mind, had nothing whatever to do with these events, and happened a year or two afterwards. Sher Khan then endeavoured to recover Tabarhindah from the feudatory, Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Arsalān Khān, but he, having sallied out to encounter him, Sher Khan had to withdraw. Swift messengers were sent after him from Dihli, and pledges were entered into [to induce him not to retire to the Mughals probably], and he was induced to proceed to Dihli, whither the feudatory of Tabarhindah was also summoned. The latter was sent to govern the fief of Awadh, and Sher Khan received back all the frontier fiefs he had previously held. Contention, however, again went on between him and Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān as before, Tabarhindah and its dependencies were conferred upon another Malik, Nuşrat Khān, Badr-ud-Din-i-Sunkar, and Sher Khan obtained another fief, as stated in note 2, page 713, and note 8, page 714, which see.

sublime standards of the Sultān with the emblems of victory for the sake of his illustrious Prophet!

TENTH YEAR: 653 H.

When the new year of 653 H. came round, an uncommon thing happened, and it was on this wise, that the decrees of destiny suffered the blessed heart of the Sultān to change towards his mother, the Malikah-i-Jahān; and, as she was married [a second time] be Kutlugh Khān, command was given to both of them that Awadh should be their fief, and that they should proceed to it. In conformity with this command, they repaired to their fief; and this circumstance happened on Tuesday, the 6th of the month of Muharram of this year.

When the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal came round, on Sunday, the 23rd of the same month, the Sultān of Islām,—May his sovereignty continue!—entrusted to the charge of this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, under the same covenant as on a previous occasion, the Kāzi-ship of the realm and jurisdiction over the capital city, Dihli.

⁹ There appears to have been some secrecy with respect to this match, and it is on account of the proceedings of the Sultan's mother and her second husband that he is excluded from the account of the great Maliks. Compare ELLIOT here also.

1 Some time previous to this period, but when or in what year is not stated -niore than between the beginning of Naşir-ud-Din, Mahmud Shah's reign, and the putting to death of Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, the Ghuri, in the middle of 653 H .- Malik Ikhtiyar-ud-Din, Yuz-Bak-i-Tughril Khan, who had previously held the fief of Kinnauj, having showed a rebellious spirit, Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, the Ghūri, was sent against him, and he succeeded in bringing Malik Yūz-Bak to the capital. The latter was then appointed to the charge of the fief of Awadh, and, subsequently, that of Lakhanawati was conferred upon him. Hostility arose between him and the infidels of Jāj-nagar who renewed their attempts against the Lakhanawati territory. Malik Yūz-Bak was at first unsuccessful against them, but, at last, he penetrated into their country, and appeared before its capital. After this success, Malik Yuz-Bak, who was continually acting contumaciously towards the Court, assumed three canopies of state, invaded Awadh, and assumed the title of Sultan Mughis-ud-Din. The kingdom of Dihli appears to have been in such a state of disorder that its ruler was powerless to oust him from Lakhanawați; and, subsequently, Malik Yūz-Bak invaded Kām-rūd, but was defeated and taken prisoner, and died. Further particulars will be found in the next Section, but our author gives not a single date, and his accounts differ considerably.

In the month of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir, they conveyed to the hearing of the Sultān a remark from Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī, who was Nāyab [Lieutenant] of the kingdom, which was contrary to the sublime opinion, and, on Tuesday, the 23rd of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir, he cited Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain ', and ordered him to be arrested and imprisoned; and that Malik obtained martyrdom ⁸—Almighty God long preserve the monarch of Islām!

On Monday, the 7th of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, the fief of Mīrath was assigned to Malik Kashlī Khān, Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Sultānī Shamsī, Ulugh Kutlugh-i-A'zam, the Bār-Bak [the full brother of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam], after he had presented himself at court "subsequent to his return from Karah—The Almighty's mercy be upon him 1! OnTuesday, the 13th of the sacred month of Rajab of this same year, the office of Shaikh-ul-Islām [patriarch] of the capital was consigned to that Bāyizīd of the age, the Shaikh-ul-Islām, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Bustāmī 1; and, in this

4 "Upon his coming from Karra to pay his respects to the Sultán." ELLIOT:

vol. ii. page 354.

8 He died in 657 H.

² See the List at page 673 for his full titles.

³ This is another of our author's mysteries and suppressions of facts. In his account of Ulugh Khan in the next Section, he says Ulugh Khan was made Nāyab or Deputy of the kingdom, in 647 H., soon after his daughter was espoused by the Sultan. On the banishment of Ulugh Khan to his fief of Nāg-awr in 650-51 н., through 'Imād-ud-Din-i-Rayḥān's machinations, he was, of course, deprived of his office; but, neither under this reign, nor in the account of Ulugh Khan, is it stated whom Ulugh Khan succeeded in that office, or who succeeded him; but, from the statement above, it is evident that Malik Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, was made Navab when Ulugh Khan was sent to Nag-awr, and that he held the office up to this time. From what is mentioned about Malik Kutb-ud-Din, Husain, in the account of Ulugh Khan. where the latter's return to Court is detailed, and 'Imad-ud-Din-i-Rayhan's banishment, at the end of the year 652 H., it is also evident that the formerhe was no slave either, but a free-born Ghuri noble of royal descent-held a high position in the state, second only to the Sultan himself. His fate evidently was connected, in some way, with the Kutlugh or Rayhani factions. from what is mentioned respecting the occurrences of this year, in the account of Ulugh Khan: or, he may have merely been in the way of Ulugh Khan's ambition, for, immediately after he was got rid of, his extensive fief of Mirath was given to Ulugh Khan's brother.

⁶ Bustām is the name of a celebrated town in Khurāsān, of which Jamāl-ud-Dīh was a native, hence he is styled Bustāmi, and Shaikh Abū-Yazīd or Bayazīd is the name of the saint who has made Bustām so famous among Musalmāns. Some write the word Bastām. See page 419.

month likewise, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Sanjar, the Sihwastāni', managed to get out of Awadh, and ousted 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān from Bharā'ij, and he departed on a journey from this world. In the month of Shawwāl of this year likewise, the Sulṭān with his forces departed from the capital towards Hindūstān [i.e. east of the Jūn]; and, on Sunday, the 17th of the month of Zi-Ka'dah, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam set out for Hānsī for the purpose of organizing the affairs of the Siwālikh contingent, and, having got those troops ready, returned to the capital, Dihlì, with them 's; and, on Wednesday, the 19th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah, at the close of this year, he joined the royal camp [with his contingent].

Previous to this a peremptory command had been issued that Malik Kutlugh Khān [the Sultān's step-father] should leave the province of Awadh, and proceed to the fief of Bharā'ij, and he had not obeyed that mandate; and Malik Bak-Tannur', the Ruknî, was directed to proceed from the capital with a force and expel him [from Awadh]. The forces on either side came in contact in the neighbourhood of Budā'-ūn', and Malik Bak-Tannur was martyred. On this, the Sultān with his forces set out towards Awadh for the purpose of remedying this mishap; and, on his arrival in that part, Malik Kutlugh Khān retired before him, and the

⁷ There are three Maliks mentioned in the next Section bearing a similar name and title, one Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kuret Khān, another, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān, who lived in this reign, and, at this period, held the fief of Budā'ūn, and a third, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, but the Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Sanjar, here referred to, must be a totally different person, and is not mentioned among those in the next Section. See also note ⁶, page 704.

In the account of Ulugh Khān he is styled Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-j-Māhpeshānī [of the moon-like brow]. "Out of the city of Awadh"—the ancient capital—is here meant, where he was confined. Further particulars will be found under Ulugh Khān, which see. Firishtah, who cortainly did not obtain the names of persons from our author, turns him into Tāj-ud-Dīn, the Turk,

⁸ On the 3rd of the month, Zi-Hijjah. In Muharram, the first month of the year 654 H., the army reached the frontier of Awadh.

¹ It is said, in the next Section, that they met at Samrā-mű.

Sultān moved towards Kālair². Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam [with a part of the army] followed in pursuit of Malik Kutlugh Khān, but did not meet with him, and, with great booty, he rejoined the Sultān's [camp] ³.

ELEVENTII YEAR: 654 H.

When the new year, 654 H., came round, the Sultān's forces, in the month of Muharram, 654 H., having achieved that success', attended with felicity and victory, and aided by the protection of the Creator Most High, the Sultān turned his face towards Dihli, and, on Tuesday, the 4th of Rabi'-ul-Akhir, 654 H., the capital was reached.

When Malik Kutlugh Khān became aware that the Sultān's forces had retired towards the capital, he began to appropriate the territories of Karah and Mānikpūr, and between him and [the feudatory] Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast, a conflict took place, but the victory remained with Arsalān Khān '. As it became impracticable for Malik Kutlugh Khān to make further resistance in Hindūstān, he determined to move upwards [towards the Biāh and Lāhor] through the border tracts, and proceeded in the direction of

³ Near Kasmandah, or Kasmandi, for it is written in both ways, on the 16th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal.

4 It was a great success, certainly, not to catch a rebel.

² The name of this place is doubtful in all copies of the text, but is written Käler or Kälair المسابقة الله most trustworthy copies. The probability is that it refers to المسابقة الله morth-east of Rurki. It is the remains of an ancient city. In some copies of the text the word is Kälinjar, but, of course, the celebrated stronghold of that name is not, and cannot be, referred to. In the account of Ulugh Khān, in the next Section, the scene of these events is said to have been near the frontier of Trihut.

^{*} Two Maliks living at this time, whose names and titles are somewhat similar, and are thereby liable to be mistaken one for the other—one, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjari-Tēz Khān; the other, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalia Khān, Sanjari-Chast. The first-mentioned became Wakli-l-Dar and feudatory of Budā'm in 654 H. He was, subsequently, sent against Kutlugh Khān, but had to retreat; and, some time after, the felf of Awadh was conferred upon him. The latter had married the daughter of Sulān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, the Mu'izzī [see page 544], and had great interest. When Malik Sher Khān retired from Sindh and Tabarhindah, Arsalia Khān was sent to Tabarhindah. He was afterwards sent against Kutlugh Khān, when feudatory of Awadh, and was afterwards sent against Kutlugh Khān, when feudatory of Awadh, and was afterwards, and compelled Kutlugh Khān's faction to disperse. This is what is referred to above. See Maliks, Nos. XVII. and XIX., next Section.

Santūr⁶, and sought shelter among the independent [Hindū] tribes⁷. The Sultān with his forces moved from the capital, Dihli, on Monday, the 20th of Zi-Ḥijjah, to quell this sedition of his; and, as the new year, 655 H.⁶, came round, the army, in that year, marched towards Santūr,

6 See the account of Ulugh Khan, in the next Section, respecting Santur.

7 There is not a word about "the highlands" here, as given in ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 355]. The word is made a tract of country in that work!

The words are -در ميان مواس عزيمت بالا كرد -as above.

There is some difficulty with respect to the <code>exact</code> meaning which our author desired to convey by the word <code>well-measure-meas</code>

The country of the Mews or Mewrās is certainly not meant, for Mewāt is too far south-west. The events here recorded happened in and around the Upper Do-āb, in and near the lower ranges of the Himālayah mountains, as far east as the district of Tirhūt, and as far as the Biāh on the west.

I have in my possession detailed geographical accounts of these tracts, but neither of the words used in the text is mentioned. There is a possibility that the name mawas is local, but, at the same time, there seems but little doubt of their being the same, or one among the aboriginal Hindū uribos, referred to in Dalton's Ethnology [pages 154, 221, 230, 231, 280], and in the Bom. Geogr. Journal, II. of 1855, under the name of Mussis, which is used like the term المحافظة المح

s These are the events of the next year, not of 654 H. In the account of Ulugh Khān it is stated that the Sultan's troops only began their march in the

third month of 655 H.

and hostilities were commenced between the forces of Islām and the Hindus of the Koh-payah [skirt of the hills] 9. Kutlugh Khān was among that people; and a party among the Musalman Amirs, who were apprehensive, through being falsely accused, joined him 1, but, as they had not the power to withstand [the Sultan's troops], they consequently turned their backs [and retired], and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, by stroke of sword, turned that mountain tract upside down, and pushed on through passes and defiles to Silmur [i. e. Sirmur], and devastated the Koh 2-i-Silmur [the hill tract of Sirmur], and waged holy war as by the faith enjoined, over which tract no sovereign had acquired power, and which no Musalman army had ever before reached,' and caused such a number of villainous Hindu rebels to be slain as cannot be defined nor numbered, nor be contained in record nor in narration 3.

TWELFTH YEAR: 655 H.

After withdrawing from thence [the hill tract of Silmūr], on Sunday, the 6th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 655 H., Malik Saif-ud-Din, Ban Khān, I-bak, the Khiṭā-i, sustained a fall from his horse and died from the effects of the injuries he sustained, and the Sulṭān's forces turned their faces towards the capital, and, on Sunday, the 26th of the month of Rabi-ul-Akhir, he reached the illustrious seat of government, Dihli.

9 The Sub-Himālayah is here meant, not the hills of Mewat.

1 This is rendered in ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 356] "a party of nobles in the royal army, &c., went and joined them," as if they deserted from the Sulţān's army. The text, however, will not admit of this rendering, and the words are المنافق المناف

² In a few of the more modern copies of the text Kathak—town is used instead of Koh—mountain, hill-tract, &c. Silmür and Sirmür is one and the same thing. The chief town bore that name as well as the tract of country. For further particulars respecting this part, see the account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section. There the Hiṣār—fortress, or fortified town—of Silmür is mentioned.

³ It was on the last day of Shawwāl of this year, although some say the following day—the 1st of of Zi-Ka'dah—that Rukn-ud-Din, Khūr Shāh, the last of the Mulāḥidah rulers of Alamüt, came down from his stronghold of Maimin-Duja and presented himself before Hulākū Khān, the Mughal.

4 It was the 25th according to the statement in the account of Ulugh Khān, which see.

On the return of the victorious forces, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dîn, Balban-i-Ka<u>sh</u>lū <u>Kh</u>ān, who, with the troops of <u>Uchch</u>ah and Multān, was [then] in the neighbourhood of the banks of the river Biāh 's advanced still farther [north-eastwards], and Malik Kutlugh <u>Kh</u>ān, and those Amirs who were in combination with him, joined Malik Balban-i-Ka<u>shlū Kh</u>ān, and advanced to the limits of Manṣūr-pūr and Samānah 's. When information of the movement of this faction came to the sublime hearing, <u>Ulugh Kh</u>ān-i-A'zam with the troops was appointed [to march against them], and, on Thursday, the 15th of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 655 H., he moved from the capital '.

When Ulugh Khān s-i-A'zam, with the forces under him, arrived near unto the army of the faction, so that between the two armies about ten kurok [about 18 miles] distance remained, a party at the capital, such as the Shaikh-ul-Islām [patriarch], Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Sayyid, Kutb-ud-Dīn, and Ķāzi Shams-ud-Dīn, the Bharā'iji, wrote letters secretly, and despatched them to Malik Ķutlugh Khān and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān [urging them] to come to the capital, and that they would give up the gates [of the city] to them; and every one within the city they were getting to pledge their support to this movement,

⁵ This advance was made with an object, as will appear in the account of Ulugh Khān.

⁶ Kutlugh Khān and his faction, skirting the lower range of the Himālayah, advenced towards the Biāh, keeping north of Sirhind, and Balbani-Kaṣḥliu Khān moved up from the Multān district to mete him, along the banks of the Biāh—which, at that period, from our author's remark in his account of Balbani-Kaṣḥliu Khān, was the boundary of the Dihli kingdom. It flowed in its old bed at this period. See remarks on the "Lost River" in last Section.

⁷ Our author's account here differs considerably from that given in his notice of Ulugh Khān, and that again differs, in a great measure, from the other two in his notice of Balban-i-Kaṣḥlū Khān. Under Ulugh Khān, our author states that, when he, with his troops, drew near to the rebels in the vicinity of Kaithal, on the 15th of Jamādi-ul-Arwal, certain persons at the capital wrote letters. &c.

⁸ He is again turned into his namesake, Balban, by Firishiah, who styles him العراقية The title of his namesake, however, was 'Izz[ع]-ud-Din, Balbani-Kashli Khān. Ulugh Khān never went by the title of 'Izz-ud-Din. The Tabakāti-Akbari, which copies from our author, is perfectly correct, but Firishiah imagines that ''Kashlia [not Kashli] Khān, Ḥākim of Sind'' and 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban, was another person altogether, and makes two persons of him in nearly every instance throughout his account of this reign.

and were entering into compacts, and making stipulations with them. Certain loyal informants [however] wrote intimation of this sedition to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam who, in consequence of this treason, from his camp, imparted information to the sublime Court respecting the fact of this disaffection on the part of a party of turban-wearers priest-hood], and requested, in the event of its being expedient in the sublime opinion, that a royal mandate should be issued by his Majesty unto them to the effect that those [among them] who held fiefs in the neighbourhood of the capital should repair to their respective fiefs, and that their return to the city again should be prohibited, by his Majesty's command, until that sedition should be quelled.

On Sunday, the 2nd of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, 655 H., the mandate was issued that the Sayyid Kutb-ub-Dīn, the Shaikh-ul-Islām, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, and Kāzī Shams-ud-Dīn, Bharā'-

iji, should proceed to their fiefs.

On their letters from the capital having reached Malik Kutlugh Khān and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, they, at once, without the least delay, marched from their position, with the whole of their forces, and pushed on towards Dihlī. This forced march of theirs upon the capital, from their camp near Samānah, was begun on Monday, the 3rd of the month of Jamādī-ul-Akhir', and they pushed on with such celerity that they marched a distance of one hundred kuroh [about 180 miles] in two days and a half; and, on Thursday, the 6th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, they alighted at the Bāgh-i-Jūd [the Jūd Garden] '2. The next morning, at dawn, after morning

⁹ Compare Elliot [vol. ii. pages 356, 357] here دستاربدان does not mean "nobles."

¹ How is it possible that the hostile Maliks could have started on the 3rd of Jamädi-ul-Äkhir, even if the information sent by the loyal party arrived the same day as that in which the letters of the turban-wearers reached the hostile camp? Ulugh Khām had to despatch the news to the Sulfān, at Dilitl, and he had to issue his mandate to expel them; and this, our author says, he did on the 2nd of Jamādi-ul-Äkhir—the day before the letters from the different partisans reached the respective samps! These two dates cannot both be correct.

² The printed text here has a typographical error of الله خود for على which is immediately after printed correctly, and the name occurs in a number of places in this Section and the next. In consequence of this slight mistake, this sentence is rendered in ELLLOT (vol. ii. page 357)—"they alighted at their

prayers, they made for the city gate, and made a circuit in the vicinity of the capital , and, at night, pitched their camp in the suburbs of Dihli, between the Bagh-i-Jūd, and Gilū-khari, and the city.

When those Maliks and [their] forces, in expectation of the fulfilment of the promise [contained] in those letters. reached the Bagh-i-Jud, the favour of Almighty God was such that, two days previous to their arrival, the party disaffected had been sent away from the city; and, when those [hostile] Maliks became aware of their story, their proceedings became suspended 4, and a command had issued from the Sultan's court, so that they [the authorities] secured the city gates; and, as the [royal] troops were absent from it, they made dispositions for defence. The Amir-ul-Hujjāb [Lord or Head of the Chamberlains] 'Alāud-Din, son of Ayazs, the Zinjani, and the Deputy Amiri-Hājib, and the Ulugh Kotwāl-Bak [the great Lord, the Seneschall, Jamal-ud-Din, the Nishapuri, with the Diwani-'Āriz-i-Mamālik [Muster-Master of the Kingdom], that same night, in organizing the fighting men for the defence of the city 6, greatly distinguished themselves, and Amirs, heads of families, and respectable persons, were appointed to the ramparts.

gardens [plural] (outside the city)," &c. Immediately under, the same is repeated in the text, but printed correctly—3ps &t—but, in ELLIOT, Bäghidid is discarded altogether, and the words "gardens on the Jamna" are substituted, and the editor adds, in a note:—"the text has '5'tid,' which I take to be a mistake for \$\frac{7}{2}tin = \text{Jumna}!"\text{ When our author is perfectly correct he is, in this manner, made out to be wrog.

From its situation, the Jud Bagh is probably that which now goes by the name of the Bagh-i-Shālimār, some distance W. of the old city of Dihli.

This affair will be found much more detailed in the account of Malik Balbani-Kashlū Khān, and of Ulugh Khān, farther on, and the Jūd Garden is again referred to.

3 There is nothing about walls in this part of the sentence.

4 In ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 351]—"they became very cautious in their proceedings," &c. The original word the here signifies delaying, suspending, retarding, &c.

⁵ He had succeeded, as Deputy of Ulugh Khān's brother, Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak-i-Kaghli Khān, who had been sent to the fief of Mirath after Malik

Kuth-ud-Din, Husain, the Ghuri, had been got rid of.

6 Malik Badr-ud-Din-i-Sunkar, the Rümi, feudatory of Ehiānah, also reached the capital with a body of troops, and this timely aid tended to the security of the city. As usual with our author, he gives part of the details here, but retains the greater part of the particulars for his account of Balhani-i-Kashlū Khān, and Ulugh Khān, which see.

When the morning of Friday [the 7th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir] dawned, God Almighty prepared a pleasure [for them], and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, proposed to retire. The other Maliks along with the Sultān's mother, the Malikah-i-Jahān, when they perceived that his intention was to be abandoned, all concurred in retiring. The greater portion of their following [however] did not accompany them at the time of their withdrawal, and took up their quarters in the vicinity of the city, and many of the great and notable persons among them sought to be admitted to terms, and presented themselves before the sublime court ''; and those [disaffected] Maliks retired towards the Siwālikh's [territory] foiled in their objects.

When information of their intention [to march against Dihli, previously related] reached Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and the [other] Maliks and Amirs of the royal army, they moved from the position they were then in, and pressed forward towards the capital, until, when they arrived near unto it, the state of affairs became manifest to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and he reached the capital again, safely, prosperously, victoriously, and triumphantly, on the 14th of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir—May Almighty God perpetuate the svereignty of this dynasty, and make lasting the fortune and power of this Khān-ship, and preserve the people of Islām, through His illustrious Prophet Muḥammad 1!

Subsequently to these events, on Wednesday, the 8th of the blessed month of Ramazān of this year, the masnad of the Wazīr-ship was entrusted to the Ziyā-ul-Mulk, Tāj-ud-Dīn, with the title of Nizām-ul-Mulk, and the masnad of the [office of] Ashrāf-i-Mamālik² was committed to the

* The Siwālikh has been previously described.

2 See note 4, page 635, respecting these titles.

⁷ That is, they presented themselves to make their submission, after terms were entered into, and do homage to the Sultâm. In the account of Malik Balanni-Kashli Khān, in the next Section, it is said that only 200 or 300 followers accompanied him on his retreat.

⁹ Without even a skirmish having taken place between them! So much for our "candid and conscientious narrator."

In the account of Ulugh Khān the date is the 10th of Jamād²-ul-Ākhi.

No further notice of Kutlugh Khān and his wife, the Sulfan's mother, occurs throughout this work, although our author, no doubt, was well aware of their fate; and it is not recorded anywhere else. They probably retired within the Mughal dominions, or remained with Kashli Khān in Shal

Ṣadr-ul-Mulk; and, at the end of this year³, an army of infidel Mughals from Khurāsān reached the territory of Ūchchah and Multān, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlu Khān, entered into a compact with them, and joined the camp of their leader, the Nū-yin, Sālin ', the Mughal.

THIRTEENTH YEAR: 656 H.

When the new year came round, and the month of Muharram, 656 H., was entered upon, on Sunday, the 6th of Muharram, the sublime standards moved from the capital for the purpose of making holy war upon and repelling the Mughal infidels, and a camp was formed in sight of the city of Dihli.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that on Wednesday, the 9th of this same month, Hulāū [or Hulākū], who was the head of the Mughal infidels [in Yrāk], fled discomfited before the troops of the Lord of the Faithful. Musta'sim B'illah, from the gate of Baghdād.

3 In Zi-Hijjah, the last month of the year.

4 ELLIOT [vol. ii. page 358]—"at the camp of Sdlin-nawin"! This leader is styled Sari by our author in the account of Ulugh Khān, and Sali—r and l being interchangeable—in other places, and by other authors.

The Tabakāt-i-Akbarī dismisses this invasion in a few words, and has:
"At the end of this year an army of Mughals came into the territories of Uchchah and Multān, and the Sultān marched to repel them, and the Mughal

army retired without fighting, and the Sultan also returned."

which, اشكر مغول يسارى و نواحي اوچه و ملتان أمد which اشكر مغول يسارى و نواحي اوچه و ملتان أمد The "revised" text of Firishtah has if correct, shows that writer knew not what he was writing about, for it can only be rendered-"an army of Mughals cante to Sari and the territories of Uchchah and Multan." The name of the leader has been mistaken for a place, and his rank seemingly for a territory also. He adds, what is neither contained in our author nor in the Tabakāt-i-Akbari-"the Sultan brought forth his red tent [pavilion] and pitched it, and after four months, when his forces had assembled, he set out by continuous marches, and, as the Mughals retired without fighting, the Sultan also retired," all of which is totally incorrect, and his own concoction. The Sultan never moved from his capital, nor did the troops either, and there they remained. The Mughals did just what they liked, and ravaged the frontiers of the Dihli kingdom; and Malik Izz-ud-Din, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, who was independent, all but in name, of the Dihli government, had lately returned from a visit to Hulau [or Hulākū, both being correct] Khān's camp, and was saddled with the presence of a Mughal intendant or commissioner in his territory. See the account of Balban-i-Kashlu Khan and Ulugh Khan farther on.

The editors of the Calcutta text add a note here to the effect that this

When the Sultān's troops issued forth for the purpose of carrying on war against the infidels, Maliks and Amīrs, with bodies of troops, were appointed to all parts '; and the centre [division] of the Sultān's [own] troops returned to the capital on the 1st of the month of Ramaẓān, where the Sultān continued for a period of five [seven?] 'months. On the 18th of the month of Zi-Hijjah 's of this same year, the kingdom of Lakhaṇawaṭi was conferred upon Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd', son of [the late] Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī.

FOURTEENTH YEAR: 657 H.

The new year having come round, on Thursday, the 13th of Muḥarram, 657 H.¹, the Sulfān's forces moved for the purpose of carrying on war against the infidels; and, on Sunday, the 21st of the month of Safar, the territories of Bhīānah, Kol, Balarām, and Gwāliyūr were placed in Malik

statement is contained "in all four MSS. used by them," and that it is "contrary to the truth." I can assure them that it is contained in eleven MSS., and more, that, wherever a MS. of the text is found, therein will this statement be found also, and still more, that the statement is perfectly true that the Mughals—the van of Hulāū's army, amounting to 30,000 horse—on approaching the gates of Baghddd on the west side of the Dijlah, were encountered by the Khalifah's troops under his general Sulimān Shāh, and other leaders, and repulsed. This was but a temporary success however. Al-Musta'şim B'illah, Abū Aḥmad-i-'Abd-ullah, was martyred by the Mughais, together with four of his sons and other members of his family, on the 6th of Safar, 656 H.

6 Where these bodies of troops were sent may be seen in the account of Ulugh Khān, and may partly account for the forces of Dihli, concentrated at

the capital, being unable to move against the Mughals.

7 All the copies of the text have five months, but, from the 6th of Muharram—the first month of the year—mentioned above, to the 1st of Ramagan, is exactly zight months less five days.

8 In some copies Zi-Ka'dah.

9 He is styled "Shāh" in some of the best copies of the text, which is certainly redundant, for we nowhere meet with it except for the princes of this dynasty. In the List at the commencement of this reign he is called Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Kulich Khān, son of the late Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānf, who is certainly, at page 625, styled Shāh-zāda hof Turkistān. In other places the son is called Malik Kutlugh, Mas'ūd, son of Jānf, and also Kulij and Kulij, Mas'ūd, son of Jānf. See the account of Ulugh Khān for notice of other discrepancies respecting Lakhapawaṭi and its governors.

No movement was made, according to this, for a period of four months and twelve days, from the 1st of Ramagān, 656 H. to the 13th of Muharram, 657 H. The infields referred to were Hindis, as will appear. Nuṣrat-ud-Din, <u>Sher Kh</u>ān-i-Sunkar'scharge², and the Malikun-Nawwāb, I-bak, was nominated to proceed with a force against the infidels of Rantabhūr, and the Sultān's forces returned to the illustrious seat of the kingdom's glory again.

On Wednesday, the 4th of the month of Jamadi-ul-Akhir of this year, two elephants and some treasure from the territory of Lakhanawati reached the sublime Court 3: and, on the 6th [26th?] of the aforesaid month, the Shaikhul-Islām [Patriarch] of the capital, Jamal-ud-Din, the Bustāmi died, and on the 24th of the month Kāzi Kabirud-Din departed this life-the Almighty's mercy be upon them !- and their offices were conferred, with king-like benevolence, upon their sons. In the month of Rajab of this same year, Malik Saif-ud-Din, I-bak, Kashli Khan t-i-A'zam, the Bar-Bak, passed to the eternal mansion of the Most Compassionate, and the office of Amir-i-Hājib was assigned to his son, Malik 'Alā-ud-Din, Muhammad'. On the 1st of Ramazān, the Imām, Hamid-ud-Din of Mārigalah died likewise, and his grants, by the royal favour, were confirmed to his sons.

2 In the account of Malik Sher Khān, and of Ulugh Khān, besides these fiefs, Baltārah, Baltādah, or Paltārah—for the word is written thus in the best copies of the text—and Mihir and Mahāwan, are also said to have been conferred upon him. See note ?, last para. page 714.

Firishtah, who, of course, knows more than any one else, and is always so correct as I have shown, says, immediately after mentioning the "Sutjān's return from marching against the Mughals"—which was not correct, as shown in the previous note —that the Panjāh was entrusted to Sher "Khān's charge, and that Kashli Khān, Ulaph Khān's bother, got Bhānah, Kol, Jailsar, and Gwāliyār, which is equally fallacious. The Sutjān did not possess the Panjāb to give him: the Mughals had overran that part, as will be found farther on The frontier territory possessed by the Sutjān at this period—657 R. [when all Indian Histories suddenly case from giving any further accounts of the reign, because dependent on our author for them—was made over to the charge of Malik Nurrat Khān, Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunķar, the Rūmī, as mentioned in a following note, and he was still sationed in that part, with a considerable body of forces, when our author ended his history.

See the account of Malik Tāj-ud-Din, Arsalān Khān, in next Section.
4 Finghtah, of course, kills the wrong person. He records the death of Malik jel [for je]-ud-Din, Kashla Khān, who was still living when our author

finished his work.

⁴ This nephew of Ulugh Khān rose to high rank in his reign, and held the offices his father had held; and his title was 'Alā-ud-Din, Kashif Khān, Ulugh Kutlugh-i-Mu'agzam, the Bar-Bak. He was very munificeni, a great archer and hunter, and very skilful in the game of Chaugân.

After such turmoil, when the prosperity of the state, and the dominion of the great Sultan's kingdom, had its face turned to extension, and all fractures were set and all wounds were alleviated, on the branch of continuity on the stately tree of monarchy, a new flower bloomed, and a tender bud opened, and the ripening fruit grew; and, on the 20th of the month of Ramazān, the abundant grace of the Creator of the Sultani [imperial] stem, from the illustrious shell of Khāni [the daughter of Ulugh Khān], bestowed a son7; and such an amount of favours and benefactions reached both gentle and simple-noble and plebeian-[in gratitude] for these blessings, as the pen of the record-writer cannot record, nor the breath of the narrator be sufficiently capable of narrating 8-May the Almighty God ever keep the parterre of sovereignty and garden of dominion adorned with the trees and fruits of continuation!

At the end of the month of <u>Shawwāl</u> of this same year, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez <u>Kh</u>ān, with a force duly organized and equipped, in accordance with the sublime mandate, reached the capital.

FIFTEENTH YEAR: 658 H.

When the new year of 658 H. came in, the sun of sovereignty rose from the horizon of prosperity, and the

This son was by Ulugh Khān's daughter, but he did not live long.

⁸ Our "author's flourishes" seem to have been "greatly compressed" here, in ELLIOT, as well as in the account of the following year.

The word was here used signifies—reached, arrived—not returned. He came from Awadh in order to accompany Ulugh Khān in his expedition into the Koh-pāyah; but, in the account of him in the next Section, it is said he arrived at the capital in 658 H., when our author finished his history.

In this year "when all fractures were set," and the Mughals harassing the frontier, Malik Badr-ud-Din, Sunkar, the Rümf, on account of the implicit faith placed in him by the Court, and on account of the continual hostility between Malik Bler Khān, who held Tabarhindah and its dependencies, and Malik Balban-i-Kashlü Khān of Multān and Üghchah, was made feudatory of Tabarhindah, Sunām, Jhajhar, Lakhwāl, and as far as the ferries of the Biāh, and despatched there with a large force. On this occasion, the title of Nuyara Khān was conferred upon him. Sher Khān received the fiels of Kol and Bhīānah, Bilarām, Jalisar, Baltārah, Mihar, and Mahāwan, and the fortress of Gwāliyūr—a very considerable tract of territory. Both Maliks held these fiels when our author closed his history.

moon of dominion shone forth from the zodiac of happiness,

On the 13th of the month of Ṣafar, the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, marched towards the Kohpāyah of Dihli, to put down the violence of the contumacious Mew', of whom a demon would be horrified, and about 10,000 horsemen in defensive armour, warlike and relentless warriors, followed his august stirrup². The next day vast booty, and cattle in great numbers, arrived. He [the Khān] plundered and devastated difficult passes, and attacked strong mountain tracts³, and Hindūs beyond computation fell beneath the unsparing swords of the holy-warriors 4.

Since the accomplishment of this History has reached this place, with this holy-warfare, and victory and success conferred by God, it is concluded. Should life be prolonged, and eternity extend the time, and aptitude remain, whatever events may hereafter occur will be recorded.

The hope and reliance [of the author] on such persons as may look into this TABAKAT and into these Annals, and take into consideration these Chronicles and Narrations, or if an atom of these accounts or a hint of these statements should come to their hearing, is, that, if an error, mistake, inadvertency, or omission should enter their

¹ Mew, Mewrä, or Mewrah, or Mewätis, a most contumacious race down even to modern times. In Akbar's time they were employed as spies, and Däk runners. The words Mew and Mewrä or Mewrah are both singular and plural.

² There is nothing whatever in the text about "their Deo," nor about "and a large army," as in ELLIOT [vol. ii, page 359], which compare here. The force consisted of about 10,000 cavalry only.

⁸ The words وهاي حصري — kohahā-i-ḥaṣin — do not signify "strong forts."

⁴ The details of these operations, but related in quite a different manner, will be found in the account of Ulugh Khān, in the next Section, together with the account of the reception of the emissaries from Khurāsān, and the circumstances which led to their coming. These persons certainly came from—or rather returned from—the camp of Hulākū Khān, but they were not envey from him, nor from the Mughals. Ulugh Khān returned from this expedition on the 24th of Rabi*-ul-Awwal, 658 H., the emissaries from Khurāsān were received in the middle of the following month, Rabi*-ul-Ākhir, and, on the 24th of Rajah, the seventh month of the year, Ulugh Khān again moved towards the hill tracts—Koh-pāyah. His return is not mentioned, but he had returned again, no doubt, when our author finally ended his history, in the teuth month of the year.—Shawwāl—658 II.

generous minds or reach their recipient ears, they will veil it with the garment of forgiveness, and endeavour to correct and rectify it, since whatever had been read in previous histories from the narrations and chronicles of Prophets, Maliks, and Sulţāns, has been copied, and whatever the eye has beheld has been recorded ⁵.

⁵ It is remarkable, but nevertheless true, and I do not think the fact has been particularly noticed before, that all the Muḥaumadan Indian histories of this dynasty suddenly end where our author terminates his account of it, and that no farther account of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's, reign is contained.

in any of them.

The Tabaţāt-i-Akbarl relates but two events in the year 657 H., and then suddenly comes to a conclusion with a short account of that Sulţān's mode of life, and his death, and no other event is mentioned. Budā'nn'i goes on a little farther, and gives a few lines more, but only as far as our author goes in his account of Ulugh Khān in the next Section, and then gives several Kaşfdahs, of many pages, by way of lengthening the account. Firishtah also manages to spin out his tale to the same date, but relates nothing farther than is contained in Budā'nni and our author, whose last date here mentioned is 15th of Ṣafar—the second month of the year 658 H.; and, in the account of Ulugh Khān, the last date given is Shawail—the tenth month of that year, and all after is a perfect blank in Indian history, until the reign of Ulugh Khān, Sulţān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban—with which Zāyā-i-Baranī commences his history, the Tarīkh-i-Firta-Shāhī; but he relates nothing respecting the events of the period in question, although he says he commenced his history where "the Şada-i-Jahān, Minhāj-i-Sarāi, Jūrjānī, let ofi."

Most writers agree that Nāṣir-ad-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, was taken ill in 663 H., and died on the rith of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 664 H. His reign was exactly twenty years, three months, and seventeen days, and yet, with the dates before them, the authors of the Tārīkhi-iFritz-Shāhf, the Tārīkhi-thabarkh, Zhahf, Zuddat-VI-Tawārikh, Tabakāt-i-Akbart, and several others.

make it one year less !

One reason of this significant silence on the part of our author [who died in the next reign] for a period of nearly six years, is, probably, that the Mughais, being so powerful in the Panjäb, harsased the western frontier of the Dihli territory, and occasioned considerable confusion therein; and, not being able to chronicle victories, he refrained from continuing his history. Our author's health does not seem to have hindered him, as he continued for some time in employment in Balban's reign. There may have been another reason for lisi selnece, as some authors attribute the death of Nāṣir-ud-Din to poison administered by Ulugh Khān, although this is extremely doubtful, and some say he was starved to death whilst confined by Balban's orders. Be this as it may, the silence is sominous.

Nāṣii-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, left neither offspring nor heir, but, before his death, he had nominated Ulugh Khān as his successor. This was natural, as Ulugh Khān was his own father-in-law; that the latter was son-in-law to Nāṣir's father, I-yal-timiṣh, is a mistake of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī and its copyists who confound him with Balban-i-Kaṣhū Khān; but I know of no proof that he even was son-in-law of that Sulṭān. Ulugh Khān's own son, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, surnamed Bughrā Khān, had married a daughter of Sulṭān Nāṣir-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṣir-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṣir-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṣir-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-Dīn, Maṇ-dd-

May the Most High God preserve and continue the dynasty of the Sultān-i-Mu'azzam, the great king of kings, Nāṣtra-UD-Dunyā wa ud-Din, Abu-l-Muzaffar-I-Maḥmūd Shāh, son of the Sultān I-yal-timish, on the throne of sovereignty and the couch of dominion to the utmost bounds of possibility, and may He grant His forgiveness to the compiler of this Tabakāt, for the sake of the illustrious Prophet Muhammad!

Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, who was the mother of Ulugh Khān's [Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Balban's] snccessor, Kai-Kubād; and, therefore, it is not surprising that, on the death of Sulṭān Nāṣi-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, Ulugh Khān, who had, in reality, governed the kingdom since the fall of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-Rayhān, with the accord of all the great Maliks, was raised to the throne.

Sulfan Firuz Shāh, whenever he had occasion to mention the name of Sulfan Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, used, always, to style him, in a contemptuous manner, by the name of "the Khwājah-Tāṣh slave"—Khwājah-Tāṣh signifying one of a number of slaves of one master, and, also, servants of one lord.

It is related that Nāṣir's humility was so great that he requested, that, when he died, his face should be blackened, a rope tied to his feet, and his body drawn along the ground and thrown into a cavern. When his death took place, and consultation was held as to the carrying out of his wishes, "some wise persons among the Mailiss and 'Ulamā advised that the face of the corpse should be covered with a piece of the [old] drapery of the mosque at Makkah, which is black, his bier so constructed with long legs that it might be drawn along the ground by a rope to a cavern prepared for it. This was done, and over that cavern his sepulchre still stands, which since that time has become a place of nilerinase?

Among some of the events of the year 658 II., the Malik of Kābul, whose name is not mentioned, after he had carried on war against the Mughals for nearly two years, was taken by Prince Yūsh-mūt and I-yal-kā, the Nūyīn. He was brought to the presence of Halākū Khān, who ordered his fiesh to be cut from his body, and he was compelled to eat it until he died.

In the year 603 H., on the 9th of Rabi*-ul-Awwal, Hulākū died in Āzarbāijān, aged forty-eight, after ruling, over Īrān, nine years and three months. In 664 H., the Imām, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Zakariyā, the Multāni, died, leaving seven sons.

Faṣiḥ-î—like Ziyā-ud-Din, Barani—says Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din, Balban-i-Ulugh Khān, ascended the throne of Dihli in 662 н. ADDITIONAL NOTE.—At page 525, where I have given what is said to have been the inscription on the coins of Sulfan Kutb-ud-Din, I-bak, I have stated, as will be observed, that the inscription is given as "contained in a work in my possession, and which the coins are said to have borne." I did not wouch for its accuracy; and this refers equally to the inscriptions subse-

quently given up to the reign just concluded.

I am under the necessity of burdening this translation with these additional remarks because Mr. H. Blochmann, M.A., imagines he has made an important discovery. He says ["Contributions to the History and Gography of Bengal," No. III., page 136, last para.], "I, too, have a work in my possession on the 'Coins of the Salatin i Hind," a modern demi-quarto Dihil lithograph, based on Sayyid Ahmad's Asir uccandid, and I dare say I have discovered the source of Major Raverty's information." In this, as in some other matters, however, he is totally mistaken. I do not know of, nor have I seen, any Âṣār-uṣ-Ṣanādid, by Sayyid Aḥmad-although I dare say anything from the Sayyid's pen is valuable. The work I refer to is a MS., of which I had a copy taken by my Afghān Maulawi of Kandahār—a real Paṭān—some ten years since, and, from what I can discover, it had been used by, or belonged to, the late W. Marsden. I can put Mr. Blochmann in the way of finding the MS., should he ever come to England.